

ORATIONS OF CICERO



MOORE AND BARSS

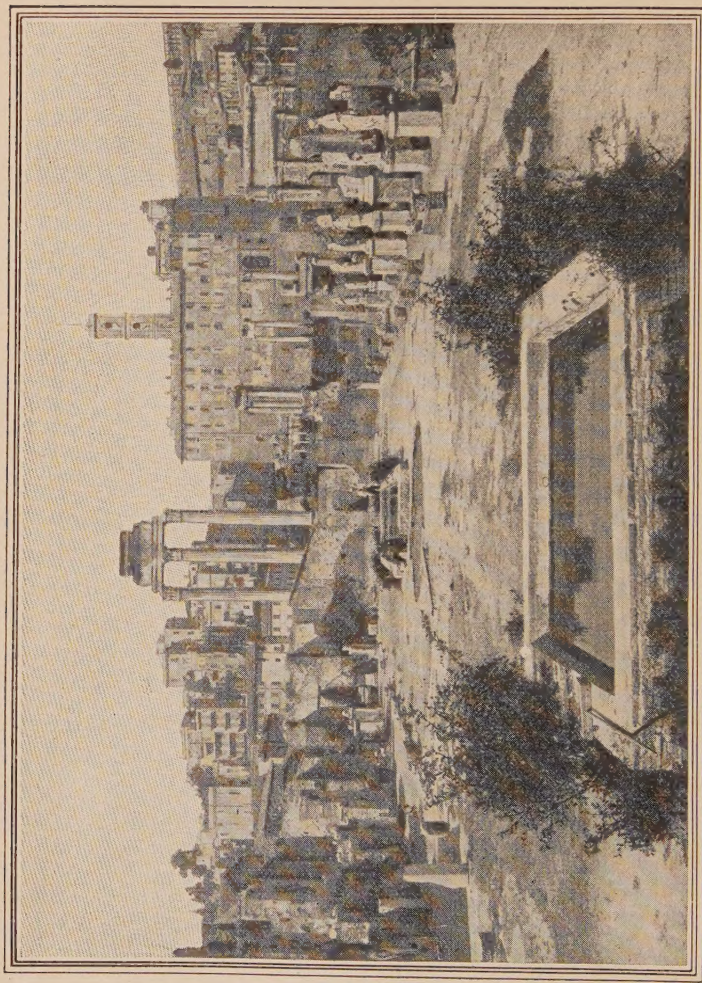


100

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]



Photograph by Alinari Brothers, Florence

THE ATRIUM OF VESTA, THE FORUM, AND THE CAPITOL

ORATIONS OF CICERO

WITH A SELECTION FROM HIS LETTERS

REVISED EDITION

EDITED

WITH INTRODUCTION, GRAMMATICAL OUTLINE, NOTES
VOCABULARIES, EXERCISES IN PROSE COMPOSITION

BY

FRANK GARDNER MOORE

PROFESSOR OF LATIN, COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY

AND

JOHN EDMUND BARSS

MASTER OF LATIN, THE LOOMIS SCHOOL, WINDSOR, CONNECTICUT



GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON
ATLANTA • DALLAS • COLUMBUS • SAN FRANCISCO

COPYRIGHT, 1929, BY FRANK GARDNER MOORE AND JOHN EDMUND BARSS
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

629.9

The Athenæum Press
GINN AND COMPANY · PRO-
PRIETORS · BOSTON · U.S.A.

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION

IN THE first edition of this book the Notes were designed for students who could and would follow a prescribed method of reading Latin,—a method equally applicable to the spoken word and to the printed page. Extensive classroom tests proved that such notes were too hard for many pupils. Hence, while the logical way to read Latin is to gather the sense from the units of the sentence in the Latin order before venturing to translate, the editor became convinced that this could best be explained by the teacher in the classroom. Unless a student has been soundly taught from the beginning, and has much time at his command, he finds it hard to use effectively a commentary which assumes at every stage that his technique is ideal.

With this in mind the editor made a complete revision of his notes. He then asked his friend Dr. J. E. Barss, of the Loomis School, Windsor, Connecticut, to rewrite and enlarge these amended notes in the light of his long experience in boys' schools. In this new commentary the development of a method of reading has been left to the teacher (with the exception of occasional hints), and to the teacher is also left the decision whether to make much or little use of the material on rhetoric contained in the Introduction, only a few of the references to which have been retained. The space thus gained has made it possible to give much additional help, and to adopt a simpler treatment. It is hoped that this collaboration will make the book useful to all classes of students.

The Introduction, which remains unaltered, will furnish the more ambitious students with helps toward an appreciation of Roman oratory and Latin prose style. In many cases familiarity with the rhetorical features there treated will prove of frequent and positive assistance in grasping the meaning of a sentence or the connection of ideas through a whole paragraph. The bibliography has been enlarged and brought up to date.

The Exercises in Latin Composition are entirely new and conform to the recent recommendations of the Classical Investigation and of the New York State Syllabus. In the Grammatical Outline a number of lesser changes have been made, and some sections on indirect discourse rewritten, to simplify the treatment and make room for more examples. For help in these parts of the book the editors are especially indebted to Dr. Francis K. Ball, of Boston, formerly of Phillips Exeter Academy.

No changes have been made in the text, which was based mainly upon the Oxford editions of Professors Clark and Purser and the late Sir William Peterson, but with numerous divergences from their readings.

A considerable number of teachers of the Orations have been good enough to place their criticisms at our disposal, and to all these helpful critics we would express our grateful appreciation, only regretting that detailed acknowledgments cannot be made here. Such suggestions were at times mutually exclusive, while in other cases a desired expansion or insertion has been made impossible by the limits of our space.

From the preface to the first edition certain acknowledgments must be repeated here: to General Umberto Nobile, the eminent Arctic aviator, for *aéroplane* views of the Forum

and its surroundings; to the houses of Anderson, in Rome, and Alinari, in Florence, for other photographs; to the late Sir Charles Walston, of Cambridge, England (plates in his *Herculaneum*); to the publishing houses of A. Picard and A. Lévy, in Paris, and of William Heinemann, Ltd., in London (further illustrations); also to three friends and colleagues, Professors Charles Sears Baldwin, William L. Westermann, and Nelson Glenn McCrea.

FRANK GARDNER MOORE
JOHN EDMUND BARSS

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

	PAGE
I. THE PUBLIC SPEAKER	xv
Public Speaking, Greek and Roman, § 2. The Condensed Speech, 3. Public Speaking in Our Own Day, 5	
II. THE ORATOR'S MASTERY OF FORM	xxi
Periodic Structure (English and Latin), § 7. Rhythm (especially Cadences), 16. Other Rhetorical Features (including Figures), 22	
III. ROME IN THE TIME OF CICERO	xxxviii
The Consuls and Other Magistrates, § 24. The Extraordinary Officials, 29. Pontiffs, Augurs, Vestals, 31. The Senate, 32. Assemblies, 36. Some Comparisons with Our Government, 39. The Law Courts, 40. Parties, 41. Citizens, 43. The Provinces, 44. The Political Leaders, 47. The Political Center, the Forum, 48	
IV. THE LIFE OF CICERO.	lxii
Arpinum, § 51. Rome—Studies and Training, 53. The Threshold of a Career—Travel, 55. Marriage; Quæstorship in Sicily, 57. The Prosecution of Verres, 59. Ædile—Pompey and the Pirates, 61. Prætor—Manilian Law; Catiline, 63. Canvass for the Consulship; Agrarian Bill, 65. The Consulship, 67. The Conspiracy, 68. Circumstances of the First and Second Orations against Catiline, 71. The Case of Murena; Precautions, 73. The Allobroges—the Mulvian Bridge, 75. The Third Oration, 78. An Eventful Session—the Fourth Oration, 80. The Executions; Catiline's End; Archias, 84. Clodius—Cicero's Exile, 87. The Return; Dark Days; the Proconsulship, 89. Civil War; Marcellus, 92. Domestic Trials; Tullia's Death, 94. Cæsar Supreme; his Death; Antony, 95. Defiance; Proscription; the End, 96	
V. CICERO'S PLACE IN LITERATURE, WITH A SUMMARY OF HIS WORKS	lxxxvii
Orations, § 100. Rhetorical Works, 101. Philosophical Works, 102. Verse, 103. Letters, 104	
VI. BRIEF BIBLIOGRAPHY.	xciv

TEXT	PAGE
FIRST ORATION AGAINST CATILINE	3
SECOND ORATION AGAINST CATILINE	19
THIRD ORATION AGAINST CATILINE	35
FOURTH ORATION AGAINST CATILINE	51
ON POMPEY'S MILITARY COMMAND (FOR THE MANILIAN LAW)	67
FOR ARCHIAS THE POET	99
FOR MARCELLUS	115
THE FOURTH VERRINE (SELECTIONS)	129
SELECTED LETTERS, FOR SIGHT OR RAPID READING (WITH NOTES)	161
GRAMMATICAL OUTLINE	
PART I	207
Agreement, § 1. Some Uses of Pronouns, 21. Questions and Answers, 28. Negatives, 37. Conjunctions, 42. Moods, 53. Tenses, 58. Participles, 72. Gerund and Gerundive, 81. Infinitive, 88. Supine, 93	
PART II. UNITS OF THE SENTENCE	
<i>Word Groups containing the Cases</i> , § 94	226
Nominative, § 95. Accusative Word Groups, 96. Dative Word Groups, 105. Genitive Word Groups, 117. Ablative Word Groups, 134. The Locative Case, 158. The Vocative Case, 159	
<i>Dependent Clauses</i> , § 160	244
The Indirect, or Dependent, Question, § 161. The Relative Clause, 163	
Vt-Clauses, § 185. Clauses with <i>ubi</i> , <i>unde</i> , <i>quō</i> , <i>quoad</i> , <i>quō minus</i> , 204. <i>Quīn</i> -Clauses, 211. <i>Quam</i> -Clauses, 214. <i>Quamquam</i> -Clauses and <i>Quamvis</i> -Clauses, 218. <i>Cum</i> -Clauses, 220. <i>Quoniam</i> -Clauses, 231. <i>Quia</i> -Clauses and <i>Quandō</i> -Clauses, 232. <i>Quod</i> -Clauses, 233	
Dum-Clauses and <i>Dōnec</i> -Clauses, § 239. <i>Sī</i> -Clauses, Conditional, 244. Other Uses of <i>Sī</i> -Clauses, 264. Clauses with <i>etsī</i> , <i>etiam sī</i> , <i>tametsī</i> , 268. Conditional Comparisons with <i>quasi</i> , <i>tamquam sī</i> , etc., 270	
<i>Nē</i> -Clauses, § 272. <i>Modo</i> -Clauses, containing a Proviso, 276. Clauses with <i>simul ac</i> , 277. Clauses with <i>licet</i> , Concessive, 278. Substantive Clauses without Links of Connection, § 279. Subordination indicated by the Thought Alone (Parataxis), 280	

CONTENTS

xi

PAGE

Infinitive Clauses; Indirect Quotation as Object, § 281. Infinitive Clauses; Other Uses of Indirect Discourse, 296. Nominative and Infinitive, 299

The Roman Calendar, § 300 280

NOTES

ON THE FIRST ORATION AGAINST CATILINE 285

ON THE SECOND ORATION AGAINST CATILINE 309

ON THE THIRD ORATION AGAINST CATILINE 327

ON THE FOURTH ORATION AGAINST CATILINE 346

ON THE ORATION FOR THE MANILIAN LAW 362

ON THE ORATION FOR ARCHIAS THE POET 404

ON THE ORATION FOR MARCELLUS 428

ON THE FOURTH VERRINE (SELECTIONS) 442

EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION

PART I. BASED ON THE FIRST ORATION AGAINST CATILINE . . 469

PART II. BASED ON THE ORATION FOR THE MANILIAN LAW . 475

PART III. BASED ON THE ORATION FOR ARCHIAS 486

WORD LIST 493

WORD-FORMATION 523

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY I

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY FOR EXERCISES III

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

I. VIEWS

	PAGE
Atrium of Vesta, Forum, and Capitol Frontispiece	
The Forum Region (from an Aëroplane; high altitude) .	xl
The Forum from an Aëroplane over the Capitol, looking southeast	lviii
Forum, Capitol, Campus Martius, the Tiber, from an Aëro- plane, looking west	lix
The Forum and Capitol from the Tower of S. Francesca Romana	18
The Mulvian Bridge (Ponte Molle), Flaminian Way . .	34
A Roman Road with Tombs, Pompeii	160
Syracuse from the Theater	147

II. MONUMENTS

The Rostra of the Empire (Before Restoration)	21
Temple of Jupiter Stator, with Arch of Titus, Lateran Relief	2
Present Condition	lxxiii
The Site	16
Temple of Vesta, Relief at Florence	xliv
Foundation, with Columns of the Castor Temple . .	53
The Tullianum	64
Pæstum, Interior of the "Temple of Neptune"	98
Agrigentum, "Temple of Concord"	142

III. PORTRAIT SCULPTURE

Alexander, Sarcophagus from Sidon	110
Julius Cæsar, Statue in the Conservatori Museum . .	114
Cicero, Vatican Bust	lxv
Hortensius, Albani Bust	392
Pompey, Bust at Copenhagen	72
A Vestalis Maxima, Statue from the Atrium of Vesta .	50

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

xiii

IV. OTHER SCULPTURE

	PAGE
Aphrodite, Praxiteles, Vatican	155
Apollo, Myron, Louvre	141
A Canephoros, Polyclitus, Statuette from Pæstum	447
Eros, Praxiteles, Vatican	130
Herakles, Myron, British Museum	132
Victory of Brescia (bronze)	66
Wolf of the Capitol (bronze)	44

V. PAINTINGS

Medea, Fresco from Herculaneum	77
A Villa, Pompeian Fresco	166

VI. ANTIQUITIES

Altar, Museo delle Terme	61
Aquila, Standard of a Legion	13
Candelabrum, from Pompeii	137
House, Interior, Pompeii	204
Ships	
Details, Capitoline Relief	81
Warship, Relief from Præneste	108
Silverware	
Emblema, in Patera, Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale	157
Pitcher (Oenochoë), Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale	128
Scyphus, Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale	134
Scyphus, from Herculaneum	449
Waxed Tablets (Restored), Pompeii	40

VII. COINS ILLUSTRATING ANTIQUITIES, BRITISH MUSEUM

Fasces	25
Fasces	xl
Puteal, inclosing a Sacred Spot in the Forum	lx
The Rostra	367
Sella Curulis	xxxix
Ships	
Prow, with Rostrum, and a Victory	422
Warship	75

VIII. OTHER COINS, BRITISH MUSEUM	PAGE
Ahala	4
Alexander	467
Arethusa	148
Artemis (Diana)	459
Brutus (the Ides of March)	lxxxv
Cæsar, Julius	55, 126
Cæsar, Julius (Conquest of Gaul)	170, 171
Carthage	89
Ceres	455
Heraclea	102
Herakles	454
Italian Bull and Roman Wolf (Social War)	79
Marcellus	118
Mithridates	68
Mithridates (reverse of same coin)	373
Pompey, his Laurels, etc.	96
Smyrna	107
Sulla	69
Syracuse	149
Tarentum	101
Tigranes	369
Vestals, Trial of	38
Wolf of Rome	340

LIST OF MAPS

The Forum Romanum in the Time of Cicero	lxi
Latium	lxii
Italia	8
Asia Minor	68
Sicilia	130
Ægean Lands	162

INTRODUCTION

I. THE PUBLIC SPEAKER

RATORY is the art of persuasion. Whatever the subject may be, whatever the occasion, a speaker's highest aim is to make others share his convictions and feelings. No matter how important or impressive may be the facts of the case, the feelings and convictions to which they give rise in the mind of the speaker can seldom be communicated to his hearers by mere cold statements.

First of all, he must impress his audience as an honest man, deeply interested in a matter of real consequence. He must himself show sincerity of purpose and depth of feeling. He must carry hearers with him in a sympathy which springs from their hearts or minds reacting to his. And this reaction is a constant stimulus to him, so that the best results of oratory depend in no small degree upon the responsiveness of the audience. This interaction between speaker and hearer has never been better expressed than by Gladstone, who compared the influence received by the orator from his audience to a "vapour, which he pours back upon them in a flood."¹ But this "vapour" is drawn from a crowd only by the potent personality of a speaker who presents his cause in clear and forceful language, with sympathetic modulation of voice, while suitable gestures accompany him up and down the scale of emotion.

He knows, however, that he is not merely an actor, that no effectiveness of delivery will atone for lack of substance and

¹ *Studies on Homer*, Vol. III, p. 107; *Morley, Life of Gladstone*, Vol. I, p. 191.

form. He has first taken care to marshal the strongest arguments in support of his case, and to arrange them in the most logical order. His opponent's arguments he has anticipated so far as possible, and is prepared to refute them in advance. All this matter he will enliven with imagery and present with animation and ready resourcefulness, especially when it becomes necessary to stimulate flagging interest or recall distracted attention.

At one moment a speaker will strike fire with some expressive phrase, or compress a whole argument into a telling epigram, to be carried home and remembered when the rest shall have been forgotten. More frequently he will find it expedient to repeat a leading idea in several different forms, with apt illustration for each. Thus his main points are dwelt upon long enough to make a distinct impression. Further resources he has at his command in animated questions and answers, in exclamations, happy comparisons and metaphors, striking contrasts, personification, play upon words, pathos, wit, humor, irony, sarcasm, vivid description, anecdote, quotation, and all the other artifices of rhetoric. If he makes skillful use of these devices, tactfully adapting his style to the situation, the theme, and the particular context, he will hold knowing listeners as with a spell; the rest will be charmed without knowing why.

PUBLIC SPEAKING, GREEK AND ROMAN

2. Among the Greeks and Romans public speaking played a rôle which it is difficult for us to comprehend. Not only did the art of oral persuasion take the place of newspaper and printing-press: it was the highest accomplishment to which an educated citizen could aspire, the indispensable means of political advancement in the city-state. It was accounted a fine art of the very first order, universally ranked with poetry at its very best, as in the drama, and far above painting and sculpture. Occasions were not wanting when the man who could speak ex-

tempore with effectiveness was the man of the hour; but in general most careful preparation was the rule. The orator was the product of intensive professional training, as to which we have detailed information in ancient writers on rhetoric, among them Cicero, the only orator of the first rank who has ever written standard treatises on the art.¹

Sometimes an entire speech was written out in advance with the utmost care, then memorized, and finally delivered. To read such speeches to one's audience was very exceptional, though this was the habit of Augustus. Then as now the final test was the impression produced upon the hearers.

The discourse was in many cases revised and published, that it might add to the orator's fame among those who had not been present and those who were to come after. Occasionally the published speech assumed quite a different form, by the addition of further material, or by the combining of two speeches into one, as was probably the case in the Fourth Oration against Catiline. Sometimes it happened that the speech was never delivered at all but appeared first in book form, as in the Second Action against Verres.

¹Cp. Introd. § 101. Quintilian, who flourished in the second half of the first century after Christ, is our foremost authority on Roman oratory. The teachers of rhetoric generally insisted upon these five essentials of an oration: (1) that it show complete mastery of the subject in its arguments; (2) that these be clearly and skillfully arranged; (3) that they be developed in highly finished language; (4) that there be no lapses of memory, to betray lack of preparation or attention; (5) that the delivery be thoroughly suitable. These requirements correspond to the five main divisions of Roman rhetoric: (1) *inventiō*, the finding of suitable arguments; (2) *dispositiō*; (3) *ēlocutiō*, expression, style; (4) *memoria*; and (5) *actiō*, delivery. On the basis of this fivefold enumeration Cicero constructed one of his best definitions of the orator, as a man "who, no matter what the subject which is to be treated in his discourse, will speak with judgment [i.e. in the choice of his arguments], orderly arrangement, finished style, unfailing memory, and a certain dignified delivery" (*De Oratore*, I, 64: quī, quaecumque rēs inciderit quae sit dictiōne explicanda, prūdentē et compositē et ōrnatē et memoriter dīcet cum quādam actiōnis etiā dignitatē). Each item corresponds with one of the heads just named; cp. Baldwin, *Ancient Rhetoric and Poetic*, p. 42.

THE CONDENSED SPEECH

3. Later on, the same speech might appear again in brief in the text of some historian, since Greek and Roman readers of history demanded the frequent enlivening of situations by oratory. But in these condensed versions they cared little for the actual words used by the speakers on those occasions. Hence three historians of the same events would furnish three very different versions of the oration in question, each recasting in his own particular style, and avoiding the modern method of inserting sentences in the original wording. Livy, for example, no doubt produced in his lost books some very animated speeches from outlines in indirect discourse in the *Gallic War*.

But it is a significant fact that these condensed speeches in the historians of Greece and Rome were much admired, often excerpted and carefully studied by students of oratory, as furnishing models of arrangement, clearness, and point, and as worthy in other respects of comparison with complete orations of Demosthenes or Cicero. These same brief speeches in Thucydides, Sallust, Livy, or Tacitus have repeatedly served as models for orators of modern times, and so have entered into the traditions of our oratory. One of the most striking parallels is Lincoln's Gettysburg Address, which conforms very closely to that ancient type and is animated by the same grave dignity, with the same powerful handling of the inevitable word and the most telling contrast.

4. Such speeches represent a different type from the oratory of which we have been speaking. They do not allow themselves time enough to rouse the emotions of the listeners. They are not that "vapour" poured back in "flood" (§ 1). But they are drawn out of the deep wells of private meditation on the eve of some great occasion, when the inmost feelings of the heart are to be shared with others by "the gift and the glory of words"¹—

¹ Morley, *Life of Gladstone*, Vol. I, p. 191.

the few words fitly spoken, and linked together with an art which has required lifelong study, but which has in the end become second nature.¹

The late Marquis Curzon, a brilliant speaker, concluded his *Modern Parliamentary Eloquence* by quoting Lincoln's Gettysburg Address, together with a striking passage from his Second Inaugural Address, and by adding the following paragraph:

Neither of these passages was extemporaneous. Both were written in advance; one was recited and the other read. . . . They seem to me to represent better than any explanation or definition could do that which is not rhetoric nor declamation, nor even sermonising, but the purest gold of human eloquence, nay, of eloquence almost divine. Either could be delivered, if a man capable of composing and delivering them were to exist, in any assemblage, before any audience, at any time of the modern world's history, without a suggestion of artifice or incongruity, with an effect inexorably sure and eternally true. They were uttered by a man who had been a country farmer and a district lawyer before he became a statesman. But they are among the glories and the treasures of mankind. I escape the task of deciding which is the masterpiece of modern English eloquence by awarding the prize to an American.²

PUBLIC SPEAKING IN OUR OWN DAY

5. Brief speeches of this kind, no matter in what language, no matter where or when delivered, reveal no less plainly than the most elaborate effort the real orator and true eloquence. Few speakers may hope to reach these higher levels; but the educated man or woman in every walk of life is repeatedly placed in a situation where clear and forceful speaking is rightly expected,—above all, of those who would lead in matters of public interest.

¹ An admirable example is the speech of M. Viviani, formerly prime minister of France, at the tomb of Washington, April 29, 1917, with an eloquent tribute to the unknown dead of the war.

² Curzon, *Modern Parliamentary Eloquence*, p. 75.

Speaking in our day tends to become less ornate and artificial, more direct and to the mark. Yet much care is still required, and for many occasions speeches are still studiously written, critically revised, and delivered from memory, or read, as was President Wilson's practice. Others are delivered in the main from mere notes, but in certain important passages written out and committed to memory,—the method of John Bright and Gladstone.

6. Oratory is now in a transition stage; and just at this moment a new factor, hitherto undreamed-of, but of immense possibilities, brings vast enlargement to the power that may be wielded by one human voice aided by the magic of the radio. In this altered situation there are still important lessons to be learned from the ancient masters of the art, as from their modern successors. Whatever changes of manner and method may be in store for us in the future, the one absolute certainty is that the art of speaking persuasively and acceptably will always remain an asset of a value beyond estimation to everyone who fills a position of responsibility in the community. On this point one may well mark the word of the eminent statesman already quoted:

The gift of speech in political leaders has become a greater necessity—it is really a condition of existence. . . . Though oratory may be shorn of much of its ancient reverence, the power of speech is in no wise dethroned. It still sits aloft and holds the keys of fortune in its lap. It may be that "fragments of the mighty voice" less often "come rolling on the wind"; but, with a humbler and less sonorous utterance, eloquence still sways the hearts of men and opens the doors to influence and power. . . . The man who would lead the people and control the State may not perhaps succeed without character; but he will undoubtedly fail if he has not the gift of tongues. . . . Never was there a time when power of speech was more sure of its reward.¹

¹ Curzon, *Modern Parliamentary Eloquence*, pp. 21-22.

II. THE ORATOR'S MASTERY OF FORM

PERIODIC STRUCTURE

7. No speaker can afford to forget that he reaches mind and heart through the ear; or that this sensitive organ, so easily offended, may also be charmed. Pleasing sounds, combined in groups, marked by something like a rhythmical beat, furnish a kind of music which appeals in a strange way even to one who is hostile or indifferent to the speaker and his cause, or who even understands his language imperfectly. Oratory, especially that of certain peoples, is very closely related to music and poetry. Greek and Roman hearers demanded harmony and finish, and their ears were extremely sensitive.

Oratorical language tends inevitably to a certain swing, often produced deliberately by balancing one group of words over against another of about equal length. If the thought of the second group repeats that of the first in different words, the hearer will unconsciously absorb the meaning more completely, while taking satisfaction in the musical symmetry. This feature of repetition in paired members is most familiar in the Psalms and other Hebrew poetry. Even where repetition of thought is absent, the ear expects no uninterrupted stream of separate words, but the intermittent flow of clauses and phrases, each set off by a suitable pause.

8. Naturally enough many sentences require a subordinate clause; and here, in the combination of subordinate and principal, is raw material for the orator, who has only to shape them into fairly symmetrical members of about a certain length, and the thing is done. This, of course, means care in adding here and pruning there. In the former case we sometimes scent an unnecessary repetition, or we try in vain to find some real difference between two synonyms, when in reality the speaker's motive was chiefly musical,—to produce a more perfect balance or rhythm.

Longer sentences call for more than one pair of balanced members, or other more elaborate structure. There may be three such members, or four, arranged in pairs, with the shorter members first and the longer last. Another variety shows two members, followed by three. Monotony was avoided by the use of two very short word groups, each called a *comma*, to make up a large member, the *cōlon*. The entire sentence, thus composed of neatly balanced parts, often holding the central thought in partial or complete suspense until the main point is reached at the end, was named a "period" (*periodus*, or *ambitus verbōrum*). It is easy, then, to fix in mind the main features of this architecture of the sentence by simply recalling our own marks of punctuation, which owe their borrowed Greek names—"comma," "colon," "period," respectively—to their position after the shorter or longer members, or after the complete sentence.¹

The Period in English

9. Modern oratory also makes use of periods, although less than in former times. Examples of periods may readily be found in Burke or Webster, for instance; but shorter sentences closely linked by the thought are more usual, and symmetry is commonly satisfied with a smaller number of balanced members.

Older English prose, down to the age of Milton, delighted in ample periods, such as the following from his *Areopagitica* (a defense of freedom to print and publish):

For if we be sure we are in the right,
and doe not hold the truth guiltily,
which becomes not,

¹In modern textbooks of rhetoric the term "period" has been narrowed to include only such sentences as hold their syntax in suspense until the very last. In the best Latin prose many periods do indeed have that feature, in addition to the much more important elements of symmetry and rhythm. The *thought*, which must be sustained, may culminate in a subordinate clause; for suspended *syntax* was not a positive requirement. And in this respect older English followed the tradition of the classical rhetoric.

if we ourselves condemn not / our own weak and frivolous teaching,
and the people / for an untaught and irreligious gadding rout,
what can be more fair
than when a man / judicious, learned,
and of a conscience, / for aught we know,
as good as theirs / that taught us what we know,
shall not privily / from house to house,
which is more dangerous,
but openly by writing / publish to the world
what his opinion is, / what his reasons,
and wherefore that which is now thought / cannot be sound?

10. This briefer example is from Jeremy Taylor (*Holy Living*):

He, therefore, that refuses to do good
to them whom he is bound to love,
or to love that which did him good,
is unnatural and monstrous in his affections,
and thinks all the world born to minister to him
with a greediness worse than that of the sea,
which, although it receives all rivers into itself,
yet it furnishes the clouds and springs
with a return of all they need.

11. Modern punctuation often disguises the fact that two or more sentences unite to form a larger complex, resembling the classic period, as in this example of modern oratory from Gladstone, speaking at Glasgow in 1879:

Remember that the sanctity of life
in the hill villages of Afghanistan,
among the winter snows,
is as inviolable in the eye of Almighty God
as can be your own.
Remember that He who has united you
as human beings / in the same flesh and blood,
has bound you by the law of mutual love;
that that mutual love is not limited
by the shores of this island,

is not limited by the boundaries of Christian civilisation ;
that it passes over the whole surface of the earth,
and embraces the meanest / along with the greatest
in its unmeasured scope.¹

The Period in Latin

12. Side by side with these examples of modern eloquence we may place this specimen of periodic structure from Cicero's Third Oration against Catiline (the opening words) :

Rem pūblicam, Quirītēs,
vītamque omnium vestrum,
bona, fortūnās, / coniugēs liberōsque vestrōs
atque hoc domicilium clārissimī imperī,
fortūnatissimam pulcherrimamque urbem,
hodiernō diē / deōrum immortālium
summō ergā vōs amōre,
labōribus, cōnsiliīs, periculīs meis
ē flammā atque ferrō
ac paene ex faucibus fātī ēreptam
et vōbīs cōservātam ac restitūtam vidētis.

This elaborate period presented its thought to the hearer in eleven members (*cōla*, or *membra*) of varying length. It is periodic in the most modern sense of the term, as well as according to Greek and Roman definitions. At least two of the members may be subdivided into two parts (*commata*, or *incīsa*), the shorter preceding the longer. The orator first builds up a series of accusative phrases,—an impressive enumeration running through five members. Of course his hearers were not impatient to anticipate the verb which would account for this accumulation of accusative terms. Whether they were to prove to be objects of a main verb, or subjects of some infinitive, did not trouble the Roman hearer ; and that question should not embarrass us, as we pass on to other members, with ablative modifiers, presumably, of a predicate which is still held in reserve.

¹ Morley, *Life of Gladstone*, Vol. II, p. 595.

13. The one essential thing for us is to form the habit of thinking of the listener, with no book before him, and how he carried along in mind the successive elements of a thought which was in process of development, perhaps to be completed only as the last words fell from the speaker's lips. That listener's method must be ours,—grasping the meaning of each phrase and clause just where it stands, in a tentative way at first, subject to correction and clarification as the next clause and the next follow in turn. By such attention to the successive groups of words, with no thought of rearrangement in English order, one makes it possible to understand even the longest sentence by ear, without aid from the eye.¹ And until we begin to form the habit of following the thought in the Latin order through this system of members, observing how the meaning is made clearer and more impressive, there can be no real appreciation of Roman oratory.

14. Another example, from the peroration of the *pro Archia Poeta* (§ 31):

Quae cum ita sint, / petimus ā vōbīs, iūdicēs,
 sī qua nōn modo hūmāna, / vērūm etiā dīvīna
 in tantīs ingeniīs commendātiō dēbet esse,
 ut eum quī vōs, / quī vestrōs imperātōrēs,
 quī populī Rōmānī / rēs gestās semper ōrnāvit,
 quī etiā hīs recentibus nostrīs
 vestrisque domesticis periculis
 aeternum sē testimoniū laudis
 datūrum esse profitētur,
 quī est ex eō numerō / quī semper apud omnīs
 sāctī sunt habitī itaque dictī,
 sic in vestram accipiātis fidem
 ut hūmānitāte vestrā levātus
 potius quam acerbitate violātus esse videātur.

¹For method in translating Latin and for the mental processes involved, see F. G. Moore, "Haste and Waste in Translating Latin," *Educational Review*, Vol. LV, pp. 417-426; *Porta Latina* (Ginn and Company), introduction; and *Classical Investigation*, Pt. I, pp. 288 ff.

15. An exclusive use of these longer periodic sentences, with their marked rhythm (a subject to be considered in the next sections), would quickly produce insufferable monotony. Hence orators sought variety in the frequent use of shorter sentences, many of them hardly longer than the members of a period. And where the thought moves along on the level of everyday affairs, matters of business, etc., periodic sentences are usually abandoned completely. In this matter, as in every other, Cicero knew how to adapt his style to the sense, often using the simplest sentences or brief questions where flights of oratory would be out of place. It is a very common mistake to imagine that nothing is Ciceronian if sonorous periods are lacking. Whole pages of short and informal sentences may be found here and there in some of his greatest orations; and those who think he was always using the grand manner, never descending to the plane of common speech, simply do not know him.

RHYTHM¹

16. Ancient orators and their hearers were peculiarly sensitive to rhythm and to the varied effects which could be produced by adapting it to the sense or the situation. To select words having as many short syllables as possible was a method of gaining lightness and rapidity of movement. Conversely, the choice of phrases involving many long syllables insured solemnity or

¹The subject of rhythm has been zealously studied within the last twenty-five years, but such is its difficulty that scholars are still far from agreement. No attempt is here made to present the complete system of the eminent Polish authority, Zielinski, the best-known investigator in this field. His theory of *clausulae* is built upon a so-called "base,"—a cretic (— ∪ —) often, but very frequently one of numerous substitutes,—followed by two or more syllables (the "cadence" in his special, restricted use of the term). Evidence, if such were obtainable, that Cicero regarded the cretic "base" as essential in theory, would clash with the free use, in practice, of so many substitutes. One may well hesitate to adopt a "base" which has no stability of form, and prefer simply to note Cicero's fondness for the cretic (or — ∪ ∪, or ∪ ∪ —) in the penultimate or antepenultimate foot; cp. § 19, 2-3; 20, 5 (especially *a*).

stateliness. Studied combinations of longs and shorts yielded a wide range of musical effects. In these ways the orator strove to attain harmony; but he deliberately avoided the strict requirements of poetry, that he might not drift into verse. Not for him were the fetters of meter, but a conscious self-restraint within reasonable limits.¹ It was a fault if an actual verse could be detected in his prose, or a suggestion of the singsong. But the subtle element of rhythm pervades the whole sentence, the paragraph, the entire speech.

17. For Greek and Roman oratory rhythm has been studied chiefly in the more limited form of certain well-marked cadences, i.e. particular combinations of longs and shorts in closing syllables (from four to seven in number, or even more), at the end of the members (*cōla*) or of the period itself. Thus the term "rhythm," as applied to Cicero and other orators, commonly has this restricted meaning.

18. It was clear that if the closing syllables of a colon or period should take on some kind of metrical form, the hearer could never fail to observe the membering of the sentence, just as in certain kinds of meter a particular combination of long and short syllables announced the close of a verse (line) not less clearly than rime marks the end of a line in most of our poetry. Thus were evolved the so-called cadences (*numerī*, or *clausulae*), marking off the ends of members or of sentences, so that pauses required by syntax or emphasis were reënforced by this kind of audible punctuation.² These musical cadences, following the less measured movement of the preceding words, may be compared with the closing notes of a chant. In fact, the Gregorian chant was evidently developed out of the cadences of ancient oratory.

19. Naturally a considerable variety of cadence forms was needed, to avoid a monotonous singsong. The two lists which

¹ As defined by Cicero in his *de Oratore*, III, 184.

² Sometimes a cadence falls where no pause seems to be suggested by the sense, but this is uncommon.

follow show most of the forms used by Cicero. Favorite forms are marked with an asterisk.¹ It will be noted that word accent is, as a rule, carefully regarded.

SHORT FORMS

- | | | |
|--------|---|--|
| 1 (a)* | $\underline{\text{—}}\cup \underline{\text{—}}\cup$ | -um Palātī, or quemque nostrum |
| (b) | $\underline{\text{—}}\underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}}\cup$ | nōs elūdet, or interfecit |
| (c) | $\underline{\text{—}}\underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}}\cup$ | -mentī caperet |
| 2 (a)* | $\underline{\text{—}}\cup\underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}}\cup$ | tandem abūtēre, or -entiā nostrā |
| (b) | $\underline{\text{—}}\underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}}\cup$ | patrēs cōscriptī |
| (c)* | $\underline{\text{—}}\cup\underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}}\cup$ | -tāre cupientem, or poena remorātast, or the frequent esse videātur ² (9 1) |
| (d) | $\underline{\text{—}}\cup\underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}}\cup$ | -silia nōn sentīs |
| (e) | $\underline{\text{—}}\cup\underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}}\cup$ | -hil timor populī, or hostium numerus |
| (f) | $\underline{\text{—}}\cup\underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}}\cup$ | -īs aluērunt (15 23) (usually avoided as being the end of a hexameter verse) |
| 3 (a)* | $\underline{\text{—}}\cup\underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}}\cup\underline{\text{—}}$ | -tābit audācia, or atque cūstōdient |
| (b) | $\underline{\text{—}}\underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}}\cup\underline{\text{—}}$ | admīrandum diēs, or inter falcāriōs |
| 4 (a) | $\underline{\text{—}}\cup\underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}}\cup$ | amplius exspectēs |
| (b) | $\underline{\text{—}}\cup\underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}}\cup$ | esse meminērītis ³ (65 3) |
- } (both of these infrequent)

20. The above list of cadences shows those forms which contain two metrical feet. In many cases, however, other syllables, farther from the end of the member or sentence, are included in the cadence, so that three feet, or sometimes more, are to be reckoned with, as in the examples which follow.

¹ A dot beneath a vowel means that the syllable (not the vowel) is long by position, i.e. where two consonants follow, or an *x*. In prose rhythms, just as in verse, a vowel at the end of a word (or before final *m*) was clipped before a word beginning with a vowel or *h*, or allowed to coalesce with the following vowel. But if the following word was *est* or *es*, the verb lost its *e*, while the preceding vowel remained unchanged. The examples here given are from the early sections of the First Oration against Catiline, except where another reference is added.

² This particular expression occurs repeatedly, but unfriendly critics greatly exaggerated its frequency.

³ Older quantities are sometimes retained for the sake of the rhythm.

LONGER FORMS

5 (a)*	┌┐┐ ┌┐ ┌┐ ¹	<i>iam diū māchināris, or ignōrāre</i> <i>arbitrāris</i>
(b)	┌┐┐ ┌┐┐ ┌┐ ²	<i>ad salutē voluntātis</i> (60 23)
(c)	┌— ┌— ┌┐┐	<i>cōfirmādam audāciam</i>
(d)	┌┐┐ ┌┐ ┌┐┐	<i>-tōritās huius ordinis, or in vāgīnā</i> <i>reconditum</i>
(e)	┌┐┐ ┌┐ ┌┐┐	<i>significātiōnibus</i> (32 26)
(f)	┌┐┐ ┌┐┐ ┌┐┐	<i>-riculō atque insidiis fuit</i> (51 17)
(g)	┌┐┐ ┌— ┌┐ ┌┐	<i>esse possitis prōvidēbō</i> (49 21)
(h)	┌┐┐ ┌┐ ┌┐┐ ┌┐	<i>-tāte violātus esse videātur</i> (113 21)
(i)	┌┐┐ ┌┐ ┌┐┐ ┌┐┐	<i>mente, voluntāte, vōce cōsentiunt</i> (61 11)
(j)	┌┐ ┌— ┌┐┐	<i>-tae suae salvum esse velint</i> (60 31)

An important practical effect of these melodious cadences is that they mark off more distinctly the word groups. Thus, to one who reads aloud, this musical element adds a positive help in grasping the sense.

21. In late Latin prose the musical cadences ceased to be based upon the quantity of syllables and depended simply upon the word accent, which had been an important element even to Cicero. All down through the Middle Ages rhythmical prose continued to be written. In the stately liturgies of the Roman Church no small part of the sonorous quality is due to this particular element.

OTHER RHETORICAL FEATURES

22. It remains to mention briefly other noteworthy features of oratory,—the chief rhetorical figures,—as employed by Cicero and ancient speakers in general; and to add a brief summary of his achievements in oratory and as a master of finished prose (see pages xxxvi f.).

¹ I.e. 1 (a) with a cretic (┌┐┐) prefixed.

² I.e. 2 (a) lengthened in the same way.

a. Symmetry. Aside from the balance of members in the general fabric of the sentence, already considered (cp. §§ 7 ff.), symmetry was sought in many lesser details, as in paired words or phrases, or other groups arranged with an eye to equilibrium:

varia et diversa genera et bellorum et hostium (79 20)
classem magnam et ornātam, quae . . . studiō atque odiō inflam-
māta raperētur, superātam esse atque dēpressam (75 28)
quod bellum exspectātiōe eius attenuātum atque imminūtum est,
adventū sublātum ac sepultum (80 13)
in illō ipsō malō gravissimāque bellī offēnsiōe (78 7)
meīs praesidiīs, cūstōdiīs, vigiliīs (6 12)
tam taetram, tam horribilem tamque infestam (7 22)

Often a pair of synonyms, or of words nearly synonymous, is found among the closing words of a member, where the aim was evidently to combine impressiveness, through additional weight at the close, with the rhythmical effect desired:

cūstōdiīs vigiliīsque dēfendite (49 19)
cum sit cārū tum vērō dulce atque iūcundum (60 11)
egentium atque imperitōrum . . . coeptum atque temptātum (60 26)
cōfringere et labefactāre possit (63 31)
necandōs trucīdandōsque cūrāvit (69 26)
omnēs sinūs atque portūs (80 17)

b. Antithesis, or contrast. This is no mere ornament, but rather one of the most effective ways of making the meaning stand out in bold relief:

plūra bella gessit quam cēterī lēgērunt (79 11)
nōn ex proeliō nūntius sed ex sermōne rūmor (78 6)
rēs eōs iam prīdem, fidēs nūper dēficere coepit (23 28)
nōn minus nobīs iūcundī atque inlūstrēs sunt eī diēs quibus cōservā-
mur quam illī quibus nāscimur, quod salūtis certa laetitia est,
nāscendī incerta condiciō, et quod sine sēnsū nāscimur, cum
voluptāte servāmur (35 8)

c. Chiasmus. An antithesis was often made more pointed and striking by a crisscross order of words, which may be

represented by the formula $ab = ba$, resembling the four terms of a proportion in the relation of means and extremes. The figure owes its name to the crossed arms of the Greek letter X (*chi*). Sometimes it is used without reference to a contrast, merely to secure variety or a desired rhythm.

Scīpiō . . . Gracchum . . . interfēcit: Catilīnam . . . nōs cōsulēs perferēmus? (3 19)

cōsulite vōbīs . . . coniugēs . . . dēfendite (52 10)

Catilīnam vocat, attribuit nōs trucīdandōs Cethēgō (58 29)

ut terrae mōtūs relinquam, ut omittam cētera quae, etc. (44 9)

furem audāciā, scelus anhelantem (19 1)

aut ab omnibus imperātōribus ūnō annō aut omnibus annīs ab ūnō imperātōre (this form is called antimetabole) (80 24)

d. Climax. If a series of words or larger units is so arranged that each term is more impressive than the last, we have a climax ("ladder"):

abiit, excessit, evāsīt, erūpit (19 4)

nōn in campō, nōn in forō, nōn in cūrīā, nōn dēnique intrā domesticōs parietēs (19 10)

tantum bellum . . . extrēmā hieme apparāvit, ineunte vēre suscepit, mediā aestāte cōnfēcīt (82 20)

nihil agis, nihil mōliris, nihil cōgitās quod nōn ego . . . videam (6 13)

e. Anticlimax, or descending climax. Merely a sarcastic reversal of the preceding figure:

Catilīnam . . . ex urbe vel ēiēcimus vel ēmīsīmus vel īpsū ēgre-dientem verbīs prōsecūtī sumus (19 4)

f. Polysyndeton. A series of terms, whether single words or phrases, may be linked by conjunctions in each case, and this multiplication of connectives, called *polysyndeton* ("many times connected"), produces a legato effect:

Sātūrnīnī et Gracchōrum et Flaccī et superiōrum complūrium (15 15)

et mōs maiōrum et huius imperī severitās et rēs publica (20 11)

ēreptam et vōbīs cōservātam ac restitūtā (35 7)

omnia et prōvīsa et parāta et cōstitutā sunt (59 9)

g. Asyndeton. Conversely, a staccato effect is produced by the omission of connectives, and this is named *asyndeton* ("not bound together"). Thus we have many groups of two, three, or more words or phrases or clauses without conjunctions. If the series is longer than usual, a studied grouping in pairs or trios diminishes the effect of staccato and removes the impression of a mere list. The conjunctions which might have been used are either copulatives (*et, ac, or -que*) or adversatives (*sed, etc.*).

COPULATIVE ASYNDETON

senātus haec intellegit, cōsul videt (3 12)

praesidiūs, cūstōdiūs, vigiliūs (6 12)

scientiam rei mīlītāris, virtūtem, auctōritātem, fēlicitātem (79 1)

ADVERSATIVE ASYNDETON

Tongilium mihi ēdūxit . . . reliquit quōs virōs! (with chiasmus, as in the following example) (20 26)

cōsulite vōbīs . . . mihi parcere . . . dēsinite (52 10)

mortis poenam removet, cēterōrum suppliciorum omnīs acerbitātēs amplectitur (55 1)

In the case of adversative *asyndeton* the mind, dwelling on the contrasted terms (the antithesis), makes its own link of connection, and might even resent conjunctions.

h. Anaphora. Another favorite mode of connecting successive units is to repeat the same word at the beginning of each, particularly such words as *nōn, nihil, tam, tantus, quam, quantus*, demonstrative or relative pronouns, etc.:

nihilne tē nocturnum praesidium Palātī, nihil urbis vigiliae, nihil timor populi, etc. (three more terms) (3 4)

nōn feram, nōn patiar, nōn sinam (7 19)

quod . . . extulit, quod . . . ēgressus est, quod . . . extorsimus (19 15)

sic enī obstupuerant, sic terram intuebantur, sic fūrtim nōn numquam inter sēsē aspiciēbant (41 6)

multa tacui, multa pertuli, multa concessi, multa . . . sāvāvi (51 17)

testis est Italia . . . testis Sicilia . . . testis . . . testis, etc. (80 3)

Sometimes it is not exactly the same word which is repeated, but so similar a word that the same figure is to be recognized in a form less strict, to which may be given the name *quasi-anaphora*:

*saepius cum hoste cōnflīxit . . . plūra bella gessit . . . plūrīs prō-
vinciās cōnfēcīt* (79 9)

*nōn enim iam sunt mediocrēs hominum libīdinēs, nōn hūmānae et
tolerandae audāciae; nihil cōgitant nisi caedem, etc.* (23 24)

quō ūsque tandem . . . quam diū . . . quem ad fīnem (3 1)

i. Rime. Another form of repetition shows itself in the use of the same closing syllables, especially at the close of members,—in other words, in rime, called by the ancients *homoeoteleuton* ("ending similarly"). Of this device the Greeks and Romans made more use in prose than in poetry. Such rimes were often effectively used to intensify an antithesis, to emphasize parallelism, or to produce a sonorous effect in the closing words:

anhēlantem . . . mōlientem . . . minitāntem . . . ēgredientem (19 2)

marītōrum . . . ōtiōsōrum (14 4)

*compulisse . . . dēpulisse . . . cōstituisse . . . dēnūtiāvisset,
etc.* (43 17)

cēdāmus . . . lacessāmus (49 2)

*labor in negōtiīs, fortitūdō in periculīs, industria in agendō, celeritās
in cōficiendō, cōsiliū in prōvidendō* (79 29)

In general much care was taken to avoid too many riming inflections, by skillful order or by substitution of another word.

j. Alliteration and assonance. These sound effects were sparingly used by Cicero, who was careful to avoid excess—just as in other ways he practiced restraint—and was more studious to avoid a harsh sound or an uneuphonious combination than to produce a novel or striking effect:

ferrō flammāque (19 3)

ē flammā atque ferrō ac paene ex faucibus fātī ēreptam (35 6)

ut in perpetuā pāce esse possitis prōvidēbō (49 21)

ut . . . deliberātiō difficilis esset quemnam potissimum . . . praeficiendum putārētis (78 23)
ad certās rēs cōficiendās certōs hominēs dēlēctōs ac dēscriptōs habēbat (43 10)
cōflīxit . . . concertāvit . . . cōfēcit . . . concupīvērunt (79 9)

The last two are examples of assonance, since the correspondence extends to the whole syllable, not merely to the initial letter, as in alliteration.

k. Crescendo. Occasionally the successive terms are so worded that each is longer than the last, and to that extent weightier, without always producing a climax. Less frequent is a decrescendo.

virtūte, cōsiliō, prōvidentiā (3, 4, 5 syllables) (41 15)
ēgredere ex urbe, Catilīna, liberā rem pūblicam metū, in exsilium, sī hanc vōcem expectās, proficīscere (11 23)
tam ācrem, tam audācem, tam parātum, tam callidum, tam in scelere vigilantem, tam in perditīs rēbus dīligentem (43 14)
tantum bellum, tam diūturnum, tam longē lātēque dispersum (82 20)

*l. Paronomasia, or play upon words:*¹

ut . . . salutī vestrae prōvidērētis cum oculīs maleficium ipsū viderētis (36 19)
nisi . . . compulisset . . . nōn facile . . . depulisset (43 16)
singulās ūnūs cuiusque nostrum domōs et hoc ūniversum reī pūblicae domicilium (58 9)
quam sī coniūnctiōnem . . . cōfīrmātam . . . tenuerīmus, cōfīrmō vōbīs (59 29)

m. Metaphor and simile. These familiar figures of rhetoric were, of course, used by Cicero, but similes are not common. An example of simile is the comparison with a fever patient (16 14 ff.). Metaphors (implied comparisons) were much less freely used than in later or modern oratory. Many figurative expressions now trite were then new and timidly used, with

¹ Including puns, as in 143 1 ff.

an apologetic *quasi* or *quīdam*, to be discarded in translation. Highly imaginative figures were thought better suited to the poet than to the orator.

n. Miscellaneous figures:

1. *Personification*, as in *pudor pugnat* (30 23); [*patria*] *revocāre dēbuit* (39 26); *manūs tendit patria* (62 1); also in the more striking form in which the *patria*, for example, is made to speak at length, as in 10 21 ff. and 14 16 ff.

2. *Litotes*, or *understatement*, as *nōn multa* = *pauca* (9 14); *nōn dubiūs* = *certīs* (32 25).

3. *Oxymoron*, in which one uses terms at first sight contradictory, as *cum quiēscunt, probant* (12 2); *mūta revocāre dēbuit* (39 26).

4. *Hysteron proteron*, reversing the order of time, as in "bred and born": *in Āfricam redīre atque Italiā dēcēdere coāctus est* (63 5).

5. *Zeugma*, in the commonest form of which a single verb nominally does a double duty, as *esse* in 28 8; *redundāvit* in 47 8. This figure, at bottom grammatical, often produces a rhetorical effect.

6. *Praeteritio*, or the pretense of omitting something, as though the hearer would not need to be reminded of a matter so obvious, as in *nōn dīcō*, etc. (89 11 ff.).

7. *Hyperbole*, or rhetorical exaggeration, as *parietēs . . . huius cūriae tibi grātiās agere gestiunt* (118 18).

8. *Irony* implies that the opposite is really meant, as *fortēs virī* (3 15); *timidus aut etiam permodestus* (24 26).

9. *Metonymy* replaces the obvious name or noun by one which will suggest that term, as *duodecim secūrēs* = *duo prae-tōrēs* (81 7).

10. *Euphemism* substitutes harmless or colorless terms for subjects naturally repellent, as *sī quid obtigerit* (52 16).

11. *Repetition* adds emphasis, as *fuit, fuit ista . . . virtūs* (4 6); *vīvēs, et vīvēs ita ut nunc vīvis* (5 14).

12. Figures of grammar, rather than of rhetoric, are *Hendiadys*, as *vim et manūs*, "violent hands" (12 1).

Pleonasm, or unnecessary fullness, as *restat ut . . . dīcendum esse videātur* (78 20).

Anacoluthon, in which the construction unexpectedly changes in the course of the sentence, as *sī mēcum patria . . . loquātur . . .* [a speech follows, after which a new sentence begins] *Hīs . . . vōcibus pauca respondēbō* (14 14 to 15 11).

o. Summary. Cicero's oratory combined all the varied resources of an art which he had cultivated from his youth with almost incredible pains in order to reach a perfection never before attained in Latin. On the one hand, he avoided the florid, overfinished style called Asiatic, as practiced by Hortensius, and, on the other, that exaggeration of simplicity and plainness which was misnamed Attic, and which was preferred by his friend Brutus and, in general, by Cæsar.¹ Thus steering a middle course between the two extremes, avoided by his Rhodian master, he developed a style that was all his own (cp. §§ 54, 56 fin.).

Of his power to sway his audience there is abundant evidence. Much, indeed, he owed to what is lost to us,—a delivery largely molded by the fact that he was himself so readily stirred to anger, pity, and other emotions by the very words with which he sought to arouse the same feeling in his hearers. On first rising to speak he was nervous and timid, as he tells us in two of his speeches.² But he soon mastered the trepidation of the first moments, and after the manner of all great actors he lost consciousness of a part to be played, as distinct from his own highly susceptible nature. What was surely instinctive in his case he lays down in *de Oratore*³ as a guiding principle for the orator. His practical wisdom in this was later confirmed by

¹One speech in the *Gallic War*, VII, 77, shows that Cæsar occasionally wrote the same type of rhythmical prose which dominates in Cicero.

²*Pro Cluentio*, 51; *pro Rege Deiotaro*, 1.

³II, 190 f.

Quintilian.¹ The secret is the real assumption of the feeling required by the situation,—no mere acting of a part, unless our actor have the rarest degree of imagination. It was by such a combination of art and personality that ancient oratory wielded immense power, deserving the praises of the poets who spoke of her as “the universal queen who sways all hearts,”² or “the one tyrant of mankind.”³ Cicero’s own range of power was of the widest. He could touch the heart with pathos, or delight with flashes of wit; he handled irony as the keenest of weapons; he could risk a pun, usually with the transparent excuse that he was borrowing the language of others; he showed a marked appreciation of the picturesque, entertaining his audience with vivid descriptions. And seldom indeed did taste or tact or sense of proportion fail him.

For posterity there remained only the published texts (columns of writing across long rolls of papyrus paper, later parchment pages laboriously copied, finally the products of the printing-press), all of these but a phonographic record for which no one will ever invent the proper instrument of reproduction, and for the appreciation of which we have left to us but one resource,—the closest study of rhetorical and musical form, aided by such imagination as we may bring to bear. If we consider Cicero’s eloquence merely as prose, we find it the purest, most correct Latin, expressing well-digested thought and admirably ordered argument without straining after effect, direct and simple where plainness was in place, often full of feeling, rising to the heights upon occasion, pervaded by a harmony and a rhythmical music, a delicacy of shading, found in such perfection in no other Latin prose.

¹ *Summa . . . circā movendōs affectūs in hōc posita est, ut moveāmur ipsi* (VI, 2, 26; cp. 27 ff.). More tersely still in *Nōs illi sīmus, quōs*, etc. (ib. 34). For his own success due to this see ib. 36.

² Pacuvius, in *de Oratore*, II, 187.

³ Euripides, *Hecuba*, 816.

III. ROME IN THE TIME OF CICERO

23. The Roman state in Cicero's day was in form a republic, with a limited body of citizens. Even within that limited body the ruling element was a small aristocracy firmly entrenched in power in the Roman senate. There was no written constitution,—only customs and laws, some venerable, some recent, upon which the government rested as upon a foundation. The selfish aristocratic element and the moneyed class, the *equitēs*, were too strong for the equilibrium of the state, so that in actual fact the government was far from democratic. There were ambitious men, masters of intrigue ready to lead armies,—Pompey, Crassus, Cæsar,—prepared to play any rôle that self-interest might dictate in the complicated politics of the day.

Popular government in any real sense could never be achieved under that system. The successful leader of a popular movement against the selfish rule of the senate could lead the people in crushing the aristocracy, but only to erect a tyranny upon the ruins. Small indeed was the prospect of an unselfish champion, who would make the state a real republic. Party strife was almost continuous; for the old-time clash of patrician with plebeian had given way to no less bitter economic conflicts between the mass of poorer citizens and the well-to-do, headed by the *nōbilitās*,—in its wider sense an upper class of magistrates, ex-magistrates, and the sons and other descendants of those who had filled the higher (curule) offices.¹ But anything like publicly recognized party organization, as in Great Britain or the United States, was unknown.

The corner stone of the Roman official structure was the principle of divided administrative authority. Magistrates were grouped in "colleges," or boards, in which each member had equal power. A single magistrate, without a colleague, was not to be thought of, except in moments of gravest danger. Thus the fear of a king had led to the dual consulate and all the

¹ In the strict sense these sons or descendants alone were *nōbīlēs*; cp. § 41.

other "colleges,"—prætors, ædiles, tribunes, etc. No modern government illustrates this principle of entire equality, since cabinets or ministries are presided over by a superior.

These officials were collectively styled *magistrātūs*, and the same word was applied to their offices, known also as *honōrēs*. The official career of a public man was thus known as his *cursus honōrum*, and for each office a certain age was required in Cicero's time. One could not be a quæstor before entering one's thirty-first year, and the final stage of advancement, the consulship, required, as a minimum, entrance upon the forty-third year.

THE CONSULS

24. The chief magistrates were the two consuls, who were elected for one year, and who entered upon office, in the time of Cicero, on the first of January. Thus their names served in place of dates in Roman history. A candidate, besides satisfying the age requirement just mentioned, must have held the lower offices of quæstor, tribune or ædile, and prætor, except by special enactment of the people. The consuls were chosen by popular election in the assembly called *comitia centuriāta* (§ 37). They had that full authority known as *imperium*, and their powers were in all respects equal, except that, subject to certain conditions, the veto power of an objecting consul prevailed over a colleague's power to take positive action. To avoid conflict they agreed that one should take precedence for a certain period (usually a month); if in the field together, they ordinarily commanded on alternate days. It was the duty of the consul to preside over the senate, and to seek its advice and approval; also to preside over the popular assemblies (§§ 36–38). He had the power to levy and command troops, to propose bills to the assemblies, and in a great emergency to appoint a dictator (§ 30).



SELLA CURULIS

Ever since Sulla's time armies (except in Italy) were commanded, as a rule, not by consuls but by proconsuls,—that is, by ex-consuls,—ordinarily in the year after their term of office (but cp. § 90). Originally the consul had had further duties as a judge; but these had been taken over by the prætors long before Cicero's time. In religion the consuls still retained certain



FASCES

duties, as taking the auspices, offering particular sacrifices, presiding at some of the festivals, dedicating temples, and making and performing solemn vows in the name of the state. Financial responsibilities in connection with taxation and public works fell upon the consuls when there were no censors in office (§ 29). Like the other higher magistrates, the consuls had certain insignia,—

the official seat, or *sella curūlis* (a camp stool in form, but usually of ivory), the purple-bordered robe, or *toga prætexta*, and, most conspicuous of all, the twelve attendants called lictors, each bearing a bundle of rods, the outward sign of the consul's authority to inflict punishment. Outside the city these *fascēs* contained an ax (*secūris*), to indicate the power of life and death.¹

THE PRÆTORS

25. Next to the consuls stood the college of prætors, of whom the *praetor urbānus* represented the consuls in their absence and was the chief justice of the state (§ 40), while the *praetor peregrīnus* had jurisdiction in cases involving a foreigner. One of the most important duties of the *praetor urbānus* was to post his edict, in which he announced in just what way he expected to enforce the laws during his year of office. His tribunal was a simple platform in the open Forum. In the age of Cicero there

¹The ax head did not project beyond the end of the rods, as in many modern representations. More correct is that upon our dime. The coin of Furius (p. xxxix) shows the *sella curūlis* flanked by *fascēs*.



ESQUILINE

2-3 *bc*, Colosseum.

2-3 *de*, Trajan's Temple of Venus and Rome.

2 *c*, Arch of Constantine and Meta Sudans (fountain).

2 *e*, Arch of Titus and TEMPLE OF JUPITER STATOR (left of arch).

4 *a*, Hemicycle of the Baths of Trajan.

On the Capitoline are shown the sixteenth-century Palace of the Senator, of which the southeast side is the TABULARIUM (78 B.C.); parts of the two museums; and the open square of the Capitol, with the statue of Marcus Aurelius.

THE FORUM REGION

1 *g*, Library and Temple of Mars Ultor.

2 *fg*, ATRIUM VESTALIS.

2 *g*, TEMPLE OF VESTA.

2 *g*, Temple of Julius Caesar.

2 *g*, TEMPLE OF CASTOR AND POLLUX.

2 *gh*, Basilica Julia.

2 *gh*, open FORUM, with fragments of the Temple of Saturn.

2-3 *gh*, BASILICA ATRIA (now a museum, and strewn with fragments).

2 *h*, TEMPLE OF SATURN.

2 *h*, New Rostra (right of the Basilica Julia).

3 *h*, CARCER (TULLIUS COMITIUM).



N

CAPITOLINE

FROM AN AÉROPLANE)

f Augustus (?).
 place of the Vestals).
 and the REGIA.
 ar.
 and POLLUX (three columns).
 Column of Phocas (shadow).
 A (below the Forum, and
 eight columns; shadow).
 Column of Phocas).
), facing due east on the

2-3 h, Arch of Septimius Severus (BLACK STONE and OLD ROSTRA to left of arch).

2 i, TABULARIUM.

2 i, Temple of Vespasian (left of Tabularium; three columns).

2 i, TEMPLE OF CONCORD site (left of Tabularium and southwest of Carcer).

2-3 ef, Basilica of Constantine.

2-3 f, Temples of the Sacra Urbs and of Romulus, son of Maxentius.

2-3 g, Temple of Antoninus and Faustina (ten columns).

3 h, Curia Iulia (S. Adriano).

4 i, Basilica Ulpia (Trajan).

were eight prætors in all, until Cæsar raised their number to ten, and finally to sixteen. They were elected by the *comitia centuriata* (§ 37) and had the *imperium* (§ 24), but were all judges during this period, presiding over the permanent courts, each of which took cognizance of a particular kind of crime or abuse; and after their year of office they went out to govern provinces. Their robe and official seat were the same as for the consuls. Only the *prætor urbānus* had lictors, and he but two. In the provinces, however, any prætor or proprætor had six lictors. Some executive duties also fell upon the prætors, as directed by a consul or the senate.

THE TRIBUNES OF THE PEOPLE

26. The ten *tribūnī plēbis* were plebeian officials, not magistrates in the strictest sense,¹ elected by the assembly of the tribes described in § 38. The office had been established in order that the plebeians might have a protector able to resist an arbitrary magistrate, particularly in judicial matters. The powers of this college had grown with time, until a tribune's veto (*intercessiō*) became a very powerful weapon. Moreover, he could propose as well as veto legislation. By personal intervention a tribune could effectually block any measure proposed, or prevent any official from acting. The tribunes had seats in the senate, and minor administrative duties sometimes devolved upon them; but their main duty was to champion the rights of the individual citizen. Though attended by no lictors, the person of a tribune was sacrosanct, and hence an attack upon him was punishable by death without trial. His term of office began on December 10th.

THE ÆDILES

27. There were two curule ædiles, originally patrician, and two plebeian ædiles, all elected by the people in the *comitia tributa* (§ 38). They were commissioners of streets, markets,

¹ They had *potestās*, but not *imperium*.

public works, and the all-important grain supply. They divided the city into four quarters, and exercised very minor judicial functions. More conspicuous was their part in the repair of public buildings and the conduct of the great festivals, or *lūdī*, which were paid for chiefly through the lavishness of individual *ædiles* in their desire for popular support when they should next be candidates for office. Only the curule *ædiles* had the *sella curūlis* and the *toga praetexta*. No lictors were allowed to *ædiles* or any of the lesser officials.

THE QUÆSTORS

28. Twenty quæstors were elected annually by the *comitia tribūta* (§ 38) until Julius Cæsar raised the number to forty. Two of these served at Rome; the rest, in Italy and the provinces. Judicial functions had gradually been taken from them, and their duties were now connected largely with public finance. The urban quæstors received and paid out all the state moneys, subject to law or a higher magistrate, and had charge of the state treasury (*aerārium*), in the Temple of Saturn (§ 48), where they had the duty, also, of preserving state documents. Election to the quæstorship was the first important step in a public career, and raised the incumbent to the rank of a senator. The minimum age was thirty (§ 23 fin.), and the term of office began on December 5th.

THE EXTRAORDINARY OFFICIALS

Censors

29. Once in five years two censors were elected by the *comitia centuriāta*, to serve for eighteen months. They had usually been consuls already, and though without military power or lictors, this office was accounted the highest dignity in the state, with the exception of the rare dictatorship. They of course had the *sella curūlis* and wore the *toga praetexta*. It was their duty to conduct the census, assessing the property of all citizens,

and revising the lists of senators and knights by admitting new names and by expunging those of the unworthy. They were in charge of the state finances, and had in addition the general oversight of public morals, roads and bridges, aqueducts, and public buildings. Sulla had robbed the office of most of its importance, but, after an interval in which there had been no censors at all, they were now recovering some lost ground.

Dictator and Master of the Horse

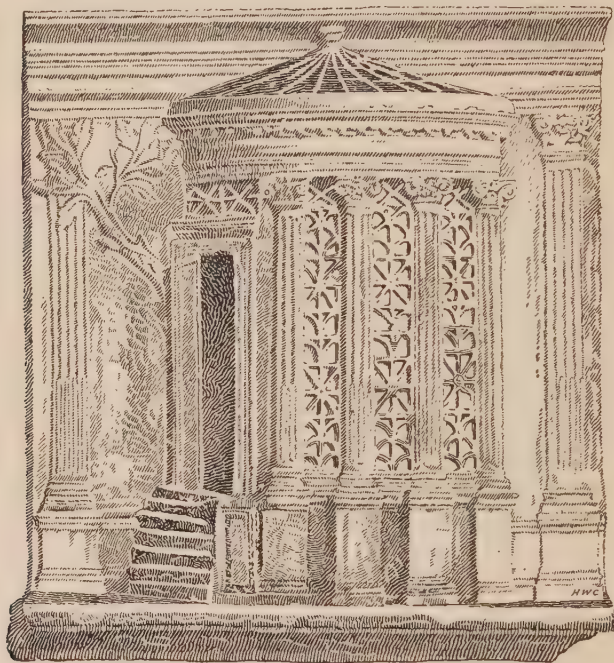
30. For an extraordinary emergency—a great war, an invasion, etc.—a dictator had formerly been appointed, usually by a consul. His authority was above that of all the other magistrates, as was outwardly announced by the fact that he was attended by twenty-four lictors. But his powers lasted for the duration of the emergency only, and were limited by custom to six months. The office had been obsolete for more than a century when it was revived by Sulla for his own purposes, with an indefinite term. Cæsar in the same way made himself dictator for life. As his second in command the dictator had a *magister equitum*, or master of the horse, who also had the *imperium*, acted as dictator in the absence of his chief, and was entitled to six lictors.

PONTIFFS, AUGURS, VESTALS

31. Of no small political importance, in spite of the fact that they were not magistrates, were the priestly colleges, or boards, of pontiffs, augurs, etc. The *pontificēs*, fifteen in number in Cicero's day, with the *pontifex maximus* at their head, had general charge of religious matters, including public and private sacrifices, burial rites, and many other ceremonies. They were not priests of any particular divinity. To them was intrusted the regulation of the erratic calendar, an important duty before its reform by Julius Cæsar (Gram. §§ 300 ff.). They had been accustomed to fill their own vacancies, but in 63 B.C. the people resumed an older right to choose between two candidates named

by the pontiffs. Julius Cæsar was pontifex maximus, and as such resided in the Domus Publica, close to the Temple of Vesta (§ 48).

Hardly less important was the college of augurs, also fifteen in number and elected in the same manner. They observed the



TEMPLE OF VESTA

flight of certain birds, the notes of certain others, and announced the omens accordingly. The official interpretation of these and other signs was in the hands of the augurs; and since favorable omens were indispensable for all important public acts, the augurs, having in their own hands the means of preventing action or requiring postponement, made themselves a power in politics by abusing their authority.

The six Vestal virgins played an important rôle in Roman religion, living together in a house which became in time a palace, close by the Temple of Vesta and under the slope of the Palatine (§48). Chosen by the pontifex maximus in childhood, they remained in the service of the goddess for thirty years, after which they might return to normal life and marry. It was their duty to keep the sacred fire in Vesta's temple burning, and to preserve the sacred relics upon which the safety of the city was supposed to depend. Failure to keep their vows was regarded as a national calamity, and punished by burying the Vestal alive.

THE SENATE

32. During the mature life of Cicero the senate consisted of about six hundred members, a figure raised by Cæsar in 45 B.C. to nine hundred. All of these had held some magistracy from the grade of quæstor up, as Sulla had made this a condition of eligibility. Other conditions were age (the thirty-first year, at least), means, and leisure, as there was no salary; and no senator could engage in any occupation beneath the dignity of his class, or otherwise unfitting him for the senate. Between the *patrēs* (patrician senators) and the *cōnscrīptī* (plebeian senators) there was a distinction, but it had no great importance. All wore a distinctive dress,—the tunic with a broad purple stripe, and also special shoes. At public performances and ceremonies they had seats of honor,—at the theater, in the orchestra.

The senate was mainly responsible for such matters as treaties, declarations of war, and the conduct of war, whereas in strict theory the authority to declare war or make a treaty belonged to the people. In the management of the public finances also the senate had a very important part, but not entire control. By this means it could exert pressure upon the magistrates. In religion too the authority of the senate was considerable, while the routine conduct of public worship was in the hands of the colleges of priests, under the pontifex maximus.

33. Meetings of the senate were usually held in the Curia Hostilia, an ancient senate-house, restored by Sulla, burned in 52 B.C., but rebuilt by his son (§ 49). Temples were also used for sessions of the senate, as that of Jupiter Stator or of Concord, not to mention the rarer use of certain halls. The doors were usually wide open, and the crowd permitted to gather at the entrance. Meetings were called to order by a consul, who presided throughout. Seldom was his place taken by a prætor or tribune. The presiding magistrate presented the business to be considered (*referre ad senātum*). This was first discussed and disposed of. Other magistrates, of the ranks just mentioned, could then bring up further questions, with approval of the chair.

34. Parliamentary rules were few and ineffectual. In fact, the absence of most of the machinery now thought necessary in such bodies is a striking feature of the Roman senate. Only when called upon (*sententiam rogātus*) by the chair could a senator speak. But he was then free to express his views on subjects not before the house. That more confusion did not result was due to the fact (without a parallel in any modern parliament) that nearly all the members had had experience in practical administration. The magistrate presiding called for expressions of opinion from some of the members in a fixed order of precedence, beginning with the consuls elect, if there were such. The senators were addressed by speakers as *patrēs cōnscriptī*, usually translated "conscript fathers," but inaccurately, since the two words refer separately to the two distinct classes in the senate (§ 32).¹

Voting was by division, the ayes taking their places at one side of the house, the noes on the other. Magistrates refrained from voting. After the close of the meeting, motions favorably acted upon were reduced to writing, unless a tribune had interposed his veto (§ 26), and were formally drafted by a com-

¹I.e. "heads of old families" and "enrolled senators."

mittee. Every such decree of the senate (*senātūs cōsultum*) was preserved in the treasury (§ 28).

35. A rare form of decree of the senate was the *senātūs cōnsultum ultimum*, by which the senate in some grave crisis established martial law and empowered the consuls to take measures necessary for the safety of the state. The senate claimed the right to take this extreme action instead of appointing a dictator, and the optimates held that this suspended the right of appeal to the people, so that a man guilty of treason could be executed, they claimed, without a trial. But in 123 B.C. a law of Gaius Gracchus (*lēs Semprōnia*) had required the consent of the people for the execution of any Roman citizen. And the popular party never admitted the right of the senate to give absolute power of life and death to the consuls. The controversy over this grave question bore bitter fruit for Cicero after the execution of the Catilinarians (§§ 87–88).

ASSEMBLIES

36. There was a popular assembly, the *comitia centuriāta*, organized upon a military basis, and another, the *comitia tribūta*, based upon the tribal organization; for every citizen belonged to one of the thirty-five tribes. No arbitrary line separated the duties and powers of these two assemblies of the people. Custom alone distinguished their mingled elective, legislative, and judicial powers, but the last of these became unimportant after the permanent courts were established by Sulla (§ 40). Unless a citizen was able to attend the meeting he had no vote, as no provision was made for voting elsewhere than at Rome. As a result the city and suburban population gained a political importance out of all proportion to its actual numbers. Thus it was unnecessary for the politician to influence public opinion at a distance. It was enough for him to gain the favor of the city populace by lavish shows and entertainments, or by other forms of corruption.

The Comitia Centuriata

37. The whole body of citizens was divided into thirty-five tribes, each divided into *seniōrēs* (from forty-six to sixty years) and *iūniōrēs* (seventeen to forty-six). Each of these two subdivisions was, in turn, classified in five *centuriae* (five classes, graded according to property). To these three hundred and fifty *centuriae* were added eighteen centuries of knights, four more special centuries, and one century of the *prōlētārii*,¹ or citizens without property, making a total of three hundred and seventy-three. Their assembly, originally military, was summoned by authority of the consul to meet in the Campus Martius. Such meetings could not be held on holidays or court days, nor if the omens were unfavorable. Due notice had to be given seventeen days in advance, with a statement of the business to come before the assembly. The purpose of the meeting might be to elect magistrates of the higher grades, or to adopt a proposed bill, or (down to Sulla's time) to consider an appeal from a death sentence. This assembly alone had the legal right to declare war. Bills usually came with the previous approval of the senate, and had been read, explained, and defended in a preliminary *cōntiō*, or "gathering." For voting the citizens then reassembled, each in his own century, to pass through the narrow gangways (*pontēs*) as they cast their ballots. One century of the first class was selected by lot to vote first, and the presiding magistrate announced (*renūntiāre*) this result before the other centuries began to vote. As soon as a majority of the centuries had been obtained for this side or that, the election, or adoption of the law proposed, was considered complete. But the magistrate could refuse to announce the result, and by reporting unfavorable omens, or by delaying matters till sunset, he could block the will of the people. The *comitia centuriata* passed very little legislation in the second and first centuries B.C.

¹ Hence our term "proletariat," for the class which has large families (*prōlēs*, "offspring") but no means.

The Comitia Tribūta

38. This was an assembly of the entire people by tribes, meeting commonly in the Forum (as earlier in the smaller Comitium), usually upon a market day, which would bring many rustics into the city, but very few citizens, relatively speaking, from a distance. Voting was conducted as in the *comitia centuriāta* (§ 37), except that the unit was the tribe. One of the tribes received the privilege of voting first; then all the others voted at the same time. A *cōntiō*, with speeches from the Rostra, preceded the assembly, which might be summoned merely to deliberate upon some public question. In this deliberative capacity, or as a court, the assembly was sometimes called *concilium plēbis*, although patricians, now negligible in numbers, were probably not excluded from participation. In its legislative and electoral functions the same assembly was described as *comitia tribūta*, "assembly by tribes." This double use of terms gave rise to the theory of Mommsen and others that there were really three distinct popular assemblies,—a complication so needless as to be credible only when established by better evidence than we now possess.

This popular assembly elected *ædiles* (curule and plebeian), *tribunes*, *quæstors*, and certain inferior or special officials. A partial assembly of seventeen tribes, chosen by lot, elected the *pontifex maximus* from the number of the pontiffs, and also other priests and the *augurs*. Most of the legislative power was wielded by the tribal assembly, though it could not declare war. Its acts, formally known as *plēbiscīta*, "decrees of the commons," had the full force of law and were often called *lēgēs*. A notable example was the *lēx Gabīnia*, which created a general command for the war against the pirates, leaving to the senate nominally the choice of the particular person to fill that revolutionary office. Another was the *lēx Mānīlia*, which added to Pompey's duties the conduct of the war against Mithridates.

SOME COMPARISONS WITH OUR GOVERNMENT

39. Constitution. As in Great Britain, so in Rome there was no written constitution, but only a body of precedents, old customs, and separate laws.

Powers of government. The founders of our government sought to correct a peculiarity of the Roman system,—the lack of a clear-cut division between the three fundamental powers which must be present in every organized state, i.e. the executive, legislative, and judicial powers. Accordingly these functions were assigned in our government originally to the President, the Congress (with its two chambers,—a Senate and a House of Representatives), and the Supreme Court respectively; and in the original intent of the Constitution each of these was to exercise that one power which was given to it, and to avoid every attempt to make use of the other powers. In actual practice, however, this idea is rapidly breaking down.

Executive. In the Roman state, in place of a single president, two consuls were the chief executive; but they had certain judicial functions also, and this was true of the prætors, ædiles, and tribunes as well. Formal approval of a law rested with the senate, not with the consuls, and it was given beforehand. The veto power belonged to the tribunes only.

Legislative. This function was divided between (1) a senate, made up of trained administrators, but not fairly representative of the people;¹ and (2) the two popular assemblies, which nominally included every citizen, but represented the people only in appearance, since distance from the city always prevented the presence of many thousands of voters. Both the senate and the popular assemblies had judicial powers also, in spite of their unwieldly size, although these powers were seldom exercised. An analogy in our case would be the House of Representatives sitting as a court when it has been proposed to impeach a president.

¹ Since a young man elected quæstor remained a senator for life.

Judicial. This power was inherent in the functions of numerous magistrates, although it centered in the *praetor urbānus* and the *praetor peregrīnus* and was shared by all three legislative bodies. There was no counterpart of the Supreme Court, with the subsidiary Federal courts, each made up of judges appointed for life by the chief executive. Even the chief justice at Rome was elected by the people for one year only, without reëlection, and the judges of the permanent courts changed from year to year.

Congress and cabinet. The Roman constitution had nothing resembling a modern congress, or parliament, in two chambers or houses; nor anything to correspond to a cabinet, which with us is purely a body chosen by the president to aid him for the term of his office in his task of administration. Nor did the Roman state have anything like a European ministry, performing duties similar to those of our cabinet, but dependent for its tenure of office upon the favor of a party or parties in the legislative body, of which the ministers are themselves members. There remained down to the time of the Empire the venerable delusion that the populace of the city of Rome and its environs was competent to serve as a legislative body in itself, and could be trusted to elect executives, judges, and legislators¹ for a state of enormous size, many of whose citizens never saw Rome; and that at times the same huge crowd could even be constituted as a court of justice.

Federation. The Roman state was not made up of a group of federated states, united to form a larger whole but each retaining its own separate government. There were, however, in the Roman world many small city-states which were allowed to preserve a portion of their old independence, while in reality they were permanently incorporated in the loose structure of the *imperium populī Rōmānī* (cp. § 44).

¹ I.e. indirectly; for a man was elected quæstor, but as such entered the senate for a life term.

THE LAW COURTS

40. The administration of justice had belonged to the various magistrates, especially the prætors, with the right of appeal to one of the popular assemblies. Sulla, however, had completely reorganized the judiciary on the basis of permanent courts (*quaestiōnēs perpetuae*), each dealing with a particular type of offense. Two such courts had been established previously, and these served Sulla as a precedent. He gave jury duty to senators exclusively; but in 70 B.C., the year in which Cicero prosecuted Verres (§§ 59 f.), a law was passed ordaining that jurors should be drawn equally from three classes,—senators, knights, and the so-called *tribūnī aerārīū*. This last class, of which very little is known, was dropped by Cæsar.

At the head of the judicial system stood the prætors (§ 25), one of whom presided over each of the permanent courts, while the *praetor urbānus* was the chief justice. He had his tribunal in the middle of the Forum for preliminary hearings and the decision of unimportant cases. The courts sat in the basilicas adjoining the Forum (§ 49).

If the jurors, who voted by casting tablets into an urn,¹ condemned the defendant, the presiding prætor, who in any case announced the result, prescribed the penalty,—a fine, exile, scourging, etc. Capital punishment had been virtually abolished by laws which permitted voluntary exile instead. From the decision of the permanent courts there seems to have been no appeal.

PARTIES

41. The original parties, patricians and plebeians, had disappeared two centuries before Cicero was born; but there was no less heated rivalry between an upper class, the *optimātēs*, and a lower, that of the *populārēs*. The core of the former

¹ See the coin illustrated on page 38, showing an urn (left) and two tablets, one marked A (*absolvō*, "I acquit"), the other C (*condemnō*). The jurors had also a third tablet, marked NL (*nōn liquet*), "it is doubtful."

party consisted of the *nōbilitās*, which included two distinct elements,—patrician families, and those of plebeian origin whose fathers or ancestors had held any of the higher (i.e. curule) offices. Thus, for example, Cicero, whose father was a knight, gained entrance to the senate by virtue of his quæstorship, but was accounted a *novus homō*, and as such was often frowned upon by the aristocrats. But the orator's son, from the mere fact that his father had held a curule office, was a *nōbilis* (not a patrician). The *novī hominēs*, however (whether magistrates or ex-magistrates), were commonly grouped with the *nōbilēs* (cp. § 23).

The *nōbilēs* often found political support among the knights also, especially among the wealthier members of that order, and likewise among men of the middle class. Taken together the party was known as the *optimātēs*, and its platform was control of the government and maintenance of its old class privileges. It was in modern terms a conservative party, lacking the organization of modern politics but firmly intrenched in power.

Large financial interests, including the farming of the public revenues and other great contracts, banking, and foreign investments, were largely in the hands of the knights,—a class to which the possession of a certain amount of property (400,000 sesterces, or about \$18,000) gave entrance. They frequently had their differences with the senatorial class, but often combined with it to carry measures of benefit to both.

42. The party of the *populārēs* contained the lower classes and all others who opposed venerable abuses of the governing classes, or in the pretense of such opposition saw the path of political success. Thus the popular party was often led by men of ability who belonged, socially speaking, to the optimates but for their own purposes had changed sides. In terms of modern politics it was a liberal or radical party, and it came into power in 70 B.C. and again in 60, with small advantage to the rank and file of the party.

CITIZENS

43. Participation in politics was impossible for those who were not citizens. Thus the *peregrīnī*, foreigners domiciled in Roman territory, had to rely upon the *praetor peregrīnus* (§ 25) for protection, or upon a treaty with their home state, or on the personal tie of *hospitium*¹ with some citizen. Slaves also, of course, had no civilian rights. The full Roman citizenship (*cīvitās Rōmāna*) was inherited by the children of citizen parents legally married.² To a foreigner it could be given only by vote of the people, or sometimes by Roman generals. In consequence of the great insurrection known as the Social War (90-88 B.C.) Roman citizenship was given by law to many Italian states. Slaves too could become citizens, if formally emancipated by their masters. An inferior kind of citizenship (*Latīnitās*) had been of importance earlier, but since the Social War it was found only in the provinces.

THE PROVINCES

44. Beyond the bounds of Italy lay the provinces, an empire of imposing size, but already thoroughly organized under the central authority. The most striking feature of this *imperium populī Rōmānī* was its extraordinary diversity, for which the British Empire alone affords a modern parallel. As each province was annexed in turn it received a kind of constitution, called *lēx prōvinciae*, drawn up by a senatorial commission. This determined, along with other important matters, the exact status of the several states (*cīvitātēs*), their rights and duties, taxation, etc. Some of the states within the limits of the prov-

¹ I.e. "guest-friendship," with mutual obligations which descended from father to son.

² In ancient communities citizens were those who from birth had been members of the particular tribe.

ince were honored by special treaties and allowed almost complete self-government. These were called *cīvitātēs foederātae*. But even without a treaty a state might receive its "freedom," and become a *cīvitās sine foedere immūnis et libera*. These privileged communities were not under the governor's control and paid no taxes. The other cities, with varying degrees of self-government, paid taxes, bore other burdens, and were directly subject to the governor of the province. These were the *stīpendiāriae*.

45. Taxes were collected by the *pūblicānī*, organized in companies (*societātēs*), to which a contract for farming particular revenues of a certain province was let by the censors for five years. The *pūblicānī* were generally Roman knights, who profited largely by their contracts with the government, and invested heavily at the same time in commercial and other enterprises in the provinces. The provincials suffered from the greed of the tax-collectors, who also lent them money at high rates of interest.

46. Each year a new governor came out to the province,—an ex-consul or ex-prætor (of the previous year, until 52 B.C.; § 90). There were, of course, some upright governors, as Cicero himself, for example, in his government of Cilicia (§ 91). But, with the rapid changes of executive, oppression and dishonesty were almost the rule; and at Rome there was no effective protest against a system which treated the provinces not as integral parts of an empire, to be consolidated and efficiently managed for the best good of the whole, but as mere sources of revenue and profit, to support Italy and enrich the rapid succession of senatorial governors. On returning from his province a dishonest governor was often brought to trial before a special court (§ 40); but since the jurors usually made common cause with the culprit, as a man either of their own class or of a class to which they were closely bound, conviction was always difficult and costly for the province.

The strongest indictment of this short-sighted and corrupt system is found in Cicero's prosecution of Verres for his outrageous misgovernment of Sicily. Even that exposure was ineffectual, however; and these deep-rooted evils, due largely to the tax-farming system, and intimately connected with party rule where one party retains an almost continuous control, were not corrected until the enlightened policy of Julius Cæsar determined the course of provincial government under the Empire.

THE POLITICAL LEADERS

47. The age of Marius and Sulla, under the dire stress of Germanic invasion and civil war, had accustomed men to the idea that at a critical moment a man of force might be granted the *imperium* (plenary power) repeatedly, for a long term, as defined by the popular assembly; and to understand the political situation in Cicero's day it is necessary to bear in mind not only the traditional machinery of state, now decidedly out of gear, but also the presence of three ambitious leaders, ready, if a favorable opportunity should offer, to destroy the old mechanism and substitute a tyranny. Pompey had won military glory on many fields—in Italy, Spain, and Africa, in the East against the pirates and Mithridates—and enjoyed the devoted support of his soldiers. Crassus, the great capitalist, had also gained distinction in the field against Spartacus, and was eager for further laurels, until his expedition against Parthia (53 B.C.) brought disaster in a battle beyond the Euphrates. Cæsar at first had no military backing; but after the three had formed a coalition, called the First Triumvirate, in 60 B.C., combining their political strength for their own ambitious purposes, Cæsar secured his coveted opportunity in Gaul, which he governed for two terms of five years each (cp. § 88).

With the death of Crassus, while Cæsar was completing the conquest of Gaul, the rivalry between Pompey and Cæsar became only the more intense, and led to actual civil war in

January, 49 B.C. (§ 92), when Cæsar left his province with his troops and marched down the length of Italy. Pompey was defeated at Pharsalus, in Thessaly, in 48 B.C., and fled to Egypt, but was murdered on landing there. His struggle against Cæsar was continued by the senatorial party, until the last opposition was crushed at Munda, in Spain, 45 B.C. But the dictator himself fell a victim to the conspiracy of the "liberators," who assassinated him in a hall connected with Pompey's theater on the fifteenth of March, 44 B.C. (§ 95).

THE POLITICAL CENTER, THE FORUM

48. The focus of political life in republican Rome was at first the Comitium, a rectangular open place at the north angle of the Forum. But this diminutive place had been outgrown long before Cicero's time, and the Forum itself was now the political center, without ceasing to be a busy market place. On the long sides of the Forum were low and lightly built shops (*tabernae veterēs* and *tabernae novae*), many of them occupied by bankers and money-changers. Much more conspicuous were the temples and the so-called basilicas, four in number. At the east end (farthest from the Capitol) stood the round Temple of Vesta, and beyond it the Regia, i.e. the office of the pontifex maximus, where one could also consult the long list of consuls, as well as that of the recorded triumphs, inscribed on the walls. Here, too, was the Domus Publica, or official residence of the pontifex maximus (§ 31), while near by, under the slope of the Palatine, lived the Vestal virgins. By the Temple of Vesta was that of Castor and Pollux. At the Capitoline (or west) end of the Forum were two temples, that of Saturn (left), used also as a treasury (§ 28), and that of Concord (right). The tiny Temple of Janus, a mere shrine of bronze, had its place on the north side of the Forum. Near it stood the speakers' platform, or Rostra, as it was called from the beaks of warships with which it was adorned. It was at that time located on the line



- 1 *CD*, Colosseum.
 1-2 *FG*, Palatine.
 1 *E*, Arch of Titus.
 1-2 *CD*, Basilica of Constantine.
 2-3 *D*, Temple of Antoninus and Faustina.
 2-3 *EF*, ATRIUM VESTAE.
 3 *D*, BASILICA AEMILIA.
 3 *EF*, TEMPLE OF CAESAR AND POLLUX.
 3 *FG*, Temple of Augustus (?).
 3-4 *CD*, Curia Iulia.
 3-4 *DE*, open FORUM.
 3-4 *EF*, Basilica Iulia.
 4 *D*, Arch of Septimius Severus.
 4-5 *DF*, Palace of the Senator (TABULARIUM).
 5 *BC*, Church of Ara-coeli.
 5 *DE*, Square of the Capitol, flanked by the two museums.

AÉROPLANE VIEW OF THE CAPITOL AND THE FORUM



- 1 *A*, Pons Cestius.
 1-2 *AC*, Island in the Tiber.
 2 *B*, Pons Fabricius.
 2 *CD*, Theater of Marcellus.
 3-4 *CE*, TABULARIUM and Palace of the Senator (tower).
 3 *E*, Conservatori Museum.
 3-4 *F*, Capitoline Museum.
 3 *G*, Church of Ara coeli.
 4 *C*, Porticus Deorum Consentium.
 4 *C*, Temple of Vespasian.
 4-5 *D*, Site of the TEMPLE OF CONCORD.
 5 *D*, CARCER (TULLIANUM).
 4-5 *BC*, TEMPLE OF SATURN.
 5 *AB*, Basilica Iulia.
 5 *B*, Column of Phocas.
 5 *BC*, Rostra (of the Empire).
 5 *CD*, Arch of Septimius Severus.

AÉROPLANE VIEW OF THE FORUM, CAPITOL, AND CAMPUS MARTIUS

which separated the Comitium from the Forum. From this platform Cicero delivered not a few of his best-known speeches, as that on the Manilian Law, and the Second and Third Orations against Catiline. The scene of the First Oration against Catiline, the Temple of Jupiter Stator, was beyond the Forum to the southeast, at the foot of the Palatine, near the site of the later Arch of Titus (see page 16). In the middle of the Forum¹ stood the tribunal of the prætor.

49. For the convenience of the law courts, and for other business as well, there were several basilicas,—broad halls, affording shelter in their naves and aisles. Two of these, Basilica Opimia and Basilica Porcia, were near the Temple of Concord and the Comitium (see map, p. lxi). A third, the Sempronia, stood west of the Temple of Castor and Pollux; a fourth, the Fulvia Æmilia, was on the opposite side of the Forum, facing the same temple.



PUTEAL LIBONIS

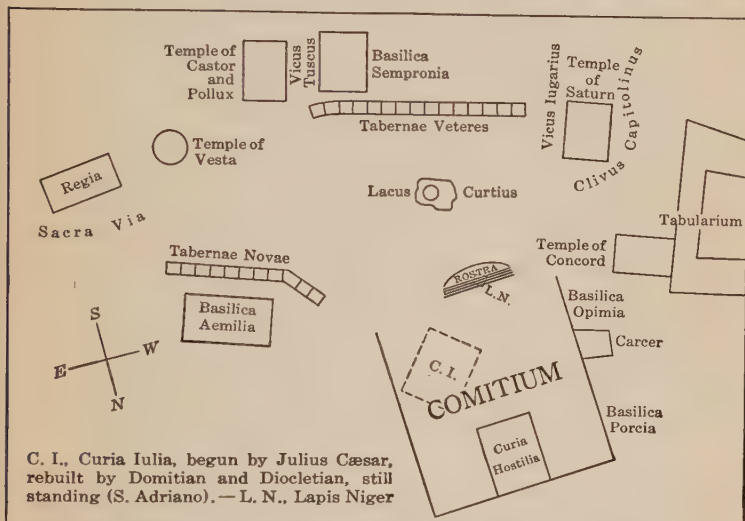
The Senate-house, or Curia Hostilia, was reached from the north angle of the Forum by passing across the Comitium. On the left side of the latter, at the foot of the Capitol, was the Carcer, the very small prison in which were detained prisoners awaiting execution. In the lower dungeon,² called *Tulliānum*, the Catilinarian conspirators were strangled.

50. But in addition to these buildings around the Forum and the Comitium there was a background of others, on higher levels. More imposing than any of the structures just named was the Tabularium, or Record Office, on the steep slope of the Capitoline Hill, partly behind and above the temples of Con-

¹ Or nearer the east end, by the Puteal Libonis, which marked a spot struck by lightning.

² This dungeon, grimly described by Sallust, *Cat.* 55, 3-4, may still be visited. Tradition makes it the prison of St. Peter and St. Paul. A description, by Professor Tenney Frank, appeared in the *Classical Journal*, Vol. XIX (1924), pp. 495-498.

cord and Saturn. It still stands, and shelters certain municipal offices of the Rome of today. To the left of the Tabularium the stroller in the Forum had a distant view of the Capitoline temple, rising on the western crest of the hill. To the right, on the Arx, above the Curia, rose another temple, that of Juno Moneta, which served as the mint,¹ on the eastern summit of



THE FORUM ROMANUM IN THE TIME OF CICERO

the Capitoline. Looking in the opposite direction, down the length of the Forum, one saw on the right, over the Castor temple, the nearest (north) angle of the Palatine Hill, at that time occupied by a few venerable temples and by private houses, one of which Cicero bought in the year 62 B. C. (§ 86).

Thus the Forum was in every sense the focus of Roman public life, gathering about it nearly all the most sacred associations of the national history, so that a speaker on the Rostra, with a wave of the hand, could conjure up many glorious memories.

¹From *monēta* we have our words "money," "monetary," and "mint."

IV. THE LIFE OF CICERO

ARPINUM

51. Marcus Tullius Cicero was born some sixty miles south-east of Rome, near Arpinum, an old town of the Volscians, perched on a commanding height above the fertile valley of the Liris, in a region noted for its healthfulness, its cool mountain streams, and its remarkable cascades. One of these streams, the Fibrenus, empties into the Liris about five miles from Arpinum, and at this picturesque confluence the family of Cicero had their country home. A simple farmhouse in the grandfather's time, it had been rebuilt as a comfortable villa by the father. Here the orator was born, on the third of January, 106 B.C.¹

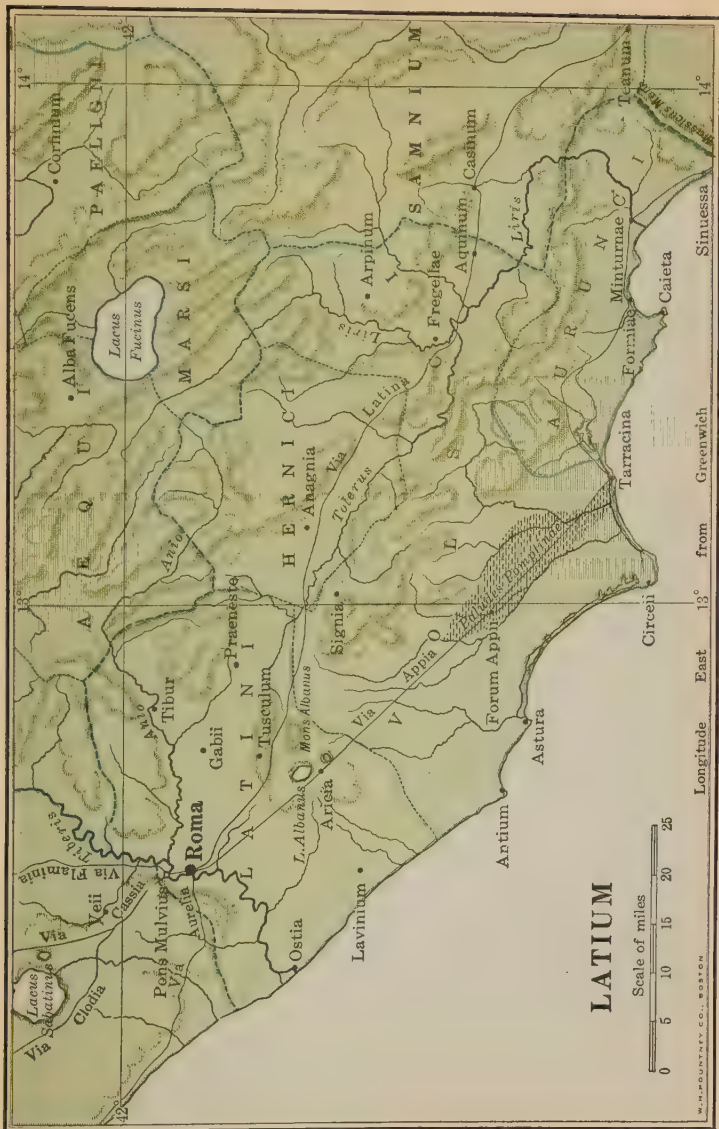
52. His father was a Roman knight of excellent reputation and educated tastes, living among his books on the estate near Arpinum. Helvia, the mother of Cicero, was of a plebeian family which had risen to the *nōbilitās* (§ 41); but as he never mentions her, we know of her only through a casual reference in a letter of his brother, who speaks of her as a careful manager of her household.² The family interests were by no means confined to little Arpinum; for Marius, who had saved Italy from the German invaders, and headed the popular party in civil wars, was their fellow townsman, and by virtue of an adoption was reckoned as a kinsman.

ROME—STUDIES AND TRAINING

53. Family and local pride in the achievements of Marius stimulated the father's ambitions for his two sons, Marcus and Quintus, whose schooling, if they were to rise in the world, must not be limited to local training. Thus the education of the boys

¹ A recent description of Cicero's birthplace, by H. J. Leon, may be found in the *Classical Journal*, Vol. XIX (1924), pp. 291-296. A full discussion of the site, by Professor G. A. Harrer, appeared in *Studies in Philology* (University of North Carolina), Vol. XXI (1924), pp. 541-570.

² Cp. the letter of Quintus Cicero on page 205.



brought the family to Rome, where they lived quietly in their own house on the Carinæ, the nearest slope of the Esquiline to the Forum. Through the kind offices of relatives the two most eminent orators of the day, M. Antonius and L. Crassus, were led to take an interest in the education of the young Ciceros. Greek teachers of rhetoric were recommended by Crassus, and constant practice in declaiming in Greek was a large part of their training. But they had many opportunities to hear Crassus himself speak in public, as also the other orators of the time.

54. Cicero's love of literature and his predilection for writing verse were stimulated by the Greek poet Archias, who had come to Rome while the orator was a child at Arpinum. Having completed his sixteenth year he put on the *toga virilis*, and began regularly to attend trials and to hear speeches in the Forum. Under the guidance of Q. Mucius Scævola, the aged augur, he began his legal studies. In the very next year the Social War brought an interruption of study by a term of service as a recruit in the army of the consul Gnæus Pompey, the father of the great Pompey. Further studies in the law followed, however, under another Scævola (the pontifex), and in philosophy and rhetoric under several Greek teachers. Even earlier he had heard the Epicurean Phædrus, and now he became a pupil of Philo, who was head of the Academy at Athens, but was then in Rome, while the troops of Mithridates occupied Attica. A new master in oratory was the Rhodian Molo; and Cicero himself began to write on rhetoric. Outwardly these were troublous times, with much bloodshed, after Marius returned from exile (87 B.C.); while the return of Sulla (83 B.C.) brought on another civil war, with the horrors of a proscription. During this reign of terror Cicero was absorbed in his studies, including rhetorical practice in Latin and, more frequently, in Greek. A Stoic philosopher, Diodotus, was living in Cicero's house as his constant companion and teacher, especially in logic and mathematics.

THE THRESHOLD OF A CAREER—TRAVEL

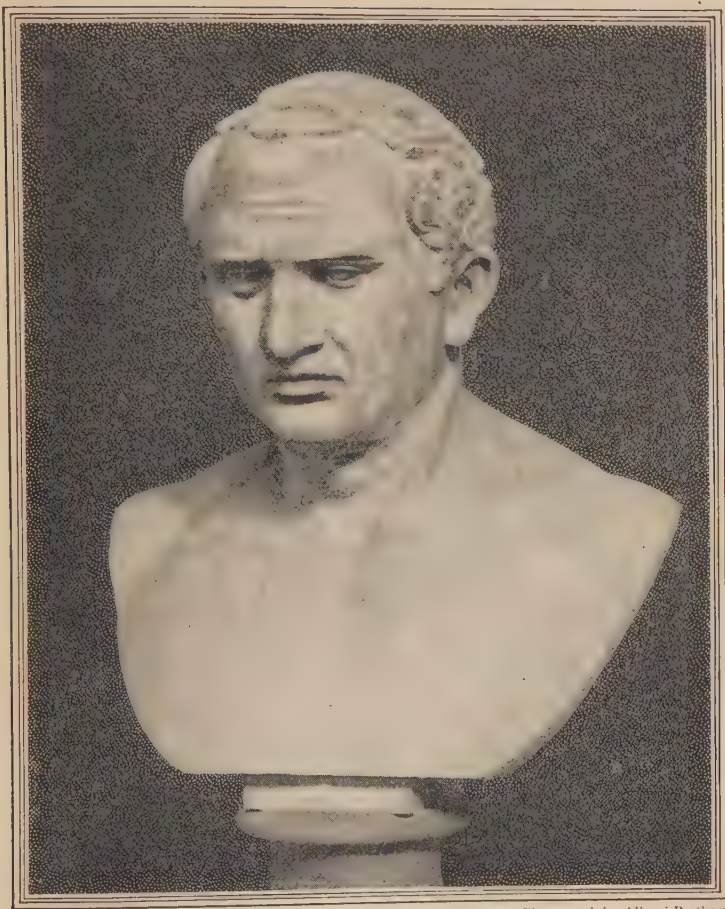
55. In 81 B.C. Cicero began legal practice, but at the same time kept up his studies with Molo, who was again in Rome. His first criminal case was the defense of Roscius of Ameria, accused by a powerful favorite of Sulla of murdering his own father, but acquitted. This first success of the young lawyer belongs to the year 80 B.C. Two years at the bar were enough to establish his reputation, but his voice and general health needed careful attention, and this led to his temporary retirement for further study and travel.

56. Of these two travel years six months were spent in Athens, in hearing the philosophical lectures of Antiochus, Phædrus, and Zeno. But training in oratory was diligently pursued under Demetrius. At Athens he was much in the company of his old schoolmate Titus Pomponius Atticus, to whom in later years he wrote so many letters. With him in Athens were also his brother Quintus and a cousin.

Leaving Greece, probably accompanied by Atticus or Quintus, or both, he traveled extensively in western Asia Minor, following the beaten track of Roman tourists, meeting many noted teachers of oratory, and hearing their florid speeches; for that was the type then in vogue in Asia. At Rhodes he heard once more the more moderate oratory of Molo, and the lectures of a famous Stoic philosopher, Posidonius.

MARRIAGE; QUÆSTORSHIP IN SICILY

57. As a result of these two years he returned to Rome in 77 B.C. greatly strengthened in health and voice, and with a more mature mastery of public speaking. His great rival in the courts was Hortensius, the leading orator of the day. About this time we are probably to place Cicero's marriage to Terentia. In 76 B.C. he was elected quæstor for the following year, and thus became a member of the senate (§ 28).



Photograph by Alinari Brothers

CICERO (VATICAN BUST)

58. In the capacity of quæstor he went to the province of Sicily; and as this province by exception had two quæstors, he was assigned to the western end of the island, with headquarters at Lilybæum.¹ His administration of the office of quæstor was highly praised, and might have brought him an election to the tribuneship, had he chosen to compete. It was the period of Spartacus and Sertorius, the former ravaging Italy at the head of his army of gladiators and fugitive slaves, while the latter, supported by many former partisans of Marius, held out against all comers in Spain. Meanwhile Lucullus was in pursuit of Mithridates, the king of Pontus. At last, in 71 B.C., Crassus defeated Spartacus; and Pompey, having brought the Sertorian war to an end, returned in triumph at the end of the year.

THE PROSECUTION OF VERRES

59. The consulship of Pompey and Crassus (70 B.C., the birth-year of Virgil) was a turning-point in the career of Cicero. Senatorial government was shaken by the power of two such leaders—Pompey, a favorite with the people and the idol of the army, and Crassus, at the head of the capitalists, who were mainly knights. It was thus possible, in the face of opposition from the senate, to restore the powers of which Sulla had deprived the tribunes and to give the knights their old share in jury duty. But before the latter reform was carried out, the celebrated case of Verres, the infamous governor of Sicily, came to trial before a jury composed exclusively of senators. By the aid of bribery and the sympathy of his own class, many of them tainted with like corruption in the provinces, or ready to defend a system profitable to the party, Verres could hope that he too would be acquitted.

60. Cicero's honest quæstorship in Sicily and rising reputation at the bar led to his retention by the province as the prose-

¹ This was two years before the notorious Verres came out as governor of Sicily.

cutor of Verres. A preliminary hearing effectually disposed of a rival prosecutor, Cæcilius, who was in collusion with Verres. Cicero then traveled from end to end of Sicily, collecting evidence while on a tour of fifty days. The trial itself was staged in August, and lasted only nine days. For, as he had to face Hortensius, the best-known orator of the time, Cicero adopted entirely novel tactics, speaking very briefly and then presenting his mass of evidence. This was so damaging in character and overwhelming in amount that Hortensius, instead of venturing to make any reply, advised his client to go into voluntary exile. Heavy damages were awarded to the province, but Verres was safe in permanent banishment and had managed to retain no small part of his artistic plunder. It remained for Cicero to publish the facts, bringing the material in hand into telling shape in the form of seven orations, one delivered at the preliminary hearing, one at the trial itself, and five (or one oration in five parts) which, although never delivered at all, he had written out in finished style, as though they had actually been heard at a final trial. One of these (Book IV) is entirely devoted to Verres' scandalous methods as an art collector.

ÆDILE—POMPEY AND THE PIRATES

61. In his successful prosecution of Verres, Cicero had won a great victory over the intrenched forces of senatorial misrule in the provinces, and had placed himself definitely on the side of Pompey, the popular leader. In this same year he was elected curule ædile (§ 27) for the year 69 B.C., when Hortensius was consul. As ædile he was bound by custom to provide public entertainments at certain festivals. Extravagance in the hope of winning support in future elections was the rule. Cicero, however, kept within the bounds of reasonable expenditure. Meantime he was busy at the bar as well, defending among others Fonteius, who appears to have ruled Gallia Narbonensis more or less after the manner of Verres.

62. Near the end of the year 68 B.C. the long series of letters to his most intimate friend, Atticus, begins; and about the same time his father died. In the following year the ravages of pirates in the Mediterranean had become so serious that an extraordinary single command against them was conferred upon Pompey under a law of the tribune Gabinius (§ 38). Within a few months Pompey had swept the sea of pirates, thus permitting commerce with the East and the all-important grain trade to be resumed. In this year Cicero was unanimously elected prætor (§ 25).

PRÆTOR; MANILIAN LAW; CATILINE

63. The prætorship he held in 66 B.C., with the duty of presiding over the particular court before which he had prosecuted Verres four years before. The brilliant success of the campaign against the pirates had greatly strengthened Pompey's position as a popular leader. And as Lucullus had not yet concluded the war with Mithridates, while meantime the new general, Glabrio, Lucullus' nominal successor, was accomplishing nothing, it was now proposed to give full authority to Pompey as commander in chief against the king of Pontus. A bill to this end was brought forward by the tribune Gaius Manilius on the first of January (§ 38). Cicero in his first political speech so effectively supported this proposal to create a new command that the opposition, including his old rival, Hortensius, was powerless. This brought Cicero again into direct conflict with the senatorial party, which had good reason to dread the concentration of so much power in the hands of Pompey, since he might be disposed to turn dictator, after the pattern of Sulla. Cicero seems to have thought the possible evils, apparent as they were, no worse than the present misgovernment by a degenerate senate. In the general corruption, the widespread poverty and discontent, the growing strength of army and mob, he must have had some forebodings of a possible revolution. The fer-

ment which was to produce the conspiracy of Catiline was already working. But Catiline was not the real leader in this first movement (66 B.C.), commonly called the first conspiracy of Catiline. The actual principals were Cæsar and Crassus, whose aim was to check Pompey's dangerous power and then to secure their own supremacy.

64. For the year 65 B.C. P. Autronius Pætus and P. Cornelius Sulla were elected consuls, but were accused of bribery and forthwith condemned. Their accusers, L. Aurelius Cotta and L. Manlius Torquatus, were accordingly elected in their places. Autronius at once became an adherent of Catiline and an avowed enemy of Cicero, while Sulla also joined Catiline, who planned to murder the new consuls and others on the first of January on the Capitol. Foiled in this, the conspirators failed again in a more desperate attempt on the fifth of February at the Senate-house. It was in this year, 65 B.C., that Cicero's only son, Marcus, was born.

CANVASS FOR THE CONSULSHIP ; AGRARIAN BILL

65. Unlike most ex-prætors Cicero did not go out after his term of office to govern a province. Looking forward to candidacy for the consulship of 63 B.C. (the earliest for which he would be eligible on account of age ; cp. § 23 fin.), he laid all his plans with great care, because of the opposition of the senators to any *novus homō*, and to himself in particular, as the supporter of Pompey. The latter was in the East, and not disposed to give any real help to Cicero in the canvass. The two candidates who seemed to command the largest support of the people were Catiline and Gaius Antonius,¹ who combined in the hope of defeating Cicero, with the aid of Crassus and Cæsar and by extensive bribery. A few days before the election Cicero made a vigorous attack in the senate upon Catiline and Antonius,—

¹ An uncle of M. Antonius, the triumvir.

the lost oration *in Toga Candida*.¹ Reluctantly the senators decided to back the *novus homō*, who was elected by a large majority, while Antonius defeated Catiline by a narrow margin.

66. Just before the end of the year a new maneuver of the democratic leaders in their own interest took the form of a land bill. It was proposed to establish a commission of ten members, for five years, with very large powers and with the duty of selling or dividing public lands in the provinces, as well as in Italy, in order to provide farms for the needy. Colonies were to be founded at the discretion of the commissioners. Against these proposals Cicero delivered four orations (the first of them on the day of his inauguration), and the veto of a tribune prevented the bill from becoming a law. Though Cicero was opposing a popular measure, it was a triumph for him.

THE CONSULSHIP

67. Among other speeches delivered by Cicero as consul was that in defense of an aged knight, Rabirius, against whom Cæsar had induced a tribune, Labienus,² to bring a charge of treason, alleging that forty years earlier Rabirius had caused the death of the turbulent tribune Saturninus after the senate had proclaimed martial law and had called good citizens to arms, thus suspending, as the senators claimed, the right of appeal to the decision of the people in capital cases. It was really an attack upon the constitutionality of the so-called *senātūs cōsultum ultimum* (§ 35), which was to be resorted to again in this same year as a measure against Catiline and his associates. Rabirius was defended by Hortensius also, and was acquitted. Another act of Cicero's administration was the passage of a new law (*lĕx Tullia dē ambitū*) against bribery and other corrupt practices in elections. A few months later he was to defend Murena, accused under the new law (§ 73).

¹So called from the freshly whitened garb of the candidate.

²Later his most trusted officer in Gaul.

In this year of Cicero's consulship occurred the death by suicide of Mithridates, Rome's greatest enemy at this period; also the birth of Cæsar's grand-nephew Octavian, the future emperor Augustus. The same year saw the belated triumph of Lucullus for his victories over Mithridates and Tigranes. Pompey, after conquering Judea, entered the Temple at Jerusalem.

THE CONSPIRACY

68. Another memorable event of this year was the conspiracy of Catiline, again a candidate for the consulship, and the self-constituted champion of all the oppressed. So unscrupulous was he in his methods of canvassing that he was threatened with prosecution by Cato. Catiline insolently retorted—it was in the senate—that if any fire were kindled against himself, he would extinguish it, not with water, but by pulling down the house,—his figure for a revolution. The elections appear to have been more than once postponed. It was nearing the end of September, probably, when on Cicero's motion the elections were once more postponed for a day, that the senate might consider the situation. At the next day's session Catiline was invited to clear himself, but he boldly revealed his attitude, contrasting the weak (senatorial) party and its feeble head with the strong party which he was ready to lead. The senate took action—just what is not known, but with such mildness that Catiline in his own estimation scored a victory.

69. When the elections followed, a little later, armed partisans of Catiline appeared in the Campus Martius, so that the consul was forced to surround himself with a bodyguard and wore armor himself, that the people might be duly impressed by his danger and rally to his aid, if need arose. The result was that fear of Catiline threw many votes suddenly to Murena, who was elected with Silanus.

70. Frustrated a second time in his attempt to win the consulship, Catiline now showed that he had been preparing for

civil war if defeated at the polls. But Cicero kept himself informed of the revolutionary plans; and on October 21 he announced in the senate that Manlius, Catiline's lieutenant at Fæsulæ in Etruria, was to take up arms six days later; also that a massacre of the optimates was planned for the twenty-eighth. It was on the twenty-second, probably, that the senate in alarm passed the *senātūs cōsultum ultimum* (§ 67), thus proclaiming martial law. Military and other preparations were at once begun. Catiline was accused under the *lĕx Plautia* of having resorted to force. With an air of injured innocence he gave himself up, and begged several prominent men in succession, including Cicero, to take him into custody. Such polite arrest did not prevent him from coming into the senate, or attending the meetings of his followers,—as that at the house of Læca, on the evening of the sixth of November, when plans were finally settled, involving his own prompt departure from the city. One of his first objects was to dispose of Cicero. Two knights¹ at once promised to kill the consul in his bed before daybreak the next morning. But Cicero was promptly informed of the plan, and had time not only to post a stronger guard about his house but also to predict to a number of prominent men just who would come to his door on that errand of bloodshed.

CIRCUMSTANCES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND ORATIONS AGAINST CATILINE

71. Arriving with the earliest morning callers (November 7), the would-be assassins were refused admittance.² Of Cicero's further measures on that day we are not informed. Knowing

¹ Cicero names one of them as (C.) Cornelius (*pro Sulla*, 52, the passage which fixes the date of the meeting at Læca's). Sallust links a senator, L. Vargunteius, with Cornelius (*Cat.* 28, 1).

² That the attempt upon the life of the consul was for some reason postponed to the morning of the eighth, was argued by Mommsen, Nutting, and others from the words of 24 28 f. (spoken to an audience presumably well

that Catiline's departure had been fixed in the meeting at Læca's for the following night (the seventh), he seems to have awaited developments. As a matter of fact, Catiline again changed his plans. On the morning of the eighth¹ the consul sent out a summons to the senators to meet, not as usual in the



TEMPLE OF JUPITER STATOR (RIGHT)

Curia, but for reasons of safety in the Temple of Jupiter Stator, close to the Palatine Hill, and now further defended by an armed guard of knights. In daring to appear at this session of the senate Catiline showed only his customary effrontery. But matters had now gone too far. As he came in, seats were at

informed about the principal facts): "hesternō diē, cum domī meae paene interfectus essem, senātum in aedem Iovis Statōris convocāvī," etc. But the *cum*-clause ("having barely escaped assassination," etc.) does not require us to assume the same date for its verb as for *convocāvī*. From the more detailed accounts of 75 ff. and *pro Sulla*, 52 fin., no reader would ever think of the possibility of an interval of more than a day before the assassins attempted to redeem their promise to Catiline.

¹See note, p. xcvi.

once vacated; and when he ventured to speak, he was shouted down. Cicero then delivered the speech later published as the First Oration against Catiline, attacking him with vigorous invective, declaring that every secret of the conspiracy was known already and urging him to leave the city. Catiline tried to reply, with a scornful comparison of himself, the patrician, with the upstart Cicero,—a mere outsider claiming to be the savior of the state. But abuse was drowned in the shouts of "Enemy!" and "Traitor!" as he rushed out of the temple. Cicero did not venture to order his arrest, as Catiline was known to have powerful supporters in the popular party, especially Cæsar; and, legally speaking, he was already under nominal arrest. The same night he left the city, attended by a small escort only. The first report, circulated by his followers and supported by his letters, was that he was going into exile at Massilia (Marseilles). In reality he was bound for the camp of Manlius at Fæsulæ (Fiesole).

72. On the next day (the ninth of November), while the senate was being summoned, Cicero addressed the people from the Rostra. In this Second Oration against Catiline he explains the whole situation, stills the fears of the populace, justifies his own conduct in allowing Catiline to depart unmolested, and gives a résumé of the different elements composing the motley party of revolution. A few days later came the news that Catiline had unlawfully assumed the fasces of a legitimate magistrate, and would soon join Manlius in Etruria.

THE CASE OF MURENA; PRECAUTIONS

73. Later in the month of November one of the new consuls elect, Murena, was accused by Servius Sulpicius, one of the defeated candidates and the most distinguished jurist of the day, of violating the most recent law against bribery, Cicero's own *læx Tullia* (§ 67). The accusation was further supported by Cato and others. For the defense were Hortensius, Crassus,

and Cicero, who found himself in the awkward situation of a man who has secured the passage of a law and then is called upon to defend one of the very first offenders. Grave political questions were at stake, however, and the condemnation of Murena would have made a new election necessary, under circumstances most favorable to the worst elements. Certainly the upright and able Sulpicius could not have been elected. The oration in Murena's defense (*pro Murena*) is of great importance for the history of the conspiracy.

74. In the interval since Catiline's departure from Rome Cicero had taken many precautions to insure the safety of the city, menaced by the presence of so many of the conspirators and their secret sympathizers. Owing to the absence of a regular police force the consul had been obliged to avail himself of volunteers from the upper classes, including his friend Atticus, who with other knights formed a bodyguard. He had an armed force of Sabines, and, of course, spies and informants. Among his zealous defenders was Clodius, later destined to become his bitterest enemy. The plans of the conspirators were to be brought to a focus on the seventeenth of December, the festival of the Saturnalia. This was the date set for a bloody coup d'état.

THE ALLOBROGES—THE MULVIAN BRIDGE

75. Lentulus, who had been left as leader in Rome by Catiline, being a prætor at the time and an ex-consul, advised delay, while Cethegus, another patrician leader, was eager for immediate action. Among his other slow-moving preparations, Lentulus made use of one Umbrenus, a former merchant in Gaul, to tamper with two ambassadors of the Allobroges, a powerful Gallic tribe between the Rhone and Isère rivers and the Lake of Geneva. Though conquered by Fabius Maximus as long ago as 121 B.C., they were still restless, and now financially ruined by Roman governors and money-lenders. In such distress they had sent *lēgātī* to the senate, praying for relief. Lentulus thought

he saw an opportunity of stirring up an insurrection beyond the Alps, and of securing Gallic cavalry for the army of Catiline. The secrets of the conspirators were now revealed to these representatives of the Allobroges, but they decided to remain loyal, and made the whole matter known to the patron of their state, Fabius Sanga, who in turn informed Cicero. They were encouraged to continue their relations with the conspirators, in the hope of securing documentary evidence so greatly desired by the authorities.

76. Accordingly they received from Lentulus and others an oath and a letter, both under seal, to be delivered to their people. They were to be attended on their return journey by T. Volturcius, bearer of a letter in guarded language to Catiline. Cicero arranged that the returning Gauls and their numerous attendants should be intercepted as they crossed the Tiber by night, two miles north of the city. There, at the Pons Mulvius (Ponte Molle),¹ where the Flaminian Way crossed the river, they were set upon by armed men under the command of two prætors. This was after three o'clock in the morning of the third of December.

77. Thus the incriminating evidence was secured, and the letters were produced in the senate with the seals still unbroken. Volturcius and the Gauls, then Cethegus with Lentulus and others, were brought before the senate and questioned. After the reading of the letters, formulation of the evidence, and cross-questioning, the senate voted that Lentulus should abdicate his prætorship and be put in custody; that the eight other conspirators should be at once imprisoned, or as fast as they could be arrested. Volturcius was excepted, as a reward for his services as a witness for the state. A feast of thanksgiving, to last several days, was decreed in Cicero's honor,—the first time a civilian had received this reward of military achievement.

¹ See page 34. The four central spans are ancient, and two of these (the nearest) date from 110 B.C.

THE THIRD ORATION

78. Late in the afternoon (the third of December) Cicero addressed the people from the Rostra, delivering the Third Oration against Catiline, in which he gave a full account of the scene at the Mulvian Bridge, and of the hearing in the senate, with the results of its protracted deliberations. The common people, alarmed at last by unquestionable evidence of the plot to burn the city, forgot all their sympathy with Catiline, their hopes of the abolition of debts and of better times after the revolution, and hailed Cicero as their deliverer.

79. The next day was spent partly in hearing more informers, who confirmed the previous testimony, but endeavored also to let it appear that Crassus or Cæsar was behind the conspiracy. Against the former the senate refused to believe anything, while Cicero declined to allow the latter's name to be dragged in. Other proceedings of the fourth were the voting of rewards to the Allobroges and to Volturcius, and precautions to prevent a threatened rescue of the Catilinarians now in custody. The danger of violence was very real and nerved the majority of the senate for stern measures.

AN EVENTFUL SESSION—THE FOURTH ORATION

80. On the fifth of December the senate met in the Temple of Concord, to decide the fate of Lentulus and the four other conspirators then under arrest. The approaches of the temple were well guarded. Constitutionally speaking, the senate was not a court competent to decide without appeal to the people. But the *senātus cōsultum ultimum* (§ 70) had established martial law, and the party in power not unreasonably claimed that that decree gave the consuls the fullest authority to meet the emergency. Even Cæsar, who in the case of Rabirius (§ 67) had tried to show that appeal to the people was not suspended by martial law, made no protest against consideration of the cases,

and was ready to propose a measure for which the constitution gave the senate no authority. An added interest is given to this eventful session of the senate by the fact that no other meeting of any ancient body has been so fully reported by so many different authorities.¹

81. Cicero as presiding officer opened the session, announcing and explaining the business before the senate (i.e. his *relātiō*, § 33). The substance of this statement of the question seems to be extant in revised form in the first six sections of the Fourth Oration against Catiline. Silanus, the consul elect, and as such the first to be asked his opinion, proposed the extreme penalty, execution. Others agreed, until Cæsar's turn came as prætor elect. His voice was for confiscation of the conspirators' property, and their imprisonment in some of the larger towns of Italy, with a heavy penalty imposed upon the town in question if the prisoner escaped. The main features of Cæsar's argument have been preserved in the speech which Sallust inserted in his *Catiline* (51). In this speech Cæsar does not in any way belittle the guilt of the offenders, but he would have no new and unheard-of penalty. Great severity, he felt, would be beneath the dignity of the senate and could only provoke a reaction in favor of the victims. History would not approve so dangerous a precedent as their execution without a formal trial.

82. Other senators simply assented to the one proposal or the other. Then Cicero, speaking again, delivered the speech which in its revised dress forms the body of the Fourth Oration against Catiline (from 54 25 on). He urges that fear for his personal safety be not allowed to influence the decision. As consul he will execute any mandate of the senate, but indirectly his hearers are made by guarded hints to feel that he really favors

¹ Cicero elsewhere enlarges upon his pains to secure an accurate record of the testimony, naming four senators who acted as clerks (*pro Sulla*, 41 f.), and providing for the dissemination of copies throughout Italy and the provinces.

the severer penalty for men who have shown themselves *hostēs*¹ and hence cannot claim the protection of their forfeited rights as citizens.

But Cæsar's proposal was clearly gaining. Tiberius Nero, grandfather of the future emperor, proposed postponement until Catiline should have been defeated in the field. Silanus weakened, and feebly explained that by "extreme penalty" he had meant imprisonment. Cicero's brother Quintus sided with Cæsar.

83. The decisive speech was now made by Cato as tribune elect. This also is preserved in substance, though Sallust felt free to make many alterations (*Cat.* 52). It was high time, he said, for immediate action, and there should be no talk of mercy in the presence of such immediate peril. The hands of Catiline would be strengthened by any show of weakness on the part of the senate. Not arms, but moral strength, had made Rome great, before the days of luxury and self-interest. Now men of the highest rank had conspired to burn, kill, and destroy, with the aid of the Gauls. While enemies were within, as well as without the walls, there must be no hesitation in employing old-time severity. Cato's speech made such an impression that wavering ceased, and after mutual reproaches for cowardice, and praise for the courage of Cato, the senators by a large majority voted for the death penalty.

THE EXECUTIONS; CATILINE'S END; ARCHIAS

84. No time was lost in carrying out the decree of the senate. Cicero first gave orders to the *trēs viri capitālēs* to prepare for the execution. With due police precautions he in person escorted Lentulus from the house on the Palatine, in which he was confined, down the Sacred Way, through the Forum to the prison, while the prætors brought in the other prisoners. In a dark

¹ Only Catiline had been formally so declared.

dungeon in the rock of the Capitoline, accessible only by a small round opening in the floor of the Carcer (§ 49 and p. 64), and but a few steps away from the Temple of Concord, where the senate had been sitting, the five conspirators were immediately strangled, and Cicero announced their fate to the crowd in the laconic *vixērunt!* It was evening already when he returned through the Forum, escorted by the senators, amid the shouts of the people, who hailed him as savior and second founder of the state.

85. Among the various outbreaks which followed in different parts of Italy none was of importance except the insurrection in Etruria, headed by Catiline himself. Many of his troops deserted on hearing of the death of Lentulus and his companions. With the remnant he planned to cross the Apennines into Cisalpine Gaul, but was entrapped between two armies and attacked by that of the consul Gaius Antonius, who had his reasons for turning over the command to his lieutenant, Petreius. Catiline and his followers died bravely fighting, after inflicting heavy losses on the troops of the government, near Pistoria (Pistoia), northwest of Fæsulæ (and Florence).¹ It was early in January, 62 B.C., only a month after the execution of his confederates.

86. Meantime Cicero's consulship had come to a dramatic close. On the last day of the year a new tribune, Metellus Nepos, took the unprecedented step of refusing the retiring consul an opportunity to speak to the people, on the ground that he had allowed the conspirators no hearing. Permitted only to take an oath, Cicero promptly swore that he had saved the state and the city single-handed; and the people with one voice swore that his oath was true. The same Metellus continued his attacks on and after the first of January. Cicero's reply was published, but we have only a few fragments. Again he had declined a provincial appointment, the usual sequel to

¹ Sallust, *Cat.* 56-61.

a consulship. In this same year (62 B.C.) he defended P. Cornelius Sulla, accused of complicity in the conspiracy. He supported also the claims of the poet Archias in the oration *pro Archia Poeta*, delivered before the orator's brother Quintus, sitting as prætor. It was in this year that he bought from Crassus a house on the Palatine.

CLODIUS—CICERO'S EXILE

87. A bitter quarrel with a former supporter, the utterly unscrupulous young patrician Clodius, fills a large place in the next few years of Cicero's life. In a celebrated scandal occasioned by his profanation of the sacred rites of the Bona Dea, in Cæsar's house, Clodius attempted to prove an alibi, but was frustrated by the testimony of Cicero. Though bribery enabled him to secure acquittal, Clodius became the implacable enemy of Cicero, and delighted in stirring all the animosities roused by the execution of the Catilinarians. Pompey had now returned from the East, to celebrate his triumph over Mithridates and other princes, the pirates, etc.; but his attitude toward Cicero, who had so ardently supported him, became one of increasing coldness, while the senate was estranged from Pompey and refused to approve his acts or to reward his veterans with lands.

88. In 60 B.C. Cæsar returned from his prætorship in Spain, claiming a triumph, only to renounce it, however, that he might at once enter the campaign for the consulship. The close of the year was marked by a political deal between the three leaders Pompey, Cæsar, and Crassus (the First Triumvirate) to oppose the optimates, as led by Cicero, and to secure all the real power for themselves and their friends. Cæsar was elected consul for 59 B.C., with an insignificant colleague, Bibulus, and after his year of office was to govern Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul with Illyricum for five years. At last Pompey's arrangements in the East were confirmed, and lands were allotted to his veterans.

Aided by this turn of affairs and the humiliation of the senate, whose old-time power had now passed to the triumvirs, Clodius, who had had himself adopted into a plebeian family, that he might become tribune of the people, was now (58 B.C.) in that office, and was able to bring about the exile of Cicero, for his execution of the Catilinarians without trial. In the depths of despondency Cicero retired first to the south of Italy, and then to Thessalonica, finally returning to the Adriatic at Dyrrhachium (Durazzo), in Illyria (western Macedonia).

THE RETURN ; DARK DAYS ; THE PROCONSULSHIP

89. At last, after an absence of seventeen months, the political atmosphere had so far cleared that he was permitted to return, by a law passed in the assembly of the centuries (§ 37). A month later he reached home, receiving an enthusiastic welcome (September, 57 B.C.). But Pompey and the jealous optimates, who had clipped his wings, had no wish that they should grow again. Under the triumvirs the whole situation had changed, and the cause of the aristocrats was doomed. Despondent and powerless in the face of such odds, Cicero, whose submission had been promised during his exile by his brother Quintus, was reduced to humiliating subservience for some five years, during which he was occupied in part in literary pursuits (§§ 101 f.). The triumvirs renewed their agreement at Luca (Lucca) in April, 56 B.C., assigning themselves provinces and armies for the next five years,—Gaul and Illyricum again to Cæsar, Spain to Pompey, Syria to Crassus.

90. But the death of Julia, Cæsar's daughter and Pompey's wife, in 54 B.C., and the disaster which in the next year overtook Crassus and his army beyond the Euphrates, reduced the triumvirate to two avowed rivals, more and more incapable of working together, even for their own selfish advantage, still less to stem the rising tide of anarchy at Rome. Violence was increasingly frequent. Clodius, attacking Milo with a gang

of ruffians, was himself slain. Cicero unsuccessfully defended Milo in a court intimidated by Pompey's soldiers, but later published a carefully finished *pro Milone*, one of the best-known of his orations. Pompey was now elected sole consul for 52 B.C. One of his acts as consul was the framing of a law which required a retiring magistrate to wait for five years before going out to govern a province, his object being to disarm Cæsar, in case he should gain another consulship.

91. In erecting this new system it was necessary to make special provision for the first five years by calling on many ex-magistrates who, like Cicero, had never governed a province at all. Though more than ever reluctant to accept such a position, he could not decline. Thus another brief chapter of his life is made by his proconsulship of Cilicia, together with some adjacent territory and the island of Cyprus (July, 51 B.C., to July, 50). Including some leisurely travel by way of Athens, this office involved an absence of more than a year and a half from Rome. If not altogether happy, he at least governed his province with conspicuous honesty and ability, gaining some military successes at a time when a Parthian invasion was a serious menace. A *supplicātiō* was voted him by the senate; but, in the hope of gaining the higher honor of a triumph, he did not enter the city upon his arrival, January 4th, 49 B.C.

CIVIL WAR; MARCELLUS

92. Unfortunately his return coincided exactly with the outbreak of civil war. On the first of January the senate had rejected proposals made by Cæsar, and summoned him to give up his command by a given date. Matters moved so rapidly that on the seventh the senate resorted to its most extreme measure, the *senātūs cōsultum ultimum* (§ 35), declaring martial law, to be administered by the consuls, prætors, tribunes, and any proconsuls in the vicinity of the city, this last provision including Pompey and Cicero. Three days later Cæsar crossed the

Rubicon, the southern boundary of his province, and with this march to Ariminum the great civil war began.

By the seventeenth, alarm at the rapid advance of Cæsar's troops led Pompey to abandon Rome, and Cicero at once followed his example. Giving up the hope of making a stand, Pompey hastened down to Brundisium and wrote to Cicero to join him there. Cicero delayed, however, and a month later (the end of March) he met Cæsar at Formiæ. But his hopes of a reconciliation were dashed. Meanwhile Pompey had transported his army across to the opposite shore of the Adriatic; and early in June the two Ciceros with their two sons sailed away from Italy, to join the army of Pompey several months later.

93. Cæsar promptly carried the war into Spain, and there defeated Pompey's generals. Early in January he followed Pompey across the Adriatic, to begin the campaign which ended in the rout at Pharsalus, 48 B.C. Pompey fled to Egypt, only to be murdered as he landed. Cicero, detained by illness, had not been present at the battle, but was urged by Cato to accept the chief command. He declined, however, and, returning to Italy, spent nearly a year unhappily at Brundisium, weighed down by personal and family anxieties as well. Finally Cæsar arrived, after his precarious campaign in Egypt. Cicero, now forgiven, was treated with such consideration that he could at last return to Rome and to his favorite villas, where he found consolation in writing on philosophy and oratory with tireless industry. After years of silence he spoke again in the senate in 46 B.C., thanking Cæsar for his clemency toward Marcellus. He also pleaded with Cæsar in behalf of Q. Ligarius, and in 45 B.C. for the Galatian prince Deiotarus.

DOMESTIC TRIALS; TULLIA'S DEATH

94. War had brought its inevitable heritage of hard times, and in his long absence Cicero thought that his wife, Terentia, had mismanaged the family property. Estrangement led to

divorce in 46 B.C. In the same year Cicero married a young heiress, Publilia, who had been his ward. His beloved daughter, Tullia, who had been unhappy in her marriages, died at the Tusculan villa in February, 45 B.C., and this great sorrow led the broken-hearted father to seek complete seclusion. He even divorced his young wife, who had shown her jealousy of Tullia. Many prominent men wrote him letters of condolence, including Cæsar (from Spain), Brutus, and Servius Sulpicius, but his grief was not to be consoled by letters gracefully expressing the sympathy of his friends.

CÆSAR SUPREME; HIS DEATH; ANTONY

95. Cæsar's supremacy was now finally secured by his victory over the last of the republican forces in Africa, at Thapsus, in 46 B.C., and in Spain, at Munda, in 45 B.C. But his autocratic rule, enlightened and generally benevolent as it was, gave grave offense, especially to the optimates. Traditional hatred of tyrants favored the conspiracy formed by Brutus, Cassius, and the other "liberators." His assassination, however, on the fifteenth of March, 44 B.C., did not restore the republic; and those who with Cicero had applauded the deed of the tyrannicides soon found that Antony could be as much of a tyrant as the great dictator, and as much more dangerous as he was less intelligent. Nothing more had been accomplished than a change of masters, very much for the worse. The "liberators" had no practical plans, so that the riotous funeral of the popular hero was soon followed by their flight. The young grand-nephew of Cæsar, Octavius, by adoption his son and heir, stood ready to claim the inheritance in the face of all opposition. Antony was unwilling to resign his power, fortified by possession of the dictator's private papers and the funds.



BRUTUS

DEFIANCE ; PROSCRIPTION ; THE END

96. Cicero in despair had started for Greece in July, but more hopeful news from Rome led him to turn back from the straits of Sicily. Arriving at Rome at the end of August, he delivered an oration against Antony—the First Philippic—on the second of September. Thus he found himself once more in the harness, as leader of the constitutional party ; and the long conflict with Antony begins. It is the most honorable period of his entire career, for the unselfish course which he pursued with so much energy was one involving great personal danger. Antony defied the senate in attempting to take forcible possession of Cisalpine Gaul, the province he had assigned to himself. Hirtius and Pansa, the consuls, with Octavius, took the field against Antony, who was defeated before Mutina (Modena), in April, 43 B.C. But both consuls lost their lives ; and Octavius, piqued that the command was not given to him, marched on Rome with his legions in August and forced his election to the consulship.

97. Three months later he formed the Second Triumvirate, with Antony and Lepidus. They were duly elected by the *comitia tributa* to this extraordinary magistracy for the term of five years, and at once revived the Sullan proscriptions, as a means of ridding themselves of many personal enemies and laying hands on their property. Most conspicuous on the list of more than two hundred senators thus proscribed was Cicero. With his brother, who was also included, Cicero planned to flee to Macedonia. But delay and irresolution promptly cost Quintus his life and prevented Marcus' escape. On the seventh of December, 43 B.C., while his servants were bearing the orator hastily along a shaded walk on his seaside estate at Formiæ, he was overtaken by the assassins,—a military tribune whom he had once defended and a centurion. Refusing to risk the lives of his slaves, he bravely offered his neck to the sword. By Antony's orders his head and right hand (or both hands) were exposed on the Rostra at Rome.

V. CICERO'S PLACE IN LITERATURE, WITH A
SUMMARY OF HIS WORKS

98. Cicero holds a place all his own in the general history of literature. Deeper thinkers and more original writers were among his Greek models, but no one of them has exerted so uninterruptedly an influence comparable to that of Cicero. Gathering up the most tangible results of Greek labors, avoiding every extreme, while cultivating all that was best in thought and word, he made himself the teacher of the Roman world, and handed on a whole body of learning and culture to the Middle Ages and the Renaissance. One age has been most attracted by the content of his writings; another has admired him indirectly, through the works of the Church Fathers, who had themselves borrowed extensively from Cicero; another, most impressed by the form, has done its best to imitate his style. Directly or indirectly, through style or subject matter, or both, he has continued to influence every successive century. Since the Revival of Learning in the fifteenth century few eminent writers of prose in any of the leading languages of Europe have not been under some obligations to him. He has had his ardent admirers in every land, to whom he has been the master of those who speak or write. Some have gone to extremes in his praise, as did Voltaire. On the other hand, detractors have not been wanting, from Pollio, the patron of Virgil, to Mommsen. Such critics, if not themselves lacking in the sense of form, have often demanded what he did not pretend to give; or they could not separate the statesman of limited success from the creative artist in words,—an artist of the first order in his own proper sphere, as master of oratory and prose.

It was his mission, not to invent or originate, but to absorb the mature Hellenism and to present it in attractive, popular dress to his fellow countrymen. And such was his success in accomplishing this end that later ages also continued without interruption to receive his message. Thus he transmitted a highly

important part of ancient civilization to the medieval and modern world. Consequently he has been incessantly quoted, mentioned, or imitated in other literatures,—so much so that one risks frequent misunderstanding of modern authors if one has taken no pains to make his acquaintance.

99. The Greeks had fully developed the art of speaking,—an art which culminated in Demosthenes (384–322 B.C.). They wrote their prose also with the closest attention to its effect upon the ear. Thucydides, the historian, and Plato, the philosopher, were very great masters in the art of writing, each in his own way. But the extreme terseness of the one—his pent-up reservoirs of power—and the graceful flow and well-bred ease of the other (no less difficult of imitation) made it certain that few would ever be able to develop a living prose under their inspiration. In fact, the prose of modern Europe has been inspired much more by Latin models, just as in oratory the influence of Cicero has been much more widely felt than that of Demosthenes, for all his virile force.

Thus we read the orations, essays, letters, and other works of Cicero for the same purpose for which, in the other arts, we study the highest examples of creative talent,—to become familiar with the things which never cease to stimulate; and by such familiarity to train our taste to recognize and appreciate merit in expression, to know and condemn false standards.

ORATIONS

100. No less than fifty-seven orations of Cicero still remain, while fragments of seventeen others have come down to us. Another group of thirty-one speeches are known merely by their titles. Of the fifty-seven extant orations the earliest, *pro Quinctio*, belongs to the year 81 B.C.; the latest, the fourteen Philippics, are of the years 44 and 43 B.C. The latter were aimed at Antony, and owed their name to the analogy of Demosthenes' speeches against Philip of Macedon. During the long

interval of nearly forty years he had spoken many times in the law courts, usually on the side of the defense. It was as an accuser, however, that he had won his first great triumph, in the successful prosecution of a corrupt provincial governor (70 B.C.; § 60). And an important place in the collection of extant orations belongs to the seven speeches against Verres. But he did not speak merely at the bar. As senator or magistrate, in the Curia or from the Rostra, he often debated questions of the day. Of such public orations we may mention, for example, the earliest,—that for the Manilian Law (*de Imperio Cn. Pompei*), 66 B.C.,—in which Cicero as prætor urged that the supreme command be given to Pompey in the war against Mithridates (§ 63). Most widely known are the four against Catiline,¹ delivered in the closing months of his consulship, and—by name, at least—the Philippics, although the latter find far fewer readers.

RHETORICAL WORKS

101. That a great orator should prove his interest in the theory of his art by writing a series of works on rhetoric would seem quite what we should expect. Yet the strange fact remains that Cicero is the only master of the first rank whose precept and practice can be compared in detail.

Even before the date of his first extant speech he had written a youthful work on rhetorical invention (*de Inventione*, about 84 B.C.), of which two books were completed and have been preserved.

His great work on oratory, however, is the *de Oratore*, in three books (55 B.C.),—a dialogue in form, with two of the best-known orators of Cicero's youth, L. Crassus and M. Antonius,

¹We have, in a letter to Atticus, Cicero's own catalogue of speeches delivered by him during his consulship, including the *Catilinariae* in these words: "septima, quom (= cum) Catilinam emisi, octava, quam habui ad populum postridie quam Catilina profugit, nona in contione, quo die Allobroges indicarunt, decima in senatu Nonis Decembribus" (*ad Att.* II, 1, 3).

as the leading speakers. By a skillful use of the dialogue, with its animation, its anecdotes, and its contrary opinions, Cicero has contrived to present his theory of oratory in an entertaining manner, not in the least suggestive of a textbook. The first book, besides furnishing a general introduction, deals with the education of the orator,—a matter in which Cicero demanded the widest range and highest possible standard. The second and third books handle the subject proper, under the five traditional heads: invention; arrangement, or disposition; the uses of memory; expression, or style; and delivery (cp. § 2, note).

Another dialogue, the *Brutus*, written much later (46 B.C.), gives in one book a history of Roman oratory, with a preliminary sketch of the eloquence of the Greeks. Some two hundred Roman orators are mentioned, in most cases with a critical estimate of their worth.

The *Orator*, also dating from 46 B.C., has for its theme the ideal orator. A single book, like the *Brutus*, it is less methodical in treatment than the *de Oratore*, covering much of the same ground, with the one intent to show what Cicero himself regarded as the ideal toward which the orator should press forward.

Three minor works in this field remain to be mentioned: (1) a kind of rhetorical catechism, called *Partitiones Oratoriae*; (2) *Topica*, on the sources from which the orator draws his arguments; (3) a preface to lost translations he had made of two very celebrated Greek orations, those of Demosthenes and Æschines *On the Crown*. This preface is called *de Optimo Genere Oratorum*.

PHILOSOPHICAL WORKS

102. Cicero's philosophical works cover a wide range, including even political speculation, after the manner of the philosophers of Greece. Popular essays on such subjects as old age or friendship stand at one end of the series; the various

theories of the highest good (*summum bonum*) or the theory of knowledge, at the other. All show large obligations to Greek sources, and taken together they give us our most complete idea of the intellectual life as it was then lived in the cultivated circles of Greece and Rome. The philosophical works are as follows:

De Re Publica, six books on the state, inspired by Plato's *Republic*, and published in 51 B.C. While Plato constructed an ideal state, the original of many later utopias, Cicero found his practical ideal in the Roman constitution, as combining in judicious proportions the leading features of the three forms of government—monarchy, aristocracy, and democracy. The work is a dialogue, imagined to have taken place in 129 B.C., between the younger Scipio Africanus and his friends. Only the last few pages, containing the much-admired Dream of Scipio, and other short fragments were known to modern readers until 1822, when nearly a third of the entire work was discovered in the Vatican library.

De Legibus, also suggested by a work of Plato (his *Laws*). This dialogue was never finished, and three books only have survived. In subject matter it is closely related to the *Republic* of Cicero. The graceful Platonic introductions to the first two books are of most interest to the general reader.

These two works were written by Cicero in his prime; all the remaining works in this class were written after he retired from public life, during the years 46–44 B.C.

De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum (commonly cited as *de Finibus*), a treatise on the practical question of the *summum bonum*, or ethical ideal, and its opposite. The work consists of three distinct dialogues in five books.

Academica, the most difficult of Cicero's writings, an abstruse discussion of the theory of knowledge, in dialogue form. It went through a process of revision at the author's hands, and appeared in a second recension, containing four books. In this

revised form we have part of the first book, but the second half of the work is preserved in its first form.

Tusculanae Disputationes, so named from the scene of the dialogues, the Tusculan villa of Cicero. The five books successively treat of these topics: (1) death is no evil, no matter what one's belief as to immortality; (2) bodily pain; (3) mental distress; (4) the passions; (5) virtue is in itself sufficient for the happy life. The philosophy is not deep, but well suited to the cultivated man of the world, and the *Tusculan Disputations* have always been among the most popular and readable of his works.

De Natura Deorum, also in dialogue form, in three books, contrasting the views held in regard to the gods by the different schools of philosophy,—Epicurean, Stoic, and Academic.

Cato Maior, or *de Senectute*, a popular essay on old age, in the form of a dialogue, with old Cato the Censor as the chief speaker.

De Divinatione, a dialogue in two books on augury and other forms of divination, thus closely linked with the theme of *de Natura Deorum*.

Laelius, or *de Amicitia*, another essay in dialogue form, dealing with friendship. The principal speaker is Lælius, the bosom friend of the younger Scipio.

De Officiis, three books addressed to his son Marcus, and dealing with duty, cases of conscience, honor, policy, etc., the four cardinal virtues, and the rest. Based on Stoic teaching, it represents Roman practical wisdom as well.

Minor works: *Paradoxa*, stating the six paradoxes of the Stoics; *Timaëus*, freely translated from the most obscure of the Platonic dialogues; *de Fato*, attacking the Stoic view of Fate.

Fragments of lost works, including two which were widely read: *Hortensius*, a general introduction to philosophy, commending the subject to Roman readers,—a work which made a deep impression upon such a man as St. Augustine; and *Consolatio*, written in his deepest grief for the death of his daughter Tullia, and chiefly to comfort his own sorrowing heart (§ 94).

VERSE

103. Like many other writers of highly finished prose, Cicero wrote verse as well, especially in his younger days. Though lacking in poetic inspiration, his sense of form enabled him to produce polished verses, which real bards, such as Lucretius, thought worthy of their study and imitation. In his youth he translated a Greek astronomical poem of Aratus, the *Phaenomena*, into Latin hexameters. But his later efforts in verse, especially the epics on his consulship and on his times (each in three books), brought him few friends and many carping critics, chiefly because of self-praise and a few lines which readily lent themselves to ridicule. Several hundred of his verses have been preserved, mostly from the *Phaenomena*. He wrote Greek verse as well.

LETTERS

104. For the reader of today no works of Cicero are so interesting as his Letters, none more valuable. Of these he wrote a vast number, some carefully finished, when formal relations with his correspondent required, but most of them delightfully free and unconstrained, especially when he wrote to his family, to Atticus, or to other intimates. The familiar letters thus give us our best idea of the Roman of the period, when he had put off the cumbrous toga and felt himself really at home, jotting down whatever came into his head, and that in the simple, unaffected style of well-bred conversation.

More than nine hundred letters have been preserved in the extant collections, including ninety letters from Cicero's friends. They range in date from 68 B. C., five years before his consulship, down to within five months of his death. Collected and arranged chiefly by his faithful secretary, Tiro, and by Atticus, himself a publisher, they were given to the world sometime after Cicero's death, with the possible exception of a book of letters of recommendation (*Ep.* XIII), perhaps published in 44 B. C. Unfortu-

nately for us, these editors did not include any of their own replies. The letters which have come down to us form two large and two small collections: (1) *ad Atticum*, in sixteen books; (2) *Epistulae* in general (often called *ad Familiares* in modern times), also in sixteen books; (3) *ad Quintum Fratrem*, three books; (4) *ad M. Brutum*, two books.

In these letters and the replies, where they have been preserved, we have a most valuable source for the history of the period—a storehouse of information about life in Cicero's day, with many side lights on his personal character, its frequent changes of feeling, its sensitiveness to the passing moment.

Reading Cicero's letters is not unlike dipping into the yellowed newspapers of a former day covering some period of extraordinary interest. We seem to be in the midst of the scenes themselves. Events live for us again, with all the currents and countercurrents of feeling,—joy, anxiety, or depression. They are human documents of the highest value and interest, even to those who are not specialists in Roman history.

VI. BRIEF BIBLIOGRAPHY

Besides the much-used lives of Cicero by Plutarch, Middleton, Trollope, Forsyth, Strachan-Davidson, and the best-known histories covering the period, such as those of Mommsen, Duruy, Ferrero, Heitland, or manuals, as those of Breasted, Pelham, Abbott, Allen, Myers, Fowler, Seignobos, Botsford, How and Leigh, Shuckburgh, the following works should be mentioned:

- ROSTOVITZ, M. *A History of the Ancient World*, Vol. II (*Rome*). Oxford, 1927.
- ROSTOVITZ, M. *The Social and Economic History of the Roman Empire*, chap. i (*Italy and the Civil War*). Oxford, 1926.
- HOLMES, T. RICE. *The Roman Republic and the Founder of the Empire* (3 vols.). Oxford, 1923.
- MEYER, E. *Caesars Monarchie und das Principat des Pompeius* (3d ed.). Stuttgart and Berlin, 1922.

- FRANK, T. *A History of Rome*. New York, 1923.
 FRANK, T. *Roman Imperialism*. New York, 1914.
 FRANK, T. *Economic History of Rome* (2d ed.). Baltimore, 1927.
 PIGANOL, A. *La Conquête romaine*. Paris, 1927.
 BLOCH, G. *La République romaine*. Paris, 1919.
 JONES, H. STUART. *Companion to Roman History*. Oxford, 1912.
 BOAK, A. E. R. *A History of Rome to 565 A.D.* New York, 1921.
 FROUDE, J. A. *Cæsar, a Sketch*. London and New York, 1879.
-

- HARDY, E. G. *The Catilinarian Conspiracy in its Context*. Oxford, 1924.
 BOISSIER, G. *La Conjuration de Catilina*. Paris, 1905.
 BOISSIER, G. *Cicéron et ses amis* (Paris) or *Cicero and his Friends*
 (several editions, London and New York).
 CIACERI, E. *Cicerone e i suoi tempi*. Milan, Rome, Naples, 1926.
 PETERSSON, T. *Cicero, a Biography*. Berkeley, 1920.
 SIHLER, E. G. *M. Tullius Cicero of Arpinum*. New Haven, 1914.
 ZIELIŃSKI, T. *Cicero im Wandel der Jahrhunderte* (3d ed.). Leipzig
 and Berlin, 1912.
 ROLFE, J. C. *Cicero and his Influence*. Boston, 1923.
-

- FOWLER, W. WARDE. *Social Life at Rome in the Age of Cicero*. London
 and New York, 1908.
 ABBOTT, F. F. *Roman Political Institutions*. Boston, 1901.
 ABBOTT, F. F. *Roman Politics*. Boston, 1923.
 GREENIDGE, A. H. J. *Roman Public Life*. London, 1911.
 BOTSFORD, G. W. *The Roman Assemblies*. New York, 1909.
 GRANRUD, J. E. *Roman Constitutional History*. Boston, 1902.
-

- BAILEY, C., and others. *The Legacy of Rome*. Oxford, 1923.
 BAILEY, C., and others. *The Mind of Rome*. Oxford, 1926.
 NAIRN, J. A. *Authors of Rome*. London, 1924.
 SHOWERMAN, G. *Eternal Rome*. New Haven, 1924.
 BAUMGARTEN, F., and others. *Die hellenistisch-römische Kultur*. Leip-
 zig and Berlin, 1913.
-

- PLATNER, S. B. *The Topography and Monuments of Ancient Rome* (2d
 ed.). Boston, 1911.
 LANCIANI, R. *Ancient and Modern Rome*. New York, 1925.
 JONES, H. STUART. *Classical Rome*. London and New York, 1911.

HOMO, L. *La Rome antique*. Paris, 1921.

HUELSEN, CHR. *The Roman Forum* (2d ed.). Rome, 1909.

HUELSEN, CHR. (and TANZER, HELEN H.). *The Forum and the Palatine*. New York, 1928.

THÉDENAT, H. *Le Forum romain* (4th ed.). Paris, 1911.

RUGGIERO, E. DE. *Il foro romano*. Rome, 1913.

SANDYS, SIR J. E. *A Companion to Latin Studies* (3d ed.). Cambridge, 1925.

CAGNAT, R., and CHAPOT, V. *Manuel d'archéologie romaine* (2 vols.). Paris, 1916, 1920.

HILL, G. F. *Illustrations of School Classics*. London, 1903.

LAURAND, L. *Manuel des études grecques et latines*, fasc. 4-8 (several editions). Paris, 1919-.

BALDWIN, C. S. *Ancient Rhetoric and Poetic*. New York, 1924.

VOLKMANN, R. *Rhetorik der Griechen und Römer* (3d ed.). Munich, 1901.

NORDEN, E. *Die antike Kunstprosa* (4th ed., 2 vols.). Leipzig and Berlin, 1923.

DE GROOT, A. W. *Handbook of Antique Prose-Rhythm*. Groningen, 1918.

ZIELINSKI, T. *Das Clauselgesetz in Ciceros Reden*. Leipzig, 1904.

ZIELINSKI, T. *Der constructive Rhythmus in Ciceros Reden*. Leipzig, 1914.

LAURAND, L. *Études sur le style des discours de Cicéron*. Paris, 1907.

NOTE. In the difficult problem of the date of the First Oration against Catiline we have been unable to agree with Hardy, Ed. Meyer, Gelzer (Pauly-Wissowa, the article on Catiline), and Franklin H. Potter (*Classical Journal*, XXI, 164 ff.) that this speech was delivered on the 7th of November. This had been the view of Drumann (1841; abandoned by his reviser, Groebe, 1912), as also of Boissier. But it involves the supposition that Cicero's text should not be reckoned our chief authority, and has led to an interpretation of §§ 1 and 8 which in our judgment cannot possibly be defended. As two nights are plainly distinguished at 3 9 f., the backward reference in 6 15 must be to the earlier of the two, the 6th of November. Hence we can only say that Cicero himself points to the 8th as the date of this oration. An error unaccountably arising in process of revision for publication is possible, but hardly probable.

ORATIONS OF CICERO

WITH A SELECTION FROM HIS LETTERS



TEMPLE OF JUPITER STATOR (RIGHT)

M. TVLLI CICERONIS
ORATIO QVA L. CATILINAM EMISIT
IN SENATV HABITA

*Catiline, though his plans are known to all, dares to appear
in the senate. Failure of the consuls*

VŌ ūsque tandem abūtēre, Catilīna, patientiā nostrā? quam diū etiam furor iste tuus nōs ēlūdet? quem ad finem sēsē effrēnāta iactābit audācia? Nihilne tē nocturnum praesidium Palātī, nihil urbis vigiliae, nihil timor populī, nihil concursus bonōrum omnium, nihil hic mūnītissimus habendī senātūs locus, nihil hōrum ōra voltūsque mōvērunt? Patēre tua cōnsilia nōn sentīs, cōnstrictam iam hōrum omnium scientiā tenērī coniūrātiōnem tuam nōn vidēs? quid proximā, quid superiōre nocte ēgerīs, ubi fuerīs, quōs convocāverīs, quid cōsili cēperīs quem nostrum ignōrāre arbitrāris? Ō tempora, ō mōrēs! senātus haec intellegit, cōnsul videt; hic tamen vivit. Vivit? immō vērō etiam in senātum venit, fit pūblicī cōnsilī particeps, notat et dēsīgnat oculīs ad caedem ūnum quemque nostrum. Nōs autem fortēs virī satis facere reī pūblīcae vidēmur, sī istīus furōrem ac tēla vītāmus. Ad mortem tē, Catilīna, dūcī iussū cōnsulis iam prīdem oportēbat, in tē cōnferrī pestem quam tū in nōs omnīs iam diū māchināris. An vērō vir amplissimus, P. Scīpiō, pontifex maximus, Ti. Gracchum mediocriter labefactantem statum

reī pūblicaē prīvātus interfēcit: Catilīnam orbem terrae caede atque incendiīs vāstāre cupientem nōs cōsulēs perferēmus? Nam illa nimis antīqua prae-
 5 lium novīs rēbus studentem manū suā occīdit. Fuit, fuit ista quondam in hāc rē pūblicā virtūs ut virī fortēs ācriōribus suppliciīs cīvem perniciosum quam acerbissimum hostem coercērent. Habēmus
 10 senātūs cōsultum in tē, Catilīna, vehemēns et grave; nōn deest reī pūblicaē cōsiliū neque auctōritās huius ōrdinis: nōs, nōs, dīcō apertē, cōsulēs dēsumus.



HEAD OF AHALA

Formerly treason was promptly punished. Reasons for delay on Cicero's part

4 II. Dēcrēvit quondam senātus utī L. Opīmius cōsul
 15 vidēret nē quid rēs pūblica dētrīmentī caperet: nox nūlla intercessit; interfectus est propter quāsdam sēditionum suspīciōnēs C. Gracchus, clārissimō patre, avō, maiōribus, occīsus est cum liberīs M. Fulvius cōsulāris. Similī senātūs cōsultō C. Mariō et L. Valeriō cōsulibus est permissa
 20 rēs pūblica: num ūnum diem postēā L. Sātūrnīnum tribūnum plēbis et C. Servīlium praetōrem mors ac reī pūblicaē poena remorāta est? At vērō nōs vīcēsimum iam diem patimur hebēscere aciem hōrum auctōritātis. Habēmus enim eius modī senātūs cōsultum, vērū inclūsum
 25 in tabulīs, tamquam in vāgīnā reconditum, quō ex senātūs cōsultō cōnfestim tē interfectum esse, Catilīna, convēnit. Vīvis, et vīvis nōn ad dēpōnendam, sed ad cōnfirmandam audāciam. Cupiō, patrēs cōnscriptī, mē esse clēmentem, cupiō in tantīs reī pūblicaē periculīs nōn dissolūtum vidērī,

sed iam mē ipse inertiae nēquitiaeque condemnō. Castra 5
sunt in Italiā contrā populum Rōmānum in Etrūriae fauci-
bus conlocāta, crēscit in diēs singulōs hostium numerus;
eōrum autem castrōrum imperātōrem ducemque hostium
intrā moenia atque adeō in senātū vidētis, intestīnam 5
aliquam cotīdiē perniciem reī pūblīcae mōlientem. Sī tē
iam, Catilīna, comprehendī, sī interficī iusserō, crēdō, erit
verendum mihi nē nōn hoc potius omnēs bonī sērius ā mē
quam quisquam crūdēlius factum esse dīcat. Vērū ego
hoc quod iam prīdem factum esse oportuit certā dē causā 10
nōndum addūcor ut faciam. Tum dēnique interficiēre,
cum iam nēmō tam improbus, tam perditus, tam tuī similis
invenīrī poterit quī id nōn iūre factum esse fateātur. Quam 6
diū quisquam erit quī tē dēfendere audeat, vīvēs, et vīvēs
ita ut nunc vīvis, multīs meīs et fīrmīs praesidiīs obsessus, 15
nē commovēre tē contrā rem pūblīcam possīs. Multōrum tē
etiam oculī et aurēs nōn sentientem, sicut adhūc fēcērunt,
speculābuntur atque cūstōdient.

Catiline's secrets are fully known to the consul

III. Etenim quid est, Catilīna, quod iam amplius expec-
tēs, sī neque nox tenebrīs obscurāre coetūs nefariōs nec 20
prīvāta domus parietibus continēre vōcēs coniūrātiōnis
tuae potest, sī inlūstrantur, sī ērumpunt omnia? Mūtā
iam istam mentem, mihi crēde, oblīvīscere caedis atque
incendiōrum. Tenēris undique; lūce sunt clārīōra nōbīs
tua cōnsilia omnia, quae iam mēcum licet recognōscās. 25
Meministīne mē ante diem xii Kalendās Novembrīs 7
dīcere in senātū fore in armīs certō diē, quī diēs futūrus
esset ante diem vi Kal. Novembrīs, C. Mānlium, audāciae
satellitē atque administrum tuae? Num mē fefellit,
Catilīna, nōn modo rēs tanta, tam atrōx tamque incrēdibilis, 30

vērūm, id quod multō magis est admīrandum, diēs? Dīxī
 ego īdem in senātū caedem tē optimātium contulisse in ante
 diem v Kalendās Novembrīs, tum cum multī prīncipēs
 cīvītātis Rōmā nōn tam suī cōnservandī quam tuōrum
 5 cōnsiliōrum reprimendōrum causā profūgērunt. Num īn-
 fitiārī potes tē illō ipsō diē meīs praesidiīs, meā diligentiā
 circumclūsum commovēre tē contrā rem pūblicam nōn
 potuisse, cum tū discessū cēterōrum nostrā tamen quī
 8 remānsissēmus caede contentum tē esse dīcēbās? Quid?
 10 cum tē Praeneste Kalendīs ipsīs Novembribus occupā-
 tūrum nocturnō impetū esse cōnfīderēs, sēnsistīn illam
 colōniam meō iussū meīs praesidiīs, cūstōdiīs, vigiliīs esse
 mūnītā? Nihil agis, nihil mōlīris, nihil cōgitās quod nōn
 ego nōn modo audiam sed etiam videam plānēque sentiam.

A meeting of the conspirators, planning to kill Cicero

15 IV. Recognōsce tandem mēcūm noctem illam superiō-
 rem; iam intellegēs multō mē vigilāre ācrius ad salūtem
 quam tē ad perniciem rei pūblīcae. Dīcō tē priōre nocte
 vēnisse inter falcārīōs—nōn agam obscurē—in M. Laecae
 domum; convēnisse eōdem complūrīs eiusdem āmentiae
 20 scelerisque sociōs. Num negāre audēs? quid tacēs? Con-
 vincam, sī negās. Videō enim esse hīc in senātū quōsdam
 9 quī tēcūm unā fuērunt. Ō dī immortālēs! ubinam gentium
 sumus? quam rem pūblicam habēmus? in quā urbe vīvi-
 mus? Hīc, hīc sunt in nostrō numerō, patrēs cōnscriptī,
 25 in hōc orbis terrae sāctissimō gravissimōque cōnsiliō, quī
 dē nostrō omnium interitū, quī dē huius urbis atque adeō
 dē orbis terrārum exitiō cōgitent. Hōs ego videō cōsul
 et dē rē pūblicā sententiam rogō, et quōs ferrō trucīdārī
 oportēbat, eōs nōndum vōce volnerō! Fuistī igitur apud
 30 Laecam illā nocte, Catilīna, distribuistī partīs Italiae,

statuistī quō quemque proficīscī placēret, dēlēgistī quōs
 Rōmae relinquerēs, quōs tēcum ēdūcerēs, discrīpsistī urbis
 partīs ad incendia, cōnfīrmāstī tē ipsum iam esse exitūrum,
 dīxistī paulum tibi esse etiam nunc morae, quod ego vīve- 5
 rem. Repertī sunt duo equitēs Rōmānī quī tē istā cūrā
 liberārent et sē illā ipsā nocte paulō ante lūcem mē in meō
 lectō interfectūrōs esse pollicērentur. Haec ego omnia 10
 vixdum etiam coetū vestrō dīmissō comperī; domum meam
 maiōribus praesidiīs mūnīvī atque fīrmāvī, exclūsī eōs
 quōs tū ad mē salūtātum māne mīserās, cum illī ipsī vēnis- 10
 sent quōs ego iam multīs ac summīs virīs ad mē id temporis
 ventūrōs esse praedīxeram.

Catiline urged to leave the city

V. Quae cum ita sint, Catilīna, perge quō coepistī:
 ēgredere aliquandō ex urbe; patent portae; proficīscere.
 Nimium diū tē imperātōrem tua illa Mānliāna castra 15
 dēsīderant. Ēdūc tēcum etiam omnīs tuōs, sī minus, quam
 plūrimōs; pūrgā urbem. Magnō mē metū liberāverīs, modo
 inter mē atque tē mūrus intersit. Nōbīscum versārī iam
 diūtius nōn potes; nōn feram, nōn patiar, nōn sinam. 19
 Magna dīs immortālībus habenda est atque huic ipsī Iovī 11
 Statōrī, antīquissimō cūstōdī huius urbis, grātia, quod hanc
 tam taetram, tam horribilem tamque īfestam reī pūblīcae
 pestem totiēns iam effūgimus. Nōn est saepius in ūnō
 homine summa salūs perīclītanda reī pūblīcae. Quam diū
 mihi cōsulī dēsīgnātō, Catilīna, īnsidiātus es, nōn pūblicō 25
 mē praesidiō, sed prīvātā dīlīgentiā dēfendī. Cum proximīs
 comitiīs cōsulārībus mē cōsulem in campō et competī-
 tōrēs tuōs interficere voluistī, compressī cōnātūs tuōs nefā-
 riōs amīcōrum praesidiō et cōpiīs nullō tumultū pūblicē
 concitātō; dēnique, quotiēnscumque mē petistī, per mē 30

tibi obstitī, quamquam vidēbam perniciem meam cum
 12 magnā calamitāte reī pūblicae esse coniūctam. Nunc iam
 apertē rem pūblicam ūniversam petis, templa deōrum im-
 mortālium, tēcta urbis, vītā omnium cīvium, Italiam
 5 tōtam ad exitium et vāstitātem vocās. Quā rē, quoniam id
 quod est primum, et quod huius imperī disciplīnaeque
 maiōrum proprium est, facere nōndum audeō, faciam id
 quod est ad sevērītātem lēnius, ad commūnem salūtem
 ūtilius. Nam sī tē interficī iusserō, residēbit in rē pūblicā
 10 reliqua coniūrātōrum manus; sīn tū, quod tē iam dūdum
 hortor, exierīs, exhauriētur ex urbe tuōrum comitum magna
 13 et perniciosā sentīna reī pūblicae. Quid est, Catilīna?
 num dubitās id mē imperante facere quod iam tuā sponte
 faciēbās? Exīre ex urbe iubet cōsul hostem. Interrogās
 15 mē, num in exsilium? Nōn iubeō, sed, sī mē cōsulis,
 suādeō.

*A ruined man, as all know, why should he stay? His
 previous attempts*

VI. Quid est enim, Catilīna, quod tē iam in hāc urbe
 dēlectāre possit? in quā nēmō est extrā istam coniūrātiō-
 nem perditōrum hominum quī tē nōn metuat, nēmō quī
 20 nōn ōderit. Quae nota domesticae turpitūdinis nōn inūsta
 vītāe tuae est? quod prīvātārum rērum dēdecus nōn haeret
 in fāmā? quae libīdō ab oculīs, quod facinus ā manibus
 umquam tuīs, quod flāgitium ā tōtō corpore āfuit? cui tū
 adulēscēntulō quem corruptēlārū inlecebrīs inrētissēs
 25 nōn aut ad audāciam ferrum aut ad libīdinem facem prae-
 14 tulistī? Quid vērō? nūper cum morte superiōris uxōris
 novīs nūptiīs locum vacuēfēcissēs, nōnne etiam aliō incrē-
 dibilī scelere hoc scelus cumulāvistī? quod ego prae-
 mittō et facile patior silērī, nē in hāc cīvītāte tantī facinoris

11° Longitude East 13° from Greenwich 15°

17

9



13



ITALIA

Scale of miles
0 20 40 80 120

Longitude East 13° from Greenwich 15° 17°

immānitās aut exstittisse aut nōn vindicāta esse videātur. Praetmittō ruīnās fortūnārum tuārum quās omnīs proximīs Īdibus tibi impendēre sentiēs: ad illa veniō quae nōn ad prīvātam ignōminiam vitiōrum tuōrum, nōn ad domesticam tuam difficultātem ac turpitūdinem, sed ad summam 5 rem pūblicam atque ad omnium nostrum vītā salūtemque pertinent. Potestne tibi haec lūx, Catilīna, aut huius caeli 15 spīritus esse iūcundus, cum sciās esse hōrum nēminem quī nesciat tē prīdiē Kalendās Iānuāriās Lepidō et Tullō cōsulibus stetisse in comitiō cum tēlō, manum cōsulum 10 et prīncipum cīvītātis interficiendōrum causā parāvisse; scelerī ac furōrī tuō nōn mentem aliquam aut timōrem tuum sed Fortūnam populī Rōmānī obstittisse? Ac iam illa omittō—neque enim sunt aut obscūra aut nōn multa commissa postea—quotiēns tū mē dēsīgnātum, quotiēns vērō 15 cōsulem interficere cōnātus es! quot ego tuās petitiōnēs ita coniectās ut vītārī posse nōn vidērentur parvā quādam dēclīnātiōne et, ut aiunt, corpore effūgī! Nihil agīs, nihil adsequeris, neque tamen cōnārī ac velle dēsistis. Quotiēns 16 iam tibi extorta est ista sīca dē manibus, quotiēns excidit 20 cāsū aliquō et ēlāpsa est! Quae quidem quibus abs tē initiāta sacrīs ac dēvōta sit nesciō, quod eam necesse putās esse in cōsulis corpore dēfīgere.

He has every evidence that all hate and fear him. Why not leave?

VII. Nunc vērō quae tua est ista vīta? Sīc enim iam tēcū loquar, nōn ut odiō permōtus esse videar, quō dēbeō, 25 sed ut misericordiā, quae tibi nūlla dēbētur. Vēnistī paulō ante in senātum: quis tē ex hāc tantā frequentīā, tot ex tuīs amīcīs ac necessāriīs salūtāvit? Sī hoc post hominum memoriā contigit nēminī, vōcis expectās contumēliā,

cum sīs gravissimō iūdicīō taciturnitātis oppressus? Quid?
quod adventū tuō ista subsellia vacuēfacta sunt, quod
omnēs cōsulārēs quī tibi persaepe ad caedem cōstitutī
fuērunt, simul atque adsēdistī, partem istam subselliōrum
5 nūdā atque inānem reliquērunt, quō tandem animō tibi
17 ferendum putās? Servī mehercule meī sī mē istō pactō
metuerent ut tē metuunt omnēs cīvēs tuī, domum meam
relinquendam putārem: tū tibi urbem nōn arbitrāris? et
sī mē meis cīvibus iniuriā suspectum tam graviter atque
10 offēsum vidērem, carēre mē aspectū cīvium quam īfestīs
omnium oculīs cōspicī māllem: tū, cum cōscientiā scele-
rum tuōrum agnōscās odium omnium iūstum et iam diū
tibi dēbitum, dubitās quōrum mentīs sēnsūsque volnerās,
eōrum aspectum praesentiamque vītāre? Sī tē parentēs
15 timērent atque ōdisent tuī neque eōs ūllā ratiōne plācāre
possēs, ut opīnor, ab eōrum oculīs aliquō concēderēs. Nunc
tē patria, quae commūnis est parēns omnium nostrum, ōdit
ac metuit et iam diū nihil tē iūdicat nisi dē parricidiō suō
19 cōgitāre: huius tū neque auctōritātem verēbere nec iūdi-
18 cium sequēre nec vim pertimēscēs? Quae tēcum, Catilīna,
sīc agit et quōdam modō tacita loquitur: 'Nūllum iam ali-
quot annīs facinus exstitit nisi per tē, nūllum flāgitium sine
tē; tibi ūnī multōrum cīvium necēs, tibi vexātiō dīreptiōque
sociōrum impūnīta fuit ac libera; tū nōn solum ad negle-
25 gendās lēgēs et quaestiōnēs vērū etiam ad ēvertendās per-
fringendāsque valuistī. Superiōra illa, quamquam ferenda
nōn fuērunt, tamen ut potuī tulī; nunc vērō mē tōtam esse
in metū propter ūnum tē, quicquid increpuerit, Catilīnam
timērī, nūllum vidērī contrā mē cōsiliū inīrī posse quod
30 ā tuō scelere abhorreat, nōn est ferendum. Quam ob rem
discēde atque hunc mihi timōrem ēripe; sī est vērū, nē
opprimar, sīn falsus, ut tandem aliquandō timēre dēsīnam.'

VIII. Haec sī tēcum, ut dīxī, patria loquātur, nōne impe- 19
trāre dēbeat, etiam sī vim adhibēre nōn possit? Quid
quod tū tē in cūstōdiam dedistī, quod vītandae suspīciōnis
causā ad M'. Lepidum tē habitāre velle dīxistī? Ā quō
nōn receptus etiam ad mē venīre ausus es, atque ut domī 5
meae tē adservārem rogāstī. Cum ā mē quoque id respōn-
sum tulissēs, mē nullō modō posse īsdem parietibus tūtō
esse tēcum, quī magnō in perīculō essem quod īsdem
moenibus continērēmur, ad Q. Metellum praetōrem vēnistī.
A quō repudiātus ad sodālem tuum, virum optimum, 10
M. Metellum dēmigrāstī, quem tū vidēlicet et ad cūstōdien-
dum tē diligentissimum et ad suspicandum sagācissimum et
ad vindicandum fortissimum fore putāstī. Sed quam longē
vidētur ā carcere atque ā vīculīs abesse dēbēre quī sē 14
ipse iam dignum cūstōdiā iūdicārit? Quae cum ita sint, 20
Catilīna, dubitās, sī ēmorī aequō animō nōn potes, abīre
in aliquās terrās et vītā istā multīs suppliciīs iūstīs
dēbitisque ēreptam fugae sōlitūdīnīque mandāre?

*No vote is needed to show the senate's assent. Their silence
is eloquent*

'Refer' inquis 'ad senātum'; id enim postulās et, sī hic
ōrdō placēre sibi dēcrēverit tē īre in exsilium, obtemperā- 20
tūrum tē esse dīcis. Nōn referam, id quod abhorret ā meīs
mōribus, et tamen faciam ut intellegās quid hī dē tē
sentiant. Ēgredere ex urbe, Catilīna, liberā rem pūblicā
metū, in exsilium, sī hanc vōcem exspectās, proficīscere.—
Quid est? ecquid attendis, ecquid animadvertis hōrum 25
silentium? Patiuntur, tacent. Quid exspectās auctōritātem
loquentium, quōrum voluntātem tacitōrum perspicis? At 21
sī hoc idem huic adulēscentī optimō P. Sēstiō, sī fortissimō
virō M. Mārcellō dīxissem, iam mihi cōsulī hōc ipsō in

templō senātus iūre optimō vim et manūs intulisset. Dē tē autem, Catilīna, cum quiēscunt, probant, cum patiuntur, dēcernunt, cum tacent, clāmant, neque hī solum quōrum tibi auctōritās est vidēlicet cāra, vīta vīlissima, sed etiam
 5 illī equitēs Rōmānī, honestissimī atque optimī virī, cēterī-
 que fortissimī cīvēs quī circumstant senātum, quōrum tū et frequentiam vidēre et studia perspicere et vōcēs paulō ante exaudīre potuistī. Quōrum ego vix abs tē iam diū manūs ac tēla contineō, eōsdem facile addūcam ut tē haec
 10 quae vāstāre iam prīdem studēs relinquentem ūsque ad portās prōsequantur.

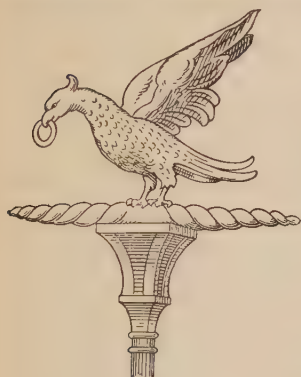
He may go into exile, or join Manlius and his army

22 IX. Quamquam quid loquor? tē ut ūlla rēs frangat, tū ut umquam tē corrigās, tū ut ūllam fugam meditēre, tū ut ūllum exsilium cōgitēs? Vtinam tibi istam mentem dī im-
 15 mortālēs duint! tametsī videō, sī meā vōce perterritus īre in exsilium animum indūxerīs, quanta tempestās invidiae nōbīs, sī minus in praesēns tempus recentī memoriā scele-
 rum tuōrum, at in posteritātem impendeat. Sed est tantī, dum modo tua ista sit prīvāta calamitās et ā reī pūblicae
 20 periculīs sēiungātur. Sed tū ut vitiīs tuīs commoveāre, ut lēgum poenās pertimēscās, ut temporibus reī pūblicae cēdās nōn est postulandum. Neque enim is es, Catilīna, ut tē aut pudor ā turpitūdine aut metus ā periculō aut ratiō ā
 23 furōre revocārit. Quam ob rem, ut saepe iam dīxī, profi-
 25 cīscere ac, sī mihi inimicō, ut praedicās, tuō cōnflāre vīs invidiam, rēctā perge in exsilium; vix feram sermōnēs hominum, sī id fēceris; vix mōlem istīus invidiae, sī in ex-
 silium iussū cōsulis īverīs, sustinēbō. Sīn autem servīre meae laudī et glōriae māvīs, ēgredere cum importūnā scele-
 30 rātōrum manū, cōnfer tē ad Mānlium, concitā perditōs

cīvīs, sēcerne tē ā bonīs, īnfer patriae bellum, exsultā impiō
latrōciniō, ut ā mē nōn ēiectus ad aliēnōs, sed invītātus ad
tuōs īsse videāris.

*All preparations have been made, and old habits fit him
for violence*

Quamquam quid ego tē invītem, ā quō iam sciam esse 24
praemissōs quī tibi ad Forum Aurēlium praestōlārentur 5



THE STANDARD OF A
LEGION

armātī, cui sciam pactam et cōn-
stitūtā cum Mānliō diem, ā quō
etiam aquilam illam argenteam
quam tibi ac tuīs omnibus cōn-
fidō perniciosā ac fūnestā fu- 10
tūrā, cui domī tuae sacrārium
scelerum cōstitutum fuit, sciam
esse praemissā? Tū ut illā
carēre diūtius possīs, quam vene-
rārī ad caedem proficiscēns so- 15
lēbās, ā cuius altāribus saepe
istam impiam dexteram ad necem
cīvium trānstulistī? X. Ībis tan- 25
dem aliquandō quō tē iam prīdem

tua ista cupiditās effrēnāta ac furiōsa rapiēbat; neque enim 20
tibi haec rēs adfert dolōrem, sed quandam incrēdibilem
voluptātem. Ad hanc tē āmentiam nātūra peperit, voluntās
exercuit, fortūna servāvit. Numquam tū nōn modo otium
sed nē bellum quidem nisi nefārium concupistī. Nactus
es ex perditīs atque ab omnī nōn modo fortūnā vērum 25
etiam spē dērelictīs cōflātā improbōrum manum. Hīc 26
tū quā laetitiā perfruēre, quibus gaudiīs exsultābis, quantā
in voluptāte bacchābere, cum in tantō numerō tuōrum ne-
que audiēs virum bonum quemquam neque vidēbis! Ad

huius vītāe studium meditātī illī sunt quī feruntur labōrēs
 tuī, iacēre humī nōn solum ad obsidendum stuprum vērū
 etiam ad facinus obeundum, vigilāre nōn solum insidiantem
 somnō marītōrum vērū etiam bonīs ōtiōsōrum. Habēs
 5 ubi ostentēs tuam illam praeclāram patientiam famis, frī-
 goris, inopiae rērū omnium, quibus tē brevī tempore
 27 cōfectum esse sentiēs. Tantum prōfēcī, cum tē ā cōnsu-
 lātū reppulī, ut exsul potius temptāre quam cōsul vexāre
 rem pūblicā possēs, atque ut id quod esset ā tē scelerātē
 10 susceptum latrōcinium potius quam bellum nōminārētur.

*There may be protest, but Cicero can defend his course in
 allowing the traitor to leave*

XI. Nunc, ut ā mē, patrēs cōscriptī, quandam prope
 iūstā patriae querimōniam dētester ac dēprecer, percipite,
 quaesō, diligenter quae dīcam, et ea penitus animīs vestrīs
 mentibusque mandāte. Etenim sī mēcum patria, quae
 15 mihi vītā meā multō est cārīor, sī cūncta Italia, sī omnis
 rēs pūblica loquātur: 'M. Tullī, quid agis? Tūne eum
 quem esse hostem comperistī, quem ducem bellī futūrum
 vidēs, quem exspectārī imperātōrem in castrīs hostium
 sentīs, auctōrem sceleris, prīncipem coniūrātiōnis, ēvocā-
 20 tōrem servōrum et cīvium perditōrum, exīre patiēre, ut abs
 tē nōn ēmissus ex urbe, sed immissus in urbem esse videā-
 tur? Nōne hunc in vincla dūcī, nōn ad mortem rapī, nōn
 summō suppliciō mactārī imperābis? Quid tandem tē
 28 impedit? mōsne maiōrum? At persaepe etiam prīvātī in
 25 hāc rē pūblicā perniciōsōs cīvīs morte multārunt. An lēgēs
 quae dē cīvium Rōmānōrum suppliciō rogātae sunt? At
 numquam in hāc urbe quī ā rē pūblicā dēfēcērunt cīvium
 iūra tenuērunt. An invidiam posteritātis timēs? Prae-
 clāram vērō populō Rōmānō refers grātiā, quī tē, homi-

nem per tē cognitum, nullā commendātiōne maiōrum, tam
 mātūrē ad summum imperium per omnīs honōrum gradūs
 extulit, sī propter invidiam aut alicuius periculī metum
 salūtem cīvium tuōrum neglegis. Sed sī quis est invidiae 29
 metus, nōn est vehementius sevērītātis ac fortitūdinis 5
 invidia quam inertiae ac nēquitiae pertimēscenda. An,
 cum bellō vāstābitur Italia, vexābuntur urbēs, tēcta ārdē-
 bunt, tum tē nōn exīstimās invidiae incendiō cōnflagrātū-
 rum?’ XII. Hīs ego sānctissimīs rei pūblicae vōcibus et
 eōrum hominum quī hoc idem sentiunt mentibus pauca 10
 respondēbō. Ego, sī hoc optimum factū iūdicārem, patrēs
 cōnscriptī, Catilīnam morte multārī, ūnīus ūsūram hōrae
 gladiātōrī istī ad vīvendum nōn dedissem. Etenim sī
 summī virī et clārissimī cīvēs Sāturnīnī et Gracchōrum et
 Flaccī et superiōrum complūrium sanguine nōn modo sē 15
 nōn contāminārunt sed etiam honestārunt, certē verendum
 mihi nōn erat nē quid hōc parricidā cīvium interfectō
 invidiae mihi in posteritātem redundāret. Quod sī ea mihi
 maximē impendēret, tamen hōc animō fuī semper ut invi-
 diam virtūte partam glōriam, nōn invidiam putārem. 20

*Better that Catiline depart,—clear proof of conspiracy;
 the rest also should go*

Quamquam nōn nullī sunt in hōc ōrdine quī aut ea quae 30
 imminent nōn videant aut ea quae vident dissimulent; quī
 spem Catilīnae mollibus sententiīs aluērunt coniūrātiōnem-
 que nāscētem nōn crēdendō conrōborāvērunt; quōrum
 auctōritāte multī nōn solum improbī vērū etiam imperītī, 25
 sī in hunc animadvertissem, crūdēliter et rēgiē factum esse
 dīcerent. Nunc intellegō, sī iste, quō intendit, in Mānliāna
 castra pervēnerit, nēminem tam stultum fore quī nōn
 videat coniūrātiōnem esse factam, nēminem tam impro-

bum quī nōn fateātur. Hōc autem ūnō interfectō intellegō hanc reī pūblīcae pestem paulisper reprimī, nōn in perpetuum comprimī posse. Quod sī sēsē ēiēcerit sēcumque suōs ēdūxerit et eōdem cēterōs undique conlētōs naufragōs 5 adgregārit, exstinguētur atque dēlēbitur nōn modo haec



SITE OF THE TEMPLE OF JUPITER STATOR

tam adulta reī pūblīcae pestis vērūm etiam stirps ac sēmen
 31 malōrum omnium. XIII. Etenim iam diū, patrēs cōn-
 scriptī, in hīs perīculīs coniūrātiōnis īnsidiisque versāmur,
 sed nesciō quō pactō omnium scelerum ac veteris furōris et
 10 audāciae mātūritās in nostrī cōsulātūs tempus ērūpit.
 Hōc sī ex tantō latrōciniō iste ūnus tollētur, vidēbimur
 fortasse ad breve quoddam tempus cūrā et metū esse
 relevātī, perīculum autem residēbit et erit inclūsum penitus
 in vēnīs atque in vīsceribus reī pūblīcae. Vt saepe hominēs

aegrī morbō gravī, cum aestū febrīque iactantur, sī aquam gelidam bibērunt, prīmō relevārī videntur, deinde multō gravius vehementiusque adflīctantur, sīc hic morbus quī est in rē pūblicā relevātus istīus poenā vehementius reliquīs 4 vīvīs ingravēscet. Quā rē sēcēdant improbī, sēcernant sē 32 ā bonīs, ūnum in locum congregentur, mūrō dēnique, quod saepe iam dīxī, sēcernantur ā nōbīs; dēsinant īnsidiārī domī suae cōsulī, circumstāre tribūnal praetōris urbānī, obsidēre cum gladiīs cūriam, malleolōs et facēs ad īnflammandam urbem comparāre; sit dēnique īnscrīptum in 10 fronte ūnīus cuiusque quid dē rē pūblicā sentiat. Polliceor hoc vōbīs, patrēs cōscrīptī, tantam in nōbīs cōsulis fore dīligentiam, tantam in vōbīs auctōritātem, tantam in equitibus Rōmānīs virtūtem, tantam in omnibus bonīs cōnsēnsiōnem ut Catilīnae profectiōne omnia patefacta, 15 īnlūstrāta, oppressa, vindicāta esse videātis.

He may plunge into civil war, but Jupiter will defend and punish

Hīsce ōminibus, Catilīna, cum summā reī pūblicae sa- 33 lūte, cum tuā peste ac perniciē cumque eōrum exitiō quī sē tēcum omnī scelere parricīdiōque iūnxērunt, proficīscere ad impium bellum ac nefārium. Tū, Iuppiter, quī īdem 20 quibus haec urbs auspiciīs ā Rōmulō es cōstitutus, quem Statōrem huius urbis atque imperī vērē nōmināmus, hunc et huius sociōs ā tuīs cēterisque templīs, ā tēctīs urbis ac moenibus, ā vītā fortūnisque cīvium omnium arcēbis et hominēs bonōrum inimīcōs, hostīs patriae, latrōnēs Italiae 25 sclerum foedere inter sē ac nefāriā societāte coniūctōs aeternīs suppliciīs vīvōs mortuōsque mactābis.



Photograph by Alinari Brothers

THE FORUM FROM S. FRANCESCA ROMANA

M. TVLLI CICERONIS
IN L. CATILINAM ORATIO SECVNDA

HABITA AD POPVLVM

*Catiline has departed,—a relief, even a victory, for us ;
a disappointment for him*

TANDEM aliquandō, Quirītēs, L. Catilīnam, furen- 1
tem audāciā, scelus anhelantem, pestem patriae
nefāriē mōlientem, vōbīs atque huic urbī ferrō flam-
maeque minitanti ex urbe vel ēiēcimus vel ēmīsimum vel
ipsum ēgredientem verbīs prōsecūtī sumus. Abiit, excessit, 5
ēvāsīt, ērūpit. Nūlla iam perniciēs ā mōnstrō illō atque
prōdigiō moenibus ipsīs intrā moenia comparābitur. Atque
hunc quidem ūnum huius bellī domesticī ducem sine contrō-
versiā vīcimus. Nōn enim iam inter latera nostra sīca illa
versābitur, nōn in campō, nōn in forō, nōn in cūrīā, nōn 10
dēnique intrā domesticōs parietēs pertimēscēmus. Locō
ille mōtus est, cum est ex urbe dēpulsus. Palam iam cum
hoste nūllō impediēte bellum iūstum gerēmus. Sine dubiō
perdidimus hominem magnificēque vīcimus, cum illum ex 14
occultīs insidiīs in apertum latrōcinium coniēcimus. Quod 2
vērō nōn cruentum mūcrōnem, ut voluit, extulit, quod vīvīs
nōbīs ēgressus est, quod ei ferrum ē manibus extorsimus,
quod incolumīs cīvīs, quod stantem urbem relīquit, quantō
tandem illum maerōre esse afflīctum et prōflīgātum pu-
tātis? Iacet ille nunc prōstrātus, Quirītēs, et sē percul- 20

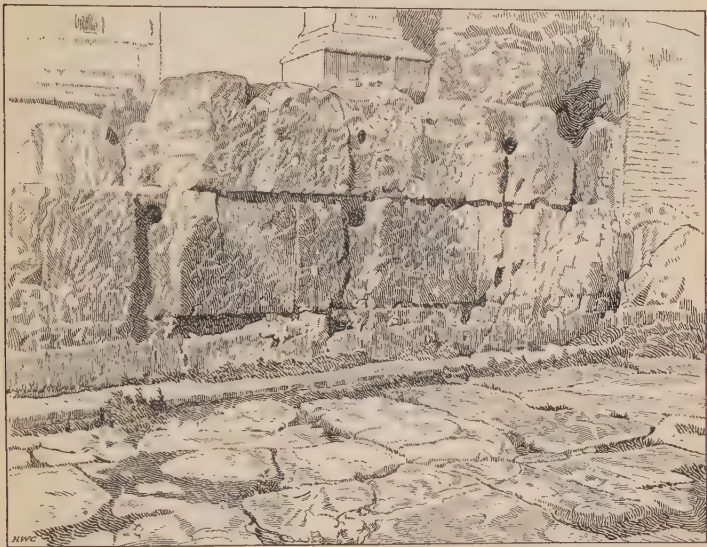
sum atque abiectum esse sentit, et retorquet oculōs profectō saepe ad hanc urbem quam ē suīs faucibus ēreptam esse lūget; quae quidem mihi laetārī vidētur, quod tantam pestem ēvomuerit forāsque prōiēcerit.

With many still unconvinced, he could not receive his deserts here. All is clear now. Those left behind are more dangerous than his 'army.' But we know their plans

3 II. Ac sī quis est tālis quālīs esse omnīs oportēbat, quī in hōc ipsō in quō exsultat et triumphat ōrātiō mea mē vehementer accūset, quod tam capitālem hostem nōn comprehenderim potius quam ēmiserim, nōn est ista mea culpa, Quirītēs, sed temporum. Interfectum esse L. Catilīnam
10 et gravissimō suppliciō adfectum iam prīdem oportēbat, idque ā mē et mōs maiōrum et huius imperī sevērītās et rēs pūblica postulābat. Sed quam multōs fuisse putātis quī quae ego dēferrem nōn crēderent, quam multōs quī propter stultitiam nōn putārent, quam multōs quī etiam dēfende-
15 rent, quam multōs quī propter improbitātem favērent? Ac sī illō sublātō dēpellī ā vōbīs omne perīculum iūdicārem, iam prīdem ego L. Catilīnam nōn modo invidiae meae
4 vērū etiam vītae perīculō sustulissem. Sed cum vidērem, nē vōbīs quidem omnibus etiam tum rē probātā, sī illum,
20 ut erat meritis, morte multāssem, fore ut eius sociōs invidiā oppressus persequī nōn possem, rem hūc dēdūxī ut tum palam pugnāre possētis cum hostem apertē vidērētis. Quem quidem ego hostem, Quirītēs, quam vehementer forīs esse timendum putem, licet hinc intellegātis, quod etiam
25 illud molestē ferō quod ex urbe parum comitātus exierit. Vtinam ille omnīs sēcum suās cōpiās ēdūxisset! Tongilium mihi ēdūxit quem amāre in praetextā coeperat, Pūblicium et Minucium quōrum aes aliēnum contrāctum in popinā

nūllum rei pūblicae mōtum adferre poterat: reliquit quōs virōs, quantō aere aliēnō, quam valentīs, quam nōbilīs!

III. Itaque ego illum exercitum prae Gallicānīs legiōnibus 5 et hōc dīlētū quem in agrō Pīcēnō et Gallicō Q. Metellus habuit, et hīs cōpiīs quae ā nōbīs cotīdiē comparantur, 5



THE ROSTRA OF THE EMPIRE (BEFORE RESTORATION)

magnō opere contemnō, conlētum ex senibus dēspērātīs, ex agrestī lūxuriā, ex rūsticīs dēcoctōribus, ex eīs quī vadi-
mōnia dēserere quam illum exercitum māluerunt; quibus
ego nōn modo sī aciem exercitūs nostrī, vērū etiam sī
ēdictum praetōris ostenderō, concident. Hōs quōs vidēō 10
volitāre in forō, quōs stāre ad cūriam, quōs etiam in senā-
tum venīre, quī nitent unguentīs, quī fulgent purpurā,
māllem sēcum suōs mīlitēs ēdūxisset: quī sī hīc permanent,

mementōte nōn tam exercitum illum esse nōbīs quam hōs
 quī exercitum dēseruērunt pertimēscendōs. Atque hōc
 etiam sunt timendī magis quod quid cōgitent mē scīre sen-
 6 tiunt neque tamen permoventur. Videō cui sit Āpūlia
 5 attribūta, quis habeat Etrūriam, quis agrum Picēnum, quis
 Gallicum, quis sibi hās urbānās īnsidiās caedis atque incen-
 diōrum dēpoposcerit. Omnia superiōris noctis cōnsilia ad
 mē perlāta esse sentiunt; patefēcī in senātū hesternō diē;
 Catilīna ipse pertimuit, profūgit: hī quid exspectant? Nē
 10 illī vehementer errant, sī illam meam prīstinam lēnitātem
 perpetuam spērant futūram.

*Let them go. We are rid of Catiline, with all his depravity. Let
 his companions go too, or meet what they deserve, if they do not
 keep the peace*

IV. Quod exspectāvī iam sum adsecūtus, ut vōs omnēs
 factam esse apertē coniūrātiōnem contrā rem pūblicam
 vidērētis; nisi vērō sī quis est quī Catilīnae similis cum
 15 Catilīnā sentīre nōn putet. Nōn est iam lēnitātī locus;
 sevērītātem rēs ipsa flāgitat. Vnum etiam nunc concēdam:
 exeant, proficīcantur, nē patiantur dēsīderiō suī Catilīnam
 miserum tābēscere. Dēmōnstrābō iter: Aurēliā viā pro-
 19 fectus est; sī accelerāre volent, ad vesperam cōnsequantur.
 7 Ō fortunātam rem pūblicam, sī quidem hanc sentīnam
 urbis ēiēcerit! Vnō mehercule Catilīnā exhaustō levāta
 mihi et recreāta rēs pūblica vidētur. Quid enim malī aut
 sceleris fingī aut cōgītārī potest quod nōn ille concēperit?
 quis tōtā Italiā venēficus, quis gladiātor, quis latrō, quis
 25 sīcārius, quis parricīda, quis testāmentōrum subiector, quis
 circumscrīptor, quis gāneō, quis nepōs, quis adulter, quae
 mulier īnfāmis, quis corruptor iuventūtis, quis corruptus,
 quis perditus invenīrī potest quī sē cum Catilīnā nōn

familiārissimē vīxisse fateātur? quae caedēs per hōsce annōs sine illō facta est, quod nefārium stuprum nōn per illum? Iam vērō quae tanta umquam in ūllō iuventūtis 8 inlecebra fuit quanta in illō? quī aliōs ipse amābat turpissimē, aliōrum amōrī flāgitiōsissimē serviēbat, aliīs 5 fructum libīdinum, aliīs mortem parentum nōn modo impellendō vērū etiam adiuvandō pollicēbātur. Nunc vērō quam subitō nōn solum ex urbe vērū etiam ex agrīs ingentem numerum perditōrum hominum conlēgerat! Nēmō nōn modo Rōmae sed nē ūllō quidem in angulō 10 tōtīus Italiae oppressus aere aliēnō fuit quem nōn ad hoc incrēdibile sceleris foedus ascīverit. V. Atque ut eius 9 dīversa studia in dissimilī ratiōne perspicere possītis, nēmō est in lūdō gladiātōriō paulō ad facinus audācior quī sē nōn intimum Catilīnae esse fateātur, nēmō in scaenā levior 15 et nēquior quī sē nōn eiusdem prope sodālem fuisse commemoret. Atque idem tamen stuprōrum et scelerum exercitātiōne adsuēfactus, frīgore et famē et sitī et vigiliīs perferendīs fortis ab istīs praedicābātur, cum industriae subsidia atque instrūmenta virtūtis in libīdine audāciāque 20 cōnsūmeret. Hunc vērō sī secūtī erunt suī comitēs, sī ex 10 urbe exierint dēspērātōrum hominum flāgitiōsī gregēs, ō nōs beātōs, ō rem pūblicam fortūnātam, ō praeclāram laudem cōsulātūs meī! Nōn enim iam sunt mediocrēs hominum libīdinēs, nōn hūmānae et tolerandae audāciae; 25 nihil cōgitant nisi caedem, nisi incendia, nisi rapīnās. Patrimōnia sua profūdērunt, fortūnās suās obligāvērunt; rēs eōs iam prīdem, fidēs nūper dēficere coepit: eadem tamen illa quae erat in abundantīā libīdō permanet. Quod sī in vīnō et āleā cōmissātiōnēs solum et scorta quaererent, 30 essent illī quidem dēspērandī, sed tamen essent ferendī: hoc vērō quis ferre possit, inertīs hominēs fortissimīs virīs

īnsidiārī, stultissimōs prūdentissimīs, ēbriōs sōbriīs, dor-
 mientīs vigilantibus? quī mihi accubantēs in convīviīs,
 complexī mulierēs impudīcās, vīnō languidī, cōnfertī cibō,
 sertīs redimītī, unguentīs oblitī, dēbilitātī stuprīs ēructant
 5 sermōnibus suīs caedem bonōrum atque urbis incendia.
 11 Quibus ego cōnfidō impendēre fātum aliquod, et poenam
 iam diū improbitātī, nēquitiae, scelerī, libīdinī dēbitam aut
 īnstāre iam plānē aut certē appropinquāre. Quōs sī meus
 cōnsulātus, quoniam sārāre nōn potest, sustulerit, nōn
 10 breve nesciō quod tempus sed multa saecula prōpāgārit reī
 pūblīcae. Nūlla enim est nātīō quam pertimēscāmus,
 nūllus rēx quī bellum populō Rōmānō facere possit; omnia
 sunt externa ūnūs virtūte terrā marīque pācāta: domes-
 ticum bellum manet, intus īnsidiae sunt, intus inclūsum
 15 perīculum est, intus est hostis. Cum lūxuriā nōbīs, cum
 āmentīā, cum scelere certandum est. Huic ego mē bellō
 ducem profiteor, Quirītēs; suscipiō inimīcitiās hominum
 perditōrum; quae sārārī poterunt quācumque ratiōne
 sārābō, quae resecanda erunt nōn patiar ad perniciem
 20 cīvītātis manēre. Proinde aut exeant aut quiēscant aut,
 sī et in urbe et in eādem mente permanent, ea quae meren-
 tur exspectent.

*Did I drive Catiline into exile? The scene in the senate
 yesterday. He means war, not exile*

12 VI. At etiam sunt quī dīcant, Quirītēs, ā mē ēiectum
 esse Catilīnam; quod ego sī verbō adsequī possem, istōs
 25 ipsōs ēicerem quī haec loquuntur. Homō enim vidēlicet
 timidus aut etiam permodestus vōcem cōsulis ferre nōn
 potuit; simul atque īre in exsilium iussus est, pārūit.
 Quīn hesternō diē, cum domī meae paene interfectus
 essem, senātum in aedem Iovis Statōris convocāvī, rem

omnem ad patrēs cōscriptōs dētulī. Quō cum Catilīna
vēnisset, quis eum senātor appellāvit, quis salūtāvit, quis
dēnique ita aspexit ut perditum cīvem ac nōn potius ut
importūnissimum hostem? Quīn etiam prīncipēs eius
ōrdinis partem illam subselliōrum ad quam ille accesserat 5
nūdā atque inānem reliquērunt. Hīc ego, vehemēns ille 13



FASCES

cōsul quī verbō cīvīs in exsilium ēiciō,
quaesivī ā Catilīnā in nocturnō con-
ventū ad M. Laecam fuisset necne.
Cum ille homō audācissimus cōscien- 10
tiā convictus prīmō reticuisset, patefēcī
cētera: quid eā nocte ēgisset, ubi fuis-
set, quid in proximam cōstituisset,
quem ad modum esset eī ratiō tōtīus

bellī dēscripta ēdocuī. Cum haesitāret, cum tenērētur, 15
quaesivī quid dubitāret proficīscī eō quō iam prīdem parā-
ret, cum arma, cum secūrīs, cum fascīs, cum tubās, cum
signa militāria, cum aquilam illam argenteam cui ille
etiam sacrārium domī suae fēcerat scīrem esse praemis- 19
sam. In exsilium ēficiēbam quem iam ingressum esse in 14
bellum vīderam? Etenim, crēdō, Mānlius iste centuriō
quī in agrō Faesulānō castra posuit bellum populō Rōmānō
suō nōmine indīxit, et illa castra nunc nōn Catilīnam ducem
exspectant, et ille ēiectus in exsilium sē Massiliam, ut aiunt,
nōn in haec castra cōnfert. 25

*If it be exile, I am content to be called a tyrant. You will soon
hear that he is with that 'army,'—his own preference, and the
wish of his friends*

VII. Ō condiōnem miseram nōn modo administrandae
vērum etiam cōservandae rei pūblicae! Nunc sī L. Catilīna
cōsiliīs, labōribus, periculīs meis circumclūsus ac

dēbilitātus subitō pertimuerit, sententiam mūtāverit, dēse-
ruerit suōs, cōnsilium bellī faciendī abiēcerit, et ex hōc
cursū sceleris ac bellī iter ad fugam atque in exsilium con-
verterit, nōn ille ā mē spoliātus armīs audāciae, nōn
5 obstupefactus ac perterritus meā dīligentiā, nōn dē spē
cōnātūque dēpulsus, sed indemnātus innocēns in exsilium
ēiectus ā cōnsule vī et minīs esse dīcētur: et erunt quī
illum, sī hoc fēcerit, nōn improbum sed miserum, mē nōn
9 dīligentissimum cōnsulem sed crūdēlissimum tyrannum
15 exīstimārī velint! Est mihi tantī, Quirītēs, huius invidiae
falsae atque inīquae tempestātem subīre, dum modo ā
vōbīs huius horribilis bellī ac nefāriī perīculum dēpellātur.
Dīcātur sānē ēiectus esse ā mē, dum modo eat in exsilium.
Sed mihi crēdite, nōn est itūrus. Numquam ego ab dīs
15 immortalibus optābō, Quirītēs, invidiae meae relevandae
causā ut L. Catilīnam dūcere exercitum hostium atque in
armīs volitāre audiātis, sed trīduō tamen audiētis; multō-
que magis illud timeō nē mihi sit invidiōsum aliquandō
quod illum ēmiserim potius quam quod ēiēcerim. Sed cum
20 sint hominēs quī illum, cum profectus sit, ēiectum esse
16 dīcant, idem, sī interfectus esset, quid dīcerent? Quam-
quam istī quī Catilīnam Massiliam īre dictitant nōn tam
hoc queruntur quam verentur. Nēmō est istōrum tam
misericors quī illum nōn ad Mānlium quam ad Massiliēnsīs
25 īre mālīt. Ille autem, sī mehercule hoc quod agit num-
quam antēā cōgitāsset, tamen latrōcinantem sē interficī
māllet quam exsulem vīvere. Nunc vērō, cum eī nihil
adhūc praeter ipsīus voluntātem cōgitātiōnemque acciderit,
nisi quod vīvīs nōbīs Rōmā profectus est, optēmus potius
30 ut eat in exsilium quam querāmur.

His followers here should reform. They consist of six different classes (see outline, p. 306)

VIII. Sed cūr tam diū dē ūnō hoste loquimur et dē eō 17
 hoste quī iam fatētur sē esse hostem, et quem, quia, quod
 semper voluī, mūrus interest, nōn timeō: dē hīs quī dissi-
 mulant, quī Rōmae remanent, quī nōbiscum sunt nihil
 dīcimus? Quōs quidem ego, sī ūllō modō fierī possit, nōn 5
 tam ulciscī studeō quam sānāre sibi ipsōs, plācāre reī
 pūblicae, neque id quā rē fierī nōn possit, sī mē audire
 volent, intellegō. Expōnam enim vōbīs, Quirītēs, ex quibus
 generibus hominum istae cōpiae comparentur; deinde
 singulīs medicīnam cōsilī atque ōrātiōnis meae, sī quam 10
 poterō, adferam.—Vnum genus est eōrum quī magnō in 18
 aere aliēnō maiōrēs etiam possessiōnēs habent quārum
 amōre adductī dissolvī nūllō modō possunt. Hōrum ho-
 minum speciēs est honestissima—sunt enim locuplētēs—
 voluntās vērō et causa impudentissima. Tū agrīs, tū 15
 aedificiīs, tū argentō, tū familiā, tū rēbus omnibus ōrnā-
 tus et cōpiōsus sīs, et dubitēs dē possessiōne dētrahere,
 adquīrere ad fidem? Quid enim exspectās? bellum? Quid
 ergō? in vāstātiōne omnium tuās possessiōnēs sacrōsānctās
 futūrās putēs? an tabulās novās? Errant quī istās ā 20
 Catilīnā exspectant: meō beneficiō tabulae novae prō-
 feruntur, vērū auctiōnāriae; neque enim istī quī posses-
 siōnēs habent aliā ratiōne ūllā salvī esse possunt. Quod
 sī mātūrius facere voluissent neque, id quod stultissimum
 est, certāre cum ūsūrīs frūctibus praediōrum, et locuplē- 25
 tiōribus hīs et meliōribus cīvibus ūterēmur. Sed hōsce
 hominēs minimē putō pertimēscendōs, quod aut dēdūcī dē
 sentiā possunt aut, sī permanēbunt, magis mihi videntur
 vōta factūrī contrā rem pūblicam quam arma lātūrī.

19 IX. Alterum genus est eōrum quī, quamquam premuntur
aere aliēnō, dominātiōnem tamen exspectant, rērum potīrī
volunt, honōrēs quōs quiētā rē públicā dēspērānt pertur-
bātā sē cōsequī posse arbitrantur. Quibus hoc praecipien-
5 dum vidētur, ūnum scilicet et idem quod reliquīs omnibus,
ut dēspērent id quod cōnantur sē cōsequī posse: primum
omnium mē ipsum vigilāre, adesse, prōvidēre rēi públicae;
deinde magnōs animōs esse in bonīs virīs, magnam concor-
diam, maximam multitudinem, magnās praetereā militum
10 cōpiās; deōs dēnique immortalīs huic invictō populō,
clārissimō imperiō, pulcherrimae urbī contrā tantam vim
sceleris praesentīs auxilium esse lātūrōs. Quod sī iam sint
id quod summō furōre cupiunt adeptī, num illī in cinere
urbis et in sanguine cīvium, quae mente cōnsclerātā ac
15 nefāriā concupivērunt, cōsulēs sē aut dictātōrēs aut etiam
rēgēs spērānt futūrōs? Nōn vident id sē cupere quod, sī
adeptī sint, fugitivō alicui aut gladiātōrī concēdī sit ne-
20 cesse? — Tertium genus est aetāte iam adfectum, sed tamen
exercitātiōne rōbustum; quō ex genere iste est Mānlius
20 cui nunc Catilīna succēdit. Hī sunt hominēs ex eīs colōniīs
quās Sulla cōstituit; quās ego ūniversās cīvium esse
optimōrum et fortissimōrum virōrum sentiō, sed tamen
eī sunt colōnī quī sē *in* inspērātīs ac repentinīs pecūniīs
sūmptuōsius insolentiusque iactārunt. Hī dum aedificant
25 tamquam beātī, dum praediīs lēctīs, familiīs magnīs, convī-
viīs apparātīs dēlectantur, in tantum aes aliēnum incidē-
runt ut, sī salvī esse velint, Sulla sit eīs ab inferīs
excitandus: quī etiam nōn nullōs agrestīs hominēs tenuīs
atque egentīs in eandem illam spem rapīnārum veterum
30 impulērunt. Quōs ego utrōsque in eōdem genere praedā-
tōrum dīreptōrumque pōnō, sed eōs hoc moneō, dēsinant
furere ac prōscriptiōnēs et dictātūrās cōgitāre. Tantus

enim illōrum temporum dolor inūstus est cīvitātī ut iam ista nōn modo hominēs sed nē pecudēs quidem mihi pas-sūrae esse videantur. X. Quārtum genus est sānē varium 21 et mixtum et turbulentum; quī iam prīdem premuntur, quī numquam ēmergunt, quī partim inertīā, partim male 5 gerendō negōtiō, partim etiam sūmptibus in vetere aere aliēnō vacillant, quī vadimōniīs, iūdicīis, prōscriptiōne bonōrum dēfetīgātī permultī et ex urbe et ex agrīs sē in illa castra cōferre dīcuntur. Hōsce ego nōn tam milītēs ācrīs quam īnfitiātōrēs lentōs esse arbitror. Quī hominēs 10 *quam* prīmum, sī stāre nōn possunt, conruant, sed ita ut nōn modo cīvitās sed nē vīcīnī quidem proximī sentiant. Nam illud nōn intellegō quam ob rem, sī vīvere honestē nōn possunt, perīre turpiter velint, aut cūr minōre dolōre peritūrōs sē cum multīs quam sī sōlī pereant arbitrentur. 15 —Quīntum genus est parricīdārum, sīcāriōrum, dēnique 22 omnium facinorōsōrum. Quōs ego ā Catilīnā nōn revocō; nam neque ab eō dīvellī possunt et pereant sānē in latrō-ciniō, quoniam sunt ita multī ut eōs carcer capere nōn possit.—Postrēmum autem genus est nōn sōlum numerō 20 vērū etiam genere ipsō atque vītā quod proprium Catilīnae est, dē eius dīlēctū, immō vērō dē complexū eius ac sinū; quōs pexō capillō, nitidōs, aut imberbīs aut bene barbātōs vidētis, manicātīs et tālāribus tunicīs, vėlīs amictōs, nōn togīs; quōrum omnis industria vītāe et vigilandī labor 25 in antelūcānīs cēnīs exprōmitur. In hīs gregibus omnēs 23 āleātōrēs, omnēs adulterī, omnēs impūrī impudicīque versantur. Hī puerī tam lepidī ac dēlicātī nōn sōlum amāre et amārī neque saltāre et cantāre sed etiam sīcās vibrāre et spargere venēna didicērunt. Quī nisi exeunt, nisi pereunt, 30 etiam sī Catilīna perierit, scītōte hoc in rē pūblicā sēminārium Catilīnārum futūrum. Vērū tamen quid sibi istī

miserī volunt? num suās sēcum mulierculās sunt in castra ductūrī? Quem ad modum autem illīs carēre poterunt, hīs praesertim iam noctibus? Quō autem pactō illī Appennīnum atque illās pruīnās ac nivīs perferent? nisi idcirco sē
 5 facilius hiemem tolerātūrōs putant, quod nūdī in convīviīs saltāre didicērunt.

Contrast the resources we may bring against them. Everything is on our side, including all the virtues

24 XI. Ō bellum magnō opere pertimēscendum, cum hanc sit habitūrus Catilīna scortōrum cohortem praetōriam! Instruite nunc, Quirītēs, contrā hās tam praeclārās Catilīnae cōpiās vestra praesidia vestrōsque exercitūs. Et
 10 prīmum gladiātōrī illī cōfectō et sauciō cōsulēs imperātōrēsque vestrōs oppōnite; deinde contrā illam naufragōrum ēiectam ac dēbilitātam manum flōrem tōtīus Italiae ac rōbur ēdūcite. Iam vērō urbēs colōniārum ac mūnicipiō-
 15 rum respondēbunt Catilīnae tumulīs silvestribus. Neque ego cēterās cōpiās, ōrnāmenta, praesidia vestra cum illiūs latrōnis inopiā atque egestāte cōferre dēbeō. Sed sī, omissīs hīs rēbus quibus nōs suppeditāmur, eget ille, senātū, equitibus Rōmānīs, urbe, aerāriō, vectīgālibus, cūctā
 25 Italiā, prōvinciīs omnibus, exterīs nātiōnibus, sī hīs rēbus omissīs causās ipsās quae inter sē cōnflīgunt contendere velīmus, ex eō ipsō quam valdē illī iaceant intellegere possumus. Ex hāc enim parte pudor pugnat, illinc petulantia; hinc pudicitia, illinc stuprum; hinc fidēs, illinc fraudātiō;
 30 hinc pietās, illinc scelus; hinc cōstantia, illinc furor; hinc honestās, illinc turpitūdō; hinc continentia, illinc libidō; hinc dēnique aequitās, temperantia, fortitūdō, prūdētia, virtūtēs omnēs certant cum inīquitāte, lūxuriā, ignāviā,

temeritāte, cum vitiīs omnibus ; postrēmō cōpia cum egestāte, bona ratiō cum perditā, mēns sāna cum āmentīā, bona dēnique spēs cum omnium rērum dēspērātiōne cōflīgit. In eius modī certāmine ac proeliō nōnne, sī hominum studia dēficient, dī ipsī immortālēs cōgant ab hīs praeclārissimīs 5 virtūtibus tot et tanta vitia superārī?

Guard your homes. I have taken measures for the defense of the city and the provincial towns. The senate will act

XII. Quae cum ita sint, Quirītēs, vōs, quem ad modum 26 iam antea dīxī, vestra tēcta vigiliīs cūstōdiīsque dēfendite ; mihi ut urbī sine vestrō metū ac sine ūllō tumultū satis esset praesidī cōsultum atque prōvīsum est. Colōnī omnēs mū- 10 nicipēsque vestrī certiōrēs ā mē factī dē hāc nocturnā excursiōne Catilīnae facile urbīs suās fīnīsque dēfendent ; gladiātōrēs, quam sibi ille manum certissimam fore putāvit (quamquam animō meliōre sunt quam pars patriciōrum) potestāte tamen nostrā continēbuntur. Q. Metellus, quem 15 ego hoc prōspiciēns in agrum Gallicum Picēnumque prae- mīsī, aut opprimit hominem aut eius omnīs mōtūs cōnātūsque prohibēbit. Reliquīs autem dē rēbus cōstituendīs, mātūrandīs, agendīs iam ad senātum referēmus, quem vocārī vidētis. 20

Those conspirators who stay should take warning ; but they are free to go

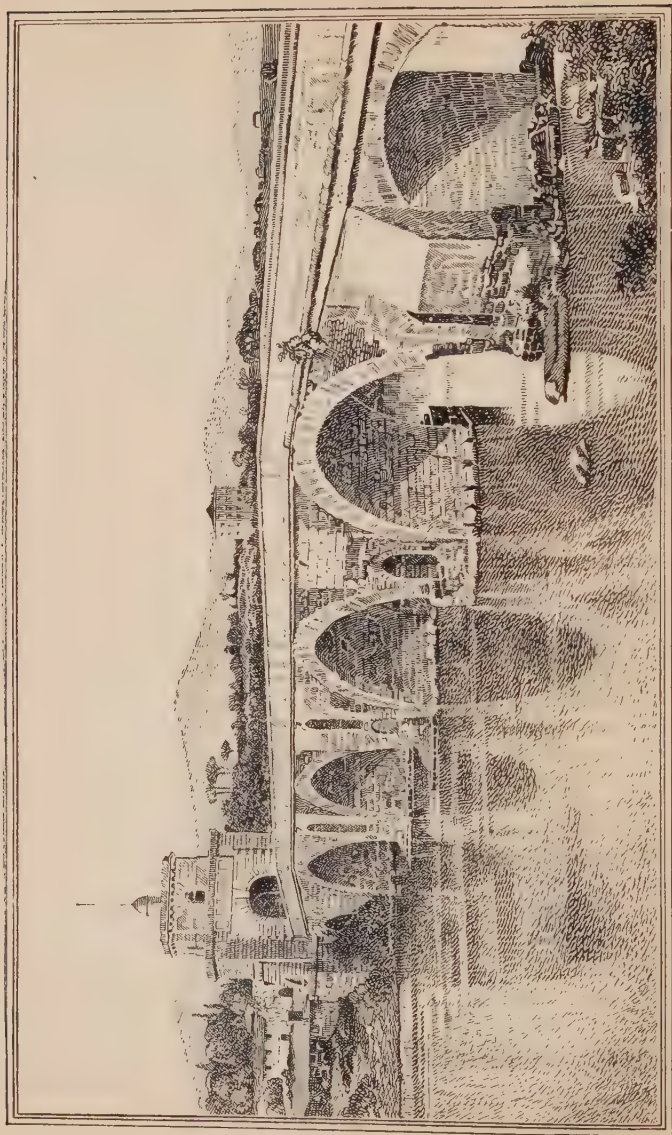
Nunc illōs quī in urbe remānsērunt atque adeō quī 27 contrā urbis salūtem omniumque vestrum in urbe ā Catilīnā relictī sunt, quamquam sunt hostēs, tamen, quia nātī sunt cīvēs, monitōs etiam atque etiam volō. Mea lēnitās adhūc sī cui solūtior vīsa est, hoc exspectāvit ut id quod 25

latēbat ērumperet. Quod reliquum est, iam nōn possum
 oblīvīscī meam hanc esse patriam, mē hōrum esse cōn-
 sulem, mihi aut cum hīs vīvendum aut prō hīs esse morien-
 dum. Nūllus est portīs cūstōs, nūllus īnsidiātor viae: sī quī
 5 exīre volunt, cōnīvēre possum; quī vērō sē in urbe commō-
 verit cuius ego nōn modo factum sed vel inceptum ūllum
 cōnātumve contrā patriam dēprehenderō, sentiet in hāc
 urbe esse cōsulēs vigilantīs, esse ēgregiōs magistrātūs,
 esse fortem senātum, esse arma, esse carcerem quem vīn-
 10 dicem nefāriōrum ac manifestōrum scelerum maiōrēs nostrī
 esse voluērunt.

*Order will be restored with the least possible use of force, under
 the protection of the gods, in answer to your prayers*

28 XIII. Atque haec omnia sīc agentur ut maximae rēs
 minimō mōtū, perīcula summa nūllō tumultū, bellum intes-
 tīnum ac domesticum post hominum memoriam crūdē-
 15 lissimum et maximum mē ūnō togātō duce et imperātōre
 sēdētur. Quod ego sīc administrābō, Quirītēs, ut, sī ūllō
 modō fierī poterit, nē improbus quidem quisquam in hāc
 urbe poenam suī sceleris sufferat. Sed sī vīs manifestae
 audāciae, sī impendēs patriae perīculum mē necessariō dē
 20 hāc animī lēnitāte dēdūxerit, illud profectō perficiam quod
 in tantō et tam īnsidiōsō bellō vix optandum vidētur, ut
 neque bonus quisquam intereat paucōrumque poenā vōs
 29 omnēs salvī esse possītis. Quae quidem ego neque meā
 prūdentiā neque hūmānīs cōsiliīs frētus polliceor vōbīs,
 25 Quirītēs, sed multīs et nōn dubiīs deōrum immortalīum
 significātiōnibus, quibus ego ducibus in hanc spem senten-
 tiamque sum ingressus; quī iam nōn procul, ut quondam
 solēbant, ab externō hoste atque longinquō, sed hīc prae-

sentēs suō nūmine atque auxiliō sua templa atque urbis
tēcta dēfendunt. Quōs vōs, Quirītēs, precārī, venerārī,
implōrāre dēbētis, ut, quam urbem pulcherrimam flōren-
tissimam potentissimamque esse voluērunt, hanc omnibus
hostium cōpiīs terrā marīque superātīs ā perditissimōrum 5
cīvium nefāriō scelere dēfendant.



THE MULVIAN BRIDGE (PONTE MOLLE)

M. TVLLI CICERONIS

IN L. CATILINAM ORATIO TERTIA

HABITA AD POPVLVM

*I shall be honored as the savior of the state. Hear what has
been done in the senate*

REM pūblicam, Quirītēs, vītamque omnium vestrum, 1
bona, fortūnās, coniugēs līberōsque vestrōs at-
que hoc domicilium clārissimī imperī, fortūnā-
tissimam pulcherrimamque urbem, hodiernō diē deōrum
immortālium summō ergā vōs amōre, labōribus, cōsiliīs, 5
periculīs meīs ē flammā atque ferrō ac paene ex faucibus
fātī ēreptam et vōbīs cōservātam ac restitūtam vidētis.
Et sī nōn minus nōbīs iūcundī atque inlūstrēs sunt eī diēs 2
quibus cōservāmur quam illī quibus nāscimur, quod salū-
tis certa laetitia est, nāscendī incerta condiciō, et quod 10
sine sēnsū nāscimur, cum voluptāte servāmur, profectō,
quoniam illum quī hanc urbem condidit ad deōs immor-
tālīs benevolentīā fāmāque sustulimus, esse apud vōs
posterōsque vestrōs in honōre dēbēbit is quī eandem hanc
urbem conditam amplificātamque servāvit. Nam tōtī urbī, 15
templīs, dēlūbrīs, tēctīs ac moenibus subiectōs prope iam
ignīs circumdatōsque restīnximus, īdemque gladiōs in rem
pūblicam dēstrictōs rettudimus mūcrōnēsque eōrum ā iu-
gulīs vestrīs dēiēcimus. Quae quoniam in senātū inlūstrāta, 3
patefacta, comperta sunt per mē, vōbīs iam expōnam brevī- 20

ter, Quirītēs, ut et quanta et quam manifesta et quā ratiōne investigāta et comprehēnsa sint vōs, quī et ignōrātis et exspectātis, scīre possītis.

My efforts to get actual evidence. The Allobrogian envoys intercepted as they leave with letters. The senate meets. Seizure of arms

Prīncipiō, ut Catilīna paucīs ante diēbus ērūpit ex urbe,
 5 cum sceleris suī sociōs huiusce nefāriī bellī ācerrimōs ducēs
 Rōmae reliquisset, semper vigilāvī et prōvidī, Quirītēs,
 quem ad modum in tantīs et tam absconditīs īnsidiīs salvī
 esse possēmus. II. Nam tum cum ex urbe Catilīnam ēiciē-
 10 bam—nōn enim iam vereor huius verbī invidiam, cum illa
 exterminārī volēbam, aut reliquam coniūrātōrum manum
 simul exitūram aut eōs quī restitissent īnfīrmōs sine illō
 4 ac dēbilis fore putābam. Atque ego, ut vidī, quōs maximō
 furōre et scelere esse īnflammātōs sciēbam, eōs nōbīscum
 15 esse et Rōmae remānsisse, in eō omnīs diēs noctēsque
 cōsūmpsī ut quid agerent, quid mōlīrentur sentīrem ac
 vidērem, ut, quoniam auribus vestrīs propter incrēdibilem
 magnitūdinem sceleris minōrem fidem faceret ōrātiō mea,
 rem ita comprehenderem ut tum dēmum animīs salūtī
 20 vestrae prōvidērētis cum oculīs malefīcium ipsum vidērētis.
 Itaque ut comperī lēgātōs Allobrogum bellī Trānsalpīnī et
 tumultūs Gallicī excitandī causā ā P. Lentulō esse sollici-
 tātōs, eōsque cum litterīs mandātisque in Galliam ad suōs
 cīvīs eōdemque itinere ad Catilīnam esse missōs, comitem-
 25 que eīs adiūnctum esse T. Volturcium, atque huic esse ad
 Catilīnam datās litterās, facultātem mihi oblātam putāvī
 ut, quod erat difficillimum quodque ego semper optābam
 ab dīs immortālibus, tōta rēs nōn solum ā mē sed etiam

ā senātū et ā vōbīs manifestō dēprēnderētur. Itaque 5
hesternō diē L. Flaccum et C. Pomptinum praetōrēs, fortissimōs atque amantissimōs reī pūblīcae virōs, ad mē vocāvī, rem exposuī, quid fierī placēret ostendī. Illī autem, quī omnia dē rē pūblīcā praeclāra atque ēgregia 5
sentīrent, sine recūsātiōne ac sine ūllā morā negōtium suscēpērunt et, cum advesperāsceret, occultē ad pontem Mulvium pervēnērunt atque ibi in proximīs vīllīs ita bipertītō fuērunt ut Tiberis inter eōs et pōns interesset. Eōdem autem et ipsī sine cuiusquam suspīciōne multōs fortīs vi- 10
rōs ēdūxerant, et ego ex praefectūrā Reātīnā complūrīs dēlēctōs adulēscentīs quōrum operā ūtor adsiduē in reī pūblīcae praesidiō cum gladiīs mīseram. Interim tertiā 6
ferē vigiliā exāctā, cum iam pontem Mulvium magnō comitātū lēgātī Allobrogēs ingredī inciperent ūnāque Voltur- 15
cius, fit in eōs impetus; dūcuntur et ab illīs gladii et ā nostrīs. Rēs praetōribus erat nōta sōlīs, ignōrābātur ā cēterīs. III. Tum interventū Pomptīnī atque Flaccī pugna quae erat commissa sēdātur. Litterae quaecumque erant in eō comitātū integrīs signīs praetōribus trāduntur; ipsī 20
comprehēnsī ad mē, cum iam dīlūcēsceret, dēdūcuntur. Atque hōrum omnium scelerum improbissimum māchinātōrem, Cimbrum Gabīnium, statim ad mē nihildum suspicantem vocāvī; deinde item arcessītus est L. Statilius et post eum Cethēgus; tardissimē autem Lentulus 25
vēnit, crēdō quod in litterīs dandīs praeter cōnsuētūdinem proximā nocte vigilārat. Cum summīs et clārissimīs huius 7
cīvitātis virīs, quī audītā rē frequentēs ad mē māne convēnerant, litterās ā mē prius aperīrī quam ad senātum dēferri placēret, nē, sī nihil esset inventum, temere ā mē 30
tantus tumultus iniectus cīvitātī vidērētur, negāvī mē esse factūrum ut dē periculō pūblicō nōn ad cōnsilium pūblicum

rem integram dēferrem. Etenim, Quirītēs, sī ea quae erant ad mē dēlāta reperta nōn essent, tamen ego nōn arbitrābar in tantīs reī pūblicae periculīs esse mihi nimiam dīlīgen-
 4 tiam pertimēscendam. Senātum frequentem celeriter, ut
 8 vīdistis, coēgī. Atque intereā statim admonitū Allobrogum C. Sulpicium praetōrem, fortem virum, mīsī quī ex aedibus Cethēgī sī quid tēlōrum esset efferret; ex quibus ille maximum sīcārum numerum et gladiōrum extulit.

Volturcius confesses his part. The Gauls give their testimony

IV. Intrōdūxī Volturcium sine Gallīs; fidem pūblicam
 10 iussū senātūs dedī; hortātus sum ut ea quae scīret sine timōre indicāret. Tum ille dīxit, cum vix sē ex magnō timōre recreāset, ā P. Lentulō
 15 sē habēre ad Catilīnam mandāta et litterās ut servōrum praesidiō ūterētur, ut ad urbem



TRIAL OF THE VESTALS

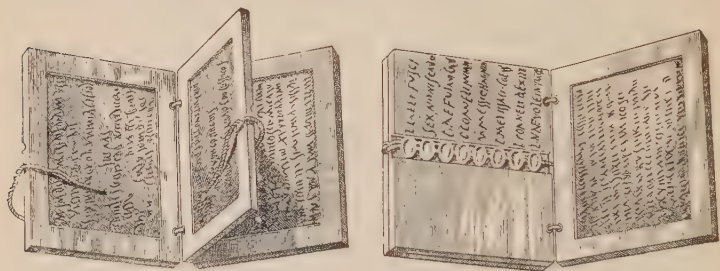
quam prīmum cum exercitū accēderet; id autem eō cōn-
 20 siliō ut, cum urbem ex omnibus partibus quem ad modum discriptum distribūtumque erat incendissent caedemque īnfīnitam cīvium fēcissent, praestō esset ille quī et fugientīs exciperet et sē cum hīs urbānīs ducibus coniungeret. Intrōductī autem Gallī iūs iūrandum sibi et litterās
 25 ā P. Lentulō, Cethēgō, Statiliō ad suam gentem datās esse dīxērunt, atque ita sibi ab hīs et ā L. Cassiō esse praescriptum ut equitātum in Italiam quam prīmum mitterent; pedestrīs sibi cōpiās nōn dēfutūrās. Lentulum autem sibi cōfīrmāsse ex fātīs Sibyllīnīs haruspicumque respōnsīs sē

esse tertium illum Cornēlium ad quem rēgnum huius urbis atque imperium pervenīre esset necesse: Cinnam ante sē et Sullam fuisse. Eundemque dīxisse fātālem hunc annum esse ad interitum huius urbis atque imperī, quī esset annus decimus post virginum absolūtiōnem, post Capitōlī autem 5 incēnsiōnem vīcēsimus. Hanc autem Cethēgō cum cēterīs 10 contrōversiam fuisse dīxērunt quod Lentulō et aliīs Sāturnālibus caedem fierī atque urbem incendi placēret, Cethēgō nimium id longum vidērētur.

Reading of the letters. Confessions. Lentulus, after denying, at last confesses and identifies his letter to Catiline. Gabinius admits his guilt

V. Ac nē longum sit, Quirītēs, tabellās prōferrī iussimus 10 quae ā quōque dīcēbantur datae. Prīmō ostendimus Cethēgō: signum cognōvit. Nōs līnum incīdimus; lēgimus. Erat scrīptum ipsius manū Allobrogum senātuī et populō sēsē quae eōrum lēgātīs cōnfirmāssset factūrum esse; ōrāre ut item illī facerent quae sibi eōrum lēgātī 15 recēpissent. Tum Cethēgus, quī paulō ante aliquid tamen dē gladiīs ac sīcīs quae apud ipsum erant dēprehēnsa respondisset dīxissetque sē semper bonōrum ferrāmentōrum studiōsum fuisse, recitātīs litterīs dēbilitātus atque abiectus cōnsientiā repente conticuit. Intrōductus Stati- 20 lius cognōvit et signum et manum suam. Recitātae sunt tabellae in eandem ferē sententiam; cōfessus est. Tum ostendī tabellās Lentulō et quaesīvī cognōsceretne signum; adnuīt. 'Est vērō' inquam 'nōtum quidem signum, imāgō avī tuī, clārissimī virī, quī amāvit ūnicē patriam et cīvīs 25 suōs; quae quidem tē ā tantō scelere etiam mūta revocāre dēbuit.' Leguntur eādem ratiōne ad senātum Allobrogum populumque litterae. Sī quid dē hīs rēbus dīcere

vellet, fēcī potestātem. Atque ille primō quidem negāvit;
 post autem aliquantō, tōtō iam indicio expositō atque
 ēditō, surrēxit, quaesīvit ā Gallīs quid sibi esset cum eīs,
 quam ob rem domum suam vēnissent, itemque ā Volturciō.
 5 Quī cum illī breviter cōstanterque respondissent per quem
 ad eum quotiēnsque vēnissent, quaesīssentque ab eō ni-
 hilne sēcum esset dē fātīs Sibyllīnīs locūtus, tum ille



WAXED TABLETS

subitō scelere dēmēns quanta cōscientiae vīs esset osten-
 dit. Nam, cum id posset īnfitiārī, repente praeter opīniō-
 10 nem omnium cōfessus est. Ita eum nōn modo ingenium
 illud et dīcendī exercitātiō quā semper valuit sed etiam
 propter vim sceleris manifestī atque dēprēnsī impudentia
 12 quā superābat omnīs improbitāsque dēfēcit. Volturcius
 vērō subitō litterās prōferri atque aperiri iubet quās sibi
 15 ā Lentulō ad Catilinam datās esse dīcēbat. Atque ibi
 vehementissimē perturbātus Lentulus tamen et signum et
 manum suam cognōvit. Erant autem sine nōmine, sed ita:
 'Quis sim sciēs ex eō quem ad tē mīsī. Cūrā ut vir sīs et
 cōgitā quem in locum sīs prōgressus. Vidē ecquid tibi iam
 20 sit necesse et cūrā ut omnium tibi auxilia adiungās, etiam
 īnfimōrum.' Gabīnius deinde intrōductus, cum primō

impudenter respondēre coepisset, ad extrēmum nihil ex eīs quae Gallī īnsimulābant negāvit. Ac mihi quidem, Quirī- 13 tēs, cum illa certissima vīsa sunt argūmenta atque indicia sceleris, tabellae, signa, manūs, dēnique ūnīus cuiusque cōfessiō, tum multō certiōra illa, color, oculī, voltūs, taci- 5 turnitās. Sīc enim obstupuerant, sīc terram intuēbantur, sīc fūrtim nōn numquam inter sēsē aspiciēbant ut nōn iam ab aliīs indicārī sed indicāre sē ipsī vidērentur.

The decree of the senate: votes of thanks; then that the conspirators should be held and others arrested; also a thanksgiving. Lentulus resigns

VI. Indiciīs expositīs atque ēditīs, Quirītēs, senātum cōnsulū dē summā rē pūblicā quid fierī placēret. Dictae 10 sunt ā prīncipibus ācerrimae ac fortissimae sententiae, quās senātus sine ūllā varietāte est secūtus. Et quoniam nōndum est perscriptum senātūs cōsultum, ex memoriā vōbīs, Quirītēs, quid senātus cēnsuerit expōnam. Prīmum 14 mihi grātiaē verbīs amplissimīs aguntur, quod virtūte, 15 cōnsiliō, prōvidentiā meā rēs pūblica maximīs periculīs sit liberāta. Deinde L. Flaccus et C. Pomptīnus praetōrēs, quod eōrum operā fortī fidēlique ūsus essem, meritō ac iūre laudantur. Atque etiam virō fortī, conlēgae meō, laus impertītur, quod eōs quī huius coniūrātiōnis participēs 20 fuissent ā suīs et ā reī pūblīcae cōnsiliīs remōvisset. Atque ita cēnsuērunt ut P. Lentulus, cum sē praetūrā abdicāset, in cūstōdiam trāderētur; itemque utī C. Cethēgus, L. Statilius, P. Gabīnius quī omnēs praesentēs erant in cūstōdiam trāderentur; atque idem hoc dēcrētum est in L. Cassium 25 quī sibi prōcūrātiōnem incendendae urbis dēpoposcerat, in M. Cēpārium cui ad sollicitandōs pāstōrēs Āpūliam attri-

būtam esse erat indicātum, in P. Fūrium quī est ex eīs
 colōnīs quōs Faesulās L. Sulla dēdūxit, in Q. Annium
 Chilōnem quī ūnā cum hōc Fūriō semper erat in hāc Allo-
 brogum sollicitātiōne versātus, in P. Vmbrēnum, libertīnum
 5 hominem, ā quō prīmum Gallōs ad Gabīnium perductōs
 esse cōnstābat. Atque eā lēnitāte senātus est ūsus, Quirītēs,
 ut ex tantā coniūrātiōne tantāque hāc multitudīne domes-
 ticōrum hostium, novem hominum perditissimōrum poenā
 9 rē publicā cōservātā, reliquōrum mentīs sārārī posse
 15 arbitrārētur. Atque etiam supplicātiō dīs immortālībus
 prō singulārī eōrum meritō meō nōmine dēcrēta est, quod
 mihi prīmum post hanc urbem conditam togātō contigit, et
 hīs dēcrēta verbīs est: 'quod urbem incendiīs, caede cīvīs,
 Italiam bellō liberāssem.' Quae supplicātiō sī cum cēterīs
 15 supplicātiōnibus cōferātur, hoc interest, quod cēterae
 bene gestā, haec ūna cōservātā rē publicā cōstitutā est.
 Atque illud quod faciendum prīmum fuit factum atque
 trānsāctum est. Nam P. Lentulus, quamquam patefactīs
 indicīis, cōfessiōnibus suīs, iūdiciō senātūs nōn modo
 20 praetōris iūs vērum etiam cīvīs amiserat, tamen magistrātū
 sē abdicāvit, ut quae religiō C. Mariō, clārissimō virō, nōn
 fuerat quō minus C. Glauciam dē quō nihil nōminātīm erat
 dēcrētum praetōrem occīderet, eā nōs religiōne in prīvātō
 24 P. Lentulō pūniendō liberārēmur.

*With these leaders arrested, the cause is ruined. Catiline alone
 was to be feared. He would not have blundered, or delayed.*

A greater menace if he had remained

16 VII. Nunc quoniam, Quirītēs, cōnscelerātissimī perīcu-
 lōsissimīque bellī nefāriōs ducēs captōs iam et compre-
 hēnsōs tenētis, exīstimāre dēbētis omnīs Catilīnae cōpiās,

omnīs spēs atque opēs hīs dēpulsīs urbis perīculīs concidis-
disse. Quem quidem ego cum ex urbe pellēbam, hoc
prōvidēbam animō, Quirītēs, remōtō Catilīnā nōn mihi esse
P. Lentulī somnum nec L. Cassī adipēs nec C. Cethēgī
furiōsam temeritātem pertimēscendam. Ille erat ūnus 5
timendus ex istīs omnibus, sed tam diū dum urbis moeni-
bus continēbātur. Omnia nōrat, omnium aditūs tenēbat;
appellāre, temptāre, sollicitāre poterat, audēbat. Erat eī
cōsiliū ad facinus aptum, cōsiliō autem neque lingua
neque manus deerat. Iam ad certās rēs cōficiendās certōs 10
hominēs dēlēctōs ac dēscriptōs habēbat. Neque vērō, cum
aliquid mandārat, cōfectum putābat: nihil erat quod nōn
ipse obīret, occurreret, vigilāret, labōrāret; frīgus, sitim,
famem ferre poterat. Hunc ego hominem tam ācrem, tam 17
audācem, tam parātum, tam callidum, tam in scelere vigi- 15
lantem, tam in perditīs rēbus dīligentem nisi ex domesticīs
īnsidiīs in castrēse latrōcinium compulsem—dīcam id
quod sentiō, Quirītēs—nōn facile hanc tantam mōlem malī
a cervīcibus vestrīs dēpulsissem. Nōn ille nōbīs Sāturnālia
cōstituisset, neque tantō ante exitī ac fātī diem reī pū- 20
blicae dēnūntiāvisset, neque commīsisset ut signum, ut
litterae suae testēs manifesti sceleris dēprehenderentur.
Quae nunc illō absente sīc gesta sunt ut nūllum in prīvātā
domō fūrtum umquam sit tam palam inventum quam haec
in tōtā rē públicā coniūrātiō manifestō inventa atque 25
comprēnsa est. Quod sī Catilīna in urbe ad hanc diem
remānsisset, quamquam, quoad fuit, omnibus eius cōsiliīs
occurrī atque obstitī, tamen, ut levissimē dīcam, dīmican-
dum nōbīs cum illō fuisset, neque nōs umquam, cum ille in
urbe hostis esset, tantīs perīculīs rem públicam tantā pāce, 30
tantō ōtiō, tantō silentiō liberāssēmus.

Signs and portents. The Capitol struck by lightning. A new statue of Jupiter ordered, but not set up until this morning.

Meaning of the coincidence,—divine aid in this crisis

- 18 VIII. Quamquam haec omnia, Quirītēs, ita sunt ā mē
administrāta ut deōrum immortalium nūtū atque cōsiliō
et gesta et prōvīsa esse videantur. Idque cum coniectūrā
cōsequī possumus, quod vix vidētur hūmānī cōsilī tan-
5 tārū rērum gubernātiō esse potuisse, tum vērō ita prae-
sentēs hīs temporibus opem et auxilium nōbīs tulērunt ut



THE WOLF OF THE CAPITOL

- eōs paene oculīs vidēre possīmus. Nam ut illa omittam,
vīsās nocturnō tempore ab occidente facēs ārdōremque
caelī, ut fulminum iactūs, ut terrae mōtūs relinquam, ut
10 omittam cētera quae tam multa nōbīs cōsulibus facta sunt
ut haec quae nunc fīunt canere dī immortalēs vidērentur,
hoc certē, Quirītēs, quod sum dictūrus neque praetermit-
19 tendum neque relinquendum est. Nam profectō memoriā
tenētis Cottā et Torquātō cōsulibus complūrīs in Capi-
15 tōliō rēs dē caelō esse percussās, cum et simulācra deōrum
dēpulsa sunt et statuae veterum hominum dēiectae et

lĕgum aera liquefacta et tĕctus etiam ille quĭ hanc urbem condidit Rōmulus, quem inaurātum in Capitōliō, parvum atque lactantem, ūberibus lupīnīs inhiantem fuisse meministis. Quō quidem tempore cum haruspicēs ex tōtā Etrūriā convēnissent, caedīs atque incendia et lĕgum interitum et bellum cīvīle ac domesticum et tōtīus urbis atque imperī occāsum appropinquāre dīxērunt, nisi dī immortalēs omnī ratiōne plācātī suō nūmine prope fāta ipsa flexissent. Itaque illōrum respōnsīs tum et lūdī per decem 20 diēs factī sunt neque rēs ūlla quae ad plācandōs deōs pertinēret praetermissa est. Idemque iussērunt simulācrum Iovis facere maius et in excelsō conlocāre et contrā atque antea fuerat ad orientem convertere; ac sē spērāre dīxērunt, sī illud signum quod vidētis sōlis ortum et forum cūriamque cōspiceret, fore ut ea cōnsilia quae clam essent 15 inīta contrā salūtem urbis atque imperī inlūstrārentur ut ā senātū populōque Rōmānō perspicī possent. Atque illud signum conlocandum cōsulēs illī locāvērunt; sed tanta fuit operis tarditās ut neque superiōribus cōsulis neque 19 nōbīs ante hodiernum diem conlocārētur. IX. Hīc quis potest esse tam āversus ā vērō, tam praeceps, tam mente captus quĭ neget haec omnia quae vidēmus praecipuēque hanc urbem deōrum immortalīum nūtū ac potestāte administrārī? Etenim cum esset ita respōnsum, caedīs, incendia, interitum reī pūblīcae comparārī, et ea per cīvīs, 25 quae tum propter magnitudinem scelerum nōn nullīs incredibilia vidēbantur, ea nōn modo cōgitāta ā nefāriīs cīvibus vērū etiam suscepta esse sēnsistis; illud vērō nōne ita praesēns est ut nūtū Iovis Optimī Maximī factum esse videātur, ut, cum hodiernō diē māne per forum meō iussū 30 et coniūrātī et eōrum indicēs in aedem Concordiae dūcerentur, eō ipsō tempore signum statuerētur? Quō conlocātō

atque ad vōs senātumque conversō omnia et senātus et vōs
 quae erant contrā salūtem omnium cōgitāta inlūstrāta et
 22 patefacta vīdistis. Quō etiam maiōre sunt istī odiō suppli-
 ciōque dignī quī nōn solum vestrīs domiciliīs atque tēctīs
 5 sed etiam deōrum templīs atque dēlūbrīs sunt fūnestōs ac
 nefāriōs ignīs īnferre cōnātī. Quibus ego sī mē restitisse
 dīcam, nīmiū mihi sūmam et nōn sim ferendus: ille, ille
 Iuppiter restitit; ille Capitōliū, ille haec templa, ille
 cūctam urbem, ille vōs omnīs salvōs esse voluit. Dīs ego
 10 immortalibus ducibus hanc mentem voluntātemque suscēpī
 atque ad haec tanta indicia pervēnī. Iam vērō illa Allo-
 brogum sollicitātiō,—iam ab Lentulō cēterisque domes-
 ticīs hostibus tam dēmenter tantae rēs crēditae et ignōtīs
 et barbarīs commissaeque litterae numquam essent pro-
 15 fectō, nisi ab dīs immortalibus huic tantae audāciae cōn-
 silium esset ēreptum. Quid vērō? ut hominēs Gallī ex
 cīvitate male pācātā, quae gēns ūna restat quae bellum
 populō Rōmānō facere posse et nōn nōlle videātur, spem
 imperī ac rērum maximārum ultrō sibi ā patriciīs homini-
 20 bus oblātam neglegerent vestramque salūtem suīs opibus
 antepōnerent, id nōn dīvīnitus esse factum putātis, prae-
 sertim quī nōs nōn pugnandō sed tacendō superāre
 potuērunt?

*Thank the gods for your preservation from a revolution more
 dangerous than any in our history*

23 X. Quam ob rem, Quirītēs, quoniam ad omnia pulvī-
 25 nāria supplicātiō dēcrēta est, celebrātōte illōs diēs cum
 coniugibus ac liberīs vestrīs. Nam multī saepe honōrēs dīs
 immortalibus iūstī habitī sunt ac dēbitī, sed profectō iūstiō-
 rēs numquam. Ēreptī enim estis ex crūdēlissimō ac miser-
 rimō interitū, ēreptī sine caede, sine sanguine, sine exercitū,

sine dīmicātiōne ; togātī mē ūnō togātō duce et imperātōre
vīcistis. Etenim recordāminī, Quirītēs, omnīs cīvīlīs dis- 24
sēnsiōnēs, nōn solum eās quās audistis sed eās quās vōs-
met ipsī meministis atque vīdistis. L. Sulla P. Sulpicium
oppressit: C. Marium, cūstōdem huius urbis, multōsque 5
fortīs virōs partim ēiēcit ex cīvītāte, partim interēmī.
Cn. Octāvius cōsul armīs expulit ex urbe conlēgam: omnis
hic locus acervīs corporum et cīvium sanguine redundāvit.
Superāvit postea Cinna cum Mariō: tum vērō clārissimīs
virīs interfectīs lūmina cīvītātis exstīncta sunt. Vltus est 10
huius victōriæ crūdēlitātem postea Sulla, nē dīcī quidem
opus est quantā dēminūtiōne cīvium et quantā calamitāte
reī pūblicae. Dissēnsit M. Lepidus ā clārissimō et fortis-
simō virō Q. Catulō: attulit nōn tam ipsīus interitus reī 14
pūblicae lūctum quam cēterōrum. Atquī illae [tamen 25
omnēs] dissēnsiōnēs erant eius modī quae nōn ad dēlendā
sed ad commūtandā rem pūblicā pertinērent: nōn illī
nūllam esse rem pūblicā, sed in eā quae esset sē esse
prīncipēs, neque hanc urbem cōnflagrāre, sed sē in hāc
urbe flōrēre voluērunt. Atque illae tamen omnēs dissēn- 20
siōnēs, quārum nūlla exitium reī pūblicae quaesīvit, eius
modī fuērunt ut nōn reconciliātiōne concordiae sed internī-
ciōne cīvium dīiūdicātae sint. In hōc autem ūnō post
hominum memoriā maximō crūdēlissimōque bellō, quāle
bellum nūlla umquam barbaria cum suā gente gessit, quō 25
in bellō lēx haec fuit ā Lentulō, Catilinā, Cethēgō, Cassiō
cōstitūta ut omnēs quī salvā urbe salvī esse possent in
hostium numerō dūcerentur, ita mē gessī, Quirītēs, ut salvī
omnēs cōservārēminī, et, cum hostēs vestrī tantum cīvium
superfutūrum putāssent quantum īfīnītāe caedī restitis- 30
set, tantum autem urbis quantum flamma obīre nōn potuis-
set, et urbem et cīvīs integrōs incolumīsque servāvī.

The memory of what I have done is all the reward I ask. You will protect me, though our enemies cannot harm me now. My intentions for the future. Go, and once more guard your homes

- 26 XI. Quibus prō tantīs rēbus, Quirītēs, nūllum ego ā
vōbīs praeium virtūtis, nūllum īnsigne honōris, nūllum
monumentum laudis postulābō praeterquam huius diēi
memoriam sempiternam. In animīs ego vestrīs omnis
5 triumphōs meōs, omnia ōrnāmenta honōris, monumenta
glōriae, laudis īnsignia condī et conlocārī volō. Nihil mē
mūtum potest dēlectāre, nihil tacitum, nihil dēnique eius
modī quod etiam minus dignī adsequī possint. Memorīā
vestrā, Quirītēs, nostrae rēs alentur, sermōnibus crēscant,
10 litterārū monumentīs inveterāscant et conrōborābuntur;
eandemque diem intellegō, quam spērō aeternam fore,
prōpāgātā esse et ad salūtem urbis et ad memoriam cōn-
sulātūs meī, ūnōque tempore in hāc rē pūblicā duōs cīvīs
exstitisse quōrum alter fīnīs vestrī imperī nōn terrae sed
15 caelī regiōnibus termināret, alter huius imperī domicilium
27 sēdisque servāret. XII. Sed quoniam eārum rērum quās
ego gessī nōn eadem est fortūna atque condiciō quae
illōrum quī externa bella gesserunt, quod mihi cum eīs
vīvendum est quōs vīcī ac subēgī, illī hostīs aut interfectōs
20 aut oppressōs reliquērunt, vestrum est, Quirītēs, sī cēterīs
facta sua rēctē prōsunt, mihi mea nē quandō obsint prōvi-
dēre. Mentēs enim hominum audācissimōrum scelerātae
ac nefāriae nē vōbīs nocēre possent ego prōvīdī, nē mihi
noceant vestrum est prōvidēre. Quamquam, Quirītēs, mihi
25 quidem ipsī nihil ab istīs iam nocērī potest. Magnum enim
est in bonīs praesidium quod mihi in perpetuum compa-
rātum est, magna in rē pūblicā dignitās quae mē semper
tacita dēfendet, magna vīs cōnscentiae quam quī neglegunt,

cum mē violāre volent, sē indicābunt. Est enim nōbīs is 28
animus, Quirītēs, ut nōn modo nullius audāciae cēdāmus
sed etiam omnīs improbōs ultrō semper lacessāmus. Quod
sī omnis impetus domesticōrum hostium dēpulsus ā vōbīs
sē in mē ūnum converterit, vōbīs erit videndum, Quirītēs, 5
quā condiōne posthāc eōs esse velītis quī sē prō salūte
vestrā obtulerint invidiae perīculisque omnibus: mihi qui-
dem ipsī quid est quod iam ad vītae frūctum possit adquīrī,
cum praesertim neque in honōre vestrō neque in glōriā
virtūtis quicquam videam altius quō mihi libeat ascendere? 10
Illud perficiam profectō, Quirītēs, ut ea quae gessī in cōn- 29
sulātū prīvātus tuear atque ōrnem, ut, sī qua est invidia in
cōnservandā rē pūblicā suscepta, laedat invidōs, mihi valeat
ad glōriam. Dēnique ita mē in rē pūblicā trāctābō ut
meminerim semper quae gesserim, cūremque ut ea virtūte 15
nōn cāsū gesta esse videantur. Vōs, Quirītēs, quoniam
iam est nox, venerātī Iovem illum cūstōdem huius ūrbis ac
vestrum in vestra tēcta discēdite et ea, quamquam iam est
perīculum dēpulsum, tamen aequē ac priōre nocte cūstōdiīs
vigiliisque dēfendite. Id nē vōbīs diūtius faciendum sit 20
atque ut in perpetuā pāce esse possītis prōvidēbō.



Courtesy D. Anderson, Rome

A VESTAL

M. TVLLI CICERONIS
IN L. CATILINAM ORATIO QVARTA

HABITA IN SENATV

My safety is not to be considered in your vigorous measures for the preservation of the state in this crisis. Your previous decree is virtual condemnation

VIDEŌ, patrēs cōscriptī, in mē omnium vestrum 1
ōra atque oculōs esse conversōs, videō vōs nōn
solum dē vestrō ac rei pūblicae vērū etiam, sī id
dēpulsum sit, dē meō periculō esse sollicitōs. Est mihi
iūcunda in malīs et grāta in dolōre vestra ergā mē voluntās, 5
sed eam per deōs immortalīs! dēpōnite atque oblītī salūtis
meae dē vōbīs ac dē vestrīs liberīs cōgitāte. Mihi sī haec
condiciō cōsulātūs data est ut omnīs acerbitatēs, omnīs
dolōrēs cruciātūsque perferrem, feram nōn solum fortiter
vērū etiam libenter, dum modo meīs labōribus vōbīs 10
populōque Rōmānō dignitās salūsque pariātur. Ego sum 2
ille cōsul, patrēs cōscriptī, cui nōn forum in quō omnis
aequitās continētur, nōn campus cōsulāribus auspiciīs
cōsecrātus, nōn cūria, summum auxilium omnium gen-
tium, nōn domus, commūne perfugium, nōn lectus ad 15
quiētem datus, nōn dēnique haec sēdēs honōris umquam
vacua mortis periculō atque insidiīs fuit. Ego multa tacuī,
multa pertulī, multa concessī, multa meō quōdam dolōre in
vestrō timōre sānāvī. Nunc sī hunc exitum cōsulātūs meī

dī immortālēs esse voluērunt ut vōs populumque Rōmānum
ex caede miserrimā, coniugēs liberōsque vestrōs virginēs-
que Vestālīs ex acerbissimā vexātiōne, templa atque dē-
lūbra, hanc pulcherrimam patriam omnium nostrum ex
5 foedissimā flammā, tōtam Italiam ex bellō et vāstitāte
ēriperem, quaecumque mihi ūnī prōpōnētur fortūna subeā-
tur. Etenim sī P. Lentulus suum nōmen inductus ā vātibus
fātāle ad perniciem rei pūblīcae fore putāvit, cūr ego nōn
9 laeter meum cōsulātum ad salūtem populī Rōmānī prope
3 fātālem exstitisse? II. Quā rē, patrēs cōnscriptī, cōsu-
lite vōbīs, prōspicite patriae, cōservāte vōs, coniugēs,
liberōs fortūnāsque vestrās, populī Rōmānī nōmen salū-
temque dēfendite; mihi parcere ac dē mē cōgitāre dēsinite.
Nam primum dēbeō spērāre omnīs deōs quī huic urbī
15 praesident prō eō mihi ac mereor relātūrōs esse grātiā;
deinde, sī quid obtigerit, aequō animō parātōque moriar.
Nam neque turpis mors fortī virō potest accidere neque im-
mātūra cōsulārī nec misera sapientī. Nec tamen ego sum
ille ferreus quī frātris cārissimī atque amantissimī prae-
20 sentis maerōre nōn movear hōrumque omnium lacrimīs ā
quibus mē circumsessum vidētis. Neque meam mentem
nōn domum saepe revocat exanimāta uxor et abiecta metū
filia et parvolus fīlius, quem mihi vidētur amplectī rēs
pūblica tamquam obsidem cōsulātūs meī, neque ille quī
25 exspectāns huius exitum diēi stat in cōspectū meō gener.
Moveor hīs rēbus omnibus, sed in eam partem utī salvī
sint vōbīscum omnēs, etiam sī mē vīs aliqua oppresserit,
potius quam et illī et nōs ūnā rei pūblīcae peste pereāmus.
4 Quā rē, patrēs cōnscriptī, incumbite ad salūtem rei pū-
30 blicae, circumspicite omnīs procellās quae impendent nisi
prōvidētis. Non Ti. Gracchus quod iterum tribūnus plēbis
fierī voluit, nōn C. Gracchus quod agrāriōs concitāre cōnā-

tus est, nōn L. Sāturnīnus quod C. Memmīum occīdit, in
 discrīmen aliquod atque in vestrae sevērītātis iūdicium
 addūcitur: tenentur eī quī ad urbis incendium, ad vestram
 omnium caedem, ad Catilīnam accipiendum Rōmae resti-
 tērunt, tenentur litterae, signa, manūs, dēnique ūnūs 5



FOUNDATION OF THE TEMPLE OF VESTA

cuiusque cōfessiō: sollicitantur Allobrogēs, servitia ex-
 citantur, Catilīna arcessitur, id est initum cōnsilium ut
 interfectīs omnibus nēmō nē ad dēplōrandum quidem
 populī Rōmānī nōmen atque ad lāmentandam tantī imperī 9
 calamitātem relinqūatur. III. Haec omnia indicēs dētulē- 5
 runt, reī cōfessī sunt, vōs multīs iam iūdicīīs iūdicāvistis,
 prīmum quod mihi grātiās ēgistis singulārībus verbīs et
 meā virtūte atque dīligentiā perditōrum hominum coniūrā-

tiōnem patefactam esse dēcrēvistis, deinde quod P. Lentulum sē abdicāre praetūrā coēgistis; tum quod eum et cēterōs dē quibus iūdicāstis in cūstōdiam dandōs cēnsuistis, maximēque quod meō nōmine supplicātiōnem dēcrēvistis, 5 quī honōs togātō habitus ante mē est nēminī; postrēmō hesternō diē praemia lēgātīs Allobrogum Titōque Volturciō dedistis amplissima. Quae sunt omnia eius modī ut eī quī in cūstōdiam nōminātim datī sunt sine ūllā dubitātiōne ā 9 vōbīs damnātī esse videantur.

What is your verdict? Prompt punishment is required

6 Sed ego institui referre ad vōs, patrēs cōscriptī, tamquam integrum, et dē factō quid iūdicētis, et dē poenā quid cēseātis. Illa praedicam quae sunt cōsulis. Ego magnum in rē publicā versārī furōrem et nova quaedam miscērī et concitārī mala iam prīdem vidēbam, sed hanc 15 tantam, tam exitiōsam habērī coniūrātiōnem ā cīvibus numquam putāvī. Nunc quicquid est, quōcumque vestrae mentēs inclīnant atque sententiae, statuendum vōbīs ante noctem est. Quantum facinus ad vōs dēlātum sit vidētis. Huic sī paucōs putātis adfīnīs esse, vehementer errātis. 20 Lātius opīniōne dissēminātum est hoc malum; mānāvit nōn solum per Italiam vērū etiam trāscendit Alpīs et obscurē serpēns multās iam prōvinciās occupāvit. Id opprimī sustentandō et prōlātandō nullō pactō potest; quā- 24 cumque ratiōne placet celeriter vōbīs vindicandum est.

Two penalties are proposed: execution, by Silanus; life imprisonment and confiscation, by Julius Cæsar

7 IV. Videō duās adhūc esse sententiās, ūnam D. Sīlānī, quī cēnsēt eōs quī haec dēlēre cōnātī sunt morte esse mul-

tandōs, alteram C. Caesaris, quī mortis poenam removet, cēterōrum suppliciōrum omnīs acerbitatēs amplectitur. Vterque et prō suā dignitatē et prō rērum magnitudīne in summā sevērītātē versātur. Alter eōs quī nōs omnīs, quī populum Rōmānum vītā prīvāre cōnātī sunt, quī delēre 5 imperium, quī populī Rōmānī nōmen exstinguere, pūctum temporis fruī vītā et hōc commūnī spīritū nōn putat oportēre, atque hoc genus poenae saepe in improbōs cīvīs in hāc rē pūblicā esse ūsūrpātum recordātur. Alter intellegit mortem ā dīs immortālibus nōn esse supplicī causā 10



JULIUS CAESAR

cōstitutam, sed aut necessitatē nātūrae aut labōrum ac miseriārum quiētem. 'Itaque eam sapientēs numquam invītī, fortēs saepe etiam libenter oppetīvērunt. Vincula vērō et ea sempiterna certē ad 15 singulārem poenam nefārii sceleris inventa sunt.' Mūnicipiīs dispertīrī iubet. Hābēre vidētur ista rēs inīquitātē, sī

imperāre velīs, difficultātē, sī rogāre; dēcernātur tamen, 19 sī placet. Ego enim suscipiam et, ut spērō, reperiam quī 8 id quod salūtis omnium causā statuerītis nōn putent esse suae dignitātis recūsāre. Adiungit gravem poenam mūnicipiīs, sī quis eōrum vincula rūperit; horribilīs cūstodiās circumdat et dignās scelere hominum perditōrum; sancit nē quis eōrum poenam quōs condemnat aut per senātum 25 aut per populum levāre possit; ēripit etiam spem quae sōla hominem in miseriīs cōnsōlārī solet. Bona praetereā pūblicārī iubet; vītā sōlam relinquit nefāriīs hominibus: quam sī ēripuisset, multās ūnō dolōre animī atque corporis *aerumnās* et omnīs scelerum poenās adēmisset. 30 Itaque ut aliqua in vītā formīdō improbīs esset prōposita, apud īnferōs eius modī quaedam illī antīquī sup-

plicia impiis cōstitutā esse voluērunt, quod videlicet intellegēbant hīs remōtis nōn esse mortem ipsam pertimēscendam.

Cæsar's proposal, as from the popular party, will be less unpopular. His patriotism and evident condemnation of treason

- 9 V. Nunc, patrēs cōscriptī, ego meā videō quid intersit.
 5 Sī eritis secūtī sententiam C. Caesaris, quoniam hanc is in rē pūblicā viam quae populārīs habētur secūtus est, fortasse minus erunt hōc auctōre et cognitōre huiusce sententiae mihi populārēs impetūs pertimēscendī; sī illam alteram, nesciō an amplius mihi negōtī contrahātur. Sed
 10 tamen meōrum periculōrum ratiōnēs ūtilitās reī pūblicae vincat. Habēmus enim ā Caesare, sicut ipsius dignitās et maiōrum eius amplitūdō postulābat, sententiam tamquam obsidem perpetuae in rem pūblicam voluntātis. Intellē-
 14 tum est quid interesset inter levitātem cōtiōnātōrum et
 10 animum vērē populārem salūtī populī cōsulentem. Videō dē istīs quī sē populārīs habērī volunt abesse nōn nēminem, nē dē capite videlicet cīvium Rōmānōrum sententiam ferat. Is et nudius tertius in cūstōdiam cīvis Rōmānōs dedit et supplicātiōnem mihi dēcrēvit et indicēs hesternō diē maxi-
 20 mīs praemiīs adfēcit. Iam hoc nēminī dubium est quī reō cūstōdiam, quaesītōrī grātulātiōnem, indicī praemium dēcrērit, quid dē tōtā rē et causā iūdicārit. At vērō C. Caesar intellegit lēgem Semprōniam esse dē cīvibus Rōmānīs cōstitutam; quī autem reī pūblicae sit hostis eum cīvem esse
 25 nūllō modō posse: dēnique ipsum lātōrem Semprōniae lēgis iniussū populī poenās reī pūblicae dēpendisse. Idem ipsum Lentulum, largītōrem et prōdigum, nōn putat, cum dē perniciē populī Rōmānī, exitiō huius urbis tam acerbē, tam crūdēliter cōgitārit, etiam appellārī posse populārem.

Itaque homō mītissimus atque lēnissimus nōn dubitat P. Lentulum aeternīs tenebrīs vinculisque mandāre et sancit in posterum nē quis huius suppliciō levandō sē iactāre et in perniciē populī Rōmānī posthāc populāris esse possit. Adiungit etiam pūblicātiōnem bonōrum, ut omnīs 5 animī cruciātūs et corporis etiam egestās ac mendicitās cōsequātur.

*The death penalty cannot be considered cruel or too severe
for such men*

VI. Quam ob rem, sīve hoc statuerītis, dederītis mihi 11 comitem ad cōntiōnem populō cārū atque iūcundum, sīve Sīlānī sententiam sequī māluerītis, facile mē atque vōs 10 crūdēlītātis vituperātiōne populus Rōmānus *liberābit*, atque obtinēbō eam multō lēniōrem fuisse. Quamquam, patrēs cōscriptī, quae potest esse in tantī sceleris immānitāte pūniendā crūdēlītās? Ego enim dē meō sēnsū iūdicō. Nam ita mihi salvā rē pūblicā vōbīscum perfruī liceat, ut 15 ego, quod in hāc causā vehementior sum, nōn atrōcītate animī moveor—quis enim est mē mītiōr?—sed singulārī quādam hūmānitāte et misericordiā. Videor enim mihi vidēre hanc urbem, lūcem orbis terrārum atque arcem omnium gentium, subitō ūnō incendiō concidentem. Cernō 20 animō sepultā in patriā miserōs atque īsepultōs acervōs cīvium, versātur mihi ante oculōs aspectus Cethēgī et furor in vestrā caede bacchantis. Cum vērō mihi prōposuī rēg- 12 nantem Lentulum, sicut ipse sē ex fātīs spērāsse cōfessus est, purpurātum esse huic Gabīnium, cum exercitū vēnisse 25 Catilinam, tum lāmentātiōnem mātrum familiās, tum fugam virginum atque puerōrum ac vexātiōnem virginum Vestālium perhorrēscō, et, quia mihi vehementer haec videntur misera atque miseranda, idcirco in eōs quī ea per-

ficere voluērunt mē sevērūm vehementemque praebēbō. Etenim quaerō, sī quis pater familiās, liberīs suīs ā servō interfectīs, uxōre occīsā, incēnsā domō, supplicium dē servīs *nōn* quam acerbissimum sūmpserit, utrum is clēmēns
5 ac misericors an inhūmānissimus et crūdēlissimus esse videātur? Mihi vērō importūnus ac ferreus quī nōn dolōre et cruciātū nocentis suum dolōrem cruciātumque lēnierit. Sic nōs in hīs hominibus quī nōs, quī coniugēs, quī liberōs nostrōs trucīdāre voluērunt, quī singulās ūnīus cuiusque
10 nostrum domōs et hoc ūniversum reī pūblīcae domicilium dēlēre cōnātī sunt, quī id ēgērunt ut gentem Allobrogum in vestīgiīs huius urbis atque in cinere dēflagrātī imperī conlocārent, sī vehementissimī fuerīmus, misericordēs habēbimur; sīn remissiōrēs esse voluerīmus, summae nōbīs
15 crūdēlītātis in patriae cīviumque perniciē fāma subeunda est. Nisi vērō cuipiam L. Caesar, vir fortissimus et aman- tissimus reī pūblīcae, crūdēlior nudius tertius vīsus est, cum sorōris suae, fēminae lēctissimae, virum praesentem et audientem vitā prīvandū esse dīxit, cum avum suum
20 iussū cōsulis interfectum filiumque eius impūberem lēgātum ā patre missum in carcere necātum esse dīxit. Quōrum quod simile factum, quod initum dēlendae reī pūblīcae cōnsilium? Largītiōnis voluntās tum in rē pūblicā versāta est et partium quaedam contentiō. Atque illō tempore
25 huius avus Lentulī, vir clārissimus, armātus Gracchum est persecūtus. Ille etiam grave tum volnus accēpit, nē quid dē summā reī pūblīcae minuerētur; hic ad ēvertenda fundāmenta reī pūblīcae Gallōs arcessit, servitia concitat, Catilīnam vocat, attribuit nōs trucīdandōs Cethēgō et
30 cēterōs cīvīs interficiendōs Gabīniō, urbem inflammandam Cassiō, tōtam Italiam vāstandam dīripiendamque Catilīnae. Vereāminī cēseō, nē in hōc scelere tam immānī ac

nefandō aliquid sevērius statuissē videāminī; multō magis est verendum nē remissiōne poenae crūdēlēs in patriam quam nē sevēritātē animadversiōnis nimis vehementēs in acerbissimōs hostīs fuisse videāmur.

4

Whatever your decision, we shall have the loyal support of all classes, even the lowest

VII. Sed ea quae exaudiō, patrēs cōscrip̄tī, dissimulāre 14
nōn possum. Iaciuntur enim vōcēs quae perveniunt ad
aurīs meās eōrum quī verērī videntur ut habeam satis
praesidī ad ea quae vōs statuerītis hodiernō diē trāns-
igenda. Omnia et prōvīsa et parāta et cōstitutā sunt,
patrēs cōscrip̄tī, cum meā summā cūrā atque dīligentiā 10
tum multō etiam maiōre populī Rōmānī ad summum im-
perium retinendum et ad commūnīs fortūnās cōservan-
dās voluntātē. Omnēs adsunt omnium ōrdinum hominēs,
omnium generum, omnium dēnique aetātum; plēnum est
forum, plēna templa circum forum, plēnī omnēs aditūs 15
huius templī ac locī. Causa est enim post urbem conditam
haec inventa sōla in quā omnēs sentīrent ūnū atque
idem praeter eōs quī, cum sibi vidērent esse pereundum,
cum omnibus potius quam sōlī perīre voluērunt. Hōsce 15
ego hominēs excipiō et sēcernō libenter, neque in impro- 20
bōrum cīvium sed in acerbissimōrum hostium numerō
habendōs putō. Cēterī vērō, dī immortalēs! quā frequen-
tiā, quō studiō, quā virtūte ad commūnem salūtem digni-
tātemque cōsentiunt! Quid ego hīc equitēs Rōmānōs
commemorem? quī vōbīs ita summam ōrdinis cōsilīque 25
concēdunt ut vōbīscum dē amōre reī pūblīcae certent;
quōs ex multōrum annōrum dissēnsiōne huius ōrdinis ad
societātem concordiamque revocātōs hodiernus diēs vōbīs-
cum atque haec causa coniungit. Quam sī coniūctiōnem

in cōsulātū cōnfīrmātam meō perpetuam in rē pūblicā
 tenuerīmus, cōnfīrmō vōbīs nūllum posthāc malum cīvīle
 ac domesticum ad ūllam reī pūblicae partem esse ventūrum.
 Parī studiō dēfendendae reī pūblicae convēnisse videō
 5 tribūnōs aerāriōs, fortissimōs virōs; scrībās item ūniversōs,
 quōs, cum cāsū hic diēs ad aerārium frequentāsset, videō
 ab expectātiōne sortis ad salūtem commūnem esse con-
 16 versōs. Omnis ingenuōrum adest multitūdō, etiam tenuis-
 simōrum; quis est enim cui nōn haec templa, aspectus
 10 urbis, possessiō libertātis, lūx dēnique haec ipsa et com-
 mūne patriae solum cum sit cārum tum vērō dulce atque
 iūcundum? VIII. Operae pretium est, patrēs cōscriptī,
 libertīnōrum hominum studia cognōscere, quī, suā virtūte
 fortūnam huius cīvitātis cōsecūtī, vērē hanc suam patriam
 15 esse iūdicant, quam quīdam hīc nātī, et summō nātī locō,
 nōn patriam suam sed urbem hostium esse iūdicāvērunt.
 Sed quid ego hōsce hominēs ordinēsque commemorō quōs
 prīvātae fortūnae, quōs commūnis rēs pūblica, quōs dēni-
 que libertās ea quae dulcissima est ad salūtem patriae
 20 dēfendendam excitāvit? Servus est nēmō, quī modo tolerā-
 bilī condiciōne sit servitūtis, quī nōn audāciam cīvium
 perhorrēscat, quī nōn haec stāre cupiat, quī nōn quantum
 audet et quantum potest cōferat ad salūtem voluntātis.
 17 Quā rē sī quem vestrum forte commovet hoc quod audītum
 25 est, lēnōnem quendam Lentulī concursāre circum tabernās,
 pretiō spērāre sollicitārī posse animōs egentium atque im-
 perītōrum, est id quidem coeptum atque temptātum, sed
 nūllī sunt inventī tam aut fortūnā miserī aut voluntāte
 perditī quī nōn illum ipsum sellae atque operis et quaestūs
 30 cotīdiānī locum, quī nōn cubīle ac lectulum suum, quī
 dēnique nōn cursum hunc ōtiōsum vītae suae salvum esse
 velint. Multō vērō maxima pars eōrum quī in tabernīs

sunt, immō vērō—id enim potius est dīcendum—genus hoc ūniversum amantissimum est ōtī. Etenim omne īnstrūmentum, omnis opera atque quaestus frequentīā cīvium sustentātur, alitur ōtīō; quōrum si quaestus occlūsīs tabernīs minui solet, quid tandem incēnsīs futūrum fuit? 5



ALTAR (MUSEO DELLE TERME)

You must decide, realizing the danger we have escaped and the need of safeguarding the future

Quae cum ita sint, patrēs cōscriptī, vōbīs populī Rō- 18
mānī praesidia nōn dēsunt: vōs nē populō Rōmānō deesse
videāminī prōvidēte. IX. Habētis cōsulem ex plūrimis
perīculis et īnsidiīs atque ex mediā morte nōn ad vītā suā
sed ad salūtem vestram reservātum. Omnēs ōrdinēs ad cōn- 10
servandā rem pūblicā mente, voluntāte, vōce cōnsen-
tiunt. Obsessa facibus et tēlīs impiae coniūrātiōnis vōbīs

supplex manūs tendit patria commūnis, vōbīs sē, vōbīs vī-
 tam omnium cīvium, vōbīs arcem et Capitōlium, vōbīs ārās
 Penātium, vōbīs illum ignem Vestae sempiternum, vōbīs
 omnium deōrum templa atque dēlūbra, vōbīs mūrōs atque
 5 urbis tēcta commendat. Praetereā dē vestrā vītā, de coniu-
 gum vestrārum atque liberōrum animā, dē fortūnīs omnium,
 dē sēdibus, dē focīs vestrīs hodiernō diē vōbīs iūdicandum
 19 est. Habētis ducem memorem vestrī, oblītum suī, quae
 nōn semper facultās datur; habētis omnīs ōrdinēs, omnīs
 10 hominēs, ūniversum populum Rōmānum, id quod in cīvili
 causā hodiernō diē prīmum vidēmus, ūnum atque idem
 sentientem. Cōgitāte quantīs labōribus fundātum impe-
 rium, quantā virtūte stabilītam libertātem, quantā deōrum
 benignitāte auctās exaggerātāsque fortūnās ūna nox paene
 15 dēlērit. Id nē umquam posthāc nōn modo nōn cōficī sed
 nē cōgitārī quidem possit ā cīvibus hodiernō diē prōviden-
 dum est. Atque haec, nōn ut vōs quī mihi studiō paene
 praecurritis excitārem, locūtus sum, sed ut mea vōx quae
 dēbet esse in rē pūblicā prīnceps officiō fūncta cōsulārī
 20 vidērētur.

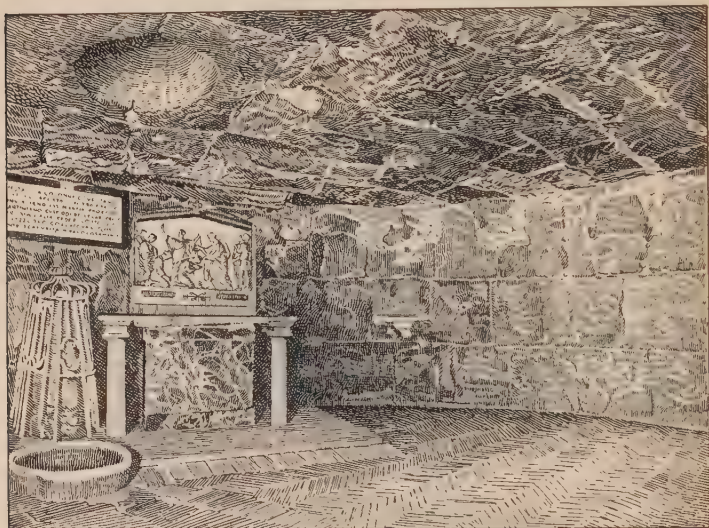
*I shall have many enemies, but no regrets for a stand which will
 bring me fame. You and all good citizens will stand together to
 defend me*

20 X. Nunc ante quam ad sententiam redeō, dē mē pauca
 dīcam. Ego, quanta manus est coniūrātōrum, quam vidētis
 esse permagnam, tantam mē inimicōrum multitudinem
 suscēpisse videō; sed eam turpem iūdicō et infīrmam et
 25 abiectam. Quod sī aliquandō alicuius furōre et scelere
 concitāta manus ista plūs valuerit quam vestra ac reī pūbli-
 cae dignitās, mē tamen meōrum factōrum atque cōsiliō-
 rum numquam, patrēs cōscriptī, paenitēbit. Etenim mors,

quam illi fortasse minitantur, omnibus est parāta: vītae
 tantam laudem quantā vōs mē vestrīs dēcrētīs honestāstis
 nēmō est adsecūtus; cēterīs enim semper bene gestā, mihi
 ūnī cōservātā rē pūblicā grātulātiōnem dēcrēvistis. Sit 21
 Scīpiō clārus ille cuius cōsiliō atque virtūte Hannibal in 5
 Āfricam redīre atque Italiā dēcēdere coāctus est, ōrnētur
 alter eximiā laude Āfricānus quī duās urbīs huic imperiō
 īfestissimās Karthāginem Numantiamque dēlēvit, habeā-
 tur vir ēgregius Paulus ille cuius currum rēx potentissimus
 quondam et nōbilissimus Persēs honestāvit, sit aeternā 10
 glōriā Marius quī bis Italiam obsidiōne et metū servitūtis
 līberāvit, antepōnātur omnibus Pompeius cuius rēs gestae
 atque virtūtēs īdem quibus sōlis cursus regiōnibus ac ter-
 minīs continentur: erit profectō inter hōrum laudēs aliquid
 locī nostrae glōriae, nisi forte maius est patefacere nōbīs 15
 prōvinciās quō exīre possīmus quam cūrāre ut etiam illī
 quī absunt habeant quō victōrēs revertantur. Quamquam 22
 est ūnō locō condiciō melior externae victōriae quam do-
 mesticae, quod hostēs aliēnigenae aut oppressī serviunt aut
 receptī beneficiō sē obligātōs putant, quī autem ex numerō 20
 cīvium dēmentiā aliquā dēprāvātī hostēs patriae semel esse
 coepērunt, eōs, cum ā perniciē reī pūblīcae reppulerīs, nec
 vī coercēre nec beneficiō plācāre possīs. Quā rē mihi cum
 perditīs cīvibus aeternum bellum susceptum esse vidēō.
 Id ego vestrō bonōrumque omnium auxiliō memoriāque 25
 tantōrum periculōrum, quae nōn modo in hōc populō quī
 servātus est sed in omnium gentium sermōnibus ac men-
 tibus semper haerēbit, ā mē atque ā meīs facile prōpulsārī
 posse cōfīdō. Neque ūlla profectō tanta vīs reperiētur
 quae coniūctiōnem vestram equitumque Rōmānōrum et 30
 tantam cōspirātiōnem bonōrum omnium cōnfringere et
 labēfactāre possit.

I ask but one reward for my services,—the memory of my consulship. Your fearless decision will be carried out

- 23 XI. Quae cum ita sint, prō imperiō, prō exercitū, prō prōvinciā quam neglexī, prō triumphō cēterisque laudis insignibus quae sunt ā mē propter urbis vestraeque salūtis



THE TULLIANUM, BENEATH THE CARCER

custōdiam repudiāta, prō clientēlis hospitīisque prōvinciā-
 5 libus (quae tamen urbānīs opibus nōn minōre labōre tueor
 quam comparō), prō hīs igitur omnibus rēbus, prō meīs in
 vōs singulāribus studiīs prōque hāc quam perspicitis ad
 cōservandam rem pūblicam dīligentiā nihil ā vōbīs nisi
 huius temporis tōtiusque meī cōsulātūs memoriā pos-
 10 tulō: quae dum erit in vestrīs fīxa mentibus, tūtissimō mē
 mūrō saeptum esse arbitrābor. Quod sī meam spem vīs
 improbōrum fefellerit atque superāverit, commendō vōbīs

parvum meum filium, cui profectō satis erit praesidī nōn
 solum ad salutem vērū etiam ad dignitatem, sī eius quī
 haec omnia suō solum periculō cōservārit illum filium esse
 memineritis. Quāpropter dē summā salutē vestrā popu- 24
 lūque Rōmānī, dē vestris coniugibus ac liberis, dē arīs ac 5
 focis, dē fānis atque templis, dē tōtius urbis tectis ac
 sedibus, dē imperiō ac libertate, dē salutē Italiae, dē ūni-
 versā rē publicā dēcernite diligenter, ut instituistis, ac
 fortiter. Habētis eum cōsulem quī et pārere vestris dē-
 cretis nōn dubitet et ea quae statueritis, quoad vivet, dē- 10
 fendere et per sē ipsum praestāre possit.



VICTORY OF BRESCIA

M. TVLLI CICERONIS DE IMPERIO CN. POMPEI

AD QVIRITES ORATIO

*Cicero explains this his first appearance as a political speaker
from the Rostra*

VAMQVAM mihi semper frequēns cōspectus 1
vester multō iūcundissimus, hic autem locus ad
agendum amplissimus, ad dīcendum ōrnātissimus
est vīsus, Quirītēs, tamen hōc aditū laudis quī semper
optimō cuique maximē patuit nōn mea mē voluntās adhūc 5
sed vītae meae ratiōnēs ab ineunte aetāte susceptae pro-
hibuērunt. Nam cum antea per aetātem nōndum huius
auctōritātem locī attingere audērem statueremque nihil
hūc nisi perfectum ingenio, ēlabōrātum industriā adferri
oportēre, omne meum tempus amīcōrum temporibus trāns- 10
mittendum putāvī. Ita neque hic locus vacuus fuit umquam 2
ab eīs quī vestram causam dēfenderent, et meus labor in
prīvātōrum periculīs castē integrēque versātus ex vestrō
iūdicio fructum est amplissimum cōsecūtus. Nam cum
propter dilātiōnem comitiōrum ter praetor prīmus centuriīs 15
cūctīs renūtiātus sum, facile intellēxī, Quirītēs, et quid
dē mē iūdicārētis et quid aliīs praescriberētis. Nunc cum
et auctōritātis in mē tantum sit quantum vōs honōribus
mandandīs esse voluistis, et ad agendum facultātis tan-
tum quantum hominī vigilantī ex forēnsī ūsū prope cotī- 20

diāna dīcendī exercitātiō potuit adferre, certē et, sī quid auctōritātis in mē est, apud eōs ūtar quī eam mihi dedērunt, et, sī quid in dīcendō cōsequī possum, eīs ostendam potissimum quī eī quoque reī frūctum suō iūdictiō tribuendum esse dūxērunt. Atque illud in prīmīs mihi laetandum iūre esse videō quod in hāc īnsolitā mihi ex hōc locō ratiōne dīcendī causa tālis oblāta est in quā ōrātiō deesse nēminī possit. Dīcendum est enim dē Cn. Pompeī singulārī eximiāque virtūte; huius autem ōrātiōnis difficilior est exitum quam prīncipium invenīre. Ita mihi nōn tam cōpia quam modus in dīcendō quaerendus est.

A critical situation in the East

4 II. Atque ut inde ōrātiō mea proficiscātur unde haec omnis causa dūcitur, bellum grave et periculōsum vestrīs vectīgālībus atque sociīs ā duōbus potentissimīs rēgibus īnfertur, Mithridāte et Tigrāne, quōrum alter relictus, alter lacessītus occāsīōnem sibi ad occupandam Asiam oblātā esse arbitrātur. Equitibus Rōmānīs, honestissimīs virīs, 20 adferuntur ex Asiā cotīdiē litterae, quōrum magnae rēs aguntur in vestrīs vectīgālībus exercendis occupātae; quī ad mē prō necessitudīne quae mihi est cum illō ōrdine causam reī pūblīcae 5 perīculaue rērum suārum dētulērunt: Bīthyniae, quae nunc vestra prōvincia est, vīcōs exūstōs esse complūrīs, 25 rēgnum Ariobarzānis quod fīnitimum est vestrīs vectīgālībus tōtum esse in hostium potestāte; L. Lūcillum magnīs rēbus gestīs ab eō bellō discēdere; huic quī successerit, nōn satis esse parātum ad tantum bellum administrandum;



MITHRIDATES



ūnum ab omnibus sociīs et cīvibus ad id bellum imperā-
tōrem dēposcī atque expetī, eundem hunc ūnum ab hosti-
bus metuī, praetereā nēminem.

*Main heads of the argument. Character of the war. The
national honor has suffered*

Causa quae sit vidētis; nunc quid agendum sit ipsī 6
cōnsiderāte. Prīmum mihi vidētur dē genere bellī, deinde 5
dē magnitūdine, tum dē imperātōre dēligendō esse dīcen-
dum. Genus est eius bellī quod maximē vestrōs animōs
excitāre atque inflammāre ad perse-
quendī studium dēbeat. In quō agitur
populī Rōmānī glōria quae vōbīs ā 10
maiōribus cum magna in omnibus rēbus
tum summa in rē mīlitārī trādita est;
agitur salūs sociōrum atque amīcōrum,
prō quā multa maiōrēs vestrī magna et
gravia bella gessērunt; aguntur certis- 15



SULLA

sima populī Rōmānī vectīgālia et maxima, quibus āmissīs
et pācis ōrnāmenta et subsidia bellī requirētis; aguntur
bona multōrum cīvium quibus est ā vōbīs et ipsōrum
causā et reī pūblīcae cōnsulendum. III. Et quoniam 7
semper appetentēs glōriae praeter cēterās gentīs atque 20
avidī laudis fuistis, dēlenda vōbīs est illa macula Mithridā-
ticō bellō superiōre concepta quae penitus iam īnsēdit ac
nimis inveterāvit in populī Rōmānī nōmine, quod is quī
ūnō diē tōtā in Asiā tot in cīvitatibus ūnō nūntiō atque ūnā
significātiōne *omnis* cīvīs Rōmānōs necandōs trucīdan- 25
dōsque cūrāvit, nōn modo adhūc poenam nūllam suō
dignam scelere suscepit, sed ab illō tempore annum iam
tertium et vīcēsimum rēgnat, et ita rēgnat ut sē nōn Pontī

neque Cappadociae latebris occultare velit, sed emergere ex patrio regno atque in vestris vectigalibus, hoc est in
 8 Asiae luce, versari. Etenim adhuc ita nostri cum illo rege contendunt imperatores ut ab illo insignia victoriae, non
 5 victoriam reportarent. Triumphavit L. Sulla, triumphavit L. Murena de Mithridate, duo fortissimi viri et summi imperatores, sed ita triumpharunt ut ille pulsus superatusque regnaret. Verum tamen illis imperatoribus laus est
 10 tribuenda quod egerunt, venia danda quod reliquerunt, propterea quod ab eo bello Sullam in Italiam res publica, Murenam Sulla revocavit.

Mithridates' preparations, reaching even to Spain. Lucullus successful at first in the East

9 IV. Mithridates autem omne reliquum tempus non ad oblivionem veteris belli sed ad comparationem novi contulit. Qui postea, cum maximas aedificasset ornassetque
 15 classis, exercitusque permagnos quibuscumque ex gentibus potuisset comparasset, et se Bosporanis, finitimis suis, bellum inferre simularet, usque in Hispaniam legatos ac litteras misit ad eos ducis quibuscum tum bellum gereremus, ut, cum duobus in locis disiunctissimis maximaeque
 20 diversis uno consilio a binis hostium copiis bellum terra marique gereretur, vos ancipiti contentione districti de
 10 imperio dimicaretis. Sed tamen alterius partis periculum, Sertorianae atque Hispaniensis, quae multo plus firmitatis ac roboris habebat, Cn. Pompei divino consilio ac
 25 singulari virtute depulsum est; in altera parte ita res ab L. Lucullo, summo viro, est administrata ut initia illarum gestarum magna atque praeclara non felicitati eius sed virtuti, haec autem extrema quae nuper acciderunt non

culpae sed fortūnae tribuenda esse videantur. Sed dē Lūcullō dīcam aliō locō, et ita dīcam, Quirītēs, ut neque vēra laus eī dētrācta ōrātiōne meā neque falsa adfīcta esse videātur; dē vestrī imperī dignitāte atque glōriā, quoniam 11 is est exōrsus ōrātiōnis meae, vidēte quem vōbīs animum 5 suscipiendum putētis.

Examples of Rome's jealousy of her honor in former times

V. Maiōrēs nostrī saepe prō mercātōribus aut nāviculārīīs nostrīs iniuriōsius trāctātīs bella gessērunt; vōs tot mīlibus cīvium Rōmānōrum ūnō nūntiō atque ūnō tempore necātīs quō tandem animō esse dēbētis? Lēgātī quod erant 10 appellātī superbius, Corinthum patrēs vestrī tōtīus Graeciae lūmen exstīnctum esse voluērunt; vōs eum rēgem inultum esse patiēminī quī lēgātum populī Rōmānī cōsulārem vīculīs ac verberibus atque omnī suppliciō excruciātum necāvit? Illī libertātem imminūtā cīvium Rōmānōrum 15 nōn tulērunt; vōs ēreptam vītā neglegētis? Iūs lēgātīōnis verbō violātum illī persecūtī sunt; vōs lēgātum omnī suppliciō interfectum relinquētis? Vidēte nē, ut illīs pul- 12 cherrimum fuit tantam vōbīs imperī glōriam trādere, sīc vōbīs turpissimum sit id quod accēpistis tuērī et cōn- 20 servāre nōn posse.

The safety of the allies is at stake; Asia and Greece are calling for aid. They want Pompey

Quid? quod salūs sociōrum summum in perīculum ac discrīmen vocātur, quō tandem animō ferre dēbētis? Rēgnō est expulsus Ariobarzānēs rēx, socius populī Rōmānī atque amīcus; imminent duo rēgēs tōtī Asiae nōn 25 solum vōbīs inimīcissimī sed etiam vestrīs sociīs atque

amīcīs; cīvitatēs autem omnēs cūctā Asiā atque Graeciā
 vestrum auxilium expectāre propter perīculī magnitū-
 dinem cōguntur; imperātorem ā vōbīs certum dēposcere,
 cum praesertim vōs alium mīserītis, neque audent neque id
 5 sē facere sine summō perīculō
 13 posse arbitrantur. Vident enim
 et sentiunt hoc idem quod vōs,
 ūnum virum esse in quō summa
 sint omnia, et eum propter esse,
 10 quō etiam carent aegrius; cuius
 adventū ipsō atque nōmine, tam-
 etsī ille ad maritimum bellum
 vēnerit, tamen impetūs hostium
 repressōs esse intellegunt ac re-
 15 tardātōs. Hī vōs, quoniam liberē
 loquī nōn licet, tacitī rogant ut sē
 quoque, sicut cēterārum prōvin-
 ciārum sociōs, dignōs exīstimētis
 quōrum salūtem tālī virō com-
 20 mendētis, atque hōc etiam magis
 quod cēterōs in prōvinciās eius modī hominēs cum im-
 periō mittimus ut, etiam sī ab hoste dēfendant, tamen
 ipsōrum adventūs in urbīs sociōrum nōn multum ab hostīlī
 expugnātiōne differant, hunc audiēbant antea, nunc prae-
 25 sentem vident tantā temperantiā, tantā mānsuētūdine,
 tantā hūmānitāte ut eī beātissimī esse videantur apud quōs
 ille diūtissimē commorētur.



POMPEY

Most important revenues are endangered. Asia, as a principal source of revenue, must be protected

VI. Quā rē sī propter sociōs nullā ipsī iniuriā lacessitī 14
maiōrēs nostrī cum Antiochō, cum Philippō, cum Aetōlīs,
cum Poenīs bella gessērunt, quantō vōs studiōsius convenit
iniuriīs prōvocātōs sociōrum salūtem unā cum imperī vestrī
dignitāte dēfendere, praesertim cum dē maximīs vestrīs 5
vectīgālibus agātur? Nam cēterārum prōvinciārum vectī-
gālia, Quirītēs, tanta sunt ut eīs ad ipsās prōvinciās tuendās
vix contentī esse possīmus, Asia vērō tam opīma est ac
fertilis ut et ūbertāte agrōrum et varietāte frūctuum et
magnitūdine pāstiōnis et multitūdine eārum rērum quae 10
exportentur facile omnibus terrīs antecellat. Itaque haec
vōbīs prōvincia, Quirītēs, sī et bellī ūtilitātem et pācis
dignitātem retinēre voltis, nōn modo ā calamitāte sed etiam
ā metū calamitātis est dēfendenda. Nam in cēterīs rēbus 15
cum vēnit calamitās, tum dētrīmentum accipitur; at in 15
vectīgālibus nōn sōlum adventus malī sed etiam metus ipse
adfert calamitātem. Nam cum hostium cōpiae nōn longē
absunt, etiam sī inruptiō nullā facta est, tamen pecua relin-
quuntur, agrī cultūra dēseritur, mercātōrum nāvigātiō con-
quiēscit. Ita neque ex portū neque ex decumīs neque ex 20
scriptūrā vectīgal cōservārī potest; quā rē saepe tōtīus
annī frūctūs unō rūmōre periculī atque unō bellī terrōre
āmittitur. Quō tandem igitur animō esse exīstimātis aut 16
eōs quī vectīgālia nōbīs pēnsitant, aut eōs quī exercent
atque exigunt, cum duo rēgēs cum maximīs cōpiīs propter 25
adsint, cum una excursiō equitātūs perbreuī tempore tōtīus
annī vectīgal auferre possit, cum pūblicānī familiās maxi-
mās quās in salīnīs habent, quās in agrīs, quās in portibus
atque in cūstōdiīs magnō periculō sē habēre arbitrentur?

Putātisne vōs illīs rēbus fruī posse, nisi eōs quī vōbīs fructuī sunt cōservāverītis nōn solum, ut ante dīxī, calamitāte sed etiam calamitātis formīdine liberātos?

Private investments also at stake. Tax-farmers and business interests will suffer. Hard times may follow at Rome

- 17 VII. Ac nē illud quidem vōbīs neglegendum est quod
 5 mihi ego extrēmum prōposueram, cum essem dē bellī
 genere dictūrus, quod ad multōrum bona cīvium Rōmānō-
 rum pertinet; quōrum vōbīs prō vestrā sapientiā, Quirītēs,
 habenda est ratiō dīligenter. Nam et pūblicānī, hominēs
 honestissimī atque ōrnatissimī, suās ratiōnēs et cōpiās in
 10 illam prōvinciam contulērunt, quōrum ipsōrum per sē rēs
 et fortūnae vōbīs cūrae esse dēbent; etenim, sī vectīgālia
 nervōs esse rei pūblicae semper dūximus, eum certē ōrdi-
 nem quī exercet illa firmāmentum cēterōrum ōrdinum rēctē
 18 esse dīcēmus. Deinde ex cēterīs ōrdinibus hominēs gnāvī
 15 atque industriī partim ipsī in Asiā negōtiantur, quibus vōs
 absentibus cōsulere dēbētis, partim eōrum in eā prōvinciā
 pecūniās magnās conlocātās habent. Est igitur hūmāni-
 tātis vestrae magnum numerum eōrum cīvium calamitāte
 prohibēre, sapientiae vidēre multōrum cīvium calamitātem
 20 ā rē pūblicā seiūctam esse nōn posse. Etenim illud prī-
 mum parvī rēfert, vōs pūblicānīs omissīs vectīgālia postea
 victōriā recipere; neque enim īsdem redimendī facultās
 erit propter calamitātem neque aliīs voluntās propter
 19 timōrem. Deinde quod nōs eadem Asia atque īdem iste
 25 Mithridātēs initiō bellī Asiāticī docuit, id quidem certē
 calamitāte doctī memoriā retinēre dēbēmus. Nam tum,
 cum in Asiā magnās permultī rēs amīsērunt, scīmus Rōmae
 solūtiōne impedītā fidem concidisse. Nōn enim possunt
 ūnā in cīvitate multī rem ac fortūnās amittere ut nōn plūrīs

sēcum in eandem trahant calamitātem; ā quō periculū prohibēte rem pūblicam, et mihi crēdite id quod ipsī vidētis: haec fidēs atque haec ratiō pecūniārum quae Rōmae, quae in forō versātur, implicāta est cum illīs pecūniīs Asiaticīs et cohaeret; ruere illa nōn possunt ut haec nōn 5 eōdem labefacta mōtū concidant. Quā rē vidēte num dubitandum vōbīs sit omnī studiō ad id bellum incumbere in quō glōria nōminis vestrī, salūs sociōrum, vectīgālia maxima, fortūnae plūrimōrum cīvium coniūctae cum rē pūblicā dēfendantur.

10

Seriousness of the war. What Lucullus has accomplished

VIII. Quoniam dē genere bellī dīxī, nunc dē magnitū- 20 dine pauca dīcam. Potest enim hoc dīcī, bellī genus esse



WARSHIP

ita necessārium ut sit gerendum, nōn esse ita magnum ut sit pertimēscendum. In quō maximē labōrandum est 15 nē forte ea vōbīs quae dīligentissimē prōvidenda sunt contemnenda esse videantur. Atque ut omnēs intellegant mē L. Lūcullō tantum impertīre laudis quantum fortī virō et sapientī hominī 20 et magnō imperātōrī dēbeātur, dīcō

eius adventū maximās Mithridātī cōpiās omnibus rēbus ōrnātās atque īnstrūctās fuisse, urbemque Asiae clārissimam nōbīsque amīcissimam Cyzicēnōrum obsessam esse ab ipsō rēge maximā multitūdine et oppugnātā vehemen- 25 tissimē; quam L. Lūcullus virtūte, adsiduitāte, cōsiliō summīs obsidiōnis periculīs liberāvit. Ab eōdem imperā- 21 tōre classem magnā et ōrnātā, quae ducibus Sertōriānīs ad Italiam studiō atque odiō īnflammāta raperētur, superātam esse atque dēpressā; magnās hostium praetereā 30

cōpiās multīs proeliīs esse dēlētās patefactumque nostrīs
 legiōnibus esse Pontum quī anteā populō Rōmānō ex omnī
 aditū clausus fuisset; Sinōpēn atque Amīsum, quibus in
 oppidīs erant domicilia rēgis omnibus rēbus ōrnāta ac
 5 referta, cēterāsque urbīs Pontī et Cappadociae permultās
 ūnō aditū adventūque esse captās; rēgem spoliātum rēgnō
 patriō atque avītō ad aliōs sē rēgēs atque ad aliās gentīs
 supplicem contulisse; atque haec omnia salvīs populī Rō-
 mānī sociīs atque integrīs vectīgālibus esse gesta. Satis
 10 opīnor haec esse laudis atque ita, Quirītēs, ut hoc vōs
 intellegātis, ā nūllō istōrum quī huic obtrectant lēgī atque
 causae L. Lūcillum similiter ex hōc locō esse laudātum.

*Mithridates escapes. Lucullus in pursuit invades Armenia. A
 Roman disaster. Glabrio succeeds Lucullus*

22 IX. Requīrētur fortasse nunc quem ad modum, cum
 haec ita sint, reliquum possit magnum esse bellum. Co-
 15 gnōscite, Quirītēs; nōn enim hoc sine causā quaerī vidētur.
 Prīmum ex suō rēgnō sīc Mithridātēs profūgit ut ex eōdem
 Pontō Mēdēa illa quondam fūgisse dīcitur, quam prae-
 dicant in fugā frātris suī membra in eīs locīs quā sē parēs
 persequerētur dissipāvisse, ut eōrum conlēctiō dispersa
 20 maerorque patrius celeritātem cōsequendī retardāret. Sīc
 Mithridātēs fugiēns maximam vim aurī atque argentī
 pulcherrimārumque rērum omnium quās et ā maiōribus
 accēperat et ipse bellō superiōre ex tōtā Asiā dīreptās in
 suum rēgnum congesserat in Pontō omnem relīquit. Haec
 25 dum nostrī conligunt omnia dīligentius, rēx ipse ē manibus
 effūgit; ita illum in persequendī studiō maeror, hōs laetitia
 23 tardāvit. Hunc in illō timōre et fugā Tigrānēs, rēx Arme-
 nius, excēpit diffidentemque rēbus suīs cōfīrmāvit et ad-
 flīctum ērēxit perditumque recreāvit. Cuius in rēgnum

postea quam L. Lūcullus cum exercitū vēnit, plūrēs etiam gentēs contrā imperātōrem nostrum concitātae sunt. Erat enim metus iniectus eīs nātiōnibus quās numquam populus Rōmānus neque lacesse dās bellō neque temptandās putāvit; erat etiam alia gravis atque 5 vehemēns opīniō quae per animōs gentium barbarārum pervāserat, fānī locuplētissimī et religiōsissimī dīripiendī causā in eās ōrās nostrum esse exercitum adductum. Ita nātiōnēs multae 10 atque magnae novō quōdam terrōre ac metū concitābantur. Noster autem exercitus, tametsī urbem ex Tigrānis rēgnō cēperat et proeliīs ūsus erat secundīs, tamen nimiā longinquitāte 15 locōrum ac dēsideriō suōrum commovēbātur. Hīc iam plūra nōn dīcam; 24 fuit enim illud extrēmum ut ex eīs locīs ā mīlitibus nostrīs reditus magis mātūrus quam prōgressiō longior quaere- 20 rētur. Mithridātēs autem sē et suam manum iam confīrmārat eōrum operā quī ad eum ex ipsīus rēgnō concesserant, et magnīs adventīciīs auxiliīs multōrum rēgum et nātiōnum iuvābā- 25



MEDEA

tur. Iam hoc ferē sīc fierī solēre accēpimus, ut rēgum adflīctae fortūnae facile multōrum opēs adliciant ad misericordiam, maximēque eōrum quī aut rēgēs sunt aut vīvunt in rēgnō, ut eīs nōmen rēgāle magnum et sānctum esse 29 videātur. Itaque tantum victus efficere potuit quantum 25 incolumis numquam est ausus optāre. Nam cum sē in rēgnum suum recēpisset, nōn fuit eō contentus quod eī

praeter spem acciderat, ut illam posteā quam pulsus erat
 terram umquam attingeret, sed in exercitum nostrum
 clārum atque victōrem impetum fēcit. Sinite hōc locō,
 Quirītēs, sicut poētae solent quī rēs Rōmānās scribunt,
 5 praeterīre mē nostram calamitātem, quae tanta fuit ut
 eam ad aurīs imperātōris nōn ex proeliō nūntius sed ex
 26 sermōne rūmor adferret. Hīc in illō ipsō malō gravissi-
 māque bellī offēnsiōne L. Lūcullus, quī tamen aliquā ex
 parte eīs incommodīs medērī fortasse potuisset, vestrō
 10 iussū coāctus quī imperī diūturnitātī modum statuendum
 vetere exemplō putāvistis, partim mīlitum quī iam stīpen-
 diīs cōfectīs erant dīmīsīt, partim M'. Glabriōnī trādīdit.
 Multa praetereō cōsultō; sed ea vōs coniectūrā perspicite,
 quantum illud bellum factum putētis quod coniungant
 15 rēgēs potentissimī, renovent agitātae nātiōnēs, suscipiant
 integrae gentēs, novus imperātor noster accipiat vetere
 exercitū pulsō.

*The choice of a commander. Who but Pompey? Of the talents
 required by a commander he possesses unequaled military science*

27 X. Satis multa mihi verba fēcisse videor quā rē esset hoc
 bellum genere ipsō necessārium, magnitūdine periculōsum;
 20 restat ut dē imperātōre ad id bellum dēligendō ac tantīs
 rēbus praeficiendō dīcendum esse videātur. Vtinam, Qui-
 rītēs, virōrum fortium atque innocentium cōpiam tantam
 habērētis ut haec vōbīs dēliberātiō difficilis esset quemnam
 potissimum tantīs rēbus ac tantō bellō praeficiendum putā-
 25 rētis! Nunc vērō cum sit ūnus Cn. Pompeius quī nōn
 modo eōrum hominum quī nunc sunt glōriam sed etiam
 antīquitātis memoriam virtūte superārit, quae rēs est quae
 cuiusquam animum in hāc causā dubium facere possit?
 28 Ego enim sīc exīstimō, in summō imperātōre quattuor hās

rēs inesse oportēre, scientiam reī mīlitāris, virtūtem, auctōritātem, fēlicitātem. Quis igitur hōc homine scientior umquam aut fuit aut esse dēbuit? quī ē lūdō atque ē pueritiāe disciplīnīs bellō maximō atque ācerrimīs hostibus ad patris exercitum atque in mīlitiae disciplīnam profectus est, quī extrēmā pueritiā mīles in exercitū summī fuit imperātōris, ineunte adulēscientiā maximī ipse exercitūs imperātor, quī saepius cum hoste cōflīxit quam quisquam cum inimicō concertāvit, plūra bella gessit quam cēterī lēgērunt, plūrīs prōvinciās cōnfēcit quam aliī concupīvērunt, cuius adulēscientia ad scientiam reī mīlitāris nōn aliēnīs praeceptīs sed suis imperiīs, nōn offēnsiōnibus bellī sed vic-



COIN OF THE
SOCIAL WAR

tōriīs, nōn stīpendiīs sed triumphīs est ērudīta. Quod dēnique genus esse bellī potest in quō illum nōn exercuerit fortūna reī pūblicae? Cīvīle, Āfricānum, Trānsalpīnum, Hispāniēse, mixtum ex cīvibus atque ex bellicōsissimīs nātiōnibus, servīle, nāvāle bellum, varia et dīversa genera et bellōrum et hostium nōn solum gesta ab hōc ūnō sed etiam cōnfecta nūllam rem esse dēclārant in ūsū positam mīlitārī quae huius virī scientiam fugere possit.

His ability, as proved in many different wars, but especially by his prompt conclusion of that against the pirates

XI. Iam vērō virtūtī Cn. Pompeī quae potest ōrātiō pār invenīrī? quid est quod quisquam aut illō dignum aut vōbīs novum aut cuiquam inaudītum possit adferre? Neque enim sōlae sunt virtūtēs imperātōriāe quae volgō exīstimantur, labor in negōtiīs, fortitūdō in periculīs, industria in agendō, celeritās in cōficiendō, cōnsilium in

prōvidendō, quae tanta sunt in hōc ūnō quanta in omnibus reliquīs imperātōribus quōs aut vīdimus aut audīvimus nōn
30 fuērunt. Testis est Italia quam ille ipse victor L. Sulla huius virtūte et subsidiō cōfessus est liberātam; testis
5 Sicilia quam multīs undique cīntam periculīs nōn terrōre bellī sed cōnsilī celeritāte explicāvit; testis Āfrica quae magnīs oppressa hostium cōpiīs eōrum ipsōrum sanguine redundāvit; testis Gallia per quam legiōnibus nostrīs iter in Hispāniam Gallōrum interniciōne patefactum est; testis
10 Hispānia quae saepissimē plūrimōs hostīs ab hōc superātōs prōstrātōsque cōspexit; testis iterum et saepius Italia quae, cum servilī bellō taetrō periculōsōque premerētur, ab hōc auxilium absente expetīvit, quod bellum expectātiōne
14 eius attenuātum atque imminūtum est, adventū sublātum
31 ac sepultum; testēs nunc vērō iam omnēs ōrae atque omnēs terrae gentēs nātiōnēs, maria dēnique omnia cum ūniversa tum in singulis ōrīs omnēs sinūs atque portūs. Quis enim tōtō marī locus per hōs annōs aut tam fīrmum habuit praesidium ut tūtus esset, aut tam fuit abditus ut latēret?
20 Quis nāvigāvit quī nōn sē aut mortis aut servitūtis periculō committeret, cum aut hieme aut refertō praedōnum marī nāvigāret? Hoc tantum bellum, tam turpe, tam vetus, tam lātē dīvisum atque dispersum quis umquam arbitrārē-
24 tur aut ab omnibus imperātōribus ūnō annō aut omnibus
32 annīs ab ūnō imperātōre cōficī posse? Quam prōvinciam tenuistis ā praedōnibus liberam per hōsce annōs? quod vectīgal vōbīs tūtum fuit? quem socium dēfendistis? cui praesidiō classibus vestrīs fuistis? quam multās exīstimātis īnsulās esse dēsertās, quam multās aut metū relictās
30 aut ā praedōnibus captās urbīs esse sociōrum? XII. Sed quid ego longinqua commemorō? Fuit hoc quondam, fuit proprium populī Rōmānī longē ā domō bellāre et prōpug-

nāculis imperī sociōrum fortūnās, nōn sua tēcta dēfendere. Sociis ego vestrīs mare per hōsce annōs clausum fuisse dīcam, cum exercitūs vestrī numquam Brundisiō nisi hieme summā trāsmiserint? Quī ad vōs ab exterīs nātiōibus venīrent, captōs querar, cum lēgātī populī Rōmānī red- 5
ēptī sint? Mercātōribus mare tūtum nōn fuisse dīcam, cum duodecim secūrēs in praedōnum potestātem pervēnerint? Cnidum aut Colophōnem aut Samum, nōbilissimās 33
urbīs, innumerābilisque aliās captās esse commemorem,



DETAILS OF SHIPS. FROM A CAPITOLINE RELIEF

cum vestrōs portūs atque eōs portūs quibus vītā ac spīri- 10
tum dūcitis in praedōnum fuisse potestāte sciātis? An
vērō ignōrātis portum Caiētae celeberrimum et plēnissi-
mum nāvium īnspectante praetōre ā praedōnibus esse
direptum, ex Mīsēnō autem eius ipsius liberōs quī cum
praedōnibus antea bellum gesserat ā praedōnibus esse sub- 15
lātōs? Nam quid ego Ōstiēse incommodum atque illam
lābem atque ignōminiam reī pūblīcae querar, cum prope
īnspectantibus vōbīs classis ea cui cōsul populī Rōmānī
praepositus esset ā praedōnibus capta atque dēpressa est?
Prō dī immortalēs! tantamne ūnīus hominis incrēdibilis ac 20
dīvīna virtūs tam brevī tempore lūcem adferre reī pūblīcae
potuit ut vōs, quī modo ante ōstium Tiberīnum classem
hostium vidēbātis, eī nunc nūllam intrā Ōceanī ōstium
praedōnum nāvem esse audiātis? Atque haec quā celeri- 34

tāte gesta sint, quamquam vidētis, tamen ā mē in dīcendō
 praetereunda nōn sunt. Quis enim umquam aut obeundī
 negōtī aut cōsequendī quaestūs studiō tam brevī tempore
 tot loca adīre, tantōs cursūs cōficere potuit, quam celeriter
 5 Cn. Pompeiō duce tantī bellī impetus nāvigāvit? quī nōn-
 dum tempestīvō ad nāvigandum marī Siciliam adiit, Āfri-
 cam explōrāvit, inde Sardiniam cum classe vēnit atque haec
 tria frūmentāria subsidia rei pūblīcae fīrmissimīs praesi-
 35 diīs classibusque mūnīvit. Inde cum sē in Italiam recēpis-
 10 set, duābus Hispāniīs et Galliā Trānsalpīnā praesidiīs ac
 nāvibus cōfīrmātā, missīs item in ōram Īllyricī maris et in
 Achāiam omnemque Graeciam nāvibus Italiae duo maria
 maximīs classibus fīrmissimīsque praesidiīs adōrnāvit, ipse
 autem ut Brundisiō profectus est, ūndēquīnquāgēsīmō diē tō-
 15 tam ad imperium populī Rōmānī Ciliciam adiūnxit; omnēs
 quī ubique praedōnēs fuērunt partim captī interfectīque
 sunt, partim ūnīus huius sē imperiō ac potestātī dēdidē-
 runt. Īdem Crētēnsibus, cum ad eum ūsque in Pamph̄-
 liam lēgātōs dēprecātōrēsque mīsissent, spem dēditionis nōn
 20 adēmit obsidēsque imperāvit. Ita tantum bellum, tam diū-
 turnum, tam longē lātēque dispersum, quō bellō omnēs gen-
 tēs ac nātiōnēs premēbantur, Cn. Pompeius extrēmā hieme
 apparāvit, ineunte vēre suscēpit, mediā aestāte cōnfēcit.

*His other good qualities, in comparison with the avarice, etc.,
 of other commanders. Self-control, wisdom, gifts as a speaker,
 honor, kindness*

36 XIII. Est haec dīvīna atque incrdībilis virtūs im-
 25 perātōris. Quid? cēterae quās paulō ante commemorāre
 coeperam quantae atque quam multae sunt! Nōn enim
 bellandī virtūs solum in summō ac perfectō imperātōre
 quaerenda est sed multae sunt artēs eximiae huius adminis-

trae comitēsque virtūtis. Ac primum quantā innocentia debent esse imperatōres, quantā deinde in omnibus rebus temperantiā, quantā fidē, quantā facilitāte, quantō ingeniō, quantā hūmānitāte! quae breviter quālia sint in Cn. Pompeiō cōsiderēmus. Summa enim sunt omnia, Quirītēs, sed 5 ea magis ex aliōrum contentiōne quam ipsa per sēsē cognōscī atque intellegī possunt. Quem enim possumus 37 imperatōrem ūllō in numerō putāre cuius in exercitū centuriātūs vēneant atque vēnierint? quid hunc hominem magnum aut amplum dē rē pūblicā cōgitāre quī pecūniam 10 ex aerariō dēprōmptam ad bellum administrandum aut propter cupiditātem prōvinciae magistrātibus dīvīserit aut propter avāritiam Rōmae in quaestū reliquerit? Vestra admurmurātiō facit, Quirītēs, ut agnōscere videāminī quī haec fēcerint; ego autem nōminō nēminem; quā rē irāscī 15 mihi nēmō poterit nisi quī ante dē sē voluerit cōfiterī. Itaque propter hanc avāritiam imperatōrum quantās calamitātēs, quōcumque ventum sit, nostrī exercitūs adferant quis ignōrat? Itinera quae per hōsce annōs in Italiā per 38 agrōs atque oppida cīvium Rōmānōrum nostrī imperatōrēs 20 fēcerint recordāminī; tum facilius statuētis quid apud exterās nātiōnēs fierī exīstimētis. Vtrum plūrīs arbitrāminī per hōsce annōs militum vestrōrum armīs hostium urbīs an hibernīs sociōrum cīvitatēs esse dēlētās? Neque enim potest exercitum is continēre imperatōr quī sē ipse nōn 25 continet, neque sevērus esse in iūdicandō quī aliōs in sē sevērōs esse iūdicēs nōn volt. Hīc mīrāmur hunc homi- 39 nem tantum excellere cēterīs, cuius legiōnēs sīc in Asiam pervēnerint ut nōn modo manus tantī exercitūs sed nē vestīgium quidem cuiquam pācātō nocuisse dīcātur? Iam 30 vērō quem ad modum militēs hibernent cotīdiē sermōnēs ac litterae perferuntur; nōn modo ut sūmptum faciat in

mīlitem nēminī vīs adfertur sed nē cupientī quidem quicquam permittitur. Hiemis enim nōn avāritiae perfugium maiōrēs nostrī in sociōrum atque amīcōrum tēctīs esse
40 voluērunt. XIV. Age vērō, cēterīs in rēbus quae sit temperantia cōsiderāte. Vnde illam tantam celeritātem et tam incrēdibilem cursum inventum putātis? Nōn enim illum eximia vīs rēmigum aut ars inaudīta quaedam gubernandī aut ventī aliquī novī tam celeriter in ultimās terrās pertulērunt, sed eae rēs quae cēterōs remorārī solent nōn
15 retardārunt; nōn avāritia ab īnstitūtō cursū ad praedam aliquam dēvocāvit, nōn libīdō ad voluptātem, nōn amoenitās ad dēlectātiōnem, nōn nōbilitās urbis ad cognitiōnem, nōn dēnique labor ipse ad quiētem; postrēmō signa et tabulās cēteraque ōrnāmenta Graecōrum oppidōrum quae
15 cēterī tollenda esse arbitrantur, ea sibi ille nē vīsenda quidem exīstimāvit. Itaque omnēs nunc in eīs locīs Cn. Pompeium sicut aliquem nōn ex hāc urbe missum sed dē caelō dēlāpsū intuentur; nunc dēnique incipiunt crēdere fuisse hominēs Rōmānōs hāc quondam continentīā, quod
20 iam nātiōnibus exterīs incrēdibile ac falsō memoriae prōditum vidēbātur; nunc imperī vestrī splendor illīs gentibus lūcem adferre coepit; nunc intellegunt nōn sine causā maiōrēs suōs tum cum eā temperantiā magistrātūs habebāmus servīre populō Rōmānō quam imperāre aliīs mā-
25 luisse. Iam vērō ita facilēs aditūs ad eum prīvātōrum, ita liberae querimōniae dē aliōrum iniūriīs esse dīcuntur, ut is quī dignitāte prīncipibus excellit facilitāte īnfimīs pār esse
42 videātur. Iam quantum cōsiliō, quantum dīcendī gravitāte et cōpiā valeat, in quō ipsō inest quaedam dignitās imperātōria, vōs, Quirītēs, hōc ipsō ex locō saepe cognōstis. Fidem vērō eius quantam inter sociōs exīstimārī putātis quam hostēs omnēs omnium generum sānctissimam iūdicā-

rint? Hūmānitāte iam tantā est ut difficile dictū sit utrum hostēs magis virtūtem eius pugnantēs timuerint an mānsuetūdinem victī dīlēxerint. Et quisquam dubitābit quīn huic hoc tantum bellum permittendum sit quī ad omnia nostrae memoriae bella cōficienda dīvinō quōdam cōsiliō nātus 5 esse videātur?

Prestige. An unrivaled reputation and its far-reaching influence

XV. Et quoniam auctōritās quoque in bellīs adminis- 43
trandīs multum atque in imperiō mīlitārī valet, certē nē-
minī dubium est quīn eā rē idem ille imperātor plūrimum
possit. Vehementer autem pertinēre ad bella adminis- 10
tranda quid hostēs, quid sociī dē imperātōribus nostrīs
exīstiment quis ignōrat, cum sciāmus hominēs in tantīs
rēbus, ut aut metuant aut contemnant aut ōderint aut
ament opīniōne nōn minus et fāmā quam aliquā ratiōne
certā commovērī? Quod igitur nōmen umquam in orbe 15
terrārum clārius fuit, cuius rēs gestae parēs? dē quō ho-
mine vōs, id quod maximē facit auctōritātem, tanta et tam
praeclāra iūdia fēcistis? An vērō ūllam usquam esse 44
ōram tam dēsertam putātis quō nōn illius diēi fāma per-
vāserit, cum ūniversus populus Rōmānus refertō forō com- 20
plētisque omnibus templīs ex quibus hic locus cōspici
potest ūnum sibi ad commūne omnium gentium bellum
Cn. Pompeium imperātōrem dēpoposcit? Itaque ut plūra
nōn dīcam neque aliōrum exemplīs cōnfīrmem quantum
auctōritās valeat in bellō, ab eōdem Cn. Pompeiō omnium 25
rērū ēgregiārū exempla sūmantur: quī quō diē ā vōbīs
maritimō bellō praepositus est imperātor, tanta repente
vilitās ex summā inopiā et cāritāte rei frūmentāriae cōn-
secūta est ūnūs hominis spē ac nōmine quantam vix in
summā ūbertāte agrōrū diūturna pāx efficere potuisset. 30

45 Iam acceptā in Pontō calamitāte ex eō proeliō dē quō vōs paulō ante invītus admonuī, cum sociī pertimuissem, hostium opēs animīque crēvissem, satis firmum praesidium prōvincia nōn habēret, amississētis Asiam, Quirītēs, nisi ad
 5 ipsum discrīmen eius temporis dīvīnitus Cn. Pompeium ad eās regiōnēs Fortūna populī Rōmānī attulisset. Huius adventus et Mithridātem īnsolitā īnflātum victōriā continuit et Tigrānēn magnīs cōpiīs minitantem Asiae retardāvit. Et quisquam dubitābit quid virtūte perfectūrus sit
 10 quī tantum auctōritāte perfēcerit, aut quam facile imperiō atque exercitū sociōs et vectīgālia cōservātūrus sit quī ipsō
 46 nōmine ac rūmōre dēfenderit? XVI. Age vērō illa rēs quantam dēclārat eiusdem hominis apud hostīs populī Rōmānī auctōritātem, quod ex locīs tam longinquīs tamque dīversīs
 15 tam brevī tempore omnēs huic sē ūnī dēdidērunt! quod ā commūnī Crētēnsium lēgātī, cum in eōrum īnsulā noster imperātor exercitusque esset, ad Cn. Pompeium in ultimās prope terrās vēnērunt eīque sē omnīs Crētēnsium cīvitatēs dēdere velle dīxērunt! Quid? īdem iste Mithridātēs
 20 nōnne ad eundem Cn. Pompeium lēgātum ūsque in Hispāniam mīsīt? eum quem Pompeius lēgātum semper iūdicāvit, eī quibus erat molestum ad eum potissimum esse missum speculātōrem quam lēgātum iūdicārī māluērunt. Potestis igitur iam cōstituere, Quirītēs, hanc auctōritātem
 25 multīs posteā rēbus gestīs magnisque vestrīs iūdicīīs amplificātam quantum apud illōs rēgēs, quantum apud exterās nātiōnēs valitūram esse exīstimētis.

His good fortune,—a success beyond one's dreams

47 Reliquum est ut dē fēlīcitatē quam praestāre dē sē ipsō nēmō potest, meminisse et commemorāre dē alterō possu-
 30 mus, sīcut aequum est hominēs dē potestāte deōrum, timidē

et pauca dīcāmus. Ego enim sīc exīstimō, Maximō, Mār-
 cellō, Scīpiōnī, Mariō cēterisque magnīs imperātōribus
 nōn solum propter virtutem sed etiam propter fortunam
 saepius imperia mandāta atque exercitūs esse commissōs.
 Fuit enim profectō quibusdam summīs virīs quaedam ad 5
 amplitudinem et ad glōriam et ad rēs magnās bene geren-
 dās dīvinitus adiūcta fortuna. Dē huius autem hominis
 fēlicitāte quō dē nunc agimus hāc ūtar moderātiōne dīcendī,
 nōn ut in illiūs potestāte fortunam positam esse dīcam sed
 ut praeterita meminisse, reliqua spērāre videāmur, nē aut 10
 invīsa dīs immortalibus ōrātiō nostra aut ingrāta esse
 videātur. Itaque nōn sum praedicātūrus quantās ille rēs 48
 domī militiae, terrā marīque quantāque fēlicitāte gesserit,
 ut eius semper voluntātibus nōn modo cīvēs adsēserint,
 sociī obtemperārint, hostēs oboedierint, sed etiam ventī 15
 tempestātēque obsecundārint; hoc brevissimē dīcam, nē-
 minem umquam tam impudentem fuisse quī ab dīs im-
 mortalibus tot et tantās rēs tacitus audēret optāre quot et
 quantās dī immortalēs ad Cn. Pompeium dētulērunt. Quod
 ut illī proprium ac perpetuum sit, Quirītēs, cum commūnis 20
 salūtis atque imperī tum ipsīus hominis causā, sicutī facitis,
 velle et optāre dēbētis.

*Recapitulation. He is already in the East. Why not
 appoint him?*

Quā rē cum et bellum sit ita necessārium ut negligī nōn 49
 possit, ita magnum ut accūrātissimē sit administrandum,
 et cum eī imperātōrem praeficere possītis in quō sit exi- 25
 mia bellī scientia, singulāris virtūs, clārissima auctōritās,
 ēgregia fortuna, dubitātis, Quirītēs, quīn hoc tantum bonī
 quod vōbīs ab dīs immortalibus oblātum et datum est in
 rem pūblicam cōservandam atque amplificandam cōn-

50 ferātis? XVII. Quod sī Rōmae Cn. Pompeius prīvātus
 esset hōc tempore, tamen ad tantum bellum is erat dēligen-
 dus atque mittendus; nunc cum ad cēterās summās ūtili-
 tātēs haec quoque opportunitās adiungātur ut in eīs ipsīs
 5 locīs adsit, ut habeat exercitum, ut ab eīs quī habent
 accipere statim possit, quid exspectāmus? aut cūr nōn
 ducibus dīs immortalibus eīdem cui cētera summā cum
 salūte reī pūblīcae commissa sunt hoc quoque bellum
 9 rēgium committāmus?

Hortensius is again opposed to giving such power to one man.

What if his objection to the Gabinian Law had prevailed?

51 At enim vir clārissimus, amantissimus reī pūblīcae, ves-
 trīs beneficiīs amplissimīs adfectus, Q. Catulus, itemque
 summīs ōrnāmentīs honōris, fortūnae, virtūtis, ingenī prae-
 ditus, Q. Hortēsius, ab hāc ratiōne dissentiunt; quōrum
 ego auctōritātem apud vōs multīs locīs plūrimum valuisse
 15 et valēre oportēre cōnfiteor; sed in hāc causā, tametsī co-
 gnōstis auctōritātēs contrāriās virōrum fortissimōrum et
 clārissimōrum, tamen omissīs auctōritātibus ipsā rē ac ra-
 tiōne exquīrere possumus vērītātem, atque hōc facilius
 quod ea omnia quae ā mē adhūc dicta sunt idem istī vēra
 20 esse concēdunt, et necessariū bellum esse et magnum et
 52 in ūnō Cn. Pompeiō summa esse omnia. Quid igitur ait
 Hortēsius? Sī ūnī omnia tribuenda sint, dignissimum
 esse Pompeium, sed ad ūnum tamen omnia dēferri nōn
 oportēre. Obsolēvit iam ista ōrātiō rē multō magis quam
 25 verbīs refūtāta. Nam tū idem, Q. Hortēsi, multa prō tuā
 summā cōpiā ac singulārī facultāte dīcendī et in senātū
 contrā virum fortem, A. Gabīnium, graviter ōrnātēque
 dīxistī, cum is dē ūnō imperātōre contrā praedōnēs cōn-
 stituendō lēgem prōmulgāset, et ex hōc ipsō locō permulta

item contrā eam lēgem verba fēcistī. Quid? tum, per deōs 53
 immortalīs! sī plūs apud populum Rōmānum auctōritās
 tua quam ipsīus populī Rōmānī salūs et vēra causa valuis-
 set, hodiē hanc glōriam atque hoc orbis terrae imperium
 tenērēmus? An tibi tum imperium hoc esse vidēbātur cum 5
 populī Rōmānī lēgātī quaestōrēs praetōrēsque capiēbantur,
 cum ex omnibus prōvinciīs commeātū et prīvātō et pūblicō
 prohibēbāmur, cum ita clausa nōbīs erant maria omnia ut
 neque prīvātam rem trānsmarīnam neque pūblicam iam
 obīre possēmus?

10

*But from the depths of its humiliation at the hands of the pirates
 the people rescued the state by appointing Pompey, in spite of
 Hortensius' opposition. A digression on the naming of Gabinius
 as Pompey's legatus*

XVIII. Quae cīvītās umquam fuit antea, nōn dīcō 54
 Athēniēnsium, quae satis lātē quondam mare tenuisse



COIN OF CARTHAGE



dīcitur, nōn Carthā-
 giniēnsium, quī per-
 multum classe ac 15
 maritimīs rēbus va-
 luērunt, nōn Rhodiō-
 rum, quōrum ūsque
 ad nostram memoriam
 disciplīna nāvālis et 20

glōria remānsit, quae cīvītās, inquam, antea tam tenuis,
 quae tam parva īnsula fuit quae nōn portūs suōs et agrōs et
 aliquam partem regiōnis atque ōrae maritimae per sē ipsa
 dēfenderet? At herculēs aliquot annōs continuōs ante
 lēgem Gabīniam ille populus Rōmānus, cuius ūsque ad 25
 nostram memoriam nōmen invictum in nāvālibus pugnīs
 permānserit, magnā ac multō maximā parte nōn modo

55 ūtilitātis sed etiam dignitātis atque imperī caruit. Nōs
 quōrum maiōrēs Antiochum rēgem classe Persēnque su-
 perārunt omnibusque nāvālibus pugnīs Carthāginiēnsīs,
 hominēs in maritimīs rēbus exercitātissimōs parātissimōs-
 5 que, vīcērunt, eī nūllō in locō iam praedōnibus parēs
 esse poterāmus. Nōs quī anteā nōn modo Italiam tūtā
 habēbāmus sed omnīs sociōs in ultimīs ōrīs auctōritāte
 nostrī imperī salvōs praestāre poterāmus, tum cum īn-
 sula Dēlus tam procul ā nōbīs in Aegaeō marī posita,
 10 quō omnēs undique cum mercibus atque oneribus com-
 meābant, referta dīvitiīs, parva, sine mūrō nihil timē-
 bat, īdem nōn modo prōvinciīs atque ōrīs Italiae maritimīs
 ac portibus nostrīs sed etiam Appiā iam viā carēbāmus. Et
 eīs temporibus nōne pudēbat magistrātūs populī Rōmānī
 15 in hunc ipsum locum ēscendere, cum eum nōbīs maiōrēs
 nostrī exuviīs nauticīs et classium spoliīs ōrnātum reliquis-
 56 sent? XIX. Bonō tē animō tum, Q. Hortēnsī, populus
 Rōmānus et cēterōs quī erant in eādē sentiētiā dīcere
 exīstimāvit et ea quae sentiēbātis; sed tamen in salūte
 20 commūnī īdem populus Rōmānus dolōrī suō māluit quam
 auctōritātī vestrae obtemperāre. Itaque ūna lēx, ūnus vir,
 ūnus annus nōn modo nōs illā miseriā ac turpitūdine libe-
 rāvit sed etiam effēcit ut aliquandō vērē vidērēmur omni-
 57 bus gentibus ac nātiōnibus terrā marīque imperāre. Quō
 25 mihi etiam indignius vidētur obtrectātum esse adhūc
 (Gabīniō dīcam ane Pompeiō, an utrīque, id quod est
 vērīus?), nē lēgārētur A. Gabīnius Cn. Pompeiō expetentī
 ac postulantī. Vtrum ille quī postulat ad tantum bellum
 lēgātum quem velit, idōneus nōn est quī impetret, cum
 30 cēterī ad expīlandōs sociōs dīripiendāsque prōvinciās quōs
 voluērunt lēgātōs ēdūxerint, an ipse cuius lēge salūs ac
 dignitās populō Rōmānō atque omnibus gentibus cōstitutā

est expers esse dēbet glōriæ eius imperātōris atque eius exercitūs quī cōsiliō ac periculō illius est cōstitutus? An C. Falcidius, Q. Metellus, Q. Caelius Latīniēnsis, Cn. 58 Lentulus, quōs omnīs honōris causā nōminō, cum tribūnī plēbī fuissent, annō proximō lēgātī esse potuerunt; in ūnō 5 Gabīniō sunt tam diligentēs quī in hōc bellō quod lēge Gabīniā geritur, in hōc imperātōre atque exercitū quem per vōs ipse cōstituit, etiam praecipuō iūre esse dēbēbat? Dē quō lēgandō cōsulēs spērō ad senātum relātūrōs. Quī sī dubitābunt aut gravābuntur, ego mē profiteor re- 10 lātūrū; neque mē impedit cuiusquam inīquitās quō minus vōbīs frētus vestrum iūs beneficiumque dēfendam, neque praeter intercessiōnem quicquam audiam, dē quā, ut ego arbitror, istī ipsī quī minantur etiam atque etiam quid liceat cōsīderābunt. Meā quidem sentiā, Quirītēs, 15 ūnus A. Gabīnius bellī maritimī rērumque gestārū Cn. Pompeiō socius ascribitur, proptereā quod alter ūnī illud bellum suscipiendum vestrīs suffrāgiīs dētulit, alter dēlātum susceptumque cōnfēcit. 19

Catulus opposes any innovation, forgetting how many such there have already been in Pompey's case

XX. Reliquum est ut dē Q. Catulī auctōritāte et sen- 59 tentiā dīcendum esse videātur. Quī cum ex vōbīs quaereret, sī in ūnō Cn. Pompeiō omnia pōnerētis, sī quid eō factum esset, in quō spem essētis habitūrī, cēpit magnum suae virtūtis frūctum ac dignitātis, cum omnēs ūnā prope vōce in eō ipsō vōs spem habitūrōs esse dīxistis. Etenim 25 tālis est vir ut nūlla rēs tanta sit ac tam difficilis quam ille nōn et cōsiliō regere et integritāte tuērī et virtūte cōnficere possit. Sed in hōc ipsō ab eō vehementissimē dissentiō, quod quō minus certa est hominum ac minus diūturna vīta,

hōc magis rēs pūblica, dum per deōs immortālīs licet, fruī
 60 dēbet summī virī vītā atque virtūte. At enim 'nē quid
 novī fīat contrā exempla atque īnstitūta maiōrum.' Nōn
 dīcam hōc locō maiōrēs nostrōs semper in pāce cōsuētū-
 5 dinī, in bellō ūtilitātī pāruisse, semper ad novōs cāsūs tem-
 porum novōrum cōsiliōrum ratiōnēs accommodāsse, nōn
 dīcam duo bella maxima, Pūnicum atque Hispāniēse, ab
 ūnō imperātōre esse cōnfecta duāsque urbīs potentissimās
 quae huic imperiō maximē minitābantur, Carthāginem
 10 atque Numantiam, ab eōdēm Scīpiōne esse dēlētās, nōn
 commemorābō nūper ita vōbīs patribusque vestrīs esse
 vīsum ut in ūnō C. Mariō spēs imperī pōnerētur, ut īdem
 cum Iugurthā, īdem cum Cimbrīs, īdem cum Teutonīs
 bellum administrāret: in ipsō Cn. Pompeiō in quō novī
 15 cōstituī nihil volt Q. Catulus quam multa sint nova summā
 Q. Catulī voluntāte cōstitutā recordāminī.

*Previous departures from custom where Pompey was concerned,
 —and with Catulus' approval*

61 XXI. Quid tam novum quam adulēsentulum prīvātum
 exercitum difficilī reī pūblīcae tempore cōnficere? Cōn-
 fēcit. Huic praeesse? Praefuit. Rem optimē ductū suō
 20 gerere? Gessit. Quid tam praeter cōsuētūdinem quam
 hominī peradulēsentī cuius aetās ā senātōriō gradū longē
 abesset imperium atque exercitum darī, Siciliam permittī
 atque Āfricam bellumque in eā prōvinciā administrandum?
 Fuit in hīs prōvinciīs singulārī innocentīā, gravitāte, vir-
 25 tūte, bellum in Āfricā maximum cōnfēcit, victōrem exerci-
 tum dēportāvit. Quid vērō tam inaudītum quam equitem
 Rōmānum triumphāre? At eam quoque rem populus
 Rōmānus nōn modo vīdit sed omnium etiam studiō vīsen-
 62 dam et concelebrandam putāvit. Quid tam inūsītātum

quam ut, cum duo cōsulēs clārissimī fortissimīque essent, eques Rōmānus ad bellum maximum formīdōlōsissimum-que prō cōsule mitterētur? Missus est. Quō quidem tempore cum esset nōn nēmō in senātū quī dīceret 'nōn oportere mittī hominem prīvātum prō cōsule,' L. Philippus dīxisse 5 dīcitur 'nōn sē illum suā sententiā prō cōsule sed prō cōsulibus mittere.' Tanta in eō rei pūblicae bene gerendae spēs cōstituēbātur ut duōrum cōsulum mūnus ūnūs adulēscentis virtūtī committerētur. Quid tam singulāre quam ut ex senātūs cōsultō lēgibus solūtus cōsul ante 10 fieret quam ūllum alium magistrātum per lēgēs capere licuisset? quid tam incrēdibile quam ut iterum eques Rōmānus ex senātūs cōsultō triumphāret? Quae in omnibus hominibus nova post hominum memoriā cōstitutā sunt, ea tam multa nōn sunt quam haec quae in hōc ūnō homine 15 vīdimus; atque haec tot exempla tanta ac tam nova profecta sunt in eōdem homine ā Q. Catulī atque ā cēterōrum eiusdem dignitātis amplissimōrum hominum auctōritāte. 63

These critics of the bill must admit that the people were wiser than they in passing the Gabinian Law. In the present emergency a man of Pompey's stamp must be appointed

XXII. Quā rē videant nē sit perinīquum et nōn ferendum illōrum auctōritātem dē Cn. Pompeī dignitāte ā vōbīs 20 comprobātam semper esse, vestrum ab illīs dē eōdem homine iūdicium populīque Rōmānī auctōritātem improbārī, praesertim cum iam suō iūre populus Rōmānus in hōc homine suam auctōritātem vel contrā omnīs quī dissentiunt possit dēfendere, proptereā quod īsdem istīs reclāmanti- 25 bus vōs ūnum illum ex omnibus dēlēgistis quem bellō praedōnum praepōnerētis. Hoc sī vōs temere fēcistis 64 et rei pūblicae parum cōsuluistis, rēctē istī studia

vestra suīs cōsiliīs regere cōnantur. Sīn autem vōs plūs
 tum in rē publicā vīdistis, vōs eīs repugnantibus per vōsmet
 ipsōs dignitātem huic imperiō, salūtem orbī terrārum attu-
 listis, aliquandō istī prīncipēs et sibi et cēterīs populī
 5 Rōmānī ūniversī auctōritātī pārendum esse fateantur.

Atque in hōc bellō Asiaticō et rēgiō nōn solum mīlitāris
 illa virtūs quae est in Cn. Pompeiō singulāris sed aliae quo-
 que animī virtūtēs magnae et multae requīruntur. Difficile
 est in Asiā, Ciliciā, Syriā rēgnisque interiōrum nātiōnum
 10 ita versārī nostrum imperātōrem ut nihil aliud nisi dē hoste
 ac dē laude cōgitet. Deinde, etiam sī quī sunt pudōre ac
 temperantiā moderatiōrēs, tamen eōs esse tālis propter
 65 multitūdinem cupidōrum hominum nēmō arbitrātur. Diffi-
 cile est dictū, Quirītēs, quantō in odiō sīmus apud exterās
 15 nātiōnēs propter eōrum quōs ad eās per hōs annōs cum im-
 periō mīsimus libīdinēs et iniuriās. Quod enim fānum putā-
 tis in illīs terrīs nostrīs magistrātibus religiōsum, quam
 cīvitātem sāctam, quam domum satis clausam ac mūnītam
 fuisse? Urbēs iam locuplētēs et cōpiōsae requīruntur
 20 quibus causa bellī propter dīripiendī cupiditātem īferā-
 66 tur. Libenter haec cōram cum Q. Catulō et Q. Hortēsiō,
 summīs et clārissimīs virīs, disputārem; nōrunt enim
 sociōrum volnera, vident eōrum calamitātēs, querimōniās
 audiunt. Prō sociīs vōs contrā hostīs exercitūs mittere
 25 putātis an hostium simulātiōne contrā sociōs atque amīcōs?
 Quae cīvitās est in Asiā quae nōn modo imperātōris aut
 lēgātī sed ūnīus tribūnī mīlitum animōs ac spīritūs capere
 possit? XXIII. Quā rē, etiam sī quem habētis quī con-
 lātīs signīs exercitūs rēgiōs superāre posse videātur, tamen,
 30 nisi erit īdem quī ā pecūniīs sociōrum, quī ab eōrum
 coniugibus ac liberīs, quī ab ōrnāmentīs fānōrum atque
 oppidōrum, quī ab aurō gazāque rēgiā manūs, oculōs,

animum cohibere possit, non erit idoneus qui ad bellum Asiaticum regiumque mittatur. Ecquam putatis civitatem 67 pacatam fuisse quae locuples sit, ecquam esse locupletem quae istis pacata esse videatur? Ora maritima, Quirites, Cn. Pompeium non solum propter rei militaris gloriam sed 5 etiam propter animi continentiam requisivit. Videbat enim praetores locupletari quotannis pecuniam publicam praeter paucos, neque nos quicquam aliud adsequi classium nomine nisi ut detrimentis accipiendis maiore adfici turpitudine videremur. Nunc quam cupiditate homines in provincias, 10 quibus iacturis quibusque condicionibus profiscantur ignorant videlicet isti qui ad unum deferenda omnia esse non arbitrantur; quasi vero Cn. Pompeium non cum suis virtutibus tum etiam alienis vitiis magnum esse videamus. 14 Quam re nolite dubitare quin huic uni credatis omnia qui 68 inter tot annos unus inventus est quem socii in urbis suas cum exercitu venisse gauderent.

The bill has influential supporters

Quod si auctoritatibus hanc causam, Quirites, confirmandam putatis, est vobis auctor vir bellorum omnium maximarumque rerum peritissimus, P. Servilius, cuius tan- 20 tae res gestae terram marique exstiterunt ut, cum de bello deliberetis, auctor vobis gravior esse nemine debeat; est C. Curius, summis vestris beneficiis maximisque rebus gestis, summo ingenio et prudentia praeditus, est Cn. Lentulus in quo omnes pro amplissimis vestris honoribus sum- 25 mum consilium, summam gravitatem esse cognostis, est C. Cassius, integritate, virtute, constantia singulari. Quam re videte ut horum auctoritatibus illorum orationi qui dissentiant respondere posse videamur.

Manilius in urging the adoption of his bill has the support of Cicero, who disclaims all selfish motives

- 69 XXIV. Quae cum ita sint, C. Mānīlī, primum istam tuam et lēgem et voluntātem et sententiam laudō vehemētissimēque comprobō; deinde tē hortor ut auctōre populō Rōmānō maneās in sententiā nēve cuiusquam vim aut
 5 minās pertimēscās. Primum in tē satis esse animī perseverantiaeque arbitror; deinde, cum tantam multitudinem tantō cum studiō adesse videāmus quantam iterum nunc in eōdem homine praeficiendō vidēmus, quid est quod aut dē rē aut dē perficiendī facultāte dubitē-
- 10 mus? Ego autem, quicquid est in mē studi, cōsili, labōris, ingenī, quicquid hōc beneficiō populī Rōmānī atque hāc potestāte praetōriā, quicquid auctōritāte, fidē, cōstantiā possum, id omne ad
 15 hanc rem cōficiendam tibi et populō Rōmānō polliceor ac dēferō; testorque omnīs deōs, et eōs maximē quī huic locō templōque praesident, quī omnium mentīs eōrum quī ad rem pūblicam adeunt maximē perspiciunt, mē hoc neque rogātū
 20 facere cuiusquam, neque quō Cn. Pompeī grātiā mihi per hanc causam conciliārī putem, neque quō mihi ex cuiusquam amplitūdine aut praesidia periculīs aut adiūmenta honoribus quaeram, proptereā quod pericula facile, ut hominem praestāre oportet, innocentīā tēctī repellēmus,
 25 honōrem autem neque ab ūnō neque ex hōc locō sed eādem illā nostrā labōriōsissimā ratiōne vītae, sī vestra voluntās
 71 feret, cōsequēmur. Quam ob rem, quicquid in hāc causā mihi susceptum est, Quirītēs, id ego omne mē reī pūblīcae causā suscēpisse cōfīrmō, tantumque abest ut aliquam



COIN OF POMPEY

mihi bonam grātiā quaesisse videar, ut multās mē etiam
simultātēs partim obscurās, partim apertās intellegam mihi
nōn necessariās, vōbīs nōn inūtilis suscēpisse. Sed ego
mē hōc honōre praeditum, tantīs vestrīs beneficiīs adfec-
tum statuī, Quirītēs, vestram voluntātem et reī pūblīcae 5
dignitātem et salūtem prōvinciārum atque sociōrum meīs
omnibus commodīs et ratiōnibus praeferre oportēre.



INTERIOR OF A GREEK TEMPLE AT PÆSTUM

M. TVLLI CICERONIS PRO ARCHIA POETA ORATIO

The speaker's debt to the poet Archias. All the arts are closely connected. Apologies for a style unfamiliar to the courts

SĪ QUID est in mē ingenī, iūdicēs, quod sentiō quam
sit exiguum, aut sī qua exercitātiō dīcendī, in quā mē
nōn īnfītor mediocriter esse versātum, aut sī huiusce
reī ratiō aliqua ab optimārum artium studiīs ac disciplīnā
profecta, ā quā ego nūllum cōnfiteor aetātis meae tem- 5
pus abhorruisse, eārum rērum omnium vel in prīmīs hic
A. Licinius frūctum ā mē repetere prope suō iūre dēbet.
Nam quoad longissimē potest mēns mea respicere spatium
praeteritī temporis et pueritiae memoriam recordārī ulti-
mam, inde ūsque repetēns hunc videō mihi prīncipem et ad 10
suscipiendam et ad ingrediendam ratiōnem hōrum studiō-
rum exstitisse. Quod sī haec vōx, huius hortātū praecep-
tisque cōnfōrmāta, nōn nūllīs aliquandō salūtī fuit, ā quō
id accēpimus quō cēterīs opitulārī et aliōs servāre possē-
mus, huic profectō ipsī, quantum est situm in nōbīs, et 15
opem et salūtem ferre dēbēmus. Ac nē quis ā nōbīs hoc 2
ita dīcī forte mīrētur, quod alia quaedam in hōc facultās
sit ingenī neque haec dīcendī ratiō aut disciplīna, nē nōs
quidem huic ūnī studiō penitus umquam dēditī fuimus.
Etenim omnēs artēs quae ad hūmānitātem pertinent habent 20
quoddam commūne vinculum et quasi cognātiōne quādam
inter sē continentur. II. Sed nē cui vestrum mīrum esse 3

videātur mē in quaestiōne lēgitimā et in iūdicīō pūblicō,
 cum rēs agātur apud praetōrem populī Rōmānī, lēctissi-
 mum virum, et apud sevērissimōs iūdicēs, tantō conventū
 hominum ac frequentīā, hōc ūtī genere dīcendī quod nōn
 5 modo ā cōnsuētūdine iūdicīōrum, vērū etiam ā forēnsī
 sermōne abhorreat, quaesō ā vōbīs ut in hāc causā mihi
 dētis hanc veniam, accommodātam huic reō, vōbīs, quem
 ad modum spērō, nōn molestam, ut mē prō summō poētā
 atque ērudītissimō homine dīcentem hōc concursū homi-
 10 num litterātissimōrum, hāc vestrā hūmānitāte, hōc dēnique
 praetōre exercente iūdicium, patiāminī dē studiīs hūmāni-
 tātis ac litterārum paulō loquī līberius, et in eius modī
 persōnā quae propter ōtium ac studium minimē in iūdicīis
 14 perīculisque trāctāta est ūtī prope novō quōdam et inūsī-
 4 tātō genere dīcendī. Quod sī mihi ā vōbīs tribuī concēdī-
 que sentiam, perficiam profectō ut hunc A. Licinium nōn
 modo nōn sēgregandum, cum sit cīvis, ā numerō cīvium,
 vērū etiam, sī nōn esset, putētis ascīscendum fuisse.

*The poet's birth and early life ; his reception in Italy
 and at Rome*

III. Nam ut primum ex puerīs excessit Archiās atque ab
 20 eīs artibus quibus aetās puerilis ad hūmānitātem infōrmārī
 solet sē ad scribendī studium contulit, primum Antiochiāe
 —nam ibi nātus est locō nōbilī—celebrī quondam urbe
 et cōpiōsā atque ērudītissimīs hominibus liberālissimīs-
 que studiīs adfluentī, celeriter antecellere omnibus ingenī
 25 glōriā coepit. Post in cēterīs Asiae partibus cūctāque
 Graeciā sīc eius adventūs celebrābantur, ut fāmam ingenī
 expectātiō hominis, expectātiōnem ipsius adventus ad-
 5 mīrātiōque superāret. Erat Italia tum plēna Graecārum
 artium ac disciplinārum, studiaque haec et in Latiō vehe-

mentius tum colēbantur quam nunc īsdem in oppidīs, et hīc Rōmae propter tranquillitatem rei pūblicae nōn neglegēbantur. Itaque hunc et Tarentīnī et *Locrēnsēs* et Rēgīnī et Neāpolitānī cīvitate cēterisque praemiis dōnārunt, et omnēs quī aliquid dē ingeniis poterant iūdicāre cognitiōne 5 atque hospitio dignum exīstimārunt. Hāc tantā celebritate fāmae cum esset iam absentibus nōtus, Rōmam vēnit



TARENTUM

Mariō cōsule et Catulō. Nactus est primum cōsulēs eōs quōrum alter rēs ad scribendum maximās, alter cum rēs 10 gestās tum etiam studium atque aurīs adhibere posset. Statim Lūcullī, cum praetextātus etiam tum Archiās esset, eum domum suam recēpērunt. Fuit iam hoc nōn solum ingeni ac litterarum vē- 15

rum etiam nātūrae atque virtūtis, ut domus quae huius adulēscēntiae prīma fāvit, eadem esset familiārissima se-
nectūtī. Erat temporibus illis iūcundus Metellō illī Numi- 6
dicō et eius Piō filiō, audiēbātur ā M. Aemiliō, vīvēbat cum
Q. Catulō et patre et filiō, ā L. Crassō colēbātur, Lūcullōs 20
vērō et Drūsum et Octāviōs et Catōnem et tōtam Hortē-
siōrum domum dēvīctam cōnsuētūdine cum tenēret, adfi-
ciēbātur summō honōre, quod eum nōn solum colēbant quī
aliquid percipere atque audire studēbant, vērum etiam sī
quī forte simulābant. 25

*Archias made a citizen of Heraclea. As a resident of Rome he
duly registered*

IV. Interim satis longō intervāllō, cum esset cum M. Lūcullō in Siciliam profectus et cum ex eā prōvinciā cum eōdem Lūcullō dēcēderet, vēnit Hēraclēam. Quae cum esset cīvitas aequissimō iūre ac foedere, ascribī sē in

eam cīvitātem voluit, idque, cum ipse per sē dignus putārē-
 tur, tum auctōritāte et grātiā Lūcullī ab Hēraclīēnsibus
 7 impetrāvit. Data est cīvitās Silvānī lēge et Carbōnis: '*Sī*
quī foederātis cīvitātibus ascripti fuissent, sī tum cum lēx
 5 *ferēbātur in Italiā domicilium habuissent et sī sexāgintā*
diēbus apud praetōrem essent professi.' Cum hīc domici-
 lium Rōmae multōs iam annōs habēret, professus est apud
 8 praetōrem Q. Metellum familiārissimum suum. Sī nihil
 aliud nisi dē cīvitāte ac lēge dīcimus, nihil dīcō amplius,
 10 causa dicta est. Quid enim hōrum infirmārī, Grattī, pos-
 test? Hēraclēaene esse
 tum ascriptum negā-
 bis? Adest vir summā
 auctōritāte et religiōne
 15 et fidē, M. Lūcullus;
 quī sē nōn opīnārī, sed
 scīre, nōn audīsse, sed
 vīdisse, nōn interfuisse,



HERACLEA

sed ēgisse dīcit. Adsunt Hēraclīēnsēs lēgātī, nōbilissimī
 20 hominēs; huius iūdicī causā cum mandātis et cum pū-
 blicō testimōniō vērunt; quī hunc ascriptum Hēraclēae
 esse dīcunt. Hīc tū tabulās dēsīderās Hēraclīēnsium
 pūblicās, quās Italicō bellō incēnsō tabulāriō interīsse
 scīmus omnēs? Est rīdiculum ad ea quae habēmus nihil
 25 dīcere, quaerere quae habēre nōn possumus, et dē hominum
 memoriā tacēre, litterārū memoriā flāgitāre, et, cum
 habeās amplissimī virī religiōnem, integerrimī mūnicipī
 iūs iūrandum fidemque, ea quae dēprāvārī nullō modō pos-
 29 sunt repudiāre, tabulās, quās īdem dīcis solēre corrumpī,
 9 dēsīderāre. An domicilium Rōmae nōn habuit is quī tot
 annīs *ante* cīvitātem datam sēdem omnium rērum ac
 fortūnarū suarū Rōmae conlocāvit? An nōn est pro-

fessus? Immō vērō eīs tabulīs professus quae sōlae ex illā professionē conlēgiōque praetōrum obtinent publicārum tabulārum auctoritatem. V. Nam, cum Appī tabulae negligentius adservatae dīcerentur, Gabīnī, quam diū incolumis fuit, levitās, post damnātiōnem calamitās omnem 5 tabulārum fidem resignāset, Metellus, homō sānctissimus modestissimusque omnium, tantā dīligentiā fuit ut ad L. Lentulum praetōrem et ad iūdicēs vēnerit et ūnūs nōminis litūrā sē commōtum esse dīxerit. Hīs igitur in tabulīs nūllam litūram in nōmine A. Licinī vidētis. 10

Registered also in certain Greek cities. Why his name is not in the census rolls. Further evidence

Quae cum ita sint, quid est quod dē eius cīvitatē du- 10 bitētis, praesertim cum aliīs quoque in cīvitatibus fuerit ascriptus? Etenim cum mediocribus multīs et aut nūllā aut humilī aliquā arte praeditīs grātuītō cīvitatē in Graeciā hominēs impertiēbant, Rēgīnōs crēdō aut Lo- 15 crēnsīs aut Neāpolitānōs aut Tarentīnōs, quod scaenicīs artificibus largīrī solēbant, id huic summā ingenī praeditō glōriā nōluisse! Quid? cum cēterī nōn modo post cīvitatē datam, sed etiam post lēgem Pāpīam aliquō modō in eōrum mūnicipiōrum tabulās inrēpsērunt, hic, quī nē ūtitur 20 quidem illīs in quibūs est scriptus, quod semper sē Hērāclīēnsē esse voluit, reiciētur? Cēnsūs nostrōs requīris. 11 Scīlicet; est enim obscurum proximīs cēnsōribus hunc cum clārissimō imperātōre L. Lūcullō apud exercitum fuisse, superiōribus cum eōdem quaestōre fuisse in Asiā, prīmīs 25 Iūliō et Crassō nūllam populī partem esse cēnsam. Sed, quoniam cēnsus nōn iūs cīvitatīs cōnfīrmat ac tantum modo indicat eum quī sit cēnsus ita sē iam tum gessisse, prō cīve, eīs temporibus is quem tū crīmīnāris nē ipsius quidem

iūdicīo in cīvium Rōmānōrum iūre esse versātum, et testā-
mentum saepe fēcit nostrīs lēgibus, et adiit hērēditātēs
cīvium Rōmānōrum, et in beneficiis ad aerārium dēlātus
est ā L. Lūcullō prō cōnsule. VI. Quaere argūmenta, sī
5 quae potes; numquam enim hic neque suō neque amīcō-
rum iūdicīo revincētur.

*Love of letters as a recreation and as a source of inspiration and
instruction accounts for the speaker's interest in this poet*

12 Quaerēs ā nōbīs, Grattī, cūr tantō opere hōc homine
dēlectēmur. Quia suppeditat nōbīs ubi et animus ex hōc
forēnsī strepitū reficiātur et aurēs convīciō dēfessae con-
10 quiēscant. An tū exīstimās aut suppetere nōbīs posse quod
cotīdiē dīcāmus in tantā varietāte rērū, nisi animōs nos-
trōs doctrīnā excolāmus, aut ferre animōs tantam posse
contentiōnem, nisi eōs doctrīnā eādem relaxēmus? Ego
vērō fateor mē hīs studiīs esse dēditum. Cēterōs pudeat,
15 sī quī sē ita litterīs abdidērunt ut nihil possint ex eīs neque
ad commūnem adferre frūctum neque in aspectum lūcem-
que prōferre: mē autem quid pudeat, quī tot annōs ita
vīvō, iūdicēs, ut ā nūllius umquam mē tempore aut com-
19 modō aut ōtium meum abstrāxerit aut voluptās āvocārit
13 aut dēnique somnus retardārit? Quā rē quis tandem mē
reprehendat, aut quis mihi iūre suscēnseat, sī, quantum
cēterīs ad suās rēs obeundās, quantum ad fēstōs diēs lū-
dōrum celebrandōs, quantum ad aliās voluptātēs et ad
ipsam requiem animī et corporis concēditur temporum,
25 quantum aliī tribuunt tempestīvīs convīviīs, quantum dēni-
que alveolō, quantum pilae, tantum mihi egomet ad haec
studia recolenda sūmpserō? Atque hoc eō mihi concēden-
dum est magis, quod ex hīs studiīs haec quoque crēscit
ōrātiō et facultās quae, quantacumque *est* in mē, numquam

amīcorum periculīs dēfuit. Quae sī cui levior vidētur, illa quidem certē quae summa sunt ex quō fonte hauriam sentiō. Nam nisi multōrum praeceptīs multisque litterīs mihi 14 ab adulēscientiā suāsissem nihil esse in vītā magnō opere expetendum nisi laudem atque honestātem, in eā autem 5 persequendā omnīs cruciātūs corporis, omnia perīcula mortis atque exsilī parvī esse dūcenda, numquam mē prō salūte vestrā in tot ac tantās dīmiciātōnēs atque in hōs prōfligātōrum hominum cotīdiānōs impetūs obiēcissem. Sed plēnī omnēs sunt librī, plēnae sapientium vōcēs, plēna 10 exemplōrum vetustās; quae iacērent in tenebrīs omnia, nisi litterārum lūmen accēderet. Quam multās nobīs imāginēs nōn solum ad intuendum, vērū etiam ad imitandum fortissimōrum virōrum expressās scrīptōrēs et Graecī et Latīnī reliquērunt! quās ego mihi semper in adminis- 15 trandā rē pūblicā prōpōnēns animum et mentem meam ipsā cōgitātiōne hominum excellentium cōnfōrmābam.

Many great men have been made greater by their studies. Letters the highest of pleasures, with the fewest limitations

VII. Quaeret quispiam: 'Quid? illī ipsī summī virī 15 quōrum virtūtēs litterīs prōdītae sunt istāne doctrīnā quam tū effers laudibus ērudītī fuērunt?' Difficile est hoc dē 20 omnibus cōnfīrmāre, sed tamen est certum quid respondeam. Ego multōs hominēs excellentī animō ac virtūte fuisse sine doctrīnā, et nātūrae ipsius habitū prope dīvīnō per sē ipsōs et moderātōs et gravīs exstitisse fateor; etiam illud adiungō, saepius ad laudem atque virtutem nātūram 25 sine doctrīnā quam sine nātūrā valuisse doctrīnam. Atque idem ego hoc contendō, cum ad nātūram eximiam atque inlūstrem accesserit ratiō quaedam cōnfōrmātiōque doctrīnae, tum illud nesciō quid praeclārum ac singulāre solēre

16 exsistere. Ex hōc esse hunc numerō quem patrēs nostrī
 vīdērunt, dīvīnum hominem Āfricānum, ex hōc C. Laelium,
 L. Fūrium, moderātissimōs hominēs et continentissimōs,
 ex hōc fortissimum virum et illīs temporibus doctissimum,
 5 M. Catōnem illum senem; quī profectō sī nihil ad perci-
 piendam colendamque virtūtem litterīs adiuvārentur, num-
 quam sē ad eārum studium contulissent. Quod sī nōn hic
 tantus frūctus ostenderētur, et sī ex hīs studiīs dēlectātiō
 sōla peterētur, tamen, ut opīnor, hanc animī remissiōnem
 10 hūmānissimam ac liberālissimam iūdicārētis. Nam cēterae
 neque temporum sunt neque aetātum omnium neque locō-
 rum; at haec studia adulēscēntiam acuunt, senectūtem
 oblectant, secundās rēs ōrnant, adversīs perfugium ac
 sōlācium praebent, dēlectant domī, nōn impediunt forīs,
 15 pernoctant nōbīscum, peregrīnantur, rūsticantur.

*The genius of Archias must command admiration from all. The
 poet is honored as one inspired*

17 Quod sī ipsī haec neque attingere neque sēnsū nostrō
 gustāre possēmus, tamen ea mīrārī dēbērēmus, etiam cum
 in aliīs vidērēmus. VIII. Quis nostrum tam animō agrestī
 ac dūrō fuit ut Rōscī morte nūper nōn commovērētur? quī
 20 cum esset senex mortuus, tamen propter excellentem artem
 ac venustātem vidēbātur omnīnō morī nōn dēbuisse. Ergō
 ille corporis mōtū tantum amōrem sibi conciliārat ā nōbīs
 omnibus: nōs animōrum incrēdibilīs mōtūs celeritātem-
 18 que ingeniōrum neglegēmus? Quotiēns ego hunc Archiam
 25 vīdī, iūdicēs,—ūtar enim vestrā benignitāte, quoniam mē
 in hōc novō genere dīcendī tam diligenter attenditis,—
 quotiēns ego hunc vīdī, cum litteram scrīpsisset nūllam,
 magnum numerum optimōrum versuum dē eīs ipsīs rēbus
 quae tum agerentur dīcere ex tempore, quotiēns revocatūm

eandem rem dīcere commūtātis verbīs atque sententiīs! Quae vērō accūrātē cōgitātēque scrīpsisset, ea sīc vīdī probārī ut ad veterum scrīptōrum laudem pervenīret. Hunc ego nōn dīligam, nōn admīrer, nōn omnī ratiōne dēfendendum putem? Atque sīc ā summīs hominibus 5 ērudītissimīsque accēpimus, cēterārum rērum studia et doctrīnā et praeceptīs et arte cōnstāre; poētā nātūrā ipsā valēre et mentis vīribus excitārī et quasi dīvīnō quōdam spīritū inflārī. Quā rē suō iūre noster ille Ennius 'sāctōs' appellat poētās, quod quasi deōrum aliquō dōnō 10 atque mūnere commendātī nōbīs esse videantur.

Homer as an example of universal veneration. Archias has glorified Rome, as did Ennius

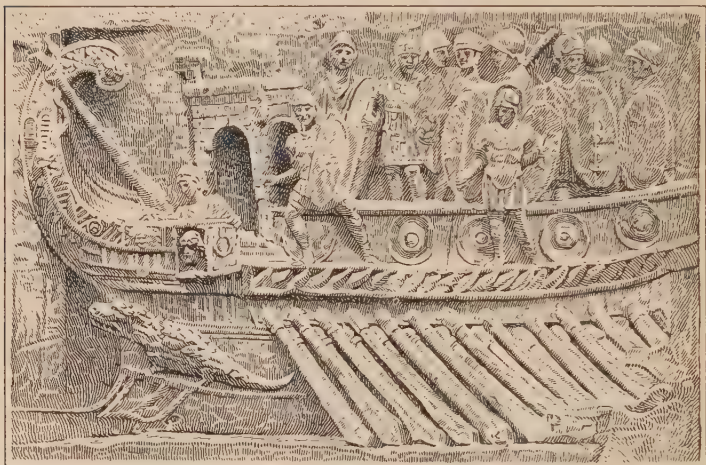
Sit igitur, iūdicēs, sāctum apud vōs, hūmānissimōs ho- 19 minēs, hoc poētae nōmen, quod nūlla umquam barbaria violāvit. Saxa et sōlitūdinēs vōcī respondent, bēstiae saepe immānēs cantū 15 flectuntur atque cōsistunt: nōs īnstītūtī rēbus optimīs nōn poētārum vōce moveāmur? Homērum Colophōniī cīvem esse dīcunt suum, Chiī suum vindicant, Salamīniī repetunt, Smyrnaei 20 vērō suum esse cōfīrmant, itaque etiam



SMYRNA

dēlūbrum eius in oppidō dēdicāvērunt; permultī alīī praetereā pugnant inter sē atque contendunt. IX. Ergō illī aliēnum, quia poēta fuit, post mortem etiam expetunt: nōs hunc vīvum, quī et voluntāte et lēgibus noster est, 25 repudiābimus, praesertim cum omne ōlim studium atque omne ingenium contulerit Archiās ad populū Rōmānī glōriam laudemque celebrandam? Nam et Cimbricās rēs adulēscens attigit (et ipsī illī C. Mariō, quī dūrior ad

20 haec studia vidēbātur, iūcundus fuit; neque enim quisquam est tam āversus ā Mūsīs quī nōn mandārī versibus aeternum suōrum labōrum praecōnium facile patiātur. Themistoclem illum, summum Athēnīs virum, dīxisse
 5 aiunt, cum ex eō quaererētur, quod acroāma aut cuius vōcem libentissimē audīret: 'Eius, ā quō sua virtūs optimē



WARSHIP

praedicārētur.' Itaque ille Marius item eximiē L. Plōtium
 dīlēxit, cuius ingeniō putābat ea quae gesserat posse
 21 celebrārī); Mithridāticum vērō bellum, magnum atque
 10 difficile et in multā varietāte terrā marīque versātum,
 tōtum ab hōc expressum est; quī librī nōn modo L. Lū-
 cullum, fortissimum et clārissimum virum, vērū etiam
 populī Rōmānī nōmen inlūstrant. Populus enim Rōmānus
 aperuit Lūcullō imperante Pontum et rēgiīs quondam
 15 opibus et ipsā nātūrā et regiōne vāllātum; populī Rōmānī
 exercitus eōdem duce nōn maximā manū innumerābilis

Armeniōrum cōpiās fūdit; populī Rōmānī laus est urbem
 amīcissimam Cyzicēnōrum eiusdem cōnsiliō ex omnī im-
 petū rēgiō atque tōtīus bellī ōre ac faucibus ēreptam
 esse atque servātam; nostra semper ferētur et praedicā-
 bitur, L. Lūcullō dīmicante cum interfectīs ducibus dē- 5
 pressa hostium classis est, incrēdibilis apud Tenedum
 pugna illa nāvālis; nostra sunt tropaea, nostra monu-
 menta, nostrī triumphī; quae quōrum ingeniīs efferuntur,
 ab eīs populī Rōmānī fāma celebrātur. Cārus fuit Āfri- 22
 cānō superiōrī noster Ennius, itaque etiam in sepulcrō 10
 Scīpiōnum putātur is esse cōstitūtus ex marmore. At
 eīs laudibus certē nōn solum ipse quī laudātur, sed etiam
 populī Rōmānī nōmen ōrnātur. In caelum huius proavus
 Catō tollitur: magnus honōs populī Rōmānī rēbus ad-
 iungitur. Omnēs dēnique illī Maximī, Mārcellī, Fulviī nōn 15
 sine commūnī omnium nostrum laude decorantur. X. Ergō
 illum quī haec fēcerat, Rudīnum hominem, maiōrēs nostrī
 in cīvitatē recēpērunt: nōs hunc Hēraclīensem, multīs
 cīvitatibus expetītum, in hāc autem lēgibus cōstitūtum,
 dē nostrā cīvitatē ēiciāmus?

20

*Greek poetry read everywhere. Alexander's tribute to Homer.
 Pompey honored his historian. Archias might have thus received
 citizenship from some general. All desire to be immortalized*

Nam sī quis minōrem glōriae fructum putat ex Grae- 23
 cīs versibus percipī quam ex Latīnīs, vehementer errat,
 proptereā quod Graeca leguntur in omnibus ferē genti-
 bus, Latīna suīs fīnibus exiguīs sānē continentur. Quā
 rē sī rēs eae quās gessimus orbis terrae regiōnibus dē- 25
 fīniuntur, cupere dēbēmus, quō manuum nostrārum tēla
 pervēnerint, eōdem glōriam fāmamque penetrāre, quod
 cum ipsīs populīs dē quōrum rēbus scrībitur haec ampla

sunt, tum eīs certē quī dē vītā glōriāe causā dīmīcant
 hoc maximum et periculōrum incitāmentum est et labō-
 24 rum. Quam multōs scrīptōrēs rērum suārum magnus ille
 Alexander sēcum habuisse dīcitur! Atque is tamen, cum
 5 in Sīgēō ad Achillis tumulum astitisset, 'Ō fortunāte'



ALEXANDER IN A BATTLE SCENE

inquit 'adulēscēns, quī tuāe virtūtis Homērum praecōnem
 invēnerīs!' Et vērē; nam, nisi Īlias illa exstitisset, idem
 tumulus quī corpus eius contēxerat nōmen etiam obruisset.
 Quid? noster hic Magnus, quī cum virtūte fortunam adae-
 10 quāvit, nōnne Theophanem Mytilēnaeum, scrīptōrem rē-
 rum suārum, in cōtiōne militum civitāte dōnāvit, et nostrī
 illī fortēs virī, sed rūsticī ac mīlitēs, dulcēdine quādam

glōriæ commōtī, quasi participēs eiusdem laudis magnō
 illud clāmōre approbāvērunt? Itaque, crēdō, sī cīvis Rō- 25
 mānus Archiās lēgibus nōn esset, ut ab aliquō imperātōre
 cīvitate dōnārētur perficere nōn potuit. Sulla cum His-
 pānōs dōnāret et Gallōs, crēdō, hunc petentem repudiās- 5
 set; quem nōs [in cōntiōne] vīdimus, cum eī libellum
 malus poēta dē populō subiēcisset, quod epigramma in eum
 fēcisset tantum modo alternīs versibus longiusculīs, statim
 ex eīs rēbus quās tum vēndēbat iubēre eī praeium tribuī,
 sed eā condiciōne nē quid postea scrīberet. Quī sēdultitā- 10
 tem malī poētae dūxerit aliquō tamen praemiō dignam,
 huius ingenium et virtūtem in scrībendō et cōpiam nōn
 expetisset? Quid? ā Q. Metellō Piō, familiārissimō suō, 26
 quī cīvitate multōs dōnāvit, neque per sē neque per Lū-
 cullōs impetrāvisset? quī praesertim ūsque eō dē suīs rē- 15
 bus scrībī cuperet ut etiam Cordubae nātīs poētīs, pingue
 quiddam sonantibus atque peregrīnum, tamen aurīs suās
 dēderet. XI. Neque enim est hoc dissimulandum, quod
 obscurārī nōn potest, sed prae nōbīs ferendum: trahimur
 omnēs studiō laudis, et optimus quisque maximē glōriā 20
 dūcitur. Ipsī illī philosophī etiam in eīs libellīs quōs dē
 contemnendā glōriā scrībunt nōmen suum inscrībunt; in
 eō ipsō in quō praedicātiōnem nōbilitātemque dēspiciunt
 praedicārī dē sē ac sē nōminārī volunt. Decimus quidem 27
 Brūtus, summus vir et imperātor, Accī, amīcissimī suī, 25
 carminibus templōrum ac monumentōrum aditūs exōrnāvit
 suōrum. Iam vērō ille quī cum Aetōlīs Enniō comite bel-
 lāvit Fulvius nōn dubitāvit Mārtis manubiās Mūsīs cōnse-
 crāre. Quā rē, in quā urbe imperātōrēs prope armātī
 poētārum nōmen et Mūsārum dēlūbra coluērunt, in eā nōn 30
 dēbent togātī iūdicēs ā Mūsārum honōre et ā poētārum
 salūte abhorrēre.

Archias is writing a poem on Cicero's consulship. The best men find their incentive in the hope of fame

- 28 Atque ut id libentius faciātis, iam mē vōbīs, iūdicēs, indicābō et dē meō quōdam amōre glōriae nimis ācrī fortasse, vērū tamen honestō, vōbīs cōnfitebor. Nam quās rēs nōs in cōsulātū nostrō vōbīscum simul prō salūte huius
 5 *urbis* atque imperī et prō vītā cīvium prōque ūniversā rē pūblicā gessimus, attigit hic versibus atque incohāvit; quibus audītis, quod mihi magna rēs et iūcunda vīsa est, hunc ad perficiendum adōrnāvī. Nūllam enim virtūs aliam mercēdem labōrum periculōrumque dēsīderat praeter hanc
 10 laudis et glōriae; quā quidem dētrāctā, iūdicēs, quid est quod in hōc tam exiguō vītae curriculō et tam brevī tantis nōs in labōribus exerceāmus? Certē, sī nihil animus praesentīret in posterum, et sī, quibus regiōnibus vītae spatium circumscrip̄tum est, īsdem omnīs cōgitātiōnēs termināret
 15 suās, nec tantis sē labōribus frangeret neque tot cūrīs vigiliisque angerētur nec totiēns dē ipsā vītā dīmīcāret. Nunc īnsidet quaedam in optimō quōque virtūs, quae nocetēs ac diēs animum glōriae stimulīs concitat atque admonet nōn cum vītae tempore esse dīmīttendam commemorātiō-
 20 nem nōminis nostrī, sed cum omnī posteritāte adaequandam. XII. An vērō tam parvī animī videāmur esse omnēs, quī in rē pūblicā atque in hīs vītae periculīs labōribusque versāmur, ut, cum ūsque ad extrēmum spatium nūllum tranquillū atque ōtiōsum spīritum dūxerīmus, nōbīscum
 25 simul moritūra omnia arbitrēmur? An statuās et imāginēs, nōn animōrum simulācra, sed corporum, studiōsē multī summī hominēs reliquērunt: cōnsiliōrum relinquere ac virtūtum nostrārum effigiem nōne multō malle dēbēmus, summīs ingeniīs expressam et polītā? Ego vērō omnia
 30 quae gerēbam iam tum in gerendō spargere mē ac dissēmi-

nāre arbitrābar in orbis terrae memoriam sempiternam. Haec vērō sive ā meō sēnsū post mortem āfutūra est, sive, ut sapientissimī hominēs putāvērunt, ad aliquam animī meī partem pertinēbit, nunc quidem certē cōgitātiōne quādam spēque dēlector.

5

With a case so clear, such a man—a bard who brings honor to Rome—should find favor with the jury

Quā rē cōservāte, iūdicēs, hominem pudōre eō quem 31 amīcōrum vidētis comprobārī cum dignitatē tum etiam vetustatē, ingeniō autem tantō quantum id convenit exīstīmārī quod summōrum hominum iūdicīis expetītum esse videātis, causā vērō eius modī quae beneficiō lēgis, auc- 10 tōritatē mūnicipī, testimōniō Lūcullī, tabulīs Metellī comprobētur. Quae cum ita sint, petimus ā vōbīs, iūdicēs, sī qua nōn modo hūmāna, vērū etiam dīvīna in tantīs ingeniīs commendātiō dēbet esse, ut eum quī vōs, quī vestrōs imperātōrēs, quī populī Rōmānī rēs gestās semper 15 ōrnāvit, quī etiam hīs recentibus nostrīs vestrīsque domesticīs periculīs aeternum sē testimōnium laudis datūrum esse profitētur, quī est *ex* eō numerō quī semper apud omnīs sāctī sunt habitī itaque dictī, sīc in vestram accipiātis fidem ut hūmānitātē vestrā levātus potius quam 20 acerbitātē violātus esse videātur.

Concluding apology for the unusual mode of treatment

Quae dē causā prō meā cōsuētūdine breviter simplici- 3a terque dīxī, iūdicēs, ea cōfīdō probāta esse omnibus; quae ā forō aliēna iūdicīālīque cōsuētūdine et dē hominis ingeniō et commūniter dē ipsō studiō locūtus sum, ea, 25 iūdicēs, ā vōbīs spērō esse in bonam partem accepta, ab eō quī iūdicium exercet certō sciō.



Courtesy Alinari Brothers, Florence

JULIUS CÆSAR

M. TVLLI CICERONIS PRO M. MARCELLO ORATIO

*I must at last break silence to express my appreciation of
Cæsar's clemency in pardoning Marcellus*

DIŪTURNĪ silentī, patrēs cōnscrīptī, quō eram hīs 1
temporibus ūsus, nōn timōre aliquō, sed partim
dolōre, partim verēcundiā finem hodiernus diēs
attulit, idemque initium quae vellem quaeque sentīrem
meō prīstinō mōre dīcendī. Tantam enim mānsuētūdi- 5
nem, tam inūsitatam inaudītamque clēmentiam, tantum in
summā potestāte rērum omnium modum, tam dēnique in-
crēdibilem sapientiam ac paene dīvīnam tacitus praeterīre
nūllō modō possum. M. enim Mārcellō vōbīs, patrēs cōn- 2
scrīptī, reīque pūblīcae redditō nōn illīus solum, sed etiam 10
meam vōcem et auctōritātem vōbīs et reī pūblīcae cōnser-
vātā ac restitūtā putō. Dolēbam enim, patrēs cōn-
scrīptī, et vehementer angēbar virum tālem, cum in eādē
causā in quā ego fuisset, nōn in eādē esse fortunā, nec
mihi persuādēre poteram nec fās esse dūcēbam versārī mē 15
in nostrō vetere curriculō illō aemulō atque imitātōre stu-
diōrum ac labōrum meōrum quasi quōdam sociō ā mē et
comite distrāctō. Ergō et mihi meae prīstinae vītāe cōn-
suētūdinem, C. Caesar, interclūsā aperuistī et hīs omni-
bus ad bene dē rē pūblīcā spērāndum quasi signum aliquod 20
sustulistī. Intellēctum est enim mihi quidem in multīs et 3
maximē in mē ipsō, sed paulō ante omnibus, cum M. Mār-

cellum senātuī reīque pūblicae concessistī, commemorātis
 praesertim offēsiōnibus, tē auctōritātem huius ōrdinis
 dignitātemque reī pūblicae tuīs vel dolōribus vel suspīciōni-
 bus anteferre. Ille quidem frūctum omnis ante āctae vītae
 5 hodiernō diē maximum cēpit, cum summō cōnsensū senātūs
 tum iūdiçiō tuō gravissimō et maximō. Ex quō profectō
 intellegis quanta in datō beneficiō sit laus, cum in acceptō
 4 sit tanta glōria. Est vērō fortūnātus, cuius ex salūte nōn
 minor paene ad omnīs, quam ad illum ventūra sit, laetitia
 10 pervēnerit: quod quidem meritō atque optimō iūre conti-
 git; quis enim est illō aut nōbilitāte aut probitāte aut
 optimārum artium studiō aut innocentia aut ūllō in laudis
 genere praestantior?

*Today witnesses your greatest distinction, and it is
 exclusively yours*

II. Nulliūs tantum flūmen est ingenī, nūlla dīcendī aut
 15 scribendī tanta vīs, tanta cōpia, quae nōn dīcam exōrnāre,
 sed ēnārrāre, C. Caesar, rēs tuās gestās possit. Tamen
 hoc adfīrmō et pāce dīcam tuā, nūllam in hīs esse laudem
 ampliōrem quam eam quam hodiernō diē cōsecūtus
 5 es. Soleō saepe ante oculōs pōnere idque libenter crē-
 20 brīs ūsūrpāre sermōnibus, omnīs nostrōrum imperātōrum,
 omnīs exterārum gentium potentissimōrumque populōrum,
 omnīs clārissimōrum rēgum rēs gestās cum tuīs nec con-
 tentiōnum magnitūdine nec numerō proeliōrum nec varie-
 tātē regiōnum nec celeritātē cōficiendī nec dissimilitūdine
 25 bellōrum posse cōferrī, nec vērō disiūctissimās terrās
 citius passibus cuiusquam potuisse peragrārī, quam tuīs
 6 nōn dīcam cursibus, sed victōriīs lūstrātae sunt. Quae
 quidem ego nisi ita magna esse fatear, ut ea vix cuiusquam
 mēns aut cōgitātiō capere possit, āmēns sim; sed tamen

sunt alia maiōra. Nam bellicās laudēs solent quīdam extenuāre verbīs eāsque dētrahere ducibus, commūnicāre cum multīs, nē propriae sint imperātōrum. Et certē in armīs mīlitum virtūs, locōrum opportunitās, auxilia sociōrum, classēs, commeātūs multum iuvant, maximam vērō 5 partem quasi suō iūre Fortūna sibi vindicat et, quicquid prōsperē gestum, id paene omne dūcit suum. At vērō 7 huius glōriae, C. Caesar, quam es paulō ante adeptus, socium habēs nēminem: tōtum hoc, quantumcumque est, quod certē maximum est, tōtum est, inquam, tuum. Nihil 10 sibi ex istā laude centuriō, nihil praefectus, nihil cohors, nihil turma dēcerpit; quīn etiam illa ipsa rērum hūmānarum domina, Fortūna, in istīus sē societātem glōriae nōn offert: tibi cēdit, tuam esse tōtam et propriam fatētur. Numquam enim temeritās cum sapientiā commiscētur ne- 15 que ad cōnsilium cāsus admittitur.

*The greatest conquest is that of self, and mercy earns the
highest gratitude*

III. Domuistī gentīs immānitāte barbarās, multitudīne 8 innumerābilīs, locīs īnfīnitās, omnī cōpiārum genere abundantis: sed tamen ea vicistī quae et nātūram et conditionem ut vincī possent habēbant. Nulla est enim tanta 20 vīs quae nōn ferrō et vīribus dēbilitārī frangīque possit: animum vincere, īrācundiam cohibēre, victō temperāre, adversārium nōbilitāte, ingeniō, virtūte praestantem nōn modo extollere iacentem, sed etiam amplificāre eius prīstinam dignitātem, haec quī faciat, nōn ego eum cum sum- 25 mīs virīs comparō, sed simillimum deō iūdicō. Itaque, 9 C. Caesar, bellicae tuae laudēs celebrābuntur illae quidem nōn sōlum nostrīs, sed paene omnium gentium litterīs atque linguīs, nec ūlla umquam aetās de tuīs laudibus

conticēscet; sed tamen eius modī rēs nesciō quō modō etiam cum leguntur, obstrepī clāmōre mīlitum videntur et tubārum sonō. At vērō cum aliquid clēmēter, mānsuētē, iūstē, moderātē, sapienter factum, in irācundiā
 5 praesertim, quae est inimīca cōsiliō, et in victōriā, quae nātūrā īnsolēns et superba est, audīmus aut legimus, quō studiō incendimur, nōn modo in gestīs rēbus, sed etiam in
 10 fictīs, ut eōs saepe quōs numquam vīdimus dīligāmus! Tē vērō, quem praesen-
 10 tem intuemur, cuius mentem sēnsusque et ōs cernimus, ut, quicquid bellī fortūna reliquum rei pūblīcae
 15 fēcerit, id esse salvum velis, quibus laudibus efferēmus, quibus studiīs prōsequēmur, quā benevolentīā complectēmur? Parietēs, mē dīus fidius, ut mihi vidētur, huius cūriae tibi grātiās agere gestiunt, quod brevī tempore
 20 futūra sit illa auctōritās in hīs maiōrum suōrum et suis sēdibus. IV. Equidem cum C. Mārcellī, virī optimī et commemorābilī pietāte praeditī, lacrimās modo vōbīscum vidērem, omnium Mārcellōrum meum pectus memoria offūdit, quibus tū etiam mortuīs M. Mārcellō cōservātō
 25 dignitātem suam reddidistī nōbilissimamque familiam iam ad paucōs redāctam paene ab interitū vindicāstī.



MARCELLUS (THE ANCESTOR)

This proudest of victories is yours alone; and as your trophies inevitably decay, your fame as a just and merciful man, superior to victory, will increase

11 Hunc tū igitur diem tuīs maximīs et innumerābilibus grātulātiōnibus iūre antepōnis. Haec enim rēs ūnīus est

propria C. Caesaris; cēterae duce tē gestae magnae illae quidem, sed tamen multō magnōque comitātū. Huius autem rei tū īdem dux es et comes: quae quidem tanta est ut tropaeīs et monumentīs tuīs adlātūra fīnem sit aetās — nihil est enim opere et manū factum, quod nōn cōficiat 5 et cōsūmat vetustās—at haec tua iūstitia et lēnitās 12 flōrēscet cotīdiē magis. Ita quantum operibus tuīs diūturnitās dētrahet, tantum adferet laudibus. Et cēterōs quidem omnīs victōrēs bellōrum cīvīlium iam antea aequitāte et misericordiā vīcerās: hodiernō vērō diē tē ipsum 10 vīcistī. Vereor ut hoc quod dīcam perinde intellegī possit audītū atque ipse cōgitāns sentiō: ipsam victōriam vīcissee vidēris, cum ea quae erant adēmpsa victīs remīsistī. Nam cum ipsīus victōriae condiōne omnēs victī occidissēmus, clēmēntiae tuae iūdicīō cōservātī sumus. Rēctē igitur 15 ūnus invictus es, ā quō etiam ipsīus victōriae condiō vīsque dēvicta est.

This decision means forgiveness for many others. Your attitude toward the pacifists. Having feared the Pompeians might be vindictive, if victorious, I appreciate your magnanimity

V. Atque hoc C. Caesaris iūdicium, patrēs cōscripītī, 13 quam lātē pateat attendite. Omnēs enim quī ad illa arma fātō sumus nesciō quō rei pūblīcae miserō fūnestōque 20 compulsi, etsī aliquā culpā tenēmur errōris hūmānī, scelere certē liberātī sumus. Nam cum M. Mārcellum dēprecantibus vōbīs rei pūblīcae cōservāvit, mē et mihi et item rei pūblīcae, nūllō dēprecante, reliquōs amplissimōs virōs et sibi ipsōs et patriae reddidit, quōrum et frequen- 25 tiam et dignitātem hōc ipsō in cōnsessū vidētis, nōn ille hostīs indūxit in cūriam, sed iūdicāvit ā plērīsque ignōrātiōne potius et falsō atque inānī metū quam cupiditāte aut

14 crūdēlītātē bellum esse susceptum. Quō quidem in bellō
semper dē pāce audiendum putāvī semperque doliū nōn
modo pācem, sed etiam ōrātiōnem cīvium pācem flāgitan-
tium repudiārī. Neque enim ego illa nec ūlla umquam
5 secūtus sum arma cīvīlia semperque mea cōnsilia pācis et
togae socia, nōn bellī atque armōrum fuērunt. Hominem
sum secūtus prīvātō officiō, nōn pūblicō, tantumque apud
mē grātī animī fidēlis memoria valuit, ut nūllā nōn modo
9 cupiditātē, sed nē spē quidem prūdēns et sciēns tamquam
15 ad interitum ruerem voluntārium. Quod quidem meum
cōnsiliū minimē obscurum fuit. Nam et in hōc ōrdine
integrā rē multa dē pāce dīxī et in ipsō bellō eadem etiam
cum capitis meī periculō sēnsī. Ex quō nēmō erit tam
iniūstus rērum exīstimātor quī dubitet quae Caesaris dē
15 bellō voluntās fuerit, cum pācis auctōrēs cōservandōs
statim cēnsuerit, cēterīs fuerit irātior. Atque id minus
mīrum fortasse tum, cum esset incertus exitus et an-
ceps fortūna bellī: quī vērō victor pācis auctōrēs dīli-
19 git, is profectō dēclārat sē māluisse nōn dīmīcāre quam
20 vincere. VI. Atque huius quidem rei M. Mārcellō sum
testis; nostrī enim sēnsūs ut in pāce semper, sīc tum etiam
in bellō congruēbant. Quotiēns ego eum et quantō cum
dolōre vīdī, cum insolentiam certōrum hominum tum etiam
ipsīus victōriae ferōcītātē extimēscētem! Quō grātior
25 tua liberālītās, C. Caesar, nōbīs, quī illa vīdimus, dēbet
esse. Nōn enim iam causae sunt inter sē, sed victōriae
17 comparandae. Vīdimus tuam victōriam proeliōrum exitū
terminātam: gladium vāgīnā vacuum in urbe nōn vīdimus.
Quōs āmīsīmus cīvīs, eōs vīs Mārtis perculit, nōn ira
30 victōriae, ut dubitāre dēbeat nēmō quīn multōs, sī fierī
posset, C. Caesar ab īferīs excitāret, quoniam ex eādē
aciē cōservat quōs potest. Alterius vērō partis nihil

amplius dicō quam, id quod omnēs verēbāmur, nimis
īrācundam futūram fuisse victōriam. Quīdam enim nōn 18
modo armātīs, sed interdum etiam ōtiōsīs minābantur, nec
quid quisque sēnsisset, sed ubi fuisset cōgitandum esse
dicēbant; ut mihi quidem videantur dī immortalēs, etiam 5
sī poenās ā populō Rōmānō ob aliquod dēlictum expetīvē-
runt, quī cīvile bellum tantum et tam lūctuōsum excitā-
verint, vel plācātī iam vel satiātī aliquandō omnem spem
salūtis ad clēmēntiam victōris et sapientiam contulisse. 9

*Continue to enjoy that virtue, and to practice it toward those
who were honestly mistaken*

Quā rē gaudē tuō istō tam excellentī bonō, et fruire 19
cum fortūnā et glōriā tum etiam nātūrā et mōribus tuīs;
ex quō quidem maximus est fructus iūcunditāsque sa-
pientī. Cētera cum tua recordābere, etsī persaepe virtūtī,
tamen plērumque fēlicitātī tuae grātulābere: dē nōbīs,
quōs in rē pūblicā tēcum simul esse voluistī, quotiēns 15
cōgitābis, totiēns dē maximīs tuīs beneficiīs, totiēns dē
incrēdibilī liberālitate, totiēns dē singulārī sapientiā cōgi-
tābis; quae nōn modo summa bona, sed nīmīrum audēbō
vel sōla dicere. Tantus est enim splendor in laude vērā,
tanta in magnitūdine animī et cōsiliī dignitās, ut haec ā 20
Virtūte dōnāta, cētera ā Fortūnā commodāta esse videan-
tur. Nōlī igitur in cōservandīs virīs bonīs dēfetīgārī, 20
nōn cupiditate praesertim aliquā aut prāvitāte lāpsīs, sed
opīniōne officī stultā fortasse, certē nōn improbā, et speciē
quādam rei pūblīcae. Nōn enim tua ūlla culpa est, sī tē 25
aliquī timuērunt, contrāque summa laus, quod minimē
timendum fuisse sēnsērunt.

But you must guard your own life, so indispensable to us, and inevitably imperiled

- 21 VII. Nunc veniō ad gravissimam querēlam et atrōcissimam suspīciōnem tuam, quae nōn tibi ipsī magis quam cum omnibus cīvibus, tum maximē nobīs, quī ā tē cōservātī sumus, prōvidenda est: quam etsī spērō falsam
 5 esse, numquam tamen extenuābō. Tua enim cautiō nostra cautiō est. Quod sī in alterutrō peccandum sit, mālim vidērī nimis timidus quam parum prūdēns. Sed quisnam est iste tam dēmēns? dē tuīsne?—tametsī quī magis sunt tuī quam quibus tū salūtem īnsperantibus reddidistī?—
 10 ane ex eō numerō quī ūnā tēcum fuērunt? Nōn est crēdibilis tantus in ūllō furor, ut quō duce omnia summa sit adeptus, huius vītā nōn antepōnat suae. An sī nihil tuī cōgitant sceleris, cavendum est nē quid inimicī? Quī? omnēs enim quī fuērunt aut suā pertināciā vītā
 15 amīsērunt aut tuā misericordiā retinuērunt, ut aut nūllī supersint dē inimicīs aut quī fuērunt sint amīcissimī.
 22 Sed tamen cum in animīs hominum tantae latebrae sint et tantī recessūs, augeāmus sānē suspīciōnem tuam: simul enim augēbimus dīligentiam. Nam quis est omnium tam
 20 ignārus rērum, tam rudis in rē pūblicā, tam nihil umquam nec dē suā nec dē commūnī salūte cōgītāns quī nōn intellegat tuā salūte continērī suam et ex ūnīus tuā vītā pendēre omnium? Equidem dē tē diēs noctēsque, ut dēbeō, cōgītāns cāsūs dumtaxat hūmānōs et incertōs ēven-
 25 tūs valētūdinis et nātūrae commūnis fragilitātem extimēscō, doleōque, cum rēs pūblica immortalis esse dēbeat,
 23 eam in ūnīus mortālis animā cōsistere. Sī vērō ad hūmānōs cāsūs incertōsque mōtūs valētūdinis sceleris etiam accēdit īnsidiārumque cōnsēsiō, quem deum, sī cupiat,
 30 posse opitulārī reī pūblīcae crēdimus?

You alone can bring reform and restoration. Not yet can you be spared, while your work is unfinished.

VIII. Omnia sunt excitanda tibi, C. Caesar, ūnī, quae iacēre sentīs, bellī ipsiūs impetū, quod necesse fuit, perculsa atque prōstrāta: cōstituenda iūdicia, revocanda fidēs, comprimendae libīdinēs, prōpāganda subolēs, omnia quae dīlāpsa iam diffūxērunt sevērīs lēgibus vincienda 5 sunt. Nōn fuit recūsandum in tantō cīvīlī bellō, tantō 24 animōrum ārdōre et armōrum, quīn quassāta rēs pūblica, quicumque bellī ēventus fuisset, multa perderet et ōrnāmenta dignitātis et praesidia stabilitātis suae, multaque uterque dux faceret armātus, quae īdem togātus fierī prohi- 10 buisset. Quae quidem tibi nunc omnia bellī volnera sānanda sunt, quibus praeter tē medērī nēmō potest. Itaque 25 illam tuam praeclārissimam et sapientissimam vōcem invītus audīvī: 'Satis diū vel nātūrae vīxī vel glōriae.' Satis, sī ita vīs, fortasse nātūrae, addam etiam, sī placet, 15 glōriae: at, quod maximum est, patriae certē parum. Quā rē omitte, quaesō, istam doctōrum hominum in contemnendā morte prūdentiam: nōlī nostrō perīculō esse sapiēns. Saepe enim vēnit ad aurīs meās tē idem istud nimis crēbrō dīcere, satis tē vīxisse. Crēdō, sed tum id audīrem, sī 20 tibi sōlī vīverēs aut sī tibi etiam sōlī nātus essēs. Omnium salūtem cīvium cūctamque rem pūblicam rēs tuae gestae complexae sunt; tantum abes ā perfectiōne maximōrum operum, ut fundāmenta nōndum quae cōgitās iēcērīs. Hīc tū modum vītae tuae nōn salūte reī pūblīcae, sed aequitāte 25 animī dēfīniēs? Quid, sī istud nē glōriae quidem satis est? cuius tē esse avidissimum, quamvīs sīs sapiēns, nōn negābis.

Much remains to be done. Only by reorganizing the state will you win your release, and gain the immortality you desire and the favorable judgment of posterity

- 26 Parumne, inquiēs, magna relinquēmus? Immō vērō aliīs quamvīs multīs satis, tibi ūnī parum. Quicquid est enim, quamvīs amplum sit, id est parum tum, cum est aliquid amplius. Quod sī rērum tuārum immortālium,
- 5 C. Caesar, hic exitus futūrus fuit, ut dēvictīs adversāriīs rem pūblicam in eō statū relinquerēs in quō nunc est, vidē, quaesō, nē tua dīvīna virtūs admīrātiōnis plūs sit habitūra quam glōriae; sī quidem glōria est inlūstris ac pervagāta
- 9 magnōrum vel in suōs vel in patriam vel in omne genus hominum fāma meritōrum. IX. Haec igitur tibi reliqua pars est, hic restat āctus, in hōc ēlabōrandum est, ut rem pūblicam cōstituās, eāque tū in primīs summā tranquillitāte et ōtiō perfruāre: tum tē, sī volēs, cum et patriae quod dēbēs solverīs et nātūrā ipsam explēverīs satietāte vīvendī,
- 15 satis diū vīxisse dīcitō. Quid enim est omnīnō hoc ipsum diū, in quō est aliquid extrēmum? Quod cum vēnit, omnis voluptās praeterita prō nihilō est, quia postea nūlla est futūra. Quamquam iste tuus animus numquam hīs angustīis, quās nātūra nōbīs ad vīvendum dedit, contentus fuit,
- 19 semper immortālītātis amōre flagrāvit. Nec vērō haec tua vīta dūcenda est, quae corpore et spīritū continētur: illa, inquam, illa vīta est tua, quae vigēbit memoriā saeculōrum omnium, quam posteritās alet, quam ipsa aeternitās semper tuēbitur. Huic tū īnserviās, huic tē ostentēs oportet,
- 25 quae quidem quae mīrētur iam prīdem multa habet; nunc etiam quae laudet exspectat. Obstupēscent posterī certē imperia, prōvinciās, Rhēnum, Ōceanum, Nīlum, pugnās innumerābilīs, incrdībilīs victōriās, monumenta, mūnera,
- 29 triumphōs audientēs et legentēs tuōs. Sed nisi haec urbs

stabilīta tuīs cōnsiliīs et īnstitutīs erit, vagābitur modo
 tuum nōmen longē atque lātē, sēdem stabilem et domici-
 lium certum nōn habēbit. Erit inter eōs etiam quī nāscen-
 tur, sicut inter nōs fuit, magna dissēnsiō, cum aliī laudibus
 ad caelum rēs tuās gestās efferent, aliī fortasse aliquid 5
 requīrent, idque vel maximum, nisi bellī cīvīlis incendium
 salūte patriae restīnkerīs, ut illud fātī fuisse videātur, hoc
 cōnsilī. Servī igitur eīs iūdicibus quī multīs post saeculīs
 dē tē iūdicābunt et quidem haud sciō an incorruptius quam
 nōs; nam et sine amōre et sine cupiditāte et rūsus sine 10
 odiō et sine invidiā iūdicābunt. Id autem etiam sī tum 30
 ad tē, ut quīdam falsō putant, nōn pertinēbit, nunc certē
 pertinet esse tē tālem, ut tuās laudēs obscurātūra nūlla
 umquam sit oblīviō.

*After our unhappy divisions we must now be united, our safety
 depending upon you, whose life we promise to protect*

X. Dīversae voluntātēs cīvium fuērunt distrāctaeque 15
 sententiae. Nōn enim cōnsiliīs solum et studiīs, sed armīs
 etiam et castrīs dissidēbāmus. Erat obscuritās quaedam,
 erat certāmen inter clārissimōs ducēs; multī dubitābant
 quid optimum esset, multī quid sibi expedīret, multī quid 19
 decēret, nōn nullī etiam quid liceret. Perfūncta rēs pūblica 31
 est hōc miserō fātālīque bellō: vīcit is quī nōn fortunā
 īnflammāret odium suum, sed bonitāte lēnīret; neque om-
 nīs quibus īrātus esset, eōsdem etiam exsiliō aut morte
 dignōs iūdicāret. Arma ab aliīs posita, ab aliīs ērepta sunt.
 Ingrātus est iniūstusque cīvīs, quī armōrum periculō liberā- 25
 tus animum tamen retinet armātum, ut etiam ille melior
 sit quī in aciē cecidit, quī in causā animam profūdīt. Quae
 enim pertinācia quibusdam, eadem aliīs cōstantia vidērī

- 32 potest. Sed iam omnis frācta dissēsiō est armīs, exstincta
 aequitāte victōris: restat ut omnēs ūnum velint, quī habent
 aliquid nōn sapientiae modo, sed
 etiam sānitātis. Nisi tē, C. Caesar,
 5 salvō et in istā sententiā, quā cum
 antea tum hodiē vel maximē ūsus es,
 manente salvī esse nōn possumus.
 Quā rē omnēs tē quī haec salva esse
 volumus et hortāmur et obsecrāmus,
 10 ut vītāe, ut salūtī tuae cōsulās, CÆSAR AS DICTATOR
 omnēque tibi, ut prō aliīs etiam
 loquar quod dē mē ipse sentiō, quoniam subesse aliquid
 putās quod cavendum sit, nōn modo excubiās et cūstō-
 diās, sed etiam laterum nostrōrum oppositūs et corporum
 15 pollicēmur.



*We are unanimous in our gratitude to you, Cæsar, for what is to
 me the culmination of all your favors*

- 33 XI. Sed ut, unde est ōrsa, in eōdem terminētur ōrātiō,
 maximās tibi omnēs grātiās agimus, C. Caesar, maiōrēs
 etiam habēmus. Nam omnēs idem sentiunt, quod ex om-
 nium precibus et lacrimīs sentire potuistī. Sed quia nōn
 20 est omnibus stantibus necesse dīcere, ā mē certē dīcī
 volunt, cui necesse est quōdam modō; et quod fierī decet
 M. Mārcellō ā tē huic ōrdinī populōque Rōmānō et reī
 pūblicae redditō, fierī id intellegō. Nam laetārī omnīs nōn
 34 ut dē ūnūs solum, sed ut dē omnium salūte sentiō. Quod
 25 autem summae benevolentiae est, quae mea ergā illum om-
 nibus nōta semper fuit, ut vix C. Mārcellō, optimō et
 amantissimō frātrī, praeter eum quidem cēderem nēminī,

cum id sollicitūdine, cūrā, labōre tam diū praestiterim, quam diū est dē illius salūte dubitātum, certē hōc tempore magnīs cūrīs, molestiīs, dolōribus liberātus praestāre dēbeō. Itaque, C. Caesar, sīc tibi grātiās agō, ut mē omnibus rēbus ā tē nōn cōservātō solum, sed etiam ōrnātō, tamen 5 ad tua in mē ūnum innumerābilia merita, quod fierī iam posse nōn arbitrābar, maximus hōc tuō factō cumulus accesserit.



SILVER PITCHER

M. TVLLI CICERONIS
ACTIONIS IN C. VERREM SECVNDAE

LIBER QVARTVS

DE SIGNIS

Verres has systematically robbed Sicily of its works of art

VENIŌ nunc ad istius, quem ad modum ipse appel- 1
lat, studium, ut amīcī eius, morbum et īnsāniam,
ut Siculī, latrōcinium; ego quō nōmine appellem
nesciō; rem vōbīs prōpōnam, vōs eam suō, nōn nōminis
pondere penditōte. Genus ipsum prius cognōscite, iūdicēs; 5
deinde fortasse nōn magnō opere quaerētis quō id nōmine
appellandum putētis. Negō in Siciliā tōtā, tam locuplētī,
tam vetere prōvinciā, tot oppidīs, tot familiīs tam cōpiōsīs,
ūllum argenteum vās, ūllum Corinthium aut Dēliacum
fuisse, ūllam gemmam aut margarītam, quicquam ex aurō 10
aut ebore factum, signum ūllum aēneum, marmoreum,
eburneum, negō ūllam pīctūrā neque in tabulā neque
in textilī quīn conquīsierit, īspexerit, quod placitum sit
abstulerit. Magnum videor dīcere: attendite etiam quem 2
ad modum dīcam. Nōn enim verbī neque crīminis augendī 15
causā complector omnia: cum dīcō nihil istum eius modī
rērū in tōtā prōvinciā reliquisse, Latīnē mē scītōte, nōn
accūsātōriē loquī. Etiam plānius: nihil in aedibus cuius-
quam, nē in *hospitis* quidem, nihil in locīs commūnibus,
nē in fānīs quidem, nihil apud Siculum, nihil apud cīvem 20

Rōmānum, dēnique nihil istum quod ad oculōs animum-
que acciderit, neque prīvātī neque pūblicī, neque profānī
neque sacrī tōtā in Siciliā reliquisse.

At Messana Heius loses his Cupid of Praxiteles

3 Vnde igitur potius incipiam quam ab eā cīvitate quae
5 tibi ūna in amōre atque in dēliciīs fuit, aut ex quō potius



EROS (CUPID), PRAXITELES

numerō quam ex ipsīs laudātōribus tuīs? Facilius enim
perspiciētur quālis apud eōs fuerīs quī tē ōdērunt, quī
accūsant, quī persequuntur, cum apud tuōs Māmertīnōs
inveniāre improbissimā ratiōne esse praedātus.



II. Cī Heius est Māmertīnus—omnēs hoc mihi, quī Mes-
 sānam accessērunt, facile concēdunt—omnibus rēbus illā
 in cīvitatē ōrnātissimus. Huius domus est vel optima Mes-
 sānae, nōtissima quidem certē et nostrīs hominibus aper-
 tissima maximēque hospitālis. Ea domus ante istīus 5
 adventum ōrnāta sīc fuit ut urbī quoque esset ōrnāmentō;
 nam ipsa Messāna, quae sitū, moenibus portūque ōrnāta
 sit, ab hīs rēbus quibus iste dēlectātur sānē vacua atque
 nūda est. Erat apud Heium sacrārium magnā cum digni- 4
 tāte in aedibus, ā maiōribus trāditum, perantīquum, in 10
 quō signa pulcherrima quattuor summō artificiō, summā
 nōbilitātē, quae nōn modo istum hominem ingeniōsum et
 intellegendum, vērū etiam quemvīs nostrum, quōs iste
 idiōtās appellat, dēlectāre possent, ūnum Cupīdinis mar-
 moreum Prāxitelī; nīmīrum didicī etiam, dum in istum 15
 inquīrō, artificum nōmina. Idem, opīnor, artifex eiusdem
 modī Cupīdinem fēcit illum quī est Thespiīs, propter quem
 Thespieae vīsuntur; nam alia vīsēdī causa nūlla est.
 Atque ille L. Mummius, cum Thespiadās, quae ad aedem
 Fēlicitātis sunt, cēteraque profāna ex illō oppidō signa 20
 tolleret, hunc marmoreum Cupīdinem, quod erat cōsecrā-
 tus, nōn attigit.

*Other robberies from the same private chapel. Contrast the
 conduct of Claudius, the aedile, and of other officials*

III. Vērū ut ad illud sacrārium redeam, signum erat 5
 hoc quōd dīcō Cupīdinis ē marmore, ex alterā parte Hercu-
 lēs ēgregiē factus ex aere. Is dīcēbātur esse Myrōnis, ut 25
 opīnor: et certē. Item ante hōs deōs erant ārulae, quae
 cuivīs religiōnem sacrārī significāre possent. Erant aēnea
 duo praetereā signa, nōn maxima vērū eximiā venustātē,
 virginālī habitū atque vestītū, quae manibus sublātīs sacra

quaedam mōre Athēniēnsium virginum reposita in capiti-
 bus sustinēbant; Canēphoroe ipsae vocābantur; sed eārum
 artificem—quem? quemnam? rēctē admonēs—Polyclī-
 tum esse dīcēbant. Messānam ut quisque nostrum vēnerat,
 5 haec vīsere solēbat; omnibus haec ad vīsendum patēbant
 cotīdiē; domus erat
 nōn dominō magis ōr-
 nāmentō quam cī-
 6 vitātī. C. Claudius,
 10 cuiusaedilitātem mag-
 nificentissimam scī-
 mus fuisse, ūsus est
 hōc Cupīdine tam diū
 dum forum dīs im-
 15 mortālibus populōque
 Rōmānō habuit ōrnā-
 tum; et, cum hospes
 esset Heiōrum, Mā-
 mertīnī autem populī
 20 patrōnus, ut illīs be-
 nignīs ūsus est ad
 commodandum, sīc
 ipse diligēns fuit ad
 reportandum. Nūper
 25 hominēs nōbilīs eius modī, iūdicēs,—sed quid dīcō ‘nūper’?
 immō vērō modo ac plānē paulō ante vīdimus, quī forum
 et basilicās nōn spoliīs prōvinciārum, sed ōrnāmentīs
 amīcōrum, commodīs hospitum, nōn fūrtīs nocentium ōr-
 nārent; quī tamen signa atque ōrnāmenta sua cuique red-
 30 dēbant, nōn ablāta ex urbibus sociōrum atque amīcōrum
 quadrīduī causā, per simulātiōnem aedilitātis, domum
 7 deinde atque ad suās villās auferēbant. Haec omnia quae



HERAKLES (HERCULES), MYRON

dīxī signa, iūdicēs, ab Heiō ē sacrārīō Verrēs abstulit; nūllum, inquam, hōrum reliquit neque aliud ūllum tamen praeter ūnum pervetus ligneum, Bonam Fortūnam, ut opīnor; eam iste habēre domī suae nōluit. IV. Prō deum hominumque fidem! quid hoc est? quae haec causa est? 5 quae ista impudentia? quae dīcō signa, antequam abs tē sublāta sunt, Messānam cum imperiō nēmō vēnit quīn vīserit. Tot praetōrēs, tot cōsulēs in Siciliā cum in pāce tum etiam in bellō fuērunt, tot hominēs cuiusque modī—nōn loquor dē integrīs, innocentibus, religiōsīs—tot cupidī, 10 tot improbī, tot audācēs, quōrum nēmō sibi tam vehemēns, tam potēns, tam nōbilis vīsus est quī ex illō sacrārīō quicquam poscere aut tollere aut attingere auderet: Verrēs quod ubīque erit pulcherrimum auferet? nihil habēre cuiquam praetereā licēbit? tot domūs locuplētissimās istīus 15 domus ūna capiet? Idcirco nēmō superiōrum attigit ut hic tolleretur? ideō C. Claudius Pulcher rettulit ut C. Verrēs posset auferre?

At Lilybæum Pamphilus loses a valuable vase, but keeps his cups

XIV. Vērū mehercule hoc, iūdicēs, dīcam. Meminī 32 Pamphilum Lilybītānum, amīcum et hospitem meum, nō- 20 bilem hominem, mihi nārrāre, cum iste ab sēsē hydriam Boēthī manū factam, praecīārō opere et grandī pondere, per potestātem abstulisset, sē sānē trīstem et conturbātum domum revertisse, quod vās eius modī, quod sibi ā patre et ā maiōribus esset relictum, quō solitus esset ūtī ad fēstōs 25 diēs, ad hospitem adventūs, ā sē esset ablātum. 'Cum sedērem' inquit 'domī trīstis, accurrit Venerius; iubet mē scyphōs sigillātōs ad praetōrem statim adferre. Permōtus sum' inquit, 'bīnōs habēbam; iubeō prōmī utrōsque, nē quid plūs malī nāscerētur, et mēcum ad praetōris do- 30

mum ferrī. Eō cum veniō, praetor quiēscēbat; frātrēs illī Cibrātae inambulābant. Quī mē ubi vīdērunt, "Vbi sunt, Pamphile" inquit, "scyphī?" Ostendō trīstis; laudant. Incipiō querī mē nihil habitūrum quod alicuius
 5 esset pretī, sī etiam scyphī essent ablātī. Tum illī, ubi me conturbātum vident, "Quid vīs nōbīs dare, ut istī abs tē nē auferantur?" Nē multa, HS mīlle mē' inquit 'poposcē-
 runt; dīxī mē datūrum. Vocat intereā praetor, poscit scyphōs.' Tum illōs coepisse praetōrī dīcere putāsse sē,



SCYPHUS

10 id quod audīssent, alicuius pretī scyphōs esse Pamphilī; luteum negōtium esse, nōn dignum quod in suō argentō Verrēs habēret. Ait ille idem sibi vidērī. Ita Pamphilus scyphōs optimōs aufert.

The studio of Verres' silversmiths, busily at work under his own eye

54 XXIV. Et nē forte hominem exīstimētis hanc tantam vim
 15 emblēmatum sine causā coacervāre voluisse—vidēte quantī vōs, quantī exīstimātiōnem populī Rōmānī, quantī lēgēs et iūdicia, quantī testīs Siculōs [negōtiātōrēs] fēcērit—posteaquam tantam multitudinem conlēgerat emblēmatum ut nē ūnum quidem cuiquam reliquisset, īstituīt officīnam

Syrācūsīs in rēgiā maximam. Palam artificēs omnīs, caelā-
tōrēs ac vāsculārīōs, convocārī iubet, et ipse suōs complūrīs
habēbat: eōs conclūdīt, magnam hominū multitudinē.
Mēnsīs octō continuōs hīs opus nōn dēfuit, cum vās nūl-
lum fieret nisi aureum. Tum illa, ex patellis et tūribulīs 5
quae ēvellerat, ita scītē in aureīs pōculīs inligābat, ita aptē
in scaphiīs aureīs inclūdēbat, ut ea ad illam rem nāta esse
dīcerēs; ipse tamen praetor, quī suā vigilantīā pācem in
Siciliā dīcit fuisse, in hāc officinā maiōrem partem diēī
cum tunicā pullā sedēre solēbat et palliō. 10

*A Syrian prince, suspecting nothing, allows Verres to have his
treasures to examine*

XXVII. Veniō nunc nōn iam ad fūrtum, nōn ad avāri- 60
tiam, nōn ad cupiditātem, sed ad eius modī facinus, in quō
omnia nefāria continērī mihi atque inesse videantur; in
quō dī immortalēs violātī, exīstimātiō atque auctōritās
nōminis populī Rōmānī imminūta, hospitium spoliātum 15
ac prōditum, abaliēnātī scelere istīus ā nōbīs omnēs rēgēs
amīcissimī, nātiōnēsque quae in eōrum rēgnō ac diciōne
sunt. Nam rēgēs Syriae, rēgis Antiochī filiōs puerōs, scītīs 61
Rōmae nūper fuisse; quī vēnerant nōn propter Syriae
rēgnū; nam id sine contrōversiā obtinēbant, ut ā patre 20
et ā maiōribus accēperant; sed rēgnū Aegyptī ad sē et ad
Selēnēn mātrem suam pertinēre arbitrābantur. Iī posteā-
quam temporibus rei pūblīcae exclūsī per senātum agere
quae voluerant nōn potuērunt, in Syriam in rēgnū pa-
trium profectī sunt. Eōrum alter, quī Antiochus vocātur, 25
iter per Siciliam facere voluit; itaque istō praetōre vēnit
Syrācūsās. Hīc Verrēs hērēditātem sibi vēnisse arbitrātus 62
est, quod in eius rēgnū ac manūs vēnerat is, quem iste et
audierat multa sēcum praeclāra habēre et suspicābātur.

Mittit hominī mūnera satis largē haec ad ūsum domesticum, oleī, vīnī quod vīsum est, etiam trītici quod satis esset, dē suīs decumīs. Deinde ipsum rēgem ad cēnam vocāvit. Exōrnat amplē magnificēque triclinium; ex-
 5 pōnit ea quibus abundābat plūrima et pulcherrima vāsa argentea,—nam haec aurea nōndum fēcerat; omnibus cūrat rēbus instrūctum et parātum ut sit convīvium. Quid multa? rēx ita discessit ut et istum cōpiōsē ōrnātum et sē honōrificē acceptum arbitrārētur. Vocat ad cēnam deinde
 10 ipse praetōrem; expōnit suās cōpiās omnīs, multum argentum, nōn pauca etiam pōcula ex aurō, quae, ut mōs est rēgius et maximē in Syriā, gemmīs erant distīncta clārisimīs. Erat etiam vās vīnārium, ex ūnā gemmā pergrandī trulla excavāta, cum manūbriō aureō; dē quā, crēdō, satis
 15 idōneum, satis gravem testem, Q. Minucium, dīcere audīstis. Iste ūnum quodque vās in manūs sūmere, laudāre, mīrārī. Rēx gaudēre praetōrī populī Rōmānī satis iūcundum et grātum illud esse convīvium. Posteaquam inde discessum est, cōgitāre nihil iste aliud, quod ipsa rēs dē-
 20 clārāvit, nisi quem ad modum rēgem ex prōvinciā spoliātum expilātumque dīmitteret. Mittit rogātum vāsa ea quae pulcherrima apud eum vīderat; ait sē suīs caelātōribus velle ostendere: rēx, quī illum nōn nōsset, sine ūllā suspīciōne libentissimē dedit. Mittit etiam trullam
 25 gemmeam rogātum; velle sē eam dīligentius cōnsīderāre. Ea quoque eī mittitur.

The costly candelabrum, to be presented to Jupiter, is sent to Verres for examination

64 XXVIII. Nunc reliquum, iūdicēs, attendite, dē quō et vōs audistis et populus Rōmānus nōn nunc prīmum audiet et in exterīs nātiōnibus ūsque ad ultimās terrās pervagātum

est. Candēlābrum ē gemmīs clārissimīs opere mīrābilī perfectum rēgēs iī quōs dīcō Rōmam cum attulissent, ut in Capitōliō pōnerent, quod nōndum perfectum templum offenderant, neque pōnere potuērunt neque vulgō ostendere ac prōferre voluērunt, ut et magnificentius vidērētur, 5



CANDELABRUM

cum suō tempore in cellā Iovis Optimī Maximī pōnerētur, et clārius, cum pulchritūdō eius recēns ad oculōs hominum atque integra pervenīret: statuērunt id sēcum in Syriam reportāre, ut, cum au- 10 dīssent simulācrum Iovis Optimī Maximī dēdicātum, lēgātōs mitterent quī cum cēterīs rēbus illud quoque eximium ac pulcherrimum dōnum in Capitōlium 14 adferrent. Pervēnit rēs ad istius aurīs 65 nesciō quō modō; nam rēx id cēlātum voluerat, nōn quō quicquam metueret aut suspicārētur, sed ut nē multī illud ante praeciperent oculīs quam populus Rōmānus. Iste petit ā rēge et eum plūri- 20 bus verbīs rogat ut id ad sē mittat; cupere sē dīcit īnspicere neque sē aliīs videndī potestātem esse factūrum. Antiochus, quī animō et puerilī esset et

rēgiō, nihil dē istius improbitāte suspicātus est; imperat 25 suis ut id in praetōrium involūtum quam occultissimē dēferrent. Quō posteāquam attulērunt involūcrisque reiectis cōstituērunt, clāmāre iste coepit dignam rem esse rēgnō Syriae, dignam rēgiō mūnere, dignam Capitōliō. Etenim erat eō splendōre quī ex clārissimīs et pulcherri- 30 mīs gemmīs esse dēbēbat, eā varietāte operum ut ars certāre vidērētur cum cōpiā, eā magnitūdine ut intellegī posset

nōn ad hominum apparātum, sed ad amplissimī templī
 ōrnātum esse factum. Cum satis iam perspexisse vidērē-
 tur, tollere incipiunt, ut referrent. Iste ait sē velle illud
 etiam atque etiam cōnsiderāre; nēquāquam sē esse satiā-
 5 tum; iubet illōs discēdere et candēlābrum relinquere. Sīc
 illī tum inānēs ad Antiochum revertuntur.

*The prince cannot recover his valuables. He is ejected from the
 province, in spite of protest*

- 66 XXIX. Rēx prīmō nihil metuere, nihil suspicārī; diēs
 ūnus, alter, plūrēs; nōn referrī. Tum mittit, sī videātur,
 ut reddat. Iubet iste posterius ad sē revertī. Mīrum illī
 10 vidērī; mittit iterum; nōn redditur. Ipse hominem appel-
 lat, rogat ut reddat. Ōs hominis īnsignemque impudentiam
 cognōscite. Quod scīret, quod ex ipsō rēge audīset in
 Capitoliō esse pōnendum, quod Iovī Optimō Maximō, quod
 populō Rōmānō servārī vidēret, id sibi ut dōnāret rogāre
 15 et vehementissimē petere coepit. Cum ille sē et religiōne
 Iovis Capitōlinī et hominum exīstimātiōne impedīrī dī-
 ceret, quod multae nātiōnēs testēs essent illīus operis ac
 mūneris, iste hominī minārī ācerrimē coepit. Vbi videt
 eum nihilō magis minīs quam precibus permovērī, repente
 20 hominem dē prōvinciā iubet ante noctem dēcēdere; ait sē
 comperisse ex eius rēgnō pīrātās ad Siciliam esse ventūrōs.
 67 Rēx maximō conventū Syracūsīs in forō, nē quis forte mē
 in crīmine obscurō versārī atque adfingere aliquid suspī-
 ciōne hominum arbitrētur,—in forō, inquam, Syracūsīs
 25 flēns ac deōs hominēsque contestāns clāmāre coepit can-
 dēlābrum factum ē gemmīs, quod in Capitōlium missūrus
 esset, quod in templō clārissimō populō Rōmānō monu-
 mentum suae societātis amīcitiaeque esse voluisset, id sibi
 C. Verrem abstulisse; dē cēterīs operibus ex aurō et gem-

mīs, quae sua penes illum essent, sē nōn labōrāre; hoc sibi ēripī miserum esse et indignum. Id etsī anteā iam mente et cōgitātiōne suā frātrisque suī cōsecrātum esset, tamen tum sē, in illō conventū cīvium Rōmānōrum, dare dōnāre, dicāre cōsecrāre Iovī Optimō Maximō testemque ipsum 5 Iovem suae voluntātis ac religiōnis adhibēre.

An outrage and a scandal; a loss to the Capitol, entailing other losses in the future

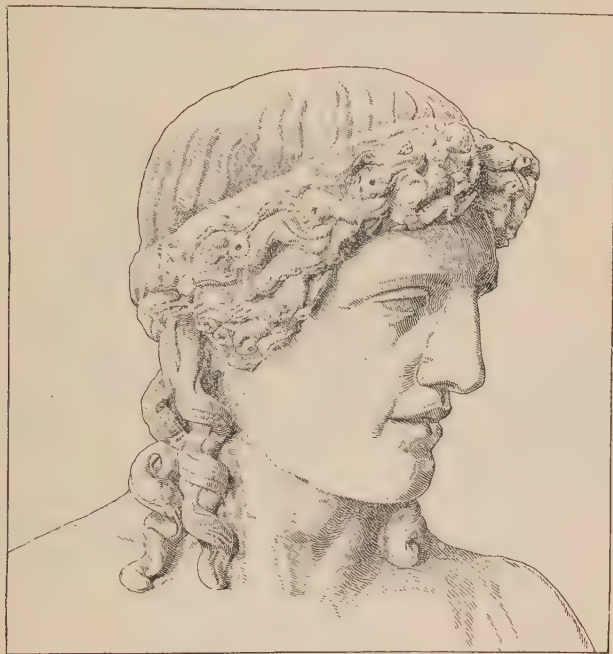
XXX. Quae vōx, quae latera, quae vīrēs huius ūnūs crīminis querimōniam possunt sustinēre? Rēx Antiochus, quī Rōmae ante oculōs omnium nostrum biennium ferē comitātū rēgiō atque ōrnātū fuisset, is cum amīcus et socius 10 populī Rōmānī esset, amīcissimō patre, avō, maiōribus, antīquissimīs et clārissimīs rēgibus, opulentissimō et maximō rēgnō, praeceps prōvinciā populī Rōmānī exturbātus est. Quem ad modum hoc acceptūrās nātiōnēs exterās, quem ad 68 modum huius tuī factī fāmam in rēgna aliōrum atque in 15 ultimās terrās perventūram putāstī, cum audīrent ā praetōre populī Rōmānī in prōvinciā violātum rēgem, spoliātum hospitem, ēiectum socium populī Rōmānī atque amīcum? Nōmen vestrum populīque Rōmānī odio atque acerbitātī scītōte nātiōnibus exterīs, iūdicēs, futurum, sī istīus haec 20 tanta iniūria impūnīta discesserit. Sīc omnēs arbitrābuntur, praesertim cum haec fāma dē nostrōrum hominum avāritiā et cupiditāte percrēbruerit, nōn istīus sōlius hoc esse facinus, sed eōrum etiam quī approbārint. Multī rēgēs, multae liberae cīvitatēs, multī prīvatī opulentī ac 25 potentēs habent profectō in animō Capitōlium sīc ōrnāre ut templī dignitās imperīque nostrī nōmen dēsīderat; quī sī intellēxerint intersersō hōc rēgālī dōnō graviter vōs tulisse, grāta fore vōbīs populōque Rōmānō sua studia ac

dōna arbitrābuntur; sīn hoc vōs in rēge tam nōbilī, rē tam eximiā, iniūriā tam acerbā neglēxisse audient, nōn erunt tam āmentēs ut operam, cūram, pecūniam impendant in
 4 eās rēs quās vōbīs grātās fore nōn arbitrentur.

The city of Agrigentum loses a valuable statue. Failure of an attempt to rob the temple at night

- 93 XLIII. Quid? Agrigentō nōne eiusdem P. Scīpiōnis monumentum, signum Apollinis pulcherrimum, cuius in femore litterīs minūtīs argenteīs nōmen Myrōnis erat īnscriptum, ex Aesculāpī religiōsissimō fānō sustulistī? Quod quidem, iūdicēs, cum iste clam fēcisset, cum ad
 10 suum scelus illud fūrtumque nefārium quōsdam hominēs improbōs ducēs atque adiūtōrēs adhibuisset, vehementer commōta cīvitas est. Vnō enim tempore Agrigentīnī beneficium Āfricānī, religiōnem domesticam, ōrnāmentum urbis, indicium victōriæ, testimōnium societātis requirē-
 15 bant. Itaque ab eīs quī prīncipēs in eā cīvitatē erant prae- cipitur et negōtium datur quaestōribus et aedīlibus ut noctū vigiliās agerent ad aedīs sacrās. Etenim iste Agri- gentī—crēdō propter multitudinem illōrum hominum atque virtūtem, et quod cīvēs Rōmānī, virī fortēs atque honestī,
 20 permultī in illō oppidō coniūctissimō animō cum ipsīs Agrigentīnīs vīvunt ac negōtiantur—nōn audēbat palam
 94 poscere aut tollere quae placēbant. Herculis templum est apud Agrigentīnōs nōn longē ā forō, sānē sānctum apud illōs et religiōsum. Ibi est ex aere simulācrum ipsīus Her-
 25 culis, quō nōn facile dīxerim quicquam mē vīdisse pul- chrius—tametsī nōn tam multum in istīs rēbus intellegō, quam multa vīdī—ūsque eō, iūdicēs, ut rictum eius ac mentum paulō sit attrītius, quod in precibus et grātulātiōni- bus nōn solum id venerārī, vērū etiam ōsculārī solent. Ad

hoc templum, cum esset iste Agrigentī, duce Tīmarchide repente nocte intempestā servōrum armātōrum fit concursus atque impetus. Clāmor ā vigilibus fānīque cūstōdibus tollitur; quī prīmō cum obsistere ac dēfendere



APOLLO, MYRON

cōnārentur, male mulcātī clāvīs ac fūstibus repelluntur. 5
Posteā convolsīs repāgulīs effrāctisque valvīs dēmōlirī
signum ac vectibus labefactāre cōnantur. Intereā ex clā-
mōre fāma tōtā urbe percrēbruit expugnārī deōs patriōs,
nōn hostium adventū necopīnātō neque repentinō praedō-
num impetū, sed ex domō atque ex cohorte praetōriā ma- 10

95 num fugitivōrum instrūctam armātamque vēnisse. Nēmō
 Agrigentī neque aetāte tam adfectā neque vīribus tam in-
 firmīs fuit quī nōn illā nocte eō nūntiō excitātus surrēxerit,
 tēlumque quod cuique fors offerēbat adripuerit. Itaque
 5 brevī tempore ad fānum ex urbe tōtā concurritur. Hōram



GIRGENTI (AGRIGENTUM), TEMPLE

amplius iam in dēmōliendō signō permultī hominēs mō-
 liēbantur; illud intereā nullā labābat ex parte, cum aliī
 vectibus subiectīs cōnārentur commovēre, aliī dēligātum
 omnibus membrīs rapere ad sē fūnibus. Ac repente Agri-
 10 gentīnī concurrunt; fit magna lapidātiō; dant sēsē in
 fugam istīus praeclārī imperātōris nocturnī militēs. Duo
 tamen sigilla perparvola tollunt, nē omnīnō inānēs ad istum
 praedōnem religiōnum revertantur. Numquam tam male
 est Siculīs quān aliquid facētē et commodē dīcant, velut in

hāc rē aiēbant in labōrēs Herculis nōn minus hunc immā-
nissimum verrem quam illum aprum Erymanthium referri
oportere.

*Henna described, as a highly venerated sanctuary of Ceres and
Proserpina, in the center of the island*

XLVIII. Vetus est haec opīniō, iūdicēs, quae cōstat ex 106
antīquissimīs Graecōrum litterīs ac monumentīs, īnsulam 5
Siciliam tōtam esse Cererī et Līberae cōsecrātam. Hoc
cum cēterae gentēs sīc arbitrantur, tum ipsīs Siculīs ita per-
suāsū est ut in animīs eōrum īnsitū atque innātū esse
videātur. Nam et nātās esse hās in iīs locīs deās et frūgēs
in eā terrā prīmum repertās esse arbitrantur, et raptam esse 10
Liberam, quam eandem Prōserpinam vocant, ex Hennē-
sium nemore; quī locus, quod in mediā est īnsulā situs,
umbilīcus Siciliae nōminātur. Quam cum investigāre et
conquīrere Cerēs vellet, dīcitur īnflammāsse taedās iīs igni-
bus quī ex Aetnae vertice ērumpunt; quās sibi cum ipsa 15
praeferret, orbem omnem peragrāsse terrārum. Henna 107
autem, ubi ea quae dīcō gesta esse memorantur, est locō
perexcelsō atque ēditō, quō in summō est aequāta agrī
plānitiēs et aquae perennēs, tōta vērō ab omnī aditū cir-
cumcīsa atque dērēcta est; quam circā lacūs lūcīque sunt 20
plūrimī atque laetissimī flōrēs omnī tempore annī, locus
ut ipse raptum illum virginis, quem iam ā puerīs accē-
pimus, dēclārāre videātur. Etenim prope est spēlunca
quaedam conversa ad aquilōnem, īnfīnitā altitūdine, quā
Dītem patrem ferunt repente cum currū exstitisse abrep- 25
tamque ex eō locō virginem sēcum asportāsse, et subitō
nōn longē ā Syrācūsīs penetrāsse sub terrās, lacumque in
eō locō repente exstitisse; ubi ūsque ad hoc tempus Syrā-
cūsānī fēstōs diēs anniversāriōs agunt celeberrimō virōrum

mulierumque conventū. XLIX. Propter huius opīniōnis
 vetustātem, quod hōrum in hīs locīs vestīgia ac prope in-
 cūnābula reperiuntur deōrum, mīra quaedam tōtā Siciliā
 prīvātim ac públicē religiō est Cereris Hennēnsis. Etenim
 5 multa saepe prōdigia vim eius nūmenque dēclārant; mul-
 tīs saepe in difficillimīs rēbus praesēns auxilium eius oblā-
 tum est, ut haec īnsula ab eā nōn solum diligī, sed etiam
 10 incolī cūstōdīrīque videātur. Nec solum Siculī, vērum
 etiam cēterae gentēs nātiōnēsque Hennēnsem Cererem
 10 maximē colunt. Etenim sī Athēniēnsium sacra summā
 cupiditāte expetuntur, ad quōs Cerēs in illō errōre vēnisse
 dīcitur frūgēsque attulisse, quantam esse religiōnem con-
 venit eōrum apud quōs eam nātam esse et frūgēs invēnisse
 cōstat? Itaque apud patrēs nostrōs atrōcī ac difficilī reī
 15 públicae tempore, cum Tiberiō Gracchō occīsō magnōrum
 periculōrum metus ex ostentīs portenderētur, P. Mūciō L.
 Calpurniō cōsulibus, aditum est ad librōs Sibyllīnōs; ex
 quibus inventum est Cererem antīquissimam plācārī opor-
 tēre. Tum ex amplissimō conlēgiō decemvirālī sacerdōtēs
 20 populī Rōmānī, cum esset in urbe nostrā Cereris pul-
 cherrimum et magnificentissimum templum, tamen ūsque
 Hennam profectī sunt. Tanta enim erat auctōritās et
 vetustās illīus religiōnis, ut, cum illūc īrent, nōn ad aedem
 24 Cereris, sed ad ipsam Cererem proficīscī vidērentur.

Missing, a statue of Ceres, a statuette of Victory

109 Non obtundam diūtius; etenim iam dūdum vereor nē
 ōrātiō mea aliēna ab iūdiciorum ratiōne et ā cotīdiānā dī-
 cendī cōsuētūdine esse videātur. Hoc dīcō, hanc ipsam
 Cererem, antīquissimam, religiōsissimam, prīncipem om-
 nium sacrōrum quae apud omnīs gentīs nātiōnēsque fiunt,
 30 ā C. Verre ex suis templīs ac sēdibus esse sublātam. Quī

accessistis Hennam, vīdistis simulācrum Cereris ē marmore et in alterō templō Līberae. Sunt ea perampla atque praeclāra, sed nōn ita antīqua. Ex aere fuit quoddam modicā amplitūdine ac singulārī opere, cum facibus, perantīquum, omnium illōrum quae sunt in eō fānō multō antīquissimū; id sustulit. Ac tamen eō contentus nōn fuit. Ante aedem Cereris in apertō ac prōpatulō locō signa duo sunt, Cereris ūnum, alterum Triptolemī, pulcherrima ac perampla. Hīs pulchritūdō perīculō, amplitūdō salūtī fuit, quod eōrum dēmōlitiō atque asportātiō perdifficilis vidēbātur. Insistēbat in manū Cereris dextrā grande simulācrum pulcherrimē factum Victōriae; hoc iste ē signō Cereris āvellendum asportandumque cūrāvit.

*My own testimony as to the sorrow of the people of Henna.
Even revolted slaves were more humane than Verres*

L. Quī tandem istīus animus est nunc in recordātiōne scelerum suōrum, cum ego ipse in commemorātiōne eōrum nōn solum animō commovear, vērū etiam corpore perhorrēscam? Venit enim mihi fānī, locī, religiōnis illīus in mentem; versantur ante oculōs omnia, diēs ille quō, cum ego Hennam vēnissem, praestō mihi sacerdotēs Cereris cum īfulīs ac verbēnīs fuērunt, cōntiō conventusque cīvium, in quō ego cum loquerer, tantī gemitūs flētūsque fīēbant ut acerbissimus tōtā urbe lūctus versārī vidērētur. Nōn illī decumārum imperia, nōn bonōrum dīreptiōnēs, nōn inīqua iūdicia, nōn importūnās istīus libīdinēs, nōn vim, nōn contumēliās, quibus vexatī oppressīque erant, conquerēbantur: Cereris nūmen, sacrōrum vetustātem, fānī religiōnem istīus scelerātissimī atque audācissimī suppliciō expiārī volēbant; omnia sē cētera patī ac negligere dīcē-

bant. Hic dolor erat tantus ut Verrēs alter Orcus vēnisse Hennam et nōn Prōserpinam asportāsse, sed ipsam abri-
 puisse Cererem vidērētur. Etenim urbs illa nōn urbs vidē-
 tur, sed fānum Cereris esse; habitāre apud sēsē Cererem
 5 Hennēnsēs arbitrantur, ut mihi nōn cīvēs illiūs cīvītātis,
 sed omnēs sacerdotēs, omnēs accolae atque antistitēs Cere-
 112 ris esse videantur. Hennā tū simulācrum Cereris tollere
 audēbās? Hennā tū dē manū Cereris Victōriam ēripere
 et deam deae dētrahere cōnātus es? quōrum nihil violāre,
 10 nihil attingere ausi sunt in quibus erant omnia quae scelerī
 propiōra sunt quam religiōnī. Tenuērunt enim P. Popiliō
 P. Rupiliō cōsulis illum locum servī, fugitivī, barbarī,
 hostēs; sed neque tam servī illī dominōrum quam tū libīdi-
 num, neque tam fugitivī illī ab dominīs quam tū ab iūre et
 15 ab lēgibus, neque tam barbarī linguā et nātiōne illī quam
 tū nātūrā et mōribus, neque tam illī hostēs hominibus quam
 tū dīs immortalibus. Quae dēprecātiō est igitur eī reliqua
 quī indignitāte servōs, temeritāte fugitivōs, scelere bar-
 19 barōs, crūdēlitāte hostēs vīcerit?

*Last of all, Syracuse. Captured by the humane Marcellus, it
 suffered far worse under Verres*

115 LII. Vñius etiam urbis omnium pulcherrimae atque
 ōrnātissimae, Syrācūsārum, dīreptiōnem commemorābō et
 in medium prōferam, iūdicēs, ut aliquandō tōtam huius
 generis ōrātiōnem conclūdā atque dēfīniam. Nēmō ferē
 vestrum est quīn quem ad modum captae sint ā M. Mārcellō
 25 Syrācūsae saepe audierit, nōn numquam etiam in annālibus
 lēgerit. Cōnferte hanc pācem cum illō bellō, huius prae-
 tōris adventum cum illiūs imperātōris victōriā, huius co-
 hortem impūram cum illiūs exercitū invictō, huius libīdinēs

cum illius continentia: ab illō quī cēpit conditās, ab hōc
 quī cōstitutās accēpit captās dīcētis Syrācūsās. Ac iam 116
 illa omittō quae dispersē ā mē multīs in locīs dīcentur ac
 dicta sunt: forum Syrācūsānōrum, quod introitū Mārcellī
 pūrum ā caede servātum est, id adventū Verris Siculōrum 5



SYRACUSE FROM THE THEATER

innocentium sanguine redundāsse; portum Syrācūsānō-
 rum, quī tum et nostrīs classibus et Carthāginiēnsium
 clausus fuisset, eum istō praetōre Cilicum myoparōnī
 praedōnibusque patuisse; mittō adhibitam vim ingenuīs,
 mātres familiās violātās, quae tum in urbe captā commissa 10
 nōn sunt neque odiō hostilī neque licentiā militārī neque
 mōre bellī neque iūre victōriae; mittō, inquam, haec omnia
 quae ab istō per triennium perfecta sunt: ea quae con-
 iūcta cum illīs rēbus sunt dē quibus antea dīxī cognōscite.

The great city of Syracuse described

117 Urbem Syracūsās maximam esse Graecārum, pulcherri-
mam omnium saepe audistis. Est, iudicēs, ita ut dicitur.
Nam et sitū est cum mūnītō tum ex omnī aditū, vel terrā
vel marī, praeclārō ad aspectum, et portūs habet prope in
5 aedificātiōne ample-
xūque urbis inclūsōs;
quī cum dīversōs in-
ter sē aditūs habeant,
in exitū coniunguntur
10 et cōfluunt. Eōrum
coniūctiōne pars op-
pidī, quae appellātur



ARETHUSA

Insula, marī dīiūncta angustō, ponte rūsus adiungitur et
118 continētur. LIII. Ea tanta est urbs, ut ex quattuor urbibus
15 maximīs cōnstāre dīcātur; quārum ūna est ea quam dīxī
Insula, quae duōbus portibus cīncta, in utriusque portūs
ōstium aditumque prōiecta est; in quā domus est quae
Hierōnis rēgis fuit, quā praetōrēs ūtī solent. In eā sunt
aedēs sacrae complūrēs, sed duae quae longē cēterīs ante-
20 cellant, Diānae, et altera, quae fuit ante istīus adventum
ōrnātissima, Minervae. In hāc insulā extrēmā est fōns
aquae dulcis, cui nōmen Arethūsa est, incrēdibilī magnitū-
dine, plēnissimus piscium, quī flūctū tōtus operīrētur, nisi
119 mūnītiōne ac mōle lapidum dīiūnctus esset ā marī. Altera
25 autem est urbs Syracūsīs, cui nōmen Achradīna est; in
quā forum maximum, pulcherrimae porticūs, ōrnātissimum
prytanīum, amplissima est cūria templumque ēgregium
Iovis Olympīi cēteraeque urbis partēs, quae ūnā viā lātā
perpetuā multisque trānsversīs dīvisae prīvātīs aedificiīs
30 continentur. Tertia est urbs quae, quod in eā parte For-

tūnae fānum antīquum fuit, Tycha nōmināta est; in quā gymnasium amplissimum est et complūrēs aedēs sacrae, coliturque ea pars et habitātur frequentissimē. Quārta autem est quae, quia postrēma coaedificāta est, Neāpolis nōminātur; quam ad summam theātrum maximum, prae-
 tereā duo templa sunt ēgregia, Cereris ūnum, alterum Līberae signumque Apollinis, quī Temenītēs vocātur, pulcherrimum et maximum; quod iste sī portāre potuisset, nōn dubitāset auferre.

9

Marcellus' treatment of works of art when he captured the city

LIV. Nunc ad Mārcellum revertar, nē haec ā mē sine
 causā commemorāta esse videantur. Quī cum tam prae-
 clāram urbem vī cōpiisque cēpisset, nōn putāvit ad laudem
 populī Rōmānī hoc pertinēre, hanc pulchritūdinem, ex quā
 praesertim periculī nihil ostenderētur, dēlēre et extin-
 guere. Itaque aedificiīs omnibus, pūblicīs prīvātīs, sacrīs
 profānīs, sīc pepercit quasi ad ea dēfendenda cum exercitū,
 nōn oppugnanda vēnisset. In ōrnātū urbis habuit victōriae

rationem, habuit hū-
 mānitātis; victōriae
 putābat esse multa
 Rōmam dēportāre
 quae ōrnāmētō urbī
 esse possent, hūmā-
 nitātis nōn plānē ex-
 spoliāre urbem, prae-



SYRACUSE

sertim quam cōservāre voluisset. In hāc partitīōne
 ōrnātūs nōn plūs victōria Mārcellī populō Rōmānō appeti-
 vit quam hūmānitās Syrācūsānīs reservāvit. Rōmam quae
 apportāta sunt, ad aedem Honōris et Virtūtis itemque aliīs

in locīs vidēmus. Nihil in aedibus, nihil in hortīs posuit,
 nihil in suburbānō; putāvit, sī urbis ōrnāmenta domum
 suam nōn contulisset, domum suam ōrnāmentō urbī futū-
 ram. Syrācūsīs autem permulta atque ēgregia relīquit;
 5 deum vērō nūllum violāvit, nūllum attigit. Cōnferte Ver-
 rem, nōn ut hominem cum homine comparētis, nē qua tālī
 virō mortuō fīat iniūria, sed ut pācem cum bellō, lēgēs cum
 vī, forum et iūris dictiōnem cum ferrō et armīs, adventum
 9 et comitātum cum exercitū et victōriā cōnferātis.

*The Temple of Minerva plundered by Verres, who removed the
 historical paintings*

122 LV. Aedis Minervae est in Īnsulā, dē quā ante dīxī;
 quam Mārcellus nōn attigit, quam plēnam atque ōrnātam
 relīquit; quae ab istō sīc spoliāta atque dīrepta est, nōn ut
 ab hoste aliquō, quī tamen in bellō religiōnum et cōnsuē-
 tūdinis iūra retinēret, sed ut ā barbarīs praedōnibus vexāta
 15 esse videātur. Pugna erat equestris Agathoclī rēgis in
 tabulīs pīcta praeclārē; hīs autem tabulīs interiōrēs templī
 parietēs vestiēbantur. Nihil erat eā pīctūrā nōbilius, nihil
 Syrācūsīs quod magis vīsendum putārētur. Hās tabulās
 M. Mārcellus, cum omnia victōria illa sua profāna fēcisset,
 20 tamen religiōne impedītus nōn attigit; iste, cum illa iam
 propter diūturnam pācem fidēlitātemque populī Syrācūsānī
 sacra religiōsaque accēpisset, omnīs eās tabulās abstulit;
 parietēs, quōrum ōrnātūs tot saecula mānserant, tot bella
 123 effūgerant, nūdōs ac dēfōrmātōs relīquit. Et Mārcellus,
 25 quī, sī Syrācūsās cēpisset, duo templa sē Rōmae dēdicātū-
 rum vōverat, is id quod erat aedificātūrus eīs rēbus ōrnāre
 quās cēperat nōluit: Verrēs, quī nōn Honōrī neque Virtūtī,
 quem ad modum ille, sed Venerī et Cupīdinī vōta dēbēret,

is Minervae templum spoliāre cōnātus est. Ille deōs deō-
rum spoliis ōrnārī nōluit: hic ōrnāmenta Minervae virginis
in meretrīciam domum trānstulit. Vīgintī et septem prae-
tereā tabulās pulcherrimē pīctās ex eādem aede sustulit;
in quibus erant imāginēs Siciliae rēgum ac tyrannōrum, 5
quae nōn solum pīctōrum artificiō dēlectābant, sed etiam
commemorātiōne hominum et cognitiōne fōrmārum. Ac
vidēte quantō taetrior hic tyrannus Syrācūsānis fuerit
quam quisquam superiōrum: quod, cum illī tamen ōrnā-
rint templa deōrum immortalium, hic etiam illōrum monu- 10
menta atque ōrnāmenta sustulerit.

The doors stripped of their ornaments. The bamboo poles

LVI. Iam vērō quid ego dē valvīs illīus templī comme- 124
morem? Vereor nē haec quī nōn viderint omnia mē nimis
augēre atque ōrnāre arbitrentur; quod tamen nēmō sus-
picārī dēbet, tam esse mē cupidum ut tot virōs prīmariōs 15
velim, praesertim ex iūdicum numerō, quī Syrācūsīs fue-
rint, quī haec viderint, esse temeritātī et mendaciō meō
cōnsciōs. Cōnfīrmāre hoc liquidō, iūdicēs, possum, valvās
magnificentiōrēs, ex aurō atque ebore perfectiōrēs, nūllās
umquam ūllō in templō fuisse. Incrēdibile dictū est quam 20
multī Graecī dē hārum valvārum pulchritūdine scrīptum
relīquerint. Nimium forsitan haec illī mīrentur atque
efferant; estō; vērum tamen honestius est reī pūblīcae nos-
trae, iūdicēs, ea quae illis pulchra esse videantur imperā-
tōrem nostrum in bellō relīquisse quam praetōrem in pāce 25
abstulisse. Ex ebore dīligentissimē perfecta argūmenta
erant in valvīs; ea dētrahenda cūrāvit omnia. Gorgonis
ōs pulcherrimum, cīnctum anguibus, revellit atque abstu-
lit; et tamen indicāvit sē nōn solum artificiō, sed etiam

pretiō quaestūque dūcī; nam bullās aureās omnīs ex eīs
 valvīs, quae erant multae et gravēs, nōn dubitāvit auferre;
 quārum iste nōn opere dēlectābātur, sed pondere; itaque
 eius modī valvās reliquit ut, quae ōlim ad ōrnandum tem-
 5 plum erant maximē, nunc tantum ad claudendum factae
 125 esse videantur. Etiamne grāmineās hastās (vīdī enim vōs
 in hōc nōmine, cum testis dīceret, commovērī), quod erat
 eius modī ut semel vīdisse satis esset, in quibus neque manū
 factum quicquam neque pulchritūdō erat ūlla, sed tantum
 10 magnitūdō incrédibilis, dē quā vel audīre satis esset,
 nimium vidēre plūs quam semel—etiam id concupīstī?

*From the town hall a Sappho was taken, the base and inscription
 being left behind*

126 LVII. Nam Sapphō, quae sublāta dē prytanīō est, dat
 tibi iūstam excūsatiōnem, prope ut concēdendum atque
 ignōscendum esse videātur. Sīlāniōnis opus tam perfec-
 15 tum, tam ēlegāns, tam ēlabōrātum quisquam nōn modo
 prīvātus, sed populus potius habēret quam homō ēlegantis-
 simus atque ērudītissimus, Verrēs? Nīmīrum contrā dīcī
 nihil potest. Nostrum enim ūnus quisque, quī tam beātī
 quam iste est nōn sumus, tam dēlicātī esse nōn possumus,
 20 sī quandō aliquid istīus modī vidēre volet, eat ad aedem
 Fēlicitātis, ad monumentum Catulī, in porticum Metellī,
 det operam ut admittātur in alicuius istōrum Tusculānum;
 spectet forum ōrnātum, sī quid iste suōrum aedīlibus
 commodārit: Verrēs haec habeat domī, Verrēs ōrnāmentīs
 25 fānōrum atque oppidōrum habeat plēnam domum, villās
 refertās. Etiamne huius operārī studia ac dēliciās, iūdicēs,
 perferētis, quī ita nātus, ita ēducātus est, ita factus et
 animō et corpore ut multō appositior ad ferenda quam ad

auferenda signa esse videātur? Atque haec Sapphō sub- 127
lāta quantum dēsīderium suī relīquerit, dīcī vix potest.
Nam cum ipsa fuit ēgregiē facta, tum epigramma Graecum
pernōbile incīsum est in basī; quod iste ērudītus homō et
Graeculus, quī haec subtiliter iūdicat, quī sōlus intellegit, 5
sī ūnam litteram Graecam scīssset, certē nōn sustulisset;
nunc enim quod scrīptum est inānī in basī dēclārat quid
fuerit, et id ablātum indicat.

*Other statues, sacred or celebrated. Lesser works. Guides have
now a different task*

Quid? signum Paeānis ex aede Aesculāpī praeclārē fac-
tum, sacrum ac religiōsum, nōn sustulistī, quod omnēs 10
propter pulchritūdinem vīsere, propter religiōnem colere
solēbant? Quid? ex aede Līberī simulācrum Aristaeī nōn 128
tuō imperiō palam ablātum est? Quid? ex aede Iovis re-
ligiōsissimum simulācrum Iovis Imperātōris, quem Graecī
Vrion nōminant, pulcherrimē factum nōnne abstulistī? 15
Quid? ex aede Liberae aprīnum caput illud pulcherrimum,
quod vīsere solēbāmus, num dubitāstī tollere? Atque ille
Paeān sacrificiīs anniversariīs simul cum Aesculāpiō apud
illōs colēbātur; Aristaeus, quī inventor oleī esse dīcitur,
ūnā cum Līberō patre apud illōs eōdem erat in templō 20
cōnsecrātus. LVIII. Iovem autem Imperātōrem quantō 129
honōre in suō templō fuisse arbitrāminī? Conicere potes-
tis, sī recordārī voluerītis quantā religiōne fuerit eādem
speciē ac fōrmā signum illud, quod ex Macedoniā captum
in Capitoliō posuerat Flāminīnus. Etenim tria ferēbantur 25
in orbe terrārum signa Iovis Imperātōris ūnō in genere
pulcherrimē facta: ūnum illud Macedonicum quod in Ca-
pitoliō vīdimus; alterum in Pontī ōre et angustiīs, tertium

quod Syrācūsīs ante Verrem praetōrem fuit. Illud Flāminius ita ex aede suā sustulit ut in Capitōliō, hoc est in
 130 terrestrī domiciliō Iovis pōneret. Quod autem est ad introitum Pontī, id, cum tam multa ex illō marī bella ēmerse-
 5 rint, tam multa porrō in Pontum invecta sint, ūsque ad hanc diem integrum inviolātumque servātum est. Hoc tertium, quod erat Syrācūsīs, quod M. Mārcellus armātus et victor vīderat, quod religiōnī concesserat, quod cīvēs atque incolae colere, advenae nōn solum vīsere vērū
 10 etiam venerārī solēbant, id Verrēs ex templō Iovis sustulit.
 131 Vt saepius ad Mārcellum revertar, iūdicēs, sīc habētōte: plūrīs esse ā Syrācūsānīs istius adventū deōs quam victoriā Mārcellī hominēs dēsīderātōs. Etenim ille requisīsse etiam dīcitur Archimēdem illum, summō ingeniō hominem
 15 ac disciplinā, quem cum audīssset interfectum, permolestē tulisse: iste omnia quae requisīvit, nōn ut cōservāret, vērū ut asportāret, requisīvit. LIX. Iam illa quae leviōra vidēbuntur ideō praeterībō: quod mēnsās Delphicās ē marmore, crātērās ex aere pulcherrimās, vim
 20 maximam vāsōrum Corinthiōrum ex omnibus aedibus sacrīs abstulit Syrācūsīs. Itaque, iūdicēs, eī quī hospitēs ad ea quae vīsenda sunt solent dūcere et ūnum quidque ostendere,—quōs illī mystagōgōs vocant,—conversam iam habent dēmōnstrātiōnem suam. Nam, ut ante dēmōnstrābant
 132 quid ubīque esset, item nunc quid undique ablātum sit ostendunt.

Seriousness of such losses to Greeks. Sales are incredible. Policy of our ancestors. Nothing can compensate

Quid tum? mediocrīne tandem dolōre eōs adfectōs esse arbitrāminī? Nōn ita est, iūdicēs; primum quod omnēs religiōne moventur, et deōs patriōs quōs ā maiōribus ac-

cēpērunt colendōs sibi dīligenter et retinendōs esse arbitrantur; deinde hic ōrnātus, haec opera atque artificia, signa, tabulae pīctae Graecōs hominēs nimiō opere dēlectant; itaque ex illōrum querimōniīs intellegere possumus,



APHRODITE (VENUS), PRAXITELES

haec illīs acerbissima vidērī, quae forsitan nōbīs levia et 5
contemnenda esse videantur. Mihi crēdite, iūdicēs,—tam-
etsī vōsmet ipsōs haec eadem audīre certō sciō,—cum
multās accēperint per hōsce annōs sociī atque exterae nā-
tiōnēs calamitātēs et iniūriās, nullās Graecī hominēs gra-

vius ferunt ac tulērunt quam huiusce modī spoliātiōnēs
 133 fānōrum atque oppidōrum. Licet iste dīcat ēmissee sē,
 sicutī solet dīcere, crēdite hoc mihi, iūdicēs: nūlla um-
 quam cīvītās tōtā Asiā et Graeciā signum ūllum, tabulam
 5 pīctam *ūllam*, ūllum dēnique ōrnāmentum urbis suā volun-
 tātē cuiquam vēndidit; nisi forte exīstimātis, posteaquam
 iūdicia sevēra Rōmae fierī dēsiērunt, Graecōs hominēs haec
 vēnditāre coepisse, quae tum nōn modo nōn vēnditābant,
 cum iūdicia fīēbant, vērū etiam coēmēbant; aut nisi
 10 arbitrāminī L. Crassō, Q. Scaevolae, C. Claudiō, potentis-
 simīs hominibus, quōrum aedilitātēs ōrnātissimās vīdimus,
 commercium istārum rērum cum Graecīs hominibus nōn
 fuisse; eīs quī post iūdiciorum dissolūtiōnem aedilēs factī
 134 sunt fuisse. LX. Acerbiōrem etiam scītōte esse cīvitatibus
 15 falsam istam et simulātam ēmptiōnem quam sī quī clam sur-
 rīpiat aut ēripiat palam atque auferat. Nam turpitūdinem
 summam esse arbitrantur referrī in tabulās pūblicās pretiō
 adductam cīvitatē, et pretiō parvō, ea quae accēpisset ā
 maiōribus vēndidisse atque abaliēnāsse. Etenim mīran-
 20 dum in modum Graecī rēbus istīs, quās nōs contemnimus,
 dēlectantur. Itaque maiōrēs nostrī facile patiēbantur haec
 esse apud illōs quam plūrima: apud sociōs, ut imperiō
 nostrō quam ōrnātissimī flōrentissimīque essent, apud eōs
 autem quōs vectīgālīs aut stīpendiāriōs fēcerant tamen
 25 haec relinquebant, ut illī, quibus haec iūcunda sunt quae
 nobīs levia videntur, habērent haec oblectāmenta et sōlācia
 135 servitūtis. Quid arbitrāminī Rēgīnos, quī iam cīvēs Rō-
 mānī sunt, merēre velle ut ab eīs marmorea Venus illa au-
 ferātur? quid Tarentīnōs, ut Eurōpam in taurō āmittant,
 30 ut Satyrum quī apud illōs in aede Vestae est, ut cētera?
 quid Thespiēsēs ut Cupīdinis signum, propter quod ūnum
 vīsuntur Thespieae? quid Cnidiōs ut Venerem marmoream,

quid ut pīctam, Cōōs? quid Ephesiōs ut Alexandrum, quid Cyzicēnōs ut Aiācem aut Mēdēam, quid Rhodiōs ut Iāl̄ysum? quid Athēniēnsēs, ut ex marmore Iacchum aut Paralum pīctum aut ex aere Myrōnis būculam? Longum est et nōn necessārium commemorāre quae apud quōsque 5 vīsenda sunt tōtā Asiā et Graeciā; vērū illud est quam ob rem haec commemorem, quod exīstimāre hoc vōs volō, mīrum quendam dolōrem accipere eōs ex quōrum urbibus haec auferantur.



EMBLEMA (IN PATERA)

SELECTED LETTERS

FOR RAPID OR SIGHT READING

INTRODUCTORY NOTE¹

IN CICERO'S time letters were carried by a messenger (*tabellārius*), often a slave, or were intrusted to someone who happened to be traveling in the desired direction. Until the time of Augustus there was no public post, and that was for official business only. Correspondence was therefore an expensive luxury. But the absence of newspapers,² and the need of information about affairs, even in distant provinces, made frequent communication an absolute necessity to certain classes and to particular individuals.

A letter was commonly written with pen and ink on Egyptian papyrus paper.³ It did not begin with an address, a date, and a "My dear . . .," but with a heading in which the writer's name (nominative) was followed by that of the person addressed (dative),⁴ with some form of conventional greeting, usually abbreviated, as *S.* or *Sal.* (*salutem dicit*), etc. The later custom of a *Valē* ("Farewell"), or its equivalent, at the end of the letter was not

¹ With this should be read *Introd.* § 104.

² Cæsar's bulletin, the *Acta Diurna*, was often multiplied by private copyists and sent to a distance.

³ Short communications were often written with a style on wax tablets (*tabellae*). Cp. the letters mentioned in the Third Oration against Catiline.

⁴ Official titles were added, on occasion, to one or both names.

yet established in Cicero's time, except for members of one's household. Messages of regard might be found at the close, but an abrupt ending was common. No signature was appended, as a seal sufficed. Place and date,¹ when given, were put at the very end.

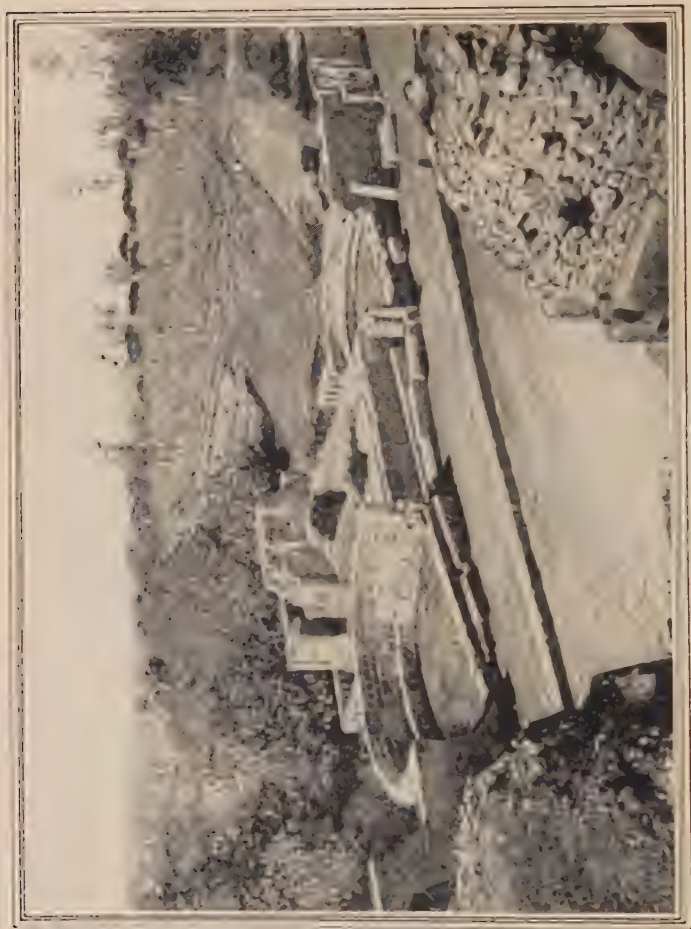
The paper was then rolled up, tied with a cord, and sealed with a ring. Finally it was given² into the hands of the messenger, who in many cases was also to bring back a reply.³

As no letters of Cicero written during his consulship have been preserved, we begin our selection with his exile, while Cæsar was opening his first campaign in Gaul; cp. *Introd.* § 88.

¹For the Roman calendar cp. *Gram.* §§ 300 ff. The ablative, or less commonly locative, was used for the place.

²To the wording *data* (sc. *est* and *epistula*), followed by place, day, and month, we owe our word *date*.

³The *tabellārius* still survives in the diplomatic courier, in England (until recently) called the "king's messenger."



A ROMAN ROAD AT POMPEII

EPISTVLAE SELECTAE

1 (AD ATTICVM, III, 8)¹

CICERO ATTICO SAL.

The anxieties of an exile, recently arrived at Thessalonica

Brundisiō proficiscēns scripseram ad tē quās ob causās 1
in Ēpīrum nōn essēmus profectī, quod et Achāia prope
esset plēna audācissimōrum inimicōrum et exitūs difficilis
habēret, cum inde proficiscerēmur. Accessit, cum Dyr-
rhachī essēmus, ut duo nūntiī adferrentur,² ūnus classe 5
frātre[m] Ephesō Athēnās, alter pedibus³ per Macedoniam
venīre. Itaque illī obviam mīsīmus Athēnās, ut inde Thes-
salonīcam venīret. Ipsī prōcessīmus et Thessalonīcam
a.d. X Kal. Iūniās vēnimus, neque dē illius itinere quic-
quam certī habēbāmus nisi eum ab Ephesō ante aliquantō 10
profectum. Nunc istīc⁴ quid agātur magnō opere timeō⁵; 2
quamquam tū alterā epistulā scribis Īdibus Maiīs audīrī⁶
fore ut ācrius postulārētur,⁷ alterā iam esse mītiora.⁸ Sed
haec est prīdiē data quam illa, quō conturber magis.
Itaque cum meus mē maeror cotīdiānus lacerat et cōn- 15
ficit, tum vērō haec addita cūra vix mihi vītā[m] reliquam

1

¹ May, 58 B.C., at Thessalonī'ca.
Obliged to leave Italy, he had
crossed the Adriatic and the Balkan
Peninsula.

² The clause is subj. of *accessit*;
moreover . . . were brought to me.

³ I.e. *by land*.

⁴ At Rome.

⁵ With indir. quest.

⁶ *that it is (was) rumored.*

⁷ Meaning a severer bill, with
further penalties.

⁸ Things were quieting down.

facit. Sed et nāvigātiō perdifficilis fuit, et ille, incertus ubi ego essem, fortasse alium cursum petīvit. Nam Phaëthō libertus eum nōn vīdit.⁹ Ventō reiectus ab Īliō in Macedoniam Pellae mihi praestō fuit.¹⁰ Reliqua quam
 5 mihi timenda sint videō, nec quid scrībam habeo,¹¹ et omnia timeō, nec tam miserum est quicquam quod nōn in nostram fortūnam cadere videātur. Equidem adhūc miser in maximīs meīs aerumnīs et lūctibus hōc metū adiectō
 9 maneō Thessalonīcae suspēsus nec audeō quicquam. . . .
 4 Mē et meōrum malōrum memoria et metus dē frātre in scrībendō impedit.¹² Tū ista¹³ omnia vidē et gubernā. Terentia tibi maximās grātiās agit. Litterārum exemplum quās ad Pompeium scrīpsī mīsī tibi.¹⁴ Data IIII Kal. Iūniās Thessalonīcae.

2 (ATT. III, 21)¹

CICERO ATTICO SAL.

No letters!

15 Trīgintā diēs erant² ipsī, cum hās dabam³ litterās, per quōs nullās ā vōbīs accēperam.³ Mihi autem erat in animō iam, ut antea ad tē scrīpsī, ire in Ēpīrum et ibi omnem cāsum potissimum⁴ exspectāre. Tē ōrō ut, sī quid erit

⁹ Phaëtho had not found Quintus in Athens.

¹⁰ Driven from his course by a storm, Phaëtho was unable to reach Ephesus, and had landed in Macedonia before Marcus reached Thessalonica.

¹¹ I.e. *nesciō quid*.

¹² He fears that Quintus may suffer, too.

¹³ I.e. *my interests there* (meaning at Rome).

¹⁴ *am sending you*. The inclosure has not been preserved.

2

¹ October, 58 B.C., Thessalonica.

² Epistolary tense, *it has been*.

³ Epistolary tense.

⁴ Modifying *ibi*, *there preferably*.



W. H. POUND & CO., 30 BOSTON

quod perspicīās quamcumque in partem,⁵ quam plānissimē ad mē scribās et meō nōmine,⁶ ut scribis,⁷ litterās, quibus putābis opus esse, ut dēs.⁸ Data V Kal. Novembrīs.

3 (EPIST. XIV, 1)¹

TVLLIVS TERENTIAE SVAE, TVLLIOLAE SVAE,
CICERONI SVO S. D.

To think of your troubles! My fault

Et litterīs multōrum et sermōne omnium perfertur ad mē **1**
incrēdibilem tuam virtūtem et fortitūdinem esse tēque nec **5**
animī neque corporis labōribus dēfetīgārī. Mē miserum!
tē istā virtūte, fidē, probitāte, hūmānitāte in tantās aerum-
nās propter mē incidisse,² Tulliolamque nostram, ex quō
patre tantās voluptātēs capiēbat, ex eō tantōs percipere²
lūctūs! Nam quid ego dē Cicerōne dīcam?³ quī cum prī- **10**
mum sapere coepit,⁴ acerbissimōs dolōrēs miserīasque per-
cēpit. Quae sī, tū ut scribis, 'fātō facta' putārem, ferrem
paulō facilius; sed omnia sunt meā culpā commissa, quī ab
iīs mē amārī putābam quī invidēbant, eōs nōn sequēbar quī **14**
petēbant.⁵ Quod sī nostrīs cōsiliīs ūsī essēmus, neque **2**
apud nōs tantum valuisset sermō aut stultōrum⁶ amīcōrum
aut improbōrum,⁷ beātissimī vīverēmus. Nunc,⁸ quoniam

⁵ I.e. whether favorable or not.

⁶ *in my behalf.*

⁷ *as you suggest.*

⁸ *send, write.*

² Exclamatory inf.

³ With elliptical **nam** this is equivalent to *not to mention Marcus junior.*

⁴ The son was now seven years old.

⁵ Esp. Cæsar.

⁶ *unwise, misguided.*

⁷ *insincere.*

⁸ *as it is.*

3

¹ November, 58 B.C., Thessalonia, but finished at Dyrrhachium (Durazzo), after returning across the Balkan Peninsula.

spērāre nōs amīcī iubent, dabō operam nē mea valētūdō tuō labōrī dēsīt.⁹ Rēs quanta sit intellegō, quantōque fuerit facilius manēre domī quam redīre; sed tamen, sī omnīs tr. pl.¹⁰ habēmus, sī Lentulum¹¹ tam studiōsum
5 quam vidētur, sī vērō etiam Pompeium et Caesarem, nōn est dēspērandum.

*The slaves. An epidemic. Cannot leave yet. Piso's devotion.
Brother Quintus*

- 3 Dē familiā¹² quō modō placuisse scrībīs amīcīs faciēmus. Dē locō¹³ nunc quidem iam abiit pestilentia, sed quam diū fuit mē nōn attigit. Plancius, homō officiōsissimus, mē
10 cupit esse sēcum et adhūc retinet.¹⁴ Ego volēbam locō magis dēsertō esse in Ēpīrō, quō neque Pīsō venīret nec mīlītēs,¹⁵ sed adhūc Plancius mē retinet; spērat posse fierī ut mēcum in Italiam dēcēdat.¹⁶ Quem ego diem sī vīderō et sī in vestrum complexum vēnerō ac sī et vōs et
15 mē ipsum reciperārō, satis magnum mihi frūctum vidēbor percēpisse et vestrae pietātis et meae.
- 4 Pīsōnis¹⁷ hūmānitās, virtūs, amor in omnīs nōs tantus est ut nihil suprā possit. Vtinam ea rēs eī voluptātī sit! glōriae quidem videō fore. Dē Quīntō frātre nihil ego tē
20 accūsāvī, sed vōs, cum praesertim tam paucī sītis, voluī

⁹ I.e. *fail to support*.

¹⁰ tribūnōs plebis.

¹¹ Lentulus Spinther was a consul elect, and friendly to Cicero.

¹² as for the slaves.

¹³ as for (this) place.

¹⁴ Cicero's host, Plancius, was quæstor of the province.

¹⁵ The escort of the incoming governor, L. Piso.

¹⁶ leave for Italy; the special phrase for a retiring official, returning from his post.

¹⁷ A different Piso (viz. Gaius), Tullia's husband, who died before Cicero could return.

esse quam coniūctissimōs. Quibus mē voluistī agere 5
grātiās ēgī et mē ā tē certiōrem factum esse scrīpsī.

*Financial difficulties at home. My distress. Think of our son.
Write. A postscript*

Quod¹⁸ ad mē, mea Terentia, scrībis¹⁸ tē vīcum¹⁹ vēndi-
tūram, quid, obsecrō tē, mē miserum! quid futūrum
est? ²⁰ et sī nōs premet eadem fortūna, quid puerō miserō 5
fiet? Nōn queō reliqua scrībere; tanta vīs lacrimārum
est; neque tē in eundem flētum addūcam; tantum scrībō:
Sī erunt in officiō²¹ amīcī, pecūnia nōn dērit; sī nōn erunt,
tū efficere tuā pecūniā nōn poteris. Per fortūnās miserās
nostrās, vidē nē puerum perditum perdāmus;²² cui sī ali- 10
quid erit nē egeat, mediocrī²³ virtūte opus est et mediocrī
fortūnā, ut cētera cōsequātur. Fac valeās et ad mē tabel- 6
lāriōs mittās, ut sciam quid agātur et vōs quid agātis.²⁴
Mihi omnīnō iam brevis exspectātiō est.²⁵ Tulliolae et
Cicerōnī salūtem dīc. Valēte. D. a. d. VI K. Decembr. 15
Dyrrhachī.

Dyrrhachium vēnī quod et libera cīvītās est et in mē 7
officiōsa et proxima Italiae; sed sī offendet mē locī cele-
britās,²⁶ aliō mē cōferam, ad tē scrībam.

¹⁸as for your writing.

¹⁹a row of houses (or a village).

²⁰will become of you.

²¹Equivalent to an adj., loyal.

²²A strong expression, utterly
ruin.

²³only average, no more than
average.

²⁴how you are (all) getting on,
including Tullia, her husband, Piso,
and little Marcus.

²⁵He will not have so long to
wait for news, here at Dyrrhachium.

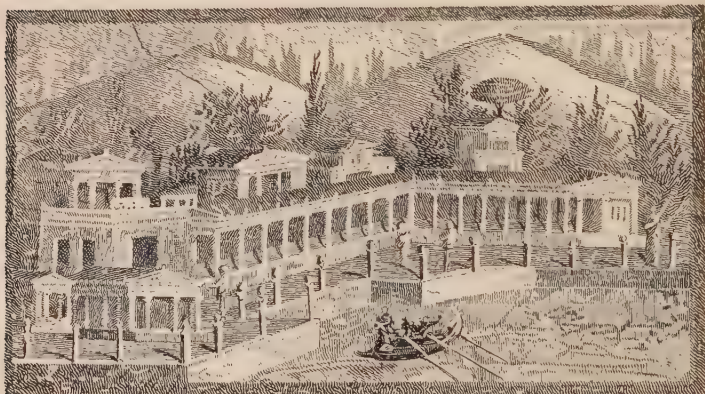
²⁶As being on a main line of
communication between Italy and
the East.

4 (AD QUINTUM FRATREM, II, 5)¹

MARCUS QUINTO FRATRI SALVTEM

Tullia's betrothal. Your son. A family jar. Work on your new house. Itinerary of my proposed journey

- 1 Dederam² ad tē litterās antea quibus erat scriptum Tulliam nostram Crassipedi pr. Nōn. April. esse despōsam,³ cēteraque dē rē publicā prīvātāque perscripseram.² . . .



A VILLA (POMPEIAN FRESCO)

- 2 Exitūrus a.d. VIII Idūs Aprīlīs spōnsālia⁴ Crassipedi
5 praeuī. Huic convīviō puer optimus, Quīntus tuus meus-
que, quod perleviter commōtus⁵ fuerat, dēfuit. A.d. VII
Idūs Aprīlīs venī ad Quīntum eumque vidī plānē integrum,
multumque is mēcum sermōnem habuit et perhūmānum

4

¹ April, 56 B.C., Rome, just before starting on a journey along the Via Latina.

² Epistolary tense.

³ Her first husband, Piso, had died the year before.

⁴ betrothal feast, two days after the engagement.

⁵ indisposed.

dē discordiīs mulierum nostrārum.⁶ Quid quaeris? nihil fēstīvi-⁷us. Pompōnia autem etiam dē tē questa est; sed haec cōram agēmus. Ā puerō ut discessī, in āream tuam⁸ 3 vēnī. Rēs agēbātur multīs strūctōribus. Longilium redēptōrem⁹ cohortātus sum. Fidem mihi faciēbat sē velle 5 nōbīs placēre. Domus erit ēgregia; magis enim cernī iam poterat quam quantum ex fōrmā¹⁰ iūdicābāmus; itemque nostra celeriter aedificābātur. . . .

A.d. VI Īdūs Aprīl. ante lūcem hanc epistolam cōn- 4 scrīpsī eramque¹¹ in itinere ut eō diē¹² apud T. Titium in 10 Anagnīnō manērem,¹³ postrīdiē autem in Lateriō cōgitābam,¹⁴ inde, cum in Arpīnātī quīnque diēs fuīsem,¹⁵ īre in Pompeiānum, rediēns aspicere Cūmānum,¹⁶ ut, quoniam in Nōnās Maiās Milōnī diēs prōdicta est,¹⁷ prīdiē Nōnās Rōmae essem tēque, mī cārissime et suāvissime frāter, ad eam 15 diem, ut spērābam, vidērem. Aedificātiōnem Arcānī ad 5 tuum adventum sustentārī¹⁸ placēbat. Fac, mī frāter, ut valeās quam primumque veniās.

⁶ Pomponia, Quintus' wife (Atticus' sister), and Terentia.

⁷ The small boy's account of Mother's falling out with Aunt Terentia was entertaining: *no one has a merrier wit.*

⁸ *your lot.* Both brothers were building new houses.

⁹ *contractor.*

¹⁰ *drawing, design, plan,* by the architect.

¹¹ Epistolary tense.

¹² = *hodiē.* Pronouns, as well as tenses, may be changed to suit the time of delivery.

¹³ *spend the night in the region (ager) of Anagnia, or on his estate near Anagnia (about forty miles from Rome).*

¹⁴ Sc. *manēre.* Laterium was an estate of Quintus, near Arpinum.

¹⁵ This would be fut. perf. in dir. disc. A longer stay at the birthplace.

¹⁶ He had a villa near Cumae, and another near Pompeii.

¹⁷ *has been postponed.* Milo had been accused by Clodius of fomenting violence.

¹⁸ *be held up, delayed.* Arca'num was another retreat of Quintus.

5 (AD QUINT. FRAT. II, 12)¹

MARCUS QUINTO FRATRI SALVTEM

Two letters received; have missed the others. Am working on my book. I'll tutor your son myself. Remember my instructions. Shall write often. I commend to you the bearer

- 1 Duās adhūc ā tē accēpī epistulās; quārum alteram in
ipsō discessū nostrō, alteram Ariminō datam,² plūrīs quās
scrībīs tē dedisse nōn accēperam.³ Ego mē in Cūmānō et
Pompeiānō, praeter quam quod sine tē,⁴ cēterum satis com-
5 modē oblectābam³ et eram³ in īsdem locīs ūsque ad
K. Iūniās futūrus. Scrībēbam³ illa quae dīxeram πολιτικά,⁵
spissum⁶ sānē opus et operōsum; sed sī ex sententiā suc-
cesserit, bene erit opera posita, sīn minus, in illud ipsum
mare dēiciēmus quod spectantēs⁷ scrībimus, adgrediēmur
10 alia, quoniam quīēscere nōn possumus.
- 2 Tua mandāta persequar dīligenter et adiungendīs homi-
nibus⁸ et quibusdam⁹ nōn aliēnandīs; maximae mihi vērō
cūrae erit ut Cicerōnem tuum nostrumque¹⁰ videam scīlicet
cotīdiē, sed īnspeciam quid discat quam saepissimē et, nisi
15 ille contemnet, etiam magistrum mē eī profitēbor, cuius
reī nōn nūllam cōsuētūdinem nactus sum in hōc hōrum
3 diērum ōtiō Cicerōne nostrō minōre prōdūcendō.¹¹ Tū,

5

¹ May, 54 B.C., from his villa near Cumae (or that near Pompeii), to Quintus, who was one of Cæsar's legati in Gaul.

² Written just as Quintus was about to enter Cisalpine Gaul via Ariminum (a dozen miles from the Rubicon).

³ Epistolary tense.

⁴ Sc. eram.

⁵ A neut. plur. (πολιτικά'), the *de Re Publica*.

⁶ slow, tedious; lit. thick, dense.

⁷ in full view of which.

⁸ I.e. partisans of Cæsar.

⁹ Pompey and his intimates.

¹⁰ Quintus' son.

¹¹ In *helping along* his own son in his studies, Cicero has gained an experience which may be of service to Quintus junior.

quem ad modum scrībis, quod etiam sī nōn scrīberēs, facere tē dīligentissimē tamen sciēbam,¹² faciēs scīlicet ut mea mandāta dīgerās,¹³ persequāre, cōficiās. Ego cum Rōmam vēnerō, nūllum praetermittam Caesaris tabellārium cui litterās ad tē nōn dem.¹⁴ Hīs diēbus (ignōscēs) cui 5 darem fuit nēmō ante hunc M. Orfium, equitem Rōmānum, nostrum et per sē necessārium¹⁵ et quod est ex mūnicipiō Ātellānō, quod scīs esse in fidē nostrā.¹⁶ Itaque eum tibi commendō in maiōrem modum,¹⁷ hominem domī splendīdum, grātiōsum etiam extrā domum; quem fac ut tuā 10 liberālitate tibi obligēs. Est tribūnus mīlitum in exercitū vestrō. Grātum hominem observantemque¹⁸ cognōscēs. Trebātium¹⁹ ut valdē amēs vehementer tē rogō.

6 (EPIST. VII, 9)¹

CICERO TREBATIO

No letters! no means of reaching you. Have not written to Cæsar. Exert yourself

Iam diū ignōrō quid agās; nihil enim scrībis; neque ego 1 ad tē hīs duōbus mēnsibus scrīpseram.² Quod cum Quīntō 15 frātre meō nōn erās, quō mitterem aut cui darem nesciēbam. Cupiō scīre quid agās et ubi sīs hiemātūrus; equidem velim

¹² = sciērem, but it is a more positive form of unreal conclusion.

¹³ set in order, arrange, before presenting to Cæsar.

¹⁴ Cæsar's courier would carry officers' mail as well.

¹⁵ friend, or protégé.

¹⁶ under my protection. He was the patron of the town of Atella, between Capua and Naples.

¹⁷ in the warmest manner.

¹⁸ considerate, attentive.

¹⁹ A young, but intimate, friend of Cicero.

¹ September or October, 54 B.C., Rome. Trebatius was a lawyer, now serving on Cæsar's staff.

² = scrīpsī.

cum Caesare,³ sed ad eum propter eius *lūctum* nihil sum
 2 ausus scribere;⁴ ad Balbum⁵ tamen scripsi. Tū tibi dēsse⁶
 nōlī; sērius potius ad nōs, dum plēnior.⁷ . . .

7 (EPIST. VII, 17)¹

CICERO TREBATIO S.

*Am glad you are less homesick and more active. A change of
 plan. Have recommended you to Cæsar. Be patient. Your best
 opportunity. Glad you did not go to Britain*

1 Ex tuīs litterīs et Quīntō frātrī grātiās ēgī et tē ali-
 5 quāndō conlaudāre possum, quod iam vidēris certā aliquā in
 sentiā cōstitisse.² Nam prīmōrum
 mēsum litterīs tuīs vehementer com-
 movēbar, quod mihi interdum (pāce tuā
 dīxerim³) levis in urbis urbānitātisque
 10 dēsīderiō, interdum piger, interdum ti-
 midus in labōre mīlitārī, saepe autem
 etiam, quod ā tē aliēnissimum est, sub-
 impudēns⁴ vidēbāre. . . .



CÆSAR

2 Itaque quoad opīnātus sum mē in prōvinciam exitūrum,⁵
 15 quae ad tē ultrō dētulerim meminisse tē crēdō.⁶ Postea

³The verb is to be repeated from above. The situation in Gaul was serious enough to keep Cæsar there all this winter.

⁴Even a letter of condolence might seem an intrusion. Cæsar's daughter Julia (Pompey's wife) had recently died.

⁵Balbus served Cæsar as a political manager.

⁶= *desse*.

⁷*enriched*; sc. *redeās*.

¹October, 54 B.C., Rome.

²I.e. *to have arrived at some settled purpose*.

³Potential. A polite formula: *with all due respect*.

⁴I.e. *a bit presumptuous*, with your unreasonable expectations.

⁵He was to have gone out as *legatus*, with Pompey.

⁶The offer was, to take Trebatius with him.

quam ea mutāta ratiō est, cum vidērem mē ā Caesare
honōrificentissimē trāctārī et ūnicē diligī hominisque
liberālītatē incrēdibilem et singulārem fidem nōssem, sīc
eī tē commendāvī et trādidī, ut gravissimē diligentissimē-
que potuī. Quod ille ita⁷ et accēpit et mihi saepe litterīs 5
significāvit et tibi et verbīs et rē ostendit meā commendā-



CÆSAR

tīōne sēsē valdē esse commōtum.⁸ Hunc
tū virum nactus, sī mē aut sapere aliquid
aut velle tuā causā putās, nē dīmiserīs⁹
et, sī quae tē forte rēs aliquandō of- 10
fenderit, cum ille aut occupātiōne aut
difficultāte tardior tibi erit vīsus, per-
fertō et ultima expectātō; quae ego
tibi iūcunda et honesta praestābō.¹⁰ 14

Plūribus¹¹ tē hortārī nōn dēbeō; tantum 3
moneō, neque amīctīae cōnfīrmandae clārissimī ac libe-
rālissimī virī neque ūberioris¹² prōvinciae neque aetātis
magis idōneum tempus,¹³ sī hoc amīserīs, tē esse ūllum
umquam repertūrum. 'Hoc,' quem ad modum vōs scrībere
solētis in vestrīs librīs, 'idem Q. Cornēliō vidēbātur.'¹⁴ In 20
Britanniam tē profectum nōn esse gaudeō, quod et labōre
caruistī et ego tē dē rēbus illīs nōn audiam.¹⁵ Vbi sīs hī-
bernātūrus et quā spē aut condiōne perscrībās ad mē
velim.

⁷ *in the same spirit.*

⁸ *influenced.*

⁹ *let him go; i.e. by resigning
and coming home.*

¹⁰ *will guarantee.*

¹¹ *Sc. verbīs.*

¹² *very rich.*

¹³ *a greater opportunity for (lit.
of,—amīctīae, etc.) . . . or as re-*

*gards either . . . or your age. Note
the genitive constructions.*

¹⁴ *He is making fun of lawyers'
learned citations. The reference is
to Trebatius' own teacher.*

¹⁵ *shall not (have to) hear your
stories. Quintus Cicero did go with
Caesar on this second expedition to
Britain, but not Trebatius.*

8 (AD QUINT. FRAT. III, 8)¹

MARCUS QUINTO FRATRI SALVTEM

Relieved by recent letter. Take courage; the gain will not be small. Be careful what you say in letters. How am I to send to you? Shall finish that poem for Cæsar. A funeral

1 Superiōrī epistulae quod respondeam nihil est, quae plēna stomachī² et querēlārum est, quō in genere alteram quoque tē scribis prīdiē Labiēnō dedisse, quī adhūc nōn vēnerat.³ Dēlēvit enim mihi omnem molestiam recentior
5 epistula.⁴ Tantum tē et moneō et rogō ut in istīs molestiīs et labōribus et dēsideriīs recordēre cōsiliū nostrum quod fuerit profectiōnis tuae.⁵ Nōn enim commoda quaedam sequēbāmur parva ac mediocria. Quid enim erat quod
10 discessū nostrō emendū putārēmus? Praesidium fīrmis-
simū petēbāmus ex optimī et potentissimī virī benevo-
lentiā ad⁶ omnem⁷ statum nostrae dignitātis.⁸ . . .

2 Etiam illud tē admoneō nē quid ūllīs litterīs committās, quod sī prōlātum sit, molestē ferāmus. Multa sunt quae ego nescīre mālō quam cum aliquō periculō fierī certior.⁹
15 Plūra ad tē vacuō animō scribam cum, ut spērō, sē Cicerō meus bellē habēbit.¹⁰ Tū velim cūrēs ut sciam quibus nōs dare oporteat eās quās ad tē deinde litterās

8

¹The end of November, 54 B.C., Rome. In this winter Quintus distinguished himself by a heroic defense of his camp on the Sabis (Sambre).

²vexation, irritation.

³Epistolary tense. In fact, Labienus remained in Gaul.

⁴A third letter (the second one received).

⁵I.e. in your going to the army in Gaul.

⁶for; i.e. in order to maintain.
⁷general.

⁸Their political standing and influence were involved.

⁹Their enemies would be sure to make the most of any indiscreet statement coming from the front.

¹⁰gets well.

mittēmus, Caesarisne tabellāriīs, ut is ad tē prōtinus mittat,¹¹ an Labiēnī. Vbi enim istī sint Nervii et quam longē absint nesciō.¹²

Dē virtūte et gravitatē Caesaris, quam in summō dolōre 3 adhibuisset,¹³ magnam ex epistulā tuā accēpi voluptātem. 5 Quod mē institūtum ad illum¹⁴ poēma¹⁵ iubēs perficere, etsi distentus cum operā tum animō sum multō magis, tamen quoniam ex epistulā quam ad tē miseram cognōvit Caesar mē aliquid esse exōrsus, revertar ad institūtum idque perficiam hīs supplicātiōnum ōtiōsīs diēbus.¹⁶ . . . 10

Serrānī Domesticī fili fūnus perlūctuōsum fuit a.d. 5 VIII K. Decembr. Laudāvit pater scriptō meō.¹⁷ . . Om- 6 nia ferē scripsī. Cūrā, mī cārissime frāter, ut valeās.

9 (Att. V, 14)¹

CICERO ATTICO SAL.

No time for letters. A hot journey. Shall reach my province soon. News from the province. My reception here in Asia. Plans. Keep me posted

Ante quam aliquō locō cōnsēderō, neque longās ā mē 1 neque semper meā manū litterās exspectābis; cum autem 15 erit spatium, utrumque praestābō.² Nunc iter cōficiē-

¹¹ forward.

¹² Evidently he has no map of northern Gaul.

¹³ Add you tell me, to show that Quintus had said so (note mood).

¹⁴ in his honor.

¹⁵ The poem was an epic on the conquest of Gaul and Britain.

¹⁶ The thanksgiving was decreed for Cæsar's victories. The poem

was probably sent to Cæsar soon after this.

¹⁷ from my manuscript. Cicero had written the speech for him.

9

¹ End of July, 51 B.C., Tralles (Asia Minor), southeast of Ephesus. Cicero is on the way to his province.

² shall perform or guarantee.

bāmus³ aestuōsā et pulverulentā viā. Dederam³ Ephesō
 prīdiē; hās dedī Trallibus. In prōvinciā meā fore mē
 putābam³ Kal. Sextīlibus.⁴ . . . Intereā tamen haec mihi
 quae vellem adferēbantur,³ primum ōtium Parthicum, dein
 5 cōfectae pactiōnēs pūblicānōrum, postrēmō sēditiō mili-
 tum sēdāta ab Appiō⁵ stīpendiumque eīs ūsque ad Īdūs
 Quīntīlīs⁶ persolūtum.⁷

2 Nōs Asia accēpit admīrābiliter. Adventus noster nē-
 minī *nē* minimō quidem fuit sūmptuī. Spērō meōs omnīs
 10 servīre laudī meae. Tamen magnō timōre sum,⁸ sed bene
 spērāmus. Omnēs iam nostrī praeter Tullium⁹ tuum vērē-
 runt. Erat³ mihi in animō rēctā proficiscī ad exercitum,
 aestīvōs mēnsīs reliquōs rei militārī dare, hībernōs iūris
 14 dictiōnī.

3 Tū velim, sī¹⁰ mē nihilō minus nōstī cūriōsum in rē
 pūblicā¹¹ quam tē, scrībās ad mē omnia quae sint, quae
 futūra sint. Nihil mihi grātius facere potes; nisi tamen id
 erit mihi grātissimum, sī quae tibi mandāvī cōfēceris.
 . . . Habēs epistulam plēnam festīnātiōnis et pulveris;
 20 reliquae subtīliōrēs¹² erunt.

³ Epistolary tense.

⁴ The month later named after Augustus.

⁵ Cicero's predecessor.

⁶ The month named, seven years later, *Iulius*.

⁷ I.e. *payment in full*. Principle, where we use verbal noun and *of*; note same use in *cōnfec-*

tae and *sēdāta* (*the suppression of, etc.*).

⁸ He fears an invasion from Parthia.

⁹ A friend of Atticus.

¹⁰ = *sī quidem, since*; not a true condition.

¹¹ *in public affairs*.

¹² *more detailed (precise)*.

10 (EPIST. XV, 9)¹

M. CICERO PROCOS. S. D. M. MARCELLO COS.

Congratulations on your cousin's election. Please see that my term is not prolonged. Later about the Parthians

Tē et pietātis in tuōs et animī in rem p.² et clārissimī
 atque optimī cōsulātūs C. Mārcellō cōsule factō frūc-
 tum³ cēpisse vehementer gaudeō. Nōn dubitō quid prae-
 sentēs sentiant; nōs quidem longinquī et ā tē ipsō missī in
 ultimās gentīs ad caelum mehercule tē tollimus vērissimīs
 ac iūstissimīs laudibus. Nam cum⁴ tē ā pueritiā tuā ūnicē
 dīlēxerim tūque mē in omnī genere semper amplissimum
 esse et voluerīs et iūdicārīs, tum⁵ hōc vel tuō factō vel
 populī R.⁶ dē tē iūdiciō⁷ multō ācrius vehementiusque dī-
 ligō maximāque laetitiā adficior, cum⁸ ab hominibus prū-
 dentissimīs virīsque optimīs omnibus dictīs, factīs, studiīs,
 institūtīs⁹ vel mē tuī similem esse audiō vel tē meī. Vnum
 vērō sī addis ad praeclārissimās rēs cōsulātūs tuī, ut aut
 mihi succēdat quam primum aliquis, aut nē quid accēdat
 temporis ad id quod tū mihi et senātūs c.¹⁰ et lēge finīstī,
 omnia mē per tē cōsecūtum putābō. Cūrā ut valeās et
 mē absentem diligās atque dēfendās.

Quae mihi dē Parthīs nūntiāta sunt, quia nōn putābam 3

10

¹ September, 51 B.C., in camp at Cybistra, in Cappadocia. Cicero is in command of two legions. It was in M. Marcellus' name that Cicero delivered his oration *pro Marcello*, five years later, when the consul of this year was pardoned by Cæsar and recalled from exile.

² *pūblicam*. The whole phrase = *patriotism*.

³ *reward*; viz. in the election of his cousin Gaius.

⁴ *while, whereas*.

⁵ *in particular*.

⁶ *Rōmānī*.

⁷ I.e. Gaius' election may have been due to popular approval of his cousin.

⁸ *whenever*.

⁹ *pursuits*.

¹⁰ *cōsultō*.

ā mē etiam nunc scrībenda esse pūblicē,¹¹ proptereā nē prō familiāritāte quidem nostrā voluī ad tē scrībere,¹² nē, cum ad cōsulem scrīpsissem, pūblicē vidērer scrīpsisse.

11 (EPIST. II, 10)¹

M. CICERO IMP. S. D. M. CAELIO AEDILI CVRVLI
DESIGNATO

Strange absence of letters. Mine too may have miscarried. My expedition along Mt. Amanus; victory; am saluted as imperator at Issus. A siege now in progress. No further fear from Parthia this year. See that my stay here is not prolonged

1 Tū vidē quam ad mē litterae nōn perferantur; nōn enim
5 possum addūcī ut abs tē, postea quam aedilis es factus, nūllās putem datās, praesertim cum esset tanta rēs tantae grātulātiōnis. . . . Atquī sīc habētō, nūllam mē epistulam accēpisse tuam post comitia ista praeclāra, quae mē laeti-
tiā extulērunt; ex quō vereor nē idem ēveniat in meās
10 litterās.² Equidem numquam domum mīsī ūnam epistu-
lam quīn esset ad tē altera, nec mihi est tē iūcundius quic-
quam³ nec cārius.⁴ Sed . . . ad rem redeāmus.

2 Vt optāstī, ita est; vellēs⁵ enim, ais, tantum modo ut habērem negōtī quod esset ad laureolam satis;⁶ Parthōs
15 timēs, quia diffīdis cōpiīs nostrīs. Ergō ita accidit; nam Parthicō bellō nūntiātō locōrum quibusdam angustīis et

¹¹ *officially, in a formal report.*

¹² *I.e. informally, as to a friend.*

³ *Equivalent to neque quisquam = et nēmō.*

⁴ *They were very intimate, although Caelius was twenty-three years younger.*

⁵ *Would be velim in dir. disc.*

⁶ *I.e. enough for something of a triumph.*

11

¹ November, 51 B.C., in camp in Cilicia, while besieging a stronghold on Mt. Amanus (north of Antioch).

² For the usual dat.

nātūrā montium frētus ad Amānum exercitum addūxī
 satis probē ōrnātum auxiliīs et quādam auctōritāte apud
 eōs, quī mē nōn nōrant, nōminis nostrī; multum est enim
 in hīs locīs: ‘Hicine est ille quī urbem’⁷—? quem senā-
 tus⁸—?’ nōstī cētera. Cum vēnissem ad Amānum, quī 5
 mōns mihi cum Bibulō⁹ commūnis est, dīvīsus aquārum
 dīvortiīs,¹⁰ Cassius noster,¹¹ quod mihi magnae voluptātī
 fuit, fēliciter ab Antiōchiā hostem reiēcerať, Bibulus prō-
 vinciam accēperat. Intereā cum meīs cōpiīs omnibus ve- 3
 xāvī Amāniēnsīs, hostīs sempiternōs; multī occīsī, captī, 10
 reliquī dissipātī; castella mūnīta imprōvisō adventū capta
 et incēnsa. Ita victōriā iūstā¹² imperātor appellātus apud
 Issum,¹³ quō in locō, saepe ut ex tē audīvī, Clītarchus¹⁴
 tibi nārrāvit Dārēum ab Alexandrō esse superātum,¹⁵
 abdūxī exercitum ad īnfestissimam Ciliciae partem. Ibi 15
 quīntum et vīcēsimum iam diem aggeribus, vīneīs, turri-
 bus oppugnābam¹⁶ oppidum mūnītissimum, Pindenissum,
 tantīs opibus tantōque negōtiō ut mihi ad summam glō-
 riam nihil dēsīt nisi nōmen oppidī. Quod sī, ut spērō, 19
 cēperō,¹⁷ tum vērō litterās pūblicē mittam; haec ad tē in 4
 praesentī scrīpsī, ut spērārēs tē adsequī id quod optāssēs.
 Sed ut redeam ad Parthōs, haec aestās habuit hunc exitum
 satis fēlicem; ea quae sequitur magnō est in timōre.¹⁸ Quā
 rē, mī Rūfe, vigilā, prīmum ut mihi succēdātur; sīn id

⁷Sc. servāvit.

⁸patrem patriae appellāvit, or
 the like.

⁹Governor of Syria.

¹⁰This *watershed* constituted
 the frontier between these two
 provinces.

¹¹He was proquæstor in Syria,
 and later one of Cæsar’s assassins.

¹²*substantial, real.*

¹³At the extreme northeastern
 angle of the Mediterranean.

¹⁴The Greek historian who ac-
 companied Alexander.

¹⁵The Persians were defeated at
 Issus, 333 B.C.

¹⁶= oppugnō.

¹⁷The place was taken later,
 after a siege of fifty-six days.

¹⁸I.e. *causes great anxiety.*

erit, ut scrībīs et ut ego arbitror, spissius,¹⁹ illud quod facile est, nē quid mihi temporis prōrogētur.²⁰ Dē rē pūblicā ex tuīs litterīs, ut antea tibi scrīpsī, cum praesentia tum etiam futūra magis expectō. Quā rē ut ad mē omnia quam
5 dīligentissimē perscrībās tē vehementer rogō.

12 (EPIST. II, 12)¹

M. CICERO IMP. S. D. M. CAELIO AEDILI CVRVLI

Eager for news from Rome. Wish I had never left it and your company! Enough of triumphs!

1 Sollicitus equidem eram² dē rēbus urbānīs; ita tumultuōsae cōtiōnēs, ita molestae Quīnquatrūs³ adferēbantur (nam citeriōra⁴ nōndum audiēbāmus); sed tamen nihil mē magis sollicitābat quam in iīs molestiīs nōn mē, sī quae
10 rīdenda essent, rīdēre tēcum; sunt enim multa, sed ea nōn audeō scrībere. Illud molestē ferō, nihil mē adhūc hīs dē rēbus habēre tuārum litterārum. Quā rē etsī, cum tū haec legēs, ego iam annum mūnus cōnfēcero,⁵ tamen obviae mihi velim sint tuae litterae, quae mē ērudiant dē
15 omnī rē pūblicā, nē hospes plānē veniam. Hoc melius quam tū facere nēmō potest. . . .

2 Urbem, urbem, mī Rūfe, cole⁶ et in istā lūce vīve; omnis peregrīnātiō,⁷ quod ego ab adulēscentiā iūdicāvī,

¹⁹I.e. a very tedious (or difficult) matter.

²⁰Lit. be prolonged, extended.

festival was troubled (molestae) by friction between Cæsar's supporters and those of Pompey.

⁴Here of time.

⁵He had arrived in his province on July 31.

⁶I.e. stay in, reside in.

⁷absence abroad, including foreign service.

12

¹June, 50 B.C., from Cilicia.

²Note epistolary tense.

³the festival of Minerva; freely, spring recess (March 19-23). The

obscura et sordida est iis quorum industria Rōmae potest inlūstris⁸ esse. Quod cum probē scīrem, utinam in sententiā permānsissem! Cum unā mehercule ambulatiunculā⁹ atque unō¹⁰ sermōne nostrō omnīs fructūs prōvinciae 4 nōn cōferō. Spērō mē integritātis laudem cōsecūtum¹⁰; 3 nōn erat minor ex contemnendā¹¹ quam est ex cōservatā prōvincia. 'Spem triumphī?'¹² inquis. Satis glōriōsē triumphāram;¹³ nōn essem quidem tam diū in dēsideriō rerum mihi cārissimārum. Sed, ut spērō, propediem¹⁴ tē vidēbō; tū mihi obviam mitte epistulās tē dignās. 10

13 (ATT. VI, 4)¹

CICERO ATTICO SAL.

*Difficulties of a retiring governor. Who is to be left in charge?
Tullia's betrothal. Honors for me. Yours in haste*

Tarsum vēnimus Nōnīs Iūniīs. Ibi mē multa mōvērunt, 1 magnum in Syriā bellum,² magna in Ciliciā latrōcinia,³ mihi difficilis ratiō⁴ administrandī, quod paucōs diēs habēbam reliquōs annuī mūneris, illud⁵ autem difficillimum,

⁸Showing by contrast that *obscura* meant *under a cloud, lost to the public eye*.

⁹*stroll*.

¹⁰Sc. *esse*.

¹¹I.e. *the refusal of*. He had declined a province upon the expiration of his consulship.

¹²Sc. *cōsecūtus es*.

¹³Implying that he might have been contented with that return from exile in triumph (figuratively speaking).

¹⁴*at an early day, soon*.

13

¹June, 50 B.C., on the march, at or near Tarsus (Cilicia).

²With the invading Parthians. Cicero was asked by the governor of Syria to lend aid, and massed troops near his own frontier.

³*cases of brigandage*. The Taurus Mountains had a bad reputation for bandits.

⁴*situation, stage, phase*.

⁵In appos. with what follows, *and then (a most difficult matter this)*.

relinquendus erat⁶ ex senātūs cōsultō quī praeesset. Nihil minus probārī poterat⁷ quam quaestor Mescinius. Nam dē Caeliō⁸ nihil audiēbāmus. Rēctissimum vidēbātur frā-trem cum imperiō relinquere; in quō multa molesta,
 5 discessus⁹ noster, bellī periculum, mīlitum improbitās, ses-centa¹⁰ praetereā. Ō rem tōtam odiōsam! Sed haec for-tūna vīderit,¹¹ quoniam cōsiliō nōn multum ūtī licet.

2 Tū quandō Rōmam salvus, ut spērō, vēnistī, vidēbis, ut solēs, omnia quae intellegēs nostrā interesse, imprīmīs dē
 10 Tulliā meā, cuius dē condiōne¹² quid mihi placēret scrīpsī ad Terentiā, cum tū in Graeciā essēs; deinde dē honōre¹³ nostrō. Quod enim tū āfuistī, vereor ut satis dīligenter āctum in senātū sit dē litterīs meīs. . . .

3 Nōn queō tantum quantum vereor scrībere; tū autem
 15 fac ut mihi tuae litterae volent obviae. Haec festīnāns scrīpsī in itinere atque agmine. Piliae et puellae Caeciliae bellissimae salūtem dīcēs.¹⁴

⁶Better active in Eng.; i.e. *I must leave*.

⁷Note epistolary tense.

⁸as for CÆLIUS (emphasis representing the effect of elliptical nam). This new and belated quaestor, Caelius Caldus, is not to be confused with Caelius Rufus, of Letters 11-12.

⁹separation.

¹⁰I.e. a hundred (as merely a round number). Quintus, in fact, declined, and Caelius Caldus was left in charge.

¹¹Fut. perf., where we use fut. or may.

¹²marriage. Tullia, who was divorced from her second husband, Furius Crassipes, married Dolabella about this time,—another unhappy marriage, to which her father was at first opposed.

¹³The *supplicatio*, already voted in his honor; he has not had the news.

¹⁴He sends his love to Atticus' wife and little daughter, who was also called Attica.

14 (EPIST. XIV, 5)¹

TVLLIVS S. D. TERENCE SVAE

A letter from you at Athens in twenty days. Others all accounted for. Friends inform me of the danger of war. Meet me on the road. Soon in Italy

Sī tū et Tullia, lūx nostra, valētis, ego et suāvissimus 1
Cicerō valēmus.² Pr. Īdūs Oct. Athēnās vēnimus, cum
sānē adversīs ventīs ūsī essēmus³ tardēque et incommodē
nāvīgāssēmus. Dē nāve exeuntibus nōbīs Acastus⁴ cum lit-
terīs praestō fuit ūnō et vīcēsīmō diē sānē strēnuē.⁵ Accēpī 5
tuās litterās, quibus intellēxī tē verērī nē superiōrēs mihi
redditae nōn essent. Omnēs sunt redditae, dīligentissi-
mēque ā tē perscrīpta sunt omnia,⁶ idque mihi grātissimum
fuit. Neque sum admīrātus hanc epistolam, quam Acas-
tus attulit, brevem fuisse; iam enim mē ipsum expectās 10
sīve nōs ipsōs, quī quidem quam prīmum ad vōs venīre
cupimus, etsī in quam⁷ rem p.⁸ veniāmus intellegō. Cog-
nōvī enim ex multōrum amīcōrum litterīs, quās attulit
Acastus, ad arma rem spectāre, ut mihi, cum vēnerō, dissi-
mulāre nōn liceat quid sentiam.⁹ Sed quoniam subeunda 15
fortūna est, eō citius dabimus operam ut veniāmus, quō
facilius dē tōtā rē dēliberēmus. Tū velim, quod commodō¹⁰

14

¹October, 50 B.C., Athens, on the way home from Cilicia.

²The sentence follows a type common in the opening words of letters.

³*had met with.*

⁴A slave of Cicero.

⁵He had made good time from Rome to Athens.

⁶*all the news.*

⁷= *quālem*; the danger of civil war was more and more evident. Hostilities actually began in the following January.

⁸*pūblicam.*

⁹He is no longer able to remain neutral.

¹⁰*advantage, interest, etc.; abl. of accordance.*

valētūdinis tuae fīat,¹¹ quam longissimē poteris obviam nōbīs prōdeās.¹² . . .

- 2 Nōs, sī diī adiuvābunt, circiter Īdūs Nov. in Italiā spērāmus fore. Vōs,¹³ mea suāvissima et optātissima Terentia, sī nōs amātis, cūrāte ut valeātis. Valē. Athēnīs a.d. XVII K. Novemb.

15 (EPIST. XVI, 1)¹

TVLLIVS TIRONI SVO S. P. D. ET CICERO MEVS ET FRATER ET FRATRIS F.

Sorry we yielded and left you behind. Wish you to overtake us as soon as possible; but you must do what is best for yourself

- 1 Paulō facilius putāvī posse mē ferre dēsīderium tuī, sed plānē nōn ferō et, quamquam magnī ad honōrem² nostrum interest quam prīmum ad urbem mē venīre, tamen peccāsse
10 mihi videor quī ā tē discesserim;³ sed quia tua voluntās ea⁴ vidēbātur esse, ut prōrsus nisi cōfīrmātō corpore nōllēs⁵ nāvīgāre, approbāvī tuum cōsiliū neque nunc mūtō, sī tū in eādem es sententiā; sīn autem, postea quam

¹¹ Restrictive clause, *so far as may be consistent with*, etc. We prefer a condition,—*if consistent*.

¹² I.e. down the Appian Way, toward Brundisium.

¹³ Including Tullia.

15

¹ Early November, 50 B.C., on shipboard, off the west coast of Greece, some forty miles from Patræ, where Tiro, the faithful secretary, had been left behind on account of illness.

² The triumph which he hopes the senate will award him for his campaign in Cilicia. In reality, he reached Rome just before the war began, and never received the honor of a triumph.

³ Causal clause, equiv. to *in parting from you*.

⁴ Pred., *this*, to be explained by what follows; attracted in gender to *voluntās*.

⁵ Strengthened by *prōrsus*, *entirely, utterly*; appos. clause, to which *ea* leads up.

cibum cēpistī,⁶ vidēris⁷ tibi posse mē cōsequī, tuum cōn-
siliū⁸ est.⁷ Mariōnem⁹ ad tē eō mīsī ut aut tēcūm ad mē
quam primum venīret aut, sī tū morārēre, statim ad mē
redīret. Tū autem hoc tibi persuādē, sī commodō¹⁰ valētū- 2
dinis tuae fierī possit, nihil mē mālle quam tē esse mēcūm; 5
sī autem intellegēs opus esse tē Patrīs convalēscendī causā
paulum commorārī, nihil mē mālle quam tē valēre. Sī
statim nāvigās,⁷ nōs Leucade¹¹ cōsequēre; sīn tē cōfīr-
māre vīs, et comitēs et tempestātēs et nāvem idōneam ut
habeās dīligenter vidēbis.¹² Vnum illud, mī Tīrō, vidētō, 10
sī mē amās, nē tē Mariōnis adventus et hae litterae mo-
veant. Quod valētūdīnī tuae maximē condūcet sī fēceris,
maximē obtemperāris voluntātī meae. Haec prō tuō in- 3
geniō cōnsiderā. Nōs ita tē dēsīderāmus ut amēmus¹³;
amor ut valentem videāmus hortātur, dēsīderium ut quam 15
primum; illud igitur potius.¹⁴ Cūrā ergō potissimum ut
valeās. Dē tuīs innumerābilibus in mē officiīs erit hoc
grātissimum. III Nōn. Nov.

⁶Fut. perf. would be expected in a less familiar letter. Tiro had been unable to take food.

⁷Pres: for fut., as frequently in conversation.

⁸*your own question, or for you to decide.* He might overtake the party at Leucas or Corcyra.

⁹A slave of Cicero.

¹⁰*consistently with* (lit. *in accordance with the advantage*).

¹¹One of the Ionian islands, lying north of Ithaca.

¹²Mild command, with *ut*-clause as obj.

¹³With an unselfish love; implying *love you more*.

¹⁴Sc. *fac* (illud = *the former*)

16 (EPIST. XVI, 7)¹

TVLLIVS ET CICERO S. D. TIRONI SVO

Detained here by head winds. No letters from you. Take care of yourself, and come as soon as may be

Septimum iam diem Corcȳrae tenēbāmur,² Quīntus autem pater et fīlius Būthrōtī.³ Sollicitī erāmus⁴ dē tuā valētūdine mīrum in modum nec mīrābāmur⁴ nihil ā tē lītterārum⁵; iīs enim ventīs istīm⁶ nāvigātur, quī sī essent, 5 nōs Corcȳrae nōn sedērēmus. Cūrā igitur tē et cōnfīrmā et, cum commodē et per⁷ valētūdinem et per⁷ annī tempus nāvigāre poteris, ad nōs amantissimōs tuī venī. Nēmō nōs amat quī tē nōn dīligat⁸; cārus omnibus exspectātusque veniēs. Cūrā ut valeās. Etiam atque etiam, Tīrō noster, 10 valē. XV K. Dec. Corcȳrā.

16

¹ November, 50 B.C., Corcyra (Corfu).

² *have been detained.*

³ Where Atticus (the brother-in-law of Q. Cicero) had large estates; opposite Corcyra, on the coast of Epirus (Albania).

⁴ Also epistolary.

⁵ Sc. esse.

⁶ = *istinc, from where you are* (Patræ, the modern Patras). There ships were waiting for a southerly wind.

⁷ *with due regard to.*

⁸ Weaker than *amet* would be.

17 (EPIST. XIV, 14)¹

TVLLIVS TERENTIAE ET PATER TVLLIAE, DVABUS
ANIMIS SVIS, ET CICERO MATRI OPTIMAE, SVAVIS-
SIMAE SORORI S. P. D.

*You must decide whether it is safe or wise to remain at Rome.
Ask advice of friends. Write often*

Sī vōs valētis, nōs valēmus. Vestrum iam cōnsilium est,² 1
nōn solum meum, quid sit vōbīs faciendum. Sī ille³ Rō-
mam modestē⁴ ventūrus est, rēctē in praesentiā domī esse
potestis; sīn homō āmēns dīripiendam urbem datūrus est,
vereor ut Dolābella ipse satis nōbīs prōdesse possit.⁵ Etiam 5
illud metuō, nē iam interclūdāmur, ut cum velītis exīre
nōn liceat. Reliquum est quod ipsae optimē cōnsīderābitis,
vestrī similēs fēminae sintne Rōmae; sī enim nōn sunt,
videndum est ut honestē⁶ vōs esse⁷ possītis. Quō modō
quidem nunc sē rēs habet, modo ut haec nōbīs loca tenēre 10
liceat,⁸ bellissimē⁹ vel mēcum vel in nostrīs praediīs esse
poteritis. Etiam illud verendum est nē brevī tempore
famēs in urbe sit. His dē rēbus velim cum Pompōniō,¹⁰ 2

17

¹ January 23, 49 B.C., Minturnæ, on the Appian Way, in southern Latium. Cicero had reached Rome, after his long absence, on the fourth, just as civil war was about to break out. On the seventh the senate had declared martial law, whereupon Cæsar entered Italy with his troops about the eleventh and occupied Ariminum. Rome has been abandoned by Pompey, the consuls etc., and Cicero is charged with the safety of the district around Rome, and the coast of Latium.

² I.e. *you must decide*. Terentia and Tullia are to use their own judgment.

³ Cæsar.

⁴ *with moderation*. His treatment of towns on his way had shown great self-restraint.

⁵ *may not be able*. Dolabella, Tullia's husband, had left Pompey for Cæsar.

⁶ *with propriety*.

⁷ Sc. *ibi*.

⁸ *Proviso; modo ut = modo*.

⁹ = *optimē*.

¹⁰ I.e. Atticus.

cum Camillō,¹¹ cum quibus vōbīs vidēbitur, cōsiderētis, ad summam animō fortī sītis. Labiēnus¹² rem meliōrem fēcit; adiuvat etiam Pīsō, quod ab urbe discēdit et sceleris condemnat generum suum.¹³ Vōs, meae cārissimae an-
 5 mae, quam saepissimē ad mē scrībite et vōs quid agātis et quid istīc agātur. Quīntus pater et fīlius et Rūfus vōbīs s.d.¹⁴ Valēte. VIII K.¹⁵ Menturnīs.

18 (EPIST. XVI, 12)¹

TVLLIVS S. D. TIRONI SVO

My efforts for peace are unavailing. We have abandoned Rome as Cæsar advanced. Preparations for war; prospects. Labienus is now on our side

1 Quō in discrīmine versētur salūs mea et bonōrum om-
 nium atque ūniversae reī p.² ex eō scīre potes quod domōs
 10 nostrās et patriam ipsam vel dīrīpiendam vel inflamman-
 dam reliquimus. In eum locum rēs dēducta est ut, nisi quī
 deus vel cāsus aliquis subvēnerit, salvī esse nequeāmus.
 2 Equidem ut vēnī ad urbem, nōn dēstitī omnia et sentīre et
 dīcere et facere quae ad concordiam pertinērent; sed mīrus
 15 invāserat furor nōn solum improbīs, sed etiam iīs quī bonī
 habentur, ut pugnāre cuperent, mē clāmante³ nihil esse
 bellō cīvīlī miserius. Itaque cum Caesar āmentiā quādam
 raperētur et oblītus nōminis atque honōrum suōrum Arīmi-

¹¹ A lawyer friend.¹² Formerly Cæsar's best general in Gaul, now with Pompey.¹³ Cæsar, whose wife was Calpurnia, daughter of this Piso.¹⁴ salūtem dīcunt. Rufus is perhaps Cælius Rufus (176 ff.).¹⁵ Sc. Febuāriās.

18

¹ The end of January, 49 B.C., Capua. Tiro is still detained in Greece by his health and the closed season of navigation.² pūblicae.³ Concessive abl. abs., in spite of my protesting.

num, Pisaurum, Ancōnam, Arrētium⁴ occupāvisset, urbem reliquimus,⁵ quam sapienter aut quam fortiter nihil at-
tinet⁶ disputārī.⁷ Quō quidem in cāsū sīmus vidēs. . . .

Dilēctūs enim magnōs habēbāmus putābāmusque⁸ illum 4
metuere, sī ad urbem ire coepisset, nē Galliās āmitteret, 5
quās ambās habet inimicissimās praeter Trānspadānōs, ex
Hispāniāque sex legiōnēs et magna auxilia Afrāniō et
Petreiō ducibus habet ā tergō.⁹ Vidētur, sī īnsāniet, posse
opprimī, modo ut urbe salvā.¹⁰ Maximam autem plāgam¹¹
accēpit quod is quī summam auctōritātem in illiūs exer- 10
citū habēbat, T. Labiēnus,¹² socius sceleris esse nōluit.
Reliquit illum et *est* nōbīscum multīque idem factūrī esse
dīcuntur.

*My present command and probable duties. Dolabella with
Cæsar. Do not endanger your health or risk a winter voyage.
No news from you*

Ego adhūc ōrae maritimae praesum ā Formiīs.¹³ Nūllum 5
maius negōtium suscipere voluī, quō plūs apud illum meae 15
litterae cohortātiōnēsque ad pācem valērent. Sīn autem
erit bellūm, videō mē castrīs et certīs legiōnibus praefu-
tūrum. Habeō etiam illam molestiam quod Dolābella nos-
ter apud Caesarem est.¹⁴ Haec tibi nōta esse voluī; quae
cavē nē tē perturbent et impedian valētūdinem tuam. . . . 20

⁴ Southeast of Florence. The other towns were on the Adriatic.

⁵ Nine days before this letter.

⁶ *it is of no use.*

⁷ The subj. is an elliptical indir. quest., *quam sapienter*, etc.

⁸ Epistolary tenses.

⁹ I.e. these generals of Pompey, with their forces, might be sent over into Italy, to follow Cæsar southward.

¹⁰ Sc. *opprimī possit*, if expressed in full; proviso, *I only hope, if only.*

¹¹ *blow.*

¹² His ablest general in Gaul (often mentioned in the *Gallie War*), now on Pompey's side.

¹³ *from (below, south of) Formiæ*, situated on the coast and the Ap-
pian Way.

¹⁴ Dolabella also had changed sides.

- 6 Tū quoniam eō tempore mēcum esse nōn potuistī quō
 maximē operam et fidēlitātem dēsīderāvī tuam, cavē fes-
 tīnēs aut committās¹⁵ ut aut aeger aut hieme nāvigēs.
 Numquam sērō tē vēnisse putābō, sī salvus vēnerīs. Adhūc
 5 nēminem vīderam¹⁶ quī tē postea vīdisset quam M. Volu-
 sius, ā quō tuās litterās accēpī. Quod nōn mīrābar¹⁶; ne-
 que enim meās putō ad tē litterās tantā hieme perferri.
 Sed dā operam ut valeās et, sī valēbis, cum rēctē nāvigārī
 poterit, tum nāvigēs. Cicerō meus in Formiānō erat,¹⁶
 10 Terentia et Tullia Rōmae.¹⁷ Cūrā ut valeās. IIII K. Febr.
 Capuā.

19 (ATT. VIII, 1)¹

CICERO ATTICO SAL.

No time to inclose a letter I have received from Pompey. Will send it tomorrow. In his own hand he adds that I should come to Luceria. I fear he will abandon this coast. Have replied to him with a protest,—useless, as before. I hate to side with the party of flight

- 1 Cum ad tē litterās dedissem, redditae mihi littērae sunt
 ā Pompeiō: cētera² dē rēbus in Picēnō gestīs, quae ad sē
 Vibullius scrīpsisset,³ dē dīlētū Domitī,⁴ quae sunt vōbīs
 15 nōta nec tamen tam laeta erant in iīs litterīs quam ad mē

¹⁵ be so rash as to, or think of such a thing as.

¹⁶ Epistolary tense.

¹⁷ Four days later (February 2) they arrived at the Formian villa.

19

¹ February 16, 49 B.C., Formiæ.

² the bulk of the letter. A contrast is expected; sc. fuērunt.

³ This clause quotes indirectly a statement of Pompey. Vibullius, one of his officers, tried to block Cæsar's advance in the Adriatic district of Picenum.

⁴ Who was trying to hold Corfinium (eighty miles east of Rome). Cæsar captured it four days after this letter was written. Pompey was preparing to leave Italy.

Philotīmus⁵ scrīpserat. Ipsam tibi epistulam mīsissem,⁶ sed iam subitō frātris puer proficīscēbātur.⁶ Crās igitur mittam. Sed in eā Pompei epistulā erat in extrēmō⁷ ipsius manū, 'Tū cēseō Lūceriam⁸ veniās. Nusquam eris tūtius.' Id ego in eam partem accēpī,⁹ haec oppida atque 5 ōram maritimam illum prō dērelictō habēre, nec sum mīrātus eum quī caput ipsum relīquisset reliquīs membrīs nōn parcere. Eī statim rescrīpsī hominemque certum¹⁰ 2 mīsī dē comitibus meis, *mē* nōn quaerere ubi tūtissimō¹¹ essem; sī mē vellet suā aut rei pūblicae causā Lūceriam 10 venīre, statim esse ventūrum; hortātusque sum ut ōram maritimam retinēret, sī rem frūmentāriam sibi ex prōvinciīs suppeditārī vellet. Hoc mē frūstrā scribere vidēbam; sed uti in urbe retinendā tunc,¹² sīc nunc in Italiā nōn relinquendā testificābar sententiam meam. Sīc enim pa- 15 rārī videō, ut Lūceriam omnēs cōpiae contrahantur, et nē is quidem locus *sit* stabilis,¹³ sed ex eō ipsō, sī urgeāmur, parētur fuga.

Quō minus mīrēre, sī invītus in eam causam dēscendō¹⁴ 3 in quā neque pācis neque victōriae ratiō¹⁵ quaesita sit 20 umquam, sed semper flāgitiōsae et calamitōsae fugae. Eundum,¹⁶ ut quemcumque fors tulerit cāsum subeam potius cum iīs quī dīcuntur esse bonī, quam videar ā bonīs dissentīre. . . .

⁵A freedman of Cicero or of Terentia.

⁶Epistolary tense.

⁷The closing paragraph is contrasted with cētera above.

⁸In Apulia, about thirty miles from the Adriatic.

⁹*interpreted, understood*; *partem, direction*, here = *sense, meaning*.

¹⁰*reliable*.

¹¹Irregular form, for tūtissimē.

¹²He had disapproved of the evacuation of Rome (January 17).

¹³I.e. *be for a final stand*.

¹⁴*stoop*; *causam* = *side, party*.

¹⁵*plan, method of gaining*.

¹⁶Sc. *est*. Cicero did not get far on the road to Luceria, for Pompey was already ordering a retirement upon Brundisium.

20 (ATT. VIII, 11 D)¹

M. CICERO IMP. S. D. CN. MAGNŌ PROCOS.

On learning of your intention to cross the Adriatic, our party had started to join you in Apulia. Alarmed by a report of Cæsar's approach, we went to Cales

1 Cum ad tē litterās² mīsissem quae tibi Canusī³ redditae sunt, suspīcīōnem nūllam habēbam tē reī pūblicae causā mare trānsitūrum eramque in spē magnā fore ut in Italiā possēmus aut concordiam cōstituere, quā mihi nihil ūtilius
5 vidēbātur, aut rem pūblicam summā cum dignitāte dēfendere. Interim nōndum meīs litterīs ad tē perlātīs ex iīs mandātīs quae D. Laeliō⁴ ad cōsulēs dederās certior tuī cōsiliī factus nōn exspectāvī dum mihi ā tē litterae red-
9 derentur,⁵ cōnfestimque cum Quīntō frātre et cum liberīs⁶
2 nostrīs iter ad tē in Apūliam facere coepī. Cum Teānum Sidicīnum⁷ vēnissem, C. Messius, familiāris tuus, mihi dixit aliūque complūrēs Caesarem iter habēre Capuam et eō ipsō diē mānsūrum esse Aeserniae.⁸ Sānē sum commōtus quod, sī ita esset, nōn modo iter meum interclūsum, sed
15 mē ipsum plānē exceptum putābam. Itaque tum Calēs⁹ prōcessī, ut ibi potissimum cōsisterem, dum certum nōbīs ab Aeserniā dē eō quod audieram referrētur.¹⁰

20

¹February 27, 49 B.C., Formiæ, replying to Pompey's request that he come at once to Brundisium.

²Cicero's reply to the previous request of Pompey that he come to Luceria.

³In Apulia, about seven miles from the battlefield of Cannæ.

⁴An officer of Pompey.

⁵for a letter . . . to be delivered.

⁶The sons only.

⁷On the Latin Way, about twenty-five miles east of Formiæ.

⁸In the Apennines, over thirty miles from Teanum. It was half-way between Corfinium (which Cæsar had taken) and Capua.

⁹On the Latin Way, about twelve miles northwest of Capua.

¹⁰Lit. *it should be reported (for) certain; certum, pred.*

There I had a copy of a dispatch of yours, from which we inferred that you would march to the relief of Corfinium. Hearing of the surrender, and also that you were on the way to Brundisium, we were deterred from following you by warnings that we might be captured or find our way blocked; also by the fact that, at best, we could not overtake you, as your last letter now directs us to do

At mihi, cum Calibus essem, adfertur litterarum tuarum 3
exemplum quās tū ad Lentulum cōsulem mīssissēs. Hae
scrip̄tae sīc erant, litterās, tibi ā L. Domitiō¹¹ a.d. XIII
Kal. Mārtiās adlātās esse (eārumque exemplum subscrip-
serās¹²); magnīque interesse rei pūblicae scripserās omnīs 5
cōpiās prīmō quōque tempore in ūnum locum convenīre, et
ut praesidiō quod satis esset Capuae relinqueret.¹³ His ego
litterīs lēctīs in eādem opīniōne fuī quā reliquī omnēs, tē
cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Corfīnium esse ventūrum; quō
mihi, cum Caesar ad oppidum castra habēret,¹⁴ tūtum iter 10
esse nōn arbitrābar.

Cum rēs in summā expectātiōne esset, utrumque simul
audīvimus, et quae Corfīnī ācta essent et tē iter Brundisium
facere coepisse; cumque nec mihi nec frātrī meō dubium
esset quīn Brundisium contenderēmus, ā multīs quī ē 15
Samniō Āpūliāque veniēbant admonitī sumus ut cavērēmus
nē exciperēmur ā Caesare, quod is in eadem loca quae nōs
petēbāmus profectus celerius etiam quam nōs possēmus eō
quō intenderet¹⁵ ventūrus esset. Quod cum ita esset, nec
mihi nec frātrī meō nec cuiquam amīcōrum placuit com- 20
mittere ut temeritās nostra nōn solum nōbīs, sed etiam rei
pūblicae nocēret,¹⁶ cum praesertim nōn dubitārēmus quīn,

¹¹He surrendered Corfinium to
Cæsar on February 21.

¹²had inclosed; but the copy was
really appended, like a postscript.

¹³Sc. Lentulus.

¹⁴Before the town surrendered.

¹⁵I.e. to his destination.

¹⁶The clause is obj. of commit-
tere, run the risk of letting . . .
injure.

sī etiam tūtum nōbīs iter fuisset,¹⁷ tē tamen iam cōsequī nōn possēmus.

- 4 Interim accēpimus tuās litterās Canusiō a.d. X K. Mār-
tiās datās, quibus nōs hortāris ut celerius Brundisium
5 veniāmus. Quās cum accēpissēmus¹⁸ a.d. III K. Mār-
tiās, nōn dubitābāmus¹⁸ quīn tū iam Brundisium pervēnissēs,
nōbīsque iter illud omnīnō interclūsum vidēbāmus neque
minus nōs esse captōs quam quī Corfinī fuissent. Neque
enim eōs sōlōs arbitrābāmur capī quī in armātōrum manūs
10 incidissent, sed eōs nihilō minus quī regiōnibus exclūsī
intrā praesidia atque intrā arma aliēna vēnissent.¹⁹ . . .

21 (ATT. IX, 16)¹

CICERO ATTICO SAL.

Cæsar was reported yesterday as approaching. Today a letter from him replying to my congratulations on his treatment of the prisoners of war at Corfinium, and asking me to meet him in Rome, there to give my counsel and support (copy inclosed)

- 1 Cum quod scrīberem ad tē nihil habērem, tamen nē quem diem intermitterem, hās dedī litterās. A.d. VI K. Caesarem Sinuessae mānsūrum nūntiābant.² Ab eō mihi

¹⁷Representing fut. perf. of dir. disc.

¹⁸Epistolary tenses, and so in what follows.

¹⁹Cicero has other reasons as well for delaying. He hopes that even now he may be able to act as a mediator.

¹March 26, 49 B.C., Formiæ. On the fourth the consuls had sailed

from Brundisium with the larger portion of Pompey's army, crossing the Adriatic to Dyrrhachium (Durazzo). Cæsar appeared before Brundisium on the ninth. With the rest of his forces Pompey sailed on the seventeenth for Dyrrhachium.

²Indef. subj., epistolary tense. Cæsar, after occupying Brundisium, had started for Rome. He is on the Appian Way. With K. supply Aprīlis.

litterae redditae sunt a.d. VII K.,³ quibus iam 'opēs'⁴ meās, nōn ut superiōribus litterīs 'opem' exspectat. Cum eius clēmēntiam Corfīniēsem illam per litterās conlaudāvissem,⁵ rescrīpsit hōc exemplō⁶:

4

'CAESAR IMP. CICERŌNI IMP.⁷ SAL. DIC.

Rēctē augurāris dē mē (bene enim tibi cognitus sum) ² nihil ā mē abesse longius crūdēlitate. Atque ego cum ex ipsā rē magnam capiō voluptātem, tum meum factum probārī abs tē triumphō gaudiō.⁸ Neque illud mē movet quod iī quī ā mē dīmissī sunt discessisse dīcuntur ut mihi rūrsus bellum īferrent.⁹ Nihil enim mālō quam et mē meī simi- ¹⁰ lem esse et illōs suī. Tū velim mihi ad urbem praestō sīs, ³ ut tuīs cōsiliīs atque opibus, ut cōnsuēvī, in omnibus rēbus ūtar. Dolābellā tuō nihil scītō mihi esse iūcundius.¹⁰ Hanc adeō habēbō grātiam illī; ¹¹ neque enim aliter facere poterit.¹² Tanta eius hūmānitās, is sēnsus,¹³ ea in mē est ¹⁵ benevolentia.¹⁴

³ The date of this letter.

⁴ *influence*.

⁵ Cicero had commended the humane treatment of those who had surrendered, esp. at Corfinium.

⁶ *in these terms, as follows*.

⁷ Cicero still retains his rank as *imperator*.

⁸ i.e. *rejoice beyond measure*.

⁹ Domitius, whom Cæsar had pardoned at Corfinium, went to Massilia (Marseilles) to renew the war.

¹⁰ Comprehensive neut., *nihil = nēminem*.

¹¹ *for this* (i.e. your coming to Rome), *in fact, I shall be grateful to him*.

¹² I.e. than prevail upon you.

¹³ *attitude or feeling* (toward me).

¹⁴ On March 28 Cæsar visited Cicero at Formiæ, but could not persuade him to modify the terms on which he would come to Rome and act as peacemaker. Early in April Cæsar set out for Spain.

22 (EPIST. XIV, 6)¹

SVIS S. D.

Few opportunities to send letters. Do what you can in that matter of the dowry. Tullia is grateful to you. Send Pollex at once

Nec saepe est cui litterās dēmus, nec rem habēmus ūllam quam scribere velīmus. Ex tuīs² litterīs, quās proximē accēpī, cognōvī praedium nūllum vēnīre³ potuisse. Quā rē videātis velim quō modō satis fīat eī cui scītis mē satis
5 fierī velle.⁴ Quod nostra tibi grātiās agit, id ego nōn mīror tē merērī, ut ea tibi meritō tuō grātiās agere possit. Pollicem,⁵ sī adhūc nōn est profectus, quam primum fac extrūdās.⁶ Cūrā ut valeās. Idib. Quīnt.

22

¹ July 15, 48 B.C., from Pompey's camp, near Dyrrhachium. After much hesitation Cicero had sailed from Formiæ, June 7, 49 B.C., with his brother, son, and nephew, for Epirus. They probably spent some time with Atticus on his estates near Buthrotum. By the end of the year, at the latest, Cicero was in the camp of Pompey. Cæsar had

landed farther down the coast early in January. Both armies moved into Thessaly in July.

² Since the letter, though headed *suīs*, is really to Terentia.

³ *be sold* (*vēneō*).

⁴ A balance was due to Dolabella on the dowry of Tullia, and the money had to be raised.

⁵ A slave of Cicero.

⁶ *push (him) off*.

23 (Att. XI, 6)¹

CICERO ATTICO SALVTEM DICIT

I appreciate your sympathy, and value your approval of my decision. It was the only proper course. Thank you for your care of Tullia's health. Pompey's fate was to be expected, but I mourn his loss. Of Quintus, in Asia or on the way, you may be able to get news

Sollicitum esse tē cum dē tuīs commūnibusque fortūnīs ¹ tum maximē dē mē ac dē dolōre meō sentiō. Quī quidem meus dolor nōn modo nōn minuitur cum socium sibi adiungit dolōrem tuum, sed etiam augētur. Omnīnō² prō tuā prūdentiā sentīs quā cōsōlātiōne levārī maximē possim. ⁵ Probās enim meum cōsilium negāsque mihi quicquam tālī tempore potius faciendum fuisse.³ Addis etiam (quod etsī mihi levius est quam tuum iūdicium, tamen nōn est leve) cēterīs quoque, id est quī pondus habeant,⁴ factum ⁹ nostrum probārī.⁵ Id sī ita putārem, levius dolērem. ² 'Crēde' inquis 'mihi.' Crēdō equidem, sed sciō quam cupiās minuī dolōrem meum. Mē discessisse ab armīs numquam paenituit. Tanta erat in illīs crūdēlitās, tanta cum barbarīs gentibus coniūctiō⁶ ut nōn nōminātim sed

23

¹ November 27, 48 B.C., Brundisium. Defeated by Cæsar near Pharsalus, in Thessaly, August 9, Pompey had fled to Egypt, where he was murdered as he stepped ashore. Cæsar is in Egypt now. Cicero, who was still at Dyrrhachium at the time of the battle, crossed over in October to Brundisium, where he was to spend nearly a year,—a very unhappy year.

²to be sure.

³Atticus approved of Cicero's retirement at Brundisium. Cæsar had forbidden Pompeians to return to Italy, but made an exception in Cicero's case.

⁴Descr. clause, expressing restriction: *those, at least, who, etc.*

⁵*commends itself to*, with the dat. cēterīs.

⁶The Pompeians had allied themselves with foreign princes, as Juba, in Numidia.

generātim⁷ prōscrīptiō esset infōrmāta,⁸ ut iam omnium iūdiō cōstitutum esset omnium vestrum⁹ bona praedam esse illius victōriae. . . .

- 4 Tulliae meae morbus et imbēcillitās corporis mē exani-
5 mat. Quam tibi intellegō magnae cūrae esse, quod est mihi
5 grātissimum. Dē Pompei exitū mihi dubium numquam
fuit.¹⁰ Tanta enim dēspērātiō rērum eius omnium rēgum
et populōrum animōs occupārat ut quōcumque vēnisset hoc
putārem futūrum. Nōn possum eius cāsum nōn dolēre;¹¹
10 hominem enim integrum et castum et gravem cognōvī. . . .
7 Quīntum frātre audiō profectum in Asiam ut dēprecā-
rētur.¹² Dē filiō¹³ nihil audīvī; sed quaere ex Diochare
Caesaris libertō, quem ego nōn vīdī, quī istās Alexandrēa
litterās attulit.¹⁴ Is dīcitur vīdisse Quīntum euntem an¹⁵
15 iam in Asiā. Tuās litterās prout rēs postulat exspectō.
Quās velim cūrēs quam primum ad mē perferendās.
III K. Decembr.

⁷ by classes, wholesale.

⁸ planned; lit. shaped.

⁹ Esp. the capitalists, if they had failed to join Pompey overseas.

¹⁰ The murder of Pompey had taken place two months before, at Pelusium.

¹¹ fail to grieve for.

¹² to sue for pardon. Quintus would go via Ephesus and Rhodes

to Egypt. Caesar, after an adventurous campaign, captured Alexandria the next March.

¹³ Sc. eius.

¹⁴ Caesar's letter reporting Pompey's death and his own arrival in Egypt had been brought to Rome by this freedman. *istās*: which you mention.

¹⁵ or possibly (for sive).

24 (EPIST. XIV, 11)¹

TVLLIVS S. D. TERENCE SVAE

Tullia arrived two days ago. My fault that she has met with such misfortune. Am thinking of sending Marcus to Cæsar

S.v.b.e.v.² Tullia nostra vēnit ad mē pr.³ Idūs Iūn. Cuius summā virtūte et singulārī hūmānitāte⁴ graviōre etiam sum dolōre adfectus nostrā factum esse neglegentiā ut longē aliā in fortūnā esset atque eius pietās⁵ ac dignitās postulābat.⁶ Nōbīs erat⁷ in animō Cicerōnem ad Caesarem mittere et cum eō Cn. Sallustium.⁸ Sī profectus erit, faciam tē certiorē. Valētūdinem tuam cūrā dīligenter. Vale. XVII K. Quīntīlīs.

25 (EPIST. XIV, 15)¹

TVLLIVS S. D. TERENCE

Shall not send Marcus to Cæsar. No news. Tullia still here

Sī valēs, bene est. Cōstituerāmus, ut ad tē antea scriberem,² obviam Cicerōnem Caesarī mittere, sed mūtāvimus¹⁰ cōsiliū, quia dē illius adventū nihil audiēbāmus.³ Dē

24

¹ June 14, 47 B.C., Brundisium.

² Sī valēs, benest (= bene est); ego valeō, a rather formal opening for a familiar letter.

³ prīdiē.

⁴ feeling for others, sympathy.

⁵ devotion.

⁶ She was the wife of Dolabella, — now a political agitator, clamoring for the abolition of debts, and making her most unhappy.

⁷ Epistolary tense.

⁸ A friend, not the historian.

Cæsar was in Syria about this time, and there the son would present Cicero's plea for pardon.

25

¹ June 19, 47 B.C., Brundisium.

² Epistolary tense; he refers to the previous letter.

³ Cæsar had reached Antioch by the end of this month; but Cicero could not know before July that he had left Egypt.

cēterīs rēbus, etsī nihil erat⁴ novī, tamen quid velīmus et quid hōc tempore putēmus opus esse ex Siccā⁵ poteris cognōscere. Tulliam adhūc mēcum teneō.⁶ Valētūdinem tuam
 4 cūrā diligenter. Valē. XII K. Quīntilīs.

26 (EPIST. IV, 9)¹

M. CICERO S. D. M. MARCELLO

*Repeating my arguments to convince you that you should
 return from exile*

1 Etsī perpaucīs ante diēbus dederam² Q. Mūciō³ litterās ad tē plūribus verbīs scrīptās, quibus dēclārāveram² quō tē animō cēnsērem esse oportēre et quid tibi faciendum arbitrārer, tamen cum Theophilus, libertus tuus, proficīscerētur, cuius ego fidem ergā tē benevolentiamque per-
 10 spexeram, sine meīs litterīs eum ad tē venīre nōluī.² Īsdem igitur tē rēbus⁴ etiam atque etiam hortor quibus superiōribus litterīs hortātus sum, ut in eā⁵ rē pūblicā, quaecumque est, quam prīmum velīs esse.⁶ Multa vidēbis fortasse quae nōlīs, nōn plūra tamen quam audīs cotīdiē. . . .

⁴ Epistolary tense.⁵ The friend who had harbored Cicero at the beginning of his exile (58 B.C.).⁶ Tullia had arrived seven days before, on a visit to her father.

26

¹ August, or early September, 46 B.C., Rome. Nearly a year before this, when Cæsar, returning from the East, had shown himself friendly to Cicero, the latter had settled in Rome for the first time in

nearly four and a half years. In April of this year Cæsar had defeated the Pompeians at Thapsus, in Africa. Cicero is engaged upon his books.

² Epistolary tense.³ Formerly on Quintus Cicero's staff, when Q. was governor of Asia.⁴ = *ratiōnibus*, *considerations*, *reasons*.⁵ Here little more than *the*.⁶ He is urging Marcellus to return. Shortly after this, Marcellus was pardoned by Cæsar,—the occasion of the *pro Marcello*.

Omnia sunt misera in bellis cīvilibus, quae maiōrēs nos- 3
trī nē semel quidem, nostra aetās saepe iam sēnsit, sed
miserius nihil quam ipsā victōriā; quae, etiam sī ad meliō-
rēs vēnit, tamen eōs ipsōs ferōciōrēs impotentiōrēsque⁷
reddit, ut, etiam sī nātūrā tālēs nōn sint, necessitāte esse 5
cōgantur; multa enim victōrī eōrum arbitriō per quōs vicit
etiam invītō⁸ facienda sunt. An tū nōn vidēbās mēcum
simul quam illa crūdēlis esset futūra victōria? . . .

Nunc vērō nec locus tibi ūllus dulcior esse dēbet patriā,
nec eam dīligere minus dēbēs, quod dēfōrmior est, sed 10
miserērī potius nec eam multīs clārīs virīs orbātam⁹ prī-
vāre etiam aspectū tuō. Dēnique, sī fuit magnī animī nōn 4
esse supplicem victōrī, vidē nē¹⁰ superbī sit¹⁰ aspernārī
eiusdem līberālītātem et, sī sapientis est carēre patriā,
dūrī¹¹ nōn dēsīderāre; et, sī rē públicā nōn possīs¹² fruī, 15
stultum est nōlle prīvātā.¹³ Caput¹⁴ illud est, ut, sī ista vīta
tibi commodior esse videātur, cōgitandum tamen sit nē
tūtior nōn sit.¹⁵ Magna gladiōrum est licentia, sed in ex-
ternīs locīs minor etiam ad facinus verēcundia.¹⁶ Mihi
salūs tua tantae cūrae est ut Mārcellō, frātrī¹⁷ tuō, aut pār 20
aut certē proximus sim; tuum est cōsulere temporibus et
incolumitātī et vītae et fortūnīs tuīs.

⁷ and more unbridled.

⁸ Agrees with victōrī,—against his will. He is excusing Cæsar for some arbitrary acts demanded by his supporters.

⁹ Make this a clause: and when she has lost . . . not, etc.

¹⁰ consider whether it be not, or are you sure it is not? or I rather think it is (since vidē nē is equivalent to nesciō an, I don't know but).

¹¹ unfeeling; nē and sit are still in force.

¹² Indef. you, one.

¹³ Sc. rē; i.e. a private life, contrasted with rē públicā (here a public career).

¹⁴ the main point.

¹⁵ The same in meaning, in effect, as tūtīōrem nōn esse, but more polite.

¹⁶ abhorrence, hesitation (on the part of an assassin).

¹⁷ For frātrī patruēlī, cousin. A brother of the same name was apparently dead.

27 (EPIST. IV, 4)¹

M. CICERO S. D. SER. SVLPICIO

You did well to take your present post. If disappointed, it is due to these unhappy conditions since the war. You are better off than we, except in one thing,—that we witnessed the pardon of Marcellus. The scene in the senate. My speech thanking Cæsar, —my first after long silence. My studies, and yours

2 . . . Cōnsilium tuum, quō tē ūsum scrībīs hoc Achāicum
negōtium² nōn recūsāvisse, cum semper probāvissem, tum
multō magis probāvi lēctīs tuīs proximīs litterīs; omnēs
enim causae, quās commemorās, iūstissimae sunt tuāque et
5 auctōritāte et prūdentiā dignissimae. Quod³ aliter ceci-
disse rem exīstimās atque⁴ opīnātus sīs, id tibi nullō modō
adsentior; sed quia tanta perturbātiō et cōnfūsiō est rē-
rum, ita perculsa et prōstrāta foedissimō bellō iacent
omnia, ut is cuique locus, ubi ipse sit, et sibi quisque
10 miserrimus esse videātur, propterea⁵ et tuī cōnsilī paenitet
tē, et nōs, quī domī sumus, tibi beātī vidēmur, at contrā
nōbīs nōn tū quidem vacuus molestiīs, sed prae⁶ nōbīs
beātus. Atque hōc ipsō melior est tua quam nostra con-
diciō, quod tū quid doleat scrībere audēs, nōs nē id quidem
15 tūtō possumus, nec id⁷ victōris vitiō, quō nihil moderātius,
sed ipsius victōriae,⁸ quae cīvīlibus bellīs semper est
īnolēns.

3 Vnō tē vīcimus, quod dē Mārcellī conlēgae⁹ tuī salūte
paulō ante quam tū cognōvimus, etiam mehercule quod

27

¹ Late September, or early October, 46 B.C., Rome; to the noted jurist, now governor of Achaia.

² I. e. *appointment, position.*

³ *as for the fact that.*

⁴ *than, from what you, etc.*

⁵ Referring back to *quia*, l. 7.

⁶ *in comparison with.*

⁷ *and that, not, etc.*

⁸ Sc. *vitiō.*

⁹ In the consulship of 51 B.C.

quem ad modum ea rēs agerētur vīdimus. Nam sīc fac
exīstimēs, post hās miseriās, id est postquam armīs dis-
ceptārī coeptum sit dē iūre pūblicō, nihil esse āctum aliud
cum dignitāte.¹⁰ Nam et ipse Caesar accūsātā 'acerbitāte'
Mārcellī (sīc enim appellābat) laudātāque honōrificen- 5
tissimē et aequitāte tuā et prūdentiā repente praeter spem¹¹
dīxit sē senātuī rogantī dē Mārcellō nē ōminis quidem
causā negātūrum.¹² Fēcerat autem hoc senātus, ut,¹³ cum
ā L. Pīsōne¹⁴ mentiō esset facta dē M. Mārcellō, et C. Mār-
cellus¹⁵ sē ad Caesaris pedēs abiēcisset, cūctus cōnsurge- 10
ret et ad Caesarem supplex accēderet. Nōlī quaerere; ita
mihi pulcher hic diēs vīsus est ut speciem aliquam vidērer
vidēre quasi revīvīscētis reī pūblicae. Itaque, cum omnēs 4
ante mē rogātī¹⁶ grātiās Caesarī ēgissent praeter Volcā-
cium¹⁷ (is enim, sī eō locō esset, negāvit sē factūrum fuisse), 15
ego rogātus mūtāvī meum cōnsilium. Nam statueram
nōn mehercule inertīā, sed dēsīderiō prīstinae dignitātis in
perpetuum tacēre.¹⁸ Frēgit hoc meum cōnsilium et Caesa-
ris magnitūdō animī et senātūs officium¹⁹; itaque plūribus

¹⁰ The pardon of Marcellus appeared to revive the old respect for the senate.

¹¹ *expectation*.

¹² He would not refuse the request of the senate for the recall of Marcellus, even though it was a bad omen (did not promise well) for his (Caesar's) relations with the senate that they wished to bring back a man who had so bitterly opposed him.

¹³ The clause will explain *hoc* (appos. clause). The tense of *fēcerat* shows that he is going back, presumably to picture the whole scene. This change of plan explains

why *et* in line 4 has no correl. *et* in this sentence.

¹⁴ Caesar's father-in-law, consul in 58 B.C.

¹⁵ A cousin.

¹⁶ *Sc. sententiam*. It had been moved that Marcellus be recalled from exile. Expressions of opinion were then called for in order of precedence.

¹⁷ Consul in 66 B.C.; hence called upon before Cicero. He would not have been so forgiving as Caesar.

¹⁸ Cicero had been attending sessions of the senate, but had made no speeches there.

¹⁹ *loyalty*, to Marcellus.

verbis egī Caesarī grātiās,²⁰ mēque metuō nē etiam in cēteris rēbus honestō ōtiō prīvārim, quod erat ūnum sōlācium in malīs. Sed tamen, quoniam effūgī eius offēnsiōnem, quī fortasse arbitrārētur mē hanc rem pūblicam²¹ nōn putāre, 5 sī perpetuō tacērem, modicē hoc faciam aut etiam intrā modum,²² ut et illius voluntātī et meīs studiīs serviam. Nam, etsī ā primā aetāte mē omnis ars et doctrīna liberālis et maximē philosophia dēlectāvit, tamen hoc studium cotīdiē ingravēscit,²³ crēdō, et aetātis mātūrītate ad²⁴ prūdentiam et iīs temporum vitiīs ut nūlla rēs alia levāre animum 10 molestiīs possit. Ā quō studiō tē abdūcī negōtiīs intellegō ex tuīs litterīs, sed tamen aliquid iam noctēs tē adiuvābunt.²⁵ . . .

28 (EPIST. IV, 11)¹

MARCELLVS CICERONI S.

I fully appreciate all that you have done for me, and know the value of such friendship. I shall certainly show my gratitude

1 Plūrimum valuisse apud mē tuam semper auctōritātem
15 cum in omnī rē tum in hōc maximē negōtiō potes exīstimāre. Cum mihi C. Mārcellus, frāter² amantissimus meī, nōn solum cōnsilium daret, sed precibus quoque mē obsecrāret, nōn prius mihi persuādēre potuit quam tuīs est effectum

²⁰ In the speech *pro Marcello*.

²¹ I.e. a constitutional government, pred.; hanc is obj.

²² I.e. even more than modicē, within even narrower limits.

²³ is becoming a more serious pursuit.

²⁴ in the direction of.

²⁵ The midnight oil is recommended to the busy governor.

28

¹ October, 46 B.C., Mytilene (on the island of Lesbos, in the Ægean). Cicero had written a letter (now lost) to Marcellus in exile, informing him that Cæsar had pardoned him, and describing the scene, his own speech, etc.

² = frāter patruēlis, cousin (on the father's side).

litterīs ut ūterer vestrō³ potissimum cōnsiliō. Rēs quem ad modum sit ācta vestrae litterae mihi dēclārant. Grātulātiō tua etsī est mihi probātissima, quod ab optimō fit animō, tamen hoc mihi multō iūcundius est et grātius, quod in summā paucitāte amīcōrum, propinquōrum ac 5 necessāriōrum, quī vērē meae salūtī favērent,⁴ tē cupidissimum meī singulāremque mihi benevolentiam praestitisse cognōvī. Reliqua⁵ sunt eius modī quibus ego, quoniam 2 haec erant⁶ tempora, facile et aequō animō carēbam⁷; hoc⁸ vērō eius modī esse statuō ut sine tālium virōrum et amī- 10 cōrum benevolentīā neque in adversā neque in secundā fortūnā quisquam vīvere possit. Itaque in hōc ego mihi grātulor; tū vērō ut intellegās hominī amīcissimō tē tribuisse officium, rē tibi praestābō.⁹ Valē.

29 (EPIST. XVI, 25)¹CICERO F.² TIRONI SVO

Excused; but do not let it happen again, for I set great store by your letters

Etsī iūstā et idōneā ūsus es excūsātiōne intermissiōnis 15 litterārum tuārum, tamen id nē saepius faciās rogō. Nam

³ Including the cousin.

⁴ Descr. clause.

⁵ *your other arguments.*

⁶ Epistolary tense.

⁷ Epistolary tense; one would expect carērem, in a descr. clause.

⁸ Referring back to the quod-clause, l. 5, the statement of Cicero's loyalty to his friend.

⁹ I.e. *shall prove to you by my conduct.* His return journey, how-

ever, was postponed for months. At the Piræus, in May, 45 B.C., he was murdered by one of his companions.

29

¹ Autumn of 44 B.C., Athens, where the younger Cicero, at the age of twenty-one, is a student; to Tiro, the faithful secretary.

² I.e. filius.

etsi de re p.³ rumoribus et nuntiis certior fio, et de sua in me voluntate semper ad me perscribit pater, tamen de quavis minima re scripta a te ad me epistula semper fuit



A POMPEIAN HOUSE

gratissima. Quam rem cum in primis tuas desiderem litteras,
 5 noli⁴ committere ut⁴ excusatione potius expleas officium
 scribendi quam adsiduitate⁵ epistularum. Vale.

³publica.

⁴don't allow yourself to, don't think of such a thing as.

⁵regularity. Unfortunately Tiro's letters, so much appreciated by the family, have not been preserved.

30 (EPIST. XVI, 26)¹QUINTVS TIRONI SVO P.² S. D.

Another mail without a letter from you! It will take Marcus' eloquence to defend you. Remember Mother's care of empty wine jars, and write even empty letters

Verberāvī tē cōgitātiōnis tacitō dumtaxat³ convīciō,⁴ quod fasciculus⁵ alter ad mē iam sine tuīs litterīs perlātus est. Nōn potes effugere huius culpae poenam tē patrōnō⁶; Mārcus est adhibendus,⁷ isque diū et multīs lūcubrātiōnibus commentātā⁸ ōrātiōne vidē ut probāre possit tē nōn 5 peccāsse. Plānē tē rogō, sīc ut ōlim mātrem nostram facere meminī, quae lagōnās⁹ etiam inānīs obsignābat, nē dīcerentur inānēs aliquae fuisse quae fūrtim essent exsiccatāe, sīc tū, etiam sī quod scrībās nōn habēbis, scrībitō tamen, nē fūrtum cessātiōnis quaesīvisse¹⁰ videāris. Valdē 10 enim mī semper et vēra et dulcia tuīs epistulīs nūntiantur. Amā nōs et valē.¹¹

30

¹ Time and place unknown, probably the autumn of 44 B.C.; from Quintus the brother.

² plūrimam.

³ at least.

⁴ reproach.

⁵ packet.

⁶ if you act as your own counsel;
a condition. •

⁷ I.e. you must retain Marcus.

⁸ prepared. lūcubrāre was to work by lamplight or at night, to burn the midnight oil.

⁹ wine jars.

¹⁰ to have tried to steal a vacation (from writing).

¹¹ This letter contains the only allusion in the entire correspondence to Helvia, the mother of the Ciceros.

GRAMMATICAL OUTLINE

PART I

1. AGREEMENT

SUBSTANTIVES

A. 282 ff.; D. 312, 306 ff.; B. 168 f.; G. 321 ff., 211

NOTE. The grammars cited are those of ALLEN and GREENOUGH (A.), D'OOGHE (D.), BENNETT (B.), GILDERSLEEVE and LODGE (G.).

1. A substantive in apposition with another substantive agrees with it in case. Usually, if possible, there is agreement in gender and number as well. For apposition to a locative cp. § 154, c, 3. In distributive apposition a plural or collective noun may be followed by *quisque*, or *alius . . . alius*, or *aliī . . . aliī*.

2. A predicate noun or pronoun observes the same rule as an appositive.

ADJECTIVES

A. 286 f.; D. 497 ff.; B. 234 f.; G. 211

3. An adjective, a pronominal adjective, or a participle agrees with its subject in gender, number, and case, whether the word is used attributively, as a predicate, or as an appositive.

4. A collective noun may be followed by an adjective or participle in the plural, in accordance with the sense.

5. An attributive adjective modifying two or more substantives regularly agrees with the nearest.

6. Predicate adjectives and participles referring to two or more substantives of the same gender will have that gender in the plural.

7. If they refer to substantives of different gender, denoting persons, the masculine takes precedence.

8. If the substantives of different gender denote things, the adjective or participle will be neuter. This is true also where feminine substantives denote abstractions. Agreement with the nearer subject is also possible.

9. When substantives of different genders denote both persons and things, the adjective or participle may agree in gender with the persons, or be put in the neuter; or it may agree with the nearest.

PRONOUNS

A. 305 f.; 296, *a*; D. 552 ff.; 532, *a*; B. 250; 246, 5; G. 614; 211, R. 5

10. When demonstrative or relative pronouns are used as substantives, they agree in gender and number with the substantive to which they refer (the antecedent in the case of a relative). Occasionally the sense alone may determine the number and gender of such a pronoun. The *case* is another matter, depending entirely upon the structure of the demonstrative or relative clause.

11. If the pronoun refers to two or more nouns, it is commonly plural, its gender being fixed by the same principles as in §§ 6-9.

12. If a relative or demonstrative pronoun used as a substantive is followed by a predicate noun, it is regularly attracted to the gender and number of such predicate; less commonly, if not used as subst.

nōn est ista mea culpa, *that is not my fault* (208)

VERBS

A. 316 f.; D. 631 ff.; B. 254 f.; G. 211, 285 ff.

13. A verb agrees with its subject in number and person. If the verb stands in a relative clause, it takes its person from the antecedent, since the relative cannot indicate person. In compound tenses (containing a participle) the verb must agree in gender also.

14. A verb with two or more subjects may still be in the singular, as agreeing with the nearest, or because the subjects are treated as a unit.

15. With a collective noun as its subject a verb may be in the singular, as the form requires, or the plural may be used in deference to the sense.

16. In a compound tense, gender or number, or both, may be determined by the sense alone.

17. If a subject has an appositive, the verb may agree with the latter, as uppermost in the mind of the speaker or writer.

18. The predicate also may attract the verb into its own number and gender.

19. As between subjects of different persons, the first person takes precedence over the second, and the second over the third.

20. Where a verb in a compound tense has subjects of different genders, the question of agreement rests upon the principles explained in §§ 5-9.

2. SOME USES OF PRONOUNS

DEMONSTRATIVES

A. 297; D. 533 ff.; B. 246; G. 305 ff.

21. The leading demonstrative pronouns are linked with the three persons as follows:

1ST PERSON	hic	<i>this</i>	{ near the speaker or writer, or in some other way connected with him or her
2D PERSON	iste	<i>that</i>	{ near the person addressed, or in some other way connected with a <i>you</i> or an antagonist
3D PERSON	ille	<i>that</i>	{ near a third party, or in some way connected with such a person or persons; at a distance, or remote in time

22. **Hic** and **ille** often refer to persons or things just mentioned, serving as *the latter* and *the former* do with us (or conversely). Here **hic** takes up that nearest to the thought of the writer or speaker, not necessarily what was last mentioned.

23. **Ille** often denotes familiarity or celebrity (*the well-known*, etc.). Another common use of **ille** is where it is immediately followed by

quidem (*indeed, to be sure*), and soon after by **sed**, **tamen**, or other adversative. This **ille** is not to be translated.

For the agreement of demonstrative pronouns and their attraction cp. §§ 10–12.

REFLEXIVES

A. 300 f.; 298, *f*; D. 519 ff., 549; B. 244, 249; G. 309, 311

24. The reflexive pronouns **suī** and **suus** are

a. Direct, if they refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand.

b. Indirect, if they refer rather to the subject of the clause upon which their own clause depends.

25. It may be necessary to refer to the subjects of both clauses, in which case **ipse** is used as the indirect reflexive, and **suī** or **suus** as the direct.

26. The reflexive **suus**, *his own, her own*, etc., may refer to another person than the subject, provided no ambiguity could arise. This is especially frequent in certain combinations, as **suus quisque**.

insidiārī domī suae cōnsulī, *to lie in wait for the consul in his own house* (177)

27. Where **ipse** and **suī** are used together, they are usually not in agreement, **ipse** being given prominence (usually nominative or accusative), while **suī** takes the less conspicuous construction.

quī sē ipse nōn continet, *who does not restrain himself* (83 25)

3. QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

A. 330 ff.; D. 620 ff.; B. 162; G. 451 ff.

28. A question is either real, actually expecting some answer, or rhetorical, in which case it is, as a rule, only a more animated way of making a statement.

29. The normal question is direct, i.e. independent. If a question is introduced by a verb of asking or saying, or other suitable word, it is said to be indirect, or dependent (cp. § 161).

30. A direct question is often preceded by **quid?** merely calling attention to what follows. This **quid** = *tell me, I say, say, or and then, again*, as a mere connective.

31. Word questions are introduced by an interrogative pronoun, or adjective, or adverb, as **quis, quī, who? what? uter, which** (of two)? **ecquis, is there anyone who? quot, how many? quantus, how great? quālis, of what sort?**

32. Sentence questions, expecting as a rule the answer *yes* or *no*, are indicated in these ways:

- a.* By enclitic **-ne** added to the most important word.
- b.* By **nōnne**, if *yes* is the expected answer. But sometimes **-ne** or **nōn** is used with the same implication of an answer *yes*.
- c.* By **num**, if *no* is the expected answer. So **num quis, is there anyone?** (**Ecquis** has the same meaning.)
- d.* By **an**, where the question is very closely connected with what precedes, or has the tone of challenge or contradiction (cp. § 280).
- e.* By the context alone. Such a question is often marked by strong feeling.

For deliberative questions see § 55, *d*.

DOUBLE QUESTIONS

A. 334 f.; D. 627 f.; B. 162, 4; G. 458 f.

33. Alternative or disjunctive questions have two members, each exclusive of the other. The second member is introduced by **an**, or, if negative, by **annōn**. The first member may have

a. **utrum, whether**, to be omitted in translation, unless the question is indirect.

b. **-ne**.

c. No outward sign of a question.

34. If the alternative question becomes indirect, **annōn** is replaced by **necne**.

ANSWERS

A. 336; D. 629 f.; B. 162, 5; G. 471

35. An affirmative answer is given by repeating, with any necessary change, the verb or other significant word of the question. The answer may be strengthened by adding *sānē* or *vērō*. Or these adverbs and others (as *ita*, *etiam*, *certē*, *maximē*, etc.) may be used alone for *yes*, *yes indeed*, *certainly*.

36. A negative answer commonly repeats the significant word with *nōn* or (stronger) *minimē*, etc. The blunt *nōn* was seldom used alone, but with *ita* or *quidem*; or else *minimē* alone, or *minimē vērō*, etc., was preferred.

4. NEGATIVES

A. 217, *e*; 325 ff.; D. 594 ff.; B. 347, 2; G. 441 ff.

37. The Latin negatives are used as follows:

a. *Nōn* negatives a whole clause or sentence (affirmative or interrogative), or a single idea or word.

b. *Nē* negatives a clause or sentence expressing a wish or the will.

c. *Haud* is used chiefly with single words, generally adjectives or adverbs, or with the verb *sciō* in *haud sciō an*, *I don't know but, I rather think* (cp. § 162).

d. *Nihil*, substantive, and *nūllus*, adjective, are sometimes emphatic substitutes for *nōn*.

e. *Nē* . . . *quidem* is *not even*, or *not* . . . *either*, or *also not*, with the emphatic word placed between *nē* and *quidem*.

38. Differing from English use is the Latin tendency to combine the negative with a conjunction:

neque quisquam, instead of *et nēmō*

neque ūllus, instead of *et nūllus*

neque aut . . . *aut*, instead of *et neque* . . . *neque*

nē quis, instead of *ut nēmō*

39. Two negatives commonly cancel one another: *nōn nēmō*, *some-one, some persons* (and so *nōn nūllī*); *nōn nihil*, *something*; *nōn numquam*, *sometimes*.

40. But a negative may be distributed (not destroyed) by a following **nec . . . nec**. After a negative a statement may be reënforced (not canceled) by adding **nē . . . quidem**.

41. After **nōn modo nōn** we may find **sed nē . . . quidem**. If the verb, however, is common to both members of such a sentence, the force of **nē . . . quidem** as *also not* is so strong that **nōn modo** may stand alone, where we should expect **nōn modo nōn**.

5. CONJUNCTIONS

COPULATIVE

A. 224, 323 f.; D. 599 ff.; B. 341; G. 474 ff.

42. **Et**, *and*, connects words, phrases, or clauses. Some special uses of **et**, differing from English *and*, are as follows:

a. With two adjectives agreeing with the same substantive, where we should use no conjunction in English, except for a special reason.

multis . . . et firmis praesidiis, *by many strong guards* (5 15)

But if one adjective virtually combines with the noun to express a single idea, no conjunction is needed.

multos fortis viros, *many stalwarts* (37 10)

Also if one of the adjectives is a numeral, or an adjective of place, or time, or material. When **multus** is not specially emphasized, no conjunction is required.

b. The second term may merely explain the first (**et** = *that is*; cp. the same use of **atque**, § 44, a).

c. In not a few cases so strong is the contrast between the two terms (one negative, the other positive) that **sed** or some other adversative would be expected.

43. Enclitic **-que** unites two terms more closely than **et**. Clauses are often joined by **-que**, but much more commonly single words or phrases are paired together. Sometimes **-que** is attached to the last term in a series which has no other conjunction. It has in addition the use described under **et**, § 42, c.

44. Atque (ac) may simply pair terms in closer union than **et**, but usually throws weight upon the second (*and also, and in fact, and in particular, and for that matter = or rather*).

a. This conjunction may introduce a second term which is not independent of the first but merely explains it.

mors ac rei publicae poena, *death, that is, the legal penalty (imposed by the state)* (4 21)

b. It may stand where the context marks so strong a contrast that we should use *but*, — even at the beginning of a sentence.

c. With two adjectives modifying one noun **atque** is used in the same way as **et**, as described in § 42, *a*.

nātiōnēs multae atque magnae, *many great nations* (77 10)

d. In a comparison, after a word of likeness or difference, **atque (ac)** acquired the meaning *as* or *than*.

aequē ac priore nocte, *just as last night* (49 19)

45. Neque or nec, *and not, neither, nor*, has the same meaning as **et nōn**, but is regularly preferred to it.

46. Nēve or neu, *that not, and that not, (and) lest, and (do) not, nor*, shows the same preference, as against **et nē**, to which it is equivalent. But this conjunction introduces a *subordinate* clause (§ 272, *a*).

47. Copulative conjunctions in pairs have such correlative uses as the following:

et . . . et, *both . . . and*

-que . . . -que, *both . . . and*

neque (nec) . . . neque (nec), *neither . . . nor*

neque (nec) . . . et, or **et . . . neque (nec)**, pairing together a negative and an affirmative statement; the translation is to be adapted to the particular case

cum . . . tum, *while . . . at the same time*, usually *not only . . . but also*, or *both . . . and in particular*; cp. § 221

For the absence of copulative conjunctions, or their use in a series (asyndeton and polysyndeton respectively), cp. *Introd.* § 22, *g* and *f*.

DISJUNCTIVE

A. 224, 323 f.; D. 606 ff.; B. 342; G. 492 ff.

48. **Aut**, *or*, and **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*, are used where the terms are very strongly contrasted or mutually exclusive (*or else*).

If a negative is expressed, or even implied, by a question or otherwise, the exclusive force of **aut** is much diminished, or disappears altogether, so that the weakest *or*, or even *and*, is to be used in translation.

potestne tibi haec lūx . . . aut huius caeli spiritus esse iūcundus?
can this daylight and this air that you breathe give you pleasure?
 (97)

49. *a.* **Vel**, *or* (old imperative of **volō**), leaves one to choose, with the implication that it makes little difference. Enclitic **-ve** has the same use as **vel**, but may be even weaker.

Another use of **vel** is that in which it means *even* or *if you please*.

b. **Sive** (**seu**), *or*, differs little from **vel**, marking an immaterial distinction, or one's uncertainty as to the choice of a word, etc. It may also make a correction, — *or rather*. Correlative **sive . . . sive** is *whether . . . or*.

ADVERSATIVE

A. 224, *b*; 324, *d*; D. 611 ff.; B. 343; G. 483 ff.

50. *a.* **sed**, *but*, the most general word; often **sed etiam**, *but also*; sometimes strengthened by the addition of **tamen**.

b. **vērūm**, *but, in truth*, stronger than **sed**.

c. **vērō** (after a word or two), *but, however, in truth*.

d. **autem** (after a word or two), a weak *but, however*; also *moreover*, or *now* (merely marking a transition).

e. **at** and **atquī**, **at tamen**, *yet, but yet*, frequently indicating an opponent's argument.

f. **tamen**, *yet, nevertheless*, often following some emphatic word.

g. **quamquam**, *however* (cp. § 218).

CAUSAL

A. 224, *c*; 324, *h*; D. 617; B. 345; G. 498

51. *a. nam, namque, enim, etenim, for* (*enim* in this use being post-positive). These conjunctions explain by giving a reason for what is said or implied, or for saying it at all, or for expressing oneself in this way (e.g. mentioning A rather than B). In the latter cases an ellipsis must often be supplied in translating, since *for* will not be enough to make the connection clear.

b. quārē, quamobrem, quāpropter, etc., wherefore.

INFERENTIAL, OR ILLATIVE

A. 224, *d*; 324, *i*; D. 618; B. 344; G. 499 ff.

52. These conjunctions mean *accordingly, and so, therefore*, marking the logical or natural next step, as one thing leads to another, or as a conclusion is drawn from what has gone before. They are *itaque, ergō, igitur, proinde, etc. (igitur* regularly postpositive in most authors).

For the conjunctions which introduce subordinate clauses cp. §§ 185-278.

6. MOODS

INDICATIVE

A. 517, *c*; 437, *a*; D. 643; B. 271; G. 254, R. 1

53. The indicative is the mood of facts. In certain special uses, however, it occurs where we should expect the subjunctive:

a. Where *ability, duty, obligation, propriety, etc.* are expressed, as in the passive periphrastic or in such verbs as *possum, dēbeō, licet, oportet, etc.* The ability, duty, etc. being a fact, the verb is in the indicative.

intellegere possumus, we could understand (30 22)

b. In such expressions as *longum est, it would be tedious; aequum est, it would be fair; melius est, the better course is, it would be better, etc.*

proprium est, would be in keeping with (8 7)

SUBJUNCTIVE

54. The subjunctive has these uses in the main clause or independent sentence; viz. it expresses what is (*a*) *willed*: the *volitive* subjunctive; (*b*) *desired*: the *optative* subjunctive; (*c*) *possible*: the *potential* subjunctive. For these uses in subordinate clauses cp. § 57 fin.

VOLITIVE

A. 439 f., 450, 443 f.; D. 671 ff.; B. 273 ff.; G. 263 ff.

55. Under the volitive subjunctive are included several different kinds, each of which shows the element of will:

a. Hortatory, in the first person plural of the present; with *nē* if the exhortation is negative.

optēmus, *let us pray (wish)* (26 29)

b. Jussive, expressing a positive command or, negatively, a prohibition, with *nē*. A command in the subjunctive is usually in the third person and present. Where the second person singular of the subjunctive is used, *you* is regularly indefinite. For a prohibition addressed to a particular person the perfect is preferred to the present.

exempla sūmantur, *let examples be taken* (85 26)

In the second person a prohibition is more commonly expressed by the imperative *nōlī* (*nōlīte*) and an infinitive, or by *cavē* (sometimes *cavē nē*) and the subjunctive.

nōlīte dubitāre, *do not hesitate* (95 15)

cavē festinēs, *do not hurry* (188 2)

c. Concessive, a special application of the jussive, granting something, often merely for argument's sake; with *nē* if negative. While this kind of concession nominally makes a main clause, it is logically subordinated to what follows.

sit Scīpiō clārus, *let Scipio enjoy his fame*, lit. *be famous* (63 4)

d. Deliberative, in questions of doubt, surprise, indignation, etc., in the present or imperfect (past); with *nōn* if negative.

The question is commonly merely rhetorical, expecting no reply (cp. § 186).

tū rēbus omnibus ōrnātus . . . sīs? *you be provided with everything?* (27 16)

cūr ego nōn laeter? *why should I not rejoice?* (52 8)

OPTATIVE

A. 441 f.; D. 680 ff.; B. 279; G. 260 ff.

56. The optative subjunctive expresses a wish, which is further indicated in many cases by **utinam**. If the wish is negative, **nē** is inserted. The tense will at once indicate whether the wish is, or was, attainable (cp. § 188).

utinam . . . habērētis, *would that you had (if only you had)* (78 21)

POTENTIAL

A. 445 ff.; D. 684 ff.; B. 280; G. 257 ff.

57. The potential subjunctive expresses possibility, or what is at least conceivable. With the first person this subjunctive gives the effect of a softened or more courteous assertion.

hoc . . . quis ferre possit? *who would be able to endure this?* (23 32)

quis . . . arbitrārētur? *who would have thought?* (80 23)

a. So **velim**, **nōlim**, **mālim**, where the wish is still possible of attainment; **vellem**, **nōllem**, **māllem**, where it is no longer attainable. (Cp. § 279.)

b. With the indefinite second person the potential subjunctive gives such expressions as **videās**, *one can see*; **vidērēs**, *one could see, one could have seen*; **dicerēs**, *one could say, one would have said*.

nec vi coercēre . . . possis, *one can neither restrain by force . . .* (63 22)

c. From the potential subjunctive came three forms of condition, — the less vivid future, the present contrary to fact, and the past contrary to fact (cp. §§ 252; 256; 258, *b*).

Volitive, optative, and potential subjunctives are much used in subordinate clauses as well. But the subjunctive in a subordinate clause may be due to attraction.

7. TENSES

INDICATIVE

A. 465 ff., 479; D. 647 ff., 664; B. 259 f., 265; G. 227 ff., 252

58. Historical present. In animated narration the present indicative is often used in place of a past tense.

59. General truth. The present is regularly used to express a universal truth (gnomic present).

60. Future. The future may express either simple futurity (*I shall, you will*, etc.) or will, promise, and the like (*I will, you shall*, etc.). For a future action the present is sometimes used.

61. Conative use of tenses. A verb in the present indicative may express action attempted or begun, but not carried out. For past time the imperfect (past descriptive) is used in the same way.

62. Tenses with *iam diū, iam dūdum, iam pridem*. With these and similar expressions of time a present tense indicates that the act or state, begun some time before, has continued to the present time. In the same way the imperfect (past descriptive) shows that there had been a continuance down to the time of which one is speaking.

iam pridem vidēbam, I had for a long time seen (54 14)

63. Epistolary tense. In letters the writer may make occasional (not consistent) use of tenses adapted to the time when the letter will be read by his correspondent. Thus *scribēbam* = *I am writing*, *scripsi* = *I write*, *scripseram* = *I have written* (or *wrote*), *scripturus eram* = *I shall write*, *eram* = *I am* (178 6), etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE

A. 482 ff.; D. 692 ff.; B. 267 ff.; G. 509 ff.

64. Tenses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses are normally determined by the principle of sequence of tenses, according to which a primary (principal) tense in the main clause requires a primary tense in the subordinate clause. In the same way a secondary (historical)

tense in the main clause requires the use of a secondary tense in the subordinate clause containing a subjunctive.

ubi sis hibernātūrus . . . perscribās ad mē velim, please write me where you are going to winter (171 22)

cui darem nesciēbam, I did not know to whom to give (169 16)

65. The historical present allows of either sequence. Both may be used in the same context (cp. 41 14 ff.).

66. If a general truth depends upon a verb in a secondary tense, the regular rule is followed.

intellēctum est quid interesset, we have seen what is the difference (56 13)

67. The perfect definite (present perfect) is commonly treated as secondary, and followed by a secondary tense; but the primary also is permitted.

id est initum cōnsilium ut . . . nēmō . . . relinquātur, they have formed the design that no one shall be left (53 7)

68. Conditions contrary to fact suffer no change of tense in deference to sequence, as such change would alter the meaning. In general the requirements of the sense often lead to neglect of sequence, as the point of view may shift with the progress of the sentence. There was no hard and fast rule of sequence.

69. Result clauses after a secondary tense very often have the perfect subjunctive, instead of the imperfect (past).

sic gesta sunt ut nūllum . . . fūrtum . . . sit . . . inventum, have been carried on in such a way that no theft has ever been . . . disclosed (43 23)

70. Future time may be denoted by the present subjunctive (or a future perfect represented by a perfect subjunctive) after a primary tense in the main verb; so also by the imperfect (past) subjunctive after a secondary tense. In the latter sequence a future perfect will become pluperfect (past perfect) subjunctive. The first periphrastic also is used in such situations.

ita dicam . . . ut . . . videātur, I will speak so that . . . shall appear (71 2)

INFINITIVE

A. 486; D. 828 ff.; B. 270; G. 280 f.

71. Infinitives indicate time only with reference to that of the verb upon which they depend. Thus the present infinitive is used for an action going on, or a fact true, etc., at the time indicated by the verb upon which it depends. This leads in expressions of duty, propriety, etc. to a marked difference from our English usage.

quae . . . tē ā tantō scelere . . . revocāre dēbuit, which ought to have recalled you from so great a crime (was bound to recall you) (39 26)

a. With **meminī** and other expressions of memory or tradition the dependent infinitive is often present, although past time is implied.

b. For the historical infinitive see § 92.

8. PARTICIPLES

PRESENT AND PERFECT

A. 488 ff.; D. 847, 861, 865 f.; B. 337; G. 664 ff.; 238; 437, N. 2

72. Participles are like infinitives in that they indicate relative time only, the actual time being determined by that of the main verb.

73. Perfect participles in agreement with the object often give a preliminary step in the action, and in many cases should become main verbs in English.

quī lēgātum . . . excruciatum necāvit, who tortured and slew an ambassador (71 13)

74. When combined with **habeō** or **teneō** the participle indicates a state or condition, the continuance of which is shown by that verb.

certōs hominēs dēlēctōs . . . habēbat, he kept (had) particular men selected (43 10)

In this use **habeō** gradually became a mere auxiliary (in late Latin).

75. One form of participial phrase is that in which the center of gravity, so to speak, shifts from the noun to the participle.

post hanc urbem conditam, since the founding of this city (42 12)
ante civitatem datam, before the gift of citizenship (102 31)

76. A very common type of participial phrase is found in the ablative absolute (cp. § 153); and its particular bearing, as condition, concession, cause, circumstance, etc., must be gathered from the context. Thus such ablative phrases are equivalent to clauses of different kinds.

77. A single participle, usually agreeing with the subject or object (direct or indirect), may be in effect a condensed clause of condition, concession, circumstance, etc.

perturbātus Lentulus tamen signum . . . cognōvit, *though he was agitated, Lentulus nevertheless recognized the seal* (40 16)

FUTURE

A. 498 ff.; D. 859 f., 869; B. 337, 4, 8; G. 247, 251

78. The future active participle combines with **sum** to form the first (or active) periphrastic conjugation.

num . . . sunt in castra ductūrī? *are they going to take . . . to the camp?* (30 1)

79. The gerundive (future passive participle) combines with **sum** to form the second (or passive) periphrastic conjugation; cp. § 114. If the verb is intransitive, an impersonal construction must be used.

mihi . . . esse moriendum, *that I must die* (or *ought to die*) (32 3)

a. For other ways of expressing *ought* see § 90 (**dēbeō** with inf.); § 279 (**oportet** with subjv.); § 296 (**oportet** with pres. inf.). Other ways of expressing *must*, *have to*, etc. are either of the constructions just given for **oportet**, or **necesse est** with dat. of the person and an inf.

80. The gerundive (future passive participle) is used with verbs of *caring for*, *seeing to*, *assigning*, *contracting for*, *undertaking*, *leaving*, etc., to complete their meaning, often in place of a purpose clause.

illud signum conlocandum cōsulēs illi locāvērunt, *those consuls let the contract for setting up the statue* (45 17)

9. GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

A. 501 ff.; D. 870 ff.; B. 338 f.; G. 425 ff.

81. The *gerund*, like the infinitive and supine, is a *verbal noun*, while the *gerundive*, like the other participles, is a *verbal adjective*. Accordingly the gerund may have an object, while the gerundive agrees with a noun or pronoun.

82. The genitive of the gerund is used with nouns and adjectives, in particular with *causā* or *grātiā*, making a phrase of purpose.

dicendī exercitātīō, skill in speaking (40 11)

disputandī causā, for the purpose of discussion (*Mur.* 62)

83. The dative of the gerund, a rare construction, is limited in the best usage to a few stereotyped expressions.

84. The accusative of the gerund is used with *ad* or *in*, making a prepositional phrase of purpose or tendency.

benignis . . . ad commodandum, courteous in (the direction of) lending (132 20)

85. The ablative of the gerund expresses *means, cause, manner, circumstance*.

impellendō . . . adiuvandō, urging . . . helping (attendant circumstance) (23 7)

With the ablative of the gerund may be used the prepositions *ā*, *dē*, *ex*, *in*.

in dicendō, in speaking (82 1)

86. The *gerundive* has all of the above uses, and is usually preferred to the gerund with a direct object, unless that object is a neuter pronoun, or a neuter adjective used as a substantive. The gerundive is obligatory in the dative if the gerund would require a direct object. The dative is used with a few nouns denoting a public office.

invidiae meae relevandae causā, to lessen my unpopularity (26 15)

ad cōfirmandam audāciam, to reënforce your boldness (4 27)

frigore et famē . . . perferendis, because of his endurance of cold and hunger (23 18)

87. As **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, and **vescor** (cp. § 147, *a*) were originally transitive, they may be used in the gerundive construction, agreeing with the noun, which in the oldest Latin might have been the direct object of one of these verbs.

10. INFINITIVE

A. 452 ff.; D. 827, 832 ff.; B. 326 ff.; G. 419 ff., 647

88. The infinitive, like the gerund and supine, is a verbal noun. It is neuter and indeclinable, and used only as a nominative or accusative. Thus the infinitive may be subject, predicate, object, or appositive.

89. As subject it is especially common with **esse**, with impersonal verbs such as **licet**, **oportet**, **interest**, etc., and with **opus est**, **necesse est**, and the like.

90. **Complementary infinitive.** As object the infinitive completes the meaning of many transitive verbs. The unexpressed subject must of course be the same as that of the verb which governs the infinitive. Some intransitive verbs also admit the complementary infinitive.

Among the verbs most used with this infinitive are **volō**, **mālō**, **nōlō**, **cupiō**, **studeō**, **statuō**, **dēbeō**, **audeō**, **dubitō**, **parō**, **incipiō**, **cōnor**, **possum**, **discō**, **sciō**, **soleō**, **cōnsuēscō**, etc.

ea nōn audeō scribere, I do not dare to write them (178 10)
dubitās . . . abire? do you hesitate to go away? (11 16)

a. Such participial adjectives as **parātus**, **adsuētus**, may have the same infinitive construction as their verbs.

91. **Infinitive clauses.** If the infinitive has a subject expressed in the accusative, we have an infinitive clause, to be treated below, with other clauses, §§ 281 ff., 296 ff.

92. **Historical infinitive.** In animated narrative the present infinitive may displace the usual main verbs in narrative tenses. In this case, and this alone, the infinitive has its subject in the nominative. Such infinitives are generally in a series, with the effect of a vivid word picture, combining description with narration.

ego lēgem recitāre . . . ; ille furiōsus urgēre, I read the law . . . ; the madman insisted (Verr. IV, 149 ; cp. 136 16, 138 7)

11. SUPINE

A. 508 ff.; D. 881 f.; B. 340; G. 434 ff.

93. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, having only two cases, an accusative and an ablative. The latter never takes an object.

a. The accusative supine is used with verbs of motion to denote purpose.

quōs tū ad mē salūtātum māne miserās, *whom you had sent to my house to make a morning call* (7 10)

b. The ablative supine has a very limited use with a few adjectives, such as **facilis**, **difficilis**, **mīrābilis**, **incrēdibilis**, and with **fās** (or **nefās**) **est**, **opus est**. Of these supines in -ū only a few are commonly met with, as **dictū**, **factū**, **vīsū**.

PART II

UNITS OF THE SENTENCE

A. WORD GROUPS CONTAINING THE CASES

94. The attention of a reader of Latin is constantly drawn to groups of words bearing the stamp of this or that case form,—nouns or pronouns attended by adjectives or participles. But between the words which constitute such a group it may be that other words, singly or in a phrase, have been placed, so that care is required to differentiate the one unit from the other and to make clear their relation to each other. Quick recognition of groups gives one a preliminary notion of the meaning, without any rearrangement of the words or premature attempt to translate. Often it happens that the subject phrase and object phrase (direct or indirect object) stand together at the beginning of the sentence, and must be properly dealt with just where they stand, before proceeding further. That is, we think of them for the moment as counterparts, indispensable to the story or statement; but we do not at once look for a verb.

1. NOMINATIVE

A. 339 f., 284; D. 316 ff.; B. 166 ff.; G. 201 ff.

95. The subject of any finite verb (or of the historical infinitive; § 92), if expressed at all, is in the nominative case.

For the infinitive as subject nominative cp. §§ 88 f.

a. The nominative is also the case of the predicate noun, pronoun, or adjective, unless the subject itself is in the accusative case (cp. § 99).

b. Nominatives are frequently appositive to other nominatives.

c. The nominative may be used in place of the vocative as the case of direct address (cp. § 159).

2. ACCUSATIVE WORD GROUPS¹

Accusative of the Direct Object

A. 387-396; 397, *c*; D. 404-419; B. 172-179, 184; G. 328-333, 339-343

96. A transitive verb requires a direct object in the accusative case, indicating the person or thing affected directly by the action expressed by the verb, or the result produced by that action.

vidēre hanc urbem . . . concidentem, *to see this city falling in ruins* (57 19)
illud signum conlocandum . . . locāvērunt, *let the contract for the placing of that statue* (45 17)

a. The verb may be impersonal.²

nōnne pudēbat magistrātūs? *were not the magistrates ashamed?*
 (90 14)

97. Cognate. With the verb (usually intransitive) is connected a noun of kindred meaning in the accusative; or the accusative is that of a neuter pronoun or adjective.

omnia . . . praeclāra . . . sentirent, *had all (i.e. none but) noble sentiments* (37 5)

98. Two accusatives. These groups are of two kinds:

a. Containing a direct and also a secondary object.

1. When the verb is compounded with **trāns** (or, less commonly, **circum**), the direct object is accompanied by another accusative connected with the preposition.

2. When the verb is one of *asking, demanding, teaching, admonishing*, there may be one object of the person and another of the thing (secondary object). The latter is retained if the verb is passive.

eōs hoc moneō, *I give them this warning* (28 31)

mē primum sententiam rogāvit, *asked my opinion first* (Quint. Fr. II, 1, 3)

b. Containing a direct object and an adjunct accusative. The latter is a predicate, and refers to the person or thing indicated by the direct

¹ The group is often separated by the insertion of other words, but the careful reader notes the accusative forms as belonging together.

² For *miseret, paenitet, pudet*, etc., cp. § 132.

object. Verbs of *making, calling, choosing, electing, regarding, showing*, etc. are especially common in this combination.

civīs integrōs . . . servāvī, I have kept the citizens uninjured (47 32)

In the passive both these accusatives become nominatives.

99. Accusative and infinitive. A dependent infinitive requires a subject accusative if any subject is expressed;¹ and if a predicate is added, this also must be in the accusative. The governing verb is one of *saying, thinking, perceiving*, and the like. For the explanation of this construction cp. § 283.

tabellās prōferri iussimus, I ordered the tablets to be brought out (39 10)
fatētur sē esse hostem, he admits that he is an enemy (27 2)

Other Uses

A. 397, 423 ff.; D. 420-438; B. 181-185; G. 334-337, 343

100. Of extent or duration. The accusative measures the distance, a dimension, or the length of time.

pūctum temporis, for an instant (55 6)

101. Of place to which. In general with a preposition, *ad, in, or sub*.

a. But names of towns and islands (usually small islands) omit the preposition. So also *domum, home(ward)*²; *rūs, into the country, to the farm*.

Rōmam vēnit, he came to Rome (101 7)

b. The general direction of a town, or its vicinity, is indicated by *ad* with the accusative.

ad Forum Aurēlium, near Forum Aurelium (13 5)

ad Corfinium, to (the neighborhood of) Corfinium (191 9)

102. Of exclamation. Commonly with an adjective and often with an interjection.

ō nōs beātōs! how happy we (shall be)! (23 22)

¹For the independent infinitive cp. § 92 (historical) and § 298 (exclamatory accusative and infinitive).

²If *domum* has a genitive or a possessive pronoun, it may also have a preposition.

103. Adverbial. Various idiomatic uses, largely in stereotyped expressions.

nihilne tē . . . mōvērunt? *have made no impression upon you?* (34)
id temporis, *at that time* (cp. § 125) (7 11)

Prepositional Phrases

A. 220 f.; D. 276, 278; B. 141, 143; G. 416, 418

104. Many accusative phrases are made up of a noun or pronoun with a preposition or adverb used as a preposition, viz.,

ānte, *āpud*, *ād*, *advērsum*,
circum, *cis*, *ob*, *trāns*, *secundum*,
penes, *pōne*, *prope*, *per*,
post, and all in *-ā* and *-ter*; ¹
abhinc, *clam*, *postridiē*,
ūsque, *versus*, *prīdiē*.

a. Three prepositions are used with the accusative if there is motion toward:

in, **sub**, and **super**

For the ablative with these three cp. § 157, *a.*

3. DATIVE WORD GROUPS²

Dative of the Indirect Object

A. 361-372; D. 370-384; B. 187; G. 345-348

105. Many transitive verbs take both a direct object in the accusative and an indirect object in the dative. With the passive voice the dative is retained.

quid vis nōbīs dare? *what are you willing to give us?* (134 6)
ostendi tabellās Lentulō, *I showed the tablets to Lentulus* (39 23)

¹ I.e. *circā*, *citrā*, *contrā*, *ergā*, *extrā*, *īnfrā*, *īntrā*, *iūxtā*, *suprā*, *ultrā*; and *circiter*, *inter*, *praeter*, *propter*, *subter*.

² Here also the case is often some distance away from the word upon which it depends, since other groups may intervene.

106. Many intransitive verbs require an indirect object in the dative to complete their meaning. Not a few verbs thus used are compounded with prepositions. For such verbs cp. § 110.

107. Intransitive verbs used with a dative may be grouped according to their meaning. But it must not be supposed that all verbs with these meanings admit or require the dative. In general we have here to do with verbs expressing

- | | |
|--|--|
| <i>a. Advantage</i> | as prōsum, expedit |
| <i>Disadvantage, loss, injury</i> | { as obsum, noceō (but not laedō , which takes the acc.) |
| <i>b. Yielding, trusting, believing, helping, obeying, sparing</i> | { as cēdō, licet, fidō, crēdō, opitutor (but not iuvō , acc.), medeor, pāreō, parcō |
| <i>Their opposites (including envying, being angry, threatening)</i> | { as resistō, invidēō, irāscor, minor (but not offendō , acc.) |
| <i>c. Pleasure, favor</i> | { as placeō, placet (but not dēlectō , acc.), libet, faveō, studeō |
| <i>Displeasure</i> | as displiceō, displicet |
| <i>d. Commanding, persuading</i> | as imperō (but not iubeō , acc.), suādeō |
| <i>Forbidding, dissuading</i> | { as dissuādeō, imperō nē (but neither vetō nor prohibeō , acc.) |

cōsulite vōbīs, prōspicite patriae, look out for yourselves, provide for the country (52 10)

placēre sibi, that it is its pleasure (11 20)

nē mihi noceant, that they may not injure me (48 23)

108. When the passive voice is required these verbs are used impersonally.

mihi . . . nihil ab istīs iam nocērī potest, no injury can now be done me by them (*nihil* not subject; cp. § 103) (48 24)

109. The dative is also used with expressions of similar meaning.

satis facere rei pūblicae, to do our whole duty to the state (3 15)

mihi grātiae . . . aguntur, I am thanked (41 15)

bellum populō Rōmānō facere, to make war upon the Roman people (24 12)

110. With compounds. Many verbs compounded with prepositions take the dative. If the compound is transitive, it may take both a direct and an indirect object.

a. The prepositions with which we are here concerned are

ad, ánte, círcum, cón-,
and these : **in, inter, ob,**
post, prae, with **super, sub.**

quibus . . . impendēre fātum aliquod, *that a certain destiny is awaiting (threatening) them* (24 6)

omnibus eius cōsiliīs occurrī, *I withstood all his designs* (43 27)

b. Many other verbs so compounded are transitive and take the accusative, e.g. **adeō, adgredior, offendō, oppugnō.**

Other Uses

A. 373-385; D. 385-399; B. 188-192; G. 349-359

111. Of reference or concern. The person concerned, whether to his advantage or disadvantage, is put in the dative. The connection of such a dative with the verb is usually very loose, so that in another language the construction would be one of possession (genitive, or possessive pronoun), or something widely different from the Latin idiom.

versātur mihi ante oculōs, *comes before my eyes* (57 22)

quid sibi . . . volunt? *what do they want (or mean)?* (29 32)

Tongilium mihi ēdūxit, *he took Tongilius with him, I observe (or the bare idea! or bless my soul! or on my word!)* (20 26)

a. The last example shows the dative of reference used with the greatest freedom, — the so-called ethical dative, which still survived in older English and has a counterpart in provincial *on me*. The translation must be adapted to the context.

112. Of separation. The same dative of reference is used with verbs of separation, to denote the person or (sometimes) thing from whom or which something is taken.

quotiēns . . . tibi extorta est ista sīca dē manibus! *how often has your dagger been wrested from your hands!* (9 19)

For the ablative of separation cp. § 134.

113. Of possession. With the verb **sum** the possessor may stand in the dative.

est enim nōbis is animus, *we have this resolution* (49 1)

quid sibi esset cum eīs, *what business he had with them* (40 3)

114. Of agent. From the person directly concerned (dative of reference) to the agent was a very short step. Thus the dative is regular with the second (or passive) periphrastic, and often found with compound tenses of the ordinary passive.

nē illud quidem vōbīs neglegendum est, *that point also you must not slight* (74 4)

dimicandum nōbīs cum illō fuisset, *we should have had to fight with him* (43 28)

mihi . . . prōvisum est, *steps have been taken by me* (31 9)

a. With this periphrastic the ablative of agent must be used if ambiguity would otherwise occur. For other reasons also the ablative may be preferred, as emphasis or rhetorical symmetry; but this is uncommon.

quibus est ā vōbīs . . . cōsulendum, *for whom measures must be taken by you* (69 18)

115. Of purpose or tendency. Usually a double dative construction, one dative indicating the person or thing concerned (reference), the other a purpose or tendency.

quōrum . . . fortūnae vōbīs cūrae esse dēbent, *whose property ought to be your concern* (74 10)

multa . . . quae ōrnāmētō urbī esse possent, *many things which might be an ornament to the city* (149 20)

novīs nūptiis, *for a new marriage* (8 27)

116. With adjectives. The dative is used with adjectives denoting likeness, nearness, fitness, friendliness, etc., together with their opposites.

proxima Italiae, *nearest to Italy* (165 18)

erat . . . iūcundus Metellō, *he was agreeable to (a favorite with) Metellus* (101 18)

For **similis**, **dissimilis**, **proprius**, etc. with the genitive cp. § 128.

4. GENITIVE WORD GROUPS

Subjective and Objective

A. 343, N. 1; 347; D. 326; B. 199 f.; G. 363 f.

117. Subjective. The genitive indicates the subject of an action or feeling.

timor populī, *the alarm of the people* (3 5)

deōrum immortalīum significātiōnibus, *upon signs sent by the immortal gods* (32 25)

118. Objective. The genitive denotes the object of some action or feeling, expressed or implied.

pūblici cōnsilī particeps, *a sharer in public deliberations* (3 13)

mercēdem labōrum, *reward of (for) labors* (112 9)

Possession, Connection, Explanation, Charge

A. 343; 352; 359, b; D. 328–336; B. 198, 202, 208; G. 361 f., 366, 373, 378

119. Of possession. A special application of the subjective. It is not limited to a personal owner and may be used as a predicate.

in M. Laecae domum, *to Marcus Laeca's house* (6 18)

hūmānī cōnsilī . . . esse, *to belong to human wisdom* (44 4)

a. If possession is indicated by **meus**, **tuus**, **noster**, **vester**, **suus**, etc., a genitive, as **ūnīus**, **ipsīus**, **omnium**, may be added in a kind of apposition.

120. Of connection. An extension of the possessive.

dīcendī exercitātiō, *practice in speaking* (40 11)

supplicī causā, *for the sake of punishment* (55 10)

121. Of explanation. A limited use of an explanatory genitive, where an apposition might be used.

hoc poētae nōmen, *this term "poet"* (107 13)

122. Of the charge. With verbs of *accusing*, *acquitting*, *condemning*, etc.

mē ipse inertiae . . . condemnō, *I convict myself of inefficiency* (5 1)

Description, Value, the Whole, Material

A. 344-346, 417; D. 338-348; B. 197, 201, 203; G. 365-372, 379 f.

123. Of description. A noun in the genitive, with an adjective or pronoun in agreement, makes a descriptive phrase, which may be used as a predicate.

eiusdem dignitātis . . . hominum, of men of the same rank (93 18)

alicuius pretī . . . esse, to be of considerable value (134 10)

a. The descriptive genitive may express *measure, size, etc.*, either in figures or in general terms.

124. Of indefinite value. With *esse* and verbs of *valuing, buying, selling, esteeming*, including *faciō*; also with *rēfert* and *interest* (§ 130).

est tantī, it is worth while (lit. of so much value) (12 18)

parvī rēfert, it matters little (is of small advantage) (74 21)

For the ablative of price or value cp. § 149.

125. Of the whole (partitive). Where part and whole are contrasted.

nēmō . . . istōrum, no one of them (26 23)

quid cōnsilī, what plan (3 10)

ubinam gentium, where in the world? (6 22)

126. Of material or composition.

illam naufragōrum . . . manum, that company of the ruined (composed of the wrecked) (30 12)

tuōrum comitum . . . sentina rei pūblicae, dregs of the state, composed of your companions (8 11)

Plenty, Want, Likeness, etc., Action, Feeling

A. 349; 356; 385, c; D. 349-351, 354; B. 204, 212; G. 374 f., 383

127. Of plenty and want. With adjectives and verbs. For the ablative cp. § 146.

plēna Graecārum artium, full of (rich in) Greek arts (100 28)

refertō praedōnum mari, over a sea swarming with pirates (80 21)

plēnissimus piscium, very full of fish (148 23)

128. With adjectives such as *similis, dissimilis, proprius, communis*, etc. For the dative with such adjectives cp. § 116.

tam tui similis, so like you (5 12)

disciplinae maiorum proprium, in keeping with the training (traditions) of our ancestors (8 6)

129. With nouns or adjectives of action or feeling. This and the following varieties of genitive (except that of § 130) show different uses of the objective genitive.

multorum civium necēs, the killing of many citizens (10 23)

amantissimōs rei publicae, most patriotic (37 3)

ferramentorum studiōsum, interested in cutlery (39 18)

With Special Verbs

A. 350f., 354f., 357; D. 352, 358ff.; B. 206, 209–212; G. 376f.; 381f.; 407, N. 2, d

130. With *rēfert* and *interest*. A possessive genitive with these verbs tells who is concerned, unless the ablative of a possessive pronoun, as *meā, suā, vestrā*, can be used.

The degree of interest or advantage is expressed by the genitive of value (§ 124), or by an adverb, as *maximē*, or by an adverbial accusative neuter, as *multum, quantum*, etc.

quantum salutis communis intersit, how much it concerns the common safety (Mur. 4)

meā videō quid intersit, I see what is to my interest (56 4)

magnī interest, it is of great consequence (Mur. 79)

131. With certain verbs or expressions of remembering, forgetting, reminding.

oblīviscere caedis, forget slaughter (5 23)

a. With *meminī* and *reminīscor* the accusative also is found; and with *recordor* that is the regular construction.

132. With the impersonal verbs *miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet*. An accusative object tells who has the feeling of *pity*, etc., while the genitive denotes the person or thing occasioning the feeling.

mē . . . meōrum factōrum . . . numquam paenitēbit, I shall never regret my acts (lit. *it will never repent me of my acts*) (62 27)

133. With *potior*. This verb, usually constructed with an ablative (cp. § 147, *a*), sometimes has the genitive, and always so with *rēs* in the sense of political power.

rērum potīri volunt, they wish to be masters of the situation (28 2)

5. ABLATIVE WORD GROUPS

Separation, Place Whence, Comparison

A. 400 ff., 426 ff., 406 f.; D. 440-450; B. 214, 229, 217; G. 390 f., 398

134. Of separation. With verbs and adjectives denoting separation or deprivation, etc., an ablative is used, with or without a preposition. For the dative of separation cp. § 112.

quod . . . rēs publica maximīs periculīs sit liberāta, because the state has been freed from the greatest dangers (41 15)

vacua mortis periculō, free from the danger of death (51 17)

135. Of place whence. This ablative has a preposition (*ā* or *ab*, *dē*, *ē* or *ex*), except in the cases noted below.

ex urbe, from the city (19 4)

ex Asiā, from Asia (68 20)

a. Prepositions are not used, as a rule, with the names of towns or cities, unless the *vicinity* is meant; nor with those of small islands; nor with *domō*, *from home*, or *rūre*, *from the country* (or *farm*).

Rōmā profectus est, he has set out from Rome (26 29)

Corcȳrā, from Corcyra (184 10)

exīre domō meā, to go out of my house (Caec. 34)

136. Of comparison. When the first term in the comparison is in the nominative or accusative, the second term may stand in the ablative, if *quam*, *than*, is not inserted. Where *quam* is expressed, both terms are in the same case, or else *quam* introduces a complete clause of which the second term is the subject.

lūce sunt clāriōra, are plainer than day (5 24)

quis . . . est mē mītiōr? who is more merciful than I? (57 17)

a. With **amplius**, **plūs**, **minus**, **longius**, we often find, not the ablative, but the case which would be expected if these adverbs were not added.

hōram amplius, *an hour and more, more than an hour* (142 5)

Origin, Material, Agent

A. 403, 405; D. 451-455; B. 215 f.; G. 395 f., 401

137. Of origin. With such words as **nāscor**, **nātus**, **ortus**, and the like the ablative denotes origin or descent.

summō nātī locō, *of the highest birth (sprung from the highest station)* (60 15)

138. Of material. Usually with the preposition **ex**. The phrase is sometimes attached directly to a noun. For the similar genitive cp. § 126.

signum . . . Cupīdinis ē marmore, *a statue of Cupid in marble* (131 23)
quid puerō miserō fiet? *what will become of (lit. be made out of) the poor boy?* (165 5)

This may also be explained as ablative of means.

139. Of agent. The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by a prepositional phrase with **ā** or **ab**.

ā mē ēiectum esse Catilinam, *that Catiline has been driven out by me* (24 23)

Accompaniment, Circumstance, Accordance, Manner, Cause

A. 412 f., 404; D. 456-465; B. 219-222; G. 392, 402, 397

140. Of accompaniment. With **cum**, except for a few military phrases. The same construction is used with verbs of *fighting, making war, contending*.

occīsus est cum liberis, *was killed with his children* (4 18)
magnō comitātū, *with a large retinue* (37 14)

141. Of attendant circumstances. The ablative, sometimes with **cum**, depicts the circumstances.

hisce ōminibus, *with these auspices (prospects)* (17 17)
nōn modo impellendō, *not only urging* (equivalent to a present participle or a *while*-clause) (23 6)

142. Of accordance. This ablative, sometimes with **ex** or **dē**, indicates that in accordance with which something is done.

simili senātūs cōsultō, in accordance with a similar decree of the senate (4 18)

iussū cōsulis, by order of the consul (12 28)

143. Of manner. With the preposition **cum**, or without it if the noun has an adjective modifier. The **cum**-phrase often modifies a noun.

cum gladiis miseram, I had sent (them) armed (37 13)

144. Of cause or reason. Cause and reason are denoted by an ablative, requiring no preposition, but sometimes with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**; or with **prae**, if a preventing cause is meant. A phrase in the ablative absolute often denotes cause (§ 153).

certā dē causā, for a certain reason (5 10)

frigore et famē . . . perferendis, because of his endurance of cold and hunger (23 18)

Description, Plenty, Want

A. 415; 409, *a*; 401 *f.*; D. 466; 469, *d*; 440, *b*; B. 224; 218, 8; 214, 1; G. 400, 405

145. Of description. The ablative with its adjective makes a phrase equivalent to an adjective. Such a phrase may serve as a predicate. When attributive it usually modifies some such noun as **homō**, **vir**, **mulier**, etc. For the less frequent genitive cp. § 123.

hominēs Rōmānōs hāc . . . continentiā, Romans of such self-control (84 19)

nōn maxima vērūm eximiā venustāte, not very large, but of rare charm (131 28)

146. Of plenty or want. The former may be treated as a variety of the ablative of means, while the latter is indistinguishable from an ablative of separation (§ 134). For the genitive cp. § 127 (**plēnus**, etc.).

cōnfertī cibō, stuffed with food (24 3)

sanguine redundāvit, swam with blood (47 8)

Means, Penalty, Price, Way

A. 409 ff.; 353; 416 f.; 429, *a*; D. 468-474; B. 218; 208, 2, *b*; 225; 218, 9; G. 401; 378, R. 3; 404; 389

147. Of means. With this ablative no preposition is used. Properly it applies to things only, but to persons if they are treated as mere tools.

scelerum exercitātiōne adsuēfactus, trained by practice in crimes
(23 17)

quī verbō . . . ēiciō, who banish . . . by a word (25 7)

a. Certain deponent verbs take an ablative of means in place of a direct object (which they had in early Latin). These are *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and several compounds of these verbs.

For *potior* with the genitive cp. § 133.

quōrum operā ūtor, whose services I employ (37 12)

hīs . . . meliōribus cīvibus ūterēmur, we should find them better
citizens (27 26)

illis rēbus fruī, to enjoy (benefit by) those things (74 1)

b. The ablative of means is found with the following adjectives: *contentus*, *satisfied*, *contented*; *frētus*, *relying upon*.

nostrā . . . caede contentum, satisfied with the murder of us (who, etc.)
(6 8)

neque hūmānis cōsiliis frētus, nor relying upon human wisdom
(32 24)

c. An ablative of means with *opus est* (or *ūsus est*) tells what is needed.

cui . . . mediocrī virtūte opus est, who has need of only moderate
ability (165 10)

148. Of the penalty.

perniciōsōs cīvis morte multārunt, have punished dangerous citizens
with death (14 25)

149. Of price or value. Where mention is made of *buying*, *selling*, *estimating*, the price or valuation, if definite, is put in the ablative

(originally of means); also such neuters as **magnō**, **parvō**, etc. are used. For the genitive of indefinite value cp. § 124.

signum . . . sēstertium quadrāgintā milibus vēnīre nōn vidimus?
have we not seen a statue sold for 40,000 sesterces? (*Verr.* IV, 14)
discessū nostrō emendum, *to be purchased at the cost of our separation*
 (172 9)

150. Of the way by which. The route is the means by which one makes the journey; hence there is no preposition.

Aurēliā viā profectus est, *he has left by the Aurelian Way* (22 18)

Measure of Difference, Respect, Absolute

A. 414, 418 ff.; D. 475-484; B. 223, 226 f.; G. 403, 397, 409 f.

151. Of the measure of difference. The amount of the difference involved in a comparison is expressed by the ablative, often in correlative terms.

multō mē vigilāre ācrius, *that I am much more vigilant* (6 16)
paucis ante diēbus, *a few days ago* (36 4)
quō minus . . . hōc magis, *the less . . . the more* (91 29)

152. Of respect. The respect in which a statement holds true is denoted by an ablative.

quā semper valuit, *in which (respect) he was always strong* (40 11)

a. With the adjectives **dignus** and **indignus** this ablative is very common.

dignum cūstōdiā, *worthy of (deserving) arrest* (11 15)

153. Absolute. A noun or pronoun in the ablative, with a participle or adjective in agreement with it, may be more or less independent of the rest of the sentence (hence the term *absolute*); but this extremely common form of ablative phrase is usually equivalent in meaning to a clause of time, circumstance, cause, condition, or concession. A noun may take the place of the participle or adjective. The subject or object of the sentence is rarely repeated in the ablative phrase.

Mariō et Valeriō cōsulibus, *in the consulship of Marius and Valerius* (4 19)

integrīs signīs, *the seals still intact, without breaking the seals* (37 20)

occlūsīs tabernīs, *when the shops have been closed* (61 4)

(tabernīs) incēnsīs, *if the shops had been burned* (61 5)

a. There is also an impersonal ablative absolute in the neuter of the participle.

auspicātō *after taking the auspices* (Mur. 1)

Place Where, Time When, with rēfert and interest

A. 423 ff.; 355, *a*; D. 485-495, 352; B. 228, 230 f., 211; G. 385 ff., 393 f., 381 f.

154. Of the place where. The place in which is indicated in three ways:

a. By the locative ablative with the preposition **in**.

in meō lectō, *in my bed* (7 6)

in Italiā, *in Italy* (5 2)

For *near, in the vicinity of*, expressed by an accusative with **ad**, cp. § 101, *b*.

b. By the locative ablative without a preposition:

1. Names of towns.

Praeneste, *at Praeneste* (Planc. 63)

Syrācūsīs, *at Syracuse* (138 24)

2. Names of islands, especially small islands.

Leucade, *at Leucas* (183 8)

3. In phrases such as

cūnctā Asiā atque Graeciā, *in all Asia and Greece* (72 1)

isdem parietibus, *inside the same house walls* (11 7)

4. In certain very common words, as **locō**, **parte** (or their plurals), **terrā**, **mari**, etc.

terrā marique, *on land and sea* (24 13)

c. By the locative case (cp. § 158). This applies to nouns possessing this case form, viz.,

1. Names of cities or towns of the first or second declension; rarely of the third.

Rōmae, at *Rome* (88 1)

Sinuessa, at *Sinuessa* (192 14)

Neāpoli, at *Naples* (Sull. 53)

Agrigentī, at *Agrigentum* (140 17)

Dyrrhachī, at *Dyrrhachium* (161 4)

Carthāginī, at *Carthage*¹ (Leg. Agr. II, 90)

2. Names of small islands, if of the first or second declension.

Corcȳrae, at *Corcyra* (184 1)

3. A few other words, as

domī, at *home*

militiae and **belli**, in *war*, in the *field*

humī, on the *ground*

animī, in *mind*

rūrī (third declension), in the *country*, on the *farm*

An appositive to a locative must be in the ablative with or without **in**.

Antiochia, . . . **celebrī quondam urbe**, at *Antioch*, formerly a *populous city* (100 21)

155. Of time when. The time at which or within which anything occurs is placed in the ablative, usually without a preposition.

hesternō diē, *yesterday* (22 8)

quārtō Kalendās Iūniās, on the *twenty-ninth of May* (162 13)

Kalendis Sextilibus, on the *first of Sextilis* (174 3)

discessū cēterōrum, upon the *departure of the rest* (6 8)

proximis comitiis cōsulāribus, at the *recent consular election* (7 26)

triduō, within *three days* (26 17)

ūnō annō, within *one year* (80 24)

a. There is also a rare locative of time at which, as **herī**, *yesterday*; **vesperī**, at *evening*.

¹ But also locative ablative, **Carthāgine**.

156. With *rēfert* and *interest*. For this construction of uncertain origin cp. § 130. With *rēfert* Cicero uses only *meā*, *suā*, etc.

nōn plūs suā rēferre, that it no more concerned him (Quinct. 19)

Prepositional Phrases

A. 220 f.; D. 277 f.; B. 142 f.; G. 417 f.

157. Many ablative phrases are made up of a noun or pronoun with a preposition, viz.,

ābs,¹ *ab*, *ā*, *cum*, *cōram*, *dē*,
prae, *prō*, *sine*, *ex* or *ē*.

a. The three prepositions used with the accusative with the idea of motion toward (§ 104, *a*) are used also with the ablative if the idea is either of rest or of motion within the limit stated, viz.,

in, *sub*, *super* (equals *dē*)²

6. THE LOCATIVE CASE

A. 427; D. 486 ff.; B. 232; G. 411

158. The locative case indicates the place at or in which. There are also a very few locatives denoting the time at which. Since this case is often indistinguishable from an ablative, its use has been already stated under that head (§§ 154; 155, *a*).

a. In the singular the locative is like the genitive in the first and second declensions; but in the third and fourth declensions a few locatives singular are like the dative.³

All other locatives have the same form as the ablative.

b. Adjectives and pronominal adjectives are seldom used with locatives. But a few phrases are quite common, as

domī meae, at my home (24 28)

¹Hardly used except in *abs tē*.

²I.e. when *super* means *concerning, on, in reference to* (colloquial). *Subter* with an ablative is found once in Cicero, and in poetry.

³For *at home*, however, *domī* is common; *domuī*, unusual.

7. THE VOCATIVE CASE

A. 340; D. 321 ff.; B. 171; G. 201, R. 2

159. The vocative is the case of address. In many instances it cannot be distinguished from the nominative, which may be used in the same way (§ 95, *c*).

habēmus senātūs cōnsultum in tē, Catilīna, *we have a decree of the senate against you, Catiline* (49)

- a. In form the vocative is like the nominative, with these exceptions :
 1. In nouns and masculine adjectives and participles of the second declension the vocative ends in **-e**.
 2. In nouns in **-ius** of the second declension the vocative ends in **-ī**. But adjectives of this form have vocatives in **-ie**.
 3. The possessive **meus** has the vocative form **mī**.
 4. In certain Greek names of various forms.

B. DEPENDENT CLAUSES

A. 278 f.; D. 709; B. 165; G. 472, 504 ff.

160. Another kind of word group is that which makes up a subordinate, or dependent, clause; and nothing is more important for the reader of Latin than to form the habit of recognizing such a group as a distinct unit, and of asking himself a number of questions about such a unit, before attempting a translation. The dependent group has, of course, a definite part to play in the development of the thought. What that part is, the reader must discover, not by a rash guess, made before even a Roman could have grasped the sense, but by carefully observing what is already given, and patiently waiting for further light as the sentence proceeds.

a. As there may be no noun or adjective or adverb which fully covers what we wish to express, we frame a clause to suit our purpose, and then make it serve in place of one or the other of those three parts of speech. Hence in Latin, as in modern languages, a dependent, or subordinate, clause is equivalent to

1. A *substantive* serving as subject or object of the main verb, or otherwise performing the duty commonly assigned to a noun or pronoun.

2. An *adjective* designating or describing a person, a thing, a state of things, etc. Such a clause will be introduced by a relative pronoun or by a relative adverb.

3. An *adverb* expressing one or the other of the following relations: purpose, result, cause, time or circumstance, condition, concession, comparison, etc. Such a clause is usually introduced by a conjunction, as **ut**, **cum**, **quam**, **sī**, **nē**.

b. As a large proportion of the conjunctions which introduce dependent clauses were slowly developed out of the interrogative-relative pronoun, we begin with the dependent question and the relative clause (substantive and adjective clauses respectively).

1. THE INDIRECT, OR DEPENDENT, QUESTION¹

A. 330 ff., 573 ff.; D. 812 ff.; B. 300; G. 460 ff.

161. A question not directly addressed to a listener may become subject or object of a verb, or otherwise dependent, and is then called an indirect question, requiring the subjunctive and tenses suited to that of the main verb (cp. § 64). If another clause depends upon the indirect question, it will have the same mood.

causa quae sit vidētis, *you see what the situation is* (69 4)

a. If a question with **-ne** or **num** becomes indirect, these signs of the question lose their usual distinctions (§ 32). In Cicero **nōnne** is used in such questions only after **quaerō**. In a double indirect question **necne** takes the place of **annōn** (§ 34).

quaesivī . . . fuisset necne, *I asked whether he had been . . . or not* (25 8)

For such a question introduced by **sī**, *to see whether, whether*, cp. § 266.

162. **Nesciō an** and **haud sciō an** mean *I don't know but, I rather think*, or simply *perhaps*. **Nesciō quis** may lose the interrogative sense and mean nothing more than **aliquis**.

a. Indirect questions must be carefully distinguished from relative clauses.

¹ For direct questions cp. §§ 28 ff.

2. THE RELATIVE CLAUSE

Relative and Antecedent

A. 304 ff.; D. 551 ff.; B. 250 f.; G. 610 ff.

163. Out of an original direct question was slowly developed the relative clause; for the pronoun was at first always interrogative. A question might be followed by something like an answer, usually marked by a demonstrative pronoun, and the two parts were so closely linked in thought that the question element gradually became subordinate. Thus, as the question lost its independent value, the interrogative pronoun by degrees became a relative; and the fossil question, now a relative clause, often kept its place at the beginning of the sentence. But the expected demonstrative may be omitted.

164. In many cases the so-called antecedent, or word to which the relative refers, stood in the second part of the sentence, following, instead of preceding.

quōs . . . esse inflammātōs sciēham, eōs . . . remānsisse, that those whom I knew to be aroused . . . had remained (36 13)

Ut, cum, and other conjunctions may be immediately followed by a relative whose antecedent is reserved for another clause.

165. Commonly an antecedent, with or without a demonstrative pronoun, does in fact precede the relative clause.

fōns . . . cui nōmen Arethūsa est, a fountain which bears the name Arethusa (148 21)

166. Often the antecedent appears in both clauses (relative clause and main sentence).

certō diē, quī diēs futūrus esset, etc., on a certain day, which was to be the, etc. (5 27)

167. Another order is demonstrative, relative clause, antecedent.

ea quam dixi Īnsula, the Island which I mentioned, the aforesaid Island (148 15)

Cases of this kind help us to understand that a relative clause is usually equivalent to an expanded adjective.

168. A survival of the ancient question is seen in the so-called incorporation of the antecedent in the relative clause.

ut, quam urbem . . . flōrentissimam . . . esse voluērunt, hanc . . . dēfendant, that they defend this city, whose prosperity they have ordained (lit. that, what city they have willed should be most prosperous, they defend this [city]) (33 3)

quae gēns ūna restat, the only remaining nation (lit. what people alone remains) (46 17)

a. In the last example, and many like it, the whole relative clause resembles an appositive, referring back to another word which is recalled in a new antecedent set in the relative clause.

169. A relative clause virtually equivalent to an enlarged appositive often precedes that to which it refers.

quod maximē tempus hoc postulat, what the situation requires most of all (followed by a description of the type of man needed) (Mur. 83)

Connecting, Furnishing Subject or Object

A. 308; 307, *b.*; D. 564, 559; B. 251, 4, 6; G. 610, 616

170. As a link of connection with a previous sentence or clause the relative pronoun very frequently serves in place of a conjunction (*and, and yet, but, for, so, etc.*) with a personal or demonstrative pronoun. Thus the relative becomes equivalent to *et is, is enim*, etc.

quī spem Catilinae . . . aluērunt, and they have fed the hopes of Catiline (15 22)

māllem sēcum . . . ēdūxisset: quī sī hīc permanent, I wish he had taken them away with him; but if they remain here (21 13)

171. A relative clause from which we get a subject not otherwise expressed may be viewed in the light of an expanded substantive. Thus in the English "who steals my purse, steals trash" we are taught to supply *he* with the main verb; but the untutored turns the relative clause unconsciously into "the thief of my purse."

quī . . . sē in urbe commōverit, whoever stirs (future) in the city = any (future) rioter in the city (32 5)

quī accessistis Hennam, any visitors to Henna among you (144 30)

172. Similarly a relative clause may serve as an enlarged object.

quae ego dēferrem, my report (20 13)

quae s̄anāri poterunt, what can be healed (the curable) (24 18)

Here *ea* may be supplied, but rather as a matter of formal analysis than as needed for prompt understanding of what is meant.

Description, Result, with dignus, Purpose

A. 534 ff.; 531, 2; D. 726 ff., 735, 715 ff.; B. 282 ff.; G. 630 f.

173. A relative clause with the indicative mood, usually explanatory, may describe a person or thing.

is . . . imperātor quī sē ipse nōn continet, a general who does not have himself in hand (83 25)

174. Much more usually the descriptive relative clause, characterizing a person or thing, has the subjunctive (cp. § 178). Frequently there is a negative expressed or implied. Sometimes the idea of purpose or result is present.

nēmō est . . . quī tē nōn metuat, there is no one who does not fear you (8 18)

habēs ubi ostentēs tuam . . . patientiam, you have a chance to display your endurance (lit. *where you may*) (14 4)

quid est quod . . . dubitētis? what (reason) is there why you should be in doubt? (103 11)

175. Many relative clauses with the subjunctive clearly express a result. Such a relative result clause is often indistinguishable from the descriptive type.

quī nōn . . . patiātur, as not to permit (108 2)

quae nōn ferrō . . . dēbilitārī . . . possit, that it cannot be weakened by the sword (117 21)

176. Relative clauses with the subjunctive follow certain adjectives, as *dignus, indignus, idōneus*.

nōn dignum quod in suō argentō Verrēs habēret, not worthy to be kept by Verres in his (collection of) silver (134 11)

dignōs . . . quōrum salūtem tālī virō commendētis, deserving to have you commit their safety to such a man (72 18)

177. Very frequent are relative clauses of purpose with the subjunctive (cp. § 174).

quī ex aedibus Cethēgī . . . efferret, to bring (lit. who should bring) from the house of Cethegus (38 6)

nōn quae mē tegeter, not to protect me (Mur. 52)

For clauses with the relative adverbs *ubi*, *unde*, *quō*, cp. §§ 204–206.

Cause, Concession, Restriction, Proviso

A. 535, *d, e*; D. 729 f.; B. 283, 3, 5; G. 627, 633 f.

178. The relative descriptive clause with the subjunctive may be used to state a reason or explanation.

peccāsse mihi videor quī ā tē discesserim, I seem to have made a mistake in leaving you (182 9)

quī tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēneris, since you found in Homer a herald of your valor (110 6)

In this use *quī* is equivalent to *cum is*, *cum ego*, *cum tū*, etc.; and the causal relation is often made clearer by combining *ut*, or *quippe*, or *praesertim* with *quī*.

179. With the subjunctive a relative clause, noncommittal at first sight, may prove to be concessive or adversative (*although, whereas*) (cp. § 55, *c*).

quī paulō ante aliquid . . . respondisset, although he had made some answer a little while before (39 16)

180. A relative clause may make a restriction or add a proviso.

a. With the subjunctive:

quī modo tolerābili condiōne sit servitūtis, at least if (provided) his lot as a slave is endurable (60 20)

quod commodō valētūdinis tuae fiat, so far as may be done without detriment to your health (181 17)

b. With the indicative:

quod ad mē attinet, so far as I am concerned (Ros. Am. 120)

Indirect, Attraction, General Relatives ; Other Uses

A. 591 ff., 519; D. 905, 801, 907; B. 323 f., 312; G. 628 f., 625

181. Indirect. Wherever a relative clause contains the thought, reason, etc. of another, or of the speaker at another time, the verb must be in the subjunctive. Such a clause is often dependent upon an infinitive, or upon the subjunctive verb of another dependent clause.

praemium prōposuit, quī invēnisset novam voluptātem, *offered a reward to the discoverer of a new pleasure* (*Tusc. Disp.* V, 20)

182. Attraction. Any relative clause which would normally have the indicative may have the subjunctive by attraction to another subjunctive clause, or as an integral part of a thought involving an infinitive or a gerund.

initium quae vellem . . . dicendī, *the beginning of saying what I please* (115 4)

183. General relatives. Another class of relative clauses is introduced by an indefinite relative pronoun, — **quisquis**, *whoever*; **quidquid**, *whatever*; **quicumque** (or **quī**), *whoever*; etc., — or by the corresponding adverbs (conjunctions), as **ubicumque**, *wherever*; **utcumque**, *whenever*. Such clauses regularly show the indicative. They are very often equivalent to general conditions (**sī quis**, **ut quis**, etc.), and as such may take any of the conditional forms (cp. §§ 250 ff., 171).

184. Other relative words are the adjectives **quantus**, **quālis**, **quot**, having as their demonstrative counterparts **tantus**, **tālis**, **tot**.

a. So varied are the uses to which a relative clause may be put that it is necessary to avoid haste in identifying the function of this unit, and in attempting to translate before one has appraised the entire context, with particular attention to what follows. This caution applies even to relative clauses with the indicative. For example:

in quō est aliquid extrēmum (equivalent to **sī in eō**, etc.), *if it has any end* (124 16)

b. Where a relative clause was introduced by **ubi**, *where*, *when*; **unde**, *whence*; **quō**, *whither*; **ut**, *how*, etc., these relative adverbs soon became conjunctions (see §§ 185 ff., 204 ff.). This was also the history of **cum**, **quam**, **quod**, **quān**, etc.

3. UT-CLAUSES

Independent: Question, Exclamation, Wish

A. 462, a; 442; D. 843, a; 680 ff.; B. 279; G. 558, 261

185. Ut was originally an interrogative adverb derived from **quis?** **quī?** and accordingly meant *how?* (also *where?* like **ubi**, which had the same origin). Thus in conversation **ut valēs?** meant *how are you?* In our texts, however, questions introduced by **ut** are regularly indirect, and often follow verbs of seeing and showing (cp. §§ 161 f.).

186. One type of direct question with **ut** and the subjunctive is that which with scornful emphasis repudiates something as absurd or impossible.

tē ut ūlla rēs frangat? *anything crush you?* (12 12)

tū ut illā carēre . . . possis? *you be able to dispense with that?*
(13 13)

Similar questions occur without **ut** (cp. § 55, d).

187. Questions easily pass into exclamations.

ut contempsit ac prō nihilō putāvit! *how he despised and pooh-poohed!* (Mil. 64)

188. Wishes, more or less exclamatory, were in early Latin introduced by **ut** or **utī**, but later regularly by the strengthened **utinam**.

utinam tibi istam mentem dī immortalēs duint! *may the immortal gods give you that intention!* (12 14)

utinam ille . . . cōpiās ēdūxisset! *would that he had led out his forces!* (20 26)

These examples show how the tense distinguishes a wish still possible of fulfillment from one which can no longer be realized.

The uses just described are found in independent sentences, the **ut**-clause being complete in itself. Most **ut**-clauses are dependent, being subordinated to another verb.

Dependent: Purpose, Fear, Result

A. 530 ff., 537 f., 563 ff.; D. 720 ff., 732, 737 ff.; B. 282, 284, 295 ff.; G. 544 ff.

a. Purpose Clauses

189. When placed in the same sentence with another clause (the main statement) a clause introduced by **ut**, *how*, came by degrees to express no longer a wish, coördinate to the main clause, but the purpose of the principal action, to which it became subordinate.

tollere incipiunt, ut referrent, *they begin to lift it, in order to carry it back* (138 3)

expōnam, . . . ut . . . scīre possitis, *I will explain, that you may know* (35 20)

190. Such an **ut**-clause of purpose is equivalent to an adverb, — an adverbial modifier of the verb upon which it depends, usually the main verb. More loosely attached, it may give the purpose of the speaker or writer.

ut terrae mōtūs relinquam, *to say nothing about the earthquakes* (44 9)
ut aliud nihil dicam, *to say no more (nothing else)* (Mur. 32)

191. To prepare the way for a purpose clause, a demonstrative term was often inserted in advance, as **ita**, **eō**, **ideō**, **idcirco**, **eā mente**, **hōc cōsiliō**, etc.

192. Such a clause may become a *substantive*, to be used as subject, predicate, object (especially after verbs of *advising*, *requesting*, *decreeing*, *commanding*, *willing*, *taking care* (including **faciō**), etc.), or in apposition (cp. **quod**-clauses, § 236).

tē ōrō ut . . . ad mē scribās, *I beg you to write to me* (162 18)

mandāta . . . ut servōrum praesidiō ūterētur, *instructions to make use of slave troops* (38 16)

193. If a purpose clause is negative, **ut** is sometimes followed by **nē**, or by **nōn** if the negative affects a single expression.

ut istī abs tē nē auferantur, *that those (cups) may not be taken from you* (134 6)

ut plūra nōn dicam, *to refrain from saying more* (85 23)

a. But in general **nē** alone (without **ut**) introduces a negative purpose clause. In other words, **nē** itself became a conjunction (cp. § 272). For other ways of expressing purpose cp. §§ 177, 80, 82, 84, 93.

b. Clauses expressing a Fear (Negative)

194. The wish that a thing might happen (an **ut**-clause, § 188) was joined with a verb of fearing, added to express one's apprehension, as the desire might not be attained. This amounted to saying one feared that the thing desired might *not* be realized. Thus the **ut**-clause became substantive.

vereor ut hoc . . . intellegi possit, *I fear this cannot be understood*
(originally, *I am afraid (have my doubts), — may this be intelligible!*) (**119 11**)

verēri . . . ut habeam, *to fear that I may not have* (**59 7**)

For the positive fearing clause (with **nē**, since the outcome is undesirable) cp. § 275.

c. Result Clauses

195. A clause with **ut** and the subjunctive often denotes a result. Most frequently it is an adverbial modifier of the governing verb, which commonly precedes.

ut ā senātū . . . perspicī possent, *so that they could be seen clearly by the senate* (**45 16**)

196. If negative, a result clause will contain **nōn** (not **nē**, as in purpose clauses), **nēmō**, **nūllus**, **nihil**, etc., or a negative verb, as **nesciō**.

ut nōn plūris sēcum . . . trahant, *(in such a way) as not to drag more with them* (**74 29**)

Sometimes such a clause is best rendered by *without* and a verbal noun, as *without dragging more with them*, in the above example.

197. If the negative is to be followed by an affirmative, **nōn ut** is preferred to **ut nōn**.

nōn ut ab hoste aliquō . . . sed ut ā barbaris praedōnibus vexāta esse videātur, *so that it has the appearance of having been ravaged not by some foe, but by barbarian pirates* (**150 12**)

198. Often the result clause has a correlative demonstrative term, as *ita, sic, is, tantus, talis*.

tanta fuit operis tarditās ut, etc., such was the slowness of the work that, etc. (45 18)

ita triumphārent ut ille . . . rēgnāret, they triumphed without his ceasing to reign (70 7)

In the latter case the effect is that of a restriction.

199. A result clause with *ut, ut nōn*, etc. may lose its adverbial force and become a substantive, as subject, object (of such a verb as *faciō* or *efficiō*), predicate, or appositive (cp. § 192).

fēcerat autem hoc senātus, ut . . . cūctus cōsurgeret, this was what the senate had done, — it rose in a body (201 8)

nōlī committere ut . . . expleās, etc., do not think of performing, etc. (204 5)

fore ut . . . nōn possem, that I should be unable (20 20)

reliquum est ut . . . pauca dicāmus, it remains for me to say a few words (86 28)

tantum abest ut . . . videar, ut . . . intellegam, I am so far from seeming . . . that I understand, etc. (substantive clause followed by adverbial clause) (96 29)

illud . . . , ut . . . signum statuerētur, the circumstance that the statue was being set up (45 28)

Dependent: Time, Concession, Proviso, Comparison

A. 543; 527 f.; 323, a; D. 745 f., 748, 809; B. 287, 278; G. 561 ff.; 608; 552, R.

d. Temporal Clauses with *ut*

200. A temporal clause may be introduced by *ut, when* or *since* (*ever since*). The verb is regularly in the perfect indicative or, if repeated action is involved, in the pluperfect (past perfect).

ut vēnī ad urbem, since I came to the city (186 13)

ut Brundisiō profectus est, from the date of his departure from Brundisium (82 14)

Messānam ut quisque nostrum vēnerat, whenever one of us came to Messana (132 4)

a. To **ut** may be added **primum**, to denote *as soon as* (cp. § 204, *ò*).

ut primum ex pueris excessit Archiās, *as soon as Archias advanced beyond boyhood* (100 19)

e. Concessive **ut**-Clauses

201. A subjunctive clause with **ut** may denote a concession. Originally it expressed a wish (§ 188), but acquired a concessive sense when fully subordinated to the main clause.

ut reliqua ex sententiā succēdant, *even supposing the other matters turn out as we wish* (*ad Brut.* I, 9, 3)

The subjunctive without **ut** is sometimes used in the same way (cp. § 55, *c*).

f. Proviso Clause with **ut**

202. An **ut**-clause may contain a proviso, especially if **modo** or **ita** precedes (cp. § 276). This also was originally a wish.

modo ut haec nōbīs loca tenēre liceat, *provided (if) only I am permitted to keep this district* (185 10)

g. Comparative **ut**-Clauses

203. An **ut**-clause with the indicative may make a real comparison, involving a matter of fact.

ut opīnor, *as I think, in my opinion* (10 16)

ut potuī, *as best I could* (10 27)

a. The main clause may have a corresponding demonstrative term, as **ita** or **sic**; or **sicut** may take the place of **ut**.

vivēs ita ut nunc vivis, *you will live as you are now living* (5 14)

b. Such a comparison may serve as a restriction (**ut** = *in so far as*); or it may border on the causal clause.

ut hominem praestāre oportet, *so far as a mere man should guarantee* (96 24)

ut semper fuit apertissimus, *having always been perfectly frank* (*Mur.* 51)

c. The combination of an **ita**-clause with an **ut**-clause may be compared to an equation, the two statements balancing each other as equally true. Thus in asseveration, comparable to an oath.

ita mihi salvā rē publicā vōbiscum perfrui liceat, ut ego . . . nōn atrōcitatē animi moveor, lit. *so may I be permitted to enjoy*, etc., *as*, etc.; but in English we substitute *as* for *so*, and omit any equivalent for **ut**, — *as I hope I may enjoy with you the safety of the state, . . . I am not impelled by cruelty in my heart* (57 15)

4. CLAUSES WITH **UBI**, **UNDE**, **QUŌ**, **QUOAD**, **QUŌ MINUS**

Place, Time, Purpose, Result

a. **Ubi**-Clauses and **unde**-Clauses

A. 531, 2; 537, 2; 542 f.; D. 716, 735, 745 ff.; B. 282, 2; 287; G. 630 f., 561 ff

204. A clause introduced by **ubi** denotes

a. The place where; and if descriptive, or if it involves the idea of a purpose or result, it must have the subjunctive. Here **ubi** is a relative adverb.

habēs ubi ostentēs tuam . . . patientiam famis, *you have a chance to display your endurance of hunger* (144)

nihil est . . . ubi . . . resistāmus, *there is no place where we may get our footing again* (Mur. 84)

b. The time when (**ubi** a conjunction); usually with the perfect indicative.

quī mē ubi vidērunt, *and when they saw me* (134 2)

For *as soon as* **ubi primum** is common (cp. **ut primum**, § 200, a; **cum primum**, § 223 fin.; and **simul atque**, § 277).

205. A clause introduced by the relative adverb **unde** denotes the place from which, the source, or the person from whom. If descriptive, or if it involves a purpose or result, the mood is subjunctive.

nihil est . . . unde nōs reficiāmus, *we have no means of recovering ourselves* (Mur. 84)

unde discerem, *from whom I might learn* (Cato Maior, 12)

b. Clauses with *quō*, *quoad*, *quō minus*

A. 531, *a*; 540, N. 3; 553 ff.; 558, *b*; D. 718; 770; 762; 764 f.; 720, III;
 B. 282, I, *a*; 286, I, *b*; 293; 295, 3; G. 545, 2; 541, N. 2; 571 f.; 549

206. A clause introduced by the relative adverb *quō* may denote the place whither, etc., with the subjunctive if descriptive or expressing purpose or result.

quō quemque proficisci placēret, to what place you preferred to have each one go (7 1)

ullam . . . ōram tam dēsertam . . . quō nōn . . . fāma pervāserit, any shore so desolate that the report has not reached it (85 18)

207. Another type of purpose clause, with *quō* as a conjunction, almost always contains a comparative adjective or adverb.

quō plūs apud illum meae litterae . . . valērent, that my letters might have more effect upon him (187 16)

Note that one does not say *ut plūs*, *ut plūrēs*, and the like.

208. A clause with *nōn quō* (or with *neque* for *nōn*) with the subjunctive states a reason only for the purpose of rejecting it, usually in contrast with the real reason; cp. § 237 (*nōn quod*).

nōn quō quicquam metueret, not that he had any fear (137 17)

209. *Quō* combines with *ad* to form *quoad*, *until*, *as long as*, introducing clauses of time. If the *until*-clause involves expectation or anticipation, *quoad* is followed by a verb in the subjunctive.

210. Clauses with *quō minus* express purpose, — *that . . . not*, *in order that . . . not*, often after such verbs as *impediō*, *dēterreō*, *prohibeō*,¹ and other expressions of *hindering*. If the main verb has a negative (even implied, as in a question), *quīn* is commonly preferred to *quō minus*; but exceptions are numerous (cp. § 211).

quō minus . . . praetōrem occīderet, to stand in the way of his killing the praetor (42 22)

¹ But the usual construction with *prohibeō* is the accusative and infinitive.

5. QUĪN-CLAUSES

A. 558 f.; D. 720, III f.; 725; 728; 735, N.; B. 283 f.; 295, 3; 298; G. 554 ff., 632

211. Quīn, originally an interrogative (*quī-ne?* *why not?*), may introduce a result clause in a negative sentence, or in a question implying a negative.

numquam tam male est Siculīs quīn aliquid facētē . . . dicant, the Sicilians are never so badly off that they do not have something witty to say (142 13)

212. Quīn introduces also substantive clauses in negative sentences, or in questions implying a negative; commonly with verbs of *hindering, delaying, doubting*, etc., as *dēterreō, retineō, dubitō*, and similar expressions, as *nōn est dubium* (cp. §§ 210, 246).

et quisquam dubitābit quīn huic hoc tantum bellum permittendum sit? and will anyone doubt that this great war should be intrusted to this man? (85 3)

213. Quīn-clauses may also describe a person or thing (*quīn = qui nōn*). Here again the sentence is negative, or virtually so.

Messānam . . . nēmō vēnit quīn vīserit, no one came to Messana without going to see, etc. (133 7)

Nōn quīn is found in causal clauses, *not that . . . not, not but that*, etc. (cp. §§ 208, 237).

6. QUAM-CLAUSES

A. 323, *g*; 551; 543; 571, *a*; 555, N. 2; D. 745, 747 f., 762, 733; B. 291 f.; 283, 2, *a*; G. 574 ff., 561 ff., 298, 568 f.

214. A comparison may take the form of a clause introduced by *quam* (*how, how much*), especially if a comparative (as *potius, prius*, etc.) or the demonstrative *tam* has preceded. The clause requires a subjunctive if the will is involved.

lātius patet . . . quam quisquam putat, is more far-reaching than any one thinks (Mur. 78)

215. If the comparison is a matter of time, **ante**, **prius**, or **post** (**postea**) is used with **quam**. With **postquam** (**posteaquam**) the perfect indicative is regular. With **antequam** and also **priusquam** the indicative mood is used, unless an idea of preparation or forestalling (i. e. purpose) is present, in which case the subjunctive is required.

ante quam . . . dicere instituō, *before I begin to speak* (*Mur.* 2)

posteaquam attulērunt, *after they had brought it* (**137** 27)

antequam dē meō adventū audire potuissent, *before they could have got wind of my coming* (*Planc.* 98)

Instead of **post** one sometimes finds **postridiē**, *on the day after*, followed by **quam**.

216. Result or descriptive clauses may follow **quam** or **quam ut**, with a comparative preceding.

aliquantō amplius quam ferre possent, *considerably more than they could bear* (*Verr.* IV, 76)

217. **Quam** combines with **diū** in time clauses. Cp. **dum**, § 240.

quam diū quisquam erit, *so long as there is (shall be) anyone* (**5** 13)

7. QUAMQUAM-CLAUSES AND QUAMVIS-CLAUSES

A. 527; D. 806 f., 809; B. 309; G. 603, 605 f.

218. **Quamquam**, *however*, was at first an adverb from the indefinite relative pronoun **quisquis** (cp. § 183). As conjunction it has two distinct uses:

a. It introduces indicative clauses making a statement of fact, set over against the main clause and in a concessive or adversative relation to it, — *although, whereas, in spite of the fact that*.

quamquam vidētis, tamen, *although you see, yet, etc.* (**82** 1)

b. It introduces the whole sentence and means *however, and yet*.

quamquam quid loquor? *and yet what am I saying?* (**12** 12)

219. **Quamvis**, *as much as you please* (**vis** from **volō**), introduces a concession of indifference, — *no matter how, however much, although*. The subjunctive mood is required to distinguish this kind of conces-

sion, which may be for argument's sake only, from the real admission of a fact with **quamquam** and the indicative. **Quamvis** is also used as an adverb, *however, howsoever*, modifying an adjective or adverb.

quamvis sit senex, *though he be an old man* (Cato Maior, 25)

8. CUM-CLAUSES

Temporal, Explanatory, Circumstantial

A. 545 ff.; 549, a; D. 749 ff.; B. 288 ff.; G. 579 ff., 588

220. Cum (quom), *when*, a case-form of **quis**, **quī**, and therefore properly a relative word, is often linked in some way with an antecedent term, expressed or implied. Such an antecedent may be a noun of time, as **annus**, **diēs**, or the adverb **tum**. The clause defines more or less sharply the time of an occurrence, and the mood is indicative.

tum cum ex urbe Catilinam ēiciēbam, *at the time I was driving (or trying to drive) Catiline out of the city* (36 8)

221. Identity of time, as between a **cum**-clause with the indicative and a main clause with **tum**, leads to the use of **cum . . . tum** as an equivalent for **et . . . et**, except that the second is the stronger term (*not only . . . but also*; or **tum** may be rendered *and in particular (especially)*, while **cum** is left untranslated).

222. Sometimes identity of time carries with it identity of purport or meaning, so that the clause explains one thing by identifying it in effect with another. **Cum**-clauses of this kind are explanatory, and *when* becomes *in that*. The mood is indicative and there is no correlative **tum**. This indicative **cum**-clause is used also with verbs of *rejoicing, thanking*, etc. (**cum** = *that*).

cum quiēscunt, probant, *in keeping still they approve, their inaction is (or means) approval* (12 2)

quem . . . cum ex urbe pellēbam, *and in driving him from the city* (43 2)

223. Most temporal **cum**-clauses with the indicative have no correlative, and they *define* the time of an action with a precision comparable to that of a date or hour, being equivalent to **eō tempore quō**, etc.

cum . . . simulācra deōrum dēpulsa sunt, *at the time when statues of the gods were thrown down* (44 15)

Contrast circumstantial **cum**-clauses with the subjunctive (§ 226). With the indicative **cum primum** means *as soon as* (cp. § 204, b).

224. Such a defining time clause may be general, covering repeated instances (*whenever*). The mood is indicative, with tenses usually marking an interval between the action of the **cum**-clause and that of the main verb. Contrast the English habit of using the same tense in both clauses.

cum vēnit calamitās, tum dētrimentum accipitur, *when misfortune comes* (lit. *has come*), *then one suffers loss* (73 15)

neque . . . cum aliquid mandārat, cōfectum putābat, *and having given an order, he did not consider the thing done* (43 11)

In Cicero's time the **cum**-clause, meaning *whenever*, etc., had the subjunctive only in rare instances.

225. A temporal clause with **cum** and the indicative may follow a main clause which describes the circumstances. Here the action of more importance assumes the outward form of a time clause with **cum** and the indicative. This inverted construction is called **cum inversum**.

vixdum epistulam tuam lēgeram, cum . . . Curtius vēnit, *I had hardly read your letter, when Curtius came* (Att. IX, 2 a, 3)

226. **Cum**, being relative in origin, was no less competent to introduce a descriptive clause than **quī** (cp. § 174), and such a circumstantial clause pictures the situation in which something happens or is true, without attempting to fix date or hour. The mood is accordingly subjunctive, generally imperfect or pluperfect (past or past perfect).

cum tū in Graeciā essēs, *while you were in Greece* (180 11)

cum ego Hennam vēnissem, *after I arrived at Henna* (145 18)

227. The whole **cum**-clause may be equivalent to a present participle.

quās sibi cum ipsa praeferret, *and holding these before her* (143 15)

228. Circumstantial **cum**-clauses with the subjunctive picture a situation by *describing* the circumstances. They do not directly answer the question *when*? That is the function of the temporal **cum**-clause with the indicative, which stamps the date or hour of the occurrence (§ 223).

Causal, Concessive, Adversative

A. 549; D. 754 f.; B. 286, 2; 309, 3; G. 586 f.

229. Often a **cum**-clause with the subjunctive gives something more than a mere attendant circumstance, viz. the cause, or a cause, of the main action. Here **cum** is *since* or causal *when*. Correlative **tum** may follow.

cum . . . **auctōritātis in mē tantum sit**, *since I have just so much prestige* (67 17)

cum hospes esset Heiōrum, *being a guest-friend of the Heii* (132 17)

230. **Cum**-clauses with the subjunctive are often concessive or adversative. Here **cum** is *although, whereas, while, in spite of the fact that*.

cum primō impudenter respondēre coepisset, *whereas he had at first begun with insolent answers* (40 21)

cum in eādē causā in quā ego fuisset, *although he had been in the same situation as myself* (115 13)

a. To make the bearing of such a clause at once clear, **tamen**, *still, nevertheless*, is often added in the main clause. **Tum** is also used with the main clause. With concessive **cum**-clauses compare those with **quamquam, quamvis, etsi** (§§ 218 f., 268).

b. Concession may be expressed by an ablative absolute (§ 153), or even by a single word (noun, adjective, or participle) so placed that the context gives it the coloring of a concession.

9. QUONIAM-CLAUSES

A. 540, *a*; D. 769; B. 286; G. 539 ff.

231. **Quoniam** is a compound of **quom** (**cum**) and **iam**, but this *when now, now that*, passed over from the temporal to the causal sense, and thus means *because, since*. It introduces a causal clause with the indicative, stating some fact which furnishes a reason.

quoniam . . . **ipsa susceptiō causae reprehēnsa est**, *inasmuch as the mere acceptance of the case has been criticized* (Mur. 2)

a. If the reason is that of another person, or of the speaker or writer at another time, the mood is subjunctive (cp. §§ 181, 289).

10. QUIA-CLAUSES AND QUANDŌ-CLAUSES

A. 540; 572, b; 592, 3; D. 768 ff.; B. 286; G. 539 ff.

232. Other causal clauses are introduced by **quia** and **quandō**, *because, since, when* (causal), and have the indicative, unless the reason is as in § 231, a. **Quandō** was originally *when?* and never lost that interrogative use.

quia nihil timēbant, *since they had no fear* (Mur. 51)

tū quandō Rōmam salvus . . . vēnistī, *since you have come safe to Rome* (180 8)

11. QUOD-CLAUSES

A. 540; 572; 592, 3; D. 768, 770, 821 ff.; B. 286, 299; G. 524 f., 539 ff.

233. **Quod** (probably the accusative neuter of the relative pronoun, *as for which* or *what*) means *the fact that* (§ 235), *in that* (§ 234), *because, since*. It introduces indicative clauses, except when indirect, as explained under **quoniam** (§ 231, a).

quod nōndum perfectum templum offenderant, *since they (had) found the temple still unfinished* (137 3)

quod . . . prōvidentiā meā rēs pūblica . . . sit liberāta, *because by my foresight the state had been freed* (quoting a decree of the senate) (41 15)

234. The **quod**-clause may be explanatory, rather than causal (**quod** = *that, in that*).

quod mihi grātiās ēgistis, *in that you have thanked me, in thanking me* (53 12)

235. The whole **quod**-clause may be treated as a substantive, serving as subject or object, as an appositive, or in a relation like that of an accusative of specification (**quod** = *the fact that, as for the fact that, so far as*).

quid quod tū tē in cūstōdiam dedistī? *what of the fact that you had yourself put under arrest?* (11 2)

quod salūs sociōrum . . . in periculum . . . vocātur, quō . . . animō ferre dēbētis? *with what feelings ought you to take the fact that the safety of the allies is endangered?* (71 22)

236. As subject or object, or as appositive, this kind of **quod**-clause in some cases hardly differs from an **ut**-clause so used (cp. §§ 192, 199). For **quid est quod** ? cp. § 174 fin.

237. **Nōn quod** may introduce a rejected reason (more frequently with **nōn quō**, § 208). Here **nōn quod** is *not that, not because*, and has the subjunctive.

238. All the clauses described above in §§ 185–237 go back for their origin to the interrogative-relative pronoun. Their introductory conjunctions became such only by degrees, and were previously forms of, or derivatives from, the pronoun **quis, quī**.

The following clauses, described in §§ 239–270, are introduced by conjunctions which were originally demonstrative words, not connected with the interrogative-relative pronoun.

12. **DUM**-CLAUSES AND **DŌNEC**-CLAUSES

A. 553 ff., 528 ; D. 762 ff., 811 ; B. 293, 310 ; G. 568 ff., 573

239. **Dum**, *while*, was a case-form of a noun meaning *a while*, connected with **diēs**, *day*, and **diū**, *a long while* (adverb). A *while*-clause with **dum** has the indicative mood, and almost always the historical present in a narrative. But such a clause may be virtually causal.

dum in istum inquirō, *while I was getting evidence against the defendant* (131 15)

hī dum aedificant, *in their building operations* (28 24)

240. **Dum**, *as long as* (temporal), introduces an indicative clause in any suitable tense.

tam diū dum forum . . . habuit ōrnātum, *so long as he kept the forum decorated* (132 13)

a. **Dōnec** is used in the same way; also **quoad** (§ 209), **quam diū** (§ 217).

241. **Dum**, *until*, introduces a temporal clause with the indicative, unless there is an idea of anticipation or purpose, when the subjunctive is used (cp. **antequam** and **priusquam**, § 215).

nōn exspectāvi dum mihi ā tē litterae redderentur, *I did not wait for the delivery of a letter from you* (190 8)

242. Dum, *provided, if only*, introduces a proviso. Originally the clause was a conditional wish; hence the subjunctive is required. **Dum** is frequently strengthened by **modo**, which is also used alone (cp. § 276). If negative, the clause has **nē**.

dum modo . . . periculum dēpellātur, *if only the danger be averted*
(26 11)

243. Dōnec, *until, so long as* (temporal), is used like **dum**, *until*, (§ 241); but it is rare in the best Latin, and in Cicero is confined to the meaning *until*.

13. SĪ-CLAUSES, CONDITIONAL

A. 511 ff., 521; D. 772 ff., 802; B. 301 ff., 305; G. 589 ff., 598

244. The conjunction **sī**, *if*, was originally a demonstrative adverb, meaning *so, in that case (way), in those circumstances*.¹

245. The most important use of **sī**-clauses is to express a condition, with which is closely linked a conclusion, usually the main clause of a sentence. For both clauses mood and tense are most frequently the same, but very often the sense does not permit so complete a correspondence.

246. The conclusion may be in the form of a wish, a command, an exclamation, a question, direct or indirect. In the last case, that of an indirect question, the entire conditional complex (i. e. condition plus conclusion) is dependent upon the word of asking. The conclusion may be an **ut**-clause of result subordinate to another verb, or a **quīn**-clause depending upon **nōn dubitō** and the like (§ 212). If such a dependent conclusion is contrary to fact in past time,² it is commonly expressed, if possible, by the first periphrastic conjugation, — the future active participle, usually with the perfect subjunctive.

an potest quisquam dubitāre quīn, sī Ligārius in Italiā esse potuisset, in eādē sententiā fuerit futūrus? *can anyone doubt that, if Ligarius could have been in Italy, he would have been of the same mind?* (Lig. 34)

¹ **Sic**, *so*, is a strengthened form of the same word (**sī**-ce, shortened to **sic**).

² Requiring a pluperfect (past perfect) in the independent conclusion.

247. The conclusion may be reduced to a mere interrogative:

quid, si istud nē glōriae quidem satis est? *what if that is not sufficient even for your fame?* (123 26)

248. Conversely, the conclusion may have one of the regular forms, while the condition is merely implied. Thus a participle, an imperative, a phrase (especially an ablative absolute), a clause of a different kind, may do duty instead of the si-clause. Or the verb of the condition may be used without si or other conjunction.

249. Conditional clauses may be conveniently treated according to the time, as *present*, *past*, or *future*.

Present and *past* conditional clauses, in turn, are divided according as (a) they imply nothing as to the actual truth of the statement, in which case they may be described as *neutral* or *noncommittal* conditions; or (b) they clearly show that the supposition is *contrary to fact*.

a. Present Conditions

A. 515, 517 f.; D. 784 ff.; B. 302, 304; G. 595, 597

250. *Neutral*, or *noncommittal*, with indicative mood and present tense.

si mē cōsulis, *if you ask (are asking) my advice* (8 15)

si quid est in mē ingenī, *if I have any ability* (99 1)

251. Exceptions in mood:

a. For an indefinite subject, second person (*you = anyone*), the indicative gives way to a present subjunctive.

si imperāre velīs, *if you choose (one chooses) to give the order* (55 18)

b. The subjunctive is required if the condition is quoted, or if it is merely implied that someone else said or thought this (or the writer or speaker himself at some other time); also if it is part of an indirect question.

252. *Contrary to fact*, or *unreal*, or *unfulfilled*; subjunctive mood, imperfect tense (past). So also in the typical conclusion. To this form of condition, sequence of tenses does not apply (cp. §§ 68, 290).

servi . . . mei si mē . . . metuerent, *if even my slaves feared me* (10 6)

si tibi sōlī viverēs, *if you lived for yourself alone* (123 20)

253. Such a condition may be followed by a conclusion in the indicative, especially if propriety, duty, obligation, necessity, or ability is expressed, or if either periphrastic conjugation is used; also in certain expressions, as *longum erat, it would be tedious* (§ 53, *b*).

b. Past Conditions

A. 515, 517; D. 791 ff., 797 ff.; B. 302, 304; G. 595, 597

254. *Neutral*, or *noncommittal*; indicative mood, one of the past tenses.

sī hoc . . . contigit nēminī, if this has happened to no one (9 28)

255. Exceptions, where the subjunctive mood is used in this kind of condition, are due to the principles explained in § 251.

256. *Contrary to fact*, or *unreal*, or *unfulfilled*; subjunctive pluperfect (past perfect). So also in the typical conclusion. To this form of condition tense sequence does not apply (cp. §§ 68, 252).

sī hoc idem . . . dixissem, if I had said this same thing (11 28)

a. If continued past action is to be expressed, the imperfect (past) subjunctive may be used for the pluperfect (past perfect).

sī nihil . . . litterīs adiuvārentur, if they had not been (continually) helped by books (106 5)

257. Such conditional clauses may be followed by a conclusion in the indicative if propriety, duty, obligation, necessity, or ability is expressed; or in case either periphrastic conjugation is used; also in certain expressions, such as *melius fuit* or *fuerat, it would have been better* (cp. §§ 53, *b*; 253).

c. Future Conditions

A. 516; D. 787 ff., 795; B. 302 f.; G. 595 f.

258. Future conditions have two forms, differing from each other in the sharpness of focus or definition.

a. More vivid; future or future perfect indicative, with future in the normal conclusion. A future perfect in the *sī*-clause commonly

marks the time of the condition as completed before that of the conclusion. In translating a future indicative *in the conclusion* one must carefully note the context, in order to choose the proper auxiliary, — *shall* or *will* according to the sense. Latin verb-forms do not distinguish these shades of meaning (cp. § 60).

sī volēs, *if you wish*, lit. *if you shall¹ wish* (124 13)

sī L. Catilina . . . pertimuerit, *if Lucius Catiline becomes frightened*,
lit. *shall¹ have become frightened* (25 27)

b. Less vivid; with present or perfect subjunctive, while the normal conclusion has the present subjunctive. Between the perfect subjunctive and the present in the **sī**-clause there may be little difference of meaning.

sī mēcum patria . . . loquātur, *if the country should say to me* (14 14)

sī meam spem vis improbōrum fefellerit, *if the violence of wicked men should disappoint my hope* (64 11)

d. Other Matters concerning Conditions

A. 525; 592; 589, *b*, 1; D. 775 ff., 905, 704; B. 306; 323; 268, 4; G. 595, 4;
591 f.; 508, 3; 597, R. 4

259. If there is more than one conditional clause in a sentence, **sī** or **sive** (**seu**) may stand with the first, and **sive** (**seu**) with a second or others.

260. Where a condition is negative, **nōn**, **nēmō**, **nūllus**, **nihil**, etc. are inserted with **sī**; or **nisi**, *if not, unless*, takes the place of **sī** or is combined with it (**nisi sī**).

nisi . . . mihi . . . suāsissem, *if I had not convinced myself* (105 3)

261. If a condition is followed up by a contrasted *but if*, etc., **sīn** is used for the second clause, or follows in the next sentence.

sī est vērus . . . , sīn falsus (est), *if it is true . . . , but if false* (10 31)

An abbreviated form is **sīn minus**, *but if not*, with no verb expressed.

262. If it is stated or implied that the condition reflects the thought or words of another, or of the speaker or writer at another time, the

¹ This strictly correct use of *shall* is formal.

sī-clause must have the subjunctive (cp. § 289). This may be true, for example, in an indirect question containing a **sī**-clause.

sī quid dē his rēbus dicere vellet, *if [as I told him] he wished to say anything about these matters* (39 28)

263. In such conditional clauses, quoted formally or by implication, the tenses are regularly determined by the principles of sequence (§§ 64 ff.). But a contrary-to-fact condition admits of no change of tense (§§ 252, 256).

14. OTHER USES OF **SĪ**-CLAUSES ¹

A. 576, *a*; D. 814, *c*; B. 300, 3; G. 590, N. 2; 460, I, *b*; 595, R. 5 f.

264. Causal. A **sī**-clause may state an admitted fact, explaining the main action by giving a reason for it. For this **sī quidem**, *since indeed*, is commonly preferred to **sī**.

sī vectigālia nervōs esse rei pūblicae semper dūximus, *if (= since) we have always considered revenues the sinews of the state* (74 11)
sī quidem glōria est, *since indeed glory is*, etc. (124 8)

265. Virtually temporal. A **sī**-clause may throw no doubt upon the performance of a future action.

sī dēscripserint librārii, i.e. *as soon as the scribes have completed the copy* (*ad Att.* XII, 14, 3)

266. Indirect question. As our English *if* may introduce an indirect question, so sometimes **sī** (*whether, if, to see whether*) in Latin, especially if the idea of seeing, or waiting to find out, is expressed or implied.

expectandum esse, sī quid certius adferrētur, *must wait to see whether any more definite information was received* (*Ep.* XV, 1, 2)

267. Proviso. This form of proviso with **sī modo**, *if only*, has the indicative mood. Contrast **dum**-clauses (*provided, if only*) (§ 242).

sī modo haec stābunt, *if only these things (i.e. the state) stand(s)* (*ad Att.* XII, 19, 1)

¹ For most of these no references to our smaller grammars can be furnished.

15. CLAUSES WITH **ETSĪ**, **ETIAM SĪ**, **TAMETSĪ**A. 527, *c, d*; D. 808, 806; B. 309, 2; G. 604

268. **Etsī** and **etiam sī** may take the place of **sī** in any of the forms of conditional clause.

Concessive or adversative clauses may be introduced by **etsī**, **etiam sī**, **tametsī**, all in the sense of *although* (cp. **quamquam**, § 218, *a*).

tametsī urbem . . . cēperat . . . tamen, *although (it) had taken a city . . . yet* (77 13)

269. If **etsī** and **tametsī** stand at the head of the main sentence or of a parenthesis, they mean *and yet* (again like **quamquam**, § 218, *b*).

tametsī quī magis sunt tuī? *and yet who are more truly your friends?* (122 8)

16. CONDITIONAL COMPARISONS WITH **QUASI**, **TAMQUAM SĪ**, ETC.

A. 524; D. 803; B. 307; G. 602

270. Conditional clauses of comparison are introduced by words meaning *as if*. Such clauses contain mere suppositions or impressions, but, in spite of their unreality, they take the form of a less vivid future conditional clause, and are not treated as contrary to fact. The tenses of the subjunctive are therefore present or perfect, unless sequence requires a secondary tense. The particles thus used are **quasi** (= **quam sī**), **tamquam sī** (or **tamquam** alone), **ut sī**, **velut sī**, and rarely **ac sī**.

quasi . . . Pompeium nōn . . . magnum esse videāmus, *as though we did not see that Pompey is great*, etc. (95 13)

271. A few conjunctions which introduce subordinate clauses are not derived either from the interrogative-relative pronoun (as **ut**, **cum**, etc., §§ 185–237), nor yet from words demonstrative in character (as **dum**, **sī**, etc., §§ 239–270; cp. § 238).

The most important of the conjunctions in this third and last group is **nē**, originally a mere negative (cp. §§ 193, 242), and as such frequently found in main clauses (exhortation, prohibition, wish, etc.; §§ 55 f.).

17. **NĒ**-CLAUSES

A. 531 f.; 558, *b*; 564; D. 713 f., 720; B. 282, 295 f.; G. 543 ff., 550

272. *Purpose clauses* requiring a negative. Such a clause may merely give the purpose of speaker or writer in expressing himself as he does. For affirmative purpose clauses cp. §§ 189 ff.

nē commovēre tē contrā rem pūblicam possis, *that you may be unable to bestir yourself against the state* (5 16)

nē longum sit, *not to be tedious* (cp. § 53, *b*) (39 10)

a. A second or third negative purpose clause is introduced by **nēve**, **neu** (rarely **neque** or **nec**); and in these cases **nēve** (**neu**) may take the place of the first **nē** (cp. **sive**, § 259).

273. *Substantive clauses* with **nē**, involving in some form a *purpose*, *will*, or *desire*. Such clauses are the objects of many verbs of *asking*, *admonishing*, *persuading*, *commanding*, *forbidding*, *hindering*, *refusing*, or otherwise expressing *will*. If these verbs are used in the passive, the **nē**-clause becomes subject. It may be used also as an appositive.

vidēret nē quid rēs pūblica dētrīmentī caperet, *should see that the state suffered no harm* (4 15)

eā condiciōne nē quid postea scriberet, *upon condition that he should never write anything again* (111 10)

274. *Substantive clauses* with **nē**, expressing *fear* or *apprehension* (*that*, *lest*). Such clauses were at first independent, expressing the wish that something might not happen. But the added verb of fearing in time annexed the **nē**-clause, now subordinate. Cp. the similar **ut**-clause, *that not*, § 194.

vereor nē idem eveniat, *I fear that the same thing may happen* (176 9)

275. Where the fear is that something may *not* happen, the usual **ut** is sometimes replaced by **nē nōn**, — regularly so when the verb of fearing itself is negated, expressly or by implication. Thus **nōn vereor**, or **num vereor**? or **vereor, crēdō** (with irony), will be followed by **nē nōn** instead of **ut**.

crēdō, erit verendum (ironical, = **nōn erit verendum**) **mihi nē nōn**, etc.,
I shall have to fear, I suppose (ironical), *that . . . not*, i. e. (in reality)
I shall be perfectly certain that, etc. (no negative) (5 7)

a. **Nōn** may follow after **nē** when a single word is negated, but *I fear that . . . not* regularly calls for an **ut**-clause (cp. § 194).

18. MODO-CLAUSES, CONTAINING A PROVISO

A. 528; D. 811; B. 310; G. 573

276. A proviso, commonly introduced by **dum** or **dum modo**, may have **modo** (*if only*) alone with the subjunctive (cp. § 242). The original sense of a wish is often felt; and if the clause is negative, **nē** is added.

modo inter mē atque tē mūrus intersit, *if only the city wall be between you and me* (7 17)

19. CLAUSES WITH SIMUL AC

A. 543; D. 745; B. 287; G. 561

277. Temporal clauses may be introduced by **simul atque (ac)**, *as soon as*, with the indicative, usually in the perfect (cp. **ut primum**, etc., §§ 200, a; 204, b; 223 fin.).

simul atque adsēdisti, *as soon as you sat down* (10 4)

20. CLAUSES WITH LICET, CONCESSIVE

A. 527, b; D. 810; B. 309, 4; G. 607

278. The impersonal **licet**, *it is permitted*, sometimes had as its subject a substantive clause (cp. § 279), making a concession, and the combination was gradually subordinated to a main verb. Thus **licet**, *it may be*, became *although*, and, without ceasing to be a verb, served in place of a conjunction. The subject clause has present or perfect subjunctive.

licet . . . omnēs omnia dīcant, . . . vīcimus, *no matter what they all say, we have won* (Verr. III, 145)

21. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITHOUT LINKS OF CONNECTION

A. 565; D. 722; 720, *d*; B. 295, 6, 8; 296, 1, *a*; G. 535, R. 2; 546, R. 2

279. All the dependent clauses so far treated (§§ 161–278) were stamped as such by the presence of either a conjunction (or a virtual conjunction; cp. § 278) or a relative or interrogative word. Another type is that in which the mood is subjunctive, but in which there is no other outward sign of subordination. The substantive clause may be an appositive, or the subject of *oportet*, *licet*, *necesse est*, etc., or object in such expressions as the following:

cēseō Lūceriam veniās, *I advise you to come to Luceria* (189 4)

velim cūrēs ut sciam, *please see to it that I know* (172 16)

hōs . . . māllem sēcum . . . ēdūxisset, *I wish he had taken these men away with him* (21 10)

In cases of this kind one must not imagine that *ut* has been omitted.

22. SUBORDINATION INDICATED BY THE THOUGHT ALONE (PARATAXIS)

280. Two clauses apparently coördinate, each of which might be a complete sentence in itself, are occasionally so joined that the first is in logic (though not in formal syntax) subordinated to the second, — a fact which must be made clear in translation. If both members are questions, the first is often merely a rhetorical dress for a statement of fact, and should not be interrogative in English. If both state facts, their independence and equality are only in appearance, the second clause containing the main point.

an . . . Scipiō . . . Gracchum . . . privātus interfēcit: Catilinam . . . nōs cōsulēs perferēmus? (two questions, the first concerning a fact not questioned), i. e. *if (or while, or whereas) Scipio, a private citizen, slew Gracchus, shall we consuls endure Catiline?* (3 19)

saxa . . . vōci respondent . . . : nōs . . . nōn poētārum vōce moveāmur? *if (or while, or since) rocks echo the voice, shall not we be stirred by the voice of poets?* (107 14)

in caelum . . . Catō tollitur: magnus honōs populi Rōmānī rēbus adiungitur, i. e. *in praising Cato to the skies he (Ennius) pays a great tribute also to the achievements of the Roman people* (109 13)

23. INFINITIVE CLAUSES; INDIRECT QUOTATION AS OBJECT

a. Main Clauses, Declarative; Accusative and Infinitive

A. 577 ff., 584, 589; D. 883 ff., 898 ff.; B. 313 ff., 317, 319 ff.; G. 508, 527, 648 ff., 653, 656 ff.

281. A very important unit found in many Latin sentences is a substantive clause consisting of an infinitive with its accusative subject and usually other modifiers. In its very simplest form it thus has an indeclinable verbal noun (infinitive) and another noun or pronoun in the accusative case. One of its uses is in indirect quotation.

282. If an indirect quotation states a fact (real or supposed), the main verb (indicative in the original statement) becomes infinitive, and the subject is made accusative (cp. § 99). Such an infinitive with subject accusative thus forms a substantive clause, as object of a verb of *saying* (or as subject of that verb in the passive; cp. § 296).

ad M'. *Lepidum tē habitāre velle dixistī*, you said you wished to stay at the house of Manius Lepidus (11 4)

obtemperātūrum tē esse dicis, you say that you will obey (11 20)

cupere sē dicit inspicere neque sē aliis videndī potestātem esse factūrum, he said he should like to examine it and would not give others the opportunity to see it (137 22)

283. At first the word in the accusative was probably thought of as an object of the verb of *saying*, since along with the deed one mentioned in the same breath the doer, placing an accusative noun or pronoun in close connection with the infinitive, and thus giving the verb of *saying* two objects of different kinds. In time the word representing the doer came to be regarded as subject of the infinitive, not object of the verb of *saying*.

284. Indirect discourse (*ōrātiō obliqua*) is most frequently the object of a verb of *saying*, expressed or implied. But the same construction is also the rule with verbs of *thinking*, *knowing*, *perceiving*, *ascertaining*, and the like.

contentum tē esse dicēbās, you said that you were satisfied (6 9)

dicō tē . . . vēnisse, I say (assert) that you came (6 17)

videō . . . esse hīc . . . quōsdam, *I see that there are here some men* (6 21)

intellegō . . . nēminem tam stultum fore, *I understand that no one will be so foolish* (15 27)

quem esse hostem comperistī, *whom you have found out to be an enemy* (and the same construction with **vidēs** and **sentis**) (14 17)

patēre tua cōsilia nōn sentis? *you do not see that your plans are known?* (3 7)

meministīne mē . . . dicere . . . fore in armīs . . . C. Mānlium? *you remember my saying that Gaius Manlius would be under arms?* (5 26)

285. Verbs of *hoping, promising, threatening*, and the like have this construction, regularly with the future infinitive, but the present sometimes occurs.

num . . . cōsulēs sē . . . spērant futūrōs? *do they hope they shall be consuls?* (28 13)

ut dēspērent id quod cōnantur sē cōsequī posse, *that they give up the hope of being able to accomplish what they are attempting* (28 6)

quī . . . sē . . . mē . . . interfectūrōs esse pollicērentur, *who promised that they would kill me* (7 5)

286. Conclusions. In indirect discourse the conclusion of a conditional sentence requires the infinitive with subject accusative, no matter which type of condition is used (§§ 249 ff.), unless that conclusion expresses wish, exhortation, command, prohibition, or question (§ 287). For all neutral and future conditions the tense of the infinitive is simply determined by the meaning, and is present, past, or future, with reference to the time of the verb of *saying, thinking*, etc. **Fore** or **futūrum esse** (**fuisse**) may have an **ut**-clause as its subject (§ 199).

numquam sērō tē vēnisse putābō, sī salvus vēnerīs, *I shall never think you have arrived too late, if you arrive in good health* (188 4)

cūr minōre dolōre peritūrōs sē . . . quam sī, . . . arbitrentur, *why they think that they shall be less reluctant to die . . . than if, etc.* (29 14)

sē spērāre dixērunt, sī . . . , fore ut ea cōsilia . . . inlūstrārentur, *they said they anticipated that if . . . , then those designs would be brought to light* (45 13)

287. If the conclusion expresses wish, exhortation, command, prohibition, or question, the subjunctive must be used in indirect discourse (§ 293); also if the conclusion is itself subordinated to a verb different from that of *saying*, etc., for example, in a clause with **ut**, **nē**, or **quīn** (cp. § 246 fin.). If the conclusion is a question of doubt, surprise, or indignation, it will retain its subjunctive in indirect discourse (cp. § 55, *d*).

288. For contrary-to-fact conclusions no distinction is made between present and past (with a single exception, perhaps, in Cæsar). Both have these forms:

a. Active: perfect infinitive of first periphrastic, e. g. **factūrum fuisse**, **ventūrōs fuisse**.

sī eō locō esset, negāvit sē factūrum fuisse, *said he would not have done it if he were in his (Cæsar's) place* (201 15)

alterius . . . partis . . . nimis irācundam futūram fuisse victōriam, *that the victory of the other party (condensed condition) would have been unduly violent* (120 32)

b. Passive, or if the verb has no future participle: **futūrum fuisse** with an **ut**-clause as its subject, — *the result would have been (was going to be) that*, etc. (cp. § 199). This is rarely met with.

futūrum fuisse ut . . . omni doctrinā hominum vīta ērudirētur, *that human life would have been schooled in every art* (*Tusc. Disp.* III, 69)

If the contrary-to-fact conclusion would have the indicative in direct discourse (*ōrātiō rēcta*; cp. § 253), it has the perfect or present infinitive in the indirect (*ōrātiō obliqua*). This includes expressions of *ability* (as **posse**, **potuisse**), *obligation*, *necessity*, etc. (as in the second periphrastic). For an example cp. § 296 fin.

b. Dependent Clauses; Subjunctive

A. 580 ff., 585, 589; D. 888 ff.; B. 314, 318 ff.; G. 650, 653 ff.

289. We have seen that even in a sentence in direct discourse any relative clause expressing the thought or words of another (or of the writer or speaker at another time) must have the subjunctive (§ 181); also that causal clauses with **quod**, **quia**, etc. follow the same principle

(§§ 231 ff.). In the same way, and for the same reason, every subordinate clause in indirect discourse normally requires the subjunctive mood.

vident . . . ūnum virum esse in quō summa sint omnia, *they see that there is only one man in whom all the advantages are found in the highest degree* (72 6)

quod multae nātiōnēs testēs essent, *because many nations were witnesses* (138 17)

290. The tenses of such subjunctive clauses are regularly adapted to that of the verb of saying, etc., — i.e. primary after **dīcit**, etc., and secondary after **dixit**, etc. (cp. § 64). But no change is ever permitted in the tense of a conditional clause contrary to fact (cp. §§ 252, 256). It must be remembered also that the future perfect indicative of direct discourse becomes pluperfect (past perfect) subjunctive in the indirect if the governing verb is secondary, but perfect subjunctive if that verb is primary. Even if the verb of saying, etc., was primary, a following perfect infinitive usually carries any dependent verbs with it into the secondary sequence.

291. If a subordinate clause in indirect discourse contains merely some explanatory remark, or other addition of the writer or speaker, and is no real part of the quotation, the indicative mood is used, stamping this clause as not an integral part. An indicative clause may be used also as a mere periphrasis for a noun.

Bithŷniae, quae nunc vestra prōvincia est, vicōs exūstōs esse complūris, *that in (lit. of) Bithynia, which is now your province, many villages have been burned* (68 24)

eōs qui vectigālia nōbīs pēnsitant, *those who pay us tribute (= our tributaries)* (73 24)

292. In a **dum**-clause (*while*) the present indicative is sometimes retained in indirect discourse; so also the indicative with **cum** temporal. The desire to state positively an undoubted fact may lead to the retention of that mood.

c. Main Clauses, not Declarative; Subjunctive

A. 586 ff.; D. 887, II f.; B. 315 f.; G. 651 ff.

293. If any form of command, request, prohibition, or wish is to constitute the main clause of an indirect discourse, the subjunctive mood is required, with such change of tense as will harmonize with that of the verb of saying. With a prohibition **nē** is used.

spectārent quid ipse dēberet, *they should observe how deeply he was himself in debt* (direct, **spectāte quid ipse dēbeam**) (*Mur.* 50)

294. If a question which in the original speech expected an answer is quoted indirectly, it simply takes the form of any other indirect question (cp. § 161), and therefore has the subjunctive. Thus real questions in the second person are changed into the third, and the subjunctive verb must harmonize in tense with the verb of saying.

quid sibi vellet, *what did he want?* (direct, **quid tibi vis?**) (*Cæsar*, *B. G.* I, 44, 8)

295. Questions in a speech, however, usually do not expect an answer, but, like exclamations, are merely lively forms of statement. These animated rhetorical questions (first and third persons) and exclamations are indirectly quoted in the form of main statements in the accusative and infinitive, while retaining any signs of a question or exclamation.

24. INFINITIVE CLAUSES; OTHER USES OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE

A. 452; 563, *a* ff.; 572, *b*; 462; D. 833, 839, 843; B. 329 ff., 334; G. 532, 534 f.

296. The accusative and infinitive clause may become the subject of a verb of *saying*, etc. in the passive (usually a compound tense, as **nūntiātum est**; cp. § 299); or of **est** with a predicate noun or adjective; or of an impersonal verb, as **interest**, **oportet**; or of **vidētur**. It may also be a predicate or appositive.

magnī interest . . . esse . . . duo cōsulēs, *it is of great importance that there be two consuls* (*Mur.* 79)

populī Rōmānī laus est urbem . . . ēreptam esse, *to the Roman people belongs the credit of rescuing the city* (109 1)

cum vidētur praecavērī potuisse, sī prōvīsum esset, *when it seems that it could have been averted, if care had been taken* (direct, **cum potuit**) (*Tusc. Disp.* III, 52)

297. As object also the infinitive clause with subject accusative is not confined to indirect quotation (§§ 281 ff.), but may follow verbs of *wishing* (as **volō, cupiō**¹), *permitting* (as **sinō**), *commanding* or *forbidding* (**iubeō, vetō**²), *teaching* (**doceō**), and also verbs or other expressions of *emotion* (**gaudeō, doleō, miror**, etc.).

cupiō . . . mē esse clēmentem, *I earnestly wish to be merciful* (4 28)
quem sociī . . . vēnisse gaudērent, *at whose coming . . . the allies rejoice* (95 16)

298. Exclamatory. Standing in no relation to any other verb, even implied, an accusative and infinitive clause may be purely exclamatory.

tē . . . in tantās aerumnās propter mē incidisse! *that you should have encountered such woes on my account!* (163 7)

25. NOMINATIVE AND INFINITIVE

A. 582; D. 840; B. 332; G. 528

299. Another form of indirect statement in very common use is that in which the verb of *saying, thinking, perceiving*, etc. is in the passive voice with a personal subject and an infinitive. Here also any subordinate clause attached to the infinitive normally has the subjunctive. This is the usual construction with **dīcor, dīcitur, fertur, trāditur, videor, vidētur**, etc. In compound tenses, however, and in the periphrastic forms, the impersonal construction (accusative and infinitive) is preferred (except in case of **videor**).

dīcitur inflammāsse taedās . . . ; quās sibi cum ipsa praeferret, orbem omnem peragrāsse terrārum, *she (Ceres) is said to have lighted torches, . . . and to have wandered all over the world, carrying them before her* (143 14)

¹ Both are more commonly followed by the complementary infinitive (cp. § 90).

² Also **imperō**, if the infinitive is passive or deponent.

26. THE ROMAN CALENDAR

300. Every month had three fixed points, from which dates were reckoned backward :

a. Kalendae, -ārum (Kal. or K.), f., the Calends, first day of the month; originally the new moon.

b. Nōnae, -ārum (Nōn.), f., the Nones, seventh of March, May, July, and October,¹ but the fifth of all other months; originally the first quarter of the moon, and named from the fact that it was the ninth day before the Ides (with inclusive reckoning).

c. Īdūs, -uum (Īd.), f., the Ides, fifteenth of the same four long months, but the thirteenth of the remaining months.

301. To these three nouns were added adjectives denoting the months, thus :

Kalendīs Iānuāriīs, on the Calends of January

ad Kalendās Februāriās, to the Calends of February

Nōnīs Mārtiīs, on the Nones of March

pridīē Nōnās Aprīlis, on the eve of the Nones of April

postridīē Nōnās Maiās, on the day after the Nones of May (an exception to the usual backward reckoning)

Īdibus Iūniīs, on the Ides of June

ex Īdibus Quintīlibus (later Iūliīs²), from the Ides of Quintilis (July)

ūsque ad Īdūs Sextīlis (later Augustās³), up to the Ides of Sextilis (August)

tertiō diē ante Kalendās Septembris, on the third day before the Calends of September

ante diē⁴ IIII (quārtum) Nōnās Octōbris, on the fourth day before the Nones of October

V Īdūs Novembris (i. e. quintō diē ante Īdūs), on the fifth day before the Ides of November

ex VI (sextō) Kalendās Decembris, from the sixth day before the Calends of December

¹ These were the only months with 31 days before Julius Cæsar's reform of the calendar (cp. § 302).

² To this fifth month (of an older year beginning March 1) Julius Cæsar gave his own name in 44 B.C.

³ To this sixth month Augustus' title was given in 8 B.C.

⁴ Or a.d.

302. The numbering of the last six months recalls the fact that the oldest Roman year, having but ten months, began on the first of March. Before Julius Cæsar's reform went into effect, on January 1, 45 B.C., the months had 29 days, except the four which had 31 (March, May, July, October), and February, which had 28 (or 23; see § 303). After that date the number of days in each month became what it still remains.

303. As the year had but 355 days, it was the custom to insert an additional month after the feast of Terminus (February 23) every other year. But so irregularly had this system been applied by the pontiffs that the months had ceased to keep their old places in the seasons.

304. Cæsar's reform brought all this confusion to an end by lengthening most of the months and by introducing the familiar leap year once in four years. This was done by ordering that the sixth day before the Calends of March (our February 24, the day after the *Terminalia*) should be reckoned twice. Thus our February 25 became another sixth (called **a.d.** [**ante diem**] **bissextum Kal. Mārt.**). This gave the month 29 days in every fourth year, but for religious reasons the day was not added at the end.

305. Most of the forms which a Roman date may assume have been given in § 301. Where the date involved a numeral, there were two common forms; for example:

a. a.d. (or ante diem) tertium Kalendās Maiās, on the third day before the Calends of May, or April 29 (but for Cicero the twenty-eighth, except in the last three years of his life; § 302). This strange construction was used instead of diē tertiō ante Kalendās. The following day, or the last of the month, would be pridīē Kalendās Maiās; but since the Romans included the day from which they reckoned, the last day but one was to them the third day before the first.

b. tertiō (i. e. diē ante) Īdūs Mārtiās, on the third day before the Ides of March, or March 13. This was a less formal mode of dating, much used in Cicero's letters.

III, III, pridīē Īdūs, on the twelfth, thirteenth, and fourteenth of March (ad Att. IX, 9, 1)

306. Dates *to which* or *from which* show either of the above combinations treated as a neuter noun with a preposition.

ex ante diem III Nōn. Iūn. ūsque ad prid. Kal. Sept., *from June 3 to August 29* (58 B.C.) (*ad Att.* III, 17, 1)

307. Rules for translating Roman dates. *a.* Reckoned from the *Calends*:

1. Take the number of days in the *previous* month. If before 45 B.C., make allowance for a possible difference in the length of the month (§ 302).

2. Add *two*. Of these added units one is because you are to reckon from the first of the *next* month, and one because of the practice of including the day from which you count.

3. Subtract the number in the text.

ante diem VI (sextum) Kal. Novembris (5 28)

$31 + 2 = 33 - 6 = 27$ *October 27*

b. Reckoned from the *Nones* or *Ides*:

1. Take the day of the Nones or Ides for the given month, — the fifth or seventh for the former, the thirteenth or fifteenth for the latter, according to the month (cp. § 300).

2. Add *one* for the inclusive reckoning.

3. Subtract the number in the text.

a. d. VIII (octāvum) Īdūs Aprīlis (166 4)

$13 + 1 = 14 - 8 = 6$ *April 6*

Among posterity he has achieved this, that the name Cicero no longer stands for a man, but for eloquence. Therefore let us look to him, let us set him before us as a model. Whoever finds great satisfaction in Cicero should know that he has made progress.—QUINTILIAN, X, 1, 112

He stands in prose, like Virgil in poetry, as the bridge between the ancient and modern world. Before his time, Latin prose was, from a wide point of view, but one among many local ancient dialects. As it left his hands, it had become a universal language, one which had definitely superseded all others, Greek included, as the type of civilised expression. . . . Ciceronian prose is practically the prose of the human race; not only of the Roman empire of the first and second centuries, but of Lactantius and Augustine, of the mediæval Church, of the earlier and later Renaissance, and even now, when the Renaissance is a piece of past history, of the modern world to which the Renaissance was the prelude.

MACKAIL, *Latin Literature*, pp. 62 f.

ABBREVIATIONS

abbr. = abbreviated (-tion)	init. = <i>ad initium</i> , at the beginning
abl. = ablative	interrog. = interrogative
abs. = absolute	intrans. = intransitive (-ly)
acc. = accusative	Introd. = Introduction
act. = active	irr. = irregular
adj. = adjective	It = Italian
adv. = adverb (-ial)	l., ll. = line, lines
appos. = apposition (-tive)	Lat. = Latin
attrib. = attributive	lit. = literal (-ly)
c. = common	m. = masculine
compar. = comparative	med. = <i>media, medio</i> , in the middle
cond. = condition	met. = metonymy
conj. = conjunction	Mss. = manuscripts
constr. = construction	n. = neuter <i>or</i> note
correl. = correlative	neg. = negative (-ly)
cp. = compare	nom. = nominative
cpd. = compound	num. = numeral
dat. = dative	obj. = object (-ive)
demonstr. = demonstrative	opp. = opposed, opposite
dep. = deponent	or. obl. = <i>oratio obliqua</i>
descr. = descriptive	orig. = originally
dim. = diminutive	p., pp. = page, pages
dir. = direct	parenth. = parenthesis (-thetical)
disc. = discourse	pass. = passive
distrib. = distributive	perf. = perfect
e.g. = <i>exempli gratia</i> , for example	pers. = personal
encl. = enclitic	personif. = personified (-ication)
Eng. = English	pluperf. = pluperfect
equiv. = equivalent	plur. = plural
esp. = especially	pos. = positive
F = French	possess. = possessive
f. = feminine <i>or</i> and following	pred. = predicate
fem. = feminine	prep. = preposition (-al)
ff. = and following (<i>plural</i>)	pres. = present
fig. = figure (-ative, -atively)	pron. = pronoun
fin. = <i>ad finem</i> , at (<i>or</i> near) the end	ptcp. = participle (-cipial)
freq. = frequent (-ly, -ative)	quest. = question
fut. = future	reflex. = reflexive
gen. = genitive	reg. = regular (-ly)
Gram. = Grammatical Outline	rel. = relative
hist. = historical	sc. = <i>scilicet</i> , that is, supply
ib. = <i>ibidem</i> , in the same place	sing. = singular
imperf. = imperfect	Sp = Spanish
impers. = impersonal	subj. = subject (-ive)
impv. = imperative	subjv. = subjunctive
incept. = inceptive	subord. = subordinate
ind. = indicative	subst. = substantive
indecl. = indeclinable	superl. = superlative
indef. = indefinite	trans. = transitive, translate (-tion)
indir. = indirect	v. = <i>vide</i> , see
inf. = infinitive	voc. = vocative

NOTES

TO THE STUDENT. The Editors would like to suggest to you a method of preparation which their own experience and that of many other teachers have proved to be valuable because it steadily increases one's power to deal with Latin. First, as you would look over a map before traveling, read the introductory matter belonging to the speech you are to study, including the outline printed before the notes on that speech. Then attack the Latin as if you were reading at sight, noting forms sharply, gathering up the thought as you go, trying to recall the meaning of half-forgotten words, and to discover the sense of new words by their resemblance to other words, either English or Latin, and by shrewd guessing founded on the idea of the passage so far as you have made it out. When you have exhausted your own resources, turn to the notes, and utilize all the help they give. Then, and not till then, use the vocabulary, to make dark places plain.

FIRST ORATION AGAINST CATILINE

PLACE: The Senate, sitting in the Temple of Jupiter Stator, under the northern slope of the Palatine.

TIME: November 8, 63 B.C. (the 7th. according to some authorities).

CIRCUMSTANCES: Read Intro. §§ 68-71. In this situation Cicero omits the usual exordium, or introduction, and plunges at once into indignant questions.

OUTLINE OF THE ARGUMENT¹

(1) How far, Catiline, will your audacity go? Your plans are known. (2) Weakness of the senate and officials, when you should be put to death. (3) We do not lack precedents or authority to act.

(4) Formerly martial law brought severe treatment of revolutionaries; not so now. (5) Open rebellion is led by one of our own number. Yet there are reasons for delaying action. (6) You will be closely watched.

Your secrets are in our possession. (7-8) You have been foiled more than once before by my knowledge of your intentions.

A meeting of the conspirators by night. (9) Monstrous treason! Decisions at that meeting; my assassination planned. (10) Being informed, I took precautions.

Go to your camp! You must. (11) More than once we have escaped danger, thwarting your previous attempts. (12) Now I must rid the city of your presence, (13) by urging you to leave.

¹ The figures refer to the section numbers in the margin of the text.

Why linger here, where your vices are notorious; (14) also your crimes, not to mention your bankruptcy? (15) Your former attempt upon the life of the consuls, (15-16) not to speak of your murderous attacks upon me.

The senators' opinion of you was shown by absence of greetings and by empty seats. (17) Will you not leave a city which fears and hates you? (18) Rome herself pleads with you to go. (19) You were ready to submit to custody, but no one would take you. (20) Why not go?

"Put the question," you say. No; but see what they think of you when I say, "Go into exile!" Not one word of protest is heard. (21) The silence of these senators speaks volumes. The knights too, and others, will be glad to see you go.

(22) Yet we cannot expect such a man to be so considerate of the public good. (23) Your departure into exile would arouse hatred against me, as the cause of it. Better for me that you should join your "army."

(24) In fact, I know that you are planning to go thither, having sent in advance an escort and that standard, your inseparable companion. (25-26) Criminal designs have long ago prepared you to join that crew of renegades gladly, and to display an endurance learned in the school of vice. (27) But your worst will be petty warfare.

Suppose Rome herself should plead with me that Catiline be put to death, (28) arguing that custom and law do not forbid, rebuking any fear of unpopularity, (29) and also warning me of a worse odium. I reply that I have spared his life for a good reason. It would have been a distinction to incur odium for punishing a traitor.

(30) In that case misguided senators and others would call me a tyrant. If he goes to Manlius, however, none can be deceived as to the rebel. The departure of the rest will be better for the state than his death. (31) For these chronic maladies, becoming acute in my consulship, the mere death of Catiline would bring but temporary relief. (32) Let all traitors leave; no more plots within the walls! With due vigilance and with united action the situation will clear.

(33) You may take the field, Catiline. Jupiter will defend us and punish the rebels.

§ 1 quo . . . nostra: let us use this first sentence to illustrate a principle that we can apply in almost every line. If "well begun is half done" is true anywhere, it is true of reading Latin. Therefore give particular care to the first few words of each sentence or clause. Thus, in this sentence, **quo** means literally *whither* (not 'by means of what,' which would make nonsense), **usque** means *up to* or *as far as*; and since 'as far as whither' is hardly English, we translate *how far*. Then **tandem**, which often means 'at length,' is here the sign of an impatient question. See Vocab. for the right meaning. Carelessness might lead one to take **abutere** for an infinitive, until it was remembered that the verb is deponent, and that in the future **-re** rather than **-ris** is usual for the ending of the second person singular. Lastly, after referring to Gram. § 147, *a*, for the case of **patientia**, and translating the sentence, one might wonder in what way the government had shown patience with Catiline. We find that although seventeen days before this the senate had passed a decree which gave the consuls extraordinary powers (Introd. § 70), yet Cicero had hesitated to enforce this decree. This hesitation is easily understood when one remembers that the

popular party was more or less in sympathy with Catiline, as were Crassus and Caesar also, and that it is hard to carry out a government measure which does not have national support.

3 2 etiam: (lit. 'still') with **eludet** = *continue to flout* (or *make sport of*) *us*. — **furor:** what Cicero calls **furor**, *madness*, Catiline's friends might have called **studium**, *enthusiasm*. So in line 4, what Cicero calls **audacia**, *reckless daring* or *foolhardiness*, might have been called by others **virtus**, *courage*. Cicero is careful not to lose the advantage that comes from choosing words that will give a bad impression of the man he is attacking. — **iste tuus:** *that (outrageous) . . . of yours*. **Iste** adds a sting to **tuus**, which would be rather tame without it.

3 3 effrenata: this, with **sese iactabit**, seems to picture Catiline's **audacia** as flinging itself about like an untamed horse, with no bridle to control it. The outburst of indignation takes the form of three fiery questions, each with a different expression for *how long?* (Introd. § 22, *h* fin.).

3 4 nihil: just as in the Bible sentence "it profiteth me nothing," 'nothing' means 'not at all,' so in Latin **nihil** may have that meaning (Gram. § 103). To repeat a first word, as is done with **nihil** here, emphasizes like beating a drum. This is called anaphora (Introd. § 22, *h*). The structure and meaning of the sentence are clear when we read it aloud in the separated phrases in which it would be spoken:

Nihil te nocturnum praesidium Palati

nihil urbis vigiliae

nihil timor populi . . .

nihil horum ora . . . moverunt?

Now both eye and ear can tell that **te** was waiting to be the object of **moverunt**, whose subjs. pile up, one at the end of each **nihil**-phrase. — **Palati:** the Palatine Hill, rising directly above the Temple of Jupiter Stator, was the oldest part of the city, containing some of its most venerated shrines. In the next year Cicero bought a house on the Palatine (Introd. § 86 fin.).

3 6 locus: means the temple just mentioned, as we learn below (7 20; cp. 17 22, 24 29). It was easily defended from the slope of the Palatine. Usually the senate met in the Curia Hostilia (Introd. § 33).

3 7 horum: *these (senators)*. — **patere:** the exposure of his plans is contrasted with the tight grip with which the senate's minds have fastened on the facts of the conspiracy (**constrictam . . . scientia teneri**, l. 8).

3 8 non: the interrog. **-ne** is often omitted when the tone of the voice or the clear sense of the passage makes it unnecessary. — **horum omnium:** Cicero no doubt exaggerates. He was himself kept informed by a spy (cp. 7 8).

3 11 arbitraris: the dir. quest. carries with it five indir. quests. By **superiore nocte** he means *night before last* (the sixth), that of the meeting at Læca's house (6 18; Introd. § 70). For **consili** cp. Gram. § 125. — **o tempora, o mores:**

Cicero says *oh, the times! oh, the morals!* where a modern speaker would say 'oh, the degeneracy of the age!' or 'what is the world coming to?' The expression points directly to the thought contained in **senatus . . . vivit** (ll. 12, 13). For the case of **tempora** and **mores** see Gram. § 102.

3 13 immo vero: used to amend a statement either by contradicting or, as here, by amplifying it. Trans. *lives? why he, etc.*

3 14 unum: with **quemque** has much the effect of *each and every one of us*. For **publici consili**, *official debate*, cp. Gram. § 118.

3 16 videmur: *appear (in our own eyes)*. — **istius:** generally speaking, Cicero's use of **hic**, **iste**, and **ille** is as follows:

hic = (a) *this man near me*; (b) *this man whose cause I am pleading, my client*; (c) *my, our*.

iste = (a) *that of yours*; (b) the one whom the speaker is attacking (frequently implying scorn or loathing); the defendant.

ille = *that* (remote in place or time from both speaker and hearer).

Here **istius** is used as in (b), and may be trans. *of that scoundrel*. This is called the 'forensic use of **iste**.'

Note that from **O tempora** through **vitamus** Cicero is addressing, not Catiline, but the senate. In using **hic** rather than **iste** in line 12, he gives the effect of saying, 'Catiline lives, and he is here in our midst.' — **vitamus:** evidently there was irony in **fortes viri** (Introd. § 22, n, 8).

3 17 oportebat: *ought to have been led* (two past tenses; cp. Gram. §§ 71, 296), or trans. *it would have been proper that you, etc.*; for the tense of **oportebat** shows that the punishment was not carried out (Gram. §§ 53, 62).

3 18 conferri: on what must this inf. depend? Cultivate the ability to supply words from the context. It is really as easy here as in such a sentence as 'some wished to be paid in cash, others . . . to be given credit.'

3 19 machinaris: *have long been plotting*; more lit. *are plotting this long time*. The pres. with **iam diu**, etc. is regular (Gram. § 62). Cicero understood the proclamation of martial law on October 22 as giving the consuls almost the powers of a dictator, suspending the ordinary processes of law, and permitting no appeal to the people (Introd. §§ 35, 80). — **an . . . interfecit:** English regularly adds either 'while' or 'and' to this form of question. Thus:

(a) *Or (while) Publius Scipio put to death, etc., shall we . . . continue to tolerate etc.?* (b) *Or did Publius Scipio, etc., (and) shall we, etc.?* Questions beginning with **an** do not really ask for information, but have the effect of forcible statements. This one, for instance, is a more impressive way of saying, 'When Scipio put Gracchus to death, of course we shall not tolerate Catiline.' (Gram. § 280.)

Tiberius Gracchus had aroused opposition as tribune of the plebs in 133 B.C., chiefly by his land laws for the benefit of the lower classes and by his powerful land commission. To prolong his tribuneship he defied the constitution, where-

upon Scipio Nasica Serapio, his cousin, called upon all good citizens to follow him, and led an attack upon Gracchus and his men. Gracchus was felled with the leg of a broken bench, and his body thrown into the Tiber. For the *pontifices* cp. *Introd.* § 31.

Note the crosswise order (chiasmus): **Scipio, Gracchum, Catilinam, nos** (*Introd.* § 22, c).

4 3 illa: when *illud* or *illa* is followed, as here, by a defining clause with **quod**, *the fact that*, or with **ut**, the trans. is *this, these, or the following*, rather than *that* or *those*. **Illa nimis antiqua** means *the following (facts as) too ancient* (to furnish a reliable precedent). But although Cicero disclaimed the intention of basing any argument on such ancient practices, he knew quite well that they might help to sway the feelings of his audience (*Introd.* § 22, n, 6).

The **nam** is elliptical, — (*I single out the case of Gracchus,*) *for*, etc. (Gram. § 51). Mælius, a wealthy knight who distributed grain gratis to the plebeians in time of famine, 439 B.C., was accused of bribing them to make him king. In alarm Cincinnatus was called from the plow to be dictator; and when Mælius resisted arrest by Ahala, the master of the horse, the latter slew him. For **novis rebus** cp. Gram. § 107, c.

4 6 fuit, fuit . . . quondam: a solemn and melancholy repetition, — *there was, there was once*. — **ista . . . virtus**: *such (a high type of) manhood*. The *ut*-clause (result) expands *ista* (*such*). Cicero is addressing the class which in former times had shown that quality of manly resolution; hence *ista*, with its suggestion of the second person (not *illa*, third person) (Gram. § 21).

4 9 habemus . . . grave: Cicero regards the *senatus consultum ultimum*, passed seventeen days before, as justifying extreme measures as truly as did a dictatorship in Cincinnatus' day (*Introd.* § 70).

4 11 non . . . consilium: (*what*) *the country lacks (is) not a course of action*.

4 12 auctoritas huius ordinis: *the support of this body* (the senate). It is as though Cicero said, 'The country's course is clear, and the senate has approved that course, but we, the executives, have failed to put the plan into effect.'

4 13 desumus: *are (found) lacking*; sc. **rei publicae**. Cicero's colleague, Antonius, was a mere cipher until troops actually took the field against Catiline (*Introd.* § 85).

4 15 caperet: *receive*; this clause with **ne quid** was a formula in the *senatus consultum ultimum* (*Introd.* § 35; Gram. § 273). Opimius was consul in 121 B.C.

4 17 clarissimo . . . maioribus: that is, his social position did not save him. (Gram. § 145.) The **avus** here meant was Scipio the Elder. Gaius Gracchus was the younger brother of Tiberius, and an abler orator. He had the same program of agrarian laws, but made a much more direct attack upon the senate. Both he and Fulvius Flaccus were slain in disturbances which followed Gracchus' retirement from the tribuneship.

4 18 **consularis**: as consul, 125 B.C., Fulvius had proposed to confer citizenship upon all Italians. Three thousand supporters of Gracchus and Fulvius were put to death. Note how frequently in this passage (from line 6) the main verb is the first word. A word out of its natural place is conspicuous, and therefore emphatic.

4 19 **consulto**: this *consultum* also was that known as *ultimum* (cp. note on 4 15). — **est permissa res publica**: the public safety was intrusted.

4 22 **remorata est**: the punishment did not keep them long in suspense. For explanatory ac cp. Gram. § 44, a. L. Apuleius Saturninus, a more violent tribune than the Gracchi, was supported by Marius, as well as by the prætor, C. Servilius Glaucia. A candidate for the consulship, C. Memmius, was slain at the election by emissaries of Glaucia, his rival, and of Saturninus. Martial law was then declared, and the prætor and tribune, with their followers, were stoned to death by the mob. This was the **rei publicae poena**, *punishment inflicted by the state*. (Cp. Gram. § 117.) For prætors and tribunes cp. Introd. §§ 25–26. **Vicesimum** is a round number for **duodevicesimum** (inclusive reckoning; Introd. § 70).

4 23 **auctoritatis**: contained in the *senatus consultum ultimum*. — **horum**: gens., particularly obj. and subj. gens., are often best trans. by some other word than *of*. So here, *given by these men* is clearer than *of these men*; cp. the trans. of **rei publicae** in note on 4 22.

4 25 **in tabulis**: i.e. as a dead letter, not in force.

4 26 **convēnit**, etc.: *ought to have been put to death at once*. For the constr. cp. 3 17, **duci oportebat**; but note the less usual tense of **interfectum esse** (cp. 5 10; Gram. § 71). Cicero has done the same sort of thing that one does when one carelessly says, 'I should have liked to have been there.'

4 28 **audaciam**: Gram. § 86. — **clementem**: the unnecessary subj. acc. (me) with the inf. after such verbs as **volo**, **malo**, or **cupio** is esp. common when the inf. is **esse** or **videri** (Gram. § 297).

4 29 **dissolutum**: = **neglegentem**, *remiss.* — **rei publicae**: we say unhesitatingly 'dangers to the commonwealth,' although the Latin indicates any kind of connection between nouns of different meaning by the gen. Cp. note on **horum**, 4 23.

5 1 **condemno**: Gram. § 122. The two nouns may be rendered by noun and adj., — *criminal carelessness*. On **patres** and **conscripti** cp. Introd. §§ 32, 34. Intensive **ipse** is added in the nom., as usual (Gram. § 27).

5 3 **conlocata**: the position at Fæsulæ (Fiesole, near Florence) was a commanding one, on a spur of the Apennines (Introd. § 70). Note the emphasis on **castra** and on the three prep. phrases placed between **sunt** and **conlocata**. **In dies** alone would mean *from day to day*; with **singulos** (lit. 'one by one') it gives the impressive effect of saying *day by day* — *day by day*.

5 4 **ducemque hostium**: the **dux** is, of course, Catiline.

5 5 **atque adeo**: intensifies, — *and actually*.

5 7 **erit verendum mihi**: the parenth. **credo** is ironical: *I suppose I shall have to fear*. (Obviously he supposes the precise opposite.)

5 8 **ne . . . dicat**: in English, words to be supplied are more apt to be omitted from the latter part of a sentence ('some wore hats; others, caps'), but in Latin it is often the other way. In this sentence each member borrows something from the other (supplied words are in parenths.):

ne non hoc potius omnes boni serius a me (factum esse dicant) quam (ne) quisquam (hoc) crudelius (a me) factum esse dicat.

When **vereor** is ironical for **non vereor**, or has a neg., expressed or implied, a fearing clause is introduced by **ne non**, instead of **ut**, if one fears that something may *not* happen (Gram. § 275). As often, the Lat. pass. is best rendered by the Eng. act.: *that all good citizens will fail to say that I have done this too late, etc.*

5 10 **oportuit**: cp. note on 4 26; a use of tenses esp. freq. in the pass. This sentence illustrates several principles which will be found useful in reading:

1. When an unfinished clause is interrupted by another clause or group of clauses, the first clause cannot go on until the interrupting clause or group of clauses is complete.

2. Spoken Latin, like spoken English, comes in units small enough for one to be grasped before the next is uttered. Therefore it constantly happens that when one reads and translates the units as they come, little if any change is needed to make the English satisfactory. Thus,

**Verum ego hoc
(quod iam pridem factum esse oportuit)
certa de causa
nondum adducor ut faciam,**

but this thing, which ought to have been done long ago, for a definite reason I am not yet prevailed upon to do. Beyond shifting the **ego**, little change has been made in the order, and the sentence as it stands preserves the emphasis better than if one had followed a more conventional arrangement.

5 13 **poterit**: Gram. § 220. **Iam nemo** = *no longer anyone*. — **fateatur**: Gram. § 175. Catiline still had numerous sympathizers who would not yet believe the reports about him. The climax **tam improbus . . . tam tui similis** is as strong as he could possibly make it. For **tui** cp. Gram. § 128.

5 14 **audeat**: descr. clause, scornfully characterizing the very few possible defenders of Catiline. **Quisquam** is usually found in sentences with a neg., expressed or implied. In an affirmative clause it is a kind of vanishing point, implying that you would not expect anybody at all. Thus, **quam diu aliquis erit** would mean 'as long as there shall be *someone*' (as there may possibly be); **quam**

diu quisquam erit means 'as long as there shall be *anyone*' (though he be the only one, and even that a remote possibility).

5 15 et firmis: in translating omit **et**, reg. in Lat. between adjs. modifying the same noun (Gram. § 42, a).

5 16 commovere te: since **commoveo** is trans., it requires an obj. in Lat. Omit in translating.

5 17 sentientem: what kind of clause would have the same effect as this ptpc.? Cp. Gram. § 77. Cicero seems to exaggerate his secret service, for we know only of Curius and Fulvia (Sallust, *Cat.* 26).

5 19 expectes: descr. clause, — *that you are waiting for*. **Etenim** = *and in fact, and for that matter*.

5 21 privata . . . potest: the abstract **coniurationis** has here become concrete and collective (= **coniuratorum**). The **privata domus** was that of Marcus Læca, as we read in 6 15 ff.

5 23 mentem: as in Eng., **mens** can mean both the intellect itself and that which one has in mind — a purpose or intention.

5 24 incendiorum: Gram. § 131.

5 25 licet recognoscas: = **licet tibi recognoscere** (Gram. § 279).

5 27 dicere in senatu: *my saying in the senate*, the usual force of the pres. inf. after **memini**, whereas **dixisse** would mean *that I said* (cp. Introd. § 70). **-ne** is probably not meant for **nonne**, though some take it in that sense. Cicero is 'rubbing it into' Catiline; and when he asks him blandly whether he remembers something which no one thinks he has forgotten, the sarcasm, doubtless, makes Catiline squirm. — **fore . . . futurus esset**: in the dir. disc. it would be **erit . . . erit**. Account for the difference in mood in the indir. form.

5 29 tuæ: separated from **audaciæ** (mainly for the rhythm). In converting dates use the rules given in Gram. § 307. Results in this case: October 21 and October 27. Names of months are adjs. in Lat. For Manlius cp. Introd. §§ 70, 72.

5 30 res tanta: *an enterprise so ambitious*.

6 1 dies: emphatic order. Do not trans. too literally; rather, *was I in the dark, not only as to, etc.?*

6 2 idem: note how Latin says 'the same I, the same we,' etc. where we must translate *I also, etc.* — **contulisse in**: *fixed for*. **In** is used with the whole expression for the date, considered as one piece (Gram. § 306).

6 3 principes civitatis: *leading citizens* (lit.?).

6 4 sui . . . causa: the gerundive is sing. because **sui** is sing. in form, though used for both numbers. The three successive gens. in **-orum** are noteworthy. Cicero puts the best face upon this flight, as if fear had been a minor consideration in their minds.

6 7 circumclusum: the ptpc. gives the reason why Catiline could not move against the commonwealth: *it was because you were . . . that you could not*.

6 8 **discessu ceterorum**: *on the departure of the rest*; equiv. to an abl. abs., *egressis ceteris*.

6 9 **dicebas**: Gram. § 220. It further defines *illo ipso die*. The antecedent of *qui* is *nos* implied in *nostra*. — **quid**: merely introduces the following quest., — *tell me, or again, furthermore* (Gram. § 30).

6 11 **sensistin**: = **sensistine**. Cp. note on **-ne**, 5 27.

6 13 **munitam**: Præneste (Palestrina) was a place of great natural strength, on a steep height twenty miles east of Rome. It had a very celebrated temple of Fortune and an oracle. Note the absence of conj. (asyndeton).

6 15 **superiorem**: cp. 3 9, **superiore nocte**, and note on 3 11.

6 16 **iam intelleges**: *and you will understand at once*. **Recognosce** is logically subord. (Gram. § 280).

6 18 **inter falcarios**: indicating a certain street or small quarter of the city, — *Scythemakers' Street*. **Priore** repeats **superiorem**, a synonym. The date is given in another oration as the sixth of November (*pro Sulla*, 52). — **agam**: = **loquar**.

6 19 **domum**: Læca was not of that trade, but a senator of the gens Porcia, another branch of Cato's family. For **in domum** cp. Gram. § 101, n. 2.

6 20 **sceleris**: note the abstract meaning, — *wickedness, criminality*. Freely **amentiae scelerisque** = *of your wicked folly* (cp. 5 1).

6 21 **negas**: regularly this would be **negabis** or **negaveris** (Gram. § 258, a), but **si negas** has both a sharper sound and a more startling effect than **si negabis**. **Quid taces** means *why do you say nothing?* Then, as if Catiline had opened his mouth to speak, but before he could utter a word, Cicero pounced on him with *I'll refute you, if you are saying no (to this)*.

6 22 **una**: adv. — **ubinam gentium sumus**: Gram. § 125. *Where in the world?* is emphatic language of everyday life.

6 25 **consilio**: a **concilium** is just a meeting; **consilium** means both the act of deliberation and a deliberative body. Since the Roman thought of the Roman state as the special care and enterprise of the gods, statcraft was a sacred business; and therefore the senate, which had most to do with the conduct of that business, is appropriately called *sanctissimum consilium*.

6 26 **interitu**: for **omnium** cp. Gram. § 119, a.

6 27 **cogitent**: descr. *qui*-clause furnishing a subj. for **sunt** (l. 24; Gram. § 174). For **atque adeo** cp. 5 5.

6 28 **sententiam rogo**: Introd. § 34; Gram. § 98, a, 2. — **quos**: in Lat. the rel. clause often comes before its antecedent: 'whom by the sword to be butchered were fitting, them not yet by a word I wound.' We can keep this emphasis by saying *and though they deserved*, etc.

6 29 **igitur**: *then, as I was saying* (returning in thought to lines 17 ff., after the digression).

7 1 **placeret**: Gram. § 161. He had assigned *each* (**quemque**) to his par-

ticular field of operations, as Manlius to the region about Fæsulæ, etc. Note that freq. *alicui placet* is equiv. to *aliquis cupit*, and may be so rendered. — *quos relinqueres*: *those to leave* (Gram. § 177).

7 3 *confirma(vi)sti*: *you assured them*.

7 4 *morae*: *cause for delay* (Gram. § 125). — *viverem*: subord. clause in indir. disc., *the fact that*, etc.

7 6 *liberarent*: descr. clause, with purpose implied (Gram. § 174). Trans. by an inf.

7 7 *pollicerentur*: Introd. §§ 70 f., on the attempt of Cornelius and his companion to assassinate Cicero as he sat up to greet his earliest callers.

7 8 *vixdum etiam*: *almost before* (lit.?). — *comperi*: through Fulvia, mistress of Curius, one of the conspirators.

7 9 *firmaui*: sometimes the grammatical structure obscures the picture to our eyes. This sentence *seems* to mean *I barricaded and strengthened my house by means of stronger guards*. A Roman was used to this kind of language, and would see the picture and forget the frame: *I set a stronger guard about my house and put up stouter barricades*.

7 10 *miseras*: with the supine of purpose, *salutatum* (Gram. § 93). The very early morning call was a familiar feature of Roman social life.

7 12 *praedixeram*: in *multis ac summis* omit the conj. in trans. (cp. note on 5 15). *Id temporis* = *eo tempore* (Gram. § 103). *Quos venturos . . . praedixeram* = *who* (not 'whom') *I had earlier told . . . would come*.

7 15 *Manliana*: we can't say 'Manlian camp' any more than 'Jonesian barn.' To get in the three ideas contained in *tua*, *illa*, and *Manliana*, we may trans. *your camp up there that Manlius is organizing*, where 'up there' gives the idea of remoteness contained in *illa*.

7 16 *desiderant*: for the pres. with *diu*, etc., where Eng. has perf., cp. Gram. § 62.

7 18 *intersit*: for the proviso cp. Gram. § 276. Note that *murus* is the proper word, not *paries* (5 21). It is a massive wall, as that of a city.

7 19 *non feram*, etc.: these three verbs are not synonyms; they express three different aspects of the same thing: *I will not bear (that burden)*; *I will not suffer (that annoyance)*; *I won't let (you do it)*.

7 20 *huic*: the orator was pointing to the statue which occupied the place of honor in the temple (cp. 17 20). In *atque*, and especially, one passes from the general to the particular.

7 21 *gratia*: there are three aspects of gratitude: (1) to have the grateful thought; (2) to speak the grateful word; (3) to do the grateful deed. Corresponding to these we have three formulas: (1) *gratiam habere alicui*, *to feel grateful (have gratitude) to someone*; (2) *gratias agere alicui*, *to thank (utter thanks to) someone*; (3) *gratiam referre alicui*, *to show gratitude to someone*. These formulas should be learned.

7 23 **in uno homine**: *on account of one man* (Catiline), — not merely 'in the case of one man.'

7 24 **summa salus**: *the very existence*.

7 26 **defendi**: for Cicero's election to the consulship cp. Introd. § 65. He was *consul designatus* for about six months.

7 28 **interficere voluisti**: Introd. § 69. **Campo** is short for **campo Martio**, i.e. the meadows of the Tiber, where the elections were held, northwest of the Capitoline. Catiline was defeated by Murena and Silanus. For elections cp. Introd. § 37.

7 29 **nullo . . . concitato**: *without sounding any general* (really official) *alarm*.

7 30 **quotienscumque me petisti**: not merely 'as often as you have attacked me,' but 'as often as you have attacked ME; better still, *as often as I, and I alone, was the object of your attacks*. The emphasis conveys half the meaning. The same principle can be applied to **mihi designato** (7 25) and **me consulem** (7 27). — **per me . . . obstiti**: i.e. without calling on the army, — the same point as in **nullo**, etc. A résumé, properly introduced by **denique**, *in short*.

8 1 **cum . . . esse coniunctam**: *involved*, or, more freely, *would involve*.

8 2 **iam . . . petis**: **iam** is with **aperte**, i.e. *with no further concealment*.

3 5 **vocas**: this climax exaggerates the damage Catiline wished to do (cp. 4 1 f., 6 26 f.; Introd. § 22, d). Note **vitam** = *lives*, as often.

8 7 **audeo**: as the thing is *not* to be done, we see that **est primum** meant *would be the first thing (to do)* (cp. Gram. § 53, b). So **proprium est** = *would be in keeping with*. **Huius imperi**, *my authority*, includes the extraordinary powers supposedly conferred by martial law (Introd. § 35). In **disciplinae maiorum** he hints that the *teaching of the forefathers* would support the view that the *senatus consultum ultimum* authorized and demanded prompt action. For the gens. cp. Gram. § 128.

8 8 **ad . . . utilius**: in these phrases **ad** may be trans. *as regards*. Cicero's wish to proceed against Catiline was tempered by fear of the popular party and by regard for Cæsar and Crassus. Note the order of this sentence (chiasmus; Introd. § 22, c).

8 10 **manus**: the order emphasizes both **residebit** and its subj.

8 11 **exieris**: Gram. § 261. The rel. **quod**-clause (lit. *what*, etc.) refers to **exieris**. Trans. *as or and this is what*. — **hortor**: pres., as usual with **iam dudum**, **iam diu**, etc. (cp. 3 18, 7 15). For **quod** and **te** cp. Gram. § 98, a, 2. — **exhaurietur . . . publicae**: *there will be drawn off from the city, (in the person) of your followers, a great and noxious accumulation of political filth*. **Sentina** means lit. *bilge water, sewage*. **Rei publicae** (translated *political*) is here the community, which has in it this plague spot. For the gen. **comitum** = 'composed of,' etc. see Gram. § 126.

8 12 **quid est**: simply calls attention to the following quest. (cp. note on 6 9 fin.).

8 14 **faciebas**: conative imperf., *wanted to do, were trying to do* (Intro. § 70). — **hostem**: note the emphasis on this odious term.

8 15 **num in exsilium**: sc. **eum ire iubeat**. — **me**: note that while **me consulis** means *you are consulting me, asking my advice*, **mihi consulis** means *you are taking thought for me, looking out for my welfare*.

8 18 **possit**: Gram. § 174.

8 20 **oderit**: the same constr.; so also **metuat**. — **inusta . . . est**: the fig. is from the branding of runaway slaves, criminals, and captives.

8 22 **in fama**: in **privatarum rerum** he refers to personal relations in a wider circle than the **domus**. Observe the fig.: disgrace like a clot of filth clinging to his fair fame, — like 'a blot on the scutcheon.' — **quae . . . afuit**: freely, *when have your eyes been free from, etc.*

8 23 **cui**: the dat. gets its trans. from its connection with the **prae in praetulist**: *before what (wretched) stripling . . . have you not borne*.

8 24 **inretisses**: descr. clause (Gram. § 174).

8 25 **facem praetulisti**: torch-bearers were necessary in the streets at night.

8 26 **quid vero?** cp. **quid est?** with the following quest., l. 12.

8 27 **novis nuptiis**: for the dat. cp. Gram. § 115. Only here is Catiline charged with making away with his first wife, in order to marry a second, Aurelia Orestilla.

8 28 **cumulavisti**: the other crime, at which Cicero hints (perhaps even he did not believe it), is reported by Sallust as commonly accepted, — that to please Orestilla he had murdered his son by his first marriage (*Cat.* 15, 2).

9 1 **esse videatur**: these words (a musical cadence) often recur at the end of a member or sentence in Cicero (Intro. § 19, 2, c). Roman law depended upon the initiative of a private accuser, and it might happen that none came forward. There was no prosecuting attorney. — **non vindicata esse**: *to have gone unpunished*.

9 3 **Idibus . . . senties**: the beginning and middle of the month were dates for payment. **Omnis**, emphatic, is in agreement with **quas**. When an adj. agrees with a rel. pron., it is generally best to transfer it to the antecedent. This gives us **omnis ruinas quas**, *the utter ruin which*, etc. For the fig. in **praetermitto** cp. Intro. § 22, n, 6.

9 5 **turpitudinem**: cp. 8 20. **Difficultatem**, *financial straits*, repeats the thought of **ruinas fortunarum**. The phrase **summa res publica** means *the highest welfare* (or *very existence*) of the state, esp. in speaking of some crisis.

9 8 **iucundus**: agreeing in sense with **lux** also (Gram. § 8 fin.). Here **aut** is not *or else, or*, but is so weakened that it should be *and* in Eng. (Gram. § 48). — **qui nesciat**: descr. clause.

9 9 **Kalendas Ianuarias**: Gram. § 104. December 29 (unreformed calendar, Gram. § 302) was the last day of the consuls' term, 66 B.C.

9 10 **cum telo**: *armed* (Gram. § 143). For the scene, the Comitium, cp. Intro. § 48; the plot was to be carried out the next day. — **manum . . .**

paravisse: (*and that you*) raised a gang. For this attempt to kill the new consuls, Cotta and Torquatus, on the day of their inauguration, cp. *Intro.* § 64.

9 13 **obstisise:** governing the *dat.* **sceleri ac furori**; freely, *but that your crime or rather (ac) . . . were blocked, not by, etc.* **Mentem aliquam** = *some return of reason*. Fortuna was much worshiped at Rome under many different titles. Most important was *Fortuna publica populi Romani*, whose temple was on the Quirinal. Note that no *conj.* connects **stetisse** with **paravisse** and **obstisise** (*Intro.* § 22, g); also that the **cum**-clause (l. 8) is causal = *knowing as you do* (*Gram.* § 229). — **illa omitto:** *illa* often looks forward (cp. 4 3).

9 14 **neque . . . postea:** *lit. for not either unknown or infrequent (crimes) have been committed later; freely, for your later crimes have been neither unknown nor few.* **Neque enim** = **non enim** in *trans.* **Non multa** = **pauca**, the *fig.* called *litotes* (*Intro.* § 22, n, 2).

9 15 **designatum . . . consulem:** (*when I was*) *consul elect . . . (when I was) consul.* So **puerum illum vidi** means *I saw him (when he was) a boy, or in his boyhood.*

9 16 **conatus es:** apparently Cicero exaggerates his personal danger.

9 18 **corpore effugi:** as a fencing term **corpore** was short for a quick movement of the body, — *by dodging.* **Ut aiunt** excuses the use of a technical term. **Petitiones** = *thrusters* is likewise a technical term. **Quadam** is virtually an *indef. article.* For **designatum** cp. 7 25.

9 19 **velle desistis:** **conari** and **velle**, used *intrans.*, have the effect of *attempts and intentions.*

9 20 **de manibus:** for the *constr.* of **tibi** cp. *Gram.* § 112.

9 21 **quae . . . quibus:** it is a principle of *trans.* that when a *rel. clause* contains a word like **ut**, **si**, **cum**, or an *interrog.*, the *rel.* must be treated as if it were **et**, **sed**, **nam**, or **iam** + the same case of **is**. Thus, **quae cum ita sint** = **et cum ea ita sint**, and our **quae quibus** sentence smoothes out into **sed quibus sacris ea abs te initiata ac devota sit, nescio**, *but with what rites it, etc.*

9 23 **defigere:** as though Catiline had vowed to dedicate the dagger to a god if he should prove successful in assassinating Cicero. **Quod** = *that*, causal.

9 26 **nulla debetur:** **nullus** for **non** was usually informal and colloquial; here emphatic (*not a bit of which*) and more sonorous. For the *constr.* cp. **quas omnis** (l. 2). With **quo debeo** we understand **permoveri**.

9 29 **contigit nemini:** fortunate happenings are the general rule with this verb; but not so here.

10 1 **oppressus:** **cum** = *when*, in its causal sense (cp. 9 8, **cum scias**). Note the impassioned *quest.* without **num** (*Gram.* § 32, e).

10 3 **constituti fuerunt:** instead of **constituti sunt**, for the sake of a more pleasing rhythm. For *dat.* **tibi** cp. *Gram.* § 114.

10 6 **ferendum putas:** the *subj.* of **ferendum (esse)** is the double **quod**-clause, *the fact that, etc.* Note that **istam** = **tuam** (*Gram.* § 21). Begin the whole *trans.*

with a paraphrase of *quo tandem animo tibi ferendum putas quod: tell me (tandem), how do you think you should feel in view of the fact that, etc.* — *isto pacto . . . ut: = isto pacto . . . quo, in the way in which, or simply as.*

10 8 *putarem*: conclusion of the unreal cond. (Gram. § 252). — *tibi*: Gram. § 114. — *urbem*: sc. *relinquendam esse*. — *non*: for *nonne* (Gram. § 32, b).

10 9 *civibus*: Gram. § 111 (*unjustly the object of so much suspicion — yes, and (atque) loathing in the eyes of my fellow citizens*). It is also possible to call *civibus* a dat. of agent with *suspectum*. Of course, the dat. of agent is merely a convenient name for those dat. of reference where an abl. of agent might have been used without destroying the sense.

10 10 *me*: cp. note on 4 28.

10 13 *debitum*: pred., as is also *iustum*, — *as just and (a debt) long since due to you*. *Conscientia scelerum = with your guilty conscience*. — *dubitas*: cp. note on *non* (3 8). — *quorum*, etc.: cp. note on *quos* (6 28). Lit. 'do you hesitate, whose minds and feelings you are wounding, their sight and presence to shun?' One can trans. by a rearrangement according to grammar, — *do you hesitate to shun the sight and presence of those, etc.*, or by changing the rel. clause to a conditional, — *do you hesitate, etc. if you are wounding, etc.* *Cum . . . agnoscas* is now seen to have been concessive (Gram. § 230).

10 17 *patria*: with *nunc (as it is)* we return from supposition to reality.

10 18 *parricidio . . . cogitare*: *parricidium patriae* was a phrase for high treason. For *iam diu* with pres. cp. 8 10.

10 19 *huius*: this pron. is freq. used to refer to the person or thing prominent in a preceding sentence. It links the two sentences by showing that their topics are the same. — *verebere*, etc., *will you neither respect (not 'fear') her majesty, etc.*

10 20 *pertimesces*: climax. Again no sign of quest. (*nonne* or *huiusne*). — *quae*: *and she*. When a sentence begins with a rel. the same principle applies as in 9 21.

10 21 *loquitur*: bringing in an imaginary person as a speaker was a familiar fig. of rhetoric, and this was an oft-cited example (Introd. § 22, n, 1). — *agit: agere cum aliquo* can refer to almost any kind of conversation with a purpose. It can mean *confer with, converse with, transact business with*, or, as here, *plead with someone*. *Loqui cum aliquo* means *talk to someone*. *Dicere alicui = to speak to or tell someone*. *Dicere = to make a speech*; *orationem habere = to deliver an oration*, — a more formal expression.

10 22 *annis*: Gram. § 155. An acc. would have meant that the crime had not continued *through* several years; the abl. means that *at no point within* the space of several years did it occur (unless through him). For this reason the abl. of time within which and not the acc. of duration is commonly found with negs.

10 23 *tibi uni*: *for you alone* (Gram. § 111). With *neces* understand *liberae fuerunt*. In *civium neces* there is allusion to Catiline's part in Sulla's proscriptions, 82 B. C.; in *vexatio*, etc., to his government of Africa, 67 B. C.

10 25 quaestiones: the regular courts for particular offenses were called *quaestiones perpetuae* (Introd. § 40).

10 26 valuisti: note the rhetorical effects (*nullum . . . te, nullum . . . te; tibi . . . tibi . . . tu*); cp. Introd. § 22, *h*, also *a* and *c*. **Valere ad** = *to succeed in*.

10 27 ut potui: *as (best) I could*. — **me totam esse in metu:** *for me to be utterly in dread* (adj. for adv.). As no verb of saying or thinking has preceded, this must be subj. or obj. of a verb yet to come.

10 29 timeri: on this depends *quicquid increpuerit* (hence the subjv.; Gram. § 289). *Quicquid (whatever) = si quid; if there is any noise = at the least noise*.

10 30 abhorreat: descr. clause, — *is out of harmony with (free from), has no connection with*. — **non est ferendum:** at last the clue to the preceding inf. clauses. They are subjs. of **est ferendum**.

10 31 eripe: as a verb of separation this takes a dat. of the person concerned (Gram. § 112). The use of the dat. to indicate separation from persons, and the abl. for separation from things, has a parallel in Eng. We say, "The carpenter pulled the nail *out of* the board," but "The dentist pulled a tooth *for* the man." The man is interested, but the board is not. **Hunc** = *my*. — **verus:** *well founded*. — **ne opprimar, ut . . . desinam:** both clauses depend upon **eripe**.

11 1 impetrare debeat: impetrare (*get what one seeks*) is often used without an obj. when the meaning is clear from the context.

11 2 quid quod: *what of the fact that* (cp. Gram. § 235). For the circumstances cp. Introd. § 70. Catiline was awaiting trial, and *libera custodia* in a private house was customary in such cases. The master of the house would be responsible for his paroled prisoner. Catiline's trial never came off.

11 4 M'. Lepidum: Manius Lepidus was consul when, in 66 B. C. (99), Catiline was returning from Africa, hoping to sue for the consulship of the next year. The use of **ad** for **apud** is rare, except in colloquial Latin; cp. 25 9. — **A quo non receptus: et cum ab eo receptus non esses.** Cp. note on *quae* (10 20); also Gram. § 77.

11 6 id responsum tulisses: *id*, looking forward, is little more than a definite article (*the answer that, etc.*).

11 7 parietibus . . . moenibus: the first means *house walls*; the second, *city walls* (cp. note on 7 18).

11 8 esse tecum: the place where is given by *isdem parietibus* without a prep. (Gram. § 154, *b*, 3).

11 9 Metellum: Q. Metellus Celer had been sent to the Adriatic coast and eastern slope of the Apennines, and was raising three legions to resist Manlius and the Catilinarians (cp. 21 4 f.).

11 11 M. Metellum: this M. Metellus is quite unknown. Detention in his house was far from strict, as Catiline could attend secret meetings. **Virum optimum** is ironical. **Quem tu videlicet . . . fore putasti** = *who you, of course, thought would be*. **Videlicet** is ironical.

11 14 videtur . . . debere: Latin likes the personal construction with **videri**. This is lit. *does one seem to deserve*, but we trans. *does it seem that one ought*. By saying 'one' or 'a man,' rather than 'he,' we make it clear that **qui iudicavit** is a descr. clause. The *carcer*, a very small prison (Introd. §§ 49, 84), was used only for executions or for detention of criminals awaiting trial. Its mention is ominous. Catiline, of course, by his offer to place himself in the custody of a responsible citizen meant to give the impression that he was innocent, and eager to face investigation. Cicero is attempting to give his action a quite different interpretation. As an argument it is worthless, but, as the speaker hurried on, it may have helped to make the picture of Catiline's guilt seem darker.

11 17 in aliquas terras: cp. **10 16, aliquo concederes**. **Aliquas terras** means almost 'some lands, no matter what,' since **aliquis** implies that the *some* does not refer to anything that he has definitely in mind.

11 19 ad senatum: Catiline is represented as demanding that the question of his exile be formally brought before the senate (Introd. § 33).

11 20 ire in exsilium: **ire** with its modifiers is subj. of **placere** (= *that it is its pleasure*). Cp. note on **7 1**. Contrast:

1. **Senatus decrevit Catilinam hostem esse** = *the senate voted THAT Catiline WAS an enemy with*

2. **Senatus decrevit ut Catilina in exsilium iret** = *the senate voted THAT Catiline SHOULD go into banishment*. Cp. **4 14**. The difference in constr. depends on the difference in thought. In 1 **decrevit** almost = **dixit**; hence the indirect statement. In 2 it is more like **imperavit**.

The same double usage is found after **persuadeo, praecipio**, etc.

11 21 dicis: Catiline could count upon the senate to take no action, as it had no authority to pass a sentence of exile. — **non referam:** Cicero, however, assumes that the senate was so empowered by the *senatus consultum ultimum*; but he declines to bring up the question (cp. Introd. § 35). — **id quod:** *something which*. — **a meis moribus**, etc.: *is not my way*, meaning his aversion to harsh measures.

11 22 faciam ut intellegas: *I will make you understand*; result clause (Gram. § 199).

11 24 vocem: *word* (referring to **exsilium**). — **proficiscere:** after pronouncing his solemn in **exsilium proficiscere** in the voice of authority, Cicero pauses for some possible response from protesting senators.

11 25 quid est: merely announcing a question to follow (cp. **8 12**).

11 26 silentium: *utter stillness* (not merely the absence of speech). As this is the obj. of both synonymous verbs, **ecquid** must be adv. acc., — *in any way, at all, possibly*. — **auctoritatem loquentium:** i.e. *a formal deliverance or authoritative utterance from those*. Distinguish between **tacere**, *to utter no word*, **silere**, *to make no sound* (at all), and **quiescere**, *to take no action*. The same distinction applies to their derivatives (**silentium**, etc.).

11 27 **perspicis**: he is arguing, of course, that their silence gives assent. — **tacitorum**: *although silent, or from their silence*.

12 1 **manus intulisset**: his point is that to order good men into exile would have been the act of a tyrant, whom anyone might rightly slay, even though the tyrant were a consul and on sacred ground. His examples are: (1) P. Sestius, a quaestor, who soon after rendered good service against the conspirators at Capua, and then in the campaign which ended with Catiline's death near Pistoria. One of Cicero's best-known speeches was delivered in his defense in 56 B. C. (*pro Sestio*). (2) M. Marcellus, consul in 51 B. C., and an opponent of Cæsar. When he was pardoned by the latter (46 B. C.), Cicero delivered his *pro Marcello* (115 ff.). **Vim et manus** = *violent hands* (hendiadys; Introd. § 22, n, 12). — **de te**: emphatic contrast.

12 2 **cum quiescunt, probant**: explanatory **cum**, *in that*, marks one action as equiv. to another; *in taking no notice they approve* (Gram. § 222).

12 3 **clamant**, etc.: *their very silence shouts (approval)*. Each of these short members introduced by **cum** contains apparently contradictory terms (oxymoron; Introd. § 22, n, 3). **Patiantur** = *make no protest*; cp. 11 26.

12 4 **cara**: i. e. Catiline pretends to value a formal decree of the senate (*auctoritas*; cp. 11 26). **Videlicet** is ironical, as in 11 11. For **vita** cp. 8 4.

12 5 **equites Romani**: Introd. § 71. At least a part of them were armed. — **illi**: outside, in contrast with **hi**. — **honestissimi**: *honorable*, not 'honest.' The superl., as often, is best neglected in trans. Roman etiquette prescribed that persons, other than those accused, should not be mentioned in a speech without the addition of some sort of compliment.

12 6 **cives**: the **cives** here meant were those of the middle class.

12 8 **exaudire potuisti**: through the large open door of the temple (Introd. § 33) much could be seen by the senators within, and cries distinctly heard would from time to time remind them of the restless crowd without. — **quorum . . . eosdem**: *and (although) for a long time now I have had difficulty in restraining*, etc. Cp. notes on 6 28 and 10 13.

12 9 **adducam**: *will induce*. — **haec**: freely, *this city* (accompanied by a sweep of the hand to indicate the sacred edifices about the Forum, and the other buildings of the city). — **te . . . relinquentem**: *as you are leaving forever*. *To leave* in the sense of *to set out* is **proficisci**. In 'He is no longer here: he has left school,' *left* would be **reliquit**. *Leave* simply in the sense of *go away from* would be **discedo**, **abeo**, **exeo**, etc.

12 10 **studes**: note the tense, as in **contineo**, l. 9; cp. 10 18.

12 11 **prosequantur**: *escort*. Note the contrast between their present eagerness to lynch Catiline and their willingness to 'see him off' if he will only leave the city.

12 12 **loquor**: with the main clause **quamquam** = *and yet* (Gram. § 218, b). — **frangat**: an exclamatory quest. of surprise or indignation, rejecting an idea

as preposterous or impossible, has the subjv., with (or without) **ut** (Gram. § 186), — *anything crush (subdue) you?* More forceful than **nulla res te frangere potest**. — **tu corrigas**, etc.: *you ever reform?*

12 13 **ullam fugam meditere**, etc.: *cherish any (plan of) flight, any thought of exile?*

12 15 **duint**: *vouchsafe*; old form, used in laws, curses, prayers; originally an optative mood, like **sint**, **velint**, etc. The reg. subjv. form is **dent**; cp. Gram. § 56. — **tametsi**: used just as **quamquam** was in line 12 (cp. Gram. § 269).

12 16 **animum induxeris**: as in **animum adverto**, *turn attention to = notice*, we have here a combination which has come to be treated as a single word, *resolve*, and hence has its own obj. (**ire**).

12 17 **nobis** = **mihi**. This use is freq., and may be compared to the "editorial *we*" in Eng. For **si minus** cp. 7 16.

12 18 **impendeat**: we now have the constr. of **nobis** (dat.). **Recenti memoria** gives a reason. — **est tanti**: *it is worth while* (Gram. § 124).

12 20 **seiungatur**: *be not connected with or do not involve* (lit.?) ; proviso clause (cpd.) (Gram. § 242). **Privata**, *confined to you*, is pred., and **ista** might have been used without **tua**; but cp. 3 2, **furor iste tuus**. Catiline's downfall must work no harm for the state.

12 21 **legum poenas**: English says *penalties of the law* (sing.).

12 22 **est postulandum**: the subj. is furnished by three subst. clauses. Note the sense of **temporibus**, *critical situation*; also the sarcasm in **non est postulandum**, — it is too much to ask that Catiline do the decent thing.

12 24 **furore**: since the only sane course would be to retire. — **revocarit**: with **is** = **talis** an **ut**-clause expresses result.

12 26 **in exsilium**: by going *directly* (**recta**) into exile, Catiline, who claimed that Cicero's motives were those of a personal enemy, could readily stir up feeling against the consul. Notice how **ut praedicas**, *as you assert*, directly following **inimico**, deprives Catiline of the chance of saying that Cicero admits that he is Catiline's personal enemy.

12 27 **molem istius invidiae**: *the crushing weight of criticism incurred by my treatment of you* (lit.?). Cicero was a sensitive man, who loved approval; it took courage for him to face **invidia** (*odium, unpopularity*).

12 30 **manu**: Cicero has no wish that Catiline should leave his *dangerous* (**importuna**) band of followers behind, — precisely what did happen within twenty-four hours.

13 1 **impio latrocinio**: **impius** is applied to Catiline's brigandage, as treasonable to the **patria**, the **communis parens** (10 17).

13 2 **ut . . . videaris**: in this purpose clause **non** is required (not **ne**), as the neg. applies to a single word (Gram. § 193). To get the right emphasis we may paraphrase: *so that it may be evident — not that I drove you out, and you went to strangers — but that you went to your own friends, and on their invitation* (lit.?).

13 4 *quamquam*: with the main verb, as in 12 12. — *invitem*: deliberative quest. (Gram. § 55, *d*).

13 5 *praemissos*: a *quo* introduces a descr. clause giving a reason, — *when (since) I know that you have already sent* (act. to be preferred in trans.).

13 6 *armati*: emphatic position. Catiline's purpose is expressed in the *qui*-clause. He was to be met near Forum Aurelium, a small place on the Via Aurelia, near the coast, about sixty miles from Rome. For *ad cp.* Gram. § 101, *b*.

13 7 *diem*: another clause like a *quo sciam*, etc., but with dat. of agent for variety (Gram. § 114). Here again the act. will be better in Eng. In the sense of an appointed day, *dies* is *f*. He means October 27 (*cp.* 5 28; *Introd.* § 70).

13 11 *cui*: (*and*) *for which*. Latin omits the conj. which English regularly inserts between rel. clauses.

13 13 *esse praemissam*: a sure proof of his intention to follow very shortly. The standards were highly venerated, and kept in a kind of shrine in the camp. According to Sallust this legionary standard was said to have been carried by Marius' troops in his campaign against the Cimbri, thirty-eight years before (*Cat.* 59, 3). Catiline made a shrine for it in his own house, — a *sanctuary of crime* (*cp.* 25 19). In trans. the act. is again to be preferred. — *illa*: Gram. § 134.

13 14 *possis*: the scornful quest. is like those in 12 12 ff., — *you able to do without it longer?*

13 15 *ad caedem*: *to (commit) murder*. — *solebas*: i. e. in his private chapel.

13 16 *cuius*: *cp.* note on *cui*, 13 11. — *altaribus*: only one altar is meant. The word had as yet no sing. He is, no doubt, exaggerating Catiline's deeds of blood, as well as his devotions. *Cp.* the *sica* of 9 20 ff.

13 18 *transtulisti*: the hands with which Catiline had laid hold of the altar in making his frantic vows he *removed to (accomplish) the death of citizens*.

13 20 *rapiebat*: *had been hurling you*, i. e. into civil war; more heated than *has been*, etc., which would be *rapit* (*cp.* 12 9, *contineo*; Gram. § 62). — *neque enim*: trans. the *neque* like *non*.

13 21 *haec res*: Catiline's departure, which would be the first decisive step towards war.

13 22 *ad . . . servavit*: the thought is that, inclined from birth to such wild deeds, he had voluntarily strengthened his bad qualities by practice, and had had the luck to escape the consequences of his folly.

13 24 *concupisti*: the thing he has obviously never desired is set aside with a *non modo*, — *to say nothing of (I'll not say) peace*. *Ne . . . quidem* reinforces *numquam* (Gram. § 40). — *nactus*, etc. Attention to the grouping of the words will make this plain; read it as though it were *nactus es manum improborum, conflata ex perditis atque (ex) derelictis non modo ab omni fortuna, verum etiam (ab omni) spe*. Caution! Don't stop here. When you can see the thought

clearly, go back and read the Latin as Cicero spoke it, and try to take in the words in the order which he used. By doing this often, you will gradually lose the sense of strangeness in the Latin order and begin to realize how impressive it could be.

13 25 ab . . . fortuna: observe the personif. of *fortuna* and *spes* (Gram. § 139). For *omni*, *every*, we may substitute an adv., *utterly*.

13 27 perfruere: evidently *hic* (lit. *here*) meant *in such company* (as I have just described). For *laetitia* cp. Gram. § 147, *a*.

13 29 quemquam: when persons are spoken of, this word is sometimes an adj. (= *ullus*). — **ad . . . otiosorum: huius vitae** (= *such a life as this*) refers to the preceding sentence. **Feruntur** = *are bragged about* (by Catiline's followers). **Meditati sunt** = *have prepared you*. The inf. *iacere* and *vigilare* are in appos. to *labores*, *hardships*. This paraphrase will give the sense: 'to lie in the open (lit. on the ground) not merely to be ready for some shameful affair but even to do deeds of violence; to spend sleepless nights in plotting not only to steal men's wives away but also how to gain by craft the goods of peaceable citizens.' Cicero will not admit that Catiline has any virtues, and makes the most of every bit of gossip.

14 5 ubi ostentes: a descr. *ubi*-clause (Gram. § 204, *a*). Cp. Eng. "he has nowhere to go."

14 6 quibus: = *and by these*. The antecedents are *famis*, etc., without conjs. (asyndeton). Alliteration.

14 8 reppuli: for the *cum*-clause cp. Gram. § 220; for the part of Cicero in compassing the defeat of Catiline in the recent election cp. *Introd.* § 69.

14 9 posses: subst. clause, in appos. with *tantum* (Gram. § 199). There is a scathing play on the contrasted *exsul* and *consul* (*Introd.* § 22, *l*). — **id . . . susceptum:** *your wicked enterprise* (lit.?).

14 10 latrocinium: as Catiline is not to be consul, he can only conduct a guerrilla warfare, like that of Spartacus, which Cicero refuses to dignify by calling it *bellum* (regular warfare).

14 12 detester ac deprecere: *defend myself and protest against* (lit. *ward off* (by protest) and plead against). — **percipite . . . mandate:** the preceding *ut*-clause of purpose depends loosely upon these two imperatives (Gram. § 190).

14 16 loquatur: the less vivid fut. cond. is like that in 11 1, where the personif. *patria* remonstrates with Catiline (cp. note on 10 21). There is no conclusion to this condition, which is forgotten in the imaginary recital of the *patria's* grievances against the consul. *Patria* here is the city of Rome.

14 20 perditorum: some, at least, of Catiline's companions urged him to invoke the aid of slaves and criminals (cp. 40 20 f.). In *servorum* Cicero is recalling terrible memories of the slave uprising under Spartacus, less than a decade before.

14 21 emissus . . . immissus: *Introd.* § 22, *l*.

14 23 imperabis: here with acc. and inf., as often when that inf. is pass. or dep. (Gram. § 297 and n. 2).

14 25 civis: e.g. the Gracchi (3 20, 4 17). But *persaepe* is rhetorical exaggeration; cp. 3 19 ff. For *morte* cp. Gram. § 148. — **leges:** several laws had confirmed the ancient right of appeal to the people in capital cases: the first Valerian law, 509 B. C., and much more recently the *leges Porciae* and the *lex Semproniana* of the younger Gracchus.

14 26 rogatae sunt: *have been passed.* A magistrate formally asked the people whether they approved a bill.

14 27 qui . . . defecerunt: *traitors* (lit.?).

14 28 tenuerunt, etc.: the popular party never accepted this principle, for who was to decide at what moment disaffected citizens lost their rights? Later, Catiline and Manlius were declared *hostes* by the senate. — **times:** *posteritatis* is unusual for *in* or *for the future*. We may trans. *hereafter*. — **praeclaram:** ironical.

15 1 per . . . cognitum: *recognized (merely) for your own achievements.* — **nulla . . . maiorum:** i.e. he did not win office on the strength of his ancestors' achievements. It explains *per te cognitum* by contrast.

15 3 extulit: in *tam mature* speaks the pardonable pride of a man, who, though a *novus homo*, had filled each of the four offices (*honores*) at the earliest age permitted by law (Introd. § 23 fin.). He was forty-three in January of this year. His father, a knight, had held no office (Introd. § 52).

15 4 si quis est: sc. *tibi*, — *if you have any*.

15 6 pertimescenda: the gens. give the sources of *invidia* (i.e. *occasioned by, due to, etc.*).

15 7 ardebunt: note that the *cum*-clause has only the one conj. (asyndeton).

15 8 conflagraturum: because by that time *invidia* will be universal — no mere hostility of a party. **Non = nonne.**

15 9 his . . . mentibus: observe the balance of this sentence — *His sanctissimis-rei-publicae vocibus, et eorum-hominum-qui-hoc-idem-sentiunt mentibus*, where the complete modifiers of *vocibus* and *mentibus*, respectively, are joined by hyphens. *Mentibus* means *thoughts*, in contrast with *vocibus*, *words*.

15 11 respondebo: if the condition (*si . . . loquatur*, 14 14–16) were not so far away, we should expect *respondeam*, the formal conclusion (cp. n. on 14 16; Gram. § 258, b). — **factu:** cp. Gram. § 93, b. **Hoc** and **illud** are often used to arrest the attention, with an appos. clause to explain them, in this case *Catilinam morte multari* (cp. 14 25). So in English, instead of saying 'the best thing to do is to punish him with death,' we may say impressively, 'THIS is the best thing to do — to punish,' etc.

15 14 clarissimi cives: i.e. private citizens, as Scipio Nasica (3 19); while *summi viri* refers to magistrates, as Opimius, Marius, and Valerius (4 14, 19). —

Saturnini . . . sanguine . . . honestarunt (= **honestaverunt**): of course members of the liberal party would disagree flatly with this. Cp. *Intro.* § 42.

15 15 superiorum complurium: of many before their time. Flaccus is the Fulvius Flaccus of 4 18.

15 16 verendum . . . erat: *I had no need to fear*, i. e. at the past time to which **dedissem** (l. 13) referred.

15 17 ne quid . . . invidiae mihi . . . redundaret: the strength of this expression, as so often in Lat., lies in its verb, — *that I should suffer from any excess of unpopularity* (lit. *anything of unpopularity be in excess for me*). **Posteritatem** has the same meaning as in 14 28. For **invidiae** cp. *Gram.* § 125. The abl. abs. is equiv. to a cond., **si . . . interfectus esset**.

15 18 quod si: usually *but if*; but here the following **tamen** makes it clear that the **si** means, rather, *even if*, or *although*.

15 19 maxime: *seriously*. — **hoc animo fui**: instead of ending the cond. regularly with **putarem**, *I should regard*, Cicero alters the course of the sentence slightly, and says, *I have always been so constituted that I regarded*, etc. The result clause **ut putarem** defines **hoc**. Cp. note on 15 11.

15 20 gloriam: *as a thing to boast of* (pred.). The sting of the **invidia** is unnoticed when it is a proof of **virtus**. **Partam**, *gained, incurred*, is from **pario**.

15 21 quamquam: cp. notes on 12 12, 13 4.

15 22 videant, dissimulent: cp. *Gram.* § 174. **Qui**=**et hi**. When a rel. clause does not restrict the meaning of the antecedent, but simply adds a statement about it, the rel. is freq. best treated in this way. The mood of **aluerunt** shows that this **qui** does not continue the descr. clause.

15 23 mollibus sententiis: may refer to half-hearted measures taken by the senate in July, when it postponed the elections in order to deliberate, and then did nothing worth while (*Intro.* § 68 fin.).

15 27 dicerent: i. e. had Catiline been put to death, many (including **imperi**, who simply did not know) would now be saying that Cicero had played the tyrant (cp. **regie**). **Quorum** (= **et eorum**) is like **qui** in line 22. Observe the difference of time in **animadvertissem** and **dicerent**. — **intellego**: for **nunc** = *as it is, in reality*, after an unreal cond. cp. note on 10 17. — **quo intendit**: *his present destination*, a parenth. remark, explained by **in Manliana castra**, and to be trans. after it. For **Manlius'** camp cp. 5 1.

15 29 factam: for the rel. result clause (*as not to see that*, etc.) cp. *Gram.* § 175.

16 1 hoc . . . uno interfecto: = **si hic unus interfectus sit**; cp. 15 17 (*Gram.* § 153).

16 2 reprimi and **16 3 comprimi**: for a similar play on words cp. 14 8 (*Intro.* § 22, l).

16 3 quod si: distinguish between **quod si**, *but if* (the meaning in this passage), and **quod si** in a sentence whose structure shows **quod** to be a rel. pron.,

as in 100 15, *quod si mihi a vobis tribui sentiam*, where *quod* is the subj. of the inf. *tribui*. — *eiecerit*: we cannot tell whether to treat this, together with the following *eduxerit* and *adgregarit*, as ind. or subjv. until we come to *extinguetur atque delebitur*; since these are ind. we conclude that the other verbs are in the same mood, and that this fut. cond. is of the more vivid type. (It is unusual to have one half of a fut. cond. in the ind. and the other in the subjv.; therefore, when we know the mood of *extinguetur* and *delebitur*, we know the mood of the other verbs as well.)

16 5 *extinguetur*: this means first to *put out* (a fire), then to *kill*. Since the *pestis rei publicae* is spoken of as *adulta*, *full-grown*, and its death is to be accompanied by the destruction of the *root* and *seed* (*stirps ac semen*) of troubles, it is clear that we must trans. by *kill* rather than *extinguish* or *put out*. It is well always to remember that Latin words are apt to have several meanings, starting from the same source, like branches from a trunk. If we bear in mind the context, we shall find that the sense of this context will automatically select the right meaning and discard the others, as in the English sentence 'Few have the *nerve* to let the dentist extract a living *nerve* without an anæsthetic.'

16 8 *versamur*: *have been involved* (or *living*). For the tense with *iam diu* cp. note on 3 19. Cicero counted the conspiracy as having begun nearly three years before (Introd. §§ 63 f.).

16 10 *maturitas*: Cicero is still thinking of the conspiracy as an evil weed, which has shot up suddenly, he knows not how, into its full development. — *erupit*: the ind. shows that *nescio quo pacto* has lost the force of an indir. quest. and become a mere *somehow* (cp. *nescio quis* = *somebody*; cp. Gram. § 162). Note *in* = *upon*; but *in . . . tempore* would also have been correct, with a different meaning.

16 11 *hoc . . . tanto*: we do not say in Eng. 'this so great.' Leave out the 'so.' — *tolletur*: in *latrocinio* we have abstract for concrete, — *brigandage* = *band of brigands*.

16 12 *esse relevati*: the order stresses *videbimur*, the mere appearance of relief.

16 13 *residebit*: as in 8 9.

16 14 *rei publicae*: notice the metaphors, the ailments of the body politic, beginning with *relevati* (Introd. § 22, *m*). — *ut . . . sic*: when, as here, these words call attention to a resemblance, the trans. is *as . . . so*; but when they point out a contrast, the rendering is often *though . . . yet*, because those are the words which Eng. employs for that purpose.

17 2 *videntur*: the medical metaphors of the last sentence are amplified into a complete simile, a burning fever. But *aestu febrique* is not necessarily a case of hendiadys, like *vim et manus*, 12 1. For the tense of *biberunt* cp. the similar use with *cum* (Gram. § 224).

17 4 **relevatus . . . poena**: expresses a concession, (*though*) *relieved*, etc., while the abl. abs. **reliquis vivis** is equiv. to a cond., **si reliqui vivi erunt** (= **vivent**), or to a clause with **dum** = *so long as*.

17 6 **quod**: refers not to a single word but to the whole idea **muro secerantur** (= **secerant se**) **a nobis**. Trans. the **quod** by *as*.

17 7 **saepe**: viz. 7 18, 11 9. For rhetorical features in this sentence cp. Introd. § 22, c, g, j.

17 8 **consuli**: the allusion is to the attempted assassination on the previous morning (7 5 ff.). For **suae** emphatic, but not reflex., cp. Gram. § 26. — **praetoris urbani**: his tribunal was apparently near the Lacus Curtius, in the middle of the Forum (Introd. §§ 25, 48 fin.).

17 9 **curiam**: Introd. § 49. — **cum gladiis**: equiv. to **armati**; cp. 9 10. **Mal-leoli** were thrown; **faces**, held in the hand.

17 11 **quid . . . sentiat**: the indir. quest. furnishes a subj. for **sit inscriptum**, and the ptcp. is used as a pred. **Quid de re publica sentiat** refers to men's inward sentiments of loyalty or disloyalty to the government, — *what his political bias is*.

17 13 **fore diligentiam**: the inf. with its modifiers is in appos. with **hoc**. Latin is apt to say that a quality is *in* a person where we say that the person *has* or *displays* the quality. — **auctoritatem**: each element is to display its appropriate virtue; so **auctoritatem** might here be rendered *commanding influence*.

17 14 **omnibus bonis**: he means esp. the middle class (cp. 12 6).

17 16 **esse videatis**: the actual time of **videatis** is that of **fore**, l. 13, — hence, *will see*.

17 17 **hisce ominibus**: linking the closing paragraph with the preceding; for **omens**, **auspices**, are only a fig. for the solemn predictions just uttered, — *with just these forebodings* or *just this prospect* (-ce intensive). But since, to Roman superstition, to name disaster was to invite it, Cicero may well mean that merely by uttering the words **patefacta . . . vindicata** he was bringing bad luck to Catiline. — **cum**: *attended by*. Cp. Gram. § 141.

17 19 **se tecum . . . iunxerunt**: *have been your partners* (lit.?).

17 20 **Iuppiter**: a prayer at the beginning or end of an oration was a familiar feature of ancient rhetoric. Cicero turns toward the temple statue. — **qui . . . constitutus**: make it active before trying to translate, — **quem Romulus isdem auspiciis constituit quibus hanc urbem (constituit)**. Speaking of the god, **constituit**, lit. *established*, may be trans. *began to worship*. With **urbem** the verb would have its ordinary meaning. In the ancient world the gods were not all equally revered in every place; but Roman tradition declared that the cult of Jupiter was established by Romulus, and hence was as old as the city. (Sometimes a community would begin to worship a god only when disaster made them think the god was angry at their neglect.) The legend said that Romulus consecrated the ground, for which temple and statue were provided later, — the temple in 294 B.C., 460 years after the founding of the city.

17 22 Statorem: Cicero takes the more comprehensive interpretation, — not *Slay, Supporter* (in battle, as the legend had it), but *Mainstay, Protector* (of city and empire).

17 24 arcebis: the confident assurance that the prayer will be heard reflects itself in the use of the fut. ind., instead of any form of petition. For *vita* (sing.) = *lives* cp. 12 4.

17 26 scelerum . . . coniunctos: *united to each other by a treaty whose end is crime and by a fellowship of infamy* (lit.?).

SECOND ORATION AGAINST CATILINE

PLACE: The Rostra, in the Forum (Introd. § 48).

TIME: November 9, 63 B.C. (possibly the 10th).

CIRCUMSTANCES: Read Introd. §§ 71 fin.-72.

OUTLINE OF THE ARGUMENT

(1) At last, to our great relief, Catiline has gone, — a victory for us. (2) But how disappointed he must feel!

(3) Why did I not seize him? His death would not have insured your safety while public opinion was divided. (4) Now you see in him a public enemy. I wish he had taken more of his men with him. (5) His "army" is contemptible; but those left behind are a menace. (6) I know their plans, and shall no longer show mercy.

You all see the situation now. Let them follow him at once. (7) Happy state, to have rid itself of a man with such a record of crime, (8) a corrupter of youth, a leader of the depraved and bankrupt, (9) an intimate of gladiators and actors, — their hero, too, for his endurance! (10) Happy state if these desperadoes, who plot fire and murder, leave to join him! (11) A new lease of life for the state if they are destroyed. Domestic enemies (and we have no others) cannot stay unless they keep quiet.

(12) Who can think I drove Catiline from the city? In reality, when he came into the senate yesterday he met a hostile demonstration. (13) I questioned him, revealed his preparations, asked why he hesitated to join the "army" which awaits him. (14) Of course, he is going to Massilia as an exile!

And if so, I shall be thought a tyrant! (15) Never mind about that, — you will soon hear of him as commanding that "army." What if I had taken severe measures? (16) His friends would be disappointed if he went into exile, — which he has no desire to do. Would that he had!

(17) As for the enemies who remain here, my aim is to reform them. They are composed of these groups: (18) *first class*, landholders, heavily in debt, but unwilling to sell, as we may yet compel them to do; (19) *second class*, also in debt, but eager to grasp power by violence (I warn them against such desperate hopes!); (20) *third class*, old veterans of Sulla's military colonies, ruined by extravagance, inciting peasants to hope for new confiscations (my warning to both!); (21) *fourth class*, a disorderly crew of bankrupts, joining that desperate "army," since misery loves company; (22) *fifth class*, the worst criminals (to these he is welcome!); *sixth class*, his favorites, — effeminate

dandies. (23) General muster of the dissolute, who *must* leave, — but how without their usual companions at this season?

(24) Against such troops bring up your real soldiers; use your walled towns and other resources. (25) Not to mention your superiority in other ways, it will be a conflict of all the virtues on our side with all the vices on theirs.

(26) You should protect your own houses. Adequate measures of defense have been taken, to check Catiline and restrain his supporters. The senate is being summoned.

(27) Those conspirators whom he has left behind will be allowed to go; but if they make trouble, they will be severely punished.

(28) Everything will be done with as much mercy and as little severity as possible.

(29) We shall have the manifest aid of the gods. Pray to them to defend the city.

19 1 tandem aliquando: Cicero's intense relief that at last Catiline has left the city is reflected in the opening words. In this speech, addressed to a great crowd, we shall expect to find the style more fervid, the rhetoric more striking, than in the First Oration, delivered in the senate.

19 2 anhelantem: scelus has the abstract sense of *wickedness*, to match *audacia* (cp. 6 20). Wickedness is the very breath of his nostrils, as it were.

19 3 vobis, urbi: cp. Gram. § 107, *b*.

19 5 prosecuti sumus: the hearers are given their choice of three terms, each a milder interpretation than the last of what Cicero had done, — an anti-climax, contrasting with the climax *furentem . . . minitantem* (Intro. § 22, *c*). Cp. the use of *prosequantur*, 12 11. *Verbis* is added because they did not personally escort him as he left; only their words of farewell could be imagined to attend him. For *vel* expressing indifference cp. Gram. § 49, *a*. *Emisimus* gives Cicero's own view of the correct word to use (cp. 20 8, 26 19, and, in a letter to Atticus (II, 1, 3), *quom (= cum) Catilinam emisi*). *Ipsum = ultro* or *sua sponte*.

19 6 erupit: another climax, — bare verbs with no conjs. For the rhetorical features cp. Intro. § 22, *d, i, j*. — **monstro, prodigio:** we sometimes say of a man, "He's a caution." So, because of Catiline's extraordinary wickedness, Cicero calls him an omen and a portent. Trans. *that hideous freak of nature*.

19 7 moenibus: cp. Gram. § 111. Check this free trans. by the Lat. as it actually stands: *no plan will now be laid, within the shelter of the city walls, to destroy the walls themselves*. Catiline can no longer do an 'inside job.'

19 9 non enim: sentences introduced by *nam* or *enim* justify a preceding statement, sometimes by bringing out the details. Here, accordingly, in proof of the statement *we have unquestionably won the victory over this, their supreme commander* (19 8, 9), it is stated that his *well-known* (*illa*) dagger will *no longer* (*non iam*) *be attacking* (*versabitur inter*; lit.?) their bodies.

19 11 pertimescemus: another climax, — first, public places; then, private houses. For assassination, in the most public places, cp. Intro. §§ 64, 69. For the Campus Martius cp. note on 7 28. See also Intro. p. lxi, §§ 48 f.

19 12 **motus est**, etc.: in other words, *lost his ground (advantage)*, as a gladiator or wrestler. For **loco** cp. Gram. § 134. — **depulsus**: for the explanatory **cum**-clause (*in that*, i. e. *in being driven*, etc.) cp. note on 12 2 (Gram. § 222).

19 13 **nullo**: reg. used instead of the very rare abl. of **nemo**. Abl. abs. with **impediente**. **Iustum** merely = *regular*, with no reference to the justice of the war. The same idea is contained in **cum hoste**: when Catiline openly shows that he is no longer **civis** but **hostis**, opposition to him develops into actual war.

19 15 **coniecimus**: the **cum**-clause is like that in line 12. The 'war' is now more exactly described as **apertum latrocinium** (cp. 14 10). — **occultis**: inserted to balance **apertum**. — **quod**: reserve your judgment about the sense until you reach the main clause. **Cruentum** is to be translated after **mucronem**, to stress the proper word.

19 17 **nobis** = *me*; so **extorsimus** = **extorsi**. For **ei** cp. Gram. § 112.

19 18 **incolumis, stantem**: preds.

19 19 **tandem**: cp. 3 1.

19 20 **iacet**: from **iaceo**, not **iacio**.

20 1 **retorquet oculos**: as a dog, driven out of a room where he has tried to steal food, might roll his eyes at the coveted steak as he reluctantly withdraws.

20 2 **quam**: may be translated as if it were **et eam**; or, to avoid so many 'ands,' one may say *grieving that it*, etc.

20 3 **quae**: connecting rel. = **sed ea**, *but she for her part* (**quidem**).

20 4 **proiecerit**: the reason is imagined to be that in the mind of the personified Rome; hence subjv. (Gram. § 233). The metaphor of a beast and his lost prey is suddenly changed to a medical figure.

20 5 **esse . . . oportebat**: *ought to be*, the imperf. (past descr.) implying that not all are the good citizens they should be. This imperf. is reg. with verbs of propriety, etc., in contrast with fact (as in conds., Gram. § 253). — **qui . . . accuset**: *a man who reproaches*, descr. clause (Gram. § 174).

20 6 **in hoc ipso in quo**: *in regard to the very matter about which*.

20 7 **quod**: *that is*, or *the fact that*. The 'that is' helps to show that **quod . . . emisierim** is in appos. with **hoc**. The subjv. is like **proiecerit** (l. 4), quoting the ideas of the **oratio** (l. 6).

20 8 **ista**: fem. by attraction to its pred. **culpa**; more reg. than **istud** (Gram. § 12).

20 10 **oportebat**: cp. line 5; but here, in view of **iam pridem**, we have *ought to have been* (cp. 3 17). For the tense of **interfectum esse** cp. note on 4 26. Note the explanatory force of **et** with **gravissimo . . . adfectum**, — *that is, to have suffered the extreme penalty* (Gram. § 42, b).

20 12 **postulabat**: in agreement with the nearest subj. By **imperi** he means his authority not only as consul, but as one now vested with additional powers

by the proclamation of martial law (cp. 8 6). **Huius** = **mei**. **Res publica** here = *the welfare of the state*.

20 13 **crederent**: descr. clause (and in indir. disc.). **Quae ego deferrem** is equiv. to a subst., *my reports*. It is also a part of the indir. disc.

20 14 **putarent**: *reflect upon (them)*. The four classes who stood in the way of the action Cicero desired are not very distinctly described. They seem, however, to have been, first, those who could not believe his statements; second, stupid men, who could not think clearly on the subject; third, those who even spoke in Catiline's defense; and, fourth, those whose depravity made them actively support his side. Cp. 15 21 ff. for unintentional supporters of Catiline.

20 16 **si . . . iudicaret**: *if it were my judgment*. — **illo sublato**: *by his removal*; abl. abs. — **depelli**: we should expect the fut., and may trans. as if that tense were used. The time of **depelli** is really identical with that of **illo sublato**, because they are merely two aspects of the same act. Putting Catiline out of the way would involve the repulse of every danger; the two things would happen at the same moment.

20 18 **sustulissem**: in view of this past conclusion we may prefer to go back and revise our understanding of **iudicaret**, seeing in it a continued state in the past, — *if it had been my judgment* (Gram. § 256, a). — **viderem**: do not trans. **cum** yet, but reserve judgment for the moment.

20 19 **re probata**: abl. abs. of cause, *since you also were not unanimously convinced of the fact even then*. **Vobis** is stressed by **ne . . . quidem**, which can mean *not . . . either, also not, as well as not even*.

20 20 **fore . . . possem**: **viderem** now has an unmistakable obj., the inf. **fore**, carrying the entire indir. disc. The subj. of **fore** is the subst. **ut**-clause (*the result would be that*). The tense of **fore** shows that **si . . . multassem** was the indirectly quoted form of **si multaveram** (Gram. § 290).

20 21 **rem huc deduxi**: *I brought the situation to a point where* (lit. *to this point that*).

20 22 **videretis**: the appos. clause **ut . . . possetis** explains **huc** (= **ad hoc**) (Gram. § 199). Returning now to **cum**, l. 18, we see that the clause is causal, *inasmuch as I saw, or seeing that, etc.*; or **viderem** may become a main verb, — *I saw that . . . and, etc.* (Gram. § 229).

20 23 **quam . . . putem**: the subj. of **esse timendum** is contemptuously emphasized by repeating **hostem**, — *and as for that enemy, . . . how, etc.* The indir. quest. (**quam vehementer, etc.**) is ironical. **Ego** also is emphatic.

20 24 **intellegatis**: subst. clause without conj., subj. of **licet** (cp. note on 5 25), — *you may understand*. — **quod . . . fero**: explains **hinc**, — *from the fact that*.

20 25 **exierit**: subjv., giving the thought in Cicero's mind. This second **quod**-clause explains **illud** (*I am vexed at this, that, etc.*). — **parum comitatus**: pass. in meaning. For the circumstances cp. Introd. § 71 fin. Sallust says that Catiline set out at night *cum paucis* (Cat. 32, 1).

20 26 **Tongilium**, etc.: Tongilius and the others mentioned here were evidently known only for their dissipation.

20 27 **mihi**: dat. of reference or concern, in its weakest form (often called ethical) (Gram. § 111, a). Here, perhaps, *I observe*, with sarcastic tone. In **praetexta** is a fig. for *in boyhood*; see Vocab. under **praetextus**.

21 2 **quanto aere alieno**: *how burdened with debts*; the abl. is descr. (Gram. § 145) and equiv. to an adj. Their debts, on a much larger scale than those contracted by Tongilius, etc. in **popina**, might drive them to desperate crimes. At emphatic **reliquit** Eng. requires a conj., *but* (adversative asyndeton with chiasmus; Introd. § 22, c, g). — **nobilis**: not ironical. More influential (hence more dangerous) persons are contrasted with a mere Tongilius, etc.

21 4 **quem . . . habuit**: Q. Metellus, one of the praetors (11 9), had been sent to the Adriatic coast, to conduct a levy of troops in the districts here named (the region of Ancona and Ariminum). He was to add his recruits to the **Gallicanae legiones**, the regular garrison of Gallia Cisalpina, across the Rubicon from the **ager Gallicus** (in Umbria). **Hoc dilectu** is *our levy*, while **illum exercitum** was Catiline's army in the distance.

21 5 **his copiis**: the force of **prae** (*in comparison with*) is still felt.

21 6 **ex senibus desperatis**: esp. the veterans of Sulla; cp. 28 20 ff.

21 7 **luxuria**: abstract for concrete, — *extravagance* collectively for *the extravagant* (cp. note on 16 11). In his use of **agresti** and **rusticis** Cicero is playing to the cheap humor of a city crowd, much as a modern political speaker might talk (in New York City) about the "up-state farmers" or the "hick vote." "Going the gait in Squeedunk" would be screamingly funny to such an audience. Many of these rural bankrupts were veterans, who had received their lands from Sulla.

21 8 **maluerunt**: they preferred to forfeit (by exaggeration, *to desert*) bail rather than prove slackers when called by Catiline's recruiting officers. — **quibus . . . concident**: **quibus** is merely connecting rel. (= **et illis**). **Non modo . . . verum etiam** may be trans. *not . . . but simply*. For the edict of the praetor cp. Introd. § 25. It would include the subject of debtor and creditor, — enough in itself to rout this army of bankrupts.

21 10 **hos**: bring out the strong contrast between emphatic **hos** (*but these men*) and **illum exercitum**, l. 3 (Introd. § 22, g fin.).

21 11 **quos stare . . . quos . . . venire**: sc. **video**. As English does not easily use this form of anaphora, trans. simply *standing . . . coming*; and note that 'I saw him coming' may be either **vidi eum venire** or **vidi eum venientem**.

21 13 **eduxisset**: this subst. clause (without conj.) serves as obj. of the potential **mallet** (Gram. § 279). So we say 'I wish he had gone,' as well as 'I wish *that*,' etc. The tenses show that the wish is hopeless, as it is now too late. The short balanced rel. clauses (anaphora) picture for us the foppish adherents of Catiline among the upper classes, knights and senators, wearing the purple

stripe (narrow and broad respectively) on their white tunics. — **suos milites**: pred. as *his soldiers*. — **permanent**: on the pres. for fut. cp. Gram. § 60; for **qui si**, but if they, § 170.

22 2 deseruerunt: the same kind of exaggeration as in 21 8. These men had not really deserted the army; they simply had not joined it. — **pertimescendos**: the gerundive conforms to the nearer subj., **hos**. — **nobis**: agent (Gram. § 114). — **hoc**: this causal abl. is explained by the **quod**-clause.

22 4 cui . . . depoposcerit: three conspirators to whom were assigned fields of activity outside the city are named by Sallust (*Cat.* 27, 1; cp. 6 30 ff.), but only Manlius, in Etruria, is of importance. — **urbanas**: *in the city*.

22 7 superioris noctis: Cicero is alluding to the conference of November 6, *the former night* = *previous night* (less indef. than *the other night*), held at the house of Læca (cp. 6 17 ff., 25 8 f.). Such hearers as knew about the two meetings would understand him to mean that first night (cp. 3 9).

22 8 hesterno die, etc.: in the First Oration (6 30–7 7).

22 10 errant: the ind. shows that **ne** was not a conj. but the affirmative adv., *surely, verily*; reg. followed by a pron. (as here) and placed at the beginning of the main clause. **Illi** refers to **hi**, Catiline's supporters still in Rome. They are not in the audience, with perhaps a few exceptions.

22 12 quod expectavi: *what I have been waiting for*.

22 14 videretis: *can see* (Gram. § 64); with this connect **aperte**. The appos. ut-clause explains **quod expectavi**. — **nisi vero**: *unless indeed*. — **si quis**: = **aliquis**; but to a Roman **si quis** would mean that there was less probability that this 'someone' existed than if **aliquis** were used. **Cum Catilina sentire** = *share Catiline's intentions* (for **Catilinae** cp. Gram. § 128).

22 15 locus: with **non iam**, *no longer*, cp. **nulla iam**, 19 6; **non iam**, 19 9.

22 16 severitatem . . . flagitat: *stern measures are what the situation itself cries out for*.

22 18 tabescere: the ironical expression suggests a languishing lover. — **sui**: plur. indir. reflex. (Gram. § 24). — **profectus est**: Cicero had informed the senate of Catiline's route in 13 5. The Via Aurelia followed the coast of Etruria to Pisæ (Pisa). Catiline would then have to go fifty miles farther, up the Arnus (Arno), to reach Fæsulæ (Fiesole). He was avoiding the more direct inland route through Etruria (Via Cassia), wishing to have it appear that he was going into voluntary exile at Massilia (Marseilles).

22 19 ad vesperam: *towards evening* (**ad vesperum** is usually preferred).

22 20 sentinam . . . eiecerit: the same fig. for the followers of Catiline as in 8 12. For **o . . . rem publicam** cp. Gram. § 102.

22 21 levata . . . videtur: the cause of this was expressed in **uno . . . exhausto**, *with . . . alone removed* (abl. abs.). The fig. of pumping out the ship of state blends with that of relief in sickness (the state now personif.).

22 23 conceperit: descr. clause (Gram. § 174).

22 24 veneficus: *quis*, usually subst., is here an adj. *Qui* might have been understood as *what sort of*. For *tota Italia* cp. Gram. § 154, b, 3.

22 25 subiector: *forg*, who produced a sham will; a rare word, found only here. Note the repetition of *quis* in this rhetorical muster of scoundrels (anaphora).

23 1 fateatur: descr. clause. The scoundrels fall into rather definite groups, partly by meaning, partly by sound.

23 2 facta est: for *hosce annos* cp. 17 17, *hisce ominibus*. — *per illum:* not the same thing as *ab illo* (contrasted with *sine illo*).

23 4 in illo: but Catiline's evil influence over young men did not prevent him from winning the friendship of some good men also.

23 7 pollicebatur: besides its objs., *fructum* (*enjoyment, gratification*) and *mortem*, the verb has also two abl. gerunds to indicate the circumstances (equiv. to pres. ptcps. in Eng.) (Gram. § 85). Note *alios, aliorum*, etc. (anaphora). We see now why *iam vero, moreover, again*, was used in line 3, as the point involved in the question *quae tanta*, etc. was to be developed at length.

23 12 asciverit: descr. clause. The tense shows that *fuit* = *has been* (Gram. § 67). For *nemo non modo*, etc., cp. note on 13 24.

23 13 in dissimili ratione: *in totally different fields, or directions* (lit. way). *Diversa studia* = *range of interest, versatility*. — *possitis:* as the *ut*-clause could not give the purpose of *est*, it must be the speaker's aim in making this statement (Gram. § 190).

23 16 sodalem: more than *intimum*. The profession of the actor was filled with slaves and freedmen, and generally despised.

23 18 adsuefactus, etc.: *this man who was trained by*, etc. (Gram. § 147). The ptcp. leads the thought on, and its exact bearing on the main statement cannot be determined in advance. For the thought cp. 14 1 ff.

23 19 fortis . . . praedicabatur: he was *heralded* as *fortis* by his followers (*istis*) *because of his endurance of cold*, etc. Though he owed his training to the school of vice and crime, still his powers of endurance made him a hero to his companions. We now see that *adsuefactus* has concessive force: *this man, though trained* (Gram. § 77). For *preferendis*, with its four nouns, cp. Gram. §§ 144, 86.

23 21 consumeret: the *cum*-clause is concessive (adversative), — *whereas*, etc., giving the real fact of the matter, the wasting of *reserves of activity and resources of energy* (order emphasizing the gens.), powers which might have been better employed (Gram. § 230). — *sui comites*, etc.: *freely, but if this man shall be followed by his cronies* (returning to the thought of 22 20 ff.). Cicero hopes they will leave at once. *Sui*, for *eius*, is explained by emphasis upon *hunc*, though not the subj. (cp. 17 8; Gram. § 26).

23 22 o nos beatos: *how happy we shall be!* — an exclamation in place of a normal conclusion (cp. 22 20).

23 25 audaciae: *acts of boldness*, — boldness shown on different occasions (abstract becoming concrete); cp. "negligences and ignorances" in the Litany.

23 26 rapinas: the change in number is only apparent, as *caedes* often has a collective sense, and the plur. is seldom used. English sometimes allows anaphora with 'but'; so here we might trans. *think of nothing but murder, but arson, but robbery*.

23 27 fortunae: in the narrower sense of *real estate*.

23 28 res . . . coepit: since Catiline's defeat in the consular elections, *credit* (*fides*) had been hard for his followers to obtain, while their ready *money* (*res*) had given out long before.

23 29 illa . . . libido: such a phrase may have a rel. clause between pron. and noun (Gram. § 167). In *abundantia* = *in their prosperity*.

23 30 quaerent: Gram. § 252. For *quod si* (adversative) cp. 16 3.

23 31 illi quidem: in this use *quidem* (*to be sure, it is true*) follows a pron., most freq. *ille*.

23 32 possit: Gram. § 55, *d*.

24 1 insidiari: appos. to *hoc*.

24 2 vigilantibus: this contrast between the vicious malcontents and good citizens (*viri*, as distinguished from mere *homines*) makes a series without conjs. (Introd. § 22, *b*, *g*). — *in conviviis: mihi* is the weak dat. of reference, as in 20 27. Cicero vividly imagines the repulsive scenes of revelry as before his very eyes. Trans. *qui mihi accubantes for, believe me, as they recline*.

24 4 obliti: not from *obliviscor*.

24 5 incendia: i.e. in many different places. The strong fig. in *eructant* adds to the impression of wild and drunken threats uttered in their table-talk (*sermonibus*).

24 6 fatum aliquod: *some doom (or other)*. *Aliquod* implies that the nature of this doom is not known, whereas *quoddam* would have meant that the speaker did know it.

24 8 quos: merely connects with the preceding (as *quibus*, l. 6).

24 9 sustulerit . . . propaga(ve)rit: a fut. perf. in the conclusion is unusual; but here it points out that the two acts are identical, as if he had said, 'If my consulship succeeds in destroying them, it will (in so doing) have prolonged,' etc. — *non . . . saecula*, etc.: *will have prolonged the life of the commonwealth not for some brief period but for many ages* (lit. *will have prolonged not some brief, etc. for the commonwealth*). As usual, *nescio quod* = *aliquod* (cp. note on 16 10).

24 12 possit: note the descr. clauses.

24 13 pacata: a word often applied by Cæsar to Gaul; here used of all the world outside, *omnia externa*. *Unius* means Pompey, now absent in the East, with his successes over the pirates (*mari*) and over Mithridates (*terra*) to his credit, and in possession of far more power than any other man living. For *terra marique* cp. Gram. § 154, *b*, 4.

24 16 huic . . . Quirites: note the interlocked order in this member. Freely, *such is the war for which*, etc. (emphatic **huic**). — **ducem:** pred., *as leader*.

24 18 quacumque ratione: sc. **potero**.

24 19 sanabo: cp. line 9, **sanare**. *What can be healed* furnishes an obj. — **quae . . . manere:** the medical fig. now becomes surgical (**resecanda**, etc.).

24 21 permanent: pres. for fut. By the fig. called *zeugma* (a fig. not favored in Eng.) a single verb serves with both in-phrases, being lit. with the first and fig. with the second, — *and are still of the same mind*; cp. *Intro.* § 22, n. 5.

24 23 qui dicant: descr. clause. — **eiectum:** for this rather than **emissum** cp. note on 19 5.

24 24 possem: be careful not to trans. as if it were **possim**. Observe the same care with **eicerem** below.

24 26 permodestus: *very submissive*; **modestus** = *law-abiding*. The ironical tone is clear, esp. with **videlicet**, which we may trans. *oh, yes!*

24 27 paruit: still ironical.

24 28 paene interfectus essem: circumstantial clause to be joined with **convocavi**, — *having barely escaped assassination* (cp. 7 5 ff.; *Intro.* § 71 and n. 2).

24 29 convocavi: for the temple cp. *Intro.* ib.; 7 20 and 17 20 ff.

25 1 detuli: in the First Oration. To show that Catiline was not **eiectus**, Cicero is telling what actually did happen; hence **quin**, *what is more, in reality*, 24 28.

25 2 venisset: i.e. had entered the temple to which **quo** (*whither* = **et eo**) refers. — **appellavit:** cp. 9 27 f.; for **quis senator** cp. note on 22 24.

25 6 reliquerunt: cp. 10 1 ff. For **quin**, *more than that*, cp. 24 28.

25 7 eicio: borrowing the unfriendly words of his critics (including their *ille*), and thus scoring against them. **Hic** = *upon this, whereupon*.

25 9 necne: Gram. § 34. **Utrum** is omitted. For the meeting at Læca's, cp. 6 17 ff., 30 ff.; *Intro.* § 70. **Ad** = **apud**; cp. note on 11 4.

25 13 constituisset: probably Catiline planned to leave Rome on the night of the seventh, but did not do so until twenty-four hours later.

25 14 esset . . . descripta: with this verb goes its dat. of agent (cp. 10 3; Gram. § 114). He had his plan of campaign all made out.

25 15 teneretur: *was caught* (as we say, 'cornered').

25 16 pararet: the *quo*-clause is an integral part of the indir. quest. (cp. Gram. § 182). For tenses with **iam pridem** cp. Gram. § 62; for inf. with **du-bito** cp. § 90.

25 17 fascis: normally these belonged only to consuls and certain prætors (*Intro.* §§ 24 f.; exceptions, § 30).

25 18 aquilam . . . argenteam: the Marian eagle known to all (*illam*) (cp. 13 8 ff.).

25 19 fecerat: the mood shows that this clause was no part of the quest. — **praemissam:** agreeing with the nearest subj., but meant with all. Catiline's

intention to pose as one possessing the *imperium* was carried out a few days later (Introd. § 72). Repetition of **cum** is noteworthy (anaphora).

25 20 **eiciebam**: attempted action (Gram. § 61).

25 21 **videram**: i. e. *already knew*. The quest. lacks any outward sign, as often where there is strong feeling. — **credo**: ironical, as usual (cp. 5 7).

25 23 **indixit**, etc.: *has declared . . . on his own account*, without Catiline's orders. For Manlius cp. note on 5 3.

25 25 **confert**: Catiline wrote to a number of prominent men, informing them that he was going to Massilia as an exile, — not because he was guilty, but for fear there might be some uprising on his account (Sall. *Cat.* 34, 2). As a Greek colony on the coast of Gaul, Massilia (Marseilles) was a favorite resort for students and exiles. — **haec**: as just mentioned, and in Italy.

25 26 **condicionem**: for the exclamation cp. 23 22 ff.; Gram. § 102.

25 28 **consiliis . . . periculis**: note absence of conjs.; **meis** with all three nouns.

26 1 **pertimuerit**: fut. cond., of which type we cannot as yet decide. (Why?)

26 4 **spoliatus**, etc.: **esse dicetur** (l. 7) belongs with **spoliatus**, **obstupefactus**, **perterritus**, and **depulsus**, as well as with **eiectus**. **Indemnatus** and **innocens** are concessive (*though uncondemned*, etc.; Gram. § 77). These ptcps. are nom. because the sentence is of the type described in Gram. § 299. In such sentences the inf. is really complementary, and the ptcp., if the inf. is compound, is really a pred. adj. agreeing with the subj. nom. of the verb of saying, etc. Thus, the sentences **Caesar fortis esse cupit** and **Caesar laudatus esse dicitur** follow the same pattern, **laudatus** agreeing with **Caesar** in the second sentence precisely as **fortis** agrees with **Caesar** in the first. (But with a cpd. tense of **dicto** it would be **Caesarem laudatum esse dictum est**, because the subj. acc. is here expressed; cp. **cupio eum fortem esse**.)

26 7 **dicetur**: the fut. tense solves our uncertainty as to the mood and tense of **pertimuerit**, etc.; Gram. § 258, a.

26 10 **existimari velint**: *would like to have him considered*; descr. clause. — **tanti**: gen. of value or price; *worth while* (cp. 12 18).

26 11 **subire**: subj. of **est**.

26 12 **depellatur**: proviso clause (Gram. § 242).

26 13 **a me**, etc.: for the pers. constr. substitute the impers., — *very well*, *let it be said*, etc.; cp. Gram. §§ 55, b, 299, and note on 26 4.

26 17 **audiatis**: subst. clause, obj. of **optabo**, — the substance of the prayer (Gram. § 192). — **triduo**: *within three days*.

26 19 **eiecerim**: with the same contrast as in 19 4. The mood shows that he is giving the interpretation of others (Gram. § 233). The appos. **quod**-clause explains **illud**, subj. of **sit**.

26 21 **dicant**: cp. **velint**, l. 10. — **dicerent**: Gram. § 252; with **idem**, plur., as subj. Note the difference in time of **dicerent** and **interfectus esset**: *if he had been put to death, what would they be saying* (now). In **profectus** and **inter-**

fectus there is a play upon words, to be brought out in reading the Lat. by stressing the prefixes (Introd. § 22, *l*). Cicero still claims that he had authority to execute Catiline (with the consent of the senate).

26 23 verentur: because they would really be disappointed if he did not join Manlius at Fæsulæ. **Quamquam** = *and yet*, as in 12 12 and often.

26 25 malit: rel. clause of result (Gram. § 175).

26 26 cogitasset, etc.: i. e. had never before planned to head a revolt.

26 27 vivere: note **mallet** with acc. and inf., instead of inf. alone, although there is no change of subj. (cp. note on 4 28; 10 10; Gram. § 297). — **nunc vero**: *but as it is*. After an unreal cond. **nunc** or **nunc vero** brings us back to actual fact (cp. 15 27).

26 30 queramur: including the audience; but by **vivis nobis** he means *leaving me alive* (Gram. § 153). For the mood of **optemus** and **queramur** (effectively placed at opp. ends of the member) cp. Gram. § 55, *a*.

27 2 fatetur: not the **fateatur** of a descr. clause, because Cicero is merely contrasting two realities, *that enemy who already admits that he is an enemy and these (enemies) who disguise (their treason)*, etc. (1. 3). — **quod**: as (lit. *what*); cp. note on 17 6. **Cur tam diu**, etc. was one of the common forms of transition to a new topic: enough of Catiline; now for his followers!

27 3 murus: not **paries**: cp. note on 7 18. — **de his . . . nihil dicimus**: **sed cur** is still in mind. Eng. dislikes an asyndeton here; therefore trans. *but say nothing or while we say nothing*.

27 5 quos quidem: *and these men, at least*.

27 6 sanare . . . rei publicae: *to reform* (lit. *heal*) *them for their own sakes, (and) to regain their good will for the country's sake*. The whole sentence might be taken from a modern essay on the correct treatment of criminals. For **sibi ipsos** cp. Gram. § 27. — **studeo**: after the none too optimistic less vivid fut. **si . . . possit**, *if it should prove at all possible*, Cicero shifts to a conclusion which deals with reality; hence the ind. The so-called "mixed" conds. simply reflect an alteration in mental attitude or point of view as one goes on. They are not to be regarded as mysterious; the mood of the verb follows the speaker's mind as his thoughts develop.

27 11 adferam: *apply*. For each of the distinct groups he will find some word of counsel, repeating the medical fig. from **sanare**, 1. 6. **Quam**, indef. (**medicinam** understood), is obj. of **adferre** understood with **potero**. — **eorum**: *composed of those*. Cp. Gram. § 126.

27 12 habent: besides its obj., the verb is further modified by the adversative prep. phrase **magno in aere alieno** (*in spite of their great debts*).

27 13 possunt: here **dissolvi** = **se dissolvere**, *cannot free themselves* from the encumbrance. By selling they might pay off their debts. Cicero omits to mention the sudden decline in value which would result if many should sell at once. — **horum . . . honestissima**: *to the eye these men seem highly respectable* (lit.?).

27 14 **locupletes**: note the derivation.

27 15 **voluntas vero et causa**: expanded, equiv. to *but the end at which they aim and the cause which they defend*.

27 16 **familia**: *slaves, an establishment*.

27 17 **copiosus sis**: the quest. is addressed to any individual in that class; more pointed than if **vos** had been used. For the indignant *you be amply provided . . . and yet hesitate . . .!* cp. Gram. §§ 55, d, 186. — **detrahere, adquirere**: asyndeton, as both must depend on **dubites**.

27 19 **omnium**: *general*. Because the gender is not shown by this form, **omnium rerum** would be much more usual, just as we find **his rebus cognitis** preferred to **his cognitis**.

27 20 **putes**: like **sis** and **dubites** above; *can you imagine*, where the *can* marks not ability (which would require **possum**) but conceivability. — **tabulas novas**: debts could be scaled down or wiped out by law, necessitating *new accounts*. Catiline again proposed this method of relieving debtors at the expense of the capitalists.

27 22 **auctionariae**: the auctioneer's poster (**tabula**) announced property to be sold at auction. This play upon different meanings of **tabula** is a threat to compel sales in the interest of the creditors (Introd. § 22, l).

27 23 **salvi . . . possunt**: by **salvi**, *safe*, he means *solvent*. **Possessiones** refers particularly to property in land. — **quod . . . voluissent**: **quod**, rel., is obj. of the verb, not the conj. (cp. 24 24).

27 24 **id . . . est**: *what is utterly foolish*, referring to **certare**, etc.

27 25 **certare . . . praediorum**: *to struggle to meet their interest payments out of the income from their estates* (lit.?). As they would often be forced to borrow again, it would have been better to sell, even at auction. — **locupletioribus . . . uteremur**: *we should find them richer . . . citizens*. **Utor** thus used may have a pred. (**civibus** and its adjs.).

27 28 **permanebunt**: sc. **in sententia**.

27 29 **laturi**: *likely to bear*. These are the least dangerous (**minime peritescendos**) of the six classes of Catiline's supporters. The contrast between **vota facturi** and **arma laturi** is heightened by the sound (Introd. §§ 19 and 22, i).

28 2 **rerum potiri**: *to gain the supremacy*; for the 'gen. (reg. in **rerum**) cp. Gram. § 133.

28 3 **honores**: *public offices*. Their hopes of power depend upon securing these by fair means or foul. Like the first class these men of the *second class* (**alterum genus**) are deeply in debt; but they have no lands, and cherish wild political ambitions. With **perturbata** understand **re publica**.

28 4 **quibus . . . videtur**: *but what they need to be told, it seems, is this* (lit.?).

28 5 **quod**: sc. **praecipiendum est** (governing **reliquis omnibus**). From **unum** to **omnibus** is a parenth., modifying **hoc**, which is defined by **ut . . . posse** = *to give up the hope that they can*, etc.

28 7 me . . . vigilare, adesse, providere: we may insert 'and they should be told that.' After *praeciendum est* the *ut*-clause (really appos. to *hoc*) gave what they were to be told *to do*; now the infinitives state what they are to be told *is the case*. Cp. 'I told him *to follow*' with 'I told him *that dinner was ready*.' So, *illi persuasi ut mihi pareret* = *I persuaded him to obey me*; but *illi persuasi Caesarem Gallos vicisse* = *I convinced him THAT Caesar had conquered the Gauls* (cp. note on 11 20).

28 8 viris: as is common, the possession of a *quality* is expressed by saying that the quality is *in* the person. *Animos* refers to the *courage* of the *loyal* (*bonis*) citizens.

28 10 copias: with this and *multitudinem* supply *adesse*, instead of *esse* (zeugma; Introd. § 22, n, 5). Cicero speaks as if the populace could be depended upon. Their sympathies were largely on the side of Catiline until the exposures of the Third Oration (Introd. § 78). The *concordia* was esp. between senators and knights.

28 12 praesentis: *in person*. Cicero did not expect to be taken lit.; he did mean to give the impression that the gods, whose enterprise Rome was, would defend it against these dangerous enemies. — **quod si:** *but even supposing*, as in 23 29 — a remote possibility (Gram. § 258, b).

28 14 quae: although the antecedents, *cinere* and *sanguine*, are m., the n. *quae* is employed in the sense of *things which*. Cp. Gram. § 10.

28 15 etiam: *even* points to a climax of horror, *reges*, a word hateful to Romans ever since they drove out their last king, Tarquin the Proud, in 510 B.C.

28 16 id . . . quod . . . sit necesse: by translating *id* as *a thing*, we show that it is the *kind* of thing which must needs (*necesse*) be given up, a meaning which the descr. *quod . . . sit* implies. Power won by violence will later be lost to violence. He means that another Spartacus would soon appear, to rob them of their new power. The heated quest. has *non* for *nonne* (cp. 10 8).

28 18 tamen: that is, in spite of their being (somewhat) *weakened by age* (*aetate adfectum*).

28 19 exercitatione robustum: military training is meant.

28 20 succedit: i. e. he is superseding his inferior, Manlius, who *belongs to this class*, having served under Sulla as a centurion (cp. 25 21).

28 21 constituit: during his dictatorship (82-79 B.C.) Sulla had rewarded his 120,000 veterans by assigning them, esp. in Etruria, confiscated lands taken, in many cases, from those who had supported Marius. — **universas:** *in general, on the whole*. — **civium:** *composed of citizens*.

28 24 sumptuosius . . . iactarunt: *made themselves conspicuous by displaying too much extravagance and pride* (lit.?).

28 25 beati: though far from *rich* (*beati*), they imitated the wealthy in the passion for erecting buildings, esp. villas. For *dum* cp. Gram. § 239. — **familiis:** for the meaning cp. 27 16.

28 27 **salvi**: *sound financially, solvent*, as in 27 23.

28 28 **excitandus**: Sulla had died fifteen years earlier (78 B. C.).

28 30 **impulerunt**: some, at least, of these impoverished farmers had been obliged to surrender their lands to the veterans. They were led to believe, however, that they would profit by the next violent turn of events.

28 31 **pono**: he lumps both these groups (**quos utrosque**) together in the same class, as equally grasping. — **eos hoc moneo**: cp. Gram. § 98, a, 2. — **desinant**, etc.: the condensed *let them cease*, instead of the more usual subst. clause of purpose, **ut desinant**, is in appos. with **hoc**. For an **ut**-clause so used cp. 28 4 ff.; Gram. § 279.

29 1 **civitati**: Gram. § 110.

29 3 **esse videantur**: when followed by **ne . . . quidem**, with a verb common to both clauses, **non modo** = **non modo non** (cp. Gram. § 41). **Passurae** agrees with the nearer subj. Trans. *not only men but even brutes seem to me unwilling to permit such things*. Brutes are mentioned only because this is a Lat. proverb. We might rather say, *no human being, or no man alive*.

29 4 **qui**: the antecedent is implied in **genus**, which, as a *miscellaneous* (**varius**) lot, is now to be subdivided. **Varius** means that they comprised different types of men; **mixtus**, that these types were not arranged in classes, but formed a motley group; **turbulentus**, that they were restless and disorderly. — **iam pridem premuntur**: *have long been overwhelmed* (by debt).

29 5 **emergunt**: *get their heads above water*.

29 6 **in**, etc.: with **vacillant**, *stagger*, we must trans. this *under*, etc.

29 8 **defetigati**: *exhausted, impoverished*. In **vadimoniis** we have the first step in proceedings against debtors (giving *bail* for appearance in court); in **iudiciis**, the second (*trial* and condemnation); in **proscriptione bonorum**, the third (advertising property for sale, here including the *sale* too). **Bonorum** is gen. of **bona**, *property*. — **permulti**: *in large numbers*. Trans. this pred. adj. after **se . . . conferre**.

29 10 **infitiatores lentos**: the words added in parenth. will show the point of this sentence, — *these people, I think, are not so much keen fighters* (although they are going to a military camp) *as obstinate debtors* (for at that camp they hope to escape the necessity of payment). **Infitiator** is lit. one who habitually denies or repudiates (his debts). — **qui homines**: and *let these men* (with **conruant**).

29 11 **conruant**: a command serves as the conclusion (Gram. § 246).

29 12 **sentiant**: the latter part was a Greek proverb. Again **ne . . . quidem** with a verb common to two subjs., so that its neg. applies to both (cp. note on 29 3). Trans. *not only . . . but even . . . shall fail to observe it*.

29 14 **velint**: indir. quest. in appos. with **illud** (*this* in Eng.). — **turpiter**: i. e. as rebels and traitors.

29 15 **arbitrentur**: in place of an emphatic phrase of manner, etc. (**minore**

dolore) Eng. prefers a pred., — *it will be less painful to perish*, etc. — **cum multis**: *in the company of many (others)*; contrasted with **soli** (chiasmus).

29 16 **denique**: *in a word, in short* (cp. 7 30).

29 17 **revoco**: *try to recall* (Gram. § 61).

29 18 **pereant sane**: *are welcome to perish, for all I care* (lit.?).

29 19 **non possit**: on the small capacity of the one Roman prison, and its use, cp. note on 11 14. They would not be detained there long.

29 20 **numero**: each class, as Cicero describes it, is worse than the one before it. Naturally, then, the last class is the worst, and as such is called **proprium Catilinae**, *Catiline's own (sort)*. For the case of **Catilinae** cp. Gram. § 128. The abls. of specification, **numero**, **genere**, and **vita**, may be translated *not only in order but also in character and mode of life*.

29 23 **sinu**: uncommon use of **de**, *the friends of his choosing; in fact, of his very bosom*.

29 24 **videtis**: as **pexo capillo** is parallel to adjs., it is clearly descr. abl. (Gram. § 145). To let the beard grow, except as a sign of mourning, was at this time something extraordinary in Roman society. — **tunicis**: the same constr. as **pexo capillo**. The common tunic barely reached the knee and was almost sleeveless.

29 25 **togis**: to wear a toga so ample that in jest it could be called a sail or a curtain was another fad of the fashionable.

29 26 **expromitur**: agreeing with the nearer subj., — *whose strenuous life and sacrifice of sleep display themselves entirely (omnis) in*, etc. Note reversed order in **industria . . . labor** (chiasmus).

29 27 **versantur**: *are found, or are*.

29 29 **cantare**: the force of **solum** is still felt. These were accomplishments thought unfit for any Roman.

29 30 **spargere venena**: i. e. on food or drink. — **didicerunt**: from **disco**. — **qui nisi**: *and unless they* (**qui** connective). — **exeunt . . . pereunt**: rare pres. for the reg. fut. in a fut. more vivid cond. (cp. 6 21).

29 31 **scitote**: *mark my words* (lit.?). — **hoc**: for **hos**, a rel. or demonstr. pronoun reg. being attracted into agreement with a pred. noun (**seminarium**). Cp. Gram. § 12. The same thing has happened to **futurum**.

29 32 **sibi . . . volunt**: *mean, are thinking of*; a common use of this expression (Gram. § III).

30 2 **ducturi**: unusual order of words; cp. 28 27 f.; Introd. §§ 18 f.

30 3 **noctibus**: already cold enough. It is not necessary to assume that it was December or January by a corrected calendar. Note that **Appenninus** is always sing. in Lat.

30 5 **putant**, etc.: *sarcastic*.

30 6 **didicerunt**: the **quod** of this clause is balanced by **idcirco**.

30 7 **pertimescendum**: *irony* (Introd. § 22, n, 8).

30 8 cohortem praetoriam: the bodyguard of a general was so called from his ancient title, *praetor*. Catiline too will have one, made up, Cicero assumes, of dissipated youths, whom he reviles as *scorta*, *unmanly men*. *Hanc* = *which I have described*. Emphasis on the last three words.

30 10 exercitus: *praeclaras* is ironical, and *has* like *hanc*, l. 7.

30 12 opponite: Catiline is compared to a wounded gladiator, now that he has left the city (cp. **15 13, 19 20**).

30 15 silvestribus: the wooded hills occupied by Catiline's troops are in studied contrast with the walled towns; hence the emphasis on *urbes*. A *colonia* was a settlement sent out from Rome; a *municipium*, an Italian town drawn into closer relations to Rome. Cicero ignores the strong position of Fæsulæ on its heights. For *iam vero* cp. **23 3**.

30 16 ornamenta: i. e. *equipment*. — *vestra:* meant with all three nouns; so also *ceteras*.

30 18 quibus . . . ille: *which we have (and) he lacks* (lit. 'with which we are supplied,' etc.). With *suppeditamur*, *quibus* is an abl. of means; with *eget*, an abl. of separation.

30 20 nationibus: the series of abls. is in appos. to *his rebus*, l. 18.

30 22 velimus: Gram. § 258, *b*. In *causas*, *issues* or *causes* are personif., including parties and platforms. He will now *compare* them (*ccutendere*). — *possumus*, etc. . . *we could* (lit. *can*) *understand how utterly helps they are*. In form this is a "mixed condition," beginning as a less vivid fut. (*velimus*) and ending as a non-committal pres. (*possumus*). There is nothing mysterious about a mixed cond.: either the writer's point of view may shift as the sentence proceeds, or, as is the case with *possumus*, some word in the conclusion may by its meaning alter the situation; for *possum*, like *I can*, may stretch from the pres. into the fut., while the ind. is used because in *intellegere possumus* he is stating a real fact, — they do have the power to understand, whether or not they would be willing to utilize that power by comparing Catiline's destitution with Rome's complete preparedness. Cp. Gram. § 53. *Ex eo ipso*, *from that (comparison) alone*, refers to *contendere*.

30 23 petulantia: a virtue and a vice are personif. *Illinc* = *on their side*.

30 27 denique: *in, short*, as in **29 16**. — *aequitas* = *iustitia*. — *prudentia:* to sum up the moral qualities, he is now naming the four *cardinal* virtues.

31 1 omnibus: of course *iniquitate* (= *iniustitia*), *luxuria*, etc. are the corresponding *cardinal* vices.

31 2 perdita: the contrast is between *sound views* or *policy* (*bona ratio*) on public questions, on the one hand, and *radicalism*, *revolutionary methods*, on the other. With *postremo* begins a second array of qualities or advantages, as against their opposites.

31 3 configit: personif. is continued to the end. *Omnium rerum* is often equiv. to our adj. *general*, *complete*, or *absolute* (cp. note on **27 19**).

31 6 virtutibus: with **ab** because the personif. of the **virtutes** (cp. **13 25**) makes it possible to think of them as agents.

31 8 defendite: in **dixi** he is referring vaguely to what was said in **30 9 ff.** about military preparedness. Or in revising the speech he may have omitted the passage in question, but failed to omit this cross reference.

31 9 mihi . . . est: the constr. of **mihi** becomes clear when we mark off the clauses: **mihi/ut urbi | sine vestro metu | ac sine ullo tumultu | satis esset praesidi/consultum atque provisum est.**

The **ut**-clause is inside the other; therefore **mihi** belongs with **consultum atque provisum est**, and so must be a dat. of agent (Gram. § 114).

Likewise, in the **ut**-clause, in which prep. phrases are marked off by vertical lines, **urbi** clearly belongs with **esset**, and must be a dat. of the possessor.

Finally, the subj. of **consultum . . . est** must be the **ut**-clause.

Since Eng. rather shuns the pass., trans. the main clause as if it were **ego providi**, etc., the emphatic **ego**, like the **mihi** which it replaces, being contrasted with **vos**.

For **praesidi** cp. Gram. § 125. Note emphatic **urbi**, in contrast with **vestra tecta** (Gram. § 113). For synonyms at the close cp. *Introd.* § 22, *a*.

31 12 defendent: they are being informed of Catiline's departure the night before (**nocturna excursione**) and of the danger. For **coloniae** and **municipia** cp. note on **30 15**. **Omnes** and **vestri** belong with both nouns: *all your fellow countrymen in the*, etc. (cp. note on **30 16**).

31 13 putavit: for the appos. rel. clause (*a band which*) cp. Gram. § 168, *a*.

31 14 patriciorum: Lentulus and Cethegus were, like Catiline himself, patricians. **Quamquam**, *and yet*, here introduces a parenth. remark (cp. **26 21**).

31 15 continebuntur: a **tamen** with the main verb often shows that a previous clause (here **quam . . . putavit**) was in effect concessive. According to Sallust the gladiators were dispersed among the **municipia** (*Cat.* 30, 7).

31 18 prohibebit: for Metellus and his field of operations along the Adriatic cp. note on **21 5**. — **rebus:** *arrangements*.

31 19 maturandis, agendis: *and promptly carrying out* (lit.?). (**Maturare** means *to do early*; **properare**, *to do swiftly*.)

31 20 vocari videtis: the criers (**praecones**) were evidently going about announcing a meeting of the senate and summoning the senators. For **referemus** cp. **11 19**; *Introd.* § 33.

31 23 relictis sunt: as **remanserunt** was not strong enough, a more exact statement is added with **atque adeo**, *and for that matter*, or *I should say*.

31 24 monitos . . . volo: *would have them warned*, a freq. use of **volo** with a pred. ptcp. or adj.

31 25 visa est: **adhuc** was evidently not meant with the verb, but with **lenitas**, — *my mildness until now, my previous mildness*. Cp. **22 10**. Adv. rarely modify nouns.

32 1 erumperet: appos. *ut*-clause explaining *hoc* (Gram. § 192). The conspiracy could no longer be thought mere talk. — *quod reliquum est:* *for the future*, lit. *as for what is left*.

32 2 horum esse consulem: with a comprehensive gesture, to show that he meant all reputable citizens, in contrast with *illos* (31 21), the disloyal.

32 3 esse moriendum: *must die for them* (in defending them). The order is determined by the sound (rhythm; Introd. § 19).

32 4 viae: crisscross order and repeated *nullus* (anaphora).

32 5 possum: he will not take notice of their departure, if any wish to go. — *qui:* trans. *whoever*.

32 6 cuius . . . deprehendero: *and I detect, I will not say (non modo) any overt act (factum) of his, but even*, etc. Cp. Gram. § 173.

32 8 vigilantis: the subj. of *sentiet* is furnished by the rel. clause *qui . . . commoverit* (Gram. § 171). Only one of the consuls was *alert* (*vigilans*), Antonius being very far from active.

32 9 carcerem . . . esse voluerunt: for the *carcer* cp. 29 19. Here he is really making a threat of capital punishment, not of mere imprisonment. Note order in line 8.

32 16 sedetur: *shall be ended*; for the time is the same as that of the main verb *agentur*. *Togato* denotes the *civilian*, whose dress at once distinguished him from the soldier. For the abls. cp. Gram. § 153. Marked contrasts in this sentence, varied order, few conjs. except to join pairs (Introd. § 22, *a-c, g*).

32 19 patriae: join with *impedens*.

32 21 vix optandum: *almost useless to wish for* (lit.?).

32 22 neque . . . paucorumque poena: *on the one hand no . . . while by the punishment of a few*. The appos. *ut*-clauses explain *illud* (l. 20).

32 24 fretus: trans. after *ego*, and cp. Gram. § 147, *b*.

32 26 significationibus: *portents, prodigies*, to which the Roman religion paid great attention. For examples cp. 44 8 ff. *Et* is to be omitted in trans. (cp. 7 11, *ac*). *Non dubiis* = *certis* (litotes, as in 9 14; Introd. § 22, *n, 2*). — *sententiam:* here = *resolution*.

32 27 non procul: we are carried in thought to distant battlefields, where gods were said to have appeared at the critical moment on the Roman side. For *praesentes* cp. 28 12.

32 3 debetis: the three verbs for praying form a climax with added solemnity from the omission of conjs. (Introd. § 22, *d, g*). — *quam . . . voluerunt:* cp. Gram. § 168. Something like this order is found in these lines from a well-known hymn:

Who patient bears his cross below
He follows in His train.

For the *ut*-clause cp. Gram. § 192.

33 6 defendant: in Eng. the order of the clauses should be preserved; freely, *that, as they willed . . . so now they may*, etc. In *omnibus . . . superatis* (*now that all*, etc.) is another allusion to Pompey's Eastern victories (cp. 24 13). In this sonorous closing sentence note the grouping: three infs. (unconnected), and three superls. (-*que* added to the third); note also the contrasts.

THIRD ORATION AGAINST CATILINE

PLACE: The Rostra, in the Forum (Intro. § 48).

TIME: December 3, 63 B.C., late in the afternoon, after a session of the senate in the Temple of Concord (cp. 45 31).

CIRCUMSTANCES: Read Intro. §§ 73-78.

OUTLINE OF THE ARGUMENT

(1) The state, your lives, etc. have been saved today by my efforts. (2) Its savior will deserve honor with the founder. I have averted torch and sword. (3) I am now to inform you of the conspiracy as revealed in the senate.

Watchful for your safety, I assumed any remnant of the conspirators would be weakened by the departure of Catiline and others. (4) But in a situation still critical I have labored to get tangible evidence. I learned that certain Gallic ambassadors, about to return home, would carry treasonable letters; that a Roman with a letter for Catiline would go with them. (5) We prepared to intercept the party near the city last night. (6) This was successfully carried out; all letters were seized; arrests followed. (7) The letters were not to be opened until the senate met. (8) Arms were found in Cethegus' house.

Volturcius, promised immunity, admits before the senate that he had an important message for Catiline. (9) The Gallic envoys lay bare their dealings with Lentulus; confident in his destiny, they said, (10) he was not ready to strike at once.

The letters are opened and read, after identification by their writers. (11) Lentulus at first denies, then weakens and confesses. (12) His letter to Catiline is admitted by him to be genuine; its contents. Gabinius also confesses. (13) Confirmation is found in their evident confusion.

The senate, after deliberation, passed a decree, which I quote from memory: (14) first, that thanks be voted to the praetors and myself; then that the conspirators named should be held in custody; (15) next a thanksgiving was voted for my work in saving the state, — an honor without precedent. Lentulus has already laid down his office.

(16) These arrests spell failure for their cause. Catiline's withdrawal left us nothing to fear here from such men as these. He was a master. (17) It was essential that he be forced to leave. He would not have delayed, nor allowed us to get documentary evidence. With him still in the city the struggle would have been most serious.

(18) We have evidently been aided by the gods, not to mention recent signs and portents. (19) When the Capitol was struck by lightning two years ago, the soothsayers predicted a civil war unless we should placate the gods. (20) Among other forms of

expiation they ordered that a new statue of Jupiter be set up, as specified by them. That contract has not been carried out until today. (21) There is evidence of divine providence in this coincidence, — the placing of the statue at the very hour of these revelations. (22) Impious revolutionaries have been thwarted by Jupiter himself. The whole incident of the Allobroges shows the gods working to bring treason to light.

(23) Observe the thanksgiving decreed. Never were there better reasons for gratitude. (24) Compare all the previous examples of civil strife: all of them cost fearful bloodshed; (25) though the aim was then to change, not to destroy the government, blood was the price of peace. In our case more cruel designs have been checkmated without loss of life.

(26) My one reward will be the lasting memory and record of this day, in a city which I have preserved. (27) It will be your part to see that no harm comes to me; yet there is no real danger. (28) I shall not flinch. You must protect those who expose themselves for your sake. As for myself, I have reached the peak. (29) In private life I shall see that my reputation is secure. Go home now, and for a short time continue to be on your guard.

35 1 rem publicam, etc.: public speakers utter their longer sentences in short units, which readily enter the minds of the hearers. In *Introd.* § 12 you will find this sentence printed as it must have sounded. Read it aloud, pausing as indicated. Note that in the first four lines we have the various subjects of **ereptam**, etc., with which, as **videtis** shows, we must supply **esse**. For the agreement of **ereptam**, etc., cp. *Gram.* § 9. We may supply *and* before the trans. of **laboribus** (asyndeton). — **omnium vestrum**: *of every one of you* (the people).

35 4 urbem: in appos. with **domicilium**.

35 7 vobis . . . restitutam: *preserved and restored to you*. While the people did not know the details of the session of the senate, rumor had spread through the city the report of important documentary evidence and of notable arrests.

35 8 et si, etc.: the gist of this sentence is this: 'The day of one's escape from some great peril is as joyful as is the day of one's birth. On Rome's birthday we justly honor Romulus, who founded Rome; but honor is likewise due to me, who later saved Rome from destruction.' — **iucundi atque inlustres**: *joyful and bright*. The **si** might be trans. *since* (cp. *Gram.* § 264).

35 9 salutis . . . est: *the joy we feel at our deliverance rests on a certainty* (lit.?).

35 10 nascendi . . . condicio: *the lot (or state) into which we are born*. Get rid of the asyndeton by supplying *while* before **nascendi**, and *while* or *but* before **cum** in line 11.

35 11 sine . . . servamur: *freely, when we are born, we are not aware of it; but when our lives are saved, we have a sense of pleasure* (lit.?). (CAUTION. It has seemed best to give translations of difficult passages like the above, but they will be useless unless the Latin is carefully studied to see how the translations express its meaning.)

35 12 illum . . . condidit: *condense, — the founder of this city*.

35 13 benevolentia famaque: almost = *with heart and voice*. The first refers to the affection and gratitude *felt* toward Romulus, the city's founder; the second, to the *utterance* of his praises. — **sustulimus**: i. e. we have gratefully deified Romulus (Quirinus), to whom the city owes its birth.

35 14 debebit: *will deserve*.

35 15 conditam: = *postquam condita est*. In **amplificatam** Cicero hints that, in rescuing a greater Rome than Romulus ever saw, he performed a service at least equal to that of Romulus. — **toti urbi**, etc.: the reason for the dats. appears when we reach **subiectos** (Gram. § 110, a).

35 17 ignis: preparations to burn the city would demand that fires be kept burning in the houses of conspirators. At the signal, burning sticks would be snatched from the hearths and thrown under and placed round the buildings to be burned. Trans. **subiectos prope iam** *just before they were thrown under* (lit. *already almost*, etc.). — **idem (que)**: as often, may be translated *we also* (lit. *the same we*).

35 19 deiecimus: another fig. serves to impress the people with still greater dangers averted. The comparison with Romulus must be justified.

35 20 per me: the facts were found out IN the senate, BY the senators (agent), THROUGH Cicero (means). The phrase is emphatic: *since it was through me that*, etc. — **exponam**: sc. *ea*.

36 1 quanta, etc.: condensed. Trans. as though it were **et quanta et quam manifesta investigata et comprehensa sint, et qua ratione** (*id factum sit*). **Quanta** = *what important matters*.

36 2 ignoratis et exspectatis: reduce to *are waiting* (for the adjournment of the senate) *in ignorance* (of what has been going on inside).

36 4 ut: *ever since*. — **paucis ante diebus**: freely, *the other day* (i. e. the night of November 8). — **erupit ex urbe**: cp. 19 6. This time Cicero selects the strongest verb.

36 5 cum . . . reliquisset: trans. this circumstantial clause by a ptcp. (*leaving, or having left*). — **duces**: *as leaders*, pred.

36 8 esse possemus: in a dir. quest. this would be **possimus** (deliberative) (Gram. § 55, d). — **eiciebam**: *was trying to drive out* (conative and marking exact time; Gram. §§ 61, 220).

36 9 invidiam: he no longer hesitates (as he still did in 19 4) to use **eicio**. — **illa (invidia) quod**: *the ill will that will come because*.

36 10 exierit: this **quod**-clause gives the reason, as Cicero's opponents saw it, for the **invidia**; hence the subjv. (Gram. § 233).

36 11 exterminari volebam: cp. note on **eiciebam**, above. Notice how far **exterminari** is from the meaning of our borrowed word.

36 13 putabam: **restitissent** would be fut. perf. in dir. disc. (Gram. § 290 med.).

36 15 remansisse: Cicero's expectation was doomed to disappointment.

Lentulus and other leaders still remained in the city. The contrast is so strong that we should place *but*, not *and* (*atque*), at the beginning of the sentence. For the order of rel. and demonstr. clauses cp. 33 3 ff. and Gram. § 164; for the mood of *sciebam*, ib. § 291. — *in eo . . . ut*: *in the effort to*.

36 17 *auribus vestris . . . minorem fidem faceret*: *did not convince you when you heard it* (lit.?). The *quoniam*-clause has the subjv. by attraction, or because Cicero is quoting his own thought at that time (Gram. § 231, a).

36 18 *oratio mea*: *what I said*.

36 19 *rem*: *the facts*. — *comprehenderem*: purpose clause, the purpose of *sentirem ac viderem*.

36 20 *provideretis*: result clause. — *videretis*: *you should see*. Ears, minds, eyes, are mentioned in this order because he wishes to stress the value of ocular evidence.

36 22 *sollicitatos*: for the Allobroges and their envoys cp. Introd. § 75. *Tumultus* was the usual term for an uprising in Italy, or among the Gauls in that northern part of the peninsula still called *Gallia Cisalpina* until the time of Augustus. Lentulus, though praetor, was a traitor, and ready to persuade the disaffected Allobroges to furnish cavalry for Catiline.

36 24 *civis*: three letters to the Allobroges are specified in 38 24 f. — *eodem itinere*: on their way to Gaul the party would travel through Etruria, and so could deliver letters in Catiline's camp.

36 25 *Volturcium*: a conspirator, who now turned state's evidence (cp. 38 9).

36 26 *litteras*: this letter is quoted in 40 18 ff.

36 27 *quod . . . immortalibus*: really a parenth., and referring to what follows (*tota . . . deprenderetur*). Trans. the *quod* *what* (not 'which').

36 28 *tota res*: *the whole truth*.

37 2 *hesterno die* = *heri*; cp. 35 4, *hodierno die* = *hodie*.

37 3 *amantissimos rei publicae*: *thoroughly patriotic*.

37 4 *ostendi*: businesslike style, without conjs. (asyndeton). The consul relied upon the aid of the praetors (except Lentulus) (Introd. § 25).

37 6 *sentirent*: descr. clause, justifying his choice of these officials; freely, *as men of the purest and noblest patriotism*. For *omnia* (subst.) *praeclara* (adj.) cp. Gram. § 97; also 15 10.

37 8 *pervenerunt*: the Pons Mulvius (now called Ponte Molle or Milvio) had been built more than one hundred and fifty years before, to carry the Flaminian Way over the Tiber, two miles north of the city. Rebuilt a few years before Cicero was born, it still retains four of its ancient arches (two of that period). The Allobroges were to take the Via Cassia, which left the Flaminia at the northern end of the bridge.

37 9 *interesset*: in agreement with the nearer subj. (*pons*). The forces would be concealed behind garden walls. There was no tower or arch at the end of the bridge, as there is now. — *eodem*: adv. with *eduxerant*.

37 10 ipsi: refers to Pomptinus and Flaccus; *on their own initiative*, contrasted with **et ego** (l. 11). Omit the first **et** and stress the second (*and I too*). — **multos . . . viros: fortis viros** is treated as a single idea; hence there is no conj. between the adjs. (Gram. § 42, a).

37 11 Reatina: adj. formed from **Reate**. In the absence of a regular police force, Cicero had organized a company of Sabines from Reate, of which he was patron. Reate (now Rieti), a prefecture, or town governed formerly by a prefect sent out from Rome, was on the Via Salaria, about forty-five miles northeast of the city. Cp. *Introd.* § 74.

37 14 exacta: the fourth watch began at 3 A.M. at the equinox (in mid-winter at nearly four), and lasted until sunrise. — **magno comitatu:** for the absence of **cum cp.** Gram. § 140.

37 17 res: the purpose (of the attack). — **a ceteris:** *by all the rest*. Sallust too represents the Allobroges as entirely unprepared, but as quickly recognizing the purpose of the attack (*Cat.* 45, 3). Having been urged by Cicero to get evidence against the conspirators, they probably were not altogether surprised to be intercepted somewhere.

37 19 sedatur: a small detachment had begun to attack, whereupon the praetors intervened, advancing from both ends of the bridge (*Introd.* § 76).

37 20 ipsi: refers to the legates of the Allobroges (two in number, according to Plutarch) and Volturcius.

37 21 dilucesceret: circumstantial clause; cp. line 7 (Gram. § 226).

37 23 Gabinium: the *cognomen* here stands before the *nomen*, as often in colloquial Latin, when the *praenomen* is omitted. Cicero regards him as the prime mover in the treasonable project to persuade the whole tribe of the Allobroges to take up arms for Catiline. He was a knight (P. Gabinius Capito, according to Sallust; cp. *Cat.* 17, 4).

37 25 Cethegus: C. Cornelius Cethegus, a senator, was to have charge of the assassination of Cicero and many other senators (cp. 57 22, 58 29; Sall. *Cat.* 43, 2). Statilius and Gabinus (both knights) were to set fire to the city in twelve different places (Sall. *ib.*). — **tardissime:** Lentulus' lazy habits made him a butt (cp. 43 4), and his name actually means '*somewhat lentus*'!

37 27 vigilarat: credo is ironical (cp. 5 7). Cicero is scornful in regard to the midnight oil burned in *writing* (**dandis**) two letters, — that to Catiline (40 18 ff., a mere note), and another, doubtless longer, to the nation of the Allobroges (38 25). — **cum . . . deferrem** (38 1): read the following paraphrase, which presents the ideas in about the same order as the Lat., but separated as in the practice of a modern speaker. Then work out a trans. with the aid of the notes following the paraphrase.

"A large number of our leading citizens, when they heard what had happened, came to my house in the morning. They urged me to open the letters before turning them over to the senate: if they contained nothing of importance, there

was no point in needlessly alarming the citizens. But I said no; the public safety was at stake, and I could not think of taking any action myself until all the facts came before the public council."

cum: negavi (l. 31), in contrast with **placeret**, etc., makes it clear whether the trans. is *when*, *since*, or *although*.

37 28 frequentes: pred. Cp. note on **permulti**, 29 8.

37 30 deferri: to be strictly grammatical this should be **deferrentur** after **prius quam** (Gram. § 215), but Cicero's wish to contrast this with **aperiri** made him take this liberty. — **placeret**: (with **viris**, l. 28) the subj. is **litteras aperiri**, etc. — **esset inventum**: in the dir. form, as the **summi viri** uttered it, this would be **erit inventum**, fut. perf. ind. (Gram. § 290).

37 31 tumultus: here equiv. to *disturbance*. Cp. the special use in 36 22. — **negavi . . . deferrem**: *I said that I should not do (such a thing) as fail* (this represents non) *to report the matter without previous action* (lit. *untouched*), etc. **Nego** is reg. for **dico** . . . **non**. Here, also, it emphasizes the thought of refusal. **Esse facturum** has a subst. result clause as its obj.

38 2 reperta: sc. in **litteris**. The tense in **reperta essent** is to be explained as in **esset inventum**, 37 30. The mood is due to **arbitrabar**.

38 5 coegi: for the publicity of the summons cp. 31 20. The senate had met in the Temple of Concord (45 31; map, p. lxi). Read **Introd.** § 77.

38 6 fortem virum: a conventional compliment.

38 7 efferret: the subjv. **esset** is due to the reproduction of instructions given to the praetor (indir. disc.). **Si quid** = *whatever*.

38 9 sine Gallis: i.e. the two Allobrogian envoys.

38 10 dedi: official guaranty of immunity (**fides publica**) required a decree of the senate, and was given only in case important evidence against others could thus be obtained by a promise not to punish the witness.

38 16 litteras: one letter is meant (cp. 40 18 ff.). **Ad** (*addressed to*) **Catilinam** is attached directly to the substs. **mandata** and **litteras**.

38 19 accederet: the subst. **ut**-clauses give the essential points of the message, oral and written, **mandata et litteras**, with which the clauses are in appos. (Gram. § 192). Trans. *urging* or *telling him to*, etc.

38 21 incendissent: representing fut. perf. in indir. disc. (cp. line 2). **Id . . . ut** = *with the idea that* (lit. 'this, furthermore, with,' etc.). **Id** is in appos. with the **ut**-clause just preceding. The inclosed ind. clause introduced by **quem ad modum** is Cicero's own parenth. explanation (Gram. § 201). Statilius, Gabinius, and Cassius were to fire the city (cp. note on 37 25; 41 23 ff.).

38 23 fugientis: *refugees*. But the Lat. ptcp. tells a little more than this: it shows that Catiline was to intercept them while they were in the act of flight. — **his**: a good chance to compare Lat. and Eng. idioms. Where Lat. says *these urban leaders*, Eng. would say 'the leaders here in the city.'

38 24 introducti: *on being brought in*.

38 25 Lentulo . . . Statilio: lists of names often omit conj.s. — **datas:** agrees with *litteras*, but applies also to *ius iurandum*. — **ad . . . gentem:** *addressed to their nation*. There were three separate letters.

38 26 ita . . . praescriptum: it would be clumsy to trans. 'and it had been thus directed to themselves,' etc. Avoid this by shifting to the active: *and that they and Lucius Cassius had instructed them to*, etc.

38 28 pedestris . . . defuturas: ut . . . mitterent tells what they were *instructed to do*; these words tell what they were *informed was the fact*. Mark this shift from an indir. command (subst. clause of purpose) to an indir. statement by preceding the latter with the words *but they said that*. — **sibi** (following *pedestris*): though the *sibi* in lines 24 and 26 referred to *Galli*, this *sibi* points to *his* and *L. Cassio*. While these are not, of course, the *grammatical* subjs. of *praescriptum*, on which the indir. disc. depends, still, since it was they who gave the instructions, it is natural for Cicero to refer to them by the pron. which he would have used if, instead of *ab his . . . esse praescriptum*, he had said *hos . . . praescripsisse* (indir. reflex.; Gram. § 24, b). *Sibi* makes it perfectly clear that the words of the message were *pedestres nobis copiae non deerunt*. The *sibi* after *autem* in the same line refers again to *Galli*.

L. Cassius Longinus had been a candidate for the consulship of this year. The *Allobroges* had demanded an oath of him, as of the other three, to assure their fellow countrymen. The others were thus trapped into signing a document, while *Cassius*, more wary, promised to visit their country himself, and departed before the *legati*. Gaul was rich in horses and horsemen.

38 29 responsis: the famous *Sibylline* books contained, in Greek verses, (1) proper sacrifices and ceremonies prescribed when portents had been observed or a calamity had occurred, (2) a small element of ambiguous prophecy. They could be consulted only when the priests in charge were ordered by the senate to do so. A new series had been collected after the destruction of the originals twenty years before this, when the *Capitol* was burned (cp. 39 5).

39 1 regnum: implies that *Lentulus* hoped to be king, a title abhorred by the Romans since they had driven out *Tarquin the Proud*, more than four centuries before.

39 2 imperium: *supreme power*, added to *regnum*, *title of king*, makes it appear that *Lentulus* would not only reign but rule. Of course, Cicero is making the most of every suspicion. — **esset necesse:** *was destined*, or *fated*. **Illum** (*the*) shows that the prophecy was well known. The *haruspices*, pretending to find favorable signs in the entrails of victims, had confirmed *Lentulus* in his belief that he was the man. His name was *Publius CORNELIUS Lentulus Sura*.

39 3 fuisse: *L. CORNELIUS Cinna* was consul for four years in succession (87–84 B.C.), until he was slain in a mutiny. *L. CORNELIUS Sulla* was supreme as dictator during 82–79 B.C. — **eundemque dixisse:** *and that he* (i.e. *Lentulus*) *had also said*. — **fatalem . . . ad:** *marked by fate for*.

39 4 qui esset: *since it was*. This gives the supposed reason for the gloomy prediction (Gram. § 178). The allusion to the acquittal of certain Vestals (Introd. § 31 fin.) is to a case whose details are unknown to us. The Capitol had been burned by an unknown incendiary in 83 B. C., rebuilt in part by Sulla, and dedicated by Catulus in 69 B. C. (Introd. § 50).

39 6 hanc... controversiam: defined by the *quod*-clause in line 7. — **Cethego:** dat. of possessor; *Cethegus had disagreed with the others about this detail, that whereas, etc.* (lit.?).

39 7 Saturnalibus: this festival fell on the seventeenth of December. During its celebration ordinary restrictions were relaxed, and there was much carousing, making it easy for assassins to enter houses. No *sed* is needed before **Cethego** (l. 8), since the persons are sharply contrasted (asyndeton).

39 10 ne longum sit: i. e. *to be brief*, a common formula in cutting a story short (Gram. § 272). Cp. **longum est**, *it would be tedious*.

39 11 datae (sc. *esse*): properly, *given* to the messenger who was to carry the letter; but often to be translated *written*, as in **37 26**. The waxed tablets were tied up with a thread (**linum**) and sealed with the ring of the sender, as a proof of genuineness.

39 12 cognovit: the plain, businesslike style of these short sentences was much used by Cicero in his speeches in law courts (Introd. § 15). — **nos:** *I*.

39 13 erat scriptum: the subject is *sese... facturum esse*. *Sese*, referring to *ipsius*, is used like the first *sibi* in **38 28**. — **ipsius manu:** *by his own hand* (instead of being dictated to a secretary, as was common). Letters were not signed, for the seal was sufficient (cp. page 159).

39 15 orare: (*and that he*) *implored*. The idea of his letter was, 'I've kept my word; now you keep yours.'

39 16 recepissent: the *legati* had already given Cethegus (*sibi*) some assurances that their nation would support Catiline. With **orare** sc. *se* as subj.

39 18 respondisset: a descr. *qui*-clause may prove causal or concessive; one cannot tell in advance. In spite of the evidence of the arms *in his house* (**apud ipsum**), he had *still* (**tamen**) managed to make some kind of answer. The discovery was probably reported to the senate in connection with the cross-questioning.

39 19 studiosum fuisse: *his hobby had been* (lit.?).

39 20 conticuit: the contrast between present silence and a former lame explanation shows that the *qui*-clause (ll. 16 ff.) was concessive (Gram. § 179). For the use of the ptc. in **recitatis** cp. Gram. § 75.

39 21 manum suam: this letter too was an autograph.

39 22 sententiam, etc.: *to about the same effect* (*purport*). Usually the phrase would be completed by adding **scriptae**.

39 24 adnuīt: Lentulus identifies his letter to the Allobroges. — '**est vero**' inquam '**... quidem**': 'Yes,' said I, 'it is indeed.' — **notum:** Cicero strains a

point in imagining that everyone would recognize the head on the seal as a portrait of one who had been consul ninety-nine years before! P. Cornelius Lentulus was best known for his connection with the death of C. Gracchus, 121 B.C. (4 17 f.). In that attack he had been wounded.

39 26 quae quidem: *and this, at least.* — **etiam muta revocare debuit:** *ought to have recalled* (Gram. § 71) . . . *even though it could not speak* (lit.?).

39 27 ad: *addressed to* (cp. 38 25). — **eadem ratione:** *descr. abl.* Lentulus' letter was of the same tenor, or to the same purport, — not different in meaning from **in eandem sententiam**, l. 22 (or **in eandem rationem**), and placed just where an adj. (e.g. **similes**) would stand. (To interpret **eadem ratione** as *abl.* of manner with **leguntur** (*in the same way, with the same formalities as before*) would be to miss the point that the important thing is the treasonable character of the letter, not the manner of its reading.)

39 28 si quid . . . vellet: Gram. § 262. Cicero had said **si quid vis**.

40 1 primo quidem: *at first, it is true.*

40 3 surrexit: some time elapsed before all this testimony could be put in proper shape (cp. **exposito**) and drawn up (cp. **edito**) in final form, all duly recorded. The reading by the clerk being finished, Lentulus rose. — **quid . . . rem:** *what he had to do with them, that* (lit. 'on account of which thing').

40 4 domum suam venissent: this *descr. clause* depends upon the *indir. quest.* (**quid**, etc.).

40 5 qui cum . . . respondissent: *but when they . . . told him in reply.* — **per quem . . . venissent:** *who was responsible for their coming.* The go-between was P. Umbrenus, who, as a merchant, knew the chiefs of the Allobroges (42 4; Sall. *Cat.* 40, 2).

40 6 nihilne secum esset . . . locutus: *whether he had had no talk with them.* Between **dicere alicui** and **loqui cum aliquo** there is much the same difference as between *address* or *speak to someone* and *talk to* or *converse with someone*. **Loqui** is the less formal word.

40 8 subito: *adv.* — **esset:** Eng. requires *is*, because it is a general truth (Gram. § 66).

40 9 posset infitiri: *might have denied* (Gram. § 71), as a matter for which no documentary evidence had been offered.

40 11 valuit: his success as a speaker of recognized ability (note **illud**) was due chiefly to his delivery (*Brutus*, 235).

40 12 vim . . . deprensi (= deprehensi): *the impression made by the disclosure and proof of his guilt* (lit.?). For Eng. 'the detection of a crime' Lat. would often say 'detected crime'; for 'proof of guilt,' 'proven guilt,' etc.

40 13 defecit: agreeing with the nearest subj.; **eum** is the obj.

40 14 litteras . . . esse: the letter to Catiline was mentioned in 38 15 f.

40 16 tamen: gives the effect of a concession to **perturbatus** (cp. note on 31 15; Gram. § 77).

40 17 **sine nomine**: the normal letter (*litterae*, plur.) had a heading which gave in one line the names of both parties and an abbr. greeting (cp. pages 158, 161 ff.). Here the heading was discreetly omitted. The end of a letter would have no signature, — only date and place of writing (here doubtless omitted).

40 18 **ut . . . sis**: *to play the man*.

40 19 **quem . . . progressus**: (*just*) *what point you have reached*.

40 20 **sit necesse**, etc.: *whether there is a step which you must now take*. In this veiled language is a hint that, as he has gone so far in the direction of treason, the time for action (open rebellion) has arrived.

40 21 **infirmorum**: he should no longer hesitate to admit slaves to his army. The letter of Lentulus is given by Sallust also, but obviously not verbatim. Cicero seems to preserve the direct manner of the original, although probably not the precise wording. Cp. Sall. *Cat.* 44, 4 f.

41 2 **negavit**: the contrasted thoughts clearly show the character of the *cum*-clause, — *although*, etc. (cp. note on 39 20).

41 3 **illa**: because this pron. is used to arrest attention and direct it to a following appos. expression, it must be translated *this* or *these*, not *that* or *those*. — **certissima**: *very certain*, or *unquestionable*; to trans. it by the superl. would make **multo certiora** (l. 5) absurd. — **cum . . . tum**: *not only . . . but also*.

41 7 **sic**: do not join with **furtim** but with **aspiciebant**: *they kept constantly exchanging stealthy glances in such a way* (lit.?). In line 6 **sic** = *so*, not *thus*.

41 8 **ipsi**: for **ipsi** with subj. cp. Gram. § 27.

41 9 **editis**, etc.: for the meaning cp. note on 40 3.

41 10 **summa re publica**: cp. note on 9 7.

41 11 **sententiae**: **principibus** refers to the most prominent senators, whose opinions would be asked first (cp. *Introd.* § 34).

41 12 **est secutus**: there was no dissenting voice.

41 13 **perscriptum**: after a vote was passed, a committee of senators wrote it out in a finished draft (*Introd.* § 34 fin.).

41 17 **sit liberata**: the reason is quoted; hence the subjv.

41 18 **usus essem**: *had found*. **Forti fidelique** is pred. with **usus essem** (cp. 27 26). The hist. pres. allows either primary or secondary sequence. Note that all the tenses depending on the hist. pres. in lines 14–21 are secondary, with the single exception of **liberata sit**, which is thus given the prominence due to the most important item of all. The hist. pres. has two uses: one to give a livelier effect, and the other (which we have here) merely to catalogue events, as in a diary one might write either “Ice good; *went* skating” or “Ice good; *go* skating.” This use is sometimes called the “annalistic present.”

41 19 **viro forti**: stereotyped commendation, as in **forti fidelique** in line 18. — **laus impertitur**: as a matter of form some praise had to be included for the other consul, Antonius, who had done little more than set out to take command of troops in the north against Catiline.

41 21 removisset: Antonius, formerly a friend of Catiline, and still suspected of sympathy with him, had been persuaded to shake off connections personal and official with leaders of the revolutionaries (in outward appearance, at least) (Introd. § 85). For the tense cp. note on line 18.

41 22 ita censuerunt: *passed the following vote.* — **abdicasset:** abdication of his office was a necessary first step, since a magistrate could not be imprisoned or tried during his term. Note the constr. **se praetura** (abl.) **abdicare**; but the verb is not always reflex. For this kind of arrest (*libera custodia*) cp. 11 3; Introd. § 70.

41 25 traderentur: from Sallust we learn that Cæsar kept Statilius, while Crassus took charge of Gabinius, and so on (*Cat.* 47, 4). **Praesentes** implies that others (to be mentioned next) had not yet been arrested.

41 26 depoposcerat: ind., as added by Cicero; cp. **erant**, l. 24.

42 1 erat indicatum: for these assignments cp. 22 4 ff. Apulia had a rather lawless population of shepherds and cowboys.

42 2 deduxit: cp. 28 20 ff. for Sulla's veterans. Their presence at Fæsulæ was one reason for Catiline's choice of that base.

42 6 constabat: better parenth. in Eng., — *by whom the Gauls, as was evident, had been,* etc. Of these five not yet arrested (Cassius, etc.), all escaped except Ceparius, who was brought back and given over to the custody of a senator (Sall. ib.). — **ea:** *such*, because it is introductory to the result clause **ut arbitraretur**, *as to believe* (Gram. § 198). — **est usus:** *displayed*. Study the different possible translations of **utor**.

42 9 re publica conservata, etc.: turn the abl. abs. into a clause, — *when once they had saved . . . by punishing nine out of (ex, etc.) . . . they could bring the rest to their senses*. **Mentis** is subj. of *posse*. Execution of the prisoners (five men by that time) was not decided upon until two days later.

42 10 supplicatio: thanksgiving for an important victory commonly lasted five days; but ten days were devoted to Pompey's victory over Mithridates that very year, and even twenty to the celebration of Cæsar's first invasion of Britain (55 B.C.) and, again, of his defeat of Vercingetorix (52 B.C.).

42 11 meo nomine: *on my account, in my honor.* — **quod mihi primum . . . togato contigit:** *and I am the first civilian (togato; cp. 32 15) who has received such an honor (lit.?).*

42 14 liberassem: the words of the complimentary decree are given in indir. disc. — **quae . . . si:** *now, if this (or but, if this).*

42 15 hoc interest, quod: *there is this difference, that (whereas) (hoc is nom.).* He could not go on and say, for the sake of harmony with **conferatur**, '**hoc intersit**,' since the difference really *was* there, whether the suggested comparison was made or not. — **quod ceterae**, etc.: with **ceterae** sc. **constitutæ sunt**; with **gesta** sc. **re publica**. Trans. the abl. absolutes by causal clauses. **Bene gesta (re publica)** refers to military successes only. Note that **ceterae** means *all others*.

42 18 patefactis . . . senatus: three reasons why he had lost his civic and official rights; an abl. abs. expressing cause, followed by two causal abls. Trans. *from what the evidence had revealed, what he himself had confessed, (and) what the senate had decided* (lit.?).

42 21 se abdicavit: as in **41 22**. It sounds as if Lentulus had been incredibly obliging, but he must have been forced into making this resignation through some kind of pressure which Cicero, naturally, does not describe. — **quae . . . liberaremur:** notice, first, the framework of the sentence: **ut quae religio Mario non fuerat, ea religione liberaremur**, *that what scruple Marius had not had, from that scruple we might be freed = that we might be freed from that scruple which*, etc. (Gram. §§ 166, 168). Next, **quo minus C. Glauciam occideret**, lit. *so that he should not kill*, etc. = *to prevent him from killing* (Gram. § 210). Cicero is telling the popular party that even their one-time idol, Marius, had violated principles which the conservatives, led by Cicero, had conscientiously observed. **Praetorem** is made emphatic by the order, — *in spite of his praetorship* (Gram. § 230, b). **De quo**, etc. brings in another fact which might have made Marius hesitate. For Marius and Servilius Glaucia cp. note on **4 22**. Marius was not directly responsible for Glaucia's death.

42 26 captos . . . et comprehensos: **captos** is used like *caught* in 'caught in the act'; **comprehensos** makes it clear that they were actually arrested.

42 27 tenetis: often used like **habeo** with a perf. ptcp. (Gram. § 74).

43 1 concidisse: this exaggeration is due to the speaker's desire to calm the fears of the people.

43 2 quem . . . pellebam: Gram. §§ 222, 61.

43 5 pertimescendam: agreeing in sense with **somnum** (= *indolence*) and **adipes** (*corpulence, stolidity*) also. He ridiculed the habits of Lentulus in **37 25 f**. Cassius was thought merely stolid, until his real character revealed itself.

43 7 continebatur: Gram. § 240. **Tam diu** here = *only so long*. — **norat = noverat.** — **omnium . . . tenebat:** *he had means of access to everyone*.

43 8 appellare . . . audebat: *he had the ability and the courage to approach (men), to probe them, and to awaken their interest (in his plans)*.

43 9 consilium: *a mind*. — **neque . . . deerat:** means that he could not only form ideas, but could also express them and put them into execution.

43 10 iam = iam vero, moreover. — **certas res:** *definite tasks*.

43 11 habebat: for the ptcps. with **habebat** (*kept in readiness*) cp. note on **42 27**.

43 12 mandarar: general temporal clause, *whenever he assigned some duty* (Gram. § 224). — **nihil . . . laboraret:** Eng. would be more specific, — *there was no (duty) that he would not personally attend to, no (difficulty) that he would not personally meet, no (enterprise) to which he would not devote hours of sleepless toil*. The rhetorical grouping strains the syntax of **quod**, so that it takes the place of the expected dat. with **occurreret**; and with the last two verbs **quod** has become adv. acc. (*in regard to which*) (Gram. § 103).

43 14 **poterat**: for Catiline's endurance cp. 14 5 f. (with similar rhetoric).

43 16 **in . . . diligentem**: *energetic in an evil enterprise*. — **domesticis**: the sense is made clear by contrast with **castrense**, *in the field*.

43 17 **dicam . . . sentio**: an indir. quest., **dicam quid sentiam**, *I will tell (you) what I think*, would be an answer to the question 'What do you think?' The rel. **quod** (= **id quod**) gives a different emphasis, stressing the fact that what Cicero is uttering is his real opinion: *I speak with full assurance*; lit. *I shall say that which I actually believe*.

43 19 **depulissem**: with a play upon **compulissem** (Introd. § 22, l). — **nobis**: Gram. § III.

43 20 **constituisset**: i.e. if he had remained. Catiline would have agreed with Cethegus in favoring an earlier date than the seventeenth, proposed by Lentulus and others (39 7 f.; Introd. § 74 fin.). — **ante** is adv.

43 22 **deprehenderentur**: with **testes** as pred. nom., — *as witnesses*. The obj. of **commisisset** is an **ut**-clause, as often with such verbs (**facio**, etc.), where a blunder or folly is involved, — *would not have allowed* (cp. note on 38 1).

43 23 **gesta**: *managed*. There is a touch of irony in the choice of this word: the management of the plot, in Catiline's absence, proves to have been mismanagement.

43 24 **sit . . . inventum**: for the tense cp. Gram. § 69. — **tam palam . . . quam . . . manifesto**: to avoid the awkwardness of 'discovered *as openly* . . . as this conspiracy has been *clearly* discovered and understood,' it is better to omit **manifesto** than to try to make an elaborate paraphrase.

43 26 **comprensa est**: synonyms in the closing words (Introd. § 22, a). Note how both **nullum furtum** and **haec coniuratio** are directly modified by the inserted phrases with **in** and the abl. (attrib. position).

43 27 **quoad fuit**: sc. **in urbe**.

43 28 **occurri atque obstiti**: not synonyms, as the meaning of **occurri** implies attack; that of **obstiti**, defense. Trans. *I opposed and resisted*. — **ut levissime dicam**: *to put it mildly, to use no stronger word* (than **dimicare**).

43 30 **hostis**: pred.; *as an enemy*. — **pace**, etc.: **pax** is the opposite of **bellum**; **otium**, of **labor**; **silentium**, of **sonitus**. Thus Cicero's hearers would be indirectly reminded of the possible fighting, struggle, and din which they had escaped.

44 1 **quamquam**: *and yet*.

44 3 **id . . . consequi possumus**: *we can not only reach this conclusion*.

44 4 **quod . . . potuisse**: the reason for the *inference* (**coniectura**). — **humani consili . . . esse potuisse**: *could have been accomplished by human wisdom*. **Humani consili** is a pred. gen. modifying **gubernatio**, so that the expression means **humanum consilium tantas res gubernare non potuit** (Gram. §§ 117, 119).

44 5 **praesentes**: *in person*. Cp. 28 12, 32 28. **Ita** foreshadows **ut** in line 6, *in such a way that*.

44 7 **nam**: sentences with **nam** justify a preceding statement by telling the facts on which it is based. — **ut . . . omittam**: *to pass over* (*praeteritio*, Intro. § 22, n, 6). — **illa**: as in 4 3 f.

44 8 **ardoremque caeli**: note that **visas** agrees in sense with **ardorem** also. The west was the unlucky quarter for *meteors* (*faces*), comets, and other signs.

44 9 **ut . . . relinquam**: *to leave out*; equiv. to the **ut omittam** in line 7. — **fulminum iactus**: means lightning out of a clear sky, mentioned with other portents in his Latin poem on his consulship.

44 10 **facta sunt**, etc.: *have occurred in such numbers* (**tam multa**).

44 14 **consulibus**: i. e. 65 B. C. (Intro. § 64).

44 15 **res**: *objects*. — **percussas**: i. e. by lightning. He was, no doubt, pointing to the Temple of Jupiter; cp. view, p. lix, 2-3 D (exposed foundation only).

44 16 **deiectae**: from their pedestals. Cicero's poem (cp. note on line 9) names only one statue of a man. The **cum**-clause merely marks the time.

45 1 **liquefacta**: bronze tablets, on which laws were inscribed and posted, had been melted.

45 3 **meministis**, etc.: *was, as you remember* (cp. note on 5 27). It was no longer there. Trans. *whose gilded statue as an infant*, etc. The entire group was thrown down (cp. *de Divinatione*, II, 45, 47, and the poem cited), but there must have been other similar groups. A very ancient wolf with modern twins is now on the Capitol, in a museum; but where it stood in Roman times is unknown.

45 5 **Etruria**: the home of the soothsayer's art.

45 9 **flexissent**: Gram. § 290 med. **Prope** reflects the general belief that Fate was superior to the gods.

45 10 **facti sunt**: with an abl. of accordance (probably) in **responsis** (Gram. § 142).

45 11 **praetermissa est**: portents were thought to indicate the anger of some offended or slighted god or gods, whose wrath must be appeased, sometimes by races and gladiatorial shows, plays, etc., as originally connected with the cult of a god. **Neque ulla** is preferred, as usual, to **et nulla**.

45 12 **maius**: of heroic size or larger. Mention of Jupiter shows to whom **deorum**, 44 15, mainly refers. No subj. is needed for **facere**.

45 13 **convertere**: the new statue was not to look down upon the river (with back to the Forum) but to face the most favorable quarter. It was mounted upon a column on the Capitoline and visible to the audience. For **contra atque**, *otherwise than*, cp. Gram. § 44, d. Trans. freely, — *to turn it round so that it should face the east*.

45 15 **fore ut . . . inlustrarentur**: *it would come to pass* (lit. *be*) *that . . . (they) would be revealed*. The usual substitute for the fut. pass. inf., **inlustratum iri**. **Ut . . . inlustrarentur** is a subst. clause of result, subj. of **fore**.



THE WOLF

45 16 **ut . . . possent**: result, — *so that they could* (not the barbarous 'so that they were able').

45 18 **conlocandum . . . locaverunt**: *contracted for the erection* (Gram. § 80). He is pointing toward the statue on its column. *Signum Iovis columnae impositum populo ostendit*, says the greatest Roman teacher of oratory, Quintilian, who lived one hundred and forty years after Cicero (V, 11, 42). Contracts for public works were under the care of the censors, if any were in office at the time; otherwise of the consuls and aediles (Intro. §§ 27, 29). — **illi**: Cotta and Torquatus.

45 20 **conlocaretur: superioribus consulibus** = *under the late consuls* (*my predecessors being consuls*). **Nobis** has the same constr. as **superioribus**. The consuls of 64 B. C. were L. Julius Cæsar and C. Marcius Figulus. — **hic**: *under these circumstances, or in view of all this*.

45 22 **qui neget**: *as to deny* (Gram. § 175). For **mente**, Gram. § 152. Note **tam** (anaphora). — **haec . . . administrari**: some philosophers, esp. the Epicureans, denied what Cicero affirms, — the rule of a Providence. The mood of **videmus** shows that **haec**, etc. is equiv. to *this visible world* (Gram. § 291).

45 24 **cum . . . responsum**: on reading through the sentence, we find that the last part, **ea . . . sensistis**, stands in strong contrast with the earlier part, **caedis . . . videbantur**. We therefore trans. **cum** here *although*. So Eng. 'when' may mean 'although,' as in 'he was imprisoned when he had done no wrong,' or 'since,' as in 'when all the others were getting holidays, I expected to have one too.'

45 25 **rei publicae**: dat. with **comparari**. — **et ea per civis**: *and by citizens too* (or *at that*). For agreement of **ea** cp. Gram. §§ 11 and 8.

45 26 **quae . . . videbantur**: the rel. clause comes first; cp. 33 3 and note. The antecedent is **ea**, l. 27. To preserve the general order one may trans. *although these things seemed at the time, etc., . . . you have perceived, etc.*

45 28 **illud . . . praesens est**, etc.: i. e. *but is not this so impressive, or such an immediate manifestation* (of a divine ordering)? **Praesens**, often used of a god whose help was felt to have been *immediate* or *obvious*, is here applied to **illud** (some providential occurrence presently to be explained). Cp. 44 5.

45 30 **videatur**: result clause, *as to appear*. — **ut . . . statueretur**: takes its sequence from **factum esse**. This clause is in appos. with **illud** (l. 28). A **quod**-clause would be more usual. **Ut** is here equiv. to *the fact that*.

46 1 **senatum**: really means *the Senate-house* (Intro. § 49). The prediction of 45 15 ff. has its fulfillment.

46 4 **digni**, etc.: freely, *all the greater, therefore, is the hatred . . . deserved by those, etc.* (keeping the emphatic order). For **quo** cp. Gram. § 151.

46 5 **funestos . . . conati**: to avoid awkwardness, substitute advs. for **funestos** and **nefarios**: *have made a deadly and infamous attempt to set fire*. He is working again on the popular fears of incendiarism, as in 35 15 ff.

46 6 **me**: emphatic. Trans. *that it was I who resisted them*.

46 7 **nimum . . . ferendus**: *I should be guilty of intolerable presumption* (lit. *take too much upon myself and not be endurable*). — **ille . . . Iuppiter**: secure emphasis as with **me** in line 6: *it was he, Jupiter yonder, who withstood them*. Do the same with the next **ille**, but omit the others, as Eng. does not take kindly to anaphora. Doubtless Cicero pointed to the statue at the word **ille**.

46 9 **salvos**: this is the pred. of all four subjects of **esse** (Gram. § 8). — **dis . . . ducibus**: abandon the abs. constr., and trans. *the immortal gods were guiding me when I came to have (suscepi) this purpose*, etc.

46 11 **iam . . . sollicitatio**: *and then that attempt to win over the Allobroges*. Cicero does not finish this sentence, but takes a fresh start with **iam . . . numquam . . . profecto** (ll. 12-14): *why never, surely* (anacoluthon, Introd. § 22, n, 12).

46 13 **tantae res creditae**: *such responsibilities laid*. Turn the sentence into the act. in translating. Good Eng. makes relatively little use of the pass.

46 15 **nisi**, etc.: trans. as if **nisi di immortales eripuissent** (*had robbed*). — **huic . . . audaciae**: for the case cp. Gram. § 112. Cicero is using personif.: he speaks of snatching wisdom away from boldness! To make decent Eng. of this, treat **huic . . . audaciae** as if it were **his tam audacibus hominibus**: *robbed these men of their wits, bold as they were (tam)*. The climax of their folly was in giving letters, which might be intercepted.

46 16 **ut**: the nature of this **ut**-clause will appear as the sentence unfolds.

46 18 **nolle videatur**: descr. clause. For **non nolle** = **velle** cp. Introd. § 22, n, 2. In **quae gens**, etc. (*the only nation that*, etc.) we have the appos. rel. clause (Gram. § 168, a). **Gens** includes all the Gauls, but the disaffected Allobroges are uppermost in his mind. They did rebel two years later, but were finally defeated by Pomptinus, who was now governor of Gallia Narbonensis. — **spem imperi**, etc.: *the prospect of domination and a great destiny*, i. e. rule over the rest of the Gauls, probably on both sides of the Alps (involving much Roman territory).

46 19 **patriciis hominibus**: the patricians meant are Lentulus, Cethegus, and others (Catiline only indirectly).

46 21 **anteponerent**: with dat. **opibus**, *interests* (Gram. § 110). — **factum**: the **ut**-clauses are now seen to be subst. clauses of result, summarized by the appos. **id** (Gram. § 199).

46 23 **potuerunt**: **praesertim qui** would reg. be followed by a descr. clause (with **potuerint**) giving a reason. But **potuerunt** has a better sound (rhythm; Introd. § 19). In translating **praesertim qui** we may therefore disregard the mood of **potuerunt** and say *especially as they could have*, etc.

46 24 **pulvinaria**: couches on which statues of the gods were made to recline at table for a ceremonial feast were called *pulvinaria*; the feast, a *lectisternium*.

46 26 **dis**: Gram. § 114.

46 27 **debiti**: *due* (cp. 10 13); joined by **ac** to **iusti**.

47 1 **togati** . . . **togato**: cp. 42 12.

47 3 **audistis**: *have heard of*, in history and tradition (**recordamini** is impv.). For the reg. acc. with **recordor** cp. Gram. § 131, a.

47 5 **oppressit**: he will recall in brief some **civiles dissensiones**. P. Sulpicius Rufus, a tribune in Sulla's first consulship, 88 B.C., introduced some very radical laws, one of which took away from Sulla the command against Mithridates and gave it to the aged Marius. Sulla escaped to Nola, and led his troops back to Rome and into the city. Marius and Sulpicius fled, and were now declared public enemies. Marius reached Africa, but Sulpicius was slain in flight. — **C. Marium** . . . **viros**: *as for Marius*, etc. (lit.?).

47 6 **partim** . . . **partim**: like **alios** . . . **alios**, — *some (of them)* . . . (*while*) *others*. For Marius as defender of Italy against the German invaders cp. notes on 4 20, 63 11. He escaped only with great difficulty to Carthage.

47 7 **conlegam**: i.e. L. Cornelius Cinna, 87 B.C. His radical laws were opposed by his colleague, Cn. Octavius, who caused a bloody riot in the Forum. Cinna escaped, but roused the Italian towns to arms. Meanwhile he had been deposed from his consulship.

47 8 **locus**: the Forum, where ten thousand were slain according to Plutarch. Crisscross order (chiasmus). — **redundavit**: by zeugma the same verb does double duty: fig. with **acervis** and lit., though exaggerated, with **sanguine**, — *was heaped* . . . *swam* (Introd. § 22, n, 5).

47 9 **superavit**: *gained the upper hand*. Marius had been invited by Cinna to return from Africa, and together they besieged Rome, 87 B.C.

47 10 **interfectis**: *by the slaying of*, etc. (Gram. § 75). Hardly had Rome surrendered to Marius and Cinna when a general massacre of their opponents began. Among the **lumina civitatis** snuffed out at this time were Octavius, the consul; Q. Catulus, who had shared in Marius' victory over the Cimbri; and M. Antonius, the eminent orator. Marius himself died early in 86 B.C., in his seventh consulship.

47 11 **Sulla**: since 87 B.C. he had been occupied in the East with the command against Mithridates. In 83 he returned to Italy, and in a bloody civil war made himself master of the situation. — **ne** . . . **opus est**: *I need not even suggest*.

47 14 **Q. Catulo**: leader of the aristocrats, son of the Q. Lutatius Catulus mentioned above (note on line 10). As consul, 78 B.C., he violently opposed his colleague, the leader of the popular party, M. Æmilius Lepidus, who had seized the opportunity given by the death of Sulla to overturn most of the dictator's work. In the civil war which followed, Lepidus fled to Sardinia, where he died in exile. In 66 B.C. Catulus was opposed to the bill of Manilius (cp. 88 11 ff.).

47 15 **ceterorum**: the order of words heightens the contrast with **ipsius** (= Lepidi). **Rei publicae** is dat. with **attulit**.

47 16 eius modi quae: rel. clause of result (= **eius modi ut**; Gram. § 175). The opening words of this sentence have been altered, apparently by careless copyists (cp. line 20).

47 20 voluerunt: Cicero doubtless exaggerates the destructive aims of the conspirators and belittles the enormous damage done in the violent conflicts just enumerated. For expressions like **volo me esse** cp. Gram. § 297.

47 23 diiudicatae sint: for the perf. subjv. in a result clause cp. **43 24**. In **internecione civium** he has come to the main point in his comparison, that those great disturbances had cost a vast number of lives. — **uno:** superls., being often overworked in Latin, are sometimes reënforced by **unus**; here of *all wars, or without exception*.

47 24 quale bellum: here *a war such as*; a short form equiv. to **tali bello quale** (cp. Gram. § 168, a).

47 26 lex haec: *the principle*.

47 27 salva, salvi: salva urbe means *while the city was unharmed* (abl. abs.); but **salvi** here means *solvent*, in the financial sense (cp. **27 23, 28 27**). The test of an enemy was to be that he would profit by the city's safety.

47 28 salvi . . . conservaremini: considering the use of **salvi** in line 27, it is best to trans. by a paraphrase, — *were kept from loss of property or life* (lit. *were preserved solvent, or safe*).

47 29 cum: since the main clause is contrasted with the double **cum**-clause, trans. as in **45 24**. — **tantum:** *only such a fraction*.

47 30 restitisset: from **resto**; *should succeed in surviving*. If the **caedes** were really **infinita**, that would mean strictly that none would be left. The pluperf. subjvs. **restitisset** and **potuisset** (l. 31) represent the fut. perf. of the dir. disc.

48 1 rebus, etc.: *in return for these great services*.

48 2 praemium virtutis, etc.: **ego** (l. 1) emphasizes the implication that another man would expect tangible rewards.

48 8 quod: obj. of **adsequi** and equiv. to **ut id**.

48 9 nostrae res alentur: *my fame* (lit. *deeds*) *will be nourished*. — **sermonibus:** *by being talked about*.

48 10 conroborabuntur, etc.: *will come to full strength and maturity in* (lit. *by*) *histories* (lit. *records of writings*).

48 11 intellego: *I know, am sure*. **Dies** when fem. may mean *length* (or *space*) of *time, lease of life, duration*.

48 12 propagatam . . . mei: the fig. in **propagatam esse** (lit. *has been prolonged or continued*) recalls **24 10**. He is confident *that the same duration* (or *lease of life*) . . . *has been insured* (i. e. by fate) *both for* (lit. *as regards*) *the welfare (existence) of the city and, etc.* That is, while the city is secure his consulship will be remembered (as having made it secure). The flourish of words somewhat conceals the baldness of the boast.

48 15 terminaret . . . servaret: rel. clauses of purpose, — *one of whom was destined to limit the extent (lit. borders) of your dominion . . . while the other was to keep safe, etc.* In **terminaret** the allusion is to Pompey, who had conquered Sertorius in Spain and Mithridates in Asia; cp. *Introd.* § 22, *n.* 7. The second **alter** is Cicero himself. This, he thinks, will be the verdict of history.

48 18 illorum: sc. **est fortuna.** Trans. (from line 16) *in the case of my achievements there is not the same situation as for those, etc.*

48 20 reliquerunt: at illi we require a conj., *while* (asyndeton). — **vestrum est:** *it belongs to you, or it is your duty.* **Vestrum** agrees with **providere**, l. 21.

48 21 sua: referring to **ceteris**, as more prominent in the thought than **facta** (Gram. § 26). Cicero knows that his policy will stir up hatred. In fact, the punishment of these conspirators was the cause of his own exile five years later (*Introd.* § 88). — **recte:** *properly, naturally.*

48 23 providi: a conj. normally standing first in its clause (here **ne**) may be preceded by a long phrase, for emphasis or other reasons.

48 25 nihil . . . potest: **noceri** is impers. and **nihil** adv. acc. (Gram. § 103). Trans. *no harm can be done.* Again **quamquam** = *and yet.*

48 26 bonis: the *optimates*, whose support he expects.

48 28 defendet: the *dignitas*, the authority, of laws, constitution, magistrates, etc. will of itself protect him. — **quam . . . neglegunt:** *and those who neglect it (or that).*

49 1 is animus: *such resolution, determination.* **Nobis** = **mihi.**

49 3 lacessamus: the appos. **ut**-clause explains **is** = **talis.** **Nullius** is reg. for old Lat. **neminis.** For **ultro**, *actually*, cp. **46 19.**

49 4 depulsus a vobis: *after being warded off from you.*

49 5 vobis . . . videndum: *you will have to consider.*

49 6 velitis: *qua condicione* is descr. abl. as pred. of **esse**, — *how . . . situated, or what you mean their lot to be, who, etc.*

49 7 mihi . . . ipsi: *as for myself, indeed* (intimating that they cannot do much more to show their recognition of his risks and labors).

49 8 adquiri: *vitae fructum* = *success in life, life's rewards.*

49 10 ascendere: the higher magistracies (*honores*) are here included in the collective term in **honore vestro**, *in your official promotions.* The last clause describes **quicquam altius quo:** *any greater height to which, etc.*

49 11 ea quae gessi: because **ea** is the obj. of **tuear** and **ornem**, it is best to trans. *reputation which I have gained rather than my achievements.*

49 12 privatus: *in retirement.*

49 13 mihi . . . gloriam: (*but*) *for me it may (only) increase my fame.*

49 14 in re publica: *in my relations with the state.*

49 15 meminerim, etc.: *as ever to remember;* for its connection with a fut. cp. note on **32 16.**

49 17 Iovem illum: with a final gesture toward the new statue up on the Capitol (cp. **45 11 ff.**).

49 18 vestrum: possess., in agreement with **custodem** (not gen. of **vos**).

49 20 defendite: cp. **31 8**. Special precautions had been necessary for some time. For **aeque ac** cp. Gram. § 44, *d*.

49 21 providebo: most manuscripts and many editions add **Quirites** at the end, but no other extant oration of Cicero has a voc. for the last word.

FOURTH ORATION AGAINST CATILINE

DATE: December 5, 63 B. C.

PLACE: The senate, meeting in the Temple of Concord, at the upper end of the Forum (**59 16**; cp. *Second Philippic*, **119** and **19**).

CIRCUMSTANCES: Read Introd. §§ 79-83.

Cicero evidently spoke twice at this momentous session of the senate: (1) as presiding magistrate, charged with the duty of opening the meeting, bringing the business of the day before the senators (*referre*) and calling for their individual opinions (Introd. §§ 33 f.); (2) after Cæsar's speech had produced a marked effect in inclining the senate towards leniency and away from the severer penalty proposed by Silanus, Cicero spoke again, weighing both proposals and analyzing the whole situation.

In revising for publication, Cicero would feel free to combine the two speeches into one, and even to transfer to the opening paragraphs some things which he had said in the second speech. In substance, however, the so-called *relatio* forms §§ 1-6 of the oration as we have it (to **54 24**), while the critique of the motions of Silanus and Cæsar, the résumé of the situation, etc. fill §§ 7 ff. to the end.

OUTLINE OF THE ARGUMENT

(1) You are concerned for my safety as well. Never mind that; anything for the public good! (2) If in the midst of constant danger and trials I have averted these public disasters, I am ready to meet any fate. (3) Think of your welfare and that of the state, not of my safety. Prepared for any outcome, I am not unconcerned for the lives of my dear ones. (4) Take vigorous measures, suited to the unprecedented gravity of a situation in which we have positive proofs of treason. (5) You have already expressed yourselves in the provisions of your decree. That meant condemnation.

(6) The question is now before you. What is your verdict? What shall be the penalty? In this rebellion (widespread, we now discover) you must act very promptly.

(7) Two proposals: Silanus argues for the death penalty, citing precedents; Cæsar, thinking death too good for them, would imprison them for life in provincial towns, — a matter difficult to arrange. (8) It can be done, however. Further penalties are imposed by Cæsar, leaving them existence, whereas death would be a release.

(9) Cæsar's motion will make my situation less difficult. There is no doubt about his patriotism. (10) Some would-be democrats are absent today, though they voted with us two days ago. Cæsar, recognizing that the law does not protect a public enemy, and that Lentulus is no friend of the people, favors severe punishment.

(11) Whichever penalty be inflicted, there can be no charge of cruelty against us, in view of their atrocious designs, (12) of such a character that any mercy to them would be cruelty to the state. (13) Lentulus' brother-in-law urges his execution. His grandfather took up arms against Gracchus. Nothing can be too severe for him.

(14) Your decree will be duly carried out. All the respectable classes are unanimous. (15) All but the conspirators are agreed: the knights, now at one with you; the ærarian tribunes and clerks; (16) the free-born and freedmen; even slaves. (17) Attempted bribery has failed, for shopkeepers love home and peace.

(18) Supported by people and consul, by all classes, you must hear Rome's plea for her protection and defend yourselves. (19) With such leadership and unity, remember our narrow escape, and prevent such schemes in the future.

(20) I foresee a swarm of personal enemies, but, come what may, I shall have no regrets. No man has been honored in just this way. (21) Among the great commanders, from the Scipios to Pompey, there will be some place for my name. (22) In putting down domestic enemies the risk is greater, and perpetual; but it will be averted.

(23) For my sacrifices and services I ask only this return, — that you remember. Should my life be lost, defend my little son. (24) It is for you to make a courageous decision; for me to carry it out.

51 4 depulsum sit: the conclusion of this cond. is implied in *meo periculo*, the thought of the senate perhaps being *etiam si nostrum ac rei publicae periculum depulsum sit*, Cicero tamen in periculo sit, — a fut. less vivid. Depending on *video*, it is in indir. disc., so that only the sense leads us to decide that the dir. form was *depulsum sit* rather than *depulsum erit*; in the indir. form they would be the same.

51 5 voluntas: *good will, feeling*; but here nearly *anxiety, concern*.

51 6 salutis: Gram. § 131.

51 7 si . . . data est: *freely, if these were the terms on which, etc.*

51 9 perferrem: subst. clause in appos. with *condicio*.

51 10 vobis: Gram. § 111 (he might have said *vestra*, etc., *dignitas*).

51 11 pariatur: proviso clause.

51 12 cui: Gram. § 111.

51 13 continetur: lit. *is confined or included*; more freely, *has its seat*. But *omnis aequitas* = *every branch of the administration of justice*, and is not personif. here. For the prætor's tribunal in the Forum, and the courts in the adjoining basilicas, cp. Introd. §§ 48 fin., 49.

51 14 consecratus: *made sacred by* (not 'consecrated to'). Auspices were taken before an election or other business of the assembly, — here the *comitia centuriata* (Introd. § 37). For the location of the Campus Martius cp. view on p. lix. (1-2 C-G). — *curia:* Introd. § 49.

51 15 ad: *for* (not 'to').

51 16 sedes honoris: the ivory chair, *sella curulis*, which served the highest magistrates as their official seat (Introd. § 24 fin.). He points to the chair behind him.

51 17 **periculo**: Gram. § 134. On the attempt to kill Cicero in his chamber cp. 7 5 ff.

51 18 **meo . . . timore**: *at some personal distress in the midst of your fear* (Gram. §§ 143, 154). The abl. of the place where is used fig. to denote a situation, often with the idea of time also present.

51 19 **sanavi**: *have remedied*. — **hunc**: looks forward to the defining result clause in appos. with **exitum**, — **ut . . . eriperem**.

52 4 **patriam**: here has the narrower sense of the city only.

52 6 **subeatur**: he is ready to accept whatever may come to him. For the Vestals cp. Introd. § 31 fin.

52 8 **fatale ad perniciem**: *predestined to destroy*. — **putavit**: for Lentulus' belief in the soothsayers' prophecy that he would be another Sulla cp. 39 1 f.

52 9 **laeter**: quest. of deliberation (Gram. § 55, *d*). — **prope**: *practically*. Cicero does not wish to seem so presumptuous as to claim that he was actually the instrument of fate, esp. as he has just criticized Lentulus for doing that very thing.

52 15 **pro eo . . . ac mereor**: *in proportion as I deserve (in proportion to my desert)*. — **relaturos**: cp. note on **gratia**, 7 21.

52 16 **obtigerit**: sc. **mihi**. It is impossible to tell by the form whether **obtigerit** and **moriar** are ind. or subjv., but the context makes the former seem more probable (cp. Gram. § 258, *a, b*; also Introd. § 22, *n, 10*).

52 17 **nam . . . sapienti**: this sentence sums up the reasons for Cicero's calm acceptance of whatever fate may befall him; courage will dignify death in any form, a **consularis** has lived to see the ripening of his highest possibilities, and a right philosophy of life will enable one to rise superior to any fate.

52 20 **non movear**: rel. clause descr. of **ille ferreus**, but best rendered as result, — *so hard-hearted as not to*, etc. Quintus Cicero was present in the senate, taking sides with Cæsar against the death penalty (Introd. § 82 fin.). Later, as a general under Cæsar, he distinguished himself in Gaul (*B. G. V*). — **horum omnium**: must mean a group of senators especially friendly to the consul, and sitting near him. Custom did not require them to restrain their emotions.

52 22 **exanimata uxor**: canceling the two negs. and changing the voice (to keep the order and the emphasis on **domum**), one may trans. *and often my thoughts are called homeward by my terrified wife*. For Terentia, his wife, cp. Introd. §§ 57, 94.

52 23 **filia**: Tullia, the only daughter, to whom her father was completely devoted. She was perhaps sixteen, possibly only fourteen. For her death cp. Introd. § 94. — **filius**: Marcus, his only son, now not quite two and a half years old (Introd. § 64 fin.). For a letter from him as a student cp. p. 203.

52 24 **obsidem**: *security*; a reminder that Cicero's loyalty could be trusted because he wished his son to remember him with pride.

52 25 gener: Tullia's husband, Gaius Calpurnius Piso, who stands outside the open door of the temple. Five years later, as quæstor, he entered the senate, but died before Cicero's return from exile (57 B.C.; *Introd.* § 89).

52 26 moveor: emphatic position, — *I AM swayed by all these considerations.* — **in eam partem uti**, etc.: (*only*) *to the resolve that they shall all be safe.* **Partem**, lit. *direction*, implies that he will take a definite side on the question.

52 28 pereamus: trans. **potius quam** *rather than that.* **Una**, general, agrees with **peste**.

52 31 providetis: the senators are to bend to the oars (**incumbite**) and keep an eye on the weather, that the ship of state may be safe. — **non Ti. Gracchus:** keep proper emphasis by saying *it is not Tiberius Gracchus . . . who is being brought.*

53 2 in . . . iudicium: *to the bar of your strict justice* (not 'severity'). Instead of connecting **discrimen** and **iudicium** by an *and*, Eng. might combine the expressions and say *is meeting a crisis (as he stands) before the bar* (cp. *Gram.* § 44, *a*). For these historical allusions cp. notes on 3 19, 4 17 and 22.

53 3 tenentur ei: trans. as if it were **eos tenemus** or **habemus**. Do the same with **tenentur litterae** in line 5. — **vestram omnium caedem:** **vestram caedem** and **omnium caedem** welded into one phrase. Trans. as if it were **vestrum** (from **vos**). Cp. *Gram.* § 119, *a*.

53 7 arcessitur: in these three unconnected members he sets forth the most treasonable features of the letters. **Servitia** as a plur. collective means the slave element in many different places. — **id:** *the*.

53 8 interfectis omnibus: *through a general massacre.* — **nemo:** **ne quis** would be reg., but **nemo** is needed here to make an emphatic contrast with **omnibus** (*Gram.* § 38). Cp. the different emphasis in 'that child doesn't eat anything' and 'that child eats nothing.'

53 11 vos . . . iudicavistis: (*and*) *you have already shown your opinion by many decisions.*

53 12 quod: *in that* (*Gram.* § 234). For the vote of thanks cp. 41 15 ff.

54 1 patefactam esse: inf. because here **decrevistis** means *voted* in the sense of *declared officially that something was so* (indir. statement). When one votes that someone shall (is to) do something, the expression is **decernere ut aliquis aliquid faciat** (subst. clause of purpose). Cp. note on 11 20.

54 2 coegistis: on Lentulus' abdication cp. 41 22, 42 20 f.

54 5 nemini: emphatic order. In **qui honos**, *an honor which*, we have an appos. rel. clause (cp. 46 17). For the **supplicatio**, as never before voted in honor of a *civilian* (**togatus**), cp. 42 12.

54 7 amplissima: emphasized by position in the normal place for **dedistis**. For Volturcius and the **legati** of the Allobroges cp. 36 21 ff., 38 24 ff. **Hesterno die** means the day (December 4) which intervened between the third and fourth orations.

54 9 esse videantur: the measures already taken by the senate are understood by Cicero to mean that the conspirators will be severely punished. For the assignment of prisoners under arrest cp. note on **41 25**.

54 10 sed: i. e. in spite of their having made their attitude clear. — **referre . . . quid:** *referre* properly means *lay before* (it was the consul's duty to introduce the business of the session); but as it is here followed by indir. quests., trans. *lay before you the question*. — **tamquam integrum:** *as if (it were) still a fresh question* (in no way prejudged). Cicero claims that the senate has shown its opinion in the preliminary votes, but he wishes now to bring the matter, after free discussion, to a final decision. Cp. *Intro.* §§ 81–83.

54 11 facto . . . poena: he would call for views as to what the conspirators had actually done and how their action should be punished.

54 12 praedicam: *I will open the debate by saying* (lit. *say first*; in this case not 'foretell'). — **sunt consulis:** *belong to the consul (to say)*. Gram. § 119.

54 13 magnum . . . versari furorem: *that much folly was prevalent in the political world*.

54 14 misceri et concitari: *were being concocted and agitated*. — **mala:** *pernicious schemes*. — **videbam:** *here had seen*; for the tenses with **iam pridem** cp. Gram. § 62.

54 15 haberi: *was being formed (= fieri)*. — **a civibus:** emphatic; shown both by its separation from **haberi** and by its position at the end of the indir. disc.

54 16 quicquid est: *whatever the situation is*.

54 17 ante noctem: because a decree of the senate enacted at night was held to be invalid, and there was danger in delaying until the morrow.

54 19 paucos: *only a few*. — **adfinis esse:** with a dat. of the charge this suggests a guilty proximity, — *open to the suspicion of complicity in*.

54 22 multas: exaggerated for **non nullas**. According to Sallust (*Cat.* 21, 3), Mauretania and Hither Spain are the only two provinces in which Catiline is able to boast of a following. The Allobroges are meant in the allusion to the Alps. Note position of the verbs.

54 23 sustentando et prolatando: **sustentando** suggests delay caused by continuing to endure an evil; **prolatando**, that of postponing the attempt to remedy it. Trans. *by endurance and procrastination*. — **quacumque . . . est:** with emphasis on **celeriter**, — *you may punish in what way you please, but prompt action is imperative*. Here ends, apparently, that part of the speech which corresponds to the *relatio*, — the consul's statements in opening the debate (cp. note on **54 10**).

54 25 sententias: a number of the senators have already spoken during the interval which we assume at this point if we would make real to ourselves the actual situation in the Temple of Concord. In the published form Cicero's two separate addresses are combined in one. — **Silani:** the consul elect, and as such the first to be asked his opinion (*Intro.* § 34). He has offered a *motion*, **sententia**.

54 26 conati sunt: the mood shows these to be Cicero's own words, not those of Silanus. For the meaning of *haec* cp. note on 12 9. But the buildings indicated by a gesture represent the whole fabric of the state.

55 2 ceterorum: note the asyndeton, and supply *but* or *while it*. Julius Cæsar, as prætor elect, was asked his opinion before the prætors, i. e. next after the ex-consuls. Cp. Sallust's version of Cæsar's speech (*Cat.* 51).

55 4 versatur: here *confines himself to* (in with abl.). Each limits himself to (lit. *moves within*) stern measures.

55 5 conati sunt: for the mood cp. note on 54 26.

55 6 punctum: Gram. § 100.

55 7 vita . . . spiritu: *the (blessings of) life, and this air that all men breathe* (cp. Gram. § 147, a).

55 9 recordatur: *recalls the fact*. Silanus supported the death penalty by reminding the senate that it was nothing new; but no real precedents could be cited to show that the senate had authority to exact the extreme penalty without trial and without the possibility of an appeal to the people.

55 12 quietem: appos. in the pred., — *as a respite from*, etc. The gen. in Lat. indicates a connection between nouns, and in Eng. we are not restricted to 'of' in expressing that connection.

55 14 oppetiverunt: although Cicero is still giving only the substance of Cæsar's argument, he has now passed over into dir. disc. Usually *inquit* would be inserted.

55 16 inventa sunt: Cæsar's theory of life imprisonment. In actual practice such imprisonment was very rare under the Republic. One case is cited, that of a slacker, who had cut off some of his fingers to avoid military service (Valerius Maximus, VI, 3, 3).

55 18 habere: *to involve*. — **ista res:** *such action*.

55 19 velis: where we use the indef. 'one,' Lat. often uses the second pers. sing. with the subjv. (cp. Gram. § 251). — **difficultatem:** *embarrassment* (on the part of the towns).

55 20 suscipiam: sc. *rem*, *the task*, as obj. — **qui . . . putent:** a descr. clause, — *(men) who will not think*, etc. (Gram. § 70). It supplies an obj. for *reperiam*. He will find some *municipia* not unwilling to accept the responsibility.

55 21 id . . . statueritis: *a decision which you have made*. — **esse suae dignitatis:** *that self-respect permits them (that it belongs to their position)*; pred. gen. modifying *recusare*, which is the subj. of *esse*.

55 23 eorum: with *vincula*, not with *quis*. — **ruperit:** perf. subjv. (not fut. perf. ind.); mood due to indir. quotation (Gram. § 290 med.).

55 26 possit: this language suggests the *sanctio* of a law, i. e. the clause fixing penalties of violation. Cæsar would forbid any legislation at Rome for the release of the prisoners or mitigation of their punishment (*eorum poenam*). For the *ne*-clause cp. Gram. § 273 (not *ut nemo*; cp. note on 53 8).

55 29 **eripuisset**: **quam** is a connecting rel.

55 30 **ademisset**: the skeptical tone is evidently borrowed from Cæsar. Cicero's own view was that there is a happy immortality for the good and the great, and annihilation for all others. The popular idea of torment for the wicked after death was expressed at the end of the First Oration.

56 1 **voluerunt**: *would have it, held, asserted*. In **eius modi . . . supplicia** he refers to punishments visited upon the wicked in the Lower World as described by Homer and other old poets (**illi antiqui** = *the ancients*).

56 2 **pertimescendam**, etc.: they pictured punishment after death in order to restrain the wicked; but their real belief was in agreement with Cæsar's, that there is no pain for the dead. Thus **itaque**, 55 31, was the logical connective; for here *accordingly* = *on that principle* or *in that spirit*. For conditional **his remotis** cp. Gram. § 153. The summary of Cæsar's speech is in a straightforward style, but not without polish.

56 4 **intersit**, etc.: *what is to my interest*; **mea** shows the constr. which is reg. wherever the possess. pron. can be used, this verb having borrowed the constr. of **referat** (Gram. § 130).

56 5 **quoniam**: as usual, the **quoniam**-clause gives the reason for what follows (not for the **si**-clause).

56 6 **viam . . . secutus est**: his policy is that which is generally *considered* (**habetur**) *democratic*.

56 7 **auctore et cognitore**: with such an *advocate* (**cognitore**) of the measure, Cicero will have less to fear from Cæsar's party. For **auctore**, etc., causal abl. abs., cp. Gram. § 153.

56 8 **illam alteram**: that of Silanus; the verb of line 5 is still in mind. For **sin** cp. Gram. § 261.

56 9 **nescio an**: *I rather think* (cp. Gram. § 162).

56 11 **vincat**: Gram. § 55, *b*. **Rationes** becomes sing. (*regard for*). — **dignitas . . . postulabat**: Cicero flatters the Julian family, which claimed descent from Æneas, the Trojan.

56 13 **voluntatis**: in proposing severe punishment for these men of his own party Cæsar is pledging his *loyalty* (**voluntatis**) to the government. **Obsidem** means *security*, as in 52 24. — **intellectum . . . consulentem**: behind this elaborate compliment to Cæsar's sound democratic principles there is a hint that Cicero is quite aware that he has taken a dangerous interest in Catiline's enterprise. **Intellectum est**, lit. *it was appreciated* (when Cæsar spoke), may be trans. *it is easy to see*.

56 14 **quid interesset**: *what a difference there is*. The remainder of the sentence contrasts the frothy eloquence of political agitators with the serious projects of a true friend of the people.

56 16 **de istis**: partitive (= **ex istis**). He could name these men. — **non neminem**: *some persons, several, more than one*, equiv. to **quosdam** (Gram. § 39).

56 17 capite: in its technical sense of *life* or *civilian rights*. — **ferat:** becomes plur. in Eng. They did not wish to commit themselves by voting on a question which belonged, as they thought, to the popular assembly, not to the senate.

56 18 is: simply continues **non neminem**, and may be translated *such an absentee* (not *he*), or one may use the plur., *they*.

56 20 adfecit: for the action taken by the senate on December 3 and 4 cp. 41 14 to 42 14; Introd. §§ 77-79. — **hoc:** refers to **qui . . . iudicarit**. The antecedent of **qui** is the unexpressed subj. of **iudicarit** (*one*, or *a man*). The clause **qui . . . decrerit** is descr. of any one of those voting with the majority on the two previous days, but absent from this session. **Reo, quaesitori, indici**, are sings. because they name a type: *a defendant, an examining magistrate* (meaning Cicero), *an informant*.

56 21 gratulationem: = **supplicationem**, voted in Cicero's honor.

56 22 causa: *the legal case*, i.e. the **res** in terms of the law.

56 23 intellegit: not **dicat**. Cicero is giving his interpretation of what was in Cæsar's mind. — **constitutam:** the *lex Sempronia* of Gaius Gracchus, 123 B.C., had maintained as inalienable the right of a citizen to appeal to the popular assembly. The democratic party disputed the right of the senate to override that law by proclaiming martial law (Introd. § 35).

56 24 civem . . . posse: **civem** is pred. Cicero is not speaking of foreign foes, but of citizens who for rebellion have been declared **hostes** by the senate (so Catiline and Manlius in their camp at Fæsulæ; Sall. *Cat.* 36, 2). That the senate had such power, even under martial law, was denied by the democrats. Looking back to **at vero** (*on the contrary*), l. 22, we now see that it marked the contrast between the doubts of the absentees and the (assumed) conviction of Cæsar that the Sempronian Law could not protect men who had been pronounced **hostes**.

56 26 poenas . . . dependisse: for the fate of Gaius Gracchus cp. note on 4 17. Martial law had been declared. By an evident error in copying, the manuscripts have **iussu**, which conflicts with the known facts.

56 29 etiam: *any longer* or *still* (cp. 3 2). In spite of his reckless generosity, even Lentulus is no longer to be accepted as a true democrat.

57 1 homo mitissimus, etc.: *although (Cæsar is) the kindest and gentlest of men, he*, etc.

57 2 mandare: Gram. § 90.

57 3 sancit in posterum: *would decree* (lit. *decrees*) *that hereafter*. — **se iactare:** *achieve prominence*.

57 4 in pernicië: denotes circumstance, equiv. to a result, — *to the destruction*.

57 7 consequatur: sing., since the synonyms give but a single idea.

57 8 sive . . . sive: *if, on the one hand, . . . if, on the other hand*.

57 9 comitem: Cæsar, if his motion should be carried, might be expected to appear presently with the consul before a *meeting* (**contio**) of the people (cp.

the Third Oration), to justify measures adopted by the senate. — **ad contionem**: *when I appear before the assembly.*

57 10 malueritis: the long *i* in the stem is the reg. quantity in Cicero, both in fut. perf. and in perf. subjv. (**Obtinebo** shows that **malueritis** is here the former.) This is an inference from what is known about the "cadences," the regular combinations of long and short syllables with which sentences and members were ended. Cp. **Intro.** § 19, 4 and n. 3.

57 11 crudelitatis: *for* (not 'of') *cruelty*. Cp. note on **quietem**, 55 12.

57 12 obtinebo: *maintain*. — **quamquam**: Gram. § 218, *b*.

57 14 ego . . . iudico: he finds no cruel feelings in his own heart.

57 15 ita . . . liceat, ut: *may I be allowed to enjoy with you (the benefits of) stable government only if*, etc. Note (1) that this is in form an oath, like "So help me God"; (2) that **ita . . . ut** means lit. *so . . . as*. For **liceat** cp. Gram. § 56.

57 16 quod . . . sum: trans. *in showing unusual insistence in this case*. The **quod**-clause does not give a reason for **moveor**: it is an *explanation*, meaning *in that* (Gram. § 234).

57 18 mihi: with **videor**, but best omitted in trans.

57 20 uno: *general*.

57 21 sepulta in patria: **sepulta**, lit. *buried*, is in contrast with **insepultos**; but Eng. cannot well speak of a 'buried country' without suggesting landslides or volcanoes. Trans. freely *within our ravaged country*.

57 22 mihi: Gram. § III. — **versatur ante oculos**: as in the old poem the Scottish seer tells Lochiel, the chieftain,

"For the field of the dead *rushes red on my sight*,
And the clans of Culloden are scattered in flight."

— **furor**, etc.: *the sight of frenzied Cethegus* (hendiadys), whose specialty was to be the massacre of senators (cp. 58 29).

57 23 bacchantis: agreeing with **Cethegi**, *as he revels*. — **cum . . . mihi proposui**: *whenever I imagine* (Gram. § 224). — **regnantem Lentulum**: *L. on the throne*. **Regnare** was always an odious word at Rome. Cp. 39 1.

57 24 confessus est: cp. 38 28 ff.

57 25 Gabinium: in **purpuratum** Cicero is using a term suggestive of the minister of a Macedonian king or Oriental despot, a *grand vizier*. For **huic**, *his*, cp. Gram. § III. — **esse . . . Gabinium**: lit. *and that Gabinius is* (depending on **proposui**). But better rendered *Gabinius' being*. Treat **venisse Catilinam** in the same way.

57 26 familias: old gen. sing. of first declension.

57 29 miseranda: stronger than **misera**. — **atque**: *and even, or rather*.

58 2 liberis . . . domo: trans. as if circumstantial clauses.

58 6 importunus ac ferreus: sc. **esse videatur**. For **ac** cp. Gram. § 44. — **qui . . . lenierit**: *since he did not mitigate* (or *in not having mitigated*). A descr.

clause (cp. Gram. § 178). A master had the legal right to kill his slave, and in an extreme case was thought fully justified in doing so. **Nocentis** and **suum** are placed side by side for contrast.

58 8 in his hominibus: *in dealing with these men.*

58 11 id egerunt ut: *have aimed to.*

58 13 fuerimus: cp. note on 57 10.

58 15 in . . . perniciē: *in the day of destruction.* Cp. note on 51 18.

58 17 crudelior: *needlessly cruel.* The compar. may mean *rather* or *too*, etc. when no object of comparison is present. **Nisi vero** prepared us for an ironical statement, or for ridicule of an argument. This L. Cæsar was consul in 64 B.C.; not a near relative of Julius Cæsar, but uncle of the triumvir Antony. He spoke at this session in favor of the death penalty.

58 18 cum . . . dixit: *when in the presence and hearing of the husband of his own respected sister he said.* In epithets applied to persons Lat. reg. adds **vir** or **femina**; these are best omitted in trans. It was not good form to mention a person in a speech without some polite epithet, unless the person were the object of attack. For **dixit** cp. Gram. § 223. Trans. the second **cum . . . dixit** (ll. 19–21) *and stated that.* The grandfather was M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C., whose violent end was mentioned, with that of the younger Gracchus, in 4 18 (see notes). The younger son (**filium**), sent to the consul Opimius (4 14), to arrange a truce, was at once seized. L. Cæsar's argument was that these bloody precedents in his own family left no doubt of the senate's power to put Lentulus to death.

58 21 quorum . . . factum: = sed quod factum illorum simile (*comparable*) **erat factis horum?** (i. e. Lentulus, etc.).

58 22 initum: sc. **erat.** *To form a plan* may be either **consilium capere** or **consilium inire.**

58 23 largitionis . . . contentio: *in political circles at that time there was a leaning toward state doles and some party strife.* Gaius Gracchus did not plan to destroy the state. Yet his system of grain largesses, under which the common people were to receive every month an allowance of grain at a very low price, tended to rob them of all independence. For **versata est** cp. note on 54 13.

58 26 persecutus: Lentulus' grandfather was mentioned at 39 25 (see note). He was then an old man, but with Opimius, the consul, and others took up arms and pursued Gracchus to the Aventine Hill. — **ne . . . minueretur:** *that the authority of the commonwealth might not be weakened.*

58 27 hic, etc.: contrasting the treason of this Lentulus with the patriotism of his grandfather.

58 29 trucidandos and the other gerundives: Gram. § 80. For the rôles of Cethegus and Cassius cp. 57 22 f., 41 25 f.

58 32 censeo: like **credo**, this verb is often ironical, — *I think you should fear*, implying that no one will be so foolish as to fear (Gram. § 279).

59 1 **videamini**: in irony he bids them fear an excess of severity, as though leniency were not the more dangerous extreme *in dealing with this crime* (in *hoc scelere*).

59 2 **in patriam**: by **remissione poenae** he means only a less severe penalty (cp. **remissiores**, etc., 58 14).

59 6 **non possum**: he cannot pretend not to hear protests, including those audible at this meeting. For **exaudio** cp. 12 8. — **iaciuntur . . . voces**: *words are being uttered*.

59 7 **eorum**: trans. as if *ab eis*. — **satis praesidi**: Gram. § 125; for **vereri** ut, § 194.

59 9 **omnia . . . sunt**: *every contingency has been foreseen, every preparation made, every question settled*.

59 10 **cum**: with **tum** in line 11, — *not only . . . but also*. — **cura**: this, with the following abls., combines the ideas of means, cause, and perhaps manner. Trans. by *through*.

59 11 **populi Romani**: *on the part of the Roman people*. The desire of the people was to retain the **summum imperium**, its sovereign authority.

59 16 **templi ac loci**: *hallowed spot* (the Temple of Concord). — **causa . . . sola**: *for this is the only question found*, etc.

59 17 **sentirent . . . idem**: *hold one and the same opinion*. The tense is due to **est . . . inventa** (Gram. § 67).

59 19 **solī**: cp. 29 15.

59 21 **in . . . numero habendos**: *should be classed with* (lit.?). — **hostium**: by classing them as now **hostes**, no longer **cives**, he wishes to silence every objection to their punishment.

59 23 **ad . . . consentiunt**: *unite in supporting*.

59 25 **commemorem**: Gram. § 55, *d*; Introd. § 22, *n*, 6 (*praeteritio*). — **vobis . . . certent**: *yield . . . only to vie*, etc. — **summam . . . consili**: *leadership in rank and in statecraft*.

59 27 **huius ordinis**: obj. gen., in Eng. *with* or *from*, etc.

59 28 **revocatos . . . coniungit**: *has recalled and united*. In **ad societatem . . . revocatos** he refers to reforms made seven years before. Under the influence of Gaius Gracchus jury duty had been taken away from the senators and given to the knights, 122 B.C. Sulla in 81 B.C. again made the juries consist exclusively of senators. By a compromise of 70 B.C. juries now consisted of three elements: (1) senators, (2) knights, (3) *tribuni aerarii*, i.e. well-to-do representatives of the tribes (Introd. § 40). Senators and knights were now united in the face of a threatened revolution.

59 29 **causa**: *situation*. — **quam . . . tenuerimus**: *and if we keep this union which has been effected . . . a permanent one*. One of Cicero's dearest hopes was that by this union of knights and senators the constitutional government at Rome might be preserved. The hope was short-lived.

60 3 **esse venturum**: the indir. disc. shows that **confirmo vobis** = *I assure you*.

60 5 **fortissimos viros**: a conventional compliment. For the *tribuni aerarii* cp. note on 59 28. They had ceased to have any connection with the treasury, but constituted a distinct class (*ordo*). — **scribas . . . universos**: *all the government clerks*. On this date, the Nones of December, the new quaestors entered upon office, casting lots for the choice of duties and for assignment of *clerks* (*scribae*), a numerous body. All this took place at the neighboring Temple of Saturn, part of which served as the Treasury (*aerarium*).

60 6 **quos . . . conversos**: *for although today they came thronging* (lit. *this day had brought them in crowds*) *to the treasury, I see that they have ceased to wait for the notice of their appointments* (lit. *allotment*) *and come here to show their interest in the common safety*. (Check this expanded rendering by your own lit. trans.)

60 8 **ingenuorum**: he names no more classes, but concludes with the general statement that all free-born citizens are present in proof of their loyalty.

60 12 **operae . . . est**: *it is worth while*.

60 13 **libertinorum**: an ex-slave (*libertinus*) was called the *libertus* of his former master. Freedom was often purchased by slaves who had been allowed to keep part of their earnings. The *libertini* were often well educated, or skilled in a trade.

60 14 **consecuti**: by their *ability or merit* (*virtute*) they have *won* Roman citizenship, a *happy possession* (*fortunam*). — **hanc . . . iudicant**: their real *patria* was generally in some distant province.

60 15 **summo . . . loco**, etc.: *sprung from the nobility* (source rather than place). The allusion is to the patricians among the conspirators.

60 17 **commemoro**: a familiar formula of transition. Contrast the question **Quid . . . commemorem?** (59 24).

60 19 **libertas**: mention of their *libertas* hints that slaves are to be considered next.

60 20 **nemo**: as adj. = **nullus**. — **qui . . . sit**: Gram. § 180. — **tolerabili condicione**: Gram. § 145.

60 22 **quantum audet . . . conferat . . . voluntatis**: *contribute as much good will as he dares*. There was nothing else that the slaves could do. **Quantum** is abbr. for **tantum quantum**. Similarly we often find **quam diu**, lit. *how long*, for **tam diu quam**, *as long as*, etc. For **voluntatis** cp. Gram. § 125.

60 24 **quod . . . est**: **quod** is rel. The *si*-clause becomes pass. in trans., — *if . . . is disturbed by*, etc.

60 25 **tabernas**: one could find *tabernae* in the Forum (Introd. § 48). In **lenonem**, *agent*, Cicero chooses a word with the worst associations.

60 26 **pretio**: asyndeton. Supply *and*. Emphatic position.

60 27 **coeptum . . . temptatum**: trans. the ideas, not the form: *he did, it is true, begin that attempt*.

60 29 *perditi*, etc.: *depraved in their aims* (Gram. § 152). — *qui non . . . velint*: *as not to wish*. — *illum . . . locum*: *freely, the very place where they sit at their work and do their daily business* (lit. ?).

60 32 *in tabernis sunt*: he means tradesmen as well as artisans.

61 1 *immo vero*: *or, more correctly*.

61 2 *omne instrumentum*: *the outfit of every worker* (lit. 'every equipment').

61 3 *opera atque quaestus*: *taken together, equiv. to gainful occupation*.

61 4 *sustentatur, alitur*: *is kept up and increased*. — *quorum . . . quaestus*: = *si autem quaestus eorum*. — *occlusis tabernis*: *equiv. to a temporal cum-clause* (Gram. § 153).

61 5 *incensis (tabernis)*: = *si incensae essent*. — *futurum fuit*: *would have happened* (Gram. § 257). The tense shows that Cicero represents the danger as past. Fear of incendiarism had much to do with the wrecking of Catiline's hopes of popular support.

61 9 *atque*: *or rather; or I should say; in fact*. We here have a common use of the word when a stronger term, or more exact expression, follows (cp. 58 6, *ac*; Gram. § 44).

62 2 *Capitolium*: for citadel and Capitol cp. *Introd.* § 50. — *aras Penatium*: every family had its household gods, *Penates*; and so the state, as a larger family, had its *Penates* too. The temple was between the Palatine and the Esquiline, not far from the Temple of Vesta.

62 3 *Vestae*: the circular Temple of Vesta (p. xliv), with its perpetual fire, — the hearth of the state, — was about two hundred yards southeast of the Temple of Concord, in which Cicero was speaking. They were separated by the length of the Forum (see *Introd.* § 48 and *aëroplane view* between pages xl and xli, 2 g-2 i). — *illum*: with a gesture in that direction.

62 6 *anima*: notice the sing., as in *vita*, l. 5, *vitam*, l. 1.

62 8 *quae . . . datur*: for the appos. rel. clause (*an advantage which*) cp. 54 5.

62 12 *sentientem*: cp. 59 17. It agrees in sense with *ordines* and *homines* as well as *populum*. Such unanimity was rare *in civili causa*, that is, in a question of home politics (no question of war). — *cogitate . . . delerit* (= *deleverit*): the Lat. form of this sentence is *consider by how great struggles established a dominion*, etc., *one night almost destroyed*. A slight change makes it readable Eng.: *consider by what great struggles the dominion was established*, etc., *which one night*, etc. This critical night is probably that at the Mulvian Bridge (37 13 ff.), since the evidence there obtained insured the suppression of the conspiracy. This view is confirmed by another speech (*pro Flacco*, 102).

62 15 *id . . . possit*: change to the act.: *that it may hereafter be impossible for citizens not only to accomplish this but even to think of it* (lit. ?).

62 19 *esse . . . princeps*: *to take the lead in (discussing) affairs of state*. — *officio*: Gram. § 147, *a*. — *functa* (sc. *esse*): Gram. § 299. In this constr. the

inf. is virtually complementary; therefore the ptcp., like any other adj. in this situation, is in the nom. case. Cp. *Illi dicuntur esse boni* with *Illi dicuntur esse profecti*, and observe how *boni* and *profecti* have the same relation to *illi* in each example.

62 21 *redeo*: pres., as often with *antequam*, when referring to the fut. (Gram. § 215). *Sententiam* (= *sententiam rogandam*) does not refer either to Silanus' motion or to Cæsar's. Cicero means he will call for the views (*rogare sententiam*) of other senators in order of precedence (cp. page 346).

62 22 *ego . . . coniuratorum*: evidently *quanta* anticipates a correl. form of *tantus*; keeping the order, trans. *for myself, great as is the company of*, etc.

62 23 *permagnam*, etc.: *and you see it is very large*.

62 25 *aliquando*: *at some time*, suggesting more probability than *umquam*, *at any time, ever*, which occurs principally in neg. expressions. There is a like difference between *aliquis* and *quisquam*:

aliquis : quisquam :: aliquando : umquam

Cicero had good reason to fear that *some* unprincipled leader (*alicuius*) might *some day* (*aliquando*) avenge the punishment of Lentulus and his companions. Cp. Intro. § 88 for Cicero's banishment. — *scelere*: *wickedness* (not 'a crime').

62 28 *paenitebit*: as usual, with an obj. (*me*) and a gen. (cp. Gram. § 132).

63 1 *quam . . . minitantur*: *mihi* is implied, — *with which . . . threaten me* (Gram. § 107, b). *Vitae* is in strong contrast to *mors* (asyndeton); hence *in life* should come first (*of life* being too lit.).

63 2 *tantam*: keep the order, — *such praise as you . . . no one (else) has gained* (or *such praise . . . has been gained by*, etc.).

63 3 *ceteris, mihi*: Gram. § 111. — *gesta*: sc. *re publica* and cp. 42 16 and Gram. §§ 153, 144.

63 4 *gratulationem*: = *supplicationem*, as in 56 21. — *sit*: Gram. § 55, c.

63 5 *Scipio*: Scipio Africanus the Elder won the Second Punic War, which ended in 201 B.C. Hannibal's return to Africa to defend Carthage is treated as more significant than his withdrawal from Italy. For the rhetorical figure in *redire atque decedere* cp. Intro. § 22, n, 4. *Ex Italia* would be more usual than *Italia*.

63 7 *alter*: sc. *Scipio*. Scipio Africanus the Younger, by adoption grandson of the Elder, destroyed Carthage in 146 B.C. (Third Punic War), and in 133 B.C. Numantia, — the latter a strong center of opposition to Roman rule in northern Spain.

63 9 *Paulus*: Æmilius Paulus, the father of the younger Scipio, conquered Macedonia. 168 B.C. (battle of Pydna). Cicero pictures the triumph: King Perseus (Perses) walking before the chariot in which rode his captor.

63 11 *Marius*: for *aeterna gloria*, stronger than *clarus* (l. 5), cp. Gram. § 145.

His native town was Cicero's Arpinum, and the two families had been connected by an adoption. — **bis . . . liberavit**: while the Germans were attacking her natural walls, the Alps, Italy was, as it were, besieged, until Marius raised the "siege" by defeating the Teutons at Aquæ Sextiæ (Aix-en-Provence), 102 B.C., and then the Cimbri near Vercellæ (halfway between Turin and Milan), in 101 B.C.

63 12 Pompeius: Pompey is rated above the four great commanders of the past, as having eclipsed them in the wide range of his victories, — from Spain (Sertorius) to Armenia (Mithridates) and Jerusalem.

63 13 solis cursus, etc.: like speaking of "an empire on which the sun never sets." Hyperbole (cp. Introd. § 22, *n*, 7). For the abls. cp. Gram. § 147.

63 14 erit . . . gloriæ: aliquid loci suggests at least a modest corner (Gram. § 125). With **erit** we at last reach the main verb, after a series of concessions: *yet there will surely be* (but no conj. in the Lat.; asyndeton). Cp. Gram. § 280.

63 15 maius est: nisi forte plainly intimates that this will be absurd. — **nobis**: connect with **patefacere**.

63 16 possimus: quo = in quas. He has in mind provincial governors.

63 17 revertantur: descr. clause, as with **est qui, est quo**, etc. (Gram. § 174). **Victores = as victors**. For **ut . . . habeant** cp. Gram. § 192. The apparent modesty of **aliquid loci** (l. 14) is now lost in a direct comparison of his own achievements in saving the city with those of Pompey in foreign conquests (cp. 48 13 ff.). — **quamquam**: *and yet*.

63 18 loco: *point, respect*. For **condicio** cp. 48 17. — **domesticæ: here at home**.

63 19 quod: *in that* (explaining **loco**). — **oppressi serviunt**: *are in a state of slavery once they have been subdued*. Treat **recepti** (*taken under our protection*; sc. **in fidem**) like **oppressi**.

63 20 qui: when a rel. clause precedes the demonstr., we may keep the order by substituting *if men*, etc. or *when men*, etc. for the rel. clause. — **ex numero**: *belonging to the class*.

63 22 eos . . . reppuleris: *though one beat off their assault upon the commonwealth*; subjv. because of the indef. *you = one* (Gram. § 57, *b*). The thought is that while an attack may be for the moment foiled, there is no way either of permanently restraining the enemy or of winning his friendship.

63 23 possis: the same use of the subjv., second person. Otherwise the long **quod**-clause would have ended with an ind. verb, to match **putant**, l. 20. — **mihi**: Gram. § 114.

63 25 vestro . . . auxilio, memoria . . . periculorum: as this sentence was being uttered the Roman auditor knew only vaguely the meaning of these abls. They were held in his mind until **propulsari** was reached, to which they would automatically attach themselves. This will show how the sentence was spoken, unit by unit, so that the hearers could take it in:

Id ego

vestro bonorumque omnium AUXILIO,

MEMORIAQUE tantorum periculorum

(quae non modo in hoc populo qui servatus est,

sed in omnium gentium sermonibus ac mentibus

semper haerebit),

A ME atque A MEIS

facile propulsari posse confido.

63 29 **tanta**: trans. after **vis reperietur**.

63 30 **equitumque Romanorum**: trans. *with the Roman knights*.

63 32 **possit**: rel. clause of result (Gram. § 175). For the newly achieved harmony of senators and knights cp. 59 27 ff.

64 1 **pro . . . rebus**: as far as **rebus**, **pro** means *in place of*; in the rest of the sentence it means *in return for*.

64 2 **neglexi**: *gave up*. Cicero might have had Macedonia as his province the following year; but he had given it up in favor of his colleague Antonius. He had declined Cisalpine Gaul also. As proconsul he would have had an army, and full military authority, *imperium*. These too are included by implication in **quam neglexi**.

64 4 **repudiata**: Macedonia might have given opportunity for victories and a triumph. — **clientelis hospitibusque provincialibus**: *clients and friends in the provinces* (lit. *provincial clientships and guest-friendships*). Cities and even provinces had their *patroni* at Rome, often an ex-governor. The bond of hospitality was usually connected with this kind of clientship. Prominent senators thus enjoyed in foreign parts a distinction and an influence for which there is no parallel in modern states.

64 6 **comparo**: in spite of declining appointments in the provinces, still (**tamen**) he does have such valuable connections abroad, laboriously acquired and maintained (**tueor**) through his reputation and influence at Rome (**urbanis opibus**). For *quae* cp. Gram. §§ 11 and 8. — **rebus**, etc.: freely, *in return, then, for . . . sacrifices* (things given up).

64 7 **hac**: = *mea* (and something more which cannot well be translated, though *this of mine* comes near it).

64 9 **memoriam postulo**: the only reward he asks for his sacrifices (the province, army, etc.) and his labors. Cp. 48 1 ff.

64 10 **quae dum erit . . . fixa**: *and as long as this remains fixed*. For the tense of **erit fixa** cp. Gram. § 240 (contrast with § 239).

64 12 **superaverit**: best taken as trans., — *shall disappoint* (**fefellerit**) and *defeat*. — **commendo**: instead of either a fut. ind. (**conservabitis**), as normal conclusion to the cond. **si superaverit** (Gram. § 258, a), or a fut. impv. (**conservatote**), we have the earnest and immediate **commendo vobis**.

65 4 **memineritis**: for the form cp. note on 57 10. **Solius** is added to em-

phasize **suo** (cp. 53 3, **vestram omnium**; Gram. § 119, *a*). For the abl. **periculo** cp. § 141. Trans. *at his own sole peril*. — **summa salute**: *the very life*.

65 7 **universa re publica**: *the general good of our country*. **Fortiter**, emphatically placed at the end, may be understood as a final suggestion that the severer measure of Silanus should prevail. **Ut institutis** may refer to previous measures or to the spirit of the present debate.

65 9 **eum consulem**: *as consul a man*. **Consulem** is pred.

65 10 **non dubitet**: descr. clause (Gram. § 174).

65 11 **possit defendere** is fortified by the more expressive **per se ipsum praestare** (*personally answer for, assume personal responsibility for*). He will be prepared at any time to maintain that the senate's decision was lawful and justified.

At the conclusion of this speech Cicero resumed the process of calling upon individual senators for their opinions (cp. 62 21). For the speech of Cato, and other views, the vote, and the execution of the conspirators, cp. Introd. §§ 82–84.

THE MANILIAN LAW

PLACE: The Forum; Cicero speaking from the Rostra.

TIME: Early in the year 66 B.C. in the praetorship of Cicero.

CIRCUMSTANCES: The people have been summoned to a meeting (*contio*), after which the bill proposed by the tribune Gaius Manilius, conferring a new general command upon Pompey, will be voted upon by the popular assembly (Introd. § 38). Read also Introd. § 63 and the Introductory Note below.

INTRODUCTORY NOTE

1. To understand a situation in which it could be proposed to bestow almost unlimited powers upon a single general in the East, it is necessary to recall the widespread terror inspired by previous invasions of the king of Pontus, Mithridates VI,¹ whom the Romans had had more reason to dread than any enemy since Hannibal.

2. Twenty years before the date of this speech even Athens and a large part of Greece had to be slowly recovered by Sulla from the armies of Mithridates' generals, — a campaign of obstinate sieges and two brilliant victories. At that time the king still held nearly the entire province of Asia, which he had seized in 88 B.C., with many of the Aegean islands. He had then ordered a massacre of all Italians residing in the province, with their families. Not less than eighty thousand victims are said to have fallen on a single day. Thus were the provincials warned that they had prematurely rejoiced at the expulsion of their Roman oppressors, and that their new ruler was an Oriental despot of the most cruel and unscrupulous type, all the more to be feared because of his uncanny knowledge of his subject peoples and even their languages.²

¹ So the name is spelled in our Greek and Latin texts. Coins and Greek inscriptions are more accurate in the spelling "Mithradates."

² He is said to have spoken twenty-two languages.

3. After the failure of his plans of Western conquest à la Xerxes, owing to the generalship of Sulla, Mithridates was pursued by a Roman army to his capital, the splendid Hellenistic city of Pergamon, which was captured by Fimbria, the king being forced to flee to Lesbos. Further threats from Sulla led him to accept severe terms of peace, and thus the First Mithridatic War came to an end (88–84 B.C.).

4. Sulla, returning to Italy to engage in civil war with the Marian party, had left L. Licinius Murena¹ to govern Asia. Eager to distinguish himself, Murena took advantage of Mithridates' failure to complete the promised evacuation of Cappadocia. Using this pretext for an invasion of that region, and later of Pontus, Murena brought on a Second Mithridatic War (83–81 B.C.) until Sulla's orders from Rome compelled him to make peace. But in spite of the fact that he had suffered a serious defeat at the hands of Mithridates on the river Halys, and had gained no victory, Murena was awarded a triumph.²

5. The third (and last) war with Mithridates (74–64 B.C.), for which the king had long been preparing, was declared by him soon after the Romans had completed the occupation of the neighboring kingdom of Bithynia, bequeathed to them by the late king, Nicomedes III (died 75 B.C.). Mithridates was supported by his allies, the pirates, and hoped much from long-distance negotiations with the Roman insurgents in Spain, — former followers of Marius, now led by Sertorius.

6. The Roman consuls for 74 B.C., L. Licinius Lucullus and M. Aurelius Cotta, both took the field against the invader, who occupied all Bithynia, shut up Cotta in Chalcedon (opposite Byzantium, the future Constantinople), and inflicted heavy losses upon his fleet and army. Lucullus, coming to the rescue of Cotta, forced Mithridates to raise the siege. Another and more memorable siege immediately followed, — that of Cyzicus, on the Propontis (Sea of Marmora), — and lasted through the winter. The large army under the king's command was surrounded by Lucullus, and compelled by lack of supplies and by disease to give up the attempt (73 B.C.). Mithridates, whose fleet commanded the sea, sailed away to Nicomedia and succeeded in saving a part of his force, though Lucullus had destroyed the main body of the Pontic army.

7. The king, however, sent a fleet out into the Ægean, to take the offensive. Meanwhile Lucullus had got together a fleet, and himself pursued the Pontic ships. Within sight of old Troy, and close to the island of Tenedos, he sank a squadron of thirteen warships. On a small island south of Lemnos he surprised thirty-two enemy warships drawn up on the shore, and destroyed them, with most of their crews.

8. Mithridates was forced back into Pontus by Cotta, who was now reënforced by land and naval forces. A storm wrecked most of the king's ships before he could reach his old capital, Sinope. Thence he withdrew farther to the southeast, in the spring of 72 B.C., before the advance of Lucullus, who with only three legions was facing a larger army, which the king had just contrived to raise. The scene is now Cabira, in the interior of Pontus. Each commander was trying to cut off the other's supplies, when a Roman cavalry escort, successfully defending its transport, brought on a more general engagement, resulting in a panic among the Pontic forces. While the Roman troops

¹ Father of the Murena whom Cicero defended (Introd. § 73).

² This inglorious second war is treated by Cicero as a mere postscript to the first.

looted the valuables of the camp, the king with a small escort of cavalry escaped. Making his way over the frontier into Armenia, he claimed the protection of its king, his son-in-law Tigranes.

9. Thus the first phase of this Third Mithridatic War, which had been marked chiefly by the operations about Cyzicus and the Propontis, by naval reverses for both sides, and by the final rout at Cabira, ended in 72 B.C. with the king a fugitive in Armenia. But his coast towns resisted stubbornly, and were taken only after long sieges.

10. Tigranes, whose realm included Cilicia and a large part of Syria and Mesopotamia, refused Lucullus' demand for the surrender of Mithridates and prepared for war. In 69 B.C., Lucullus, with a small and disaffected army of fifteen thousand men, crossed the Euphrates and advanced against Tigranocerta, the new capital of Tigranes. A brilliant victory against enormous odds enabled Lucullus to capture the city and spend the winter there, while Tigranes, encouraged by his undaunted father-in-law, was preparing another army. For 68 B.C. Lucullus planned an expedition into the wilds of eastern Armenia, and gained his last victory on the Arsantias, but was compelled by his mutinous soldiers, clamoring for a long-promised discharge, to turn southward into Mesopotamia, where he captured the city of Nisibis and wintered there.

11. With 67 B.C. Mithridates resumed the aggressive, taking possession of Pontus and defeating Roman troops at Zela. Tigranes too advanced from the east. Lucullus' troops, now more undisciplined than ever, forced their general to retreat. Manius Acilius Glabrio, named as Lucullus' successor, arrived upon the scene only to foment mutiny. He made no move to restore order, or even to take over such troops as still remained under the orders of Lucullus.

12. Thus at the date of the speech there were three high commanders in the East, as Pompey's extensive powers under the Gabinian Law of 67 B.C., for the war against the pirates, were to last three years. If Manilius' bill passed, Pompey would be sole commander for the war against Mithridates. He was, in fact, appointed, and by a victory in Lesser Armenia forced the king of Pontus to flee round the eastern end of the Black Sea.

13. The defeat and flight of Mithridates were followed by the complete submission of Tigranes. To Pompey there remained the great task of reorganizing under Roman rule those vast territories in the East, including Syria and Palestine. From a rebel son Mithridates finally won back his former domain in the Crimea, where three years later he was planning another attack upon the Romans (in fact, an overland expedition across the Balkan Peninsula and over the Alps), when a conspiracy of another son, Pharnaces, caused him to take his own life (63 B.C.), after a stormy reign of fifty-seven years.¹

14. The popular confidence in Pompey, as the man of all others to insure peace in the East, can be appreciated if one attentively follows his previous career as one reads §§ 28 ff. and the notes on those sections. Cicero fully shared that confidence; and while the praises of Pompey are overdone, the oration as a whole is a masterpiece, especially in its orderly arrangement, — that clear and effective marshaling of arguments which is more than half the battle in every public speech, and of which it would be difficult to cite a better example from any age or in any language.

¹ Including the regency.

OUTLINE OF THE ARGUMENT

EXORDIVM (§§ 1-3): Never before have I spoken from the Rostra, having confined myself to legal practice. (2) You did not need me here, and you approved my practice at the bar by electing me praetor. Hence you are entitled to my services here. (3) No one could fail in speaking on such a subject as Pompey, hard as it is to know where to stop.

NARRATIO (4-5): Asia is threatened by a war brought by Mithridates and Tigranes. The knights, daily informed by letters, have reported to me (5) the sufferings of Bithynia and Cappadocia, and why Pompey is wanted as commander.

CONFIRMATIO (6-50). PARTITIO (6): three main heads announced for the argument. **First, character of the war.** Four important issues are involved:

A. (7-11) *National prestige.* You must avenge the massacre of Italians. After all these years Mithridates is still a menace. (8) Our triumphs have been nominal only; but there are excuses.

(9) Mithridates allied himself with Sertorius in Spain, to increase our difficulties. (10) But Pompey disposed of Sertorius. In the East, Lucullus, at first successful, met with misfortune in the end. My respects to him later!

(11) Our ancestors often went to war for much less serious offenses than those of Mithridates.

B. (12-13) *Safety of the allies.* In this crisis Asia and Greece look to you for aid, but do not venture to ask for a particular commander. (13) They really want Pompey, who treats allies much more considerately than most governors do.

C. (14-16) *Important revenues.* Your ancestors fought wars for their allies; you must do the same, and defend Asia, a rich source of revenue, even from the fear of invasion. (15) For that fear alone is enough to reduce revenues. (16) What must now be the anxiety of taxpayers and tax-farmers, who must be fully protected?

D. (17-19) *Private investments involved.* Many Romans (publicans and others) have large investments there, and these knights must be upheld. (18) Other citizens have business interests there; with these, as with the publicans, the state will suffer. (19) Business reverses in Asia will bring hard times here as well, when once credit has been impaired. *Résumé.*

Second (20-26), seriousness of the war. You must not scout its importance. Recall the achievements of Lucullus in raising the siege of Cyzicus, (21) and in a naval battle; also in many engagements on land. Results. So much for eulogy of Lucullus.

(22) Why, then, is not the worst over? Mithridates escaped while his pursuers gathered up the plunder. (23) In pursuit of the king Lucullus invaded Armenia with success, until halted by the homesickness of his troops, (24) who had no desire to go farther. Mithridates had received reënforcements; (25) and now, returning to Pontus, attacked and defeated our army. (26) Lucullus, who might have saved the day, was recalled in favor of Glabrio. Thus the war became more serious.

Third (27-50), the choice of a commander. An easy matter. Who could it be but Pompey? (28) Four qualifications of a commander:

A. *Military science.* Pompey's training and experience in every kind of warfare.

B. (29-42) *Ability.* The usual qualities of a general are found to perfection in Pompey, (30) as all the countries in which he has commanded testify; (31) witness also

the waters and coasts which he has cleared of pirates, who had caused a general panic, (32) humbling our pride, taking away our control of the sea, shamefully treating our officials, (33) raiding even our Italian ports, sinking or capturing a consul's fleet. They were promptly driven from the sea. (34) Pompey, moving with unheard-of speed, quickly secured the grain-producing provinces (35) and many others. In forty-eight days he had conquered the land of the pirates, — all this by midsummer.

(36) Other good qualities found in the highest degree in Pompey. (37) Contrast the avarice of the other generals, (38) and the ravages due to their lack of self-control. (39) Pompey's soldiers cause no loss to provincials. (40) His quick results are due to this, that common temptations do not divert his energies. (41) Heaven-sent, as they believe, he restores their old respect for Roman rule. Even the humblest find him approachable. (42) Wisdom, impressiveness as a speaker, honor, kindness, all mark him as the man.

C. (43-46) *Prestige (renown)*. A matter of great consequence. His repute is 'unequaled. (44) All the world knows of his call to command against the pirates. At once the price of grain fell. (45) After our defeat in Pontus, Pompey's fame alone saved Asia. (46) His renown is proved by the readiness of the states to surrender, by the king's embassy to Pompey when in Spain. *Résumé*.

D. (47-48) *Good fortune*. An important reason for the choice of other generals. The gods had granted them success, as thus far to Pompey, (48) on whom they have lavished more than any man could aspire to. May that continue!

Recapitulation (*enumeratio*) (49-50) of the whole *confirmatio*. There is the further advantage that he is on the ground already. Why delay?

REFVTATIO (51-68): Two influential statesmen, Catulus and Hortensius, object to the proposal, while admitting the truth of my facts. (52) Hortensius' protest against giving all power to one man is out of date. He opposed the Gabinian Law in the same way. (53) What if his opposition had prevented Pompey from wiping out the disgrace inflicted upon us by the pirates?

(54) Whereas small states had formerly been able to protect their coasts, we were for some years deprived of our prestige; (55) we were no longer a match for the pirates. Yet here were these *rostra*, the spoils of former sea fights! (56) The people thought Hortensius sincere, but in spite of him appointed the single commander who has restored our self-respect. (57) We should grant Pompey's request that Gabinius be his *legatus*; (58) for we have precedents, and, if necessary, I shall myself bring the matter before the senate, no matter who opposes.

(59) As for Catulus' opposition, you have shown your confidence in him; but I disagree with him. (60) He objects to an innovation; but, not to mention historic departures from custom, how many such have we seen in Pompey's case, with Catulus' approval!

(61-62) Enumeration of the customs broken down in Pompey's extraordinary career; (63) and all with the approbation of Catulus and other leading men.

You then respected their opinion of Pompey; now they should acquiesce in your judgment. (64) You showed the greater foresight then; they should now follow you. Much more is needed than a mere general, — high character is required. (65-66) We have had a bad record abroad. Self-control under varied temptations is as much demanded as military ability. (67) Previous scandals explain why Pompey is wanted, (68) as the one man whose army is welcomed.

If influential supporters of the bill are sought, there are Servilius and others, whose weight offsets that of the opposition.

PERORATIO (69-71): You have my approval, Manilius, and popular support; persevere in the face of threats. I pledge my help, (70) not because it is asked of me, nor for any selfish motives, (71) but as a patriot, indifferent to the enemies I may make or any injury to my own interests.

67 1 frequens conspectus vester: analyze the phrase, in which *conspectus*, *sight*, has a pass. sense. Thus *your being seen* = *the sight of you*, and *frequens* adds the thought *in large numbers*. It is a crowded *contio*.

67 2 multo iucundissimus: with *est visus*, — *far the most delightful (of all sights)*. — **hic autem locus:** continue the *quamquam*: *and furthermore while*. The Rostra (*hic locus*) was open only to a magistrate if the assembly was to be urged to adopt some measure (Introd. §§ 38 and 48; p. lxi). Magistrates alone were said *agere (cum populo)*, *to propose or discuss a measure*. The official presiding — in this case the tribune Manilius — might permit even a private citizen to *speak (dicere)*.

Thus Cicero, though himself a praetor, addresses the assembly by permission.

67 3 ad dicendum ornatissimus: *most honorable for any speaker*.

67 4 hoc aditu: the meaning of this abl. becomes clear when we reach *prohibuerunt*, l. 6 (Gram. § 134). Trans. *laudis to praise* (cp. note on 55 12).

67 5 optimo . . . patuit: *has been free and open to every man of merit*. *Optimus quisque* can mean either *every good man* or *all the best men* or *every nobleman*. *Maxime* gives an effect like 'wide open.'

67 6 rationes: *plan, mode*. — **ab ineunte aetate:** *in early life*, i.e. his entrance upon the active life of a citizen, when he put on the *toga virilis* (Introd. § 54). He is now making his first public speech before such an assemblage. Cicero's early choice of a legal career, the whole tenor of his life, precluded the thought of going into politics, for a time at least. — **prohibuerunt:** to obtain a right emphasis, use this formula: *it is not my . . . but my . . . that has kept me*.

67 7 cum: select the meaning — *when, since, although* — which is appropriate to the idea of the main clause (*omne . . . putavi*). — **per aetatem:** *because of my youth*. This decision he had reached years before, but now he is forty.

67 8 attingere: *reach, rise to*, of things to which one aspires, — here the prestige associated with the Rostra. — **statuerem:** = *iudicarem*.

67 9 perfectum . . . industria: *the finished work of genius, the carefully wrought product of industry*. Cicero recognizes the fact that while labor may achieve excellence, only those with a natural gift may hope for perfection. — **huc . . . adferri:** observe the flattery, none too subtle, with which Cicero tells



ROSTRA

his motley audience that only the best oratory should *be brought here* (i. e. to the Rostra). Cp. *Introd.* § 48.

67 10 temporibus: = *critical moments*, i. e. *legal difficulties*. The **tempus** before **amicorum** has its ordinary meaning. The thought is: 'While I have not hitherto ventured to appear in this place, I have, in a humbler sphere, been doing my duty.' Cicero's modesty should not be taken too seriously.

67 11 vacuus . . . defenderent: *has been without defenders of your cause*. For the mood of **defenderent**, cp. *Gram.* § 174. In **causam** we are reminded that we are in the realm of party politics: the people desire Pompey's appointment, while the *optimates*, the conservative nobility, oppose it. For the moment, therefore, to urge that Pompey be given command is to support the ambitions of the popular party.

67 13 versatus: *employed, engaged*. Fees were forbidden by law. **Periculis** repeats **temporibus**, referring to *trials* or *lawsuits*.

67 14 consecutus: he has won popular approval, as expressed in his election to the praetorship. Observe the parallel statements, **neque . . . defenderent** and **et . . . consecutus**, one neg., one affirmative, where we prefer a *while*-clause for the first, translating **et** *at the same time*.

67 15 primus . . . renuntiatus sum: *I was the first to be declared elected*. **Praetor** is pred. For the workings of the *comitia centuriata* cp. *Introd.* § 37. Unfavorable omens were enough to cause a postponement. In the present case only the third election was valid, but each time Cicero's election was the first to be announced (by the consul).

67 17 praescriberetis: since three different occasions are referred to, the clause **cum . . . renuntiatus sum** is seen to have been not temporal but explanatory, — *in that*, etc. (*Gram.* § 222). His election showed what type of man was wanted. — **cum . . . in me . . . sit:** *since I have*, — a common way to express the possession of a quality.

67 18 quantum . . . voluistis: *as you intended me to have when you elected me to office* (lit. *by conferring offices*). **Honoribus** includes with his present office those which he had held previously (*Introd.* §§ 57 f., 61). Cp. *Gram.* § 86. The underlying thought is that Cicero's *prestige* (**auctoritas**) is of the kind that comes to one through repeated appointment to positions of importance; for this, he reminds his hearers, they, and not he, are responsible.

67 19 ad . . . tantum: *as much capacity for expounding a measure*; cp. line 3.

67 20 ex . . . exercitatio: *the almost daily training in public speaking involved in practice at the bar*. **Forensis usus** acquires this meaning because the courts sat in the basilicas around the Forum (*Introd.* § 49 and p. lxi).

68 2 utar: the usual abl. with **utor** is omitted, being implied in **si quid**, etc., *whatever*, etc.

68 3 si quid . . . consequi possum: *whatever success I can win*. **In dicendo** refers to the same thing as **ad agendum**, 67 19, but is the more general term.

68 4 **suo iudicio**: has the same meaning as **iudicio** in 67 14, — the opinion expressed in the votes of the people. Trans. *decision*. In **ei quoque rei**, i. e. the gift of speech, he means to put oratory in the same class with military success and other public distinctions. It is now clear that the **cum**-clause, 67 17 ff., is causal.

68 5 **illud . . . mihi laetandum iure esse . . . quod**: *that I have good reason to rejoice over the fact that* (lit.?).

68 6 **hac insolita mihi . . . ratione**: *the novel experience* (lit. *this business unusual for me*).

68 7 **causa talis . . . in qua**: *such a subject that in it* (cp. Gram. § 175).

68 9 **virtute**: *ability, capacity*. — **orationis**: here equiv. to *subject, theme*, not *speech or words* (as in line 7). The theme is Pompey's fitness to command against Mithridates.

68 10 **non . . . modus**: *not so much material as brevity*.

68 12 **inde . . . unde**: *may begin at the point from which*.

68 13 **ducitur**: *is derived*; evidently the **ut**-clause is likely to give the purpose of the speaker in making a following statement (Gram. § 190).

68 14 **sociis**: as **vectigalibus** is paired with **sociis**, it must be the m. subst., *tributary, taxpayer* (reg. an adj.).

68 16 **quorum alter relictus . . . arbitratur**: *who think, the one of them because he has been allowed to escape* (cp. Gram. § 77). Mithridates, pursued by Lucullus after the battle of Cabira, in Pontus, 72 B.C., had escaped into Armenia (Introductory Note, 8).

68 17 **laccessitus**: Tigranes suffered two serious defeats at the hands of Lucullus, who had declared war against him for harboring Mithridates and had invaded Armenia, 69–68 B.C. (Introductory Note, 10).

68 18 **arbitratur**: sing. verb with **alter . . . alter** is reg. **Asiam**, as usual, means the Roman province only, not Asia Minor, the western part of which was included in the province (capital, Ephesus), along with some Aegean islands. Mithridates had seized the province once before, 88 B.C., and held it for three years (Introductory Note, 2 f.).

68 21 **magnae res . . . occupatae**: *much capital (res) invested by the knights who took contracts for the farming of the revenues (vectigalia exercere) is at stake (aguntur)*. They bound themselves to pay a fixed sum into the treasury. Their companies furnished the collectors, clerks, etc., and counted upon making substantial profits for themselves.

68 22 **qui**: *and they*. — **pro necessitudine**: *in view of the connection*. Cicero was himself a knight until raised to the senate by election to the quaestorship (Intro. § 57). **Qui** is a connecting rel.

68 23 **causam rei publicae**: *the political situation*.



TIGRANES

68 24 Bithyniae, etc.: implied indir. disc. after *litterae* (or in appos. with *causam*). Trans. *and these letters say that numerous villages*, etc. For *est* cp. Gram. § 291. Bithynia had been bequeathed to the Romans by its last king, Nicomedes III, in 75 B.C. (Introductory Note, 5). It lay northeast of Asia (the province), on the Black Sea and the Sea of Marmora.

68 26 vectigalibus: neuter; lit. *revenues*, hence *tributary countries* (cp. Introd. § 22, n, 9). Ariobarzanes, king of Cappadocia, had been driven out of his kingdom twice by Mithridates. This adjoined Cilicia, a Roman province (see map).

68 28 discedere: Lucullus' brilliant career as a commander had proved a failure in the end (cp. Introductory Note, 10 f.). — **huic . . . successerit**: *his successor* (Gram. § 171). This successor was the consul Manius Acilius Glabrio, who during 67–66 B.C. did nothing (Introductory Note, 11).

69 1 unum: *one man*; but *eundem hunc unum*, in line 2, is equiv. to *and also that he alone*.

69 3 praeterea: insert *and* (asyndeton).

69 4 causa: *situation*. The statement of the case (*narratio*) had been made in a single paragraph (cp. Outline, p. 365).

69 5 considerate: the argument (*confirmatio*) will follow. — **genere . . . dicendum**: these will be the three main heads in the argument for Pompey's appointment.

69 7 genus est . . . quod: *the nature . . . is such that it* (descr. clause, Gram. § 174).

69 9 in quo: *in this war*. — **agitur**: *there is at stake* (as in 68 21).

69 11 cum . . . militari: trans. after *tradita est*, — *a glory great indeed* (*cum*) *in all its aspects, but (tum) greatest of all*, etc.

69 15 certissima . . . vectigalia: throughout the speech Cicero harps on the theme that Asia is a great source of public revenue. It was a very fertile and prosperous province.

69 16 quibus amissis: *and if these are lost* (Gram. § 153).

69 17 pacis ornamenta: as this is a stock phrase, our equiv. would be *blessings (comforts) of peace*; but it really includes all the means upon which the *pax Romana* depends for its upkeep. Contrast *subsidia belli, sineus of war*.

69 19 consulendum: for a *vobis* instead of the dat. of agent cp. Gram. § 114, a.

69 21 avidi: stronger than *appetentes*. **Atque** = *and even, or rather*. For *gloriae* cp. Gram. § 118. — **macula**: this *stain* was the great massacre of Italians in Asia by Mithridates' orders in 88 B.C. Cicero treats the Second Mithridatic War as a mere appendix to the First (*superiore*).

69 22 penitus . . . inveteravit: Cicero speaks as he might about a spot on a garment — it has *already sunk in deep and remained too long*. **Insedit** is from *insido*.

69 23 **quod . . . regnat**: this *quod*-clause is appos. to *illa macula* — *the fact that*, etc.

69 25 **necandos . . . curavit**: Gram. § 80. It is said that 80,000 Italians were killed in this massacre.

69 28 **regnat**, etc.: *has now reigned twenty-two years* (Gram. § 62). He had also reigned about twenty-five years *before* 88 B.C. In counting a series the Romans included the initial number; so that if we had their reckoning, Thursday would be called the *third* day after Tuesday, etc. Note the effect of repeated **regnat**.

70 1 **latebris**: abl. of means, as often with such verbs as **occulto**, **contineo**, etc.

70 2 **regno**: i. e. Pontus. — **in vestris . . . versari**: *busy himself among*, etc. Mithridates wished a "place in the sun," — *the sunlight of Asia*, contrasted with less inviting regions, the forests of Pontus. — **vectigalibus**: as in 68 26.

70 5 **reportarent**: **insignia** includes all outward signs of victory, esp. the triumph. — **triumphavit . . . de**: *celebrated a triumph over*.

70 7 **ita . . . ut**: the lit. *they so triumphed that* is clearer if we trans. *their triumph had only this result, that* (Gram. § 198). — **pulsus . . . regnaret**: Gram. § 77.

70 8 **regnaret**: *remained king, kept his throne*.

70 9 **quod reliquerunt**: *for having left (something) undone*, as **quod egerunt** = *for having accomplished (something)*. The verbs are used absolutely, without obj.s.; lit. *because (or to what extent) they have done*, etc.

70 11 **revocavit**: the state is personif., as recalling Sulla after Mithridates made peace, 83 B.C. But his return was the cause of another civil war, that with the party formerly led by Marius. For Murena cp. Introductory Note, 4.

70 12 **reliquum tempus**: covers the interval between the second and third wars (81-74 B.C.).

70 14 **qui postea, cum**: *for afterwards, when he*. As usual, in translating the connecting rel., begin with *and, but, for, now*, according to the connection of the thought of the rel. clause with that of its predecessor.

70 16 **potuisset**: the mood is due to attraction (Gram. § 182 f.). — **Bosporanis**: the Bosporani occupied the modern Crimea and the shores of the Cimmerian Bosphorus (the entrance to the Sea of Azov).

70 18 **duces**: i. e. the Roman officers, Sertorius and his partisans, a remnant of the Marian party. Sertorius had made himself an independent ruler of Spain, and defeated Roman armies sent against him. At that time Pompey was commanding the government forces against Sertorius, who still held out, retaining some part of his power until two years later (72 B.C.), when he was assassinated.

70 19 **disiunctissimis . . . diversis**: *far away and in quite opposite directions*. Pontus and Spain are viewed from the standpoint of Rome (midway between those distant countries).

70 20 binis: the appropriate num. with a plur. word like *copiae* or *castra* when it denotes a group which is thought of as one thing (thus *copiae*, plur., is equiv. to *exercitus*, sing.).

70 21 gereretur: the nature of the *cum*-clause remains for a moment uncertain; but as contained within a purpose clause it will evidently reflect the thought of Mithridates. — **districti:** like a man beating off assailants on both sides.

70 22 dimicaretis: *cum* proves to have meant *while, when*, anticipating a situation. *Imperio* = *supremacy*. — **alterius . . . periculum:** *partis* = *quarter, region*, and we should say *in* rather than *of*.

70 23 Sertorianae atque Hispaniensis: lit. *Sertorian, that is to say (atque) Spanish*. Trans. *where Sertorius was fighting in Spain*.

70 25 depulsum est: Pompey, after four campaigns, was gradually gaining the upper hand when Sertorius was assassinated.

70 26 Lucullo: for his operations in the East cp. Introductory Note, 6 ff. — **initia . . . praeclara:** *his great and noteworthy successes at the beginning* (lit.?).

70 28 haec . . . acciderunt: *while these most recent occurrences (or these recent reverses, though the Lat. only hints at their character)*.

71 1 tribuenda . . . videantur: *evidently should be ascribed*. Lat. likes the pers. constr. with *videor* (cp. Gram. § 299). *Fortuna* is a synonym for *felicitas*, while *culpa* (with reversed order) is the opp. of *virtus* (*merit, ability* as a general).

71 2 alio loco: i. e. *farther on* (75 18 ff.). *Locus* often is equiv. to *passage, head, also topic*.

71 3 esse videatur: the pres. subjv. here refers to the fut. (Gram. § 70). Note the double constr. of *ei* (with *adfecta* as well as *detracta*; Gram. §§ 110, 112).

71 5 exorsus: a word found only here, — the *first point (head)* of the actual argument. *Is* refers to the pair of synonyms, as a single idea; but it is attracted, as usual, to the pred. (Gram. § 12). — **videte . . . putetis:** *consider what attitude, in your opinion, you should take* (more lit. 'see what spirit you think you should adopt').

71 8 iniuriosius: *a bit unjustly*. The maltreatment to which this refers consisted esp. in imprisoning shipmasters or merchants and seizing their property. The point of the comparison is that the good old jingo spirit of the past was quick to punish the least affront to a Roman citizen.

71 10 debetis: the abl. abs. gives the cause, while *quo animo* is descr. and pred. For the massacre cp. 69 24 ff.

71 11 superbius: Roman envoys were rudely treated by a mob at Corinth. The compar. is used as in line 8.

71 12 extinctum esse: where one wants a thing done at once, *volo* is often used with perf. pass. inf. *Exstinctum* follows the gender of appos. *lumen*, not that of *Corinthum* (f.). It was in 146 B.C. that Corinth was destroyed by Mummius, under orders from the senate; hence *patres* is not lit., and really represents grandfathers.

71 15 necavit: Manius Aquilius was made a prisoner, treated with every indignity by Mithridates, and put to death. But he was not strictly an envoy. **Excruciatum** becomes a preliminary verb in Eng.: *tortured him . . . and*, etc. (Gram. § 73), or trans. *tortured to death*. — **imminutam:** *encroachment upon* (cp. Gram. § 75).

71 16 ereptam vitam: *the taking of their lives*. — **neglegetis:** the sentence framework is the same as in the two preceding sentences (cp. note on 71 10).

71 17 persecuti sunt: *avenged*.

71 18 relinquetis: *fail to punish* (or *to avenge*). Once more the same use of perf. ptcps. — **videte ne . . . posse:** the lit. trans. is too clumsy, — *take care lest just as* (or *while*) *for them it was most glorious*, etc., *so* (or *yet*) *for you it be most disgraceful*, etc. It is better to say, *it was their proud achievement to leave*, etc.; *but beware that it be not your deep disgrace that you cannot*, etc.

71 22 quid: merely gives notice of a quest. to follow (cp. 6 9).

71 23 debetis: the obj. of **ferre** is the **quod**-clause (cp. note on 10 6).

71 25 amicus: the fact that Ariobarzanes, king of Cappadocia, bore this formal title did not insure him adequate protection from Rome against Mithridates. — **duo reges:** Mithridates and Tigranes, king of Armenia, were combining to threaten the Roman province of Asia.

72 1 cuncta Asia: cp. with 69 24, **tota in Asia** (more usual) (Gram. § 154).

72 3 certum: *a particular* (indicated by name).

72 4 alium: Glabrio was not the man of their choice (Introductory Note, 11). — **neque . . . arbitrantur:** they feared the anger of Glabrio, perhaps also the jealousy of Lucullus, up to the moment of his departure.

72 8 in . . . omnia: *who possesses all the highest qualifications*. Cp. note on 67 17.

72 9 propter esse: *is near*; Pompey was then in Cilicia.

72 10 aegrius, etc.: *for which reason they also feel his absence more keenly*. With **caerent** supply **eo**, *him* (Gram. § 134). For **quo** (cause) cp. Gram. § 144.

72 11 nomine: *renown*. Pompey's record is summarized at 79 3 ff.

72 14 retardatos: the **tametsi**-clause is part of the indir. disc. Pompey had come to finish the war with the pirates, but not without effect upon Mithridates and Tigranes (cp. **hostium**).

72 15 hi . . . commendetis: trans. in this order: (1) **quoniam . . . licet**; (2) **hi vos tacite rogant**; (3) **ut se quoque dignos existimetis**; (4) **sicut** (*just as you do*) . . . **socios**; (5) **quorum . . . commendetis** (*to have you intrust*, etc. Gram. § 176). **Tali** = *so able* (stronger than a mere *such*).

72 20 atque . . . magis: *and all the more*. For **hoc** cp. **quo**, l. 10. The force of **rogant** is still felt.

72 21 ceteros . . . eius modi homines . . . mittimus: (lit. 'we send the other



MITHRIDATES

men such') *the other men whom we send are such.* — **cum imperio:** *vested with supreme authority* (Gram. § 143). He is referring to the common type of Roman provincial governor, with whom Pompey stands in brilliant contrast.

72 22 defendant: sc. **eam** (for **provinciam**). The mood is due to attraction.

72 23 ipsorum: *of these very men* (whose coming ought to be a benefit).

72 24 hunc: *but as for Pompey.* Asyndeton, but trans. as if a new sentence began with **hunc** (which is contrasted with **ceteros** in line 21). — **audiebant:** *used to hear about him* (or we may supply **esse** and make **hunc** the subj.).

72 25 tanta temperantia: *(a man) of such self-control* (or, if **esse** be supplied, *that he has such*, etc.).

73 1 ipsi . . . lacessiti: concessive; *though they themselves were provoked* (cp. 70 7). — **socios . . . gesserunt:** the three Punic wars were waged because Carthage interfered with Roman allies, in Sicily and Africa, and a Spanish state whose independence Rome had guaranteed. In the wars with Philip V, of Macedonia, and Antiochus III, of Syria, Rome was protecting Egypt and certain Greek states.

73 3 convenit: almost equiv. to **oportet**.

73 6 agatur: impers. with **de**, — *it is a question of*; contrast 69 9, 13, etc.

73 7 tanta . . . possimus: if something is *of such a size* (**tantus**) that one can *not* be satisfied with it, obviously **tantus** may and should be translated *so small*. For **eis** cp. Gram. § 147, b. Trans. **vix . . . possimus** *we can hardly find them sufficient*.

73 11 antecellat: in this summary of resources Cicero dwells upon (1) agriculture, which yielded tithes (*decumae*); (2) pasturage, since a tax (*scriptura*) was levied on all who registered (*scribere*) their flocks or herds, in order to pasture them on public lands; (3) exports, on which customs duties (*portoria*) were collected. For **exportentur** (attraction) cp. Gram. § 182.

73 12 belli . . . dignitatem: for the abstract phrases we may say *that which is of advantage in war and brings honor in peace*; cp. note on 69 17. He means the vast resources of the province.

73 15 venit: for the tense cp. Gram. § 224.

73 18 facta est: same tense rule as for **venit**, l. 15.

73 19 conquiescit: *is at a standstill*. The three sources of revenue are again enumerated in a different order (cp. lines 9–11).

73 21 potest: the order of the résumé is now reversed: export and import duties, tithes, pasture tax.

73 25 exigunt: *collect* (directly), while **exercent, farm**, refers to those persons or companies who took the contracts. — **propter:** the adv. again, as in 72 9.

73 28 in salinis habent: *keep in the evaporating plants*. Additional sources of revenue were salt works, mines, etc. Trained slaves (collectively **familiae**) were intrusted with the details.

73 29 magno . . . habere: *it is a great risk for them to be keeping.* It was necessary to keep these slaves at customhouses, coast-guard posts, etc., to prevent smuggling and other frauds.

74 2 conservaveritis: fut. perf. (cp. note on 57 10). Antithesis of **frui** and **fructui** (Gram. §§ 147, a, 115).

74 3 liberatos: pred.; with **conservaveritis** = *keep them safe and set them free* (Gram. § 73).

74 5 extremum: *as my last point.* — **proposueram:** here **ne . . . quidem** has the meaning *also . . . not, or not . . . either.*

74 6 dicturus: he is referring to 69 17 ff., the last point in his outline of headings for this part of the speech. — **quod . . . pertinet:** this second **quod**-clause is not rel. (as was the first) nor causal, but in appos. with **illud**, — *the fact that it* (the war), etc.

74 7 pro . . . sapientia: lit. *in proportion to your wisdom*, i.e. *with your usual wisdom*; a stereotyped compliment.

74 8 diligenter: trans. as though an adj. with **rationem**, and observe that **rationem habere** with gen. has the same meaning as **consulere** with dat. (69 19), — *have regard for, show consideration for.*

74 9 honestissimi atque ornatissimi: *respected and honorable.* The **equites** as a class were men of wealth; and great business enterprises, like this one of farming the revenues, would be handled by them, often through the formation of a company. Senators, though as a class wealthier than the **equites**, were forbidden to engage in such enterprises, on the principle that it was not well for the makers of laws to be able to profit by them financially. **Et** suggests that another class of persons will follow with **et** or **nec**.

74 10 contulerunt: *have transferred.* **Suas rationes et copias** = *large investments of their own* (more lit. *business interests and resources*). Besides farming the revenues, they have made other commercial or industrial investments in Asia. — **ipsorum per se:** *entirely on their own account*, i.e. apart from any question of state revenue.

74 11 curae: Gram. § 115. — **si . . . duximus:** note that this is virtually causal (Gram. § 264).

74 13 qui exercet illa: he means, of course, the knights.

74 14 deinde: instead of an expected **et**, to balance that in line 8, we have **deinde** (*in the second place*).

74 15 partim . . . partim: idiomatically used instead of **alii . . . alii**, in distrib. appos. with **homines** (cp. 47 6). — **negotiantur:** as merchants, bankers, etc. in the province. But no senator could be personally thus engaged. Cp. next note.

74 17 habent: for perf. ptcp. with **habeo** cp. Gram. § 74. A senator might invest his *capital* (**pecunias**) in companies managed by knights. — **est . . . humanitatis vestrae . . . sapientiae:** *your kindness requires you to . . . your good*

sense, to etc. (lit. *it is of your kindness*, etc.; cp. Gram. § 119). The subj. of *est* is *prohibere* and then *videre*.

74 18 *eorum civium*: not partitive (cp. Gram. § 126).

74 20 *a re publica seiunctam*: *without effect upon the country as a whole*. — *illud*: *this* (with *vos . . . recipere* in appos.). — *primum*: *in the first place*, correlated with *deinde* in line 24.

74 21 *parvi refert*: *is of small consequence* (Gram. § 124). — *publicanis omissis*: *if we should neglect the tax-farmers* (Gram. § 153).

74 22 *neque . . . timorem*: i. e. the original contractors would have lost their capital, while others would regard it as an unsafe investment because the government had not protected the *publicani*. To us it seems strange for a government to accept a lump sum in return for the privileges of collecting the taxes of a district; but the Romans were accustomed to it, and in discussing the situation Cicero does not even suggest that there might be another way of meeting the difficulty.

74 25 *docuit*: agrees with the nearer subj. *Quod* is now seen to be a rel. pron., *what*. For the First Mithridatic War cp. Introductory Note, 2-3.

74 26 *memoria*: abl. of means.

74 27 *amiserunt*: the time is defined (Gram. § 220).

74 28 *concidisse*: *collapsed*. *Credit (fides)* naturally suffered when many who had lost heavily in Asia could not pay their creditors at Rome.

74 29 *amittere*: keep the order, — *impossible that in one state many*, etc. — *ut non . . . trahant*: may be translated *without dragging (involving)*, etc. (Gram. § 196).

75 1 *a quo*, etc.: begin a new sentence, — *then keep the country from this*, etc.

75 2 *mihi credite id*: *believe me when I tell you something* (lit. *believe this to me*).

75 4 *versatur*: *prevails, obtains* (intrans.); sing., since *fides* is really included in the more comprehensive *ratio pecuniarum*, *financial situation*. *Haec* = *our*, or *here among us*. *Argentarii* (bankers) had their places of business in and around the Forum (Introd. § 48), esp. in the *Tabernae* (p. lxi). — *implicata . . . cohaeret*: *is intimately connected* (lit.?). — *illis . . . Asiaticis*: *the financial situation of Asia Minor*.

75 5 *illa*: *that* (to harmonize with the trans. of *pecuniis*). — *haec*: *our own*. — *ut . . . concidant*: treat like *ut non trahant* in 74 29.

75 6 *eodem labefacta motu*: because both stand on the same foundation. When that is shaken, both fall. So a war scare in Europe will affect the price of stocks in New York. — *videte num*: *consider whether*.

75 7 *incumbere*: as in 52 29.

75 9 *coniunctae . . . publica*: *which are bound up with the welfare of the state*.

75 10 *defendantur*: descr. clause.

75 11 *genere belli*: not 'the kind of war,' but *the character of the war*, as in 69 5. — *dixi*: *I have finished speaking*.

75 12 belli genus: here equiv. to *bellum huius generis*.

75 15 in . . . est: *in this connection I must be exceedingly careful.*

75 16 vobis: trans. after *videantur*, l. 17, — not with *contemnenda*, *matters of indifference (things to be disregarded)*.

75 21 debeatur: lest Lucullus' admirers might think him slighted, when Pompey is represented as the one able general available in this crisis, Cicero will here give due credit to the ex-commander.

75 22 Mithridati: dat. of agent with *ornatas*. — *omnibus . . . instructas:* *fully equipped and arrayed.*

75 23 fuisse: while it is true that Cicero sometimes uses forms like *amatus fueram* for *amatus eram*, *fuisse* may be used here to mark a time earlier than that of *esse* in line 24. The army had been mobilized, and now the city was being besieged.

75 24 Cyzicenorum: trans. where it stands, — *that of the Cyzicenes*. Cyzicus was an important city on an island (later a peninsula) near the south shore of the Propontis (Sea of Marmora). The siege lasted through a winter, 74-73 B.C. (Introductory Note, 6).

75 25 ipso: *in person.*

75 27 liberavit: Mithridates was forced by Lucullus to raise the siege, and escaped pursuit only with heavy losses (cp. 109 1 ff.).

75 28 ducibus Sertorianis: abl. abs., *with Sertorius' men as officers.*

75 29 studio atque odio: *keen hatred* (lit.?). — *raperetur:* *was being rushed.* Kipling makes his galley slave say, "we *snatched* her through the water."

75 30 depressam: Sertorius had sent from Spain at least one high officer to share the command of this fleet, which was to have attacked Italy and encouraged the remnants of the Marian party to renew the civil wars. It was defeated by Lucullus near Tenedos (opposite Troy) and again near Lemnos (Introductory Note, 7; cp. 109 4 ff.).

76 5 referta: much stronger than its mate, *ornata*; hence *ac* is *or I should say*, as *atque* in 69 20. Trans. *cities in which*, etc. Sinope was the real capital of Mithridates. Cp. Introductory Note, 8. — *permultas:* *very many in number.*

76 6 uno . . . adventuque: *simply by going to them and arriving in their neighborhood.* *Uno* stands in contrast with *permultas*. Amisus, on the borders of Pontus, was captured after a long siege; inland towns, more quickly (Introductory Note, 9).

76 8 contulisse: Mithridates remained a fugitive in Cappadocia, under the reluctant protection of his son-in-law, Tigranes. Later he sought aid from the king of Parthia. — *salvis . . . gesta:* Lucullus' success at this time was complete. Pontus became a Roman province. As the campaign was self-supporting, it made no demands on the allies or on the regular revenues (*vectigalia*). *Salvis*, etc. means *without loss to the allies*, etc. (cp. 47 27).

: **76 10 ita**: used here for **talía** (as pred. to **haec**).

76 11 nullo: cp. note on 19 13. — **istorum**: of those persons. In its forensic use **iste** can suggest anything from strong opposition to scorn and detestation. As the pronoun here refers to the senatorial party, we need not trans. it by the scathing terms appropriate to a Catiline or a Verres. The opposing party would use any slight to Lucullus as an argument against this bill and *its object* (i. e. **causae**).

76 14 bellum: **magnum bellum** is subj.; **reliquum** is pred.

76 17 dicitur: Cicero assumes that his hearers know the story of Medea (note **illa** = *the famous*). Her country, Colchis, at the east end of the Black Sea, was a part of Pontus.

76 18 in eis . . . persequeretur: freely, in the path of her father's pursuit

76 19 dissipavisse: when Jason eloped with Medea, taking the Golden Fleece and her young brother, they were about to be overtaken by her angry father, Æëtes. Accordingly they killed the boy, Absyrtus, and scattered his dismembered body. **Se** is indir. reflex., *her*. — **eorum . . . dispersa**: lit. *the scattered gathering of them* = *stopping to gather them, now here, now there*.

76 20 patrius: *her father's* (not 'fatherly'). Lat. likes to use adjs. where to us the gen. would seem more natural.

76 23 superiore: refers again to the first war, as in 69 22 (reckoning two wars where we should count three). — **Asia**: not here limited to the province. — **direptas . . . congesserat**: trans. as though **diripuerat et congesserat** (Gram. § 73). To keep the order of **fugiens maximam vim . . . omnem reliquit**, and to preserve the emphasis on **omnem**, we may say *fleeing with a great quantity*, etc., . . . *he left it all*, etc.

76 25 conligunt: Gram. § 239. The Romans too were engaged in a **conlectio dispersa**.

76 27 tardavit: **illum** is Æëtes, contrasted with **hos** (*our men*).

76 28 diffidentem . . . recreavit: *encouraged, uplifted, and restored the despairing, downcast, and ruined king*. For **rebus** cp. Gram. § 107, b. Nothing is said of the months which passed before he was given shelter.

77 1 venit: when Tigranes refused to surrender Mithridates to the Romans, Lucullus began a brilliant campaign against Armenia (Introductory Note, 10).

77 4 temptandas: *should be provoked or challenged* (by stern treatment, not by war). **Neque . . . neque** does not cancel the neg. **numquam**, — *either . . . or even* (Gram. § 40).

77 6 opinio: the meaning of this whole phrase is fixed by what follows. **Opinio** is often merely *fancy, delusion, or impression*.

77 7 fani: the temple of Bellona, in Comana, Cappadocia.

77 10 adductum: belief that the Romans were bent upon looting the treasures of a well-known temple made resistance seem like a holy war. Besides the

fear of conquest, then, they had this motive in addition (*etiam alia*, l. 5). The meaning of *gravis atque vehemens* is now clear: *serious and fanatical (excited)*.

77 11 *magnae*: omit *atque* in trans. (Gram. § 44, c).

77 14 *ceperat*: the city was Tigranes' capital, Tigranocerta, in northern Mesopotamia. Cp. Introductory Note, 10.

77 15 *secundis*, etc.: *had met with success in battles*.

77 16 *commovebatur*: there was, in fact, a serious mutiny, as a result of which the rest of Lucullus' career in the East was a painful anticlimax. — *suorum*: *for their families*.

77 17 *non dicam*: Cicero does not wish to tell the unvarnished tale of Lucullus' failure in the end. — *hic*: *at (on) this point*.

77 20 *quaeretur*: the *ut*-clause (result) as a subst. stands in appos. with *illud* (Gram. § 199). *Extremum* is pred., *the outcome, the upshot*. Cicero does his best to soften the facts of the mutiny.

77 22 *iam confirmarat*: i. e. *interim confirmaverat*. It is a year later.

77 23 *concesserant*: they had retired before the advance of Lucullus and joined the king in his exile.

77 25 *multorum regum*: *furnished by, etc.*

77 26 *iam . . . ut*: *now we know that this is almost sure to happen, — that, etc.* (lit.?). — *regum . . . misericordiam*: *kings in distress* (lit. *the reverses of kings*) *find it easy to secure the aid and sympathy of many people*.

77 29 *esse videatur*: the result clause states one consequence of being a king, or of living in a kingdom — that the mere title of a king is revered.

77 30 *victus*: equiv. to a temporal clause or *after his defeat*.

77 31 *incolumis*: i. e. *before that defeat*. — *optare* = *sperare*. *Even* may be added, since the position of the inf. is emphatic. *Quantum* = *what* (omitting *tantum*); lit. *how much . . . (he) never, i. e. more than (he) ever*.

77 32 *eo contentus*: Gram. § 147 b.

78 1 *ut . . . attingeret*: this subst. *ut*-clause explains *eo . . . quod*. For the reg. tense with *postea quam* cp. Gram. § 215. Condense the trans. of *non fuit . . . attingeret* into *he was not satisfied with the unexpected good fortune of ever reaching that land after, etc.*

78 3 *victorem*: here treated as an adj. with *exercitum*.

78 4 *scribunt*: historical poems (national epics) had been written by Nævius and Ennius (died 169 B.C.) in the earliest period of Roman literature, and the latter's epic (*Annales*) was known to every schoolboy.

78 7 *adferret*: the *imperator* was Lucullus, whose *legatus*, Triarius, suffered an overwhelming defeat, 67 B.C., in western Pontus, at Zela (Introductory Note, 11). The disaster so disorganized the army that no courier was sent to report the defeat to the commander in chief, who learned of it from *hearsay report (rumor ex sermone)*.

78 8 offensio: paired phrases are often so arranged that the more general (as in . . . *malo* here, — *just at that critical moment*) is followed and explained by the more specific (*the very serious reverse*).

78 9 potuisset: an unreal cond. is implied (Gram. § 248). *In spite of the defeat (tamen)*, he might have remedied the evils *to some extent (aliqua ex parte)*.

78 10 coactus, etc.: i. e. by vote of the assembly. — **qui . . . putavistis:** the antecedent is in *vestro*, *your*, which must be translated *from you*. The recall of Lucullus was further explained by politics at home, and by hostility in his camp to a stern disciplinarian and unbending aristocrat. — **modum statuendum:** *that a limit should be set*. Lucullus had been in command, not for the usual one year, but for seven years when a successor was appointed in 67 B.C.

78 11 exemplo: abl. of accordance (Gram. § 142). — **partim . . . dimisit:** *partim* (old acc.) is here a subst. (cp. 74 15; Gram. § 125). The abl. phrase is descr. and pred. (= *had served out their term of enlistment*). Many of his veteran troops deserted.

78 12 tradidit: Glabrio, Lucullus' successor, showed such incompetence that Lucullus retained some part of his command (Introductory Note, 11 f.).

78 13 ea . . . perspicite: with emphasis on *coniectura*, — *this (or so much) you may infer for yourselves*.

78 14 factum putetis: sc. *esse*. Trans. *putetis*, *you are to think*.

78 15 potentissimi: Mithridates and Tigranes had won back nearly all that they had lost, and were carrying on a joint campaign (*coniungant* here is equiv. to *are waging in common*).

78 17 pulso: *quod* proves to be the common object of four verbs. These four members form a résumé of what he has been saying, since 76 13, on the importance of the war; and as a number of points were to be mentioned, *ea* (l. 13) is plur.

78 19 periculosum: he is summarizing the two points treated at length in §§ 6–19 and 20–26 respectively. The tenses are determined by *fecisse*; the pres. is required in Eng.

78 21 esse videatur: the subst. *ut*-clause is the subj. of *restat*, — *it remains for me, as I think, to speak* (Gram. § 199).

78 23 haberetis: the wish, too good to come true (Gram. §§ 56, 188). — *quemnam . . . putaretis:* *who* (not 'whom') *you think* (Gram. § 55, d). The indir. quest. explains *haec deliberatio*, — *that it would be a difficult question (or hard to decide)*.

78 25 nunc vero: *but as it is* (cp. *nunc*, 10 16).

78 27 virtute: not *prowess*, but *ability, capacity* (Gram. § 152). — *superarit:* descr. clause; exaggeration (hyperbole, Introd. § 22, n, 7). *Memoriam*, *records*, is parallel in sense to *gloriam*, since history often ignores what was inglorious.

78 28 possit: descr. clause.

78 29 sic: looks forward to the *oportere* clause, just as *hoc* or *illud* would have done. — **in . . . oportere:** *that a commander in chief ought to possess*, etc. Cp. note on 67 17.

79 2 felicitatem: in *virtutem* we have the same broad meaning as in 78 27, but he will also take up other personal *qualities* (*virtutes*; cp. 82 24 ff.). **Auctoritatem** = *prestige, commanding personality*.

79 3 esse debuit: *had a right to be*.

79 4 bello . . . hostibus: these two abl. phrases picture the circumstances (Gram. § 141).

79 5 profectus est: Pompey's father, Cn. Pompeius Strabo, commanded an army in the Social War (90–88 B.C.). At its outbreak Pompey and Cicero were boys of sixteen; in 89 B.C. Cicero also served as a private (Introd. § 54).

79 7 imperatoris: i.e. his father, who in the revolution headed by Cinna and the aged Marius again commanded an army, 87 B.C. After much hesitation on the part of its commander, this army finally sided against Cinna in the conflicts at the gates of Rome. There Pompey's father suddenly died.

79 8 imperator: in 83 B.C. the young Pompey, now twenty-three, raised three legions in Picenum (where the family had large estates), marched into southern Italy, and placed his army at the disposal of Sulla, who had just returned from the East and the war with Mithridates.

79 9 hoste . . . inimico: in translating bring out the contrast in meaning.

79 10 concertavit: more contrasts. *Quisquam* is reg. after *quam* and *si*, or where a neg. is expressed or implied, as in 78 28.

79 13 ad scientiam: *to the mastery*.

79 16 triumphis: two triumphs are meant: that of 80 B.C., nominally over the Numidian Hiarbas, but in reality over Domitius and the remnant of Carbo's party in Africa; and that of 71 B.C., over Spain (and Sertorius), on the eve of Pompey's inauguration as consul. He was still only a knight, and had held none of the offices usually necessary. One might summarize the thought by saying that not only has Pompey been trained in the school of experience, but that he has been a brilliant pupil.

79 17 in quo: descr. clause.

79 18 civile: with *bellum*, l. 20.

79 19 mixtum . . . nationibus: as *misceo* implies the combination of things *different* in their nature, we may trans. *involving not only Roman citizens but also the most warlike native tribes*.

79 21 hostium: *genera* is in appos. with the wars just named. In Eng. *wars of different types with different enemies*.

79 22 confecta: this and *gesta* agree with *genera*, but in sense refer rather to *bella*, involved in *genera bellorum*.

79 23 militari: *positam* lit. means *placed*, i.e. *contained, involved*; freely, *known to strategy*. — *possit:* descr. clause in indir. disc. The important word is *scientiam*,

as he is concluding his paragraph on that subject. The **bellum civile** included different struggles: with Cinna in Italy (87 B.C.), with Carbo and others (83-82 B.C.), with Lepidus (77 B.C.). For the wars in Africa and Spain cp. note on line 16. Many Marians had joined Sertorius in Spain. The **servile bellum** was that under Spartacus, already crushed, in fact, before Pompey returned from Spain, 71 B.C.; while **navale** refers to the war with the pirates, 67 B.C.

79 24 **oratio par**: words adequate to describe. Cicero here proceeds to estimate Pompey's ability (**virtuti**), which is stressed by the position of the word. **Iam vero** = moreover, and then.

79 26 **adferre**: bring forward (as proof), tell.

79 27 **neque . . . existimantur**: for the good qualities of a general are not only those which everyone thinks of (lit. are commonly thought (to be such)).

79 28 **labor in negotiis**: painstaking attention to details. — **industria in agendo**: strenuous activity.

80 1 **tanta . . . fuerunt**: lit. are as great in him alone as they were not in all the other commanders. Trans. yet he by himself has these qualities in greater measure than, etc. Notice how Cicero, while intimating that it takes more than the standard qualities to make a great commander, yet stresses the point that Pompey has these foundation requirements in abundance. Not until 82 25 does he begin to describe the special endowments which make Pompey a military genius.

80 3 **testis**: i. e. to the facts just mentioned.

80 4 **liberatam**: i. e. from the rule of Carbo and the others of the Marian party, after Sulla's return from the East, 83 B.C., when Pompey sided with Sulla.

80 5 **non . . . celeritate**: at the sudden arrival of Pompey the enemy's attack melted away; thanks to the *swiftness of his strategy* (**consili celeritate**) there was no need for the *frightfulness of war* (**terrore belli**).

80 6 **explicavit**: Sicily was quickly won from the Marians by Pompey, and Carbo was put to death by him. **Cinctam** pictures the island as *hemmed in*, or *encircled*; **explicavit**, the release from the entanglement.

80 7 **oppressa**: after having been overwhelmed. In the same year, 82 B.C., Pompey defeated the Marians under Domitius Ahenobarbus in Africa.

80 9 **patefactum est**: he opened a new route over the Cottian Alps (the pass of Mont Genève) in 77 B.C. It became a very important road.

80 11 **conspexit**: in Spain Pompey spent over five years (77-71 B.C.) as commander against Sertorius, and was far from successful in the earlier campaigns. — **Italia: iterum et saepius = etiam atque etiam**, recalling the fact that this long series, linked together by anaphora of **testis** (a very striking example of this figure), began with **Italia** (l. 3).

80 12 **premeretur**: another allusion to the repulsive war with the slaves and gladiators under Spartacus (cp. 79 20).

80 13 **absente**: *when he was out of the country*. — **exspectatione eius**: *by the anticipation of his coming*.

80 14 **adventu**: *and when he did arrive*. — **sublatum ac sepultum**: use the fig. meanings in trans., — *ceased entirely* (lit. *was removed and buried*). Cicero exaggerates the part of Pompey in the slave war.

80 15 **nunc vero iam**: *yes, and at this present moment*.

80 16 **cum . . . portus**: *not only (the seas) in general, but also every bay and harbor on every strip of coast*. Mediterranean waters alone are meant.

80 20 **qui non se . . . committeret**: *without exposing himself*; descr. clause (Gram. § 174; cp. **quin**, § 213).

80 22 **navigaret**: causal clause. One had only a choice between the perils of the sea (if one sailed after the close of navigation to avoid pirates) and the risk of being captured and sold into slavery. **Referto . . . mari** marks the season of navigation (*when the sea*, etc.). For the case of **praedonum** cp. Gram. § 127. — **vetus**: the depredations of the pirates had been going on for many years. Cæsar had been captured by them ten years before.

80 23 **arbitraretur**: *would have thought* (Gram. § 57).

80 25 **annis**: *years (of his life)*.

80 27 **cui praesidio**: Gram. § 115.

80 31 **longinqua**: he is going to turn from *distant events* to troubles in Italy itself.

80 32 **populi Romani**: Gram. § 128. **Fuit** is repeated with feeling. Cp. 46.

81 1 **defendere**: referring to piratical raids even in Italy, before Pompey took command, 67 B.C. With **bellare** this is the subj. of **fuit**.

81 3 **dicam**: this deliberative quest. lacks the usual signs, but expresses shame and indignation (Gram. §§ 32, *e*; 55, *d*). Note the strong contrasts.

81 4 **transmiserint**: the **cum**-clause is adversative (*when = in spite of the fact that*). **Brundisium** (modern Brindisi) was the regular port of departure for Greece and the East.

81 5 **captos**: for **eos captos esse**. — **querar**: same type of quest. as **dicam**. — **redempti sint**: we should say *held for ransom*.

81 7 **pervenerint**: another sentence run in the same mould. Instead of **duo praetores** we have their *fascēs* (six for each, when in a province) (Introd. §§ 24 fin.; 25; 22, *n*, 9).

81 10 **quibus . . . ducitis**: *through which you draw the breath of life*.

81 11 **sciatis**: a fourth sentence on identical lines. Distant seaports are not to be mentioned in comparison with descents upon Italian ports. **Atque** = *and, in fact, or and that* (Gram. § 44). As Italy was dependent upon imported grain, the appearance of pirates at Ostia, etc. was both a menace and a disgrace.

81 12 **ignoratis**: this form of **an**-quest. rejects something as absurd or impossible, — *you surely are not unaware* (Gram. § 32, *d*).

81 13 **inspectante praetore**: *under the eyes of a praetor*.

81 14 **direptum**: Caieta (now Gaeta) was the chief harbor of southern Latium, a **portus celeberrimus** (*much frequented*).

81 15 **sublatos**: *were carried off*; probably a reference to a daughter of the famous orator M. Antonius, who triumphed over the pirates in 102 B.C. She was ransomed for a large sum. Nouns of relationship are often plur., although but one person may be meant. **Gesserat** is in a parenth. remark; hence ind. (cp. 68 25).

81 16 **Ostiense**: *at Ostia* (cp. note on 76 20). In **nam** we have the elliptical use, i. e. 'I have mentioned these cases, *for* Ostia speaks for itself' (cp. note on 4 3).

81 17 **querar**: cp. Gram. § 55, d.

81 18 **inspectantibus vobis**: Ostia was only fifteen miles from the city.

81 19 **praepositus esset**: descr. clause. The consul's name is unknown.

81 20 **pro**: not the prep. See Vocab.

81 22 **Tiberinum**: cp. note on **Ostiense**, 81 16.

81 23 **ei**: emphatically repeats **vos** (i. e. *you, I say*). Note contrasts in lines 22-24, esp. that between the Tiber mouth and the Strait of Gibraltar (**Oceani ostium**). For the tense of **audiatis** cp. Gram. § 68. Looking back as far as line 7, note the repetition in each sentence of the word **praedones**, — a kind of burden running through the whole passage.

82 2 **non sunt**: **a me** is more forcible than the usual **mihi** (Gram. § 114, a).

82 3 **tam brevi tempore**: Cicero notes the unusual fact that, under Pompey, a government enterprise went through with the promptness of a business deal (implied in **obeundi . . . studio**).

82 4 **quam celeriter**: **quam** alone would be sufficient; **celeriter** is inserted for symmetry with **brevi tempore**. With **navigavit** it may be trans. *sped overseas*, thus including the meaning of **celeriter** in the verb; cp. 43 24, **quam . . . manifestus**. **Impetus** = *onset*, represented (with personif.) as sailing over the sea.

82 5 **qui**: *for . . . he*.

82 8 **frumentaria subsidia**: he means *sources of grain supply, granaries* (in fig. sense).

82 11 **confirmata**: agreement with the nearer **Gallia** avoids ambiguity. He refers to the old province, conquered 125-118 B.C., which Caesar calls *provincia* and *provincia nostra* (Provence and Languedoc). There were at this time two Spanish provinces, Citerior and Ulterior. — **Illyrici maris**: the eastern side of the Adriatic.

82 12 **duo maria**: the two seas are Mare Superum (Adriatic; here its western side) and Mare Inferum (Tuscan, or Tyrrhenian, Sea).

82 13 **ipse**: contrasting Pompey's own action with the action of those who carried out his orders to guard the seas and Roman possessions.

82 14 **autem . . . die**: *while on the forty-ninth day from the date of his departure* (or *forty-eight days after he sailed from*) (Gram. § 200).

82 15 Ciliciam: Cilicia was the home of most of the pirates, who had organized there a regular buccaneer government. Cp. the Barbary pirates of about 1800.

82 16 partim . . . partim: here equiv. to **aut . . . aut**.

82 18 idem: he likewise. — **Cretensibus:** this dat. with **ademit** must be translated *from* (Gram. § 112). It is needed again after **imperavit** in line 20 (Gram. § 107, *d*); though as **impero** with dat. and acc. means *demand* or *requisition*, we must trans. *from them*. But both 'from's' are used out of deference to Eng., as the Lat. really means that *for* the Cretans he did not take away the hope of making terms of surrender, and that *to* the Cretans he issued the demand — hostages. **-que** (l. 20) may be translated *but*, as often, between a neg. and a pos. statement (Gram. § 43 fin.). As Pompey's command gave him authority over all the coasts, and for fifty miles inland, conflicts of authority with provincial governors were inevitable. After Metellus had spent two years in conquering Crete (which had allied itself with the pirates), the Cretans attempted to secure more favorable terms of surrender by dealing with Pompey, then on the southern coast of Asia Minor (cp. **86 15 ff.**).

82 22 premebantur: this appos. rel. clause explains **dispersum** (Gram. § 168, *a*). — **Cn. Pompeius . . . confecit:** in Eng. the voice should be pass., to retain the order of the sentence.

82 24 virtus imperatoris: *excellence (capacity) of a commander*, — in a single word, *generalship*. **Haec** gathers up the preceding statement of Pompey's achievements. Its attraction to the gender of the pred. **virtus** is reg. (Gram. § 12). **Est** is emphatic, — *is indeed*. We look for a contrast to follow.

82 25 quid? ceterae: after many illustrations to prove that Pompey has all the standard requirements of a general. Cicero now proceeds to enlarge upon his special talents. — **paulo ante:** refers to **79 28 ff.**

82 27 bellandi virtus: *the fighting quality* (Gram. § 120).

82 28 artes eximiae: *artes*, like *virtutes*, very often has the meaning *qualities, traits of character*. *Eximiae* is attrib. to *artes*, while *administratae* and *comites* are preds. — The minor qualities are personif. as a retinue in attendance on the main requirement, **bellandi virtus**.

83 1 quanta . . . imperatores: trans. *how great . . . ought generals to possess* (Gram. § 145). The *innocentia* of generals, provincial governors, etc. has a special sense: *integrity, honesty* (opp. *avaritia*).

83 3 temperantia: *self-control* in general, one of the four cardinal virtues; *innocentia* is a special application of it. Note the anaphora.

83 4 quae . . . qualia sint = et qualia ea sint. *Qualia = how remarkable. In = in the case of.*

83 5 summa sunt: *exist in full perfection, or are of the highest order.*

83 6 aliorum contentione: *comparison (of Pompey) with other men.* To appreciate Pompey's merits, he must be compared with other men.

83 8 *putare*, etc.: *consider in any class* (= of any standing or *repute*).

83 9 *venierint*: descr. clause. Do not confuse *vēneō* with *veniō*. To contrast Pompey's honesty with the corrupt practices of others, he mentions the sale of commissions.

83 10 *cogitare*: leave the constr. of the inf. in suspense for the moment. In inquiring about a man's patriotism one could ask, *Quid magnum de re publica cogitat?* (cp. 37 5 f.; Gram. § 97).

83 12 *diviserit*: descr. clause. A corrupt provincial governor might use military funds to bribe officials at Rome, in order to prolong his term.

83 13 *reliquerit*: i.e. invested with some banker *at interest* (in *quaestu*). Returning now to *cogitare* and its constr., we see that it must depend upon *possumus* . . . *putare* (l. 7), but that the common meaning of the latter (*think*) has now displaced the special sense *reckon* or *consider* used with *ullo in numero*, — a zeugma (cp. Introd. § 22, n, 5).

83 14 *videamini*, etc.: *makes it clear that you recognize men who*, etc. (lit. ?).

83 15 *fecerint*: descr. clause. *Eos* may be supplied as obj. of *agnoscere*. The sense of *agnoscere* = *identify* forbids us to take *qui*, etc. as an indir. quest.

83 16 *nisi qui . . . voluerit*: *unless (it be one) who wishes* (lit. *shall have wished*).

83 18 *ventum sit*: *they have come*. Lat. uses the impers. pass. where the thing done is the important thing, not those who do it. In Lat. *there's a fight* would be *pugnatur*. But freq. in translating the best way is to turn it into the act., as in the present instance. It is possible to explain the mood of *ventum sit* as an integral part of the indir. quest. depending on *ignorat*.

83 21 *recordamini*: impv. He has in mind extravagant demands made by the great man when he traveled to or from his province.

83 22 *existimetis*: this indir. quest. presupposes a deliberative question; each asks for himself, *Quid fieri existimet?* *What am I to suppose happens?* Cp. 78 14 (Gram. § 55, d).

83 24 *deletas*: we see that *pluris* is to be taken with *civitates* as well as *urbis*, and should be repeated in translating. Give *deletas* its lit. meaning with *urbis*, and the fig. meaning (*financially ruined*) with *sociorum civitates* (zeugma; cp. note on 83 13). Observe the contrasted terms: *armis*, *hibernis*, etc. (antitheses). Troops in winter quarters might do great damage to the town.

83 26 *continet*: Gram. § 173. For *se ipse* cp. Gram. § 27. — *iudicando*: the governor of a province was chief justice as well as military commander. *Severus* is not 'severe,' but *strict*.

83 28 *ceteris*: Gram. § 106. *Hic*, in this situation, under these conditions, refers to his sketch of corrupt practices (83 7 ff.).

83 29 *pervenerint*: descr. clause, showing why one cannot wonder. Trans. as though a *cum*-clause. — *non . . . quidem*: *not only not, . . . but not even*.

The second *not* is unexpressed in Lat. when both the contrasted words, as **manus** and **vestigium** here, are subjs. of the same verb (**dicatur**). Cp. 29 2; Gram. § 41. **Manus**, *hand*, refers to looting and other deeds of violence; **vestigium**, *footprint*, has especial reference to trampling down crops. The sings. add emphasis: not a hand, not a foot of that great army has wrought damage to any friendly inhabitant.

83 31 **hibernent**: *behave in their winter quarters*.

83 32 **perferuntur**, etc.: i. e. *we hear by . . . letters how*, etc.

84 2 **permittitur**: *is permission given*. **Cupienti** is indef.: anyone who desires to be lavish. Pompey's army pays its way. The gens. **hiemis** and **avaritiae** are of different kinds: obj. and subj. (possess.) respectively, i. e. *refuge from* and *refuge for* (Gram. §§ 117-119).

84 4 **age vero**: *well then*, a formula of transition, regardless of number.

84 6 **inventum putatis**: here **invenio** = *acquire, gain, not find*.

84 8 **aliqui**: here equiv. to *some particular*.

84 11 **aliquam**: cp. the last note. Trans. *no avarice*, etc.

84 12 **ad delectationem**: i. e. to enjoy the charms of some picturesque location. **Amoenitas** is *charm (of a beautiful place)*. — **ad cognitionem**: i. e. to make a tourist's acquaintance with it.

84 13 **denique . . . ipse**: *what is more (denique) not even (ipse) hard service*, etc.; a climax. — **signa et tabulas**: *statues and paintings*.

84 15 **arbitrantur**: Roman provincial governors often used every means to enlarge their private art collections. Verres was the classical example (Introd. § 60; cp. pages 129 ff.). Do not confuse **visenda** with **videnda**. To describe Pompey as indifferent to Greek art was a popular stroke on Cicero's part.

84 18 **intuentur**: they regard Pompey as one (**sicut aliquem**) almost divine, — *dropped from the skies*.

84 19 **continentia**, etc.: *that there really were . . . of such self-restraint formerly, a thing which*.

84 23 **habebamus**: the clause merely marks the time (Gram. § 220). **Temperantia** was the more comprehensive term (cp. note on 83 3). For **ea**, *such* (i. e. as we see in Pompey), cp. **hac**, l. 19.

84 25 **privatorum**: **aditus** becomes sing. (*access*) in Eng., while the Lat. plur. marks the separate instances. He had already mentioned Pompey's *accessibility* (**facilitas**) at 83 3.

84 26 **aliorum**: *inflicted by others*. To say 'wrongs of others' would not give the right impression. The gen. is subj. (Gram. § 117).

84 28 **iam**: again equiv. to **iam vero**, *moreover*; cp. 43 10. — **quantum . . . valeat**: *how wise he is, and what an impressive and eloquent speaker* (lit.?).

84 29 **in quo . . . imperatoria**: treat as a parenth., — (*a capacity*) *which of itself gives a certain distinction appropriate to a high commander* (lit.?). For the tense of **valeat** cp. Gram. § 67.

84 30 loco: the Rostra. **Cognostis = cognovistis;** a short form used for the sake of the rhythm. This sentence develops the thought of **quanto ingenio**, **83 3.**

84 31 fidem vero eius: transition, — *but as for his honor* (**83 3**).

84 32 iudicarint: another short form, preferred for the rhythm's sake. The descr. clause gives a reason: *when*, etc. (Gram. § 178).

85 1 tanta est: *iam* is again equiv. to *moreover*, with **humanitate** placed first, to contrast with **fides**, — *he is so kindly*. — **difficile dictu sit:** Gram. § 93, b.

85 3 dilexerint: the two ptcps., **pugnantes** and **victi**, are equiv. to *cum*-clauses (*while . . . when*) (Gram. § 77). — **quisquam dubitabit:** almost equiv. to **nemo dubitabit**. Cicero would have been embarrassed if someone had taken him lit. and replied, **Ego dubitabo!** Cp. the confident "*Will somebody (aliquis) help me?*" with the nearly hopeless "*Won't anybody (quisquam) help me?*"

85 4 permittendum sit: Gram. § 212.

85 6 esse videatur: having now gone through that list of virtues and powers in **83 1-4**, Cicero, in closing the paragraph, gives a general conclusion in ques. form.

85 9 re: Gram. § 152. — **plurimum possit:** *is very strong* (not, as more commonly, *has great power*). **Auctoritas** is *prestige, the respect he commands*.

85 12 ignorat: its obj. is **pertinere**, with its modifiers, including subjs. in the form of indir. quests., — *that it is of great importance for . . . what*, etc.

85 13 contemnunt = non metuant.

85 15 commoveri: *are aroused*; upon this depends the result clause with its four verbs, which may become nouns in Eng. (*to fear or indifference*, etc.). **In tantis rebus**, l. 12, means simply *at critical moments*, and **ut** is not to be connected with **tantis**. Obviously **metuant** and **contemnunt** picture the possible reactions of the **hostes** toward an **imperator**, while in **oderint** and **ament** we have the effect on the **socii**.

85 16 clarius fuit: **igitur** is merely *then*, — i. e. granted that our generals' reputation abroad is of great moment, who *then* has a higher repute than Pompey?

85 17 id quod: refers to **tanta . . . fecistis**. For the idea that prestige is created by the giving of office, cp. **67 18**.

85 18 fecistis: i. e. in giving him military commands and civil offices, esp. the consulship for 70 B.C. For the meaning of **an vero** cp. note on **81 12**.

85 19 pervaserit: result clause. **Quo**, rel. adv., is equiv. to **ut eo**, or **ut in eam**.

85 22 sibi: *as their choice*.

85 23 depoposcit: the clause defines the time. He is recalling the passage of the Gabinian Law of 67 B.C.; cp. Introd. § 62. For the gen. with **commune** cp. Gram. § 128. The temples meant in line 21 are those of Concord, Saturn, Castor and Pollux, Vesta (see page lxi).

85 24 **non dicam**: *refrain from saying*; for this **ut non** cp. Gram. § 193. — **aliorum exemplis**: *illustrations (drawn from the lives) of other men*.

85 26 **sumantur**: *freely, let us take our illustrations* (Gram. § 55, b). — **qui quo die**: in Eng. *who on what day becomes for on the day on which he*.

85 27 **imperator**: has an emphatic position.

85 28 **ex**: *coming after*.

85 29 **nomine**: with **unius hominis** as possess. gen. (obj. gen. with **spe** at the same time; Gram. §§ 118 f.). In Eng. *owing to the confidence inspired by one man's name*.

85 30 **potuisset**: there is no **si**-clause for this unreal conclusion, but it is implied in the words **pax**, etc., equiv. to 'if there had been a prolonged peace, with (in) the utmost,' etc. (Gram. § 248). Profiteers had been hoarding foodstuffs; but when they heard of Pompey's appointment, they scrambled to get rid of their wares. Cp. the story of the siege of Samaria in 2 Kings vii.

86 2 **invitus admonui**: *have reluctantly reminded you*, referring to his allusion to the defeat at Zela, 78 5 ff. (cp. note on 78 7).

86 4 **haberet**: the three verbs of the **cum**-clause are bound together by **socii, hostium, provincia**, not by conj. (asyndeton). — **Asiam**: the **provincia** of the previous clause; emphasis by position.

86 5 **temporis**: *emergency*; he means *just at that very critical moment*.

86 6 **attulisset**: Pompey had reached Cilicia, the pirate state. **Ad eas regiones** = *to that quarter (or part of the world)*.

86 9 **quisquam dubitabit**: cp. note on 85 3. — **virtute**: *by (the actual exercise of) his ability*. — **perfecturus sit**: *will accomplish*; Gram. § 70 fin.

86 10 **auctoritate**: *by (the mere power of) his prestige*. — **perfecerit**: this may be a descr. clause, or attracted by the indir. quests.

86 12 **defenderit**: like **perfecerit** as regards mood. — **age vero**: as in 84 4. — **illa res . . . quod**: *this fact . . . that*. — **quantam . . . auctoritatem**: *what prestige, obj.*

86 13 **declarat**: *reveals*.

86 16 **communi**: as a subst. **commune** = *commonwealth*; here a province. — **cum . . . esset**: for **noster imperator**, *a general of ours*, cp. 78 16; for Metellus and the situation in Crete cp. 82 18 ff. and note.

86 19 **dixerunt**: but they had their own reasons, and it was not merely a tribute to Pompey's **auctoritas** (cp. note on 82 18). **Ultimas** exaggerates his distance from Crete. — **quid?**: *again, or to take another instance*.

86 21 **misit**: while Pompey was commanding an army in Spain against Sertorius, 76–72 B.C. — **eum**: in appos. with the preceding **legatum**, — *the man whom, etc. or the man, I mean, whom, etc.*

86 22 **ei**: this word being in strong contrast with **Pompeius**, no conj. is required in Lat. In translating insert *but* or *while*. Pompey was a rival of his chief, the proconsul, another Metellus (Q. Metellus Pius; cp. 111 13); and the

latter's friends, thinking he had been slighted (as is shown by **potissimum**) gave out that only a spy had been sent to Pompey. — **ad . . . missum**: subj. of **erat**, *that he had been sent to him rather than to anyone else*.

86 24 **potestis . . . existimetis**: the grammatical relation of the units of this sentence is shown in the following scheme, which will also serve as a guide to trans. The essential framework of the sentence is in heavy type:

Potestis igitur iam constituere, Quirites,
quantum existimetis hanc auctoritatem valituram esse
 apud illos reges
 (et) **quantum** (existimetis eam valituram esse)
 apud exteras nationes
amplificatam
 multis postea rebus gestis
 magnisque vestris iudiciis.

Quantum . . . valituram esse = *what effect . . . will have*. **Amplificatam** = *now that it has been increased* (agreeing with **auctoritatem**). **Multis . . . gestis** = *by his numerous later exploits*. Notice how the verbs, as ever, guide one on: **potestis** to **constituere**, **constituere** to **quantum existimetis**, and so on. An expert reader does not do all this, but maneuvers to keep the Lat. order and emphasis, while he checks results by keeping a vigilant eye on the grammatical structure.

86 28 **reliquum est**: the subj. is the *ut*-clause (cp. **restat ut**, 78 20). — **quam**: *something which*.

86 29 **meminisse**: asyndeton. Insert *but which* in trans. — **de**: *in the case of*.

86 30 **sicut . . . deorum**: belongs with **timide . . . dicamus** and should be translated after it. The feeling that one must not boast of good luck, and that it may not be safe even to mention it, is very ancient. With **est** sc. **dicere** (from **dicamus**), as subj.: *as it is proper for men to speak of a power belonging to the gods*. — **timide et pauca**: *reverently and briefly*.

87 4 **esse commissos**: they were repeatedly (**saepius**) called to the command. The generals named fall into two pairs—(1) from the Second Punic War: Fabius Maximus the Delayer and Claudius Marcellus, who captured Syracuse; (2) of more recent date: Scipio Africanus the Younger, destroyer of Carthage, and Marius (cp. 92 10, 12; 63 7, 11).

87 5 **viris**, etc.: *some . . . men have really had*.

87 7 **fortuna**: emphasized by position at the end (cp. the verb at the beginning) and by suspense due to the insertion of three *ad*-phrases between **quaedam** and its noun. — **adiuncta**: *assigned to them for* (or *which was*, etc.).

87 8 **agimus**: note **quo de** for the usual **de quo**. **Loquimur** would refer to a less formal discussion than **agimus**.

87 9 **dicam**: the *ut*-clause explains **hac** (= *such*) **moderatione**.

87 10 **videamur**, etc.: *show myself mindful . . . hopeful for the future.*

87 13 **domi militiae**: Gram. § 154, c, 3; the absence of a conj. is common. — **terra marique**: Gram. § 154, b, 4.

87 14 **adsenserint**: the **ut**-clause, (*or*) *how*, etc., is another indir. quest.

87 16 **obsecundarint**: each of the four members (from **ut** on) has its own verb, though all are synonyms. — **dicam**: contrast with what he is *not* going to say (*praeteritio*, Introd. § 22, n, 6) makes **hoc** = *only this* (no conj.). — **brevissime**: *in the fewest words.*

87 18 **auderet optare**: rel. result clause, — *as to venture to hope* (Gram. § 175). — **quot et quantas**: *as* is all Eng. needs.

87 19 **quod**: a connecting rel.

87 22 **debetis**: the subst. **ut**-clause is the obj. of **velle** and **optare**, synonyms at the close. While this sentence can be worked out like 86 24, it is rather easier to preserve the order: *that this may be his lasting possession, Quirites, for the sake both . . . and . . . you ought, etc., just as you are doing.*

87 24 **possit**: the **cum**-clause is causal.

87 27 **fortuna**: note the enumeration in four phrases (no conjs.). — **boni**: *blessing* (Gram. § 125).

87 28 **oblatum et datum est**, etc.: synonyms add impressiveness.

87 29 **conferatis**: *apply*; the subst. **quin**-clause is obj. of **dubitatis**, a verb which usually has the inf. when it means *hesitate*, as it does here (Gram. §§ 90, 212). The uncommon constr. gives a better rhythm. The quest. **dubitatis** = **num dubitatis** (Gram. § 32, e).

88 2 **erat . . . mittendus**: the ind. is reg. in the conclusion of an unreal cond. if the periphrastic is required, — *he would be the man for you to choose and send* (Gram. § 253).

88 4 **adiungatur**: in **nunc**, *as it is*, we have returned to reality; cp. 10 16. The nature of the **cum**-clause will appear as we read on. **Opportunitas** = *advantage*. — **ut . . . possit**: the three **ut**-clauses are subst. clauses in appos. with **opportunitas**, and the **cum**-clause is seen to be causal (*when, since*). For the commanders meant in **qui habent (exercitum)** cp. note on 78 12.

88 7 **ducibus**, etc.: *under the leadership*; etc. Cp. 75 28.

88 9 **committamus**: deliberative quest. (Gram. § 55, d). **Cetera (bella)** are Pompey's previous wars, including that against the pirates. — **regium**: *against the kings*.

88 10 **clarissimus**: from the introductory **at** Cicero's hearers would at once know that he is now taking up the opinion of an opponent (Gram. § 50, e). **Enim** is affirmative, *in fact, to be sure*. — **amantissimus rei publicae**: *most patriotic*, as in 37 3. — **vestris**: . . . **adfectus** *freely, who has received . . . at your hands*.

88 12 **summis ornamentis . . . praeditus**: *who enjoys the highest distinctions*.

88 13 dissentiunt: Q. Lutatius Catulus, consul in 78 B.C., and leader of the aristocrats, had completed the rebuilding of the Capitol in the consulship of Hortensius (69 B.C.). The latter was Cicero's great rival in oratory (cp. *Introd.* § 60). Both were now bitterly opposed to Cicero's *view (ratio)*. — **quorum ego auctoritatem . . . confiteor:** begin a new sentence, — *Now I freely admit that their distinguished opinion.*

88 15 in hac causa: as contrasted with this, **multis locis** has the meaning *in many other cases, on many other occasions.*

88 16 auctoritates . . . clarissimorum: sc. *esse*, — *that there are views opposite to these, expressed by the ablest,* etc. **Virorum** is subj. gen., — the views originated with them.

88 17 omittis . . . veritatem: a sure way to appeal to the unthinking is to insist that their own "common sense" is more reliable than the views of experts.

88 18 veritatem: *re* and *ratione* cover the ground of *situation, condition*, — *by (observing) the actual state of affairs.* — **hoc facilius:** *all the more.* For *hoc* cp. *Gram.* § 151.

88 20 concedunt: *isti* is not disrespectful here, — *opponents of mine.* — **et . . . bellum esse:** *namely that the war is both,* etc. In appos. with *omnia*, l. 19.

88 21 omnia, etc.: Pompey has *all the qualifications in the highest degree (summa).*

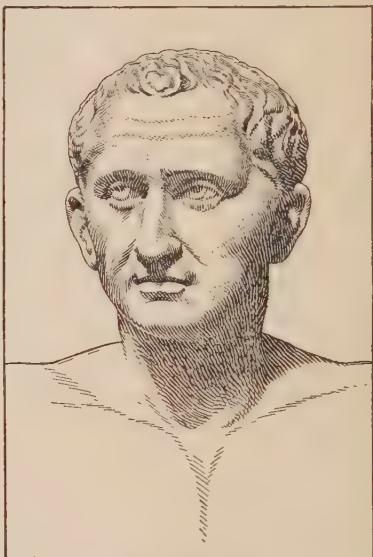
88 22 Hortensius: the view of Catulus is to be taken up later (§§ 59 f.). — **tribuenda sint:** indir. disc.; **omnia** = *all powers or power.*

88 24 oratio: *argument, plea*; **ista** = *tua*. — **re:** *fact(s).*

88 26 copia: *fluency, eloquence*, in a parenth. compliment to his gifts as an orator. **Pro,** *in accordance with, as was to be expected from,* is common in polite phrases. Cp. 74 7.

88 28 dixisti: Hortensius had spoken *impressively and eloquently* against Gabinius' bill. **Et in senatu** is contrasted with **et ex hoc ipso loco.**

88 29 promulgasset: notice of any proposed bill had to be given seventeen days in advance. This allowed time for discussion both in the senate and in



HORTENSIUS

gatherings of the people in the Forum (Introd. § 38). Pompey was not actually named in the bill proposed by Gabinus.

89 1 fecisti: from the Rostra too Hortensius had opposed concentration of power in the hands of one man. There is a hint in all this that Cicero may have been a little bored by his rival's eloquence. For **quid** introducing a following quest. cp. Gram. § 30.

89 3 valuisset: modified by **tum** (emphasized by position in advance of **si** and by separation from **valuisset**). Trans. *but tell me, for heaven's sake, if at that time*, etc. **Vera causa** means *true interests*.

89 5 teneremus: Cicero argues merely from the success of concentrated authority in the war with the pirates, and ignores the danger that a generalissimo might become a dictator or a tyrant.

89 6 capiebantur: cp. his statements in §§ 32-33 (Gram. § 220; here a customary action). For **-que** with a third term cp. Gram. § 43.

89 7 commeatu: *intercourse, traffic*, further defined by the **ex**-phrase (*with the provinces, we should say; but most important was what came from them, — supplies and materials of various kinds*). Thus we may trans. *imports*. For the abl. of separation cp. Gram. § 134.

89 10 possemus: emphasizing the fact that no business could *any longer* (**iam**) be carried on overseas.

89 12 Atheniensium: sc. *civitatem*. So with **Carthaginensium** (l. 13) and **Rhodium** (l. 17). — **satis:** *rather*.

89 13 dicitur: after the Persian Wars, Athens gained control of the Ægean and became a great maritime power.

89 14 qui . . . valuerunt: *whose strong navy made them supreme upon the seas* (lit.?).

89 16 valuerunt: Carthage long dominated the Mediterranean, until her power was broken by Rome in the Second Punic War (218-201 B.C.).

89 21 remansit: in the period of Roman conquest in Macedonia and Asia, Rhodes had an excellent navy and a large carrying trade. **Disciplina navalis** may be translated *naval traditions, seamanship*; **gloria** also is modified in sense by **navalis**, without actual agreement. For the rhetorical fig. *praeteritio* cp. Introd. § 22, n, 6.

89 24 defenderet: rel. result clause (Gram. § 175). **Aliquam**, etc. *a good (large) part of its territory*.

89 25 legem Gabiniam: cp. 88 28 f.; Introd. § 62. — **cuius . . . permanserit:** descr. clause. **Invictum** much exaggerates Roman naval successes. — **ac:** *or rather or and in fact* (Gram. § 44).

90 1 caruit: *was deprived of* (for **parte** cp. Gram. § 134). Since the earlier prowess of the Roman people is contrasted with its later inefficiency, **cuius** (89 25) is equiv. to **cum eius**, *although (in spite of the fact that) . . . its*. **Utilitatis**, *material advantages*, referring to commerce and the like.

90 2 **Antiochum** . . . **Persenque**: in the war with Antiochus the Roman navy, aided by the Rhodian fleet, played a very important part (191-190 B.C.). In that with Perseus (Perses) the Roman fleet coöperated, but with small credit (171-168 B.C.), as the Macedonian king had no navy.

90 5 **vicerunt**: the best-known victories over Carthage on the sea were in the First Punic War, esp. that off the Ægates Islands. But the Roman fleet did good service in the siege of Syracuse (214-212 B.C.) and that of Carthage (147-146 B.C.). Strict truth would have required the orator to mention one great defeat, off Drepana (249 B.C.). — **ei**: *we*, *I say* (cp. note on 81 23). — **iam**: *any longer* (cp. 89 9).

90 7 **habebamus**: *used to keep* (Gram. § 74).

90 8 **salvos praestare**: = **tutos habere**; change of words for variety.

90 9 **posita**: Delos, in the Ægean, and the smallest of the Cyclades, was highly revered as the birthplace of Apollo and Diana.

90 10 **commeabant**: esp. after the fall of Corinth (146 B.C.) Delos became one of the chief centers of Mediterranean commerce. Cp. **commeatu**, 89 7.

90 11 **nihil timebat**: protected by the sanctity of its temples. Bring out the contrast by inserting *although* before the trans. of **posita**, etc. In 69 B.C. Delos was ravaged by pirates, and its sanctuaries were destroyed. Cicero omits also to mention that Mithridates' admiral had plundered the island twenty years before, slaying thousands of the inhabitants and many Italian merchants.

90 13 **carebamus**: i. e. *could no longer use*. **Idem** serves the same purpose as **ei** in the preceding sentence, l. 5: *we*, *I tell you*. As the Appian Way, leading to Brundisium (Brindisi), was the main route to the East, its abandonment (wherever it ran along the coast) for fear of pirates was a crowning disgrace.

90 16 **ornatum**: for two hundred and seventy-two years the *rostra* of captured ships from the fleet of Antium had adorned the front of the speakers' platform.

90 17 **tum**: referring to **eis temporibus**, l. 14, and recalling the **tum** in 89 1. The apostrophe (**Q. Hortensi**) is not a proof that Hortensius was present.

90 18 **ceteros**: be careful to connect with **te** in line 17 and not with **populus Romanus**.

90 19 **sentiebatis**, etc.: i. e. *your real (honest) opinions*, emphasizing at the end the idea with which the sentence began, i. e. **bono animo**, *in good faith*, or *with the best intentions*. — **in salute communi**: *in (a case of) the common welfare*, where we say *when* (or *where*) *the welfare of all was involved*.

90 21 **obtemperare**: *be guided by* (lit. *obey*). **Dolori** = *indignation or feelings*.

90 22 **unus annus**: 67 B.C. Anaphora joins the group of three together.

90 24 **imperare**: with **vere videremur**, *were rightly regarded as the rulers of*, etc. — **quo** . . . **Gabinio**: *for this reason it seems to me that the opposition which has been made hitherto is even more outrageous — opposition, shall I say, to Gabinus*, etc.

90 27 ne . . . Gabinius: *to prevent the appointment of Gabinus as legatus.* This neg. purpose clause implies an effort to prevent; hence the trans. of **ne** by *to prevent*. In general it was illegal to appoint the proposer of a law to a position created under that law. — **expetenti**, etc.: *though he begged and pleaded.*

90 29 quem velit: descr. clause. The Gabinian Law appears to have given the general in command power to appoint his own *legati*. — **impetret:** Gram. § 176. **Idoneus non est = indignus est.** The form of the quest., beginning with **utrum** (omit in trans.), foreshadows a similar quest. about another person or persons to follow. Both **postulat** and **impetret** are provided with an obj. by **quem velit**.

90 31 eduxerint: adversative clause; **cum** = *whereas, when* (Gram. § 230).

91 1 gloriae: with **expers**, — *ought . . . to have no share in*, etc.

91 2 periculo: the risk to Gabinus' political aspirations, if his bill had been rejected, would have been considerable. — **constitutus:** commander and army are considered as one creation of the Gabinian Law; hence the sing. rel. and verb. In Eng. use two verbs: *that commander who was appointed and that army which was created.*

91 4 nomino, etc.: *for all of whom I have only the highest respect*, — a standing formula used when one wished to show regard, or at least the desire not to offend. Metellus was at this time commanding in Crete. The others are of no consequence, except Lentulus (cp. 95 24).

91 5 potuerunt: he is citing examples of other men who had been tribunes and in the next year *legati*. Precedents are stated in quest. form, as in 3 19 ff. It does not appear, however, that Falcidius, etc. proposed the measures by which they profited. Hence the cases were not really parallel.

91 6 diligentes: *particular, punctilious* (about the law in Gabinus' case).

91 8 constituit: for **quem** cp. **qui** in line 2. — **debebat**, etc.: *ought to enjoy high authority* (descr. abl.) *with* (lit. *in, in the case of*) (cp. note on 20 5). Cicero would have the legal restriction appear unreasonable. Gabinus could be appointed if Manilius' bill became a law. Cp. notes on lines 14, 19.

91 9 de . . . legando: *about his appointment as legatus.* — **relatueros:** for the *relatio* of a presiding magistrate cp. *Intro.* § 33. The consuls are Lepidus and Volcacius Tullus.

91 10 relaturum: as a prætor had the right to do.

91 12 defendam, etc.: *freely, from defending the right bestowed by your favor.* The people are represented as impatient of the restriction which prevented Gabinus' appointment. Cp. Gram. § 210 and (for **vobis**) § 147, b.

91 13 audiam: *listen to.* For the tribune's veto cp. *Intro.* § 26. — **de qua:** connecting rel., — *and about this.*

91 14 etiam atque etiam: lit. *again and again.* We should say, 'they will think twice.' Tribunes (or higher magistrates) who threaten a veto will weigh

the risk of popular disapproval. The adoption of the proposed law will make Manilius, not Gabinus, ineligible for such an appointment.

91 16 unus . . . socius ascribitur: *is (to be) reckoned as Pompey's only partner*, i. e. the only partner in the war with the pirates linked with Pompey in the popular mind is Gabinus. — **belli . . . gestarum:** *in the exploits of the naval war*; hendiadys (cp. Intro. § 22, n, 12).

91 18 suscipiendum: Gram. § 80. — **detulit**, etc.: *assigned (committed) . . . to a single commander*.

91 19 delatum . . . confecit: make the ptcps. into clauses, — *after it had been assigned to him, took charge of it and brought it to a successful close*. Gabinus was, in fact, sent out as *legatus* to Pompey, and, though corrupt and rapacious, he reached the consulship in 58 B.C.

91 20 reliquum est ut . . . dicendum esse videatur: try to make real Eng. out of the absurdly lit. 'it remains that it is evident that it must be spoken.' For **reliquum est ut** cp. 86 28 and note on 78 21. In the two abls. **auctoritate et sententia** we have the common practice of adding a second noun to make clear in which particular sense the first noun is intended. He means the *view* (*sententia*) which has the *support* of Catulus. Cp. note on 88 13.

91 21 qui cum: = **nam cum ille**. — **quaereret:** i. e. at the time when he spoke against the bill of Gabinus.

91 22 si . . . si Eng. requires *if . . . and if* (or *and then*). — **omnia poneretis:** *laid all the responsibility*. In dir. disc. **poneretis** would be **ponetis**, a simple fut. cond. Its dependence on **quaereret** turns it into the subjv.

91 23 factum esset: in dir. disc. **factum erit** (Gram. § 290). The euphemism **si quid**, etc. is common, to avoid a direct reference to death: *and if then something should happen to him*. For **eo** cp. Gram. § 138. — **habitori**, etc.: *on whom you would place your hopes*. — **cepit:** *received*.

91 24 dignitatis: interlocked order.

91 25 eo ipso: Catulus. Trans. simply *him*. — **dixistis:** the **cum**-clause is explanatory, rather than temporal, — *in that*, or *in the fact that* (Gram. § 222).

91 28 in hoc ipso: *on this particular question*.

91 29 vita: quo minus with the ind. has shown clearly that this will be a proportional sentence, with **eo**, **hoc**, or some other demonstr. term to follow; i. e. *the less certain*, etc. (Gram. § 151). But Eng. would be apt to avoid this as stiff, and say 'but the fact that human life is uncertain and brief is the very reason why,' etc.

92 1 per deos, etc.: 'I will allow you to do that' in Lat. might be **id facere per me tibi licebit**.

92 2 virtute: Gram. § 147, a. *Enjoy* is here equiv. to *have the benefit of*. — **at enim:** freely, *but, it is objected*. — **ne . . . fiat**, etc.: the words of objectors, a conservative slogan. For the mood cp. Gram. § 55, b.

92 5 paruisse: *had regard for*. **Non dicam** is one of the forms to introduce

the fig. called *praeteritio*, often more effective than detailed mention (cp. note on 89 21). — **ad . . . accommodasse**: *adapted new measures to new situations* (lit. ?).

92 7 Hispaniense: another *praeteritio* in **non dicam**, etc. He refers to the last war with Carthage and that with Numantia (cp. 63 8).

92 9 minitabantur: Gram. § 291.

92 10 esse deletas: the point is the double violation of *consuetudo* in the case of the younger Scipio Africanus: (1) by his exemption from the law fixing age requirements, so that he could be elected consul for 147 B.C., to command before Carthage; (2) his reelection for 134 B.C., that he might finish the war in Spain, in the face of a law at that time forbidding a second consulship. — **non commemorabo**: beginning a third *praeteritio*.

92 11 nuper is purely rel., *more recently*. — **esse visum**: = *placuisse*.

92 12 poneretur: subst. clause, subj. of **visum esse**. **Ita** is used to arrest the attention and to point toward the *ut*-clause. Disregard in translating, and use the active voice.

92 14 administraret: the same constr. as **poneretur**. Precedent was abandoned when Marius was reelected consul for five years in succession, — from 104 B.C. (when he triumphed over Jugurtha) to 100. His victories over the Teutons and Cimbri were in 102 and 101 B.C. respectively (cp. 63 11). — **Pompeio**: we come now to the real point: *in Pompey's own case*, not to enlarge upon previous examples. Asyndeton. — **novi constitui nihil**: *no innovation to be made*.

92 16 recordamini: in **summa . . . voluntate**, *with the entire approval of*, etc., he cleverly brings out Catulus' inconsistency in approving earlier innovations but rejecting this one. Interlocked order.

92 17 quid . . . conficere: *what (was) such an innovation as for . . . to raise*, etc. Supply *fuit*.

92 18 confecit: for the young Pompey's prowess under Sulla cp. note on 79 8.

92 19 huic praeesse: *as for him to be in command of this (army)*. Keep **quid tam novum** in mind; also with **gerere**, l. 20.

92 20 praeter consuetudinem: *unprecedented*. Cicero is amplifying the **multa nova** of line 15.

92 22 abesset: descr. clause or concessive. In 82 B.C. Pompey, at the age of twenty-four, was still six years too young to enter the senate; but many customs suffered in that time of upheaval (cp. *Introd.* § 28 fin.). The tense shows that **fuit** was to be supplied with **quid**, l. 20. — **dari**: in translating keep the order, — *as that a very young man . . . should have the command of an army assigned to him*. — **Siciliam permitti**: *that Sicily should be intrusted*.

92 23 administrandum: for Pompey in Sicily and Africa cp. 80 6 ff. (cp. Gram. § 80).

92 24 fuit . . . virtute: *he displayed*, etc. Lit. trans. of pred. abls. of descr. is to be avoided. Or we may say *he showed himself to be a man of*, etc. Neither **innocentia** nor **gravitate** nor **virtute** can be translated here by its Eng. derivative. They mean, respectively, *honesty*, *dignity* (or *seriousness of purpose*), and *ability*.

92 26 deportavit: bringing home a victorious army was a necessary step to a triumph.

92 27 triumphare: Pompey's triumph, with Sulla's reluctant consent, was in 80 B.C. Ordinarily a knight with political ambitions would have reached the quaestorship, and with it senatorial rank (Introd. § 28), long before he could command an army. — **at . . . putavit:** that is, the triumphal procession passed through cheering crowds.

92 29 quid . . . ut: for **quid tam inusitatum** (**fuit**) **quam** (**fuit**) **ut** (*as was the fact that*, result clause, subj. of the second **fuit**).

93 1 cum . . . essent: concessive (adversative) clause. A purely formal compliment; for Decimus Brutus and Lepidus, consuls for 77 B.C., were men of no real eminence.

93 3 pro consule: *as proconsul*. He was given proconsular authority for the war against Sertorius in Spain (cp. 80 10). — **quidem:** *by the way*, suggesting that an anecdote or illustration may follow.

93 4 non nemo: = **non nulli**, *some persons*, as in 56 16.

93 5 pro consule: this *could* mean 'in place of the consul,' but usually means *proconsul*, or, as here, *as proconsul*. — **L. Philippus:** an orator, whose caustic pun is now quoted by Cicero.

93 6 non se illum . . . mittere: *freely, it was not the intent of his motion to send him*. — **pro . . . consulibus:** *as proconsul, but pro (both) the consuls*. The Lat. pun is bad enough, and this attempt to transl. it is probably worse! But it was nevertheless a sharp dig at the consuls, who had refused to go.

93 8 constituebatur, etc.: *was set (fixed) upon him*. Emphatic position of **in eo. Rei . . . gerendae** = *of an able administration*.

93 10 quam ut: as in line 1. — **ex:** *in accordance with*. — **legibus solutus:** *released from legal restrictions*.

93 12 licuisset: i. e. (with pers. subj.) *before he would have been legally (per leges) eligible* (Gram. § 248). Pompey, being in his thirty-sixth year when he became consul (70 B.C.), had not reached the age required even for a lower office. Cicero's statement seems to imply that one could not become quaestor before his thirty-seventh year. Yet Cicero himself had entered upon the quaestorship in his thirty-first year. Probably thirty-six was still the letter of the law; but exceptions were allowed down to thirty, and so frequently as to make that the new minimum age for a quaestor (Introd. §§ 23 fin., 28 fin.). — **iterum . . . triumpharet:** his former triumph was mentioned in 92 26 f. Pompey triumphed over Spain (and the Sertorians in reality) on December 29, 71 B.C., the day

before he became consul (Gram. § 302). **Ex senatus consulto** stresses the consent of the senate, necessary for any triumph.

93 13 **quae . . . nova . . . constituta sunt**, **ea**: = **ea nova quae** etc., *the innovations which have been made*.

93 15 **haec**: *these just mentioned*.

93 16 **exempla**: *precedents*. — **profecta . . . auctoritate**: *had to do with the same man and originated in the support*, etc. (lit.?). Cicero might have included the *lex Gabinia* in his list of exceptions, for it gave Pompey extraordinary powers in the pirate war; but as this piece of legislation had been opposed by the aristocrats, there would have been no point in mentioning it here.

93 19 **videant . . . improbari**: *let them avoid the situation, at once utterly unjust and intolerable, that while you have always assented to their views, etc., they should not assent*, etc. Check this by your own lit. trans., and note that the pass. has been changed to the act. to avoid clumsiness.

93 20 **illorum** refers not to the subj. of **videant** (the persons mentioned in lines 17, 18), but to the *optimates* as a whole. Otherwise we should have **suam**; and, in line 21, instead of **illis** we should have **se**.

93 23 **suo iure**: *with a perfect right*. Pompey's success, in a command which these aristocrats would have refused him, gives the people a right to defend that choice.

93 24 **vel . . . dissentiunt**: **vel** = *even*, but the force is better felt if we trans. the whole expression freely, — *yes, against all objectors*.

93 25 **isdem . . . reclamantibus**: *in spite of the loud protests of the same objectors*. **Istis** refers to the subj. of **videant** (l. 19).

93 26 **quem . . . praeponeretis**: *rel. clause of purpose*.

93 27 **praedonum**: in Lat. one noun modifying another of different meaning is reg. in the gen. Do not hesitate to trans. by the prep. which makes the best Eng. Cp. note on 55 12.

93 28 **rei . . . consuluistis**: *gave too little thought to the best interests of the state*. — **studia vestra . . . regere**: *to control your enthusiasm*.

94 1 **sin autem**: *but if, on the other hand*. — **plus . . . vidistis**: *showed more political insight*.

94 2 **vos**: (*and if*) *you*, or simply *if you*. Asyndeton. — **eis repugnantibus**: *in spite of their opposition* (lit.?).

94 4 **aliquando isti principes . . . fateantur**: *let those distinguished gentlemen admit, once for all* (Gram. § 55, b). Note the slight irony in **isti**. — **et sibi et ceteris**: Gram. § 114. If there were danger of confusion, the abl. of agent would be used (Gram. § 114, a). **Ceteris** means *everybody else*. Cicero is preaching to the people the pleasant doctrine that when they are all agreed, they are supreme.

94 5 **auctoritati parendum esse**: *impers. because pareo is intrans. Act. in trans.: must yield to the judgment*.

94 6 Asiatico et regio: Lat. prefers the adjs. — 'Asiatic and royal' — where Eng. must say *in Asia and with kings*. Watch for other examples of this principle. — **non solum . . . requiruntur:** because Asia was very rich and a danger center, and the kings were powerful, unscrupulous, and ready to bribe.

94 7 quae . . . singularis: *which Pompey possesses to an unparalleled extent* (lit.?).

94 9 regnis . . . nationum: i. e. *the kingdoms in the interior*.

94 10 nostrum imperatorem: *one of our commanders*.

94 11 pudore . . . moderatiores: *less grasping (than the rest)* (lit. *more restrained*) by reason of their natural decency and moderation. **Qui** is indef.

94 12 tamen . . . arbitratur: when one has learned to look with suspicion on any class of people, he finds it hard to believe that there may be individual exceptions.

94 15 nationes: as *odi* has no pass., **in odio esse apud aliquem** and **odio** (dat.) **esse alicui** are used for *to be hated by someone*.

94 16 libidines et iniurias: *arbitrary and unjust acts*.

94 17 nostris . . . religiosum: *sacred in the eyes of our officials* (Gram. § III). For temple treasures cp. **77 7 f.**

94 20 quibus . . . inferatur: rel. clause of purpose, — *so that a pretext for (making) war may be alleged against them*. (A city conquered in war was in no position to protest against looting.)

94 22 disputarem: i. e. in a personal interview (**coram**). They were probably not present among his audience. Cp. note on **90 17**. — **norunt:** = **noverunt**.

94 23 sociorum volnera: *the woes* (lit. *wounds*) *of the provincials*.

94 25 simulatione: repeats the thought of a *pretense* (cp. **causa belli**, l. 20), — the pretense that they are operating against an enemy.

94 27 animos ac spiritus: *pride and arrogance*. — **capere possit:** *can contain*, i. e. *satisfy*. **Non modo** = *I'll not say, not to mention*, when used with what goes without saying (cp. **13 23**). The tribunes took turns in commanding a legion, but were of lower rank than the **imperator** or his **legatus**.

94 28 conlatis signis: *in actual combat*.

94 29 videatur: *is thought*.

94 30 nisi . . . qui: *unless he shall be at the same time one who*.

95 1 idoneus qui . . . mittatur: *fit to be sent* (Gram. § 176).

95 2 Asiaticum regiumque: cp. note on **94 6**. — **ecquam putatis:** *do you think that any, etc.?*

95 3 pacatam: *left in peace, or undisturbed*. — **locuples sit:** descr. clause; may be a cond. in Eng.

95 4 pacata: here equiv. to *reduced to complete subjection*, as in *Cæsar*. So long as plundering could be done, the Roman authorities would consider subjugation incomplete. — **ora maritima . . . requisivit:** the cities of the west and

south coasts of Asia Minor had a first-hand acquaintance with Pompey's *self-control*, as well as with his prowess. *Animi* is sufficiently rendered in *self-*, being added to balance the gen. with *gloriam*.

95 6 *videbat . . . locupletari*: *for it* (i. e. the coast country) *was accustomed to see the governors enriching themselves*. *Locupletari* = *se locupletare*.

95 7 *quotannis*: because there was a new governor every year.

95 8 *classium nomine*: *by our pretense of (possessing) a navy* (badly manned and equipped, owing to official corruption).

95 9 *ut . . . videremur*, etc.: *that we were evidently* (lit. *were seen to be*) *more deeply disgraced* (than if we had made no pretense of having a navy).

95 10 *qua . . . proficiscantur*: Eng. would be less condensed, — *what rapacity men display as they set out for their provinces*. Work out a similar paraphrase for *iacturis* (*expenses for public shows, etc., to gain the people's votes*) and *condicionibus* (*terms made by those who had previously lent money for campaign funds*).

95 12 *ignorant . . . isti*: *doubtless those gentlemen are unaware*. Ironical.

95 13 *quasi . . . videamus*: Gram. § 270. The *non* goes with the verb.

95 14 *alienis vitiis*: *alienus* is reg. used instead of the rare gen. of *alius*. A lit. trans. is so clumsy that we must combine the ideas differently. This need not be hit-or-miss. The sentence answers the question 'How is Pompey's greatness revealed?'; i. e. 'How do we see it?' Eng. might put the answer like this: *as if Pompey's greatness were not equally apparent, whether we regard his own merits or the failings of others*. Do not accept this as perfect or final trans., but see whether it contains the complete thought of the Lat., and whether it can be pruned or recast to advantage.

95 15 *nolite dubitare*: Gram. § 55, *b*, fin. In place of the usual inf. after *dubitare* = *hesitate*, a quin-clause is used as in 87 27 (cp. note on 87 29).

95 16 *quem . . . gauderent*: *at whose presence (arrival) . . . rejoice*; tense determined by *inventus est*.

95 18 *auctoritatibus . . . confirmandam*: *that this case needs to be strengthened by the opinions of experts* (corresponding to *auctor*, *expert*, in line 19).

95 19 *omnium*: = *omnis generis*.

95 20 *maximarum rerum*: *important undertakings*. — *P. Servilius (Vatia)*: consul in 79 B.C., who fought against the pirates in Asia Minor, and conquered the Isaurians.

95 21 *exstiterunt*: = *fuerunt*, with *tantae* as pred.

95 22 *deliberetis*: causal clause. A primary tense here follows the perf. definite (pres. perf.); cp. Gram. § 67.

95 23 *C. (Scribonius) Curio*: consul in 76 B.C., and then governor of Macedonia. His conquest of the Dardani (in Serbia) won him a triumph. — *summis . . . prudentia*: all four abl. phrases depend on *praeditus*, though it is not quite appropriate with *rebus gestis*. With *beneficiis* trans. *who has*

received; with **maximis**, etc., and performed; with **ingenio** and **prudentia**, possessing. The **beneficia** which he had received included his public offices and a triumph.

95 24 **Cn. (Cornelius) Lentulus**: consul in 72 B.C.; was defeated by Spartacus; a very severe censor; *legatus* of Pompey against the pirates (coast of Italy).

95 25 **in quo . . . cognostis**: lit., of course, *in whom you all have recognized that, in harmony with your distinguished honors, there is the highest wisdom*, etc. What is it that makes this impossible Eng.? First, the un-English expression, *in whom there is . . . wisdom*; and second, failure to bring out what is meant by *your* (= *conferred*, not 'possessed,' by you) and *honors* (= *public offices*). Moreover, *in harmony with* is stiff. Considering these points, we might say, *a man whose sound sense and solid worth you showed that you appreciated when you chose him to fill the highest offices*. Apply to this rendering the tests suggested in 95 14, and try to improve it. Finally, keep these two notes in mind, and *train yourself* to turn "translation English" into Eng. that expresses the exact thought of the Lat. in a form that would not make one suspect that it was a trans. This is well worth doing, even at the cost of great pains.

95 27 **C. Cassius (Varus)**: consul in 73 B.C.; also defeated by Spartacus in 72 B.C., in Cisalpine Gaul. — **singulari**: Gram. § 145.

95 28 **ut . . . videamur**: indir. quest., — *how we are evidently able*. **Auctoritibus**, *expert opinions*, is the abl. of means with **respondere**. These will offset the objections of Catulus, etc. — **orationi**: *arguments*.

96 2 **sententiam**: i. e. the open expression of his **voluntas** (*purpose, intention*) in proposing this **lex** (*bill*). Note the conj.

96 4 **Romano**: abl. abs. giving a reason, — *with the . . . to back you*.

96 5 **pertimescas**: for the **neve**-clause cp. Gram. § 272, a. The optimates were ready to bring an accusation against him. — **in te . . . esse**: cp. note on **in quo**, 95 25.

96 6 **tantam . . . studio**: *this vast and deeply interested throng*.

96 7 **quantam iterum**: freely, *which for the second time*; the previous occasion was the passing of the Gabinian Law.

96 9 **dubitemus**: Gram. § 174. This clause contrasts the *end* (**re**) with the *means* or *possibility* (**facultate**) of its attainment.

96 10 **est in me**: *I have* (possession of a quality).

96 11 **laboris, ingeni**: *application, ability*. — **quicquid . . . possum**: sc. **consequi** for the sake of the Eng.

96 12 **atque**: here, as freq., not *and in addition* but *that is*, since **potestate** merely names definitely what **beneficio** put broadly. Eng. might combine the units of thought more closely: *the authority which you were good enough to give me in electing me to a praetorship* (Gram. § 44, a).

96 16 **defero**: *I put at your disposal*.

96 17 huic . . . praesident: *loco* and *templo* both refer to the Rostra, which had been duly consecrated once for all by the augurs (hence "inaugurate"), in order that auspices might be taken on that spot in preparation for every gathering of the people. An area so marked off and consecrated was called a *templum* (cp. Vocab.). Trans. *this hallowed spot* (not necessarily hendiadys in Lat.). The gods are those whose temples adjoined the Forum or looked down upon it from the Capitol (Introd. §§ 48, 50; note on 85 23).

96 19 perspicunt: *observe closely*. **Ad rem publicam adire** (or *accedere*) is *to enter public life, go into politics*.

96 20 hoc . . . facere: he means supporting the bill of Manilius.

96 21 conciliari: better act. in trans., — *that I am earning*. — **putem:** the *quo*-clause, parallel to *rogatu* (abl. of cause), states a *rejected* reason, — *nor because*, etc. (Gram. § 208).

96 22 amplitudine: *influence*.

96 23 quaeram: another clause of the same type, — *nor because I am seeking*. The two dat. (depending upon the two accs.) denote purpose or tendency, but in different directions (*against* and *to*) (Gram. § 115). Try to improve on the lit. *helps to public offices*.

96 24 ut . . . oportet: note esp. the trans. of *hominem* in Gram. § 203, b. Only the gods could really *guarantee* (*praestare*) anything.

96 25 eadem illa nostra: *the same which I have always followed*.

96 26 ratione vitae: i. e. *profession*.

96 27 consequemur: Cicero will not rise to the consulship by the favor of Pompey (*uno*), nor by haranguing the populace from the Rostra, but by hard work at the bar, as before (cp. 67 12 ff.). — **feret:** *shall permit*.

96 28 mihi susceptum est: Gram. § 114. Use the act.: *whatever I have undertaken (to do)*.

96 29 tantum . . . videar: Gram. § 199. Note the trans. there given, which may sound more natural if paraphrased *so far is it from being a correct view (videar) that I have sought some favor*, etc. For *aliquam* cp. note on 85 3. The distinction between *aliquis* and *quisquam* is most important.

97 1 bonam gratiam: only a stronger term for *gratiam* (cp. 96 20). — **ut . . . intellegam:** this result clause looks back to *tantum*, 96 29.

97 4 hoc honore: another reference to his praetorship. — **praeditum . . . adfectum:** learn to handle these common words freely. *Since I possess or possessing as I do* is better than 'endowed with'; while *adfectus*, lit. *affected with*, is an all-round word which needs adjusting to almost every abl. with which it is found. Cp. notes on 88 10, 88 12, and 95 23.

97 5 statui: we infer that *me* will prove to be the subj. of an inf. to follow.

97 7 oportere: with *praeferre* for its subj., and *me* as subj. of *praeferre*. The closing sentence, subordinating *every advantage and interest of my own*, shows masterly arrangement: balanced parts, asyndeton, polysyndeton (Introd. § 22).

FOR ARCHIAS THE POET

PLACE: In court, probably in one of the basilicas by the Forum (Intro. § 49). The presiding judge is the orator's brother Quintus.

TIME: The year 62 B. C., in the prætorship of Quintus Cicero.

CIRCUMSTANCES: Cp. Introductory Note, below; also Intro. § 86.

INTRODUCTORY NOTE

Archias, a Greek poet, whose title to Roman citizenship is defended by Cicero in this speech, was born at Antioch, the foremost city of Syria.¹ He was at least a dozen years older than Cicero, so that his birth may be placed about 120 B. C. The social prominence of his family, and the celebrated schools of Antioch, assured him the best possible education. A talent for verse-making won him distinction while still a boy, and as a prodigy he was fêted in many Greek cities visited by him in the course of his travels. Several such cities in the south of Italy, notably Neapolis (Naples), bestowed upon him their rights of citizenship. With such honors, and already widely known in spite of his youth, he came to Rome in 102 B. C., and at once became the protégé of several aristocratic families, especially of the Luculli. With Marcus Lucullus (brother of Lucius, the general) he spent some time in Sicily, and on his return journey visited Heraclea, a Greek town in Lucania, on the Gulf of Tarentum. The Luculli were perhaps patrons of Heraclea. In this allied town Archias wished to be enrolled as a citizen, and his request was granted. Accordingly, when a law of 89 B. C. (*lex Plautia Papiria*), after the Social War, conceded Roman citizenship, under certain conditions, to all citizens of towns previously allied with Rome, Archias, having the required domicile in Italy at the time the law was passed, and having duly registered with one of the prætors within the specified sixty days, became a Roman citizen. He took the *nomen* (Licinius) of the Luculli, and was known as Aulus Licinius Archias.

Twenty-four years later (65 B. C.) older legislation against strangers was revived by a tribune, C. Papius, in a law which expelled from Rome all who had no domicile in Italy (*lex Papia*; cp. 103 19). Under this law, suit was brought in 62 B. C. against Archias by one Grattius, who sought to prove that the Greek, whose name could not be found on the census lists (owing to his long absences in the East with Lucius Lucullus), had falsely claimed Roman citizenship. As the poet, now nearly sixty, was sufficiently harmless, political influences are to be suspected, — an attempt, that is, to strike at the great, but unpopular Lucullus in the person of a literary man who had been his companion.

Cicero was personally concerned in more ways than one. Archias had given him some guidance in his studies in former years, and more recently had promised to write a Greek poem on the achievements of his consulship. In defending a literary man to whom he was thus indebted actually and prospectively, the orator disposes of the case itself very promptly; and almost as if literature itself were endangered, he devotes two thirds of his speech to a defense of letters, with special reference to poetry. The glowing language in which he clothes these things of the spirit has made this a favorite speech with most

¹ The main facts of Archias' life are given in this oration, esp. in §§ 4-11.

lovers of books. But, as an able Roman critic remarked, it was not the defense of an Archias that made Cicero a great orator, — it was to such speeches as those against Catiline or Verres that his fame was due.¹

Archias was evidently acquitted, but of his later years we know nothing, except for a bare mention in a later work of Cicero.² He had written Greek poems on the victory of Marius and Catulus over the Cimbri (101 B.C.), and on the campaigns of Lucullus against Mithridates, having accompanied the Roman general on his expeditions against the king of Pontus.³ He began the poem on Cicero's consulship, but there is no reason to think that he ever finished it.⁴ None of his works has been preserved, and he is known to fame through this oration alone.⁵

OUTLINE OF THE ARGUMENT

(1) Any gifts of mine as an orator should be at the service of Archias, such early encouragement did I have from him. (2) His talents may lie in another direction; but all the arts are linked together. (3) You must pardon me if I here employ a style rarely heard in the courts, (4) while I prove that he is a Roman citizen.

His birth, education, and early fame in Syria and elsewhere. (5) Honored with citizenship and other gifts by Greek cities in Italy, he came to Rome, where the Luculli welcomed him, (6) and other noted men did him honor.

On returning from Sicily he was made a citizen of Heraclea. (7) At Rome he fully complied with the law in registering as a citizen. (8) This would dispose of the legal aspects of the case. We have the most complete evidence obtainable. (9) He had a domicile at Rome, and registered with the magistrate who has kept the best records.

(10) There can be no doubt about his citizenship, either here or in those Greek cities. (11) Absence of his name from census rolls is easily explained. He has performed various acts requiring citizenship.

(12) My interest in Archias is due to this, that he provides us needed relaxation and inspiration. But poetry does not make me neglect my duties. (13) I may well devote to letters the time others give to their estates, to pleasures, or rest; for oratorical powers grow with reading. (14) I am indebted to books for training in character, to withstand the conflicts of life.

(15) Many of history's great men were indeed self-made; but best is the combination of natural gifts with training, — (16) for example, Scipio and others. If books yielded pleasure only, it would be the noblest pleasure, and without limitations.

(17) Gifts we lack ourselves should be respected in others; witness the popularity of Roscius, the actor. (18) Archias' gifts in extemporizing and in studied compositions. The poet is born, and divinely inspired.

(19) Civilized men must respect poets. Dead Homer is claimed by several cities; and shall we expel Archias, who has glorified Roman history? (20) Men of action wish

¹ Tacitus, *Dialogus*, 37, 7. He is not disparaging this speech, however.

² *De Div.* I, 79 (44 B.C.).

³ Cp. 103 24.

⁴ Cp. 112 3 ff.; *ad Att.* I, 16, 15.

⁵ Certain Greek epigrams are probably the work of another Archias.

poets to sing of their deeds. (21) Archias, in his epic on the Mithridatic War, has honored Rome, not merely Lucullus. (22) So Ennius, in singing of his heroes, glorified Rome herself, and hence received citizenship.

(23) Greek verses are more widely read than Latin; and we wish all the world to know of our glories. (24) Alexander realized the power of poetry, and counted Achilles fortunate. Pompey made his historian a citizen. (25) Sulla might have done the same thing for Archias, as he paid even a bad poet. (26) Metellus also would have been willing. All desire fame, even those who write against it. (27) More examples of generals who valued poets. A civilian jury must not be indifferent.

(28) Archias has begun a poem on my consulship. Such glory is the best reward of services. (29) The hope of fame after death is a spur to the best man. (30) Are statesmen to believe that their labors are perishable? There are better memorials than statues. I have always had posterity in view.

(31) Since Archias' character and ability are established, the facts of his case proved, you should decide in favor of an inspired poet who glorifies Rome.

(32) My simple statement of the legal case will commend itself to you; also, I trust, this unprofessional digression.

99 1-7 si . . . debet: this sentence becomes much easier if we realize at the beginning that it was uttered in the following units:

Si quid est in me ingeni, iudices,
 (quod sentio quam sit exiguum),
 aut si qua exercitatio dicendi,
 (in qua me non infitior mediocriter esse versatum),
 aut si huiusce rei ratio aliqua
 ab optimarum artium studiis ac disciplina profecta,
 (a qua ego nullum confiteor aetatis meae tempus abhorruisse) —
 earum rerum omnium
 vel in primis
 hic Aulus Licinius
 fructum a me repetere
 prope suo iure debet.

99 1 si quid: *whatever* (lit.?). — **est in me:** *I possess* (cp. note on 67 17. — **iudices:** Introd. § 40. — **quod . . . exiguum:** when a rel. clause contains another subordinating word (here it is the interrog. **quam**), Eng. requires the rel. to be replaced by an *and*, *but*, *for*, or *now*, and a demonstr. pron. The formula would be

$$\text{qui} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{et} \\ \text{sed} \\ \text{nam} \\ \text{iam} \end{array} \right\} + \text{is}$$

Our sentence thus becomes *et sentio quam exiguum id sit*. This formula, which should be committed to memory, is nearly always useful when dealing with the connecting rel. When there is not a second subordinating word (**cum**, **ut**, **si**, **quam**, etc.), the **et**, etc. may sometimes be omitted. Cicero speaks modestly of

his **ingenium**, *talent*; but why did he mention it at all? Because he wished to include the three elements which are necessary to the mastery of any art: natural gifts, practice, and knowledge of principles. So Mr. Edison has inborn genius, has "toiled terribly," and understands the underlying laws of physics and chemistry.

99 2 exercitatio dicendi, etc.: *freely, whatever skill in public speaking I possess (or readiness of speech I have)*.

99 3 versatum, etc.: *and upon this . . . have bestowed no small pains*. **Mediocriter** continues the impression of modesty contained in **quod . . . exiguum**. In reality, his training had been of the severest kind, and his *readiness (exercitatio)* had been acquired through years of persistent effort. — **huiusce . . . aliqua**: *possibly some acquaintance with the science (or theory) of my profession*. 'Possibly' is used because **aliqua** suggests that quite likely he does have this kind of knowledge. If a small child says to his father, "Did you bring me *anything* from New York?" he sounds less hopeful than if he says "Did you bring me *something (aliquid)*?"

99 4 optimarum . . . disciplina: the Roman equivalent of a university education, — *freely, the learning acquired through the study of the liberal arts*.

99 5 profecta: *proceeding (resulting) from*; cp. **93 16**. Cicero always insisted upon the most liberal type of education for the public speaker. Philosophy and literature were essential to such preparation. — **a qua . . . abhorruisse**: the antecedent of **qua** is **ratio**, — *and to this I admit no . . . has been indifferent*. **Abhorreo** really means *to shrink back shuddering*, but it is often found in a weaker sense, just as people use "awfully" without any thought of being filled with awe.

99 6 vel in primis: *more than any other man (lit. among the very first)*. — **hic**: *my client*.

99 7 A. Licinius: how Archias came to have these Roman names added to his own is told in the first paragraph of the Introductory Note. Cicero's use of **A. Licinius** suggests to the jury that Archias would not have run the risk of using a Roman name unless he had really been naturalized. — **repetere . . . debet**: *deserves (or is entitled) to claim as his due*.

99 8 quoad longissime: *as far as (lit. whereunto farthest)*.

99 10 repetens, etc.: *intrans., going back as far as that (lit. retracing even from that time)*. — **hunc . . . mihi principem . . . exstitisse (= fuisse)**: *that he has been my leader*. For the case of **mihi** cp. Gram. § III. — **ad: in.**

99 11 rationem: *systematic pursuit*. — **horum: = meorum**.

99 12 quod si: if then (rather than 'but if'). — **haec: = mea**.

99 13 conformata: *molded, cultivated*. Cicero had a poor voice to begin with. Archias was not a professor of elocution, but he did recite his own poems in public, and may well have given Cicero some *instructions (praeceptis)* as well as *encouragement (hortatu)*. — **non nullis aliquando**: not 'to anyone at any

time,' which would be **umquam cuiquam**, suggesting a possibility at best remote, but *to various persons in the past*. Cp. note on **aliqua**, 99 4, and remember that **aliquis : aliquando :: quisquam : umquam**. — **saluti**: Gram. § 115. — **a quo**: since **accepimus** is act., it must mean *from* (not 'by') *whom*. Trans. after the antecedent, **huic ipsi**, l. 15.

99 14 **ceteris . . . servare**: Cicero says *I can render services (opitulari) to all my other (clients) (ceteris) and keep some of them safe* (from the perils of the law). He recognizes that while a lawyer serves all his clients, he can win lawsuits for only some of them.

99 15 **quantum . . . nobis**: *as far as in me lies*.

99 16 **opem et salutem**: corresponding to the meaning of **opitulari** and **servare**. — **debemus**: *I am bound*. NOTE. It is possible to trans. the **a quo** clause where it stands by paraphrasing: *and if I have received from him*, etc. — **a . . . miretur**: *may happen to be surprised at my speaking in this way* (lit.?). Cp. Gram. § 272.

99 17 **quod . . . ingeni**: *because my client has a different type* (lit. *ability*) of *mind*, or *natural gift*. **Quidam** is sometimes practically equiv. to *a* or *an*.

99 18 **neque**: *and not*. — **haec**: *which I possess*. — **ratio aut disciplina**: *theoretical knowledge and practical skill*. — **aut**: *and*, as often in neg. sentences (Gram. § 48). — **ne nos quidem . . . fuimus**: *I also have not been* (Gram. § 37, c).

99 19 **dediti**: here simply an adj. The subord. clause **ne . . . disciplina** depends logically upon an unexpressed *let me assure you*. — **penitus**: i. e. *exclusively*. Cicero was not an orator to the exclusion of other intellectual activities.

99 20 **etenim . . . pertinent**: trans. **artes** and **humanitatem** with care. 'Arts' and 'humanity' won't do. Cicero is asserting the kinship of the various studies belonging to a liberal education, — "liberal" in the Roman sense of befitting a freeman, who left the baser activities to slaves.

100 1 **videatur**: Gram. § 272. The subj. is **me . . . uti**. — **quaestione . . . publico**: *in a regularly established criminal court, and at a state trial*. See Introd. § 40 for the **quaestiones perpetuae**. The point is that although the state is concerned, and therefore it is a serious and formal occasion, Cicero is going to allow himself certain liberties which he justifies because of the personality of the defendant, Archias.

100 2 **cum . . . frequentia**: as the **cum**-clause and the following phrases list the circumstances which may make Cicero's unconventionality surprising, obviously **cum** means *although*. — **res agatur**: *the case is (to be) argued*.

100 3 **virum**: Quintus Cicero, brother of the orator; the adj. is stereotyped compliment. — **severissimos**: *strict* (not 'severe'). — **iudices**: *jury*, as in 99 1. — **conventu . . . frequentia**: *when such a crowd of people has gathered* (Gram. § 141).

100 5 **consuetudine . . . sermone**: i. e. he is going to use a *style of speaking* (**genere dicendi**) at variance with both courtroom practice and the conventional diction of the orator.

100 6 **abhorreat**: for the mood cp. Gram. § 174. In § 182 we find a second reason for the subjv. — **quaeso . . . veniam**: the long **ne**-clause has led up to **quaeso** as main verb. Politeness leads him to abandon a direct statement (that this novel style was, after all, suited to the present case) and to substitute a request for a favor (to be made clear in a moment).

100 7 **reo**: the **reus**, of course, is Archias. — **vobis . . . spero**: (*and*) *to you, as I hope*.

100 8–11 **ut me . . . dicentem . . . patiamini**: (*namely*) *that since I am speaking . . . you permit me*.

100 10 **litteratissimorum**: we are to imagine the presence of not a few men of letters, as it had probably been rumored that Cicero would not confine his defense to the question of law. For **hoc concursu** cp. note on line 3. — **humanitate**, etc.: also circumstantial; freely, *before an enlightened jury such as this* (lit. *with this cultivation of yours*). — **hoc . . . iudicium**: (*and*) *finally since it is this particular praetor who is holding court*. Quintus Cicero's interest in poetry was well known.

100 14 **periculis**: *trials*, esp. criminal (cp. 67 13). — **tractata est**: Cicero borrows his figures from the stage, as though the rôle (**persona**) of a poet were to be played before his present audience, — a rôle seldom *represented* (**tractata**) in court. Hence **persona** is *a character* (not 'person'). The *tranquil pursuits* (**otium ac studium**, hendiadys) of poets seldom brought them into court.

100 15 **quod si**: not 'but if'; for since there is no other subj. for the *infs.*, **quod** must be a pron., — *and if . . . this* (cp. note on 99 1).

100 16 **perficiam ut . . . putetis**: *I will make you think*.

100 17 **segregandum**: sc. **esse**.

100 18 **asciscendum fuisse**: *ought to have been made a citizen* (Gram. § 288 fin.; in dir. disc. **asciscendus fuit**; cp. 88 2).

100 19 **ex pueris excessit**: *had passed beyond childhood* (lit.?). If Cicero is exact, Archias was about fifteen. — **ab eis artibus**: belongs with **se contulit**, not with **excessit**. He *turned from school work* (**eis artibus**, etc.) *to the profession of authorship* (**scribendi studium**). For the tense cp. Gram. § 200 and *a*.

100 20 **artibus**: as in 99 20. — **aetas puerilis**: we should say simply *boys* (lit.?). — **ad . . . informari**: lit. *to be shaped toward cultivation*. The whole may be freely rendered *from the studies commonly* (cp. **solet**) *included in the liberal education of the young*. We might almost say *the usual academic studies of boys*.

100 21 **primum Antiochiae**: belongs with **antecellere coepit**.

100 22 **loco nobili**: *of (a family of) high rank* (the source; Gram. § 137).

100 23 **copiosa**: Antioch had been, and was again later, a great commercial center, having a large trade with both the East and the West, and being very *populous* (**celebri**). For **urbe** cp. Gram. § 154 fin. — **liberalissimis studiis**: *the highest culture*.

100 26 **sic . . . celebrabantur**: *brought such crowds together*, lit. *were so thronged*. **Adventus** is plur., to indicate *visits* to numerous cities. The Eng. sing. may be reinforced by *always*, to bring out the force of the tense. **Post** is the adv., *afterwards*.

100 27 **expectatio hominis**: *anticipation* is sufficient in Eng. — **ipsius adventus admiratioque**: *the admiration when he did arrive* (lit.?). With **adventus**, **ipsius** is subj. gen.; with **admiratio**, obj. gen. (Gram. §§ 117, 118).

100 28 **superaret**: trans. this clause with pass. voice, — *that his reputation . . . was exceeded by . . . and anticipation by*, etc. — **Italia**: here, as sometimes, equiv. to *southern Italy* (Magna Græcia), which had many Greek inhabitants. — **Graecarum . . . disciplinarum**: *Greek learning and its practice*.

100 29 **Latio**: the point is that the Greek culture had interested the Latin-speaking population near Rome as well as the Greeks farther south.

101 2 **Romae**: the place least likely to concern itself with Greek learning. **Tranquillitatem** refers to the comparative quiet in the city during the years between the Gracchi and the Social War.

101 4 **donarunt**: cp. 103 15 ff. Locri was under the "toe" of Italy, — a Greek colony, like the other cities here mentioned. Regium (Reggio) was opposite Messina (Messina, in Sicily). Neapolis (Naples) and Tarentum (Taranto) were the most important cities of southern Italy. A Greek might be a citizen of several cities at the same time. — **praemiis**: esp. wreaths of gold, etc. With **donare**, to *present*, the thing presented is freq. in the abl. of means, and the recipient the dir. obj., exactly as we may say either "He presented me with a gift" or "He presented a gift to me." But with **dare** only the latter is possible.

101 5 **aliquid . . . iudicare**: *were at all competent to form an estimate about men of talent*. The *at all* comes from **aliquid** (lit. *to judge some* (judgment)). Note the plur. of **ingenium** used of men. Trans. the **et** before **Tarentini** *not only*, and that before **omnes** *but also*, as this gives a more natural effect than the usual *both . . . and*.

101 6 **hac . . . famae**: *this wide reputation* (lit.?).

101 7 **notus**, etc.: *known even to those* (Romans) *who had not seen him*. The reason is expressed by an abl.

101 8 **Catulo**: Marius is given prominence by the unusual wording, in place of **Mario** (**quartum**, *for the fourth time*) **et Catulo consulibus** (102 B.C.). — **nactus . . . eos**: this sentence shows that **Mario . . . Catulo** was, for Archias, more than a date — it was a stroke of luck. Trans. *he found at the outset men occupying the consulship* (lit. *those* (as) *consuls*). **Res** = *themes*.

101 12 **posset**: descr. clause. Marius defeated the Teutons at Aquæ Sextiæ (Aix-en-Provence) in that year, and in the next crushed the Cimbri in the plains of the Po, near Vercellæ, with Catulus' help. The latter (the second **alter**), unlike Marius, was a man of refinement, an orator, and author of a history

of his own consulship; father of the Catulus who opposed the Manilian bill (88 11, 91 20). *Adhibere* (*exhibit*) is appropriate with *studium*, *interest*, and *aures*, *attention* (lit. ?); but with *res gestas* supply some other similar verb, as *praeberē*, *furnish*, suggested by the drift of the sentence (zeugma, *Introd.* § 22, *n.* 5). — *Luculli . . . receperunt*: the great Lucullus was then a boy of about twelve to fourteen. *Praetextatus* here merely indicates youth; for Archias was beyond the age at which Roman boys still wore the *praetexta* (17 or 18), and, as a Greek, he did not wear it at all. For *domum suam* cp. *Gram.* § 101, *a.*

101 14 *fuit . . . senectuti*: if a foreigner said "That he has many friends is of his popularity," you would know he meant *due to* his popularity. On the same principle begin to trans. *this was* (*a proof*). The *ut*-clause of result is in appos. with *hoc*. *Prima favit* (note that *prima* is adj.) means *was the first to show favor* (*Gram.* § 107). *Ingeni ac litterarum* (*literary ability*), and also the gens. in the next line, form the pred. of *fuit* (*Gram.* § 119). *Eadem* = *also*. (For "I did this; I also did that," Lat. is apt to say "I did this; the same (I) did that.") The point of *senectuti* (*to his old age*, or, freely, *to him even at an advanced age*) is that had he not been both worthy and interesting, the Luculli would have dropped him years before. They were his friends for about forty years.

101 18 *temporibus*: *period* (really *circumstances*). — *erat . . . iucundus*: *he interested*.

101 19 *audiebatur*: Archias declaimed his poems.

101 20 *Lucullos vero . . . devinctam . . . honore*: *but it was during the time of his close intimacy with the Luculli, etc. that he was most popular*. His friendship with these great families made others eager to copy the fashion they set. *Devinctam consuetudine teneret* means, more lit., *he held them in the bonds of (bound by) intimacy*. Metellus Numidicus (uncle of Lucullus) fought Jugurtha in Africa; he was later recalled from exile through the efforts of his son (hence called the "Dutiful"). Æmilius Scaurus was long a leader of the aristocracy; the younger Catulus, one of the foremost figures of Cicero's time, rebuilder of the Capitoline temple, and opposer of the Manilian bill (cp. note on line 12). Crassus is the eminent orator; Drusus, the tribune who lost his life in an effort to reconstitute the senate and give the vote to Italians on the eve of the Social War (91 B.C.). The Octavius chiefly meant is Cinna's colleague and bitter enemy, who was massacred in a reign of terror, 87 B.C. Cato here is the father of Cato of Utica. The most noted Hortensius was the orator, and rival of Cicero; he had been the leading counsel for the defense in the trial of Verres (*Introd.* § 60).

101 23 *colebant*: change the voice, to keep the order, — *he had the respect not only of, etc.*

101 25 *simulabant*, etc.: freely, *even the possible pretenders*. *Audire*, though the weaker term (mere pleasure of hearing), follows the stronger *percipere* (*grasp, appreciate his art*), — an unusual order.

101 26 **satis longo intervallo**: abl. of time within which, — *some little time after*.

101 28 **Heracleam**: a colony of Tarentum; cp. Introductory Note, p. 404. The **cum**-clause is circumstantial, equiv. to *on his way back*. This was perhaps eight or ten years after he had come to Rome.

101 29 **foedere**, etc.: pred. descr. abl. (Gram. § 145), i. e. *enjoyed the privileges of a most favorable treaty* (hendiadys). It was a *civitas foederata*, paying no taxes to Rome, and independent in its domestic affairs; bound only to furnish, if need be, the quota of ships and men named in a very favorable treaty two centuries old.

102 1 **civitatem**: *body of citizens*.

102 3 **impetravit**: the second **cum**-clause (**putaretur**) is best taken as concessive, — *although*, etc., with correl. **tum**, *yet especially* (Gram. § 230, a). — **civitas**: *citizenship*. — **lege**: the tribunes M. Plautius Silvanus and C. Papirius Carbo brought forward a law in 89 B.C., conferring Roman citizenship upon residents of Italy under certain conditions (cp. Introductory Note, p. 404).

102 4 **fuissent**: representing **fuertint**, fut. perf., of the actual text of the *lex Plautia Papiria*; i. e. *shall prove to be* (Gram. § 290). The citation of the law is in indir. disc. **Si qui** = **quicumque**, looking forward to a demonstr. clause, — probably *they should be Roman citizens*, **ei cives Romani essent** (for **sunto** of dir. disc.). Note the dat. with **ascripti** here, but acc. with **in** in line 1.

102 5 **ferebatur**: defining the time exactly. The ind. is retained even in indir. disc., to stress the precise moment (Gram. § 292).

102 6 **essent professi**: completing the series of indirectly quoted fut. perfs. Registration must take place *within* the sixty days (Gram. § 155). Cicero breaks off the quotation of the law just before reaching the main clause (cp. note on line 4).

102 7 **haberet**: *had had* (Gram. § 62).

102 8 **familiarissimum suum**: *his intimate friend*. For this Q. Metellus Pius cp. 101 19, 111 13. — **nihil aliud nisi**: *nothing else but*, equiv. to **tantum**, *only*.

102 10 **causa . . . est**: *the defense has been made*. Note pres. for fut. in **dicimus** and **dico**. — **horum**: *of these (arguments)*. Nothing is known of Archias' accuser, Grattius.

102 11 **Heracleae**: for the case cp. note on line 4 fin.

102 14 **religione et fide**: *conscientiousness and honor*. But it is less clumsy to say *a most influential, conscientious, and honorable man*. Bear this in mind in translating descr. abls.

102 19 **dicit**: note the three pairs of contrasted infs. Even an eye-witness usually testified **arbitror**, rather than **scio**. **Non audisse**, etc. = *did not learn of it by hearsay . . . was not (merely) present*.

102 20 **publico testimonio**: the *official attestation* of their magistrates.

102 21 **qui**: the connecting relative; equiv. to *and they*.

102 24 **omnes**: emphatic close (acc. with **tabulas**), — *every one of them*. The Italian War is commonly known as the Social War; i. e. the war with the **socii**, the cities of Italy which had rebelled against the terms of their alliance with Rome. In this war (90–88 B.C.), the record office of Heraclea was destroyed. **Hic** expresses indignation: *at this point*, in the face of the official statement; cp. 83 27. Note that **ad** = *in reply to*.

102 25 **quaerere**, etc.: *but to ask for what*, etc. (asyndeton).

102 26 **tacere**: i. e. purposely *ignore* the testimony (**memoria**) of men. — **litterarum**: *records*. — **flagitare**: a very strong word, — *insist upon*. Asyndeton again.

102 27 **religionem**: as in line 14; concessive clause. — **integerrimi**: *perfectly honest*.

102 28 **fidemque**, etc.: *confirmation under oath*. Heraclea is now spoken of as a Roman *municipium* (a result of the Social War), no longer as a *civitas foederata* (cp. 101 29).

102 30 **desiderare**: though Grattius had claimed that records were quite commonly altered. **Idem dicis** = *you also state* (in another connection). In spite of his lack of faith in records Grattius calls for them. Again no conj. (with **tabulas**). — **an . . . habuit**: *did he not, then, have?* — **tot annis**: i. e. twelve or thirteen years (Gram. § 151).

102 31 **datam**: for the use of the ptcp. (like that in **ab urbe condita**) cp. Gram. § 75. — **sedem**: *headquarters*.

102 32 **est professus**: as in line 6 above. The three points which Cicero has been discussing are (1) citizenship in a *civitas foederata*, (2) a domicile in Italy at the time the law was passed, (3) registration at the office of a praetor within sixty days.

103 1 **immo vero**: here, in an answer, equiv. to *yes indeed*. — **tabulis**: really an abl. of means; but Eng. would say *according to*. — **professus**: sc. **est**. — **ex . . . praetorum**: *among those belonging to the registration conducted by that board of praetors* (lit.?).

103 3 **auctoritatem**: *credit, reliability*. No records kept by other praetors of that board were so reliable. **Obtinent** = *retain*. — **cum . . . resignasset**: as the misdeeds of Appius and Gabinius are in evident contrast with Metellus' sense of duty, **cum** means *whereas* (concessive). — **Appi**: Appius Claudius Pulcher, father of Cicero's bitterest enemy, Clodius. He was then a praetor, later consul (in 79 B.C.)

103 6 **resignasset**: unsealing a document for dishonest alteration suggested this figure for *depriving of all credit*. Contrast with **post damnationem** makes **incolumis** = **ante damnationem**; cp. note on 77 31. Thus Publius Gabinius was discredited first by his *worthlessness* (**levitas**) and then by his *downfall* (**cala-**

mitas) after conviction (**damnatio**), on a charge of extortion in his province, fifteen years later (74 B.C.). Note asyndeton after both **dicerentur** and **levitas**.

103 7 omnium: strengthens the superl. Trans. *the most conscientious and loyal of men*. — **tanta . . . fuit**: cp. note on 102 14.

103 9 dixerit: for perf. subjv. in a result clause cp. Gram. § 69. The discovery of an erasure in his records led Metellus to have that case brought before a jury, that the citizenship of the person in question might be at once determined.

103 10 videtis: i. e. the entry **A. Licinius** stands in the records, with no sign of alteration. **Igitur** is *well then* or *now*.

103 11 dubitetis: Gram. § 174.

103 13 ascriptus: fuerit, in place of **sit**, because referring to a state of things now past and gone, as no such enrollments were legal after a town had become a Roman *municipium*. Note the abl. here (cp. note on 102 4 fin.). — **cum . . . impertiebant**: the time before 89 B.C. is definitely marked by the **cum**-clause, — *at a time when* (Gram. § 220). — **mediocribus**: *ordinary people*; dat. with **impertiebant**. — **et**: Gram. § 42, a.

103 14 humili: *inferior*. Cicero is reflecting the Roman's contempt for actors, musicians, and dancers. — **arte**: *accomplishment*.

103 15 Graecia: i. e. Magna Græcia. — **Reginos . . . noluisse**: *I suppose . . . were unwilling (to give) to my client, etc., what (id quod) they used to hand out right and left (largiri, lit. lavish) to stage performers!* For the mood of **solebant** cp. Gram. § 291.

103 18 quid: Gram. § 30.

103 19 datam: i. e. to the allies in Italy, with reference to the *lex Plautia Papiria*. For **post . . . datam** cp. 102 31.

103 20 inrepserunt: i. e. without a valid claim. It was more difficult after the *lex Papia* of 65 B.C., under which the present case was brought to trial (cp. Introductory Note, p. 404). The ind. with **cum** again refers to a well-defined space of time: *at a time when . . . have slipped into the records or in a day when, etc.*

103 21 illis: sc. **tabulis**. Cicero does not produce these records, though not all of these cities had had fires in their record offices!

103 22 requiris: Grattius did not find the name **A. Licinius** in the census lists. But the census had been taken at irregular intervals.

103 23 scilicet: a sarcastic *of course, or you would!* — **obscurum**: *ironical*. — **proximis censoribus**: *in the most recent censorship, lit. the late (incumbents) being censors*; cp. 45 19 and note.

103 25 eodem quaestore: not 'the same quaestor,' for he has just called him an *imperator*, but *also with Lucullus, who was then quaestor*. (Enough words have been added to make the sense clear.) — **primis** (sc. **censoribus**) . . . **Crasso**: lit. *Julius and Crassus being the first censors* (the first after the new

law); freely, *in the first censorship, that of*, etc. With **superioribus** also supply **ensoribus**. In reverse order Cicero mentions three successive censuses, with the reason in each case for the absence of Archias' name: (1) that of 89 B.C., L. Julius Cæsar and P. Licinius Crassus censors; on that occasion there was no census of population; (2) that of 86 B.C., when Lucullus was in Asia as quæstor under Sulla (in command against Mithridates); (3) that of 70 B.C., when Lucullus was himself conducting the war against Mithridates: this was the most recent census. At the time of (2) and (3) Archias was in the East, as a civilian companion of Lucullus. For the censors cp. *Introd.* § 29.

103 27 confirmat: those who took the census could not legally establish the claims to citizenship of all the men they registered.

103 28 iam tum: *even at that date* (of the census). — **ita**: *as such*, i. e. as a citizen. — **pro cive**: emphatic position at the beginning of the main clause; to be connected with **et . . . pro consule**, **104 1-4**.

103 29 quem . . . versatum: *whom you accuse of not having possessed the rights*, etc. (lit.?).

104 2 nostris legibus: only a citizen could make a legal will. — **adiit . . . civium**: *received property by inheritance from*, etc. (lit.?).

104 3 civium Romanorum: friends of his who remembered him in their wills. Only a citizen could be an heir or even receive a legacy.

104 4 pro consule: *as proconsul*. Lat. used also the single word **proconsul**. A returning provincial governor reported to the quæstors a list of persons under his command, or in his retinue, who deserved to be rewarded by the state with a grant of money, — a bonus. In Lucullus' **beneficia**, or *bonus list* (lit. *rewards*), Archias' name was found, — more evidence that he was a citizen at that time. Returning now to **pro cive** (**103 28**), we connect the phrase with **testamentum saepe fecit**, etc.: *in the quality of a citizen . . . he often*, etc. For the treasury (**aerarium**) cp. *Introd.* § 28. — **argumenta**: *convincing proofs*. — **si quae**: *whatever* or *such as*, may be combined with **argumenta**. (Some, however, supply *find* with **potes**, from **quaere** (= *try to find*), taking **si quae** in its other sense of *if any*.) Cp. 99 1.

104 6 iudicio: answering the **ne ipsius quidem iudicio** of **103 29 f**. Cicero now closes his legal argument and enters upon a defense of poetry and poets, and of literature in general; and this fills nearly two thirds of the speech in its published form. — **revincetur**: for the negs. cp. *Gram.* § 40.

104 7 hoc homine delectemur: *I am interested in the defendant*.

104 8 ubi: *that wherewith*; really, *a place in which*. Archias, he says in effect, is my resort, for rest and refreshment of mind, and of ear as well, *after* (**ex**) the familiar *din* of the courts (**forensi strepitu**).

104 9 convicio: Roman lawyers often indulged in noisy abuse. — **conquiescant**: the descr. clauses are introduced by **ubi**, and take the place of an obj. for **suppeditat** (*Gram.* §§ 174, 204). The prefix **con-** strengthens

quiescant; after a hard day in court he will find complete rest in the company of books.

104 10 **suppetere . . . dicamus**: if someone should say, "There is not at hand for me what I may eat," you would know what he meant, and know the correct Eng. Get the trans. here in the same way. **Suppetere** is equiv. to a pass. of **suppeditare**.

104 11 **rerum**: the descr. **quod**-clause includes purpose (i. e. *thoughts to express*), and gives a subj. for **posse**. The **an**-question implies that Grattius cannot possibly hold any different view (Gram. § 32, *d*).

104 12 **excolamus**: from poetry as a means of relaxation he has passed over to literary pursuits in general, followed for self-improvement. And, as **animos** shows, **nobis** and **nostros** now include other orators and public men.

104 13 **contentionem**: *strain*. — **relaxemus**: the thought of mental refreshment (unbending) recurs, but with no limitation to poetry, the reading of which was commended to students of oratory by many teachers, including Quintilian. — **ego vero**: *for myself indeed*.

104 14 **deditum**: in harmony with 99 4 f. — **pudeat**: Gram. §§ 55, *b*; 96, *a*.

104 15 **se litteris abdiderunt**: *buried themselves in their books* (lit. *by means of books*).

104 16 **ad . . . fructum**, etc.: *contribute to the common good*. — **in . . . proferre**: *bring anything to light for men to see* (lit.?). The force of **nihil** is distributed, not destroyed, by **neque . . . neque**; cp. note on line 6.

104 17 **pudeat**: repetition of the same verb strengthens the antithesis of **ceteros** (l. 14) and **me**. For the subjv. cp. Gram. § 55, *d*.

104 18 **vivo**: *have lived* (Gram. § 62). — **tempore aut commodo**: *emergency or interest*.

104 19 **otium . . . somnus**: **otium** hints that Cicero did not confine business to office hours; **voluptas**, that he might stay away from sports or other pleasures to work on a case; **somnus**, that he would forego a siesta to serve a client.

104 21 **reprehendat**: potential, in a quest. (Gram. § 57). — **suscenseat**: **aut** is here equiv. to *and*, owing to the neg. implied in the quest. (Gram. § 48).

104 22 **obeundas**: Gram. § 86. We suspect that **quantum** will be followed by **tantum**; also that the meaning will be completed by a gen. of the whole.

104 23 **celebrandos**, etc.: freely, *for attending the holiday performances* (plays, races, gladiatorial combats, etc.).

104 24 **temporum**: at last the gen. needed to define each **quantum** (lit. *how much of time*, i. e. *the amount of time*; plur. to cover the various cases).

104 25 **tempestivis conviviis**: *to dinners beginning early*, i. e. by the middle of the afternoon, and so encroaching on business hours.

104 26 **pilae**: handball games were favorite amusements of the Romans, and are not frowned upon here, though paired with **alveolus**, the *board* used in gambling with dice. Gambling was permitted at the Saturnalia or in the case

of old men. For the last **quantum** use *and* or *or* in Eng., since **denique** shows that the last two are closely joined, as trivial occupations.

104 27 **sumpsero**: though **reprehendat** (l. 21) may have led us to expect **sumpsirim**, the fut. perf. shows confidence that he will continue such intellectual recreation (Gram. § 258). — **recolenda**: the fig. is from the garden. To pull the above together, notice the framework:

quantum ceteris (ad, etc.) conceditur temporum,
quantum alii tribuunt (conviviis, etc.),
tantum mihi (ad, etc.) sumpsero.

He will devote to study the time which is allowed to *everyone else* (**ceteris**) for legitimate business and recreation, and which *some others* (**alii**) use in frivolous amusement. — **eo . . . magis**: *all the more*.

104 28 **haec . . . oratio et facultas**: *my power as a speaker*.

104 29 **quae . . . me**: *and be that great or small* (lit.?).

105 1 **amicorum . . . defuit**: *has failed friends who were in peril of the law*. **Periculis** properly means *criminal trials*. — **quae si**: *but if this* (connecting rel.). — **illa . . . sunt**: *the things of chief importance* (in contrast with **oratio et facultas**, which some, he suggests, may not take very seriously). The following words show what Cicero thinks are **summa**.

105 2 **ex . . . hauriam**: indir. quest. with **sentio**. Of course **fonte** refers to literature.

105 3 **multisque litteris**: *and by much* (or *wide*) *reading*.

105 5 **laudem atque honestatem**: *merit and virtue*; for by met. **laus** may stand for that which earns praise (*worth, excellence*). — **ea**: evidently refers to **laus + honestas**, as a single idea.

105 7 **parvi**: *of small consequence*; cp. Gram. § 124. — **ducenda**: the indir. disc. automatically selects the meaning to be given in translating this word.

105 8 **hos**: as usual refers to the first person, i. e. *made upon me*. The popular party was determined to avenge the summary execution of the Catilinarians (i. e. Lentulus and the rest; Introd. § 84).

105 9 **obiecissem**: the dat. is more usual with this verb than the constr. found here.

105 10 **pleni . . . vetustas**: the sentence falls into two parts, (1) the statement that *all sorts of books* and the *maxims of philosophers* are full (*of this thought*) and (2) that *the history of the past* (**vetustas**) *abounds in instances* of the same thing. The first means that it is a universal *theory* that virtue is the highest good; the second, that history shows the theory in successful *practice*.

105 11 **quae . . . omnia**: we can keep the order, — *which would be lying in darkness, every one*.

105 12 **accederet**: *were not (being) shed upon them* (Gram. § 252). — **nobis . . . expressas . . . reliquerunt**: *have portrayed and left to us* (Gram. § 73).

105 15 **quas . . . mihi . . . proponens**: *and setting these before me* (= *by keeping these in view*).

105 17 **conformabam**: *used to train*. **Animus** and **mens** often combine to express all the mental and spiritual powers, i. e. *heart and mind* (*head*).

105 18 **quaeret quispiam**: a formula to introduce an objection which the speaker wishes to meet in advance (cp. 104 7, **quaeres**). — **quid**: Gram. § 30.

105 19 **proditae sunt**, etc.: i. e. *by the books to which he has just alluded*.

105 21 **quid respondeam**: i. e. *my answer*; indir. quest., subj. of **est**. The dir. quest. would also be subj.: *What am I to answer?* (Gram. § 55, *d*. The periphrastic is not used when such quests. become indir.). **Certum** = *settled, clear* (*to me*).

105 22 **excellenti . . . virtute**: descr. abls. in the pred. after **fuisse**, — *have displayed* (or *possessed*), etc.

105 23 **sine doctrina**: *without the effect of formal training*. — **naturae . . . divino**: *because of the almost superhuman quality of their natural endowment* (lit. *nature itself*).

105 24 **exstitisse** = **fuisse**. The verb means *to be* in some outstanding fashion. With no external aid they attained to self-mastery and stability of character, — *were both self-controlled and serious*. — **etiam . . . adiungo**: *he will go even further than his critics, because their objections cannot destroy his main contention, given in the next sentence*.

105 26 **valuisse** (with **ad**): *has been able to produce*. — **atque . . . contendo**: *and yet at the same time I assert*.

105 27 **cum . . . doctrinae**: the entire argument might be condensed into this: *High character can exist without education. More than this, character without education is better than education without character; but when the two are combined, we have something finer than either one by itself*.

105 28 **accesserit**: *there is given* (lit. *has been added*). — **ratio . . . doctrinae**: *the symmetrical development produced by training* (lit. *method and modeling of training*), *so to speak* (**quaedam**).

105 29 **tum . . . exsistere**: the subj. is **illud nescio quid praeclarum**; lit. *that distinguished something* (= *a certain distinction*). — **singulare**: *unique* (omit **ac**). — **solere exsistere**: *is the usual result*.

106 1 **ex . . . esse**, etc.: (*I assert*) *that to this class belong*. The force of **contendo** is still felt. — **hunc . . . Africanum**: *there were two Scipios who were given this title; as hunc would be used of one living at a nearer time, Scipio the Younger is meant*. — **quem**, etc.: the **quem** belongs to **hunc**, not to **numero**.

106 3 **Furium**: C. Laelius Sapiens and L. Furius Philus were intimate friends of this Scipio, and labored with him for the advancement of letters.

106 4 **fortissimum**: here equiv. to *of remarkable vigor*. — **illis temporibus**: *in those times, of his day*. **Numero** is to be supplied with **ex hoc** (anaphora).

106 5 **senem**: a celebrated example of studiousness at an advanced age. The elder (M. Porcius) Cato is often distinguished from his great-grandson (of Utica) by adding **senex**. He wrote a history (*Origines*, now lost), a work on farming (*de Agri Cultura*, extant), etc., and published many of his orations. He died in 149 B.C. Note the pairs of superls. — **nihil**: Gram. § 103.

106 6 **adiuvarentur**: the tense indicates the general experience of these men (*had not been helped all along*) (Gram. § 256, a).

106 8 **ostenderetur**: *were not held out* (as an inducement); Gram. § 252.

106 10 **humanissimam ac liberalissimam**: *entirely worthy of a man and a free-born Roman*.

106 11 **temporum**: *circumstances*. — **sunt**: with the gens., equiv. to *belong to* (Gram. § 119).

106 13 **adversis**: sc. **rebus**, — *in misfortune*; Gram. § 141.

106 16 **attingere**: *put our hands to, try our hands at*.

106 17 **deberemus**: *we should be bound*.

106 18 **videremus**: *we see*; sequence due to **deberemus**; attraction.

106 19 **fuit**: note **tam** with a descr. abl. which has the force of a pred. adj. — **commoveretur**: Q. Roscius was the leading comic actor of the age of Cicero, who had defended him in a lawsuit about fourteen years before, and who esp. admired his gracefulness (**venustas**, l. 21). — **qui . . . mortuus**: *although he had died in old age (or was an old man when he died)* (**senex**, pred.); Gram. § 170. **Tamen** shows the nature of the cum-clause.

106 21 **debuisset**, etc.: *freely, it seemed that he ought not*, etc.

106 22 **motu**: *agility*.

106 23 **nos**: meaning particularly the court, contrasts with **nobis omnibus** (i.e. every Roman). The first member of the sentence is subord. in thought: *well, then (ergo), if (or while) he . . . are we to be indifferent to*, etc. (Gram. § 280).

106 24 **hunc**: (repeated in line 27) subj. of **dicere**, l. 29.

106 27 **cum . . . nullam**: *without having written a single letter*.

106 28 **eis . . . agerentur**: *the topics of the day* (lit.?) (Gram. § 289).

106 29 **ex tempore**: much was made in ancient times of improvising in verse. — **revocatum**: *when encored*.

107 1 **eandem rem dicere**: *treat the same theme*.

107 2 **quae vero**: *but as for what*. — **accurate**: not 'accurately.' — **ea**: *these compositions*.

107 3 **veterum**: *classic*.

107 4 **diligam**, etc.: Gram. § 55, d.

107 5 **sic . . . accepimus**: *this truth we have learned*.

107 6 **ceterarum . . . constare**: *that (while) the practice of all other arts is founded (based) upon*.

107 7 **doctrina . . . arte**: *instruction and rules and theory*. — **poetam . . . valere**: *the poet's gift is born in him* (lit.?).

107 8 **mentis . . . excitari**: (changing to the act.) *it is his own (mentis) powers that cause his activity*. — **quasi . . . quodam**: *as it were with a kind of*. A paraphrase, keeping in mind the intended contrast with arts which may be learned by mere diligence, would be 'the poet derives his quality from nature, his impulse from within, his inspiration from the gods.'

107 9 **suo iure**: *with perfect right*. **Noster ille** stamps Ennius as a Roman celebrity, in contrast with the **veteres scriptores** (of line 3) and Archias. Quintus Ennius (239–169 B.C.) was regarded with reverence as the father of Roman poetry. He was the first to introduce the heroic hexameter, in his national epic, the *Annales*, of which, as of his tragedies, many fragments remain. An Italian from the far south (Calabria), he gained recognition at Rome, and Roman citizenship.

107 13 **poetae nomen**: Gram. § 121. — **nulla . . . violavit**: in contrast with **humanissimos**, *most refined*, stands **barbaria = gens barbara**, *rude folk, wild tribe*.

107 14 **saxa . . . consistunt**: Cicero's hearers would be reminded of the legends of Orpheus, Arion, and Amphion, who charmed animals, trees, stones, etc. by their music.

107 16 **instituti . . . optimis**: *educated men that we are* (lit. *instructed in the best subjects*).

107 18 **moveamur**: Gram. § 55, *d*. **Nos** shows the same asyndeton as in 106 23; and the mold of the whole sentence is the same (Gram. § 280).

107 20 **Salaminii**: their Salamis was at the east end of Cyprus, not the Salamis near Athens (cp. note on 108 5).

107 21 **confirmant**: slightly stronger than **dicunt**; but there is no true climax in this notable series. Smyrna comes last, as perhaps the most probable claimant, and as he has more to say about it.

107 22 **dedicaverunt**: i. e. honors were paid him as a hero, with a temple and a statue. Smyrna had a coin also, the *homer*. Alliteration (the names).

107 23 **contendunt**: other claimants were Athens, Rhodes, and Argos. — **ergo**, etc.: this sentence is of the same type as 106 21 ff. Apply the same method in translating.

107 24 **alienum**: of course none of them would admit that he was *a stranger*, but only one of the claims could be correct.

107 26 **repudiabimus**: **repudiemus**, deliberative subjv., would have meant *Are we to reject?* and would be answered by 'Yes, reject him,' or 'No, don't.' The fut. ind. here is an indignant *Are we going to reject?* answerable in the same mood and tense. Contrast with the subjvs. in lines 4, 5, and cp. Gram. § 55, *d*.

107 28 **et**: *not only*. — **Cimbricas res**: not 'the Cimbric affairs,' but *the campaign against the Cimbri or the story of the Cimbri*. He had written an epic poem on Marius' victories over the German invaders in 102–101 B.C.

107 29 adulescens: used like *senex* in 106 20, — *in his youth*. — **ipsi:** as being about the last man one would expect to take notice of a poet. But this poet wrote about Marius' own exploits! — **durior:** *rather indifferent*. The jurors may have smiled at this mild description of the unpolished Marius; cp. 106 19.

108 1 iucundus fuit: *found favor with, or was liked by, or made a good impression on*; cp. 101 18.

108 2 aversus . . . patiatur: some people of our day might express this as follows: 'No one is such a lowbrow that he can't bear to have someone make a song about him.' Please use polite Eng., though, in your trans.! Note the instinct for publicity, strong two thousand years ago; the *aeternum praeconium* was what counted.

108 3 patiatur: Gram. § 175.

108 4 summum: *a great* (not 'the greatest').

108 5 cum . . . quaereretur: *on being asked* (lit. *when it was asked*, etc.). The Greek word (*acroama*) denoted *anything heard*, esp. *music*; then the *singer, player, or reader*; here *performer*. Themistocles was victorious over the Persian fleet at Salamis, 480 B.C., but spent his last years in exile in Persia and Asia Minor, dying about 460 B.C.

108 7 praedicaretur: clause subord. to *audire* understood (sc. *vocem se libentissime audire*) (Gram. § 289). Of course, this was Themistocles' little joke, even if Cicero pretends to take him seriously.

108 8 dilexit: Plotius Gallus was the first to teach Lat. oratory at Rome. For the ind. in indir. disc. in *ea quae gesserat* = *res gestas suas* cp. Gram. § 291 fin.

108 9 vero: *but*, justifying our trans. of *et* in 107 28.

108 10 versatum, etc.: i. e. *involving frequent shifts of fortune* (more lit. *involved in*).

108 11 hoc: i. e. Archias. A poem in several books is implied. — **expressum est:** *has been portrayed (narrated)* (cp. 105 14). In spite of *totum* Cicero means that part of the Third Mithridatic War which was conducted by Archias' patron, Lucullus, 74–67 B.C. (cp. pages 363–364, 6–10). — **qui:** *now these*.

108 13 inlustrant: as described in 107 27 ff.

108 14 Pontum: repetition gives *populus Romanus* emphasis, — *it was the Roman people that*, etc.

108 15 vallatum: cp. 76 1 ff. Note hendiadys for *the lay of the land* (*natura*, etc.).

109 1 fudit: at the battle of Tigranocerta, capital of the Armenian king, Tigranes, 69 B.C. Lucullus had scarcely 15,000 men (cp. page 364, 10). **Non maxima** is understatement, or litotes (Introd. § 22, n, 2). — **populi . . . est:** *to the Roman people belongs the credit (laus)*, etc.

109 3 ereptam . . . atque servatam: *rescued and kept safe*. For the relief of Cyzicus by Lucullus (73 B.C.) cp. page 363, 6, and 75 26 f.

109 4 **nostra**: felt as pred. as naturally as "theirs" in "Theirs but to do and die." The subj., of course, is **pugna**. Lit. *as ours will always be mentioned*, etc.; freely, *ours will be the eternal fame and glory (of having won) that*, etc. Note the order of the modifiers of **pugna**.

109 5 **L. Lucullo . . . est**: the *cum*-clause refers definitely to **pugna**; hence the mood (Gram. § 220). It "tags" that battle as effectively as a rel. clause would as being 'the battle when the enemy's fleet was sunk.' But Eng. would probably prefer a different "hook-up," — perhaps 'when Lucius Lucullus fought with our foes, and their captains were killed and their fleet was sunk.' (A Roman war galley was not armed with a bronze beak for nothing!)



WARSHIP

109 8 **triumphi**: the reference to Lucullus' triumph was all the more effective because it had occurred only a year before (63 B.C.). Tenedos is an island opposite Troy. It served as an important base in the naval operations of 1915 against Gallipoli. For the naval victory (73 B.C.) cp. page 363, 7; 75 27 ff. — **quae = et haec** (cp. note on 99 1). For the position of **eis** cp. Gram. § 164. Lit. *and by whose talents these are lauded, by them*, etc.; freely, *and when these are lauded by men of genius, then . . . by such poets (eis)*. Note, and preserve in translating, the emphasis on **populus Romanus** and on **nostra** through this long sentence.

109 10 **Ennius**: a poet appreciated by men of action. Cp. note on 107 9.

109 11 **ex marmore**: *in marble* (a bust or statue). We should say, *his marble bust is thought to stand* (lit. *to have been placed*). The most famous of republican tombs, that of the Scipios, was on the Appian Way, outside the Porta Capena (but inside the later wall of Aurelian), and may still be visited. The inscriptions (of great importance for early Lat.), together with a much imitated sarcophagus and a laurel-crowned bust in stone, are in the Vatican. The poet was buried in that tomb, and Livy speaks of three statues there, one of which was said to be that of Ennius (38, 56, 4). Africanus (the Elder) himself was probably buried at Liternum (near Naples).

109 12 **laudibus**: the reference is to Ennius' epic of Roman history, the *Annales*, which celebrated Scipio and many others. Note the **populus Romanus** again.

109 14 **tollitur**: i. e. in the same epic Cato the Censor is honored (cp. 106 5). His great-grandson (Cato of Utica) was perhaps present in the court; though **huius** may mean only the Cato *whom we know*. — **adiungitur**: in praising Cato, Ennius was paying his tribute to the national greatness (Gram. § 280).

109 16 **decorantur**: still speaking of Ennius' poem. **Denique = in short**. The plur. names **Maximi**, etc. are used like the names in "our Washingtons and Lincolns are honored, not for what they had, but for what they did." The plur.

merely shows that we are thinking of that *type* of man. Cicero's audience would think primarily of Q. Fabius Maximus, the famous "Delayer"; M. Claudius Marcellus, the conqueror of Syracuse (both in the Second Punic War); and M. Fulvius Nobilior, who subjugated Ætolia (189 B.C.) and was a friend and patron of Ennius (cp. 111 28).

109 17 **qui haec fecerat**: *the author of this poem* (**haec** = **haec carmina**).

109 19 **expetitur**: with **civitatus** (*states*) as dat. of agent (Gram. § 114).

109 20 **eiciamus**: the framework of the sentence is like that used in 106 21 ff. and 107 14 ff. (Gram. § 280). **Legibus** = *legally*. **Civitate** = *citizenship*, as in line 18. The insignificance of little Rudia (a half-Greek town in Calabria, hardly known except as the birthplace of Ennius) is contrasted with the importance of Heraclea.

109 23 **Graeca** = **Graeca scripta**, where we should say *Greek*.

109 24 **Latina**: (*while*) *Latin* (to show the connection with **quod**). — **continentur**: with the abl. of that which bounds or limits (Gram. § 147). **Sane** (with **exiguus**) marks a necessary concession: *one must admit*. Greek was the world-language, while in Cicero's day Lat. had hardly more than an official use outside of Italy; and even in Italy there were still regions in which Lat. was spoken less than other Italic dialects or Greek.

109 25 **si**: when it means *if, as is the fact*, **si** is virtually equiv. to *since* (Gram. § 264). — **regionibus** = **finibus**, as in 48 15 and 63 13.

109 26 **quo . . . eodem**: again a rel. clause precedes the demonstr. (cp. line 8). Cicero desires the glorious record of Rome's armies to be known as far as their missiles reach. Since Greek was the most widely read language, Greek books would best accomplish this.

109 28 **cum**: *not only*. — **de . . . scribitur**: *whose story is told* (lit. ?). — **haec**: *such accounts*. Plur. because the thoughts are now applied to all nations. — **ampla**: *glorious*.

110 1 **dimicant**, etc.: *risk their lives in battle* (lit. *struggle at the risk of life*). **Tum** = *but also*.

110 2 **hoc**: referring to the same things as **haec**, 109 28, but attracted into agreement with the pred. noun **incitamentum**. — **periculorum** = **ad pericula subeunda**. Clearly 'of' will not do.

110 3 **scriptores**: besides historians, he had with him at least one indifferent poet, Choerilus. — **magnus ille**: *the Great* (Gram. § 23).

110 5 **Sigeo**: a promontory near Troy. Achilles is the hero of Homer's Iliad, and Alexander claimed to be his descendant.

110 6 **praeconem inveneris**: cp. 108 3 (Gram. § 98, b). The descr. clause (*since you found a Homer as the herald*, etc.) gives a reason (Gram. § 178).

110 7 **vere**: sc. **dixit**.

110 9 **quid**: *again* (Gram. § 30). — **Magnus**: **noster hic** makes a flattering comparison between Pompey and Alexander.

110 11 **civitate**: cp. note on 101 4. — **nostri illi**: *our troops*. Theophanes, of Mytilene, on the island of Lesbos, was a poet, a friend and adviser of Pompey. He wrote a history of the war with Mithridates. Roman generals could confer citizenship upon individuals.

111 1 **magno . . . approbaverunt**: *did not they show their approval of it by loud cheering?* This indicates, as Cicero implies, that they believed in honoring a *scriptor*, although they themselves were ignorant common soldiers (*rustici*, etc.).

111 2 **credo**: when used ironically, as it often is, **credo** really means that one does *not* believe. Trans. *I suppose*. As it is parenth., there is no indir. disc.

111 3 **ut . . . donaretur perficere**: *to have himself presented*.

111 4 **non potuit**: *would not have been able* (not *potuisset*; cp. Gram. § 257).

111 5 **donaret**: sc. **civitate**. — **petentem**: = **si petivisset** (Gram. § 248). If mere Gauls, etc. received this favor, Archias could have obtained it much more easily.

111 6 **quem**: = **nam eum** (cp. note on 99 1).

111 7 **subiecisset**: *had handed up*, i. e. to Sulla, seated on a platform. **Libellus** is a *manuscript*. **De populo** = *of the people*, and hence untutored.

111 8 **fecisset**: a rel. clause in indir. disc., — *an epigram which*, etc. (Gram. § 168, a). — **tantum modo . . . longiusculis**: *merely with the alternate lines rather longer* (its only merit). Probably it was written in the "elegiac distich," with hexameters and pentameters alternating.

111 9 **iubere**: 'I saw him do it' is **eum facere vidi** as well as **eum facientem vidi**. — **tribui**: Sulla was presiding at the sale of property confiscated from owners who had been proscribed. For the time of **iubere** cp. Gram. § 71.

111 10 **scriberet**: the **ne**-clause explains **ea condicione**, (*only*) *upon condition that*, etc. (Gram. § 273); like giving money to a street player and telling him to go away. — **qui . . . duxerit**: *since he thought* (descr. rel., expressing cause; Gram. § 178).

111 11 **duxerit**: the primary tense is explained by its position so far in advance of the main verb.

111 12 **virtutem**: *excellence*. — **copiam**: in contrast with the bad poet's one epigram.

111 13 **expetisset**: Gram. § 248. — **Pio**: cp. 101 19; he was one of the ablest of Sulla's generals, and his colleague in the consulship of 80 B.C. He had also commanded in the Social War.

111 14 **donavit**: as proconsul in Spain, where he fought against Sertorius.

111 15 **impetravisset**: like **expetisset**, l. 13. The Luculli were cousins of Metellus Pius. — **qui . . . cuperet**: *especially since he was so eager*, etc. (Gram. § 178).

111 16 **pingue . . . peregrinum**: in assuming that the poem was *dull* (**pingue**), and *provincial* (**peregrinum**, lit. *foreign, alien*) in its idiom, Cicero appeals to

the minds of the mob, which habitually thinks of foreigners as inferiors. But later on Cordūba (Cordova) itself gave the two Senecas, and Lucan to the Roman literary world.

111 18 **quod**: we may trans. as if we had **nam id**.

111 19 **ferendum**, etc.: i. e. *must be frankly admitted*. **Hoc** evidently cannot refer to what precedes.

111 20 **gloria**: with **ducitur**; trans. *ambition*.

111 21 **ducitur**, etc.: *and it is the best man who is most*, etc. **Hoc**, *this fact or truth*, proves to have anticipated the statement **trahimur**, etc.

111 22 **inscribunt**, etc.: *freely, add their names to the titles even of those books*, etc.

111 23 **despiciunt**: **in eo ipso** refers to the whole procedure, — *in the very act of expressing their contempt*.

111 24 **volunt**: the meaning of **nobilitatem** is made clear by the corresponding **se nominari**, *to be celebrated*. **Praedicari** is *impers.* here. Trans. *to be praised*. So Pascal says, "Even those who have written against fame wish for the fame of having written well." — **Decimus Brutus**: this Brutus, the first general to carry Roman arms to the Atlantic, triumphed in 132 B.C. over what is now Portugal (and Galicia). With the spoils he built a temple of Mars in the Campus Martius. It is not known that he built more than one temple. Accius, his friend (b. 170 B.C.), was perhaps the greatest Roman writer of tragedies. Some of his verses were inscribed at the entrance of this temple.

111 28 **consecrare**: M. Fulvius Nobilior (cp. 109 15) took Ennius with him on his expedition against Ætolia (northwestern Greece). In his triumphal procession (187 B.C.) were displayed over a thousand Greek statues, some of which were placed in a temple of Hercules and the Muses built by Fulvius in the Campus, near the Flaminian Circus.

111 29 **in qua urbe . . . in ea**: Lat. is very fond of this position of the rel. clause. First trans. lit., *to become used to the arrangement*; then as though it were **in ea urbe in qua**. Commit the two formulas to memory, as they will prove convenient. — **prope armati**: i. e. *they have just laid down their arms*.

111 32 **abhorrere**: note contrast between military men and civilians (**togati**); reversed order in **togati iudices** (chiasmus).

112 1 **id**: i. e. *honor the Muses and protect poets*, as implied in the previous sentence.

112 2 **indicabo**, etc.: lit. *will inform against myself*. He is going to 'tell on himself,' as it were. Trans. *betray*.

112 3 **quas res . . . incohavit**, etc.: lit. *what deeds I did, he has begun*, etc. Trans. as though **res (incohavit, etc.) quas**.

112 5 **universa re publica**: *the general good of our country*.

112 6 **attigit . . . incohavit**: *freely, has begun to write a poem about* (lit.?). Cicero means the crushing of Catiline's conspiracy in the previous year. From

letters to Atticus we infer that the plan was never carried out. Cicero himself wrote a Greek poem on his consulship, and another in Lat. on the same subject (cp. note on 44 9).

112 7 *magna . . . et iucunda*: *important and interesting*.

112 8 *adornavi*: a very human touch. Cicero learns with interest that Archias is going to write about his consulship, and sees to it that the poet has full information. From a letter which Cicero wrote to another man who proposed to write in prose on the same period, we can guess that he would make sure that his successes were given all the emphasis they would bear. — *virtus: merit*. For the first pair of gens. cp. Gram. § 118; for the second pair, § 121.

112 10 *qua . . . detracta*: = *et si ea detrahatur* (Gram. § 153). — *quid est quod*: *what reason is there why* (Gram. § 174).

112 13 *quibus . . . terminaret suas*: the same sentence pattern as in 111 29. *Regionibus* = *finibus* as in 109 25.

112 16 *de . . . dimicaret*: cp. 110 1. — *ipsa vita*: *his very life*. Cicero uses *animus* in the latter part of the sentence as if he were speaking of the man, and not merely his mind or spirit. We might therefore trans. *nec se frangeret*, etc. *ONE would not break oneself down*, etc.

112 17 *nunc*: *as it is* (as freq. in contrast to an unreal cond.). — *optimo quoque*: cp. note on 67 5. — *virtus*: *power, instinct* (to fit *concitatus* and *admonet*).

112 18 *gloriae*: as in 111 20.

112 19 *cum . . . dimittendam*: *must not be allowed to cease when our lifetime is over* (lit. *together with our lifetime*).

112 20 *cum . . . adaequandam*: i.e. our fame should be imperishable. Begin with a lit. trans.; then paraphrase.

112 21 *omnes*, etc.: *are all of us . . . to be thought?* (deliberative quest.). For an cp. Gram. § 32, d. *Parvi animi* is pred. gen. of descr. (Gram. § 123), referring to the quality which makes a man act as if he had no concern with his reputation after he is dead (cp. lines 24, 25). We may trans. *wanting in imagination*.

112 22 *qui . . . versamur*: *who are engaged in business of state, and whose lives, like my own (from his), are full of risk and toil* (lit.?).

112 23 *ut . . . arbitremur*: *as to imagine*. — *spatium*: sc. *vitae* from line 22. — *nullum . . . spiritum duxerimus*: *have drawn no breath*.

112 25 *omnia*: i.e. *all that we have done*. — *an*, etc.: for the form of this whole sentence cp. Gram. § 280. Bind it together in Eng. by beginning *or if*.

112 26 *studiose . . . reliquerunt*: *have been eager to leave*. For *multi summi* cp. Gram. § 42, a.

112 27 *consiliorum . . . ac virtutum*: *of our aspirations and merits*.

112 29 *expressam et politam*: *perfectly portrayed*. Lit. *modeled and polished*. We speak of literary portraiture in terms of painting, but Cicero is thinking in terms of sculpture (cp. 105 14). — *omnia . . . gerebam*: *all my deeds*; obj. of *spargere* and *disseminare*.

112 30 **iam . . . gerendo**: = **tum etiam cum gerebam** (Gram. § 85). The figure of sowing broadcast is made clearer by adding the second verb. The world's memory is the field.

112 2 **afutura est**: *is to be (a thing) apart from*, etc., — on the theory that there is no consciousness after death. **Haec** refers to **memoriam**.

112 3 **ad . . . pertinebit**: *will concern*. Many philosophers, esp. Socrates and Plato, taught that the soul survives death.

112 4 **quidem**: *at any rate*. — **cogitatione . . . delector**: *freely, I find pleasure in a kind of hopeful meditation* (lit.?).

112 6 **pudore eo**: descr. abl. As it is certified (**comprobari**) both by the worth of his friends and by the long continuance (of their friendship), it must denote the quality which would secure these, viz. *fine personality*. **Pudor** means *shame* (that prevents one from doing base deeds), and then the qualities which such preventive shame brings: *decency, honor*, etc.

112 8 **ingenio . . . tanto**: *who possesses as much talent*. — **convenit**: used like **oportet**, — *it is fitting*. *Freely, as you may properly judge*.

112 9 **summorum . . . iudiciis**: *by men of prominence and judgment*.

112 10 **videatis**: subjv. both because it occurs in a descr. clause and because it depends on an inf.

112 10 **causa . . . modi**: the third descr. abl. Trans. *while the merits of his case are such that they are supported*.

112 13 **si**: *assuming that, or since* (cp. note on 109 25). — **si qua . . . debet esse**: *freely, since there is in . . . something more than human which must recommend them* (cp. 107 11). **Commendatio** = *that which recommends*.

112 14 **ut eum**: with **sic . . . fidem** in lines 19–20, — *so to take under your protection one who*, etc.

112 18 **profitetur**: recalling what was said at 112 3 ff. — **est . . . numero**: *belongs to the class (of men)*.

112 19 **itaque dicti**: *and so proclaimed or pronounced*.

112 21 **esse videatur**: *freely, that men shall see that he*, etc.

112 22 **quae**: not the connecting rel., its antecedent being **ea** in line 23. He expresses confidence that the brief treatment of the actual **causa** in §§ 4–11 will have convinced the jury.

112 23 **probata . . . omnibus**: *have commended themselves to all (or been proved to the satisfaction of all)*.

112 24 **quae . . . locutus sum, ea**: *while as for (such of) my remarks as were*. — **et . . . studio**: *both about his (hominis) special gift and in a general way about his profession itself*.

112 26 **in . . . partem**: *in a good sense*.

112 27 **scio**: sc. **esse . . . accepta**. In **qui iudicium exercet** he is again referring to the presiding judge, his own brother Quintus, himself a writer of tragedies and other verse (not preserved); cp. 100 2.

FOR MARCELLUS

PLACE: In the Senate-house (Intro. § 49).

TIME: 46 B.C., early autumn, after Cæsar had celebrated his quadruple triumph over Gaul, Egypt, Pontus, and Africa.

CIRCUMSTANCES: Cp. Introductory Note, below; also Intro. § 93 fin.

INTRODUCTORY NOTE

M. Claudius Marcellus, an orator of note, consul in 51 B.C. and colleague of the eminent jurist Servius Sulpicius, had been one of the bitterest opponents of Cæsar, especially in proposing measures which forced the latter's hand and thus led to civil war. After Pompey's disastrous defeat at Pharsalus, 48 B.C., Marcellus retired to the Ægean island of Lesbos, and devoted himself to philosophy and other studies at Mytilene, where Brutus paid him a visit commemorated in the latter's lost work *de Virtute*, with high praise of the spirit in which Marcellus bore his exile. Though he would not deign to ask Cæsar's forgiveness and permission to return, his friends took pains to bring the matter before the senate under circumstances recorded by Cicero in a letter to Servius Sulpicius (see Letter 27, pp. 200 ff.).

Upon mention of Marcellus' name by L. Piso,¹ Gaius Marcellus, a cousin of Marcus, fell at the dictator's feet, whereupon the whole senate rose and approached Cæsar, entreating him to pardon Marcellus. The dictator, after some vigorous language about Marcellus' opposition to him, and praises for Servius, by way of contrast, granted the request of the senators with unexpected promptness. The leading men in the senate, being then called upon to express their opinion of the advisability of recalling Marcellus, thanked Cæsar for his gracious act. Cicero, called upon in his turn, did not content himself with mere assent, but decided on the spot to break his resolve never to speak in public again. He voiced the thanks of the senate in glowing language, with a fervor which has its explanation in his confidence at that particular moment that Cæsar would actually reëstablish the state. It was a short-lived confidence, and Marcellus himself was slow to take advantage of his permission to return, postponing his journey until the following summer. He had reached the Piræus when he was murdered by one of his own party. Servius Sulpicius, his former colleague, and now governor of Achaia, was then in Athens, and wrote a letter to Cicero, giving the details of the tragedy.² Some correspondence between Cicero and Marcellus has also been preserved (see Letters 26, 28, pp. 198, 202).

This speech, though entitled *pro Marcello*, thus corresponding with *pro Ligario* and *pro Rege Deiotaro*,³ is not so much a defense of Marcellus as a eulogy of Cæsar. Technically, however, the question before the house is the recall of Marcellus from exile, and Cicero has risen as if to support such a motion.

¹ Cæsar's father-in-law.

² *Ep.* IV, 12.

³ These three speeches before Cæsar are often called the *Caesarianae*.

OUTLINE OF THE ARGUMENT

(1) Today I am breaking my long silence, to speak of Cæsar's magnanimity. (2) Marcellus' pardon, after a separation which I could not bear, restores both his influence and mine, with a happy omen. (3) We appreciate, Cæsar, that you have yielded your own feelings to the public interest. Marcellus is indeed fortunate, (4) and deservedly so.

Your achievements beggar description, but none is greater than today's. (5) Your deeds are beyond comparison, especially in their rapidity. (6) There are greater distinctions still, for a commander must share his laurels. (7) But in this day's glory even Fortune may claim no share.

(8) Your conquests were great; less godlike, however, than this self-conquest. (9) Your military fame will be immortal everywhere, but the merciful man in history or legend is beloved. (10) In your case what will our feelings be? These very walls are grateful to you.

(11) This is your proudest day, the victory yours alone. Other trophies will decay; (12) but the fame of your mercy will increase, for by forgiveness you have vanquished even victory.

(13) In this decision Cæsar has acquitted and restored all of us who went to war against him. (14) Always an advocate of peace, I followed Pompey for personal reasons. (15) My policy was openly declared, and Cæsar showed his attitude by sparing the peacemakers before and after the victory. (16) Marcellus and I had our fears of Pompey's victory, and are all the more grateful for your generosity, Cæsar. (17) Your victory was not vindictive, as Pompey's would perhaps have been. (18) Even men of peace were threatened then, but now our hopes are in the victor.

(19) You will find satisfaction in your magnanimity, — no gift of Fortune. (20) Continue to preserve men who were honestly misguided into war without a real reason.

(21) The risk to your life is not to be altogether ignored; yet where have you now any personal enemies? (22) However, take care of a life so indispensable, yet exposed to the common risks, (23) and to the assassin besides.

You must reform all the evils of the war time. (24) No one else can heal the wounds of war. (25) Do not say you have enough of life. You cannot be spared while your work is unfinished, your glory incomplete.

(26) Great things remain to be done if you are to reach the heights of fame. (27) When you have reorganized the state, then you may say, "Enough of life!" Short it is, and you have always craved immortality, — (28) the real life in the memory of the ages; to that you must devote yourself. Posterity will marvel at your victories; (29) but unless you reconstitute the state, your fame will be insecure. Respect the impartial judgments of the future. (30) You are concerned now, if not then.

Though we have been divided and distracted, (31) the war is now over, and the victor merciful. Tempers too must be disarmed. (32) Dissension being at an end, our safety is in unity and clemency. In protecting your life we promise our aid.

(33) To repeat, we are all most grateful, and I am only the spokesman for these men. (34) As my friendship for Marcellus requires, I thank you, Cæsar, for this greatest of your favors to me.

115 1-4 **diuturni . . . attulit**: the relation of the parts of this sentence is shown here: —

Diuturni silenti, patres conscripti,
quo eram his temporibus usus,
(*Modifying* { non timore aliquo,
eram usus) { sed partim dolore,
 { partim verecundia, }
finem hodiernus dies attulit.

The framework is in heavy type.

115 1 **eram . . . usus**: we should say *have kept*. — **his temporibus**: *in the trying times through which we have been passing*. **Tempora** often means *circumstances*, particularly of a dangerous or distressing kind. The actual time referred to is about a year, during which Cicero, though he had been forgiven by Cæsar for siding with Pompey, was in retirement at home, engaged in literary work, but politically inactive; Introd. § 93.

115 3 **dolore, verecundia**: Cicero confesses to mingled emotions, — *distress (dolore)*, for which a reason is assigned in lines 12 ff., and a *sense of propriety or decency (verecundia)* partly explained by lines 15-18.

115 4 **idemque**: *and at the same time*. — **quae . . . sentirem**: depending on **dicendi**. For the subjvs. cp. Gram. § 182.

115 7 **modum**: *moderation*, limited by the obj. gen. **rerum**.

115 10 **reddito**: *by the restoration of* (Gram. § 75). Abl. abs.

115 14 **causa**: *side, party*. — **non . . . fortuna**: settles the question whether the **cum** of line 13 was *when, since, or although*.

115 15 **versari**: subj. of **esse**. **Persuadere** would normally have taken **ut versarer**, but the thought was interrupted by **fas . . . ducebam**.

115 16 **illo . . . distracto**: (1) this abl. abs. may be translated *when*, etc.; (2) **aemulo** and **imitatore** go with **studiorum**; **socio** and **comite**, with **laborum**; (3) **a me . . . distracto** = *separated from me*. Cicero's name and that of Marcellus had often been coupled as standing for many of the same gifts and interests.

115 17 **quasi quodam**: *as it were, a kind of*; i.e., *I might almost say*.

115 19 **interclusam**: trans. by rel. clause — *which had been interrupted*. — **his . . . sustulisti**: *you have, as it were, raised a standard in the sight of all who are present, (as a signal) to*, etc.

115 21 **mihi quidem . . . omnibus**: Gram. § 114. — **in multis . . . in me ipso**: the condensed *in the case of many men . . . in my own case* means, and should be translated, *from the treatment accorded to*, etc. It was Cæsar's clemency to his former foes that convinced Cicero that he put the state's welfare before his own feelings.

115 22 **sed paulo ante**, etc.: *but a few moments ago when . . . by all of us*. The time is defined by **cum . . . concessisti**: when Marcellus was restored to his position, all saw what Cicero had already seen.

116 1 **senatui . . . concessisti**: *pardoned out of regard to, etc.*

116 2 **offensionibus**, etc.: *especially after making mention of your grievances*, more exactly, *of the offense he had (repeatedly) given*. Cæsar had dwelt upon the **acerbitas** (*bitterness*) of Marcellus in opposing him; cp. 201 4.

116 4 **anteferre**: the indir. disc. gives us our subj. for **intellectum est**, 115 21. **Suspicionibus** anticipates §§ 21 ff. Cæsar probably feared that Marcellus might support a possible conspiracy against him. — **fructum . . . cepit**: *has reaped the fruit*. **Ante actae** = **praeteritae**.

116 6 **maximo**: *of the greatest importance*. **Tum** shows that **cum** is conj.

116 7 **dato . . . accepto**: *the giving of . . . the receiving of* (Gram. § 75).

116 8 **cuius ex . . . pervenerit**: = **cum ex eius**, etc. (Gram. § 178).

116 9 **ventura sit**: being at Mytilene, Marcellus will not know for some time that Cæsar has pardoned him.

116 10 **quod quidem**: *and indeed this*, referring to **est . . . pervenerit** as a whole.

116 13 **praestantior**: in such a quest. **aut** becomes the weakest *or*, or even *and* (Gram. § 48). **Laudis** = *merit, commendable quality, distinction*.

116 14 **nullius . . . ingeni**: *no brain is so fertile* (lit. *of (=from) no talent is the outflow so great*). — **nulla . . . copia**: *there is no power (of expression), no wealth (of words) so great*.

116 15 **quae**: *that it* (with **possit**). — **non . . . enarrare**: Cæsar's achievements exceed the powers of any orator or historian, *even to record, much less (or not to say) to glorify*.

116 17 **tua**: **pace tua** is a formula of politeness, *by your leave, with your kind permission*, etc. **His** refers to **res gestas**.

116 19 **ante . . . ponere**: *to keep in view*. — **id**: *this fact*, obj. of both **ponere** and **usurpare**.

116 20 **sermonibus**, etc.: *make the remark frequently in conversation*. — **omnis**, etc.: indir. disc. in appos. with **id** (l. 19), and continuing through **lustratae sunt** in line 27 — *that all the achievements*, etc.

116 25 **conferri**: the total of Cæsar's battles was placed at fifty. His campaigns had been carried on, often with bewildering suddenness of attack or rapidity of movement, from Britain to Asia Minor and Africa. No one, except Alexander, could be compared to him as regards range of experience in warfare with nations of every degree of civilization.

116 27 **non dicam . . . sed**: as in line 15; but trans. here *not merely . . . but actually*. **Cursibus** is picturesque language for *rapid marches*, in contrast with **passibus**, of ordinary travel. — **lustratae sunt**: *have been covered*, as involving a more complete circuit than **peragrari**. For ind. in indir. disc. cp. Gram. § 292 fin.

116 28 **fatear**: **quae** is merely connecting rel., equiv. to **et haec**; and **quidem** suggests a contrast to follow.

116 29 **capere possit**: *can grasp*. — **sim**: Gram. § 258, b.

117 1 **maiora**: recalling the thought of 116 17 ff., — to have forgiven an enemy is the crowning distinction for the victor; cp. lines 17 ff.

117 2 **detrahere, communicare**: asyndeton. — **ducibus**: Gram. § 112.

117 3 **propriae**: *the exclusive property* (Gram. § 128).

117 7 **gestum**: sc. **est**.

117 8 **paulo ante**: as in 115 22, and referring to the same act.

117 9 **neminem**: may be taken as dir. obj., with **socium** in pred. appos. (*no one as your companion*), or as an adj. (*no companion or partner*).

117 10 **maximum est**: **quod** = **et id**, — *and it certainly is a very great thing*.

117 12 **decerpit**: the figure is from the plucking off of flowers, fruit, etc. by a passer-by or a trespasser.

117 13 **in . . . societatem**: *for the partnership*. We should prefer to say *as a partner*.

117 14 **fatetur**: the thought of lines 9 ff., with the added notion of an inalienable title in **proprium**, — *a permanent possession*. Sc. **istam gloriam**.

117 16 **admittitur**, etc.: *nor do you take counsel with chance*; more freely, *nor does chance govern your decisions*.

117 18 **locis infinitas**: i. e. *occupying vast regions*.

117 19 **sed . . . habebant**: the appos. result clause **ut vinci possent** defines **naturam** as well as **condicionem** (Gram. § 199). In Eng. we may turn the clause into an obj. phrase, *the possibility of being conquered*, and reduce the Lat. objs. to *by nature and their circumstances*. Caesar's conquests, great as they had been, were still humanly possible. This intentionally quaint thought is in preparation for the next sentence.

117 21 **possit**, etc.: *cannot be . . . crushed by armed forces*.

117 22 **animum vincere**: in striking contrast with **vis**, etc. (asyndeton); insert *but*. We may trans. *self-conquest*, with emphasis on *self*. — **cohibere**: **iracundiam** shows what kind of feelings were implied in **animum**, the general being paired with the particular. — **victo temperare**: *to show forbearance toward a conquered (foe)* (cp. Gram. § 107, b). More asyndeton.

117 23 **praestantem**: cp. 116 13; and note three abls. without conjs., — a climax in words of diminishing length (Introd. § 22, d, k fin.).

117 25 **haec qui faciat**: the five infs. above are in appos. with **haec**.

117 26 **deo**: Gram. § 116.

117 27 **quidem**: *it is true*; this looks forward to the contrast marked by **at vero** in 118 3.

117 29 **linguis**: in translating connect **litteris atque linguis** with **nostris**.

118 1 **conticescet**: a true prophecy. — **nescio quo modo**: Gram. § 162.

118 3 **clementer . . . factum**: because **factum** is a ptcp. it is modified by advs.; but trans. **aliquid factum**, *some deed* (not the lit. 'something done'), and replace the advs. by adjs.

118 6 **audimus aut legimus**: *hear or read of*.

118 7 **gestis rebus**: order reversed, to mark the contrast between **factis** and **gestis**. Trans. *real history . . . legend*.

118 9 **praesentem intuemur**: in contrast with characters of legend and history.

118 12 **ut . . . velis**: this result clause is in appos. with **mentem**, etc. — *whose purpose and inclination and expression we see are (such) that you mean*, etc.

118 13 **reliquum . . . fecerit**: *has left of constitutional government*. Cæsar had been made dictator.

118 18 **complectemur**: climax, raising **diligamus** (l. 8) to the highest power. — **me dius fidius**: shortened form of **ita me dius fidius iuvet** (or **servet**), *so may the god of truth help (save) me!* But here it is no more than *on my honor* (or *word*).

118 19 **gestiunt**: note personif. and hyperbole; Introd. § 22, n, 1 and 7. For the **curia** cp. § 49.

118 20 **autoritas**: as **suorum** and **suis** must refer to **autoritas**, it is plain that **illa autoritas** is rhetorical language (abstract for concrete) for **ille vir summa auctoritate**. For the mood of **futura sit** cp. Gram. § 233.

118 23 **viderem**: the reference is to the situation described in the Introductory Note, p. 428, and in Cicero's letter (201 9 f.). Gaius Marcellus was probably not Marcus' brother (consul, 49 B.C.), but a cousin of the same name (consul, 50 B.C.), who had married Cæsar's grandniece (sister of Octavian). **Pietate** = *devotion*.

118 24 **offudit**, etc.: *filled my mind*. The most celebrated name among Marcellus' ancestors was that of M. Claudius Marcellus, a hero of the war with Hannibal, and conqueror of Syracuse, 212 B.C. He is repeatedly mentioned in the Fourth Verrine (e.g. 146 24, 149 10).

118 25 **suam**: here refers to the indir. obj. **quibus**, i.e. the Marcelli (Gram. § 26). For **conservato** cp. **reddito**, 115 10.

118 28 **gratulationibus**: he means the *thanksgivings* (**supplicationes**) voted by the senate in Cæsar's honor at different times. — **unius . . . Caesaris**: Gram. § 128.

119 1 **illae quidem**: sc. **sunt** (**magnae** pred.); cp. note on 117 27.

119 2 **multo . . . comitatu**: *in company with a numerous and powerful band of followers*, recalling the thought of 117 1 ff.; sc. **gestae sunt**.

119 3 **rei**: *action* (the pardon of Marcellus). — **idem . . . comes**: recalls both **duce**, l. 1 and **comitatu**, l. 2, — *leader and at the same time associate*; a neat paradox, focusing the thought of the preceding sentence.

119 4 **ut . . . magis**: *that while time shall destroy . . . yet your justice*, etc., *shall wax greater every day*. Note, however, that the sentence is actually built on another model. Grammatically **adlatura sit** is a subjv. of result, while **florescet**, fut. ind., is a principal verb. Such an irregularity, or "anacoluthon," may be

used by a writer who has perfect control of the language, somewhat in the way that discords are employed by great composers — to relieve monotony and give color. First trans. the sentence lit., and note that a parenth. often switches the thought to a different track.

119 7 **operibus**: *public works*.

119 10 **vicerat**: *had surpassed* (esp. Marius and Sulla).

119 11 **vereor ut**: Gram. § 194.

119 12 **auditu**: *when it is heard* (lit. by hearing); contrasted with **atque ipse cogitans sentio**, as *I myself regard it when I think about it*. Cicero is preening himself for a rhetorical flight and wishes to be sure that his hearers follow him. — **victoriam vicisse**: cp. the Biblical "led captivity captive." Presently his audience will learn that he means that Cæsar showed himself superior to the temptations which victory brings to the victor.

119 13 **cum . . . remisisti**: *in restoring*; explanatory **cum** (cp. Gram. § 222).

119 14 **cum . . . occidissemus**: *whereas . . . all of us, the vanquished, had forfeited our lives*. The decision is due to (lit. is of) Cæsar's **clementia**.

119 16 **condicio**: *terms*.

119 17 **vis**: *meaning*. — **devicta est**: Cicero wishes to keep up the fig. of Cæsar's victory over conventional ideas about the conduct of a conqueror. Trans. *have been disregarded*; or change to the act. and say *who have shown yourself superior to*, etc.

119 18 **hoc . . . pateat**: *how far this decision . . . reaches*.

119 21 **tenemur**, etc.: in a legal sense, *are convicted of some fault due to*, etc. — **scelere**: *willful crime*.

119 22 **liberati**: *acquitted*. Cicero argues from the pardoning of Marcellus that all the rest are now *acquitted* of any more serious charge than a political blunder in joining Pompey's forces (the **illa arma** of line 19). — **cum . . . conservavit . . . reddidit**: *in sparing . . . and restoring* (cp. note on 119 13).

119 23 **me . . . rei publicae**: *me both to my old dignity and to public life*.

119 24 **reliquos**, etc.: (*and*) *in restoring the distinguished men who shared my fate* (asyndeton). To say 'the rest of the distinguished men' would make Cicero say that he himself was **amplissimus vir**. More lit. it is *the rest*, — *distinguished* men.

119 25 **et frequentiam**, etc.: omit the first **et** in trans.

119 28 **cupiditate . . . crudelitate**: *partisanship . . . bloodthirstiness*. We prefer the act. voice from a **plerisque** on: *that most of us had gone into the war*, etc. He did not regard them as really **hostes**.

120 2 **audiendum (esse)**: *impers., that one must listen to peace proposals*. Quo is connecting rel. (Gram. § 170).

120 4 **repudiari**: Pompey had been obstinate, refusing all suggestions of peace from Cicero and others. — **neque**, etc.: *and indeed I was never attracted by*, etc. — **ulla**: he had not been in the army of Marius or Sulla.

120 5 **arma**: *war*. — **consilia pacis . . . socia**: Cicero said that victory would only mean a tyrant (Cæsar or Pompey), and that an unjust peace was better than a just civil war.

120 6 **hominem**: i.e. Pompey; in strong contrast with **arma civilia** (l. 5), — *it was the man*, not the cause or party, that had attracted him (asyndeton).

120 7 **publico**, etc.: *personal*, not *political*, *obligation* had moved him.

120 8 **valuit**: here *loyal memory* = *unfailing loyalty*. Cicero owed his return from exile in part to Pompey.

120 9 **ne spe quidem**: *even without hope* (Gram. § 144). For **non modo** cp. **non dicam**, 116 15. — **prudens et sciens**: an old proverb, *with my eyes open*.

120 12 **dixi**: before any decisive step had been taken (**integra re**, *while the matter was undecided*).

120 13 **cum**: Eng. *at*. — **sensi**, etc.: *expressed the same opinions*.

120 14 **rerum existimator**: i.e. *historical critic*. **Ex quo** = *consequently*. — **dubitet**: Gram. § 175.

120 15 **voluntas**: not mere *wish*, but *preference, choice, or position*.

120 16 **iratio**: not a true compar. — *inclined to be severe*. **Ceteris** = (*but*) . . . *to the rest*; asyndeton. — **id**: sc. **erat**.

120 17 **tum**: *at a time*. — **cum esset**: circumstantial, not temporal (it does not point to some precise day or hour, etc.).

120 18 **victor**: *as victor, or after the victory*.

120 20 **Marcello . . . testis**: *Marcellus has me as witness* (Gram. § 113).

120 22 **congruebant**: the meaning of **huius rei** — *of this attitude* (toward peace) — is now clear. Marcellus is to be reckoned among the **pacis auctores**. **Bello** is further emphasized by reversing the order (chiasmus).

120 23 **certorum** = **quorundam**, but more definite, referring to the hot-headed advocates of war, esp. on Pompey's side. Had he been victorious there would probably have been proscriptions; cp. lines 32 ff.

120 27 **comparandae**: **victoriae** includes all the uses which Cæsar had made, and which Pompey would have made, of victory.

120 28 **vagina vacuum**: unusual phrase for *out of its scabbard, unsheathed*. The war was not followed by proscriptions or other cruelties.

120 29 **perculit**: change to pass. in translating.

120 30 **nemo**: emphatic position (end of a member).

120 31 **posset**: Gram. § 252.

120 32 **alterius . . . partis**, etc.: *as for the other side . . . that its victory would have been too full of resentment*. For such a conclusion in *oratio obliqua* cp. Gram. § 288. A *si*-clause is implied in the victory which did not come about.

121 3 **otiosis**: those who remained *neutral*.

121 4 **quid . . . dicebant**: all who elected to stay in Italy, and did not cross the sea with Pompey, or join him later, were accounted *hostes*. Cæsar followed the opposite principle, reckoning as friendly all who were not against him.

121 7 **excitaverint**: the rel. clause is causal, — *inasmuch as they* (the gods) *have stirred up*, etc., i. e. *in bringing on*, etc. (Gram. § 178).

121 9 **contulisse**: *have intrusted*, or *made . . . to depend upon*.

121 10 **bono**: *blessing*; the combination of **clementia** with **sapientia**. — **frudere**: *impv.*

121 11 **moribus tuis**: *your character*.

121 12 **sapienti**: the ideal *sage* of the Stoics. **Ex quo** refers to the idea of **natura et moribus**, which cover the ground of *virtus*, — the sole essential, according to that school, for a happy life.

121 13 **cetera . . . tua**: sc. **bono** from line 10. — **virtuti**: *ability, prowess*.

121 14 **gratulabere**: *you will pride yourself upon*.

121 15 **in re publica**: *active in affairs of state*.

121 16 **tuis beneficiis**: *favours which you have conferred*. Military achievements are contrasted with acts of forgiveness.

121 19 **splendor**: *honor*. — **in laude vera**: praise which measures up to the highest standards.

121 21 **esse videantur**: Fortune's "gifts" are to his mind only loans. *Asyndeton* (**cetera**). *Virtus* is personif. to match **Fortuna**.

121 22 **noli . . . defetigari**: suggests the familiar "Be not weary in well-doing."

121 23 **non . . . praesertim . . . lapsis** = **praesertim cum non lapsi sint**. — **cupiditate**: as in 119 28.

121 24 **improba**, etc.: their *idea of duty* was *stupid*, rather than *perverted*. — **specie**: they were further misled by *what appeared to be the common interest*, or by *what seemed to be the government* (i. e. Pompey and the senate seemed to be the government). Outsiders at the present day have sometimes been equally uncertain regarding China and Mexico when those countries were in revolution.

121 25 **enim**: Gram. § 51, a, fin.

121 26 **contraque**: *but rather* (Gram. § 43 fin.). — **quod . . . senserunt**: gives the reason for **summa laus** (est). — **minime . . . fuisse**: *there was no need at all*, etc.

122 2 **suspicionem tuam**: Cicero now takes up Cæsar's statement that Marcellus had shown great *animosity* (**acerbitas**) against himself. This is the *querela* (cp. 201 4). Cæsar had perhaps intimated that Marcellus' rancor might stir up some assassin.

122 4 **providenda est**: better act. in Eng., i. e. *which you yourself have no more to guard against than*, etc. **Quae** really refers to the thing feared, — assassination.

122 6 **cautio est**: *precaution* is here equiv. to *vigilance*, equally incumbent upon the senators, even in their own interest, since their safety depends upon his. — **peccandum sit**, etc.: *I must go to one extreme or the other*.

122 8 **demens**: Cicero imagines some one enemy and possible assassin

'whom you (Cæsar) have in mind' (*iste*). — **de tuisne**: (*one*) of your own (friends)? — **tametsi**: and yet (Gram. § 269).

122 9 **quam quibus**: = **quam ei quibus**.

122 10 **eo . . . fuerunt**: i. e. the actual partisans of Cæsar. **Anne** (unusual for an) introduces the second part of the double quest. **tuisne . . . anne**.

122 11 **ullo**: here a subst. — **quo duce**: under whose leadership (abl. abs.).

122 12 **suae**: note that this order of rel. and demonstr. clauses, as often, keeps the order of time. For **sit adeptus** cp. Gram. § 182.

122 13 **inimici**: sc. **cogitent**. **Tui** includes all who were now on Cæsar's side, — pardoned enemies as well as original supporters.

122 16 **amicissimi**: Cicero glosses over the fact that not a few enemies of Cæsar still survived. In the next year came the final conflict at Munda, in Spain, the last of Cæsar's victories (45 B. C.).

122 19 **omnium**: with **quis**.

122 20 **rudis . . . publica**: such a tyro in politics.

122 21 **cogitans**, etc.: indifferent to (or careless of) both, etc. (Gram. § 40).

122 22 **intellegat**, etc.: as not to understand (Gram. § 175).

122 23 **omnium**: **contineri** and **pendere** are synonyms (*is bound up with, depends upon*). **Unius** is in agreement with a gen. implied in **tua**.

122 24 **casus . . . extimesco**: it gives him anxiety enough that Cæsar is subject to the common ills of humanity. Supply for you with **casus**, etc., **extimesco**.

122 27 **consistere**: the same thought as in **contineri** and **pendere**, ll. 22 f.

122 28 **sceleris . . . insidiarumque consensio**: an agreement to commit crimes and form conspiracies.

122 29 **accedit**: there is added.

123 1 **uni**: in strong contrast with **omnia**, — on you alone rests the responsibility of reconstructing everything.

123 2 **iacere**: lie in ruin. — **quod necesse fuit**: as was inevitable.

123 5 **vincienda sunt**: in expanding **omnia sunt excitanda** Cicero reminds Cæsar of these important tasks: reform of the courts, restoration of credit, legislation to discourage immorality and encourage the rearing of larger families, tightening up of the loosened social structure in every way.

123 6 **non fuit recusandum**: it was unavoidable (cp. line 2).

123 7 **quin . . . multa perderet et**: that . . . should lose not only (et) many; subj. of **fuit recusandum**.

123 8 **fuisset**, etc.: represents a fut. perf., — the thought of those who looked forward to the outcome of the war; informal indir. disc. (Gram. §§ 181, 290).

123 10 **prohibuisset**: unreal cond., with **togatus** = **si togatus fuisset** (Gram. § 248). For **togatus** cp. 42 12.

123 11 **quae quidem**, etc.: **quae** serves merely to connect, — and it is just those wounds . . . which you must now . . . in every case.

123 12 **quibus**: trans. as if **nemo enim**, etc., **eis mederi potest**.

123 14 **invitus audiui**: *was sorry to hear*. The superls. only describe Cæsar's utterance as showing in a high degree the spirit of a sage (cp. line 18).

123 15 **si placet**: *if you like, if you please*. Lat. omits the pron. (**tibi**, etc.) in this expression.

123 16 **parum**: emphasized by end position, in contrast with **satis** at the beginning.

123 18 **prudentiam**, etc.: i. e. *the wisdom which you have learned from the philosophers*; note the force of **istam**. — **nostro periculo**: *to our peril*, or *at our expense* (Gram. § 141). — **sapiens**: *a sage*, the ideal philosopher, of whom the Stoics had so much to say; cp. 121 12.

123 19 **idem istud . . . dicere**: *made that same remark of yours*.

123 20 **dicere**: pres., as referring to a repeated action; subj. of **venit**, perf. definite. — **vixisse**: it seems clear now that Cæsar had used similar language at this meeting of the senate (cp. **idem istud**). — **credo**: *possibly you have*, or *it may be so*. — **audirem**: *should listen to*, i. e. *approve, accept*.

123 21 **viveres**: **si** is balanced by **tum**. *Only in case serves for both*. — **omnium**: insert *but* in translating. Asyndeton.

123 23 **complexae sunt**: *have encircled*, or *brought within their range*.

123 24 **ieceris**: *have . . . laid*. **Quae cogitas** = *which you are planning (to lay)*. The fig. stands for all his great projects. — **hic . . . definies**: **Hic** is *in these circumstances, in that case*. **Modum** = *extent* (lit. *measure*). **Aequitate animi** = *by (your own) indifference, or stoicism*.

123 26 **satis est**: cp. lines 15 f. **Istud** = *what you have (of life), your present years*. Cæsar was only fifty-four.

123 27 **cuius**: *for . . . of this*. — **quamvis . . . sapiens**: *with all your philosophy* (lit. ?).

124 1 **parumne . . . relinquemus**: **parum . . . magna** is lit. *things not great enough*, i. e. *not fame enough*.

124 2 **aliis quamvis multis satis**: *enough for any number of other (or ordinary) men*; lit. *for howsoever many others* (Gram. § 219 fin.).

124 5 **futurus fuit**: *was to be, was destined to be*. **Hic** (subj.) is explained by the following **ut**-clause. For the attraction cp. Gram. § 12.

124 6 **in quo nunc est**: i. e. *in its present unsettled state, with so much reconstruction necessary*. — **vide . . . ne**: *take care that . . . not*.

124 8 **gloriae**: Cæsar may still fall short of true glory. — **si quidem**: *since indeed* (Gram. § 264). — **gloria . . . meritum**: a definition of **gloria**. *It consists in glowing and widespread reports (fama) of one's services to friends or country, etc.* Services to mankind (**hominum**) cap the climax. **Inlustris** and **pervagata** modify **fama**; **magnorum** modifies **meritum**.

124 10 **pars**: *task, duty*.

124 11 **actus**: as a final act in the tragedy of the civil wars. — **in . . . est**:

at this you must toil. Note that the *ut*-clause defines not merely *hoc* but also *pars* and *actus*.

124 12 *ea*: *her* (the state); cp. Gram. § 147, *a*. *Summa* qualifies *otio* also in sense (Gram. § 143).

124 14 *solveris*: taking up *rem publicam constituas* of lines 11 f., — a duty now expressed in terms of a debt. *Tum* is emphatic, — *only then*. *Te* expects a verb still in suspense.

124 15 *dicito*: permissive impv., *you may say, if you will* (*si voles*, shifted to the end in Eng.). *Te* is subj. of *vixisse*. — *hoc ipsum diu*: *this particular "long"* (that we are speaking of). An adv. becomes a n. noun if one is to talk about it. *Omnino* = *after all*.

124 16 *extremum*, etc.: *freely, if it involves some limit*.

124 17 *pro nihilo est*: *counts as nothing* (as we say, 'it goes for nothing'); for *venit* (perf.) . . . *est* cp. Gram. § 224.

124 18 *quamquam*: Gram. § 218, *b*. — *his angustiiis*: *with these narrow bounds* (Gram. § 147, *b*). For *iste tuus* cp. § 3 2.

124 21 *ducenda est*: *tua vita* is pred., *haec* subj. — *continetur*: *consists of, is bound up with* (cp. 122 22).

124 22 *inquam*: adds to the effect of repetition. — *memoria*: abl. of cause, where we should say *in the memory*.

124 24 *tuebitur*: personif., as in *alet*. — *huic*: referring to *aeternitas*, *immortality*. — *inservias . . . oportet*: Gram. § 279.

124 25 *iam pridem*: Gram. § 62. For *quae miretur*, *to admire*, cp. Gram. § 177. — *habet*: the logical subj. is still *aeternitas* = *immortality* (in fame).

124 26 *exspectat*: the obj. is furnished by *quae laudet*, — *acts to praise*.

124 27 *imperia*: *certe* and the emphatic verb at the beginning may warn us of a contrast to follow.

124 29 *tuos*: agreeing in sense with all the objs. (*imperia*, etc.), — a long list, with asyndeton and obvious grouping in twos and threes. In *Nilum* the reference is to Cæsar's winter in Egypt (48-47 B.C.) and capture of Alexandria; in *Oceanum*, to his war with the Veneti in Gaul and his expeditions to Britain; in *munera*, to the *shows* (gladiatorial, etc.) at the time of his four triumphs (p. 428).

125 3 *non habebit*: chiasmus (*vagabitur . . . habebit*) serves to stress the contrast.

125 4 *cum alii . . . requirent*: *while . . . and others . . . will find something important lacking*.

125 6 *vel*: *the very*.

125 7 *restinxeris*: *salute patriae* is the means of quenching the fire, — *by saving the state*; *freely, and have saved the state*. — *videatur*: *shall seem* (Gram. § 70).

125 8 *consili*: pred. gen., *due to wisdom* (Gram. § 119). As *illud* refers to civil war, so *hoc* (*the latter*) takes up the work of reconstruction involved in

salute patriae. — **servi**: impv., *have regard to*. The sentence repeats in clearer terms the thought of 124 24.

125 9 **haud scio an**: *probably* (Gram. § 162), with **quidem** = *for that matter*.

125 10 **cupiditate**: *partisanship, partiality*.

125 11 **iudicabunt**: note the conjs. (polysyndeton) and contrasted pairs.

125 12 **pertinebit**, etc.: *will not concern you*. In **falso putant** Cicero rejects the teaching of the Epicureans, that the soul perishes with the body.

125 15 **fuerunt**: *there have been (in the past)*. — **distractae**: *divided*.

125 16 **consiliis . . . dissidebamus**: **consiliis** (Gram. § 152) repeats **sententiae**, while **studiis** matches **voluntates** (inverse order); two more pairs. — **obscuritas quaedam**: i.e. the issues were clouded.

125 18 **duces**, etc.: *between leaders of the greatest distinction*. Above the fog of uncertainty rose the two chiefs, Cæsar and Pompey, between whom it was difficult to choose.

125 19 **optimum esset**: i.e. for the state. These are the most patriotic.

125 20 **perfuncta . . . est**: lit. *has endured to the end*; hence equiv. to *is delivered from*.

125 21 **bello**: Gram. § 147, a. **Hoc** = *of which I am speaking*.

125 22 **suum**: *of himself*; equiv. to an obj. gen. — **leniret**: descr. **qui**-clause. Emphasis on **vicit**, — *the victor was one who*, etc.

125 24 **eosdem . . . erepta sunt**: **eosdem** = *indiscriminately, equally* (more lit. *at the same time*). Aside from war casualties Cæsar's victims were very few. Note that the second **ab aliis** = *from others* (Gram. § 134). Those who continued armed resistance after the battle of Pharsalus were defeated at Thapsus, in Africa, a few months before this speech.

125 26 **armatum**: there still remained numerous armed opponents in Spain, until they were crushed by the victory of Cæsar at Munda in the next year (45 B.C.). The **armatus animus** has ever been the greatest obstacle to world peace.

125 27 **qui**: anaphora is usual with rel. clauses in Lat. For *he who loves his country best AND is most worthy of honor* Lat. would say **qui patriae est amantissimus, qui dignissimus est laude**. — **in causa**, *for the cause*, repeats the form of **in acie** (**pro causa** is more usual).

125 28 **videri potest**: *can be regarded*; to be taken with both clauses. Those who fell in battle at least gave "the last full measure of devotion" (**constantia**).

126 1 **extincta**: sc. **est**.

126 2 **restat . . . velint**: *it remains for all to unite in one purpose*.

126 3 **non . . . modo**: as often, equiv. to *I will not say*. Eng. may reverse the order, putting the stronger term last: *sound sense, not to say wisdom*.

126 4 **nisi te . . . salvo et . . . manente**: with **nisi** (here an adv., *except, unless*) the abl. abs. is equiv. to a cond., — **nisi salvus es et manes** (Gram. § 248).

126 8 **qui . . . volumus**: trans. directly after **omnes**, — *all of us who*, etc. **Te**, obj. of **hortamur**, etc., is brought up next to the subj. **omnes** for emphasis (juxtaposition). — **haec**: Rome, with its monuments and the whole structure of its institutions (cp. 54 26).

126 12 **sento**: **de me ipse** = *in my own case*.

126 13 **quod . . . sit**: *which needs to be guarded against*.

126 14 **laterum**: *bodies* (lit. *sides*). — **oppositus**: *protection* (plur. in Lat.).

126 16 **in eodem**: *with the same thought or on the same note*. Trans. **unde** *with which* (lit.?).

126 17 **maximas . . . agimus**: note interlocked order.

126 18 **habemus**, etc.: i. e. *and feel even more thankfulness* (reg. **gratiam**, sing.). On the **ut**-clause cp. Gram. § 190. — **idem sentiunt**: *have the same feeling*.

126 20 **dicere**, etc.: i. e. *to rise and express that feeling*. Mere assent to a motion did not make it necessary for a senator to rise. **Certe** = *at least*.

126 21 **quodam modo**: *in a way, so to speak*. It would be expected of him, as the friend of Marcellus, by everybody.

126 23 **intellego**: in the positive sense, *I am sure*. The rel. clause **quod fieri decet** (= *the proper thing*; **quod** = *what*, subj. of **fieri**) does not require the subjv. even in indir. disc. (Gram. § 291). **Reddito** = *on account of . . . restoration*; cp. 115 10. **Id**, antecedent of **quod**, is explained by the next sentence.

126 24 **quod**, etc.: the framework of this sentence is as follows:

quod summae benevolentiae est
cum id . . . tam diu praestiterim
quam diu de illius salute est dubitatum
certe (id) praestare debeo
hoc tempore.

Quod . . . est (looking forward to **id** in 127 1) = *what is (a mark) of the highest regard*; possess. gen.

126 25 **quae mea**: *and this on my part*; more freely, *and how much of this I have*. Best translated as a parenth. (extending through **nemini**).

126 26 **ut . . . nemini**: result. The **ut** means *so much so that*, or *to such an extent that*.

126 27 **praeter eum**: insert *and* (asyndeton). **Fratri** is here probably equiv. to *cousin*; cp. note on 118 23.

127 1 **cum . . . dubitatum**: *since I showed it by my, etc., as long (tam diu . . . quam diu) as there was doubt, etc.*

127 2 **hoc tempore**: *now* (in contrast with **tam diu . . . quam diu est dubitatum**).

127 3 **liberatus**: *when I have been set free*. — **praestare**: sc. **id**. The thought is: 'Having previously given evidence of high regard for Marcellus, I am bound to give proof of it now.'

127 4 *sic . . . accesserit*: the words *sic tibi gratias ago ut ad tua innumeraabilia merita maximus hoc tuo facto cumulus accesserit* (lit. *I so thank you that the greatest addition has been made to your countless favors through this act of yours*) may be paraphrased thus: *I am couching my gratitude to you in such terms that this act of yours shall stand as a magnificent climax*, etc. *Accedo*, lit. *go to*, is used as a pass. of *addo*, *add.* — *me . . . conservato . . . ornato*: the following *tamen* shows that this abl. abs. is equiv. to *quamquam sum conservatus*, etc. — *omnibus rebus*: *in every respect* (Gram. § 152).

127 6 *quod . . . arbitrabar*: *something which I thought no longer possible*. Trans. after its antecedent, the clause *maximus . . . accesserit*.

THE FOURTH VERRINE (SELECTIONS) ¹

PLACE: As if in court.

TIME: 70 B.C.

CIRCUMSTANCES: Cp. Introd. §§ 59-60, and Introductory Note, below

INTRODUCTORY NOTE

Cicero's first great success at the bar had just caused Verres to go into voluntary exile. To make that triumph complete, he now recast the vast mass of his material in the mold of this imaginary speech, just as it might have been delivered had Verres come up for another trial.

No part of the accusation leveled at the head of this corrupt provincial governor is of so much interest to modern readers as that which deals with the plunder of works of art from Sicily, — Book IV, *de Signis*. Verres had looted the province in a most systematic fashion. Not only were private owners forced to surrender treasured heirlooms and choice collections, — sometimes with the mockery of a pretended purchase, sometimes with outrageous violence, — but in one case a foreign prince, sojourning for a time in Sicily, was robbed by Verres of a valuable jeweled candelabrum which he had intended to present to the Capitoline temple at Rome. Even cities and towns were compelled under most galling circumstances to give up public monuments which had long been their pride.

In enumerating all these unlawful acts of the defendant, Cicero, with the most skillful arrangement of his matter and with ingeniously varied treatment, in a style full of life and vigor, carries his readers on a tour over a large part of the island, picturing in detail certain scenes of special celebrity, as Syracuse and Henna, and describing statues, paintings, or other works of art which had been "collected" by the governor and brought away to adorn his house in Rome and his different villas. Till then Sicily, with its once flourishing Greek cities, had been rich in such treasures. To dwell upon their value, as works ascribed to this or that famous artist, was a necessary part of Cicero's task. At the same time, in deference to the prejudices of a Roman jury, even when composed of

¹ Book IV of the so-called Second Action against Verres.

senators, he represents himself as a novice, who has acquired his limited information about old masters and art enthusiasms among these unaccountable Greeks, while touring the island to collect evidence. And, although this is a book speech, never delivered in anything like this form (Introd. § 60 fin.), he has made everything — even such matters of professional insincerity — conform to the fiction of actual delivery in court.

OUTLINE OF THE ARGUMENT

(1-2) Now for Verres' passion for collecting works of art; it was a wholesale plundering of the art treasures of the province.

(3) To begin with Messana, where he was popular, and with one of its foremost citizens, (4) Verres robbed Heius of a Cupid by Praxiteles.

(5) In the same private chapel were other valuable statues. (6) The Cupid had been borrowed before and brought to Rome by Claudius, but promptly returned, as used to be the custom. (7) Verres carried off all the statues in that chapel, except an old wooden one. Such impudence, to carry off the show pieces of Messana! . . .

(32) How Pamphilus, of Lilybæum, who had been despoiled of a valuable vase, managed to save a pair of cups, by taking the hint from Verres' agents that a bribe would not be amiss. . . .

(54) Verres' workshop, in which antique silver medallions were reset in golden cups under his own direction. . . .

(60) The climax of Verres' robberies from individuals. (61) Prince Antiochus, of Syria, returning from Rome, comes to Syracuse. (62) Entertained by the governor, he invites the latter to dine with him, and shows his splendid tableware. (63) Verres is charmed, and later asks to have the most beautiful objects sent to him, that his silver-smiths may inspect them. Antiochus complies.

(64) The prince has not shown a precious jeweled candelabrum, which he intended to present to the Capitoline temple. Verres gets wind of this treasure, and begs to have it sent to him. (65) Antiochus sends the veiled candelabrum to Verres, who pretends to need more time for its inspection.

(66) The days pass, and Antiochus cannot recover his candelabrum, which Verres shamelessly asks as a gift. Finally, on a false charge, he orders Antiochus to leave the province at once. (67) The prince makes an indignant protest in the market place of Syracuse, and formally states that the candelabrum was to be a gift to Jupiter.

An allied prince has been outrageously treated. (68) It will be a scandal everywhere, and to all of us, unless the insult is punished. Many gifts intended for the Capitol will go elsewhere if this matter is passed over. . . .

(93) From a temple at Agrigentum, Verres took away a much-prized statue of Apollo. Great indignation; the temples now guarded at night. (94) An attempt by night upon the Temple of Hercules and its statue roused the inhabitants (95) to arms, so that Verres' men were obliged to give up their siege of the temple. . . .

(106) All Sicily is thought to be sacred to Ceres and Proserpina. It was from Henna that the latter was carried off (by Pluto). (107) A description of the town, with its high-perched site, its groves, flowers, and grotto. Peculiar veneration paid to the Ceres of Henna. (108) Even foreign states have shared in this respect to her. A Roman embassy was once sent to Henna, to propitiate the goddess.

(109) The most ancient and highly revered bronze statue of Ceres was removed by Verres, (110) who took away a beautiful Victory also from the hand of a colossal statue of Ceres in front of the temple.

What must be his feelings, when I shudder as I recall the sacred spot, and the sorrow of priests and people at the time of my visit? (111) They made no complaint of his other abuses, but only of the loss of their Ceres, to whom the whole town is a sanctuary. (112) You, Verres, dared to do what even fugitive slaves in a great insurrection refrained from doing, — better men than you. . . .

(115) Finally, the capital, Syracuse. Contrast its capture by Marcellus with its treatment by Verres. (116) But omitting the other abuses, I return to our proper subject.

(117) Greatness and beauty of Syracuse; its harbors, connected behind the island; (118) its four quarters; palace, temples, and fountain of the island city. (119) The other quarters, — Achradina, Tycha, Neapolis.

(120) When Marcellus captured Syracuse, he spared all its buildings and many of its works of art. (121) Statues removed to Rome were set up by him in public places, not in his own house or villa. He touched no sacred statues. Compare Verres' conduct.

(122) The Temple of Minerva, untouched by Marcellus, was looted by Verres, who took from it a famous historical painting. (123) Contrast Marcellus. Verres robbed Minerva of other paintings too, among them portraits of the kings, no one of whom was such a tyrant as he.

(124) The marvelous doors of this temple were ruined by Verres, who removed the carved ivory panels and golden ornaments. (125) The huge bamboo poles, — mere curiosities.

(126) The statue of Sappho taken from the town hall. Of course Verres deserves to have it in his private possession! (127) The inscribed base left behind proves the theft.

The statues of Apollo, (128) Aristæus, Jupiter Imperator; a boar's head. (129–130) Sanctity and celebrity of the statue taken from the Temple of Jupiter. (131) Marcellus and Verres again contrasted. Minor works of art. (132) The local guides now serve a different purpose.

Religion and love of art make losses of this kind a very serious matter to the Greeks. (133) As for pretended purchases, one cannot believe any Greek city would ever sell its treasures of art voluntarily. (134) Such sales would shame them more than robbery, open or secret. The policy of our ancestors in leaving to allies and subjects these evidences of prosperity or crumbs of comfort. (135) What could compensate their cities for the removal of highly treasured statues or paintings, — a loss deeply felt by them?

129 1 *istius*: of the defendant; the "forensic use" of *iste*, sometimes implying scorn or contempt ('that malefactor,' etc.), sometimes merely indicating an opponent. — *quem ad modum*: as.

129 2 *studium*: hobby.

129 3 *latrocinium*: highway robbery. Note the climax (Introd. § 22, *d*). The opening sentence merely marks a transition; for no exordium was needed, this being merely a new division (book) of one speech on the largest scale. There are five books in all.

129 4 *rem*: the facts, requiring us to trans. *eam them*.

129 5 **iudices**: *gentlemen of the jury*. Genus covers the whole type of misdeeds to which he is now turning.

129 7 **putetis**, etc.: *should in your opinion be called*.

129 8 **tot oppidis**: *possessing so many towns*; descr. abl., equiv. to an adj. and parallel to **tam vetere** (Gram. § 145). — **familiis . . . copiosis**: same constr.

129 9 **Corinthium**: Corinth and the small island of Delos (90 9) were both famous for their bronzes. Corinthian bronze vessels were highly prized at Rome, — all antiques, since the industry had been destroyed with the city in 146 B. C.

129 10 **margaritam**: besides pearls the precious stones most mentioned are engraved gems (**gemmae**), i. e. intaglios for seals, etc., or cameos.

129 11 **signum**: *statue*.

129 13 **in textili**: *on tapestry*; sc. **fuisse**. **Pictura** is broad enough to include both painting (here on a wooden *panel*, **tabula**) and designs produced by the weaver or with the needle. — **quin conquisierit**: *that he did not hunt it up* (Gram. § 213).

129 14 **abstulerit**: Gram. § 213. **Placitum sit** is a rare form for **placuerit** (avoided here for euphony), — *and carry off what he liked*. — **magnum . . . dicere**: *you think this is big talk*.

129 15 **non . . . comlector omnia**: *I am not making a sweeping statement* (lit.?). — **augendi**: *of emphasizing or exaggerating*.

129 18 **loqui**: by **Latine** he means *literally*; cp. "in plain English." — **planus**: sc. **loquar**.

129 19 **communibus**: *public* (as, for example, in the theaters).

130 2 **acciderit**, etc.: *came to his attention*; descr. clause.

130 3 **reliquisse**: this studied sentence, with its many negs., is an epitome of the entire fourth book.

130 4 **unde . . . ab**: as often, Lat. thinks of the place whence where Eng. thinks of the place where. Trans. *where . . . with*.

130 5 **tibi**: he speaks directly to Verres. — **una**: *unrivalled*. — **ex quo . . . numero**: *with what class*.

130 6 **laudatoribus tuis**: Messana (Messina), in return for his favor, had sent a delegation to Rome, to "whitewash" Verres. This book begins with one of the two cities which nominally supported Verres, and ends with the other (Syracuse, 146 ff.).

130 9 **esse praedatus**, etc.: we should prefer the impers. constr., *when (since) it is proved (discovered) that*, etc. The people of Messana were called Mamertini after the Oscan mercenaries of that name who had seized the town more than two centuries before. ('Mamers' is the Oscan name for Mars.)

131 2 **omnibus rebus**: *in all respects, or by all odds*.

131 3 **vel**: *you may say, perhaps*.

131 5 **istius**: cp. note on 129 1.

131 6 ornata: frequently, in this speech, this verb and its derivs. have particular reference to the presence of works of art. — **ornamento:** Gram. § 115.

131 7 quae . . . sit: *although it is.*

131 8 ab his rebus: the simple abl. is more usual with **vacua** and **nuda** (Gram. § 134).

131 9 magna cum dignitate: equiv. to an adj., — the private *chapel* was *highly venerated, most impressive* (cp. Gram. § 143).

131 13 intellegentem: *discriminating, critical.*

131 14 idiotas appellat: *calls laymen* (or *Philistines*).

131 15 Praxiteli: gen. (nom. -es); a very celebrated Attic sculptor of the fourth century B.C. Only one original statue of his has survived, — the famous *Hermes at Olympia*, discovered in 1877. One *Eros* (Cupid) of his is represented by copies, as that in the Vatican (p. 130).

131 16 nomina: so strong was Roman prejudice against Greek art that a lawyer thought it necessary to explain away as accidental any knowledge of the subject which he might happen to have; cp. Introductory Note, pp. 442 f. **Dum . . . inquirō** = *while I was investigating the defendant's record* (Gram. § 239), on a tour of Sicily to collect evidence.

131 17 Thespiis: a Greek town in Bœotia, at the foot of Mt. Helicon; cp. 156 31 f. It had a temple of *Eros*, and worshiped the Muses also. **Opinor** shows Cicero's usual avoidance of an accuracy that might be thought excessive.

131 19 L. Mummius: who destroyed Corinth (146 B.C.) and brought away many works of art. — **Thespiadas:** statues of the Muses, formerly at Thespiæ.

131 20 Felicitatis: the Temple of *Felicitas* was built by a Lucullus about eighty years before this, somewhere between the Forum and the Tiber (cp. 152 20). It was destroyed by fire in the time of Claudius.

131 22 non attigit: *yet he did not touch.* The *Eros* of Thespiæ was later brought to Rome and placed in the Porticus of Octavia, where it was destroyed in the great fire of Titus' reign, A.D. 80.

131 23 redeam: from the digression about the same sculptor's more famous *Eros*.

131 24 ex . . . parte: cp. note on 130 4.

131 25 Myronis: Myron was a famous sculptor in bronze (fifth century B.C.), who produced a well-known statue of a cow, an athlete with his discus (extant in marble copies), etc. (cp. 140 7).

131 26 et certe: i. e. *I am positive* (after nominal hesitation).

131 27 religionem: it was a bona fide shrine, not merely a collection.

132 2 sustinebant: he gives a detailed description of statues representing Attic maidens in a religious procession, bearing baskets on their heads. The statuette here illustrated is from Pæstum (below Naples; cp. page 98). **Cane-phoroe** (*basket-bearers*) retains the Greek ending -oe (nom. plur. fem.).

132 3 recte admones: *you are right*, — as if addressed to a secretary, ready to act as prompter. The imaginary jury must not think that the speaker shares the defendant's weakness for art. — **Polyclitum:** a celebrated fifth-century (B.C.) sculptor of Argos. Well known were his Amazons, his statues of Hera (Juno), a youth with a spear, etc. Heius' statues were probably all copies.

132 4 venerat: *came*; repeated action (**ut** = *when-ever*; Gram. § 200).

132 10 aeditatem: the ædiles vied with each other in lavish shows as a means of gaining popularity and a higher office (Introd. § 27). Novel features of C. Claudius Pulcher's ædileship (99 B.C.) are mentioned by other writers.

132 16 habuit ornatum, etc.: *kept the Forum decorated*, for the religious processions passing through it during the festivals (Gram. §§ 240, 74).

132 18 Heiorum: causal clause, — *being*, etc.

132 19 autem: *and furthermore*.

132 20 illis . . . est: *found them obliging*.

132 24 reportandum: **ut** and **sic** may be reduced to a single term in translating — *and was himself equally careful*, etc.

132 25 eius modi: i.e. as honest as was Claudius.

132 26 vidimus: **immo vero** is here equiv. to *I should say, correcting of late into recently? yes, very recently*.

132 28 ornarent: descr. clause. The basilicas were next in importance to the temples (Introd. § 49). **Works of art (ornamenta)** were borrowed from guests and other friends for the occasion.

132 29 reddebant: **qui** is merely a connecting rel., — *and yet they*.

132 31 quadridui causa: i.e. for the duration of the festival; freely, as a four days' loan. — **per . . . aeditatis:** *under the pretense that it was for the official use of the ædiles*.

132 32 auferebant: in Eng. **ablata** (l. 30) also should become a main verb, followed up by *and then* (Gram. § 73). Reversed order (chiasmus).

133 3 ligneum: evidently in an archaic style, valuable only for its age. **Tamen** may be brought in with **praeter:** *with a single exception, however*.

133 4 noluit: lit. so far as the old wooden image went; ironical as regards good luck. — **pro:** the interjection.

133 5 fidem, etc.: like our *for heaven's sake*; the exclamation (here of surprise) was orig. a prayer for help (**fides** = *faithful aid*). — **haec causa est:** *is this case of mine* (Gram. § 21).



CANEPHOROS

133 6 quae dico signa: *the aforesaid statues*; this is both subj. of **sublata sunt** and obj. of **viserit**.

133 7 cum imperio: *possessing supreme authority*. — **quin viserit:** *without going to see them* (Gram. § 213).

133 9 tum etiam: *but also even*. — **cuiusque modi:** *of every stamp*.

133 10 religiosus: *conscientious, scrupulous*.

133 11 quorum . . . auderet: descr. clause, — *not one of whom . . . as to dare*, etc. Note how many important words (from line 10) are grouped in threes.

133 14 auferet: logical apodosis to the protasis **tot praetores**, etc., — *and shall Verres*, etc. (Gram. § 280, Intro. § 22, h). **Ubique** = *in each locality*.

133 15 domus: we should say *the contents of*, etc., but Cicero means to put it in a striking way.

133 16 capiet: *shall . . . contain*. — **ut:** *(only) that*.

133 17 tolleret: here Verres is **hic** (not **iste**), to contrast with **superiorum**.

133 19 dicam: **verum** is pred. adj.; freely, *I shall now tell you the unvarnished truth* ('unvarnished' is a substitute for the mild oath **mehercule**).

133 20 Lilybitanum: at Lilybæum (western end of Sicily) Cicero had himself served as quæstor in 75 B.C. (Intro. § 58).

133 21 narrare: the pres. inf. often follows **memini**, of personal experiences, — *I remember Pamphylus' telling me* (Gram. § 71, a). — **hydriam:** the *water jug*, apparently of silver, was the work of Boëthus of Chalcedon (end of the fourth century B.C.), known as the sculptor of a boy strangling a goose, and of a Dionysus recently discovered.

133 23 abstulisset, etc.: i.e. by misuse of his *legal authority* (**potestas**).

133 26 esset ablatum: note the number of subord. clauses (indir. disc.).

133 27 Venerius: a slave of the famous temple of Venus at Eryx, the western promontory of the island. Verres used these temple slaves as messengers, etc.

133 28 sigillatos: the cups had *figures in relief* (**sigilla**), such hammered work being the usual adornment of handsome silverware. Many beautiful specimens have been preserved (pp. 128, 134, 157, 449).

133 29 binos habebam: *I had a pair*. Such cups were regularly made in pairs; hence **binos** is preferred to **duos**. — **utrosque:** *both*. One would expect **utrumque**, but by attraction to **binos** we have the plur.

134 1 venio: of past time (animated and colloquial use of the pres.). — **quiescebat:** he was taking his siesta.

134 2 inambulabant: Cicero had elsewhere explained that these two brothers from Cibra, in Phrygia, were Verres' agents in finding works of art, appraising their value, and securing them by any possible means.

134 4 laudant, etc.: rapid, sketchy narration.

134 5 preti, etc.: *of any appreciable value*; **ullius** instead of **alicuius** would have meant *of any value at all*. — **essent ablati:** Gram. § 290.

134 7 auferantur: notice *ut . . . ne*, not quite the same in meaning as *ne* alone (Gram. § 193). — *multa:* sc. *dicam*; a freq. ellipsis. — **HS mille:** the sign **HS** stands for *sestertios* (see Vocab.). Orig. it was **IIS** = *duo et semis*, and then a crossbar was added to distinguish a numeral from a word. The sesterce was at first $2\frac{1}{2}$ *asses*, the *as* being the unit of value.

134 8 daturum: the promised bribe would amount to about \$40 (with a far larger purchasing power).

134 9 coepisse: Cicero drops back into indir. disc. in telling Pamphilus' story.

134 10 id quod: *as*.

134 11 negotium esse: *negotium* is here equiv. to *rem*, and the whole expression is colloquial, — they were *rubbish* (much like our slang "It was a *punk* proposition"). No *sed* was needed with emphatic *luteum*; but supply for trans. purposes.

134 12 haberet: Gram. § 176.

134 13 aufert: the easy, off-hand way in which Cicero tells this story is well worth study. The orator knew when and how to unbend (Intro. § 15).

134 15 sine . . . voluisse: i. e. there was method in his madness in collecting vast numbers of *emblemata*, *relief designs*, in silver or gold, now removed from the vessels which they had originally adorned; see page 157. — **quanti . . . fecerit:** *how much importance he attached to* is in each case ironical (Gram. § 124).



SCYPHUS

135 1 maximam: emphatic position, — *a great, big one*. The *regia* was the old *palace* of King Hiero II, of Syracuse, now serving as an official residence of the governor; cp. 148 17 f. There he set up his workshop. Note the unusual tense of *conlegerat* (Gram. § 215); and that here a result clause has the rare pluperf. (*reliquisset*), as prior to the time of *instituit*.

135 2 suos: *of his own*.

135 3 concludit: the silversmiths were in no sense prisoners.

135 4 cum: *although*. There were enough ornaments to occupy them all this time.

135 5 illa . . . evellerat: *illa* refers to the detached *relief ornaments* (*emblemata*). *Quae* in translating comes after *illa*.

135 7 includebat: *used to mount* (= *would cause to be mounted*) by soldering or riveting.

135 8 **diceret**: *one would have said* (Gram. § 57, b).

135 10 **pallio**: emphatic position; for wearing a *Greek cloak* was thought scandalous for a Roman governor. He wore also the *dark-colored (pulla)* tunic of the laboring classes, — a viceroy in overalls!

135 12 **ad cupiditatem**: i. e. for this new case (a much more serious affair, one can *no longer (non iam)* use such mild terms as **furtum**, etc.

135 13 **videantur**: descr. clause, best handled as a result in Eng. — *such a crime that in it*, etc., or, changing to act., *that it seems to include and contain*.

135 14 **violati**: sc. **sunt**, and deal similarly with the other ptcps.

135 19 **fuisse**: two princes (**reges**), sons of a former king of Syria, Antiochus X, had come to Rome three or four years before the trial, to urge the senate to intervene in Syria, which had fallen under the rule of Tigranes, king of Armenia, and to restore a legitimate prince.

135 20 **sine . . . obtinebant**: *unquestionably possessed*, meaning *were the rightful rulers of*, though dispossessed by Tigranes. — **ut**: *just as*.

135 21 **acceperant**: their claims to Syria were held by the senate to be indeed valid; but actual intervention, to the point of expelling Tigranes, was quite another matter.

135 22 **matrem**: their mother was a daughter of Ptolemy VII, king of Egypt.

135 23 **temporibus**: there was a *critical condition* (a freq. meaning of **tempus**) for the Roman government, which had on its hands at the same time wars with Sertorius in Spain, with Mithridates in the East, with the fugitive slaves in Italy, and with the pirates anywhere and everywhere.

135 25 **Antiochus vocatur**: he was surnamed *Asiaticus*. After Lucullus' victories over Tigranes, this Antiochus XIII (last of his line) was recognized as king of Syria for about four years, until he was dethroned by Pompey.

135 26 **isto praetore**: abl. abs., *in the praetorship of*, etc.

135 27 **hereditatem**: proverbial in the sense of *bonanza*.

136 1 **domesticum**: note order of words and the uncommon use of **homini** = **ei** (cp. 113 24). **Haec** means *the usual, or customary*.

136 2 **visum est**: *seemed right*.

136 3 **suis decumis**: *his own tithes*. **Suis** implies (with a certain sting) that Verres exacted table supplies in an amount comparable to the regular tithes. For **esset**, implying *as he thought*, cp. Gram. § 181.

136 6 **fecerat**: for the **vasa aurea** cp. 135 4 f.

136 7 **quid multa**: *why enlarge?*

136 9 **arbitraretur**: his frame of mind on leaving is put into a result clause, giving the resultant impression; a ptcp. in Eng., — *thinking, feeling*. Cp. 127 4 ff.

136 12 **gemmis**: the reference is mainly to intaglios and cameos, as in 129 10.

136 13 **vinarium**: *used in serving wine*.

136 14 **trulla**: the *ladle* must have been of onyx, agate, or other semi-precious stone. — **aureo**, etc.: *with a golden handle*.

136 15 **Minucium**: a Roman knight, Antiochus' host during his stay in Syracuse. **Credo** (with **idoneum** and **gravem**) is not ironical here.

136 17 **mirari**: three hist. infs. without conjs. give an animated tone to this part of the story (Gram. § 92).

136 18 **esse convivium**: Gram. § 297 fin.

136 19 **res**: *the outcome*.

136 21 **rogatum**: supine (Gram. § 93).

136 23 **ostendere**: for the workshop of the *silversmiths* (**caelatores**) cp. 134 19 ff. — **qui . . . nosset** (= **novisset**): descr. causal clause, — *since he*, etc.

136 25 **rogatum**: here again with an obj., as in line 21. — **considerare**: at **velle se** begins the quoted explanation, — *saying he wished*, etc.

136 26 **mittitur**: simple conversational style (Gram. § 58).

136 27 **reliquum**: subst., *the rest, the sequel*.

136 29 **pervagatum est**: a subj. (**quod**) may be supplied from **de quo**.

137 2 **perfectum**: it was of gold, studded with many gems, alone mentioned here as a greater rarity. — **ii quos dico**: *the aforesaid*; cp. 133 6.

137 3 **offenderant**: *had found*. The venerable Capitoline temple had been burned in 83 B.C. (cp. 39 5 f.). The new temple, begun by Sulla, was unfinished at the time of the trial, but was completed and dedicated the next year (69 B.C.) by a member of the jury, Q. Lutatius Catulus (note on 88 13).

137 4 **neque . . . potuerunt**: *were unable*; a principal verb.

137 5 **voluerunt**, etc.: *and decided not to*, etc., — a decision rather than a state of mind; trans. *and at the same time declined*, etc. — **magnificentius**: pred. adj.

137 6 **suo**: *proper*.

137 9 **integra**: *revealed for the first time* (lit. *untouched*), reënforcing **recens**. — **perveniret**, etc.: *when . . . should come*.

137 10 **reportare**: with **statuerunt** we should have expected a conj., **itaque** or **igitur** (asyndeton). — **audissent**: *should hear*, representing the fut. perf. of their thought.

137 12 **dedicatum**: sc. **esse**. In place of the ancient terracotta statue something more modern was to be set up, probably in gold and ivory.

137 15 **adferrent**: Gram. § 177.

137 16 **nescio quo modo**: *in some way* (Gram. § 162).

137 18 **suspicaretur**: subjv. clause, a reason that is denied (Gram. § 208). **Ne** is with **multi** (Gram. § 193).

137 27 **deferrent**: for the tense cp. Gram. § 65; for Verres' official residence (**praetorium**) cp. 135 1, **regia**; also 148 17 f.

137 29 **regio munere**: i.e. *to be presented* (to the temple) by a prince. — **Capitolio**: note repetition of **dignam** (anaphora) and climax.

137 31 **esse debebat**: *was to be expected*, or *was the natural result* (more lit. *was bound to be*).

137 32 **copia**: *lavishness, luxury*; note order.

138 2 **factum**: many large marble candelabra from ancient temples or palaces have been preserved. Some have been frequently copied for modern buildings.

138 3 **referrent**: for the tense cp. 137 27.

138 6 **revertuntur**: to the house of Minucius (136 15).

138 8 **plures**: no verb is needed in mere counting. — **referri**: with the last hist. inf. the subj. changes to the candelabrum. — **si videatur**: a formula of politeness; indir., as part of the message. Usually one said *si placet*, *si vis*, or *sodes (si audes)*. The whole context is in an off-hand conversational style; cp. 133 26 ff.

138 9 **ut reddat**, etc.: *sends a messenger (requesting him) to return it.*

138 12 **cognoscite**: **impudentiam** shows that **os** = "cheek."

138 14 **videret**: the rel. clauses are descr.

138 15 **religione Iovis Capitolini**: *respect (veneration) for Jupiter*, etc.

138 16 **diceret**: note the position of the gens. (obj. and subj. respectively; chiasmus).

138 18 **muneris**: in his intent it was already a *gift*.

138 21 **esse venturos**: a trumped-up excuse, all the more preposterous as Syria was then under Tigranes, and Antiochus was without power or responsibility, even if pirates were on their way.

138 22 **in foro**: *in the market place (Greek agora)*. **Maximo conventu** = *in a large mass meeting (really circumstantial)*.

138 23 **in . . . versari**: *am indulging in an accusation known to but few*.

138 24 **arbitretur**: the **ne quis** clause gives us the speaker's motive in making a still-unfinished assertion (Gram. § 272). **Suspicionem hominum** means *in accordance with men's suspicions*.

138 29 **abstulisse**: the obj., **candelabrum**, is repeated in **id**. For **sibi** cp. Gram. § 112. — **gemmis**: such phrases with **ex**, indicating material, can be attached directly to nouns (Gram. § 138).

139 1 **quae . . . essent**: **sua** is in effect concessive, — *though his own*; more freely, *which were his own, but now in Verres' hands*. — **laborare**: not 'labor.'

139 2 **eripi**: for the constr. cp. Gram. § 296.

139 5 **Maximo**: in the four infs. (two pairs of synonyms), as in the full title of Jupiter, we have the solemn language of religious ceremony.

139 6 **voluntatis**: *intention*. — **religionis**: *solemn obligation*.

139 8 **possunt sustinere**, etc.: *can prove equal to the accusation under this one single head*. **Querimoniam** implies that the act was a crying shame, for which no words could suffice.

139 9 **qui . . . comitatu . . . fuisset**: descr. rel. clause. Trans. **comitatu . . . fuisset** *had maintained the retinue and state belonging to a king*. Lit. trans. of the descr. abl. is freq. awkward.

139 11 **esset**: we suspect already that the **cum**-clause will prove to be concessive. **Is** effectively repeats the subj. — **amicissimo . . . regibus**: in Eng.

we may take our cue from the repetition of **amicus** in **amicissimo**, and render, *freely, just as his father, etc., a most ancient . . . royal house (regibus), had been our good friends before him. Opulentissimo . . . regno = who ruled over a rich and powerful realm.* Note the three groups of descr. abls.: **amicissimo . . . maiori-bus**; **antiquissimis . . . regibus**; **opulentissimo . . . regno**.

139 15 **regna aliorum**: *the lands of other kings.*

139 16 **audirent**: representing the **audient** of dir. disc. (Gram. § 70).

139 20 **futurum**: sc. **esse**. **Odio** (also in **odio esse** (with another dat. or **apud**) is used for the wanting pass. of **odi** (Gram. § 115).

139 23 **percrebruerit**: causal clause.

139 24 **approbarint**: a verdict of acquittal, rendered by the jury of senators, would be interpreted as evidence of tacit approval. **Sic** (trans. *it* or *this*), at the beginning of the sentence, anticipated the indir. disc. (**non istius**, etc.).

139 27 **desiderat**: many such gifts were to be expected from various parts of the Roman world about the time of the dedication of the temple. Note the three subjs. of **habent** (anaphora).

139 29 **tulisse**: here with no expressed obj. The abl. abs. gives the reason for their resentment: *were angry at the intercepting*, etc. (Gram. §§ 75, 76).

140 1 **re tam eximia**: i. e. the rare candelabrum.

140 2 **audient**: note three phrases with **in** (*in the case of*). For **sin** cp. Gram. § 261.

140 6 **monumentum**: *memorial, reminder*. Scipio Africanus the Younger, the destroyer of Carthage (146 B.C.), had restored to Sicilian cities numerous monuments, etc., carried away by the Carthaginians. He had been mentioned several times in the chapters here omitted. Evidently **Agrigento** (the place whence) looks forward to a verb of taking away. **Agrigentum** (Girgenti) was a flourishing Greek city in the sixth and fifth centuries B.C. Several remarkable temples mark the site today.

140 7 **erat inscriptum**: the *tiny silver letters* were inlaid in the bronze of the thigh. For Myron cp. note on 131 25, and for **minutis argenteis** without conj. see Gram. § 42, *a fin*.

140 8 **sustulisti: ex . . . fano** adds the precise locality to the name of the city at the beginning. Trans. *from Agrigentum . . . (and) out of*, etc. **Æsculapius** was the god of healing, son of Apollo.

140 9 **cum . . . cum**: *when . . . (and) when* (asyndeton).

140 11 **duces**: pred., — (*as*) *guides*.

140 14 **requirebant**: *felt the loss of*. The five phrases represent all that the statue meant to the sorrowing citizens. **Religionem domesticam** = *local cult*.

140 15 **praecipitur . . . quaestoribus**: the quaestors were *directed and charged*. The *ut*-clause is subj. of **praecipitur**, and also in appos. to **negotium**. In **quaestoribus** and **aedilibus** Cicero gives to local functionaries their nearest corresponding Roman titles.

140 20 **coniunctissimo animo**: the Roman merchants were *on the best of terms* with the native population.

140 23 **foro**: as in 138 24.

140 24 **ipsius Herculis**: the pron. is not without point, since a temple of one god often sheltered images of other divinities; so the temple of Æsculapius (l. 8). **Ex aere** is attached directly to **simulacrum** (cp. note on 138 29).

140 26 **non tam multum . . . intellego . . . quam multa vidi**: freely, (*and yet*) *while I have seen many statues, I am not a connoisseur of such matters* (lit.?). (Cp. note on 131 16.) **Tametsi** = *and yet* (Gram. § 269).

140 27 **usque eo**: sc. **pulchrum**.

140 28 **attritus**: *more worn* (than the rest of the statue); the parted lips and chin were worn away by kisses.

140 29 **solent**: Cicero is straining a point in attributing this to the beauty of the statue, rather than to old custom or the fervor of the worshippers.

141 2 **nocte intempesta**: the attack was made *in the dead of night*, under the direction of Timarchides, a freedman of Verres, often mentioned as his agent in these undertakings.

141 6 **valvis**: a pair of such temple doors is described in 151 18 ff.

141 7 **conantur**: sc. *Timarchides and his men*, with change of subj.

141 8 **expugnari**: this word is sometimes applied to the occupants of a stronghold or city taken by assault, and here to Hercules in this attack upon his temple.

141 10 **praetoria**: agrees with **domo** as well as with **cohorte**. The men have been sent from Verres' official residence in Syracuse (137 26).

142 1 **fugitivorum**: the slaves are called **fugitivi** as a more abusive term, not to be taken lit.

142 2 **neque . . . neque**: Gram. § 40. — **aetate . . . infirmis**: *so old or so infirm* (lit.?).

142 3 **surrexerit**: Gram. § 175; for perf. subjv. in a result clause cp. § 69.

142 4 **adriperit**: the pron. **quisque** is put by preference in the rel. clause. Trans. *every man snatching the weapon which*, etc.

142 6 **moliebantur**: *had been toiling away* (Gram. § 62). A cpd. of the same verb in **demoliendo**, *in pulling down* (Introd. § 22, l). Some pull ropes fastened to the limbs of the statue; others try to pry it loose with crowbars; still it does not budge. For **horam amplius** cp. Gram. § 136, a.

142 7 **cum**: *in spite of the fact that*.

142 11 **milites**, etc.: again the animated, informal style in this sarcastic sentence. Order heightens the scornful effect.

142 13 **religionum**: *hallowed objects*.



HERAKLES

142 14 **Siculis: male est** is a colloquial phrase with the dat., — *the Sicilians are never so badly off*. — **dicant**, etc.: they always have *some* witticism (Gram. § 211).

143 3 **oportere**: adding a thirteenth labor to be entered upon Hercules' list, — an adventure with another *boar* (**verrem**). The pun was perhaps Cicero's own, but palmed off upon the Sicilians (Intro. § 22, *l*).

143 4 That the robbery of a temple statue from Henna, an especially sacred spot in the very center of the island, may make a deeper impression on the imaginary jury, Cicero describes the place in a stately passage of carefully finished form, with special attention to rhythm.

143 6 **consecratam**: the context has shown that **opinio** means *belief*, as confirmed by venerable books and inscriptions, etc. The worship of Demeter and Persephone had been brought from Greece to Sicily, where, as in Italy, the former was identified with Roman Ceres, while the latter's name was Romanized as Proserpina, or she was accounted the same as Libera, an Italian goddess.

143 7 **ipsis . . . persuasum est**: *the Sicilians themselves are so thoroughly convinced of it*.

143 8 **insitum**: *implanted*, suggesting an outside source for the idea, is amended by **atque innatum**, or *rather, inborn*.

143 10 **esse arbitrantur**: Demeter, according to the legend, had first taught man agriculture, at Eleusis (near Athens) and in other places. The Sicilians placed the scene of her benevolence at Henna.

143 11 **eandem**: *also*.

143 13 **nominatur**: Henna (now Castrogiovanni) was perched upon a rocky height, towering far above the valley. The rock on which it stood is 2600 feet above the sea, and is surrounded by precipices, making the place almost impregnable. The stealing away of Proserpina by Pluto had been a favorite theme of poets.

143 14 **vellet**: Ceres' quest of the lost daughter carried away to the lower world was an important chapter in the story.

143 15 **sibi . . . ipsa**: cp. Gram. § 27.

143 16 **terrarum**: impressive order and rhythm; for the **cum**-clause where we use a ptc. cp. Gram. § 227, — *and carrying these before her*, etc.

143 17 **est loco . . . edito**: *has a site*, etc. (descr. abl.); freely, *stands on very high ground, towering above the surrounding country*. Cp. 139 9 f.

143 19 **tota vero**: *while the whole of this level space*.

143 20 **quam circa**: = *circa quam*. A not uncommon position for dissyllabic prepositions with pronouns.

143 21 **flores**: the *flowers*, etc. were at the foot of the crag. — **locus ut**: = *ut locus*; result clause. This order emphasizes the subj.



CERES

143 23 **videatur**: the poets had enlarged upon the flowers Proserpina and her companions were gathering when Pluto suddenly appeared; and the visitor in those flowery meadows feels that the story must be true.

143 25 **cum curru exstitisse**: local legend had even fixed upon the cave from which Pluto (**Dis pater**) had emerged.

144 1 **conventu**: the scene of these gatherings was the fountain of Kyane (Cyane, the **lacus** of 143 27), in the southern suburbs of Syracuse.

144 3 **deorum**: *divinities*; notice order, and separation from **horum**.

144 4 **Cereris Hennensis**: emphasis on the closing words; it is her statue of which he will presently speak. Marked separation in **mira . . . religio**.

144 6 **praesens**: this is *effectual, powerful*, rather than *immediate* or *visible* (cp. 28 12).

144 10 **sacra**: (*participation in*) the rites; he refers to the celebrated Eleusinian mysteries, into which many noted Romans, including Cicero, had been initiated. Ceres was said to have visited Eleusis (near Athens) in her wanderings, and it became her most famous place of worship.

144 12 **quantam . . . eorum**: the quest. may be translated freely, *what should (must, convenit) be the religious feelings of those, etc.* **Convenit** is like **oportet**.

144 14 **atroci . . . tempore**: *at a terrible . . . crisis*.

144 16 **portenderetur**: for Tiberius Gracchus cp. note on 3 19.

144 17 **consulibus**: 133 B.C. Of these consuls, P. Mucius Scævola and L. Calpurnius Piso, the latter commanded an army in Sicily against the revolted slaves, who had gained control of the larger part of the island. Henna was besieged by Piso, but the insurgent garrison held out for two years. — **Sibyllinos**: upon the report of prodigies (supposed to indicate the displeasure of heaven) it was customary to placate the gods by special sacrifices, gifts, etc. The senate might order the priests to consult the Sibylline books, of which they were the custodians, in order to find out what rites would be required. Cp. note on 38 29. — **aditum est**: *impers., — recourse was had*.

144 18 **Cererem . . . oportere**: the Sibylline verses (in Greek) were in this case interpreted as requiring offerings to *the most ancient Ceres*.

144 19 **ex amplissimo . . . decemvirali**: *belonging to the reverend body of decemvirs* (the ten priests in charge of the Sibylline books, called *decemviri sacris faciundis*).

144 21 **templum**: this was near the river end of the Circus Maximus. Concessive clause, as is shown by **tamen**.

144 22 **profecti sunt**: a religious embassy was sent to Henna, in the midst of the siege mentioned above (cp. note on **consulibus**, l. 17).

144 23 **illius religionis**: *of that cult (worship)*.

144 25 **obtundam diutius**: sc. **vos**.

144 27 **videatur**, etc.: an apology for glowing language, which might be thought out of place in a court (cp. 100 4 ff.).

144 29 **fiunt**, etc.: not applying to all possible religions in the world, but to the worship of Demeter in many different places. Asyndeton. **Principem** = *taking precedence over*, in view of the antiquity of her worship there.

145 2. **Liberæ**: i. e. **Proserpinae**. For **e marmore** cp. note on 140 24, fin.

145 3 **non ita antiqua**: *not so very (not especially) old*.

145 4 **cum facibus**: Gram. § 143. She was usually represented carrying a torch or torches, to recall the long search for her daughter (see coin, p. 455). Asyndeton.

145 8 **perampla**: i. e. of *heroic size* (or larger). The two temples apparently stood in a large open court. Triptolemus was said to be the son of Celeus, king of Eleusis, who received Ceres into his household on her wanderings. Later she gave Triptolemus her chariot drawn by winged serpents (same coin), and sent him over the world to spread the knowledge of the new art of agriculture.

145 10 **demolitio . . . asportatio**: these very rare verbal nouns in **-tio** are used here for variety, in place of their verbs.

145 12 **Victoriae**: to symbolize the conquest of barbarism through her gift of agriculture, this Ceres held in her hand a large statuette of Victory.

145 16 **perhorrescam**: again the impassioned style; causal clause.

145 18 **in mentem**: with this expression the thing which occurs to one may be put in the gen., as with **memini**, etc. (Gram. § 131). Asyndeton.

145 19 **mihi**: **praesto esse alicui** = *to meet someone*.

145 20 **fuerunt**: the priests came out to meet Cicero as suppliants, with sacred branches (as olive or laurel), and wearing fillets in their hair.

145 21 **civium**: **contio** and **conventus** (like **dies**) are also in appos. with **omnia**, l. 18. Enumeration makes a conj. needless. Assonance.

145 22 **versari videretur**: *seemed to be (or to prevail)*.

145 23 **imperia**: = *exactions*. Verres was arbitrary in the imposition of these tithes of grain.

145 26 **Cereris numen**, etc.: strong emphasis (in place of a **sed**) after the repeated **non** (anaphora), — *it was the divinity of Ceres*, etc.

145 27 **religionem**: note the three phrases without conj.

145 28 **expiari**: *to be purified*.

146 3 **videretur**, etc.: *it was as if Verres, as a second Pluto*, etc.

146 4 **esse**: the whole town seemed to be a sacred reservation.

146 6 **accolae**: *neighbors, tenants*, as living on land which belonged, as it were, to the goddess.

146 7, 8 **Henna**: for the constr. cp. 140 5. Frequent and impressive repetition of the goddess's name and that of the sacred city.

146 9 **et**: Gram. § 42, b. — **deae**: Gram. § 112. — **quorum . . . religioni**: the antecedent of **quibus** is the unexpressed subj. of **ausi sunt**. Trans. *but those who had every quality (in . . . omnia) . . . dared neither to profane nor to touch any of these things (quorum)*. Who these were appears in the next sentence.

146 13 **hostes**: the siege, begun in the previous year, was continued and concluded under the consul P. Rupilius, 132 B.C. Henna had been the center of the revolt under a former slave, Eunus. — **sed . . . libidinum**: *but neither were they as much the slaves of their masters as you were (the slave) of your passions.* The remainder of the sentence follows the same pattern.

146 18 **scelere**: *wickedness*; includes such sacrilege as Verres had practiced at Henna.

146 20 The remainder of this fourth book is devoted to Syracuse, the capital of the province, and a city which had shown a certain amount of sympathy with Verres (cp. note on 130 6). It had been a great city down to the time of its capture by the Romans (212 B.C., Second Punic War); but its importance was now much diminished. The circuit of its walls was immense, as the city covered more ground than Rome at that time.

146 23 **concludam atque definiam**: *complete and bring to an end.* By **totam . . . orationem** he means *this whole division of my speech* (on works of art). **Huius generis** = *on this topic.*

146 25 **non numquam etiam**: *and also at times.*

146 26 **legerit**: Gram. § 213. The classic account of the siege is in the twenty-fifth book of Livy, who was born eleven years after Verres' trial. He dwells upon the vast amount of the spoils; for the soldiers did sack the city. Cicero has overdrawn the restraint of Marcellus.

147 1 **ab . . . conditas**: sc. **esse**; freely, *that the conqueror of Syracuse was (really) its founder*; i.e. that although Marcellus took the city by force of arms, he set things in order with as much humanity as if he had been the leader of a colony.

147 2 **constitutas accepit**: *took it under his protection when it was in a state of law and order.* — **dicetis**: *(then) you will say* (cp. Gram. § 280).

147 3 **locis**: *points (in my speech).*

147 5 **servatum est**: Gram. § 291. **Id** is a repetition of the subj., **forum Syracusanorum**. Omit in translating.

147 7 **Carthaginiensium**: sc. **classibus**.

147 8 **eum**: *that, I say* (or omit). Like **id** in line 5. — **myoparoni**: sing., as when we say, "In the Great War much damage was done by *the submarine*."

147 9 **patuisse**: in another place Cicero says that four light pirate vessels were not prevented by Verres from entering the harbor (V, 97). — **adhibitam, violatas**: Gram. § 75.

147 11 **neque** (the first one): *no, not*, or simply *either* (Gram. § 40).

147 13 **per**: *in the course of*. It means at various times within a given period rather than continuously. — **perfecta**: *successfully accomplished*. The prefix **per** notifies us that Verres did a thorough job.

147 14 **cognoscite**: after an elaborate *praeteritio* from line 2, Cicero returns to his proper subject in this fourth book (Introd. § 22, n, 6). **Antea dixi** (*had been speaking*, we should say) refers to this book only.

148 3 **situ . . . munito**: descr. abl., — *it has a location not only strong.*

148 5 **aedificatione amplexuque**: *by the surrounding buildings* (lit.?).

148 6 **inclusos**: the small harbor was, in fact, hemmed in by buildings, except on the seaward (east) side. The great harbor has a broad entrance from the east.

148 7 **qui . . . confluunt**: see the map opposite page 130, and note how the two harbors have approaches **diversos inter se**, *at a distance from each other*, but are connected in **exitu** by the channel between the island and the mainland.

148 11 **coniunctione**: it was *because of their connection* that the bridge was built.

148 13 **Insula**: called Ortygia, the oldest part of the city, virtually its citadel, between the great harbor and the sea, and bounded on the north by the small harbor. — **diuncta . . . adiungitur**: trans. *is separated . . . , but connected and united*. The bridge does not merely furnish a passage from the Island: it *unites* the old and new towns into one city.

148 17 **proiecta est**: *juts out*. — **domus**: the official residence (*praetorium*) of the Roman governors was the former palace of King Hiero (the Younger), the ally of Rome in the First Punic War and the early years of the Second. It was in a strong position near the bridge (l. 13); cp. 137 26, 141 10.

148 21 **Minervae**: this is probably the Doric temple of the fifth century B. C., still standing after many alterations and disfigurements. Converted into a church, then for a time into a mosque (during the Saracen occupation, tenth and eleventh centuries), it is the cathedral of the modern Siracusa. Of the temple of Diana (north end of the island) there are only scanty ruins.

148 22 **Arethusa est**: the celebrated fountain of a nymph who was fabled to have fled from the river god Alpheus. From the Peloponnesus she made her way under the sea, and emerged at last at Syracuse. The fountain was near the south end of Ortygia, but not literally at its extremity.

148 24 **munitio . . . lapidum**: *by a massive stone wall*. It was, and still is, separated from the harbor by this sea wall. The water is no longer fresh but brackish.

148 25 **Achradina est**: this great quarter, many times larger than Ortygia, extended northward along the seashore, and included a broad plateau.

148 27 **prytanium**: *city hall*; here were held the official dinners, to which came officials, ambassadors, and eminent citizens. The building was regarded as the hearthstone of the state. Enumeration without conj's.

148 28 **Iovis Olympii**: this temple, like the other buildings just named, was by the market place (*agora, forum*), near the small harbor. — **partes**: in contrast



DIANA

with the important center to which he has just been referring, these are the other *sections* of the same *quarter* (*urbs*), Achradina.

148 29 *divisae . . . continentur*: *which are cut . . . and occupied* (lit. *held together*, contrasted with *divisae*).

149 1 *Tycha*: Greek for *Fortuna*. This quarter, which took its name from the goddess's temple, lay west of the northern end of Achradina, far from the island.

149 3 *colitur*: *is dwelt in*. — *frequentissime*: emphatic order, — *by the densest population*.

149 4 *Neapolis*: Greek for *Newtown*. It lay west of southern Achradina, and was growing toward the great harbor.

149 5 *theatrum maximum*: one of the greatest theaters of the Greek world, largely cut out of native rock on the edge of the plateau (*quam ad summam* = *at the highest part* (of which)), and still an impressive ruin (p. 147).

149 7 *Liberæ*: for Ceres and Proserpina (*Libera*) cp. 143 ff. — *Temenites*: lit. *of the Temenos*, a sacred grove at Syracuse. So we sometimes connect places with the names of churches, as St. Mark's-in-the-Bouwerie (New York), St. Martin's-in-the-Fields (London). Note, however, that it is the god, and not the shrine, which is called *Temenites*.

149 9 *auferre*: it was actually brought to Rome in the last days of Tiberius (A.D. 37). Cicero does not mention a fifth quarter, *Epipolæ*, extending far to the west, — probably a region of villas and gardens, though included within the walls and protected by a fort, *Euryalus*.

149 10 *revertar*: the siege and capture of Syracuse, in 212 B.C., by M. Claudius Marcellus was a story familiar to all.

149 12 *ad laudem . . . pertinere*: freely, *that it would increase the glory*.

149 13 *ex qua praesertim*: descr. rel. clause, causal; equiv. to *praesertim cum ex ea*.

149 14 *delere*, etc.: in appos. with *hoc*.

149 16 *quasi . . . venisset*: Gram. § 270.

149 17 *in ornatu*: *in dealing with the works of art*. — *habuit*, etc.: *he considered the claims both of victory and of humanity* (lit. ?). *Victoriae* and *humanitatis* are obj. gens.

149 18 *humanitatis*, etc.: *humanity*, as applied to a considerate victor, who would show some evidence of refined feeling.

149 19 *victoriae . . . humanitatis*: *he thought that it belonged to victory* = *that his victory permitted him* (or *that as victor he was expected*); *that it belonged to humanity* = *that humanity required him*. The two infs. are subjs. of *esse*. For *victoriae* as pred. gen. of possession cp. Gram. § 119.

149 25 *praesertim quam* = *praesertim cum eam* (cp. note on line 13 and Gram. § 178). The two rel. clauses, *quae . . . possent* and *quam . . . voluisset*, reflect the thought of Marcellus.

149 27 **victoria . . . appetivit**: we should say *his victory did not* LEAD HIM TO *claim*, etc. Personif.

150 1 **videmus**: Marcellus had restored an older temple to **Honos**, on the Appian Way, just outside the gate (Porta Capena), and had added to it a shrine for **Virtus**, *Courage*.

150 2 **suburbano**: sc. **praedio**, — his *villa*, in contrast with his *town house* (**aedibus**). Elsewhere Cicero says that the one thing Marcellus kept for himself was a machine which the Syracusan astronomer Archimedes had made to show the motions of the planets (*de Re Pub.* I, 21 f.).

150 3 **ornamento . . . futuram**: as not tainted by plunder; sc. **esse**.

150 5 **attigit**, etc.: *did not even touch any (statue of a) god*.

150 6 **non . . . comparetis**: because **comparare** means primarily *to connect as equals* (from **par**). This would be an insult to the dead Marcellus. Trans. *rank one with the other*. — **tali**: emphatic, — *so great, of such high character* (72 19).

150 7 **bello**: as honorably conducted by Marcellus, in contrast with Verres' flagrant offenses in time of peace.

150 9 **conferatis**: the *coming* of Verres with his *staff* (*retinue*) is contrasted with Marcellus' triumphal entry.

150 10 **dixi**: i.e. at 148 13 and 16 ff. The venerable temple has seen almost continuous use for some twenty-four centuries.

150 11 **plenam atque ornatam**: *in possession of all its treasures of art*.

150 13 **religionum . . . retineret**: *continued to respect the rights of religious customs* (lit.?).

150 15 **esse videatur**: **non ut . . . sed ut** is reg., where we might expect **ut non . . . sed** (cp. ll. 6 f.; Gram. § 197). Note the double contrast.—**Agathocli**: Agathocles made himself tyrant of Syracuse, and ruled it with an iron hand, 317–289 B.C. The painting was on **tabulae**, *wooden panels*, as usual.

150 18 **putaretur**: Gram. § 174.

150 20 **non attigit**: sacred objects were supposed to become **profana**, *no longer sacred*, and forfeited to the victor who had taken a city, it being thought that the gods must have deserted the place before it could be taken. Connect **illa sua** with **victoria**. — **cum . . . accepisset**: *freely, although when he took charge of them, those art treasures were by this time revered as sacred*, etc.

150 25 **cepisset**: *should take*, for **cepero** of dir. disc. (Gram. § 290).

150 26 **voverat**: his temple probably had two cellæ, or chambers, as it is sometimes spoken of as one temple, sometimes as two.

150 28 **quem . . . ille**: *as Marcellus (ille) did*. — **deberet**: descr. clause, — *a man who*, etc.

151 1 **is . . . conatus est**: *is repeats the subj.*, as in 150 26.

151 3 **transtulit**, etc.: *removed to the house of his mistress* (Chelidon). Note juxtaposition (twice).

151 7 **commemoratione . . . formarum**: *by recalling the men and (giving an) acquaintance with their features (looks).*

151 9 **quisquam**: not only follows negs., but also is often used in comparisons with **quam**, esp. if they might have been put in the form of a neg. statement. This one implies that *no one* of his *predecessors* (**superiorum**) was equally loathsome. — **tamen**: equiv. to *it must be admitted*, showing that, bad as the tyrants may have been, they had this one redeeming trait.

151 14 **augere atque ornare**: *magnify and commend.* — **quod**: *a thing which*; obj. of **suspiciari**.

151 15 **tam . . . cupidum**: in appos. with **quod**, — *namely, that I am so overzealous.* — **ut . . . velim**: *as to wish.*

151 18 **conscios**: *aware of*; pred. — **valvas . . . nullas umquam . . . fuisse**: Eng. would shift the negs., — *that in no temple have there ever been any doors.*

151 19 **perfectiores**: *more cunningly wrought.*

151 20 **incredibile dictu**: *freely, you would not believe me if I told you.* For **dictu** cp. Gram. § 93, b.

151 21 **scriptum**: the noun; *freely, accounts.* Historians often digressed to describe places and things of interest. Cicero evidently made much use of such passages in a Sicilian historian, Timæus.

151 22 **mirentur**: potential subjv. with **forsitan** (originally an indir. quest.; **forsitan** = **fors sit an**).

151 23 **esto**: *granted; very well.* — **honestius**: *more creditable* (with **rei publicae**, dat. of reference).

151 24 **illis**: i.e. to the Greeks.

151 26 **argumenta**: *subjects or designs*, scenes from legend or history, apparently on numerous ivory panels, with many small carved figures.

151 27 **Gorgonis**: this mask of the Gorgon Medusa was probably on a much larger scale than the panel figures, and in high relief, — a beautiful maiden's face, with writhing serpents in her hair. It may have been of bronze.

152 2 **auferre**: the *bosses* (**bullae**) were useless for any other purpose, except as mere metal.

152 4 **eius modi**: pred., — *in such a state.*

152 6 **gramineas hastas**: *bamboo poles*, probably brought from India. The great statue of the goddess (Minerva) perhaps had one bamboo shaft as a spear, with metal point added. Others, perhaps still larger, were preserved as curiosities in the temple.

152 7 **in hoc nomine . . . commoveri**: *were shocked at this item* (when they heard with amazement of the childish theft). **Nomine** is an *item* or *entry* in the list of robberies from the temple. — **quod**: *(a curiosity) which.*

152 8 **in quibus . . . erat**: *for they displayed no craftsmanship.*

152 11 **concupisti**: a parenth. and three rel. clauses so far postponed the verb upon which **hastas** was to have depended that **etiam** is repeated, and the object

duplicated by *id* (*such plunder*). In Eng. one may separate into three sentences, beginning *Am I to mention even the bamboo poles? For, etc.*

152 12 **nam**: here equiv. to *of course*; cp. Gram. § 51, a. The sentence is highly ironical, as if Verres had said, "You may make fun of the bamboo poles, but the Sappho was a real work of art" (148 27).

152 13 **concedendum . . . videatur**: sc. *tibi*, — *you should be pardoned and excused*.

152 15 **elegans**: *dainty*. — **quisquam . . . haberet**: *had anyone — private citizen or even community — a better right to own it?* (lit. *was anyone*, etc., rather to have, etc.). For **haberet** cp. Gram. § 55, d.

152 17 **Verres**: effective position at the end, with the contrasted name at the very beginning. Silanion was an Athenian sculptor of the middle of the fourth century B. C., famous for his skill in expressing emotions. **Elegantissimus** = *most critical (discriminating)*.

152 18 **nostrum . . . quisque**: *for as for every mother's son of us*.

152 19 **delicati**: *fastidious*, sarcastically repeats the idea of **elegantissimus**.

152 20 **eat**: *let him go*. What Verres might be supposed to say.

152 21 **Metelli**, etc.: Cicero makes a rhetorical group of three buildings in Rome where art lovers went to see Greek statues: (1) a Temple of *Felicitas* already mentioned at 131 19 (erected by Lucullus' grandfather between the Forum and the Tiber); (2) a Temple of the Fortune of the Day (*Fortuna Huiusce Diei*), vowed by Catulus in the battle with the Cimbri at Vercellæ, 101 B. C. (two temples of that name are mentioned, one on the Palatine, one in the Campus Martius; the latter is probably Catulus' temple); (3) a colonnaded court erected in 147 B. C. in the Campus Martius, near the Capitol and the river, by Metellus Macedonicus, and inclosing two temples. Any commemorative structure is a **monumentum**.

152 22 **Tusculanum**: sc. **praedium**, *estate*; but the adj. had come to be felt as a noun. **Istorum** (*of his fine friends*) refers to the aristocratic friends of Verres, who had villas near Tusculum (Frascati), esp. the orator Hortensius, the son-in-law of Catulus.

152 23 **suorum**: *of his treasures*.

152 24 **commodarit**: cp. 132 9 ff. — **Verres**: contrasted with **nostrum** in line 18; but *let Verres*, etc.

152 27 **perferetis**: Cicero thinks it insufferable that one who looks so much like a *day laborer* (and did have a workshop, 134 f.) should have such *luxurious tastes*. — **educatus**: *reared*, refers not to schooling but to bringing up.

152 28 **appositior . . . auferenda**: *better fitted to carry statues round than to carry them off*; Introd. § 22, l. Physically he suggested a porter, not an art amateur.

153 1 **haec . . . sublata**: *the theft of this Sappho* (Gram. § 75).

153 2 **desiderium sui**: *sense of loss (lit. missing of herself)*.

153 3 **facta**: *wrought, sculptured*.

153 4 **in basi**: the inscription was in verse, — one or more couplets, of a type well known from extant inscriptions and old collections. — **quod . . . non sustulisset**: there is a break in the thought (anacoluthon). The antecedent of **quod** is **epigramma**; but to make **quod** the obj. of **sustulisset** destroys the sense. We may trans. **quod** *and as for that*, and supply **statuam** as the obj. of **sustulisset**. (It is quite possible that, through some copyist's blunder, we do not have the sentence as Cicero wrote it.)

153 5 **Graeculus**: contemptuous, — *half-Greek, or Greekling*. — **subtiliter iudicat**: i. e. *is an acute critic of*. — **intellegit**: *appreciates*.

153 8 **fuerit**: sc. **in basi**, or **ibi**; the inscription (**quod scriptum est** = **epigramma**) proves the loss.

153 10 **non sustulisti**: Gram. § 32, *b*. The statue was of Apollo, who as the Healer was called Pæan, and honored here in the Temple of Æsculapius (said to be his son). **Religiosum** = *venerated*.

153 12 **Aristaei**: another son of Apollo; a benefactor of the early Greeks through his discoveries in agriculture (the olive, bee-keeping, etc.).

153 15 **Urion**: Zeus Ourios of the Greeks, a god of favorable winds, was identified with the Italian Jupiter Imperator, whose statues must have been somewhat similar. The temple (in Achradina) was mentioned in 148 27 f.

153 16 **aprinum caput**: from the Temple of Libera (Proserpina) in Neapolis (149 6) Verres carried away a sculptured boar's head, if **aprinum** is the correct text. The series of four robberies (from line 9), is connected by repeating **quid? tell me** (anaphora; cp. Gram. § 30).

153 20 **Libero patre**: *Father Liber* (or *Bacchus*). **Pater** is merely an epithet of certain gods.

153 21 **quanto . . . fuisse**: as usual, the pred. descr. abl. needs free handling, — *how much honor . . . he received*.

153 22 **in suo templo**: i. e. not shared with the rightful owner, as in the other cases.

153 23 **volueritis**: fut. perf., as more positive; in Eng. *if you will only*. — **quanta . . . fuerit**: cp. note on l. 21. — **eadem . . . forma**: *of the same beautiful appearance*.

153 24 **captum . . . posuerat** = **ceperat et posuerat**.

153 25 **Flamininus**: conqueror of Macedonia (Philip V) in 197 B. C., "liberator" of Greece, and a man of rare cultivation for his time. The tenses (**fuerit**, **posuerat**) show that the statue was gone. — **ferebantur** = **dicebantur**.

153 26 **uno in genere**: *of one type*.

153 28 **vidimus**: the tense again reminds the hearers of the fire which in 83 B. C. had destroyed the Capitol (cp. note on 137 3). — **Ponti**: here equiv. to **Ponti Euxini**, *the Black Sea*. — **angustiis**: at the north end of the Bosphorus, on the Asiatic side.

154 2 **sua**: cp. Gram. § 26.

154 3 **poneret**: the purpose clause with **ita** in advance involves a restriction, — *only that he might*, etc. For a Roman the Capitol takes precedence over all other temples of Jupiter (Zeus).

154 4 **emerserint**: *have sallied forth*; personif.

154 5 **invecta sint**: the same fig., with the thought of an expedition sailing through the straits (cp. 82 4 f.). Asyndeton.

154 8 **viderat**: for Marcellus at Syracuse cp. 149 10 ff.

154 9 **incolae**, etc.: here **incolae** refers mainly to the Romans or other Italians resident in Syracuse; **advenae**, to mere *visitors* or *tourists*.

154 11 **sic habetote**: = **scitote**, — *be assured of this*; both are common in letters and familiar speech.

154 13 **desideratos**: exaggeration (hyperbole; Introd. § 22, n, 7). Note the causal abls.

154 14 **illum**: *the celebrated*. Cicero was fond of mentioning this eminent mathematician and astronomer, whose neglected tomb he had himself discovered at Syracuse (*Tusc. Disp.* V, 64 ff.); cp. note on 150 2.

154 16 **tulisse**: second main clause of indir. statement (Gram. § 299), with connecting rel. (**quem** = **et eum**).

154 18 **praeteribo**: the fig. called *praeteritio* (cp. note on 147 14).

154 19 **e marmore**: cp. 145 1.

154 21 **Syraculis**: Gram. § 135, a. The **quod**-clause (*the fact that*, etc.) is in loose appos. with **illa** (cp. 4 4). Delphic tables had three legs like the famous tripod at Delphi, and were used for the display of silverware, painted vases, etc. For Corinthian bronzes cp. 129 9.

154 23 **mystagogos vocant**: the word **mystagogus** had lost all connection with the mysteries of Eleusis, and in Sicily meant no more than *guide*, *cicerone* (the latter derived from *Cicero*). But as he is giving the foreign word as such, trans. *mystagogues*. — **conversam . . . suam**, etc.: *have now a new* (lit. *reversed*) *way of lecturing*. **Habent** is not quite an auxiliary; Gram. § 74.

154 25 **quid . . . ostendunt**: according to the newspapers, the same thing has happened at the site of Libby Prison.

154 27 **quid tum?** *and what of it all?* suggesting a transition from the long series of robberies to other matter.

155 2 **ornatus**: as **deinde** has no **quod** (cp. **primum quod**, 154 28), this is a main clause (anacoluthon; Introd. § 22, n, 12).

155 3 **nimio opere**, etc.: with change of voice, like Eng. *are only too fond of*.

155 7 **scio**: for **tametsi** = **quamquam**, *and yet*, cp. note on 140 26.

155 8 **socii**: the *civitates foederatae*, and those others which, without a treaty, were still recognized as *immunes et liberae* (Introd. § 44). Other communities in the provinces are here included in **exteræ nationes**.

155 9 **gravius ferunt ac tulerunt**: *resent and, in fact, (always) have resented*.

156 2 **licet**: Gram. § 278.

156 7 **iudicia** . . . **desierunt**: *strict trials ceased to be held*; i. e. ever since the juries ceased to consist wholly of knights, quite ready to convict dishonest senators. The temporal clause is not made an integral part of the indir. disc. (Gram. § 291). — **Graecos homines**: *the Greeks*.

156 8 **venditabant**: observe freq. repetition of the verb **vendere** or its freq.

156 9 **fiebant**: *used to take place, were the rule*. **Iudicia** has the pregnant sense, *real (honest) trials*.

156 10 **L. Crasso** . . . **commercium** . . . **non fuisse**: *that Lucius Crassus . . . did not have dealings with the Greeks regarding such articles* (i. e. a chance to buy them).

156 11 **quorum** . . . **ornatissimas**: *during whose term as ædile we saw the city so beautified with works of art* (lit.?).

156 13 **eis**: (*but*) *that those* (asyndeton).

156 14 **fuisse**: *did have (such dealings)*. L. Crassus, the celebrated orator, and Q. Scævola, the eminent jurist, had given the people splendid shows in their ædileship (103 B.C.). For Claudius (uncle of Clodius) and his *borrowing* of a statue to adorn the Forum, 99 B.C., cp. 132 9 ff. These ædiles would have bought if possible. On the reform of juries soon after this trial cp. *Introd.* §§ 40, 59.

156 17 **referri** . . . **publicas**: *for it to be entered in the official record*.

156 22 **esse apud**: *to remain among*. — **socios**: i. e. such of the Greeks as belonged to the free states, as Athens (cp. note on 155 8).

156 24 **fecerant**: of the two kinds of tributaries here mentioned, the former paid taxes partly in kind, the latter a fixed sum in cash.

156 26 **oblectamenta**: *pred., as a delight (to the eye)*; better sing. in Eng. (and so also **solacia**).

156 28 **merere velle**: the quest. **quid merere vis ut**, etc. seems to have been a common one in conversation in proposing a sale for a minimum price (*what will you take?*). Nothing is known of this Venus, apparently a familiar sight (*illa*) to visitors.

156 29 **in tauro**: Jupiter, in the form of a bull, carried Europa off to Crete.

156 30 **Satyrum**: Tarentum, as one of the most prosperous Greek cities in Italy, had many art treasures. This Satyrus was probably a local hero, honored in the Temple of Vesta (Hestia).

156 32 **Thespieae**: for this Bœotian town and its Eros of Praxiteles cp. 131 16 ff. — **marmoream**: the people of Cnidus (in southwestern Asia Minor) had refused an immense offer from King Nicomedes of Bithynia for their statue of Aphrodite (Venus) by Praxiteles. This was the sculptor's most famous work; Pliny (first century after Christ) calls it the most beautiful statue in the world. Of many copies the best is in the Vatican.

157 1 Coos: the city of Cos was on an island of the same name, off the southwest coast of Asia Minor, and northwest of Rhodes. Its famous "Aphrodite rising from the Sea" was the work of Apelles, the greatest of ancient painters. — **Alexandrum:** a portrait, also by Apelles, in the great Temple of Diana at Ephesus (capital of the province of Asia).

157 2 Medeam, etc. : two paintings by Timomachus, later brought to Rome by Julius Cæsar for his Temple of Venus. For Cyzicus cp. note on 75 24.

157 3 Ialysum: the founder of a town of the same name on the island of Rhodes. This famous painting by Protogenes (age of Alexander) was later brought to Rome.



ALEXANDER

157 4 buculam: for Myron cp. 140 7. His bronze cow was very celebrated. The series naturally culminates with Athens; and the other works here mentioned commemorated Paralus, a local hero, and Iacchus, i.e. Dionysus (Bacchus), under the name by which he was honored in the mysteries at Eleusis, as brother or bridegroom of Persephone. Note that *merere velle* (156 28) is still to be supplied with **Athenienses**. — *longum est: it would be tedious* (Gram. § 53, b).

157 5 apud quosque: plur. because it refers to groups, as **Athenienses**. Trans. *in every city*.

157 6 Asia: only the western part of Asia Minor, chiefly the Roman province (cp. note on 68 18).

157 7 volo: the *quod*-clause is in appos. with *illud*, — *this is my reason for mentioning . . . namely, that, etc.*

157 9 auferantur: the long list of famous treasures of Greek art in this passage, with the implication that they are well known to the jurors, contrasts strikingly with Cicero's usual assumed attitude in this speech, — that of one who knows and cares little about these things (cp. 131 15 f.).

(The fourth book does not end here, but about seven pages farther on. An actual peroration, however, is reserved for the end of Book V, the conclusion of the entire speech.)

EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION

PART I. BASED ON THE FIRST ORATION AGAINST CATILINE¹

1. PAGE 3, § 1

Indirect Discourse (281-285)²; Indirect Question (161)

NOTE. Part I of these and the following exercises is intended for oral or written work, at the discretion of the teacher. By changing tense, voice, person, number, and the like the teacher may extend the oral practice at will. Part II is intended for written work. It may be anticipated by oral work, or may be assigned for another day.

I. 1. Catiline is abusing my patience. 2. He sees (*sentiō*) that he is abusing my patience. 3. We see that he is abusing your patience. 4. He saw that he was abusing their patience. 5. Their plans are exposed (*pateō*). 6. They do not see that their plans are exposed. 7. Where is Catiline? 8. We do not know (*ignōrō*) where he is. 9. They did not know where he was. 10. What [of] plan did they make (*capiō*) last night? 11. He does not know what plan they made. 12. He did not know what plan they made.

II. Catiline thinks that he does not abuse our patience. He thinks that his plans are not exposed. He thinks that we do not know where he was last night, nor (*neque*) what he did.

¹ These exercises cover the syntax required for the third year in the New York State Syllabus, 1928, pp. 47-48, with some review of principles taken up earlier in the course. The exercises are based on the text of Cicero, but usually contain only such words and derivatives as are found in the Latin Word List of the College Entrance Examination Board for the first three years.

² The references in parentheses are to the Grammatical Outline, pp. 207-282.

2. PAGE 5, § 5

Future Conditions (258)

I. 1. If I order (shall have ordered) Catiline to be seized, he will be put to death. 2. If I should order (should have ordered) Catiline to be seized, the senate would put him to death. 3. If the camp is (shall be) pitched in Italy, the number of the enemy will increase. 4. If the camp should be pitched in Italy, the leader of the enemy would be seen in the senate. 5. If the senate orders (shall order) Catiline to be put to death, who will be able to seize him? 6. If he should be seen in the senate, nobody would be able to seize him.

II. But (*vērūm*) if we are (shall be) able to seize Catiline, we shall not be able to put him to death. If he should pitch his camp in Italy, the number of the enemy would be able to increase. If in that camp their number shall increase, we shall know what their plan is.

3. PAGE 6, § 9

Relative Clause of Characteristic (174) and of Cause (178)

I. 1. Catiline is plotting for (*cōgitat dē*) the destruction of this city. 2. There are [men] who are plotting for the destruction of this city. 3. There were [men] who were plotting for the destruction of the republic. 4. There is nobody who plots for the destruction of Rome. 5. There will be nobody who will plot for the destruction of this city. 6. There was nobody who plotted for the destruction of this city. 7. There is nobody who dares to defend you (p. 5, l. 14). 8. What is there (p. 5, l. 19) that Catiline is waiting for? 9. They ought to have been seized because (§ 178) they plotted for our destruction. 10. Who is there to (*quī*) free you from your care, Catiline?

II. Here is [a man] who will plot for the destruction of this city and the republic. There will be nobody who will dare to defend him or to set him free. What is there that we are waiting for, since (§ 178) we know their plan?

4. PAGE 7, §§ 10-11

Present Imperative (for *nōlī*, *nōlīte*, see 55, *b*); Gerundive with *sum* (79, 114); Gerund (81-85); Supine (93)

I. 1. Fortify your (his, their) house with a stronger guard. 2. Do not fortify my (her, our) house with a stronger guard. 3. Go out of this city. 4. Set out from Rome (§ 135). 5. Do not go out of Rome. 6. By going out of the city you will free us from fear. 7. Who came to free me from fear? 8. Whom did they send to free me from fear? 9. My house ought to be fortified by you. 10. We shall have to defend the city. 11. Great gratitude was to be felt to the immortal gods. 12. The gates will need to be defended by us. 13. Take all your [crew] with you. 14. Do not take all your [crew]. 15. If you take all your [crew], we shall feel grateful to Jupiter, the guardian of this city. 16. Do not defend me with a public guard.

II. Why does my house need to be defended by you? I will not allow it to be defended. If Catiline goes (§ 258) out of Rome to escape (§ 82), and takes all his [crew] with him, we shall be freed from a great fear. If the gates are open, he will set out. You have now escaped this plague, and you should feel grateful to the immortal gods, the guardians of this city.

5. PAGE 9, § 15

Questions (32)

I. 1. Is the light of this sky pleasant to you, Catiline? 2. Can this light be pleasant to you? 3. Can you see that your plans are exposed (p. 3, l. 7)? 4. Could they see that your plans were exposed? 5. Did you not (*nōnne*) attempt to kill the consul? 6. You do not dare to deny [it], do you (p. 6, l. 20)? 7. You were not able to deny it, were you? 8. You will not hesitate to go out of the city (p. 8, ll. 13-14), shall you? 9. You will not hesitate to take all your [crew] with you (p. 7, l. 16), shall you? 10. How often have you planned for the destruction of this republic (p. 6,

1. 26)? 11. If your plans are exposed, you will not be able to deny (it), shall you? 12. If your plans should be exposed, this city could not be pleasant to you, could it?

II. What are you attempting to do, Catiline? Do you not see that your plans are exposed, and that you can deny nothing? Shall you be able to deny that you planned for the destruction of this city? Why do you hesitate to go out of Rome? Can you not take all your crew with you? If you should not go out of this city, would the light of this sky be pleasant to you?

6. PAGE 10, § 17

Conditions Contrary to Fact (252, 256)

I. 1. If they feared (timeō) me, I would leave my house. 2. If they had feared me, I would have left my house. 3. If his citizens feared him, he would think he ought to leave the city. 4. If my citizens had feared me, I should have thought that I ought to leave the city. 5. If his country feared him, would he not go out of Rome? 6. If he saw that his country feared him, would he not go out of Italy? 7. If his country had feared him, would he not have gone out of Italy? 8. If he had seen that his parents feared him, would he not have preferred to go out of this city? 9. If they could defend themselves, would they not attempt to kill the consul? 10. If they could have defended themselves, would they have feared their citizens? 11. If you could defend yourself, you would not go out of Rome, would you? 12. If you had been able to defend yourself, you would not have gone out of this city, would you?

II. If Catiline had been able to defend himself, he would have attempted to kill the consul. But if he had killed him, would he have thought that he ought to leave this city? What would he do now, if he saw that his [fellow] citizens feared and hated him? Would he not think that he could go out of Rome? If he thought that his parents hated him, would he not prefer to leave the city? If I saw that I was feared by my [fellow] citizens, I should now be leaving Italy.

7. PAGE 11, § 19

Substantive *quod*-Clauses (235); Circumstantial *cum*-Clauses with the Subjunctive (226)

I. 1. What about your giving (=having given) yourself into custody? 2. What about their living at (*apud*) Lepidus's? 3. What about their wishing to live at Lepidus's? 4. What about their saying that they wished to live at Lepidus's? 5. What about his coming to me? 6. What about their coming to Metellus? 7. When they had come to you, what did you say? 8. When they were living at Lepidus's, what did they say? 9. When he had given himself into custody, did he not plan for the destruction of his [fellow] citizens?

II. When you were planning for the destruction of your [fellow] citizens, where were you living? Had you not said that you preferred to live at Lepidus's? What about your coming to me and to Metellus? When you had given yourself into custody, did you not think that you ought to leave this city? What about your attempting to kill the consul?

8. PAGE 12, § 22

Substantive Clauses with *ut* and *nē* (192, 194, 273, 274); Clauses of Result with *ut* and *ut nōn* (195, 196, 198); Sequence of Tenses (64)

I. 1. That you should be alarmed (*commoveō*) by your vices is not to be asked (*postulō*). 2. That you should fear (*timeō*) the penalties of the laws was not to be asked. 3. We shall not ask that you yield to the needs (*tempus*) of the republic. 4. We asked that you should leave the city (p. 10, l. 8). 5. We shall see that you do not leave the city (p. 4, l. 15). 6. They saw [to it] that he did not leave the city. 7. We fear (*vereor*) that he will go out of Rome. 8. We feared that he would not go out of this city. 9. We shall fear that he will plan for the destruction of this city. 10. Nor is he [such] a man (*is*, § 198) that fear (*metus*) has [ever] called him back from danger (p. 12, l. 22). 11. He is such a man that fear calls him back from danger. 12. He was such a man that fear did not recall him from danger.

II. We did not ask that Catiline should be alarmed by his vices, nor that he should fear the laws. But we now ask that he should go out of Rome. His citizens hate him, and fear that he will plot for the destruction of this city. Catiline fears that he shall not be able to go to Manlius.

9. PAGE 14, § 27

Ablative of Comparison (136); Ablative of the Measure of Difference (151); the Vocative (159)

I. 1. Our country is dearer to me than my life. 2. Italy was much dearer to me than my life. 3. I say that our country is much dearer to me than my life. 4. He said that Italy was much dearer to him than his life. 5. All your plans are clearer to us than the light (p. 5, l. 24). 6. Do you not know, Catiline, that all your plans are clearer to us than the light? 7. Marcus Tullius, what is Catiline doing? Will you not order him to be led to prison (**in vincula**)? 8. Is your life dearer to you than this city? 9. Is his plan dearer to him than the life of his citizens?

II. What are you doing, Catiline? Do you say that this city is much dearer to you than your life? If your plans had not been clearer to me than the light, I would not have demanded (**postulō**) that you should go out of Rome. If you thought that your country was dearer to you than your life, you would not try to kill your [fellow] citizens.

10. PAGE 17, § 32

The Subjunctive in Commands (55, b)

I. 1. Let the worthless [fellow] go away. 2. Let him separate himself from the good. 3. Let him gather his [crew] into one place. 4. Let him be separated from other citizens by a wall. 5. Let him cease to plot against us. 6. Let Catiline and his friends cease to besiege the Senate-house with swords. 7. Let them express their sentiments (say what they feel) about the republic. 8. Let him not go away. 9. Let him not be separated from his [crew]. 10. Let

them not cease to plot against the consul. 11. Let him not express his sentiments about this city.

II. Let Catiline think that his plans are exposed. Let him not dare to deny [it]. Let him defend his house with a guard. Let him not dare to plot for the destruction of the republic. Let the gates be open, that (ut, § 189) he may be able to leave the city. Let him go to Manlius. Let him take all his [crew] with him.

PART II. BASED ON THE ORATION FOR THE MANILIAN LAW

1. PAGE 67, § 2

Causal Clause with *cum* (229); Use of the Future (60)

I. 1. Since there is authority in me, I use [it]. 2. Since there was authority in me, I used [it]. 3. Since you wish me to use authority, I will use [it] in the presence of (*apud*) you who gave it to me. 4. Since you wished me to use authority, I used [it] in your presence. 5. Since this is so (p. 7, l. 13), if there is any (anything of) authority in me, I shall be able to use [it] in the presence of those who gave it to me. 6. Since this is so, if I can attain (*cōsequor*) anything in speaking, I will show [it] to you. 7. If there is any authority in me, I will use [it] in your presence, since you have wished me to speak. 8. Since I am speaking in your presence, I shall use the authority which you have given me. 9. Since you have given me authority, I will use [it] in your presence. 10. Since I was speaking in your presence, I used the authority which you had given me.

II. Since this is so, I will speak. If there is any authority in me, I shall be able to use [it] now, since you have given it to me. If I have been able to attain anything in speaking, I will show [it] to you in particular (*potissimum*), since I am now speaking in your presence. "Since the Roman people," they said (*inquiunt*), "have given you so much authority, you will now be able to use it."

2. PAGE 69, § 6

Review of Indirect Questions (161), Present Imperative (for *nōlī*, *nōlite*, see 55, *b*), and Gerundive with *sum* (79, 114); Hortatory Subjunctive (55, *a*)

I. 1. What must be done? 2. You see what must be done. 3. They saw what must be done. 4. He will consider what must be done. 5. What must be done by me? 6. What must we do? 7. Consider what must be done by you. 8. Do not consider what must be done by me. 9. We must take counsel about the war and the commander. 10. We must take counsel about the safety of our allies and friends. 11. We must take counsel for our citizens (l. 18) whose property (*bona*) is at stake (*agō*). 12. We must take counsel for them for the sake both of ourselves (*nostrā ipsōrum*) and of this city. 13. Let us consider (§ 55, *a*) what we must do.

II. Consider what is at stake in this war. There is at stake the glory of the Roman people. There is at stake the safety of our allies. There is at stake the property of our citizens. Let us take counsel about the selection of a (*dēligō*) commander and the safety of our allies. Let us take counsel about the safety of the republic itself.

3. PAGE 71, § 11

Subordinate Clause in Indirect Discourse (289); Ablative Absolute (153); Ablative of Description (145)

I. 1. We wage war because (*quod*) our merchants are treated unjustly. 2. He says that we wage war because our merchants are treated unjustly. 3. He said that we waged war because our merchants were treated unjustly. 4. They say that our ancestors waged war because our merchants were treated unjustly. 5. They said that our ancestors had waged war because our merchants were treated unjustly. 6. When so many Roman citizens have been put to death (§ 153), of what mind ought you to be? 7. He is a man of great wisdom (*prudentia*). 8. This is the king who put to death (*necō*) a Roman ambassador. 9. They say that this is the king

who put to death a Roman citizen. 10. They said that this was the king who put our citizens to death.

II. When our merchants have been treated unjustly (§ 153), shall we not wage war (§ 55, *d*)? When our citizens have been put to death by a king, shall we not punish (*ulcīscor*) him? If (§ 153) the right of embassy has been violated, of what mind shall we be? Let us defend our merchants, our citizens, our ambassadors (§ 55, *a*).

4. PAGE 72, § 13

Review of Result Clause (198) and Ablative of Description (145)

I. 1. We send into the provinces men of such character (*eius modī*) that their arrivals do not differ much from a taking by assault (*expugnātiō*). 2. Our commanders (p. 70, l. 4) so contended in Asia that they did not bring back victory. 3. They triumphed in such a way that the king, [although] defeated, [still] reigned. 4. But him (p. 72, l. 24) they now see in person (*prae-sēns*), [a man] of so great self-control, of so great mildness, of so great humanity, that they are happy. 5. Consider of how great self-control you ought to be (§ 161). 6. Let us consider of how great humanity we ought to be.

II. Let us send into this province a man of great self-control and of great humanity. Let us send a commander who will triumph in such a way that the king will be defeated. We ought to consider who this commander shall be.

5. PAGE 75, § 20

Clauses of Purpose with *ut* and *nē* (189, 272); Clauses of Result with *ut* and *ut nōn* (195, 196, 198); Concessive Clause with *cum* (230) and *quamquam* (218)

I. 1. That all may understand this war, I will say a few [things] about its kind and size. 2. The war is so necessary that it must be waged. 3. But it is not so large that it must be dreaded. 4. Although this war need not be dreaded, nevertheless (§ 230, *a*) the

greatest care must be taken (l. 15) that it may not be belittled by you. 5. Although the war is not great, still it is necessary. 6. Although the war must be waged, still it need not be dreaded. 7. Although (§ 218) I have spoken about the size of the war, I will not speak about [its] kind. 8. But you must take the greatest care that this war may not seem to deserve belittling. 9. The war is so great that it does not seem to deserve belittling. 10. This kind of war is so necessary that it must not be belittled.

II. Although (**cum**) we understand the size of the war, I will say a few [things] about [its] kind, that it may not seem to deserve belittling by us. Although (**quamquam**) the war is not great, still it seems to be necessary, and we must take the greatest care that it may not seem [a thing] to be dreaded.

6. PAGES 76-77, §§ 23-24

Dative with Special Verbs (107, 110); Dative of Reference (111); Dative of the Agent (114); Ablative with Special Verbs (147, a)

I. 1. This [man] distrusted his fortunes, his king, and himself. 2. Do you trust (**cōnfidō**) yourself? 3. Do you (plur.) trust our commander? 4. Do you not distrust his army? 5. Do you think fear was inspired in their soldiers? 6. We enjoy (**ūtor**) the friendship of many nations, and think they should not be provoked by our commanders. 7. We ought (**dēbeō**) not to abuse their friendship, nor provoke them by war. 8. Did not this king wage war on (**īferō**) the Roman people? 9. Let us not wage war on those nations whose friendship we enjoy. 10. We ought not to wage war on them. 11. War must be waged by you on this king. 12. He does not know what he wants (§ 111).

II. If they had not distrusted themselves, they would have waged war on us. But if they had been able to wage war, they would not have abused the friendship of the Roman people. Let us send a commander in whom fear cannot be inspired (§ 174), and whose soldiers we do not distrust. Lucullus's soldiers sought a prompt (**mātūrus**) return for the whole army.

7. PAGE 78, § 27

Review of Exhortations and Commands (55, *a, b*); the Subjunctive in Wishes (56, 188)

I. 1. Let us choose a general for this war. 2. Let us not say that the war is dangerous. 3. Say that the war is necessary. 4. Do not speak about the nature (kind) of the war. 5. Let him speak about the magnitude of this war. 6. Let him not speak about this war. 7. May I die (*pereō*) if I am not telling the truth (*vērē dīcō*). 8. May you (they) be happy. 9. May they not (*nē*) come. 10. I hope (*utinam*) you may be here (*adsum*). 11. I hope they may not be here. 12. I wish (or, Would that; or, O that; *utinam*) you were here (§ 56). 13. I wish you had been here (§ 188). 14. I wish they had not been here. 15. I hope they may put Pompey in command of this war.

II. Let us speak concerning the nature and the magnitude of this war, that we may put the best general in command [of it]. I wish we had a great supply of the bravest men. But now, since there is one man who has surpassed (§ 174) in valor the record (memory) of antiquity, let us choose him in preference to all others (*potissimum*). I hope you may put Gnæus Pompey in command of this war.

8. PAGES 80-81, § 32

Review of Questions (32); Deliberative Subjunctive (55, *d*)

I. 1. What provinces were free from pirates through these years? 2. What allies have we defended? 3. To whom (plur.) have we been a defense (§ 115) with our fleet? 4. How many islands were deserted? 5. Do you ask how many islands are deserted? 6. Did they ask how many islands were deserted? 7. We ask how many cities of the allies have been taken by the pirates. 8. What shall I (or, What am I to) say (§ 55, *d*)? 9. Need I (or, Shall I) say that through these years the sea was closed to our allies except (*nisi*) in the depth of (*summus*) winter? 10. Need I complain that an ambassador who came from a foreign nation was taken

[prisoner]? 11. Was I not to say that the sea had not been safe for merchants?

II. Shall we not say that the war is both necessary and dangerous? Shall we not put the best general in command of it? Are we not to defend our allies? Are we not to keep (*teneō*) the provinces free from pirates? Need we not complain that ambassadors who were coming from foreign nations were taken [prisoners]? Are we to defend our own dwellings, [but] not the fortunes of our allies?

9. PAGES 81-82, §§ 34-35

Accusative of the Place To Which (101); Ablative of the Place Whence (135); Ablative Absolute (153)

I. 1. He will return to Italy. 2. They had returned home. 3. He will come to Sardinia with a fleet. 4. We set out from Sardinia and returned to Greece. 5. What do we fear with Gnæus Pompey [as] leader? 6. Although the sea was not yet fit for navigating, he came to Africa. 7. Having strengthened Spain and Gaul with garrisons and ships, he sailed to Greece. 8. After sending ships to Africa, we returned to Gaul. 9. When they had explored Africa, they sailed to Italy. 10. After they had either killed or captured the pirates, they set out for (in) Italy.

II. When he had sent a messenger to Greece, he sailed for Africa. After exploring this region, [and] strengthening the coast (*ōra*) with a garrison and several ships, he came to Sardinia, although the sea was not yet fit for navigating. Having captured the pirates and strengthened the island with garrisons and a fleet, he returned to Italy, and came to Rome.

10. PAGES 84-85, §§ 42-43

Substantive Clauses with *quīn* (212)

I. 1. Nobody doubts that this war ought to be intrusted to this [man]. 2. It was doubtful to nobody that the war ought to be intrusted to him. 3. Will anybody doubt that this general has very great power (*plūrimum possum*) in conducting wars? 4. Do not

doubt that he is the best general. 5. Do not doubt that his soldiers trust him. 6. Do not doubt that he ought to be put in command of this war. 7. Can anybody (**num quis**, § 32, *c*) doubt that his name is famous? 8. Could anybody doubt that his name was famous in the whole world (l. 15)? 9. There is no doubt (it is not doubtful) that we ought to put him in command of the war. 10. There was no doubt that he should be in command of this war. 11. We do not doubt, do we (**num dubitāmus**, § 32, *c*), that the war is both necessary and dangerous? 12. Since they do not doubt that this war is dangerous, let them put (§ 55, *b*) the best general in command [of it].

II. Let nobody doubt that this war is necessary. Since it is necessary, will anybody doubt that it ought to be intrusted to the best general? We do not doubt that Gnæus Pompey has very great power in conducting wars. Let us not doubt that he ought to be put in command of this war. Since we do not doubt that the soldiers trust this man, let us trust both him and his soldiers.

11. PAGE 86, § 45

Review of Conditions Contrary to Fact (252, 256) and the Indirect Question (161)

I. 1. You would have lost Asia if fortune had not brought Gnæus Pompey to those regions. 2. If the province did not have a strong defense, you would lose Asia. 3. I do not doubt what he can accomplish by [his] valor. 4. They did not doubt what he could accomplish by [his] authority. 5. What could we have accomplished if the resources of the enemy had increased? 6. What could the enemy not accomplish if our provinces did not have strong defenses? 7. After the disaster that befell us in Pontus, we should have lost Asia if the province had not had a strong defense. 8. If Gnæus Pompey had not come into Asia, what could the allies have accomplished? 9. After the disaster in Pontus, who doubted what the enemy would be able to accomplish? 10. Does anybody doubt what Gnæus Pompey is able to accomplish in those regions of Asia?

II. Since a disaster has befallen us in Asia, will anybody doubt what we ought to do? Would not the province have been lost if Gnæus Pompey had not come into those regions? Who doubted what he could accomplish by [his] authority and valor? If Asia had been lost, our armies could not easily have defended the allies.

12. PAGE 87, § 48

Locative (158, 154, *c*); Locative Ablative (154, *a*, *b*)

I. 1. He has been able to accomplish great deeds at home and in the field. 2. We do not doubt that they have accomplished great deeds on land and sea. 3. Nobody doubted that you had lived at Syracuse. 4. We have been at Rome, and we are now going to the country (§ 101). 5. At that time (§ 155) he was either in Greece or in Asia. 6. They will be either at my house or in the country. 7. I wish I had been at your house. 8. I wish we were at home. 9. If he had been in Asia at that time, he would have been able to accomplish great deeds. 10. Shall you be at home, or shall you return to Rome?

II. I say that Gnæus Pompey has accomplished great deeds on land and sea, and should be put in command of this war. If he had been in command of the fleet, you would have trusted him in Italy or in Asia, and you would have been able to defend our merchants and our allies. If he were a private [citizen] (*privātus*) at Rome, nevertheless he would be the best general for carrying on so great a war.

13. PAGES 87-88, §§ 49-50

General Review

I. 1. If this war is necessary, let us not neglect it. 2. What general shall we put in command of this war? 3. What general ought to be put in command of it? 4. Let us choose a man in whom there is singular valor and extraordinary knowledge of war. 5. The republic ought to be preserved by you. 6. Do you doubt that Rome

should be defended? 7. Do not doubt that this man should be sent to Asia. 8. Do you say that Gnæus Pompey should be sent to Greece? 9. If he had not been a great general, he would not have been put in command of the ships. 10. Why do you not commit this war to the same [man] to whom [all] the other [wars] were committed?

II. If so great a war is necessary, you will not neglect it. If it were not necessary, you would not conduct it. Shall we save the cities of our allies, or shall we neglect them? Since Gnæus Pompey is [already] in those very places, will anybody doubt that he should be put in command of the fleet and the army? Since [all] the other wars have been committed to this great general, let us trust him in preference to all others (*potissimum*), and send him to Asia.

14. PAGE 88, § 52

Review of Indirect Discourse (281–291)

I. *a.* 1. If Pompey is the most worthy, he will go to Asia. 2. I say that if Pompey is the most worthy, he will go to Asia (§§ 286, 289, 290). 3. I said that if Pompey was the most worthy, he would go to Asia. 4. Pompey says that if he is the most worthy, he shall go to Asia. 5. Pompey said that if he was the most worthy, he should go to Asia.

b. 1. If Pompey had been the most worthy, he would have gone to Asia. 2. I say (or said) that if Pompey had been the most worthy, he would have gone to Asia (§§ 288, *a*; 290). 3. Pompey says (or said) that if he had been the most worthy, he should have gone to Asia.

c. 1. If Pompey is the most worthy, he will be sent to Asia. 2. I say that if Pompey is the most worthy, he will be sent to Asia (*futūrum esse ut*, or *fore ut*, with pres. subjv.; § 286). 3. I said that if Pompey was the most worthy, he would be sent to Asia. 4. Pompey says that if he is the most worthy, he shall be sent to Asia. 5. Pompey said that if he was the most worthy, he should be sent to Asia.

d. 1. If Pompey had been the most worthy, he would have been sent to Asia. 2. I say (or said) that if Pompey had been the most worthy, he would have been sent to Asia (§ 288, *b*). 3. Pompey says (or said) that if he had been the most worthy, he should have been sent to Asia.

II. Hortensius said that if all [powers] must be assigned to one [man], Pompey was the most worthy; but that even against (*in*) the pirates it is not proper that all powers should be granted to one man. If Pompey is the most worthy, and if our allies trust him, let us grant him all powers and put him in command of this war.

15. PAGE 92, § 60

General Review

I. 1. In [time of] peace our ancestors always followed (*pāreō*) custom, [but] in [time of] war [they followed] expediency (*ūtilitās*). 2. Two very great wars, the Punic and the Spanish, were finished (*cōnficiō*) by one general. 3. Two most powerful cities, Carthage and Numantia, were destroyed by the same Scípío. 4. He says that in time of peace our ancestors always followed custom, but in time of war expediency. 5. They said that two very great wars, the Punic and the Spanish, had been finished by one general. 6. I say that two most powerful cities, Carthage and Numantia, were destroyed by the same Scipio. 7. We did not doubt that in time of war our ancestors always followed expediency. 8. Will anybody doubt that in time of peace our ancestors followed custom? 9. If in time of war our ancestors had not followed expediency, they could not have defended their allies. 10. Recently the hope of the empire was put by you and your fathers in [the hands of] Marius alone. 11. I say that recently you and your fathers put the hope of the empire in the hands of Marius alone.

II. In time of peace let us follow custom, but in time of war let us follow expediency. If Scipio was able to finish two very great wars and to destroy two most powerful cities, Pompey will be able

to finish this war and to defend our allies. Shall we not put the hope of the empire in the hands of Pompey alone? Shall we not say that he is the one general whom we ought to put in command of our army and fleet?

16. PAGE 96, § 69

General Review

I. 1. Since this is so, Gaius Manilius, I praise your law, good will, and sentiment. 2. I urge you to abide by (**maneō in**) your sentiment and not fear anybody. 3. I think there is in you sufficient courage. 4. Let us not doubt concerning the appointment (**praeficiō**) of the same man. 5. Whatever of ability or authority there is in me, I promise it all to you and to the Roman people to carry this measure (**rem cōficiō**). 6. Your law, Gaius Manilius, ought to be praised by the Roman people. 7. If his law had been praised by the Roman people, he would not have feared anybody. 8. If you abide by your sentiment, you will be praised by the Romans. 9. If there were any ability or authority in me, I would promise it to him. 10. If you had been able to carry this measure, you would have been praised by the allies. 11. Do not doubt concerning Pompey's ability or authority. 12. I urge you to pass this measure and defend our allies. 13. Do not doubt that in Pompey there is sufficient ability, authority, and courage. 14. We did not doubt that he abode by this sentiment.

II. This being so, Gaius Manilius, will anybody doubt that your law should be praised? You think that there is in Pompey sufficient ability and courage to carry on the war, and you do not doubt that he can defend the cities of our allies. Who can doubt that the allies should be defended? Abide by your sentiment, Gaius Manilius, and when the war is ended, you will be praised not only by the allies, but by your [fellow] citizens.

PART III. BASED ON THE ORATION FOR ARCHIAS

1. PAGE 100, § 4

I. 1. Since Aulus Licinius is a citizen, he ought not to be excluded (*sēgregō*) from the number of citizens. 2. You will think that Aulus Licinius, since he is a citizen, ought not to be excluded from the number of citizens. 3. If he had been a citizen, you would not have excluded him from the number of citizens. 4. As soon as (§ 200, *a*) Archias passed from boyhood, he devoted (*cōnferō*) himself to the study of writing. 5. They say that as soon as he passed from boyhood he devoted himself to writing. 6. They said that he was born there. 7. We know that he quickly began to surpass (*antecellō*) all by the glory of his genius. 8. In the other parts of Asia his arrival (plur.) was so talked about (*celebrō*) that the expectation of [seeing] the man surpassed (*superō*) the fame of his genius. 9. But the [actual] arrival of the man (*ipsiūs*) surpassed the expectation [of seeing him].

II. Do not think, judges, that Aulus Licinius is not a citizen. Since he is a citizen, shall we try (*cōnor*) to exclude him from the number of citizens? If he were not a citizen, I would say, "Would (§ 56) that he were a Roman citizen." He was born at Antioch, where he devoted himself to the study of writing. Although (§ 218, *a*) this city was rich (*adfluēns*) in learned men and liberal studies, Archias quickly surpassed all by his genius.

2. PAGES 100-101, § 5

I. 1. Italy was then full of Greek arts and systems of instruction. 2. Here at Rome these studies were not neglected. 3. The peoples of Tarentum and Naples will present this [man] with citizenship. 4. All think he is worthy of hospitality. 5. When he was known to those [who were] away [from him] (*absēns*), he came to Rome [the year that] Marius and Catulus [were] consuls. 6. The Luculli received him into their home, although he was still (*etiam tum*) a youth (*praetextātus*). 7. They say that Italy was then full of Greek arts. 8. We thought that here at Rome these studies

were not neglected. 9. I fear that these studies are neglected at Rome. 10. We did not doubt that the Neapolitans had presented him with citizenship. 11. It happened that he came to Rome [when] Marius and Catulus [were] consuls. 12. Do not doubt that the Luculli received him into their home.

II. We know that Greek studies were then cultivated here at Rome and in the other cities of Italy; and that when Archias came to Italy, the Tarentines and Neapolitans presented him with citizenship. When he came to Rome, during the consulship of Marius and Catulus, he was immediately received into the house of the Luculli, although even then he was [but] a youth.

3. PAGES 101-102, § 6

I. 1. I said that in those times he was agreeable to the well-known Metellus Numidicus and his son Pius; that he was listened to by Marcus Æmilius; that he lived with Quintus Catulus, both father and son; that he was cultivated by Lucius Crassus; and that he held the Luculli bound (*dēvinciō*) by [the ties of] friendship (*cōnsuētūdō*). 2. Meanwhile he had set out with Marcus Lucullus for Sicily. 3. When he had gone away from that province with the same Lucullus, and had come to Heraclea, he wished to be enrolled [as a citizen] in that state. 4. He was able to achieve (*impetrō*) this because he was thought worthy in himself (*per sē*). 5. He will not be cultivated by us unless he is worthy in himself. 6. You would not have been agreeable to the Greeks unless you had been thought worthy in yourself. 7. If we were not worthy in ourselves, we should not be listened to by the Romans. 8. I do not doubt that he will be able to achieve this because he is thought worthy in himself. 9. I did not doubt that you would be able to achieve this because you were thought worthy in yourself. 10. We did not doubt that you had been able to achieve this because you had been found worthy in yourself.

II. If Archias had not been worthy in himself, he would not have been agreeable to Metellus and his son, he would not have been listened to by Æmilius, he could not have lived with Catulus, he

would not have been cultivated by Crassus, he could not have held the entire family (**domus**) of the Hortensii bound by ties of friendship. When he had come to Heraclea, he wished to be enrolled in that state. How could this have been achieved unless he had been thought worthy in himself?

4. PAGE 104, § 12

I. 1. Do you ask of us why we are so greatly delighted with this man? 2. Because (**quia**) he supplies (**suppeditō**) us [a resort] where the mind is refreshed and the ears find rest (**conquiēscō**). 3. Do you think that we are able to speak daily unless we improve (**excolō**) our minds by [the study of] literature (**doctrīna**)? 4. Or do you think that our minds can bear so great a strain (**contentiō**) unless we relax them by [means of] the same literature? 5. For my part (**ego**), I confess that I am devoted to these studies. 6. Let the rest be ashamed (**pudet**) if any have so buried themselves in books (**litterae**) that they can contribute (**adferō**) nothing for (**ad**) the common advantage (**fructus**). 7. Why is he so greatly delighted with these studies? 8. Because by them he relaxes his mind. 9. They would not have devoted themselves to books unless they had been able to relax their minds by them. 10. Do you not confess that you are devoted to books? 11. I did not doubt that I could improve my mind by the study of literature.

II. Are you not ashamed, Grattius, if you are not delighted with this man? Are you not ashamed if you are not delighted with these studies? How could (§§ 246, 253) we speak daily if we did not improve our minds by the study of literature? Or how could our minds bear so great a strain if we did not relax them by means of the same literature? Would it not shame you if you could contribute nothing for the common advantage?

5. PAGE 105, § 14

I. 1. I have persuaded myself from [my] youth, by the precepts of many [masters] and by much reading (**litterae**), that there is nothing in life greatly to be sought out except (**nisi**) merit

(**laus**) and uprightness (**honestās**). 2. I have persuaded myself that in pursuing merit and uprightness all sufferings (**cruciātus**) of the body, all risks of death and [even] (**atque**) of exile (**exsilium**) are to be considered (**ducō**) of small [consequence] (§ 124). 3. For your safety I have exposed myself to (**in**) these daily attacks of corrupt (**prōfligātus**) men. 4. But all the books are full of examples [of such precepts], which would all be lying in darkness except for (**nisi**, etc., l. 12) the light of literature. 5. How many portraits (**imāgō**) of most courageous men have both the Greek and Latin writers bequeathed to us, not only to look at (**intueor**), but to copy (**imitor**)! 6. If he had not persuaded himself from his youth that there was nothing in life greatly to be sought out except merit and uprightness, he would never have exposed himself to these daily attacks of corrupt men. 7. He says that both the Greek and Latin writers have bequeathed to us many portraits of most courageous men to look at and to copy.

II. There is nothing in life greatly to be sought out except merit and uprightness. In pursuing these our fathers considered that all bodily sufferings, and all risks of death and even of exile, were of small consequence. How many portraits of courageous men both the Greek and Latin writers have bequeathed to us! But all these examples would have lain in darkness if the light of literature had not been thrown upon them (**accēdō**).

6. PAGES 106-107, § 18

I. 1. How often (**quotiēns**) have I seen Archias, when he had not written a [single] letter, recite extempore a great number of excellent verses (**versus**)! 2. He recited excellent verses on (**dē**) those very (**ipse**) events (**rēs**) which were then taking place (**agō**). 3. How many times have I seen him recite excellent verses on those very events which were then taking place! 4. What (**quae**) he had written with care was (this was; l. 2) so approved that he attained to (**pervenio ad**) the renown of ancient authors. 5. I said that what he had written with care was so approved that

he attained to the renown of ancient authors. 6. Shall we not love and admire this man? 7. Shall we not think that he ought to be defended in every way (*ratio*)?

II. Cicero said that Archias could recite extempore excellent verses on the daily events (the events which, etc.; 1. 28); and that when he wrote with care, he attained to the renown of ancient authors. We cannot doubt that Cicero admired this poet. We cannot doubt that Cicero thought he ought to be defended in every way. If you had been Cicero, would not you too (*quoque*) have admired and defended Archias?

7. PAGE 107, § 19

I. 1. Do we not know that rocks and solitudes reply to the voice? 2. Do we not know that savage beasts are often appeased (*flectō*) by song (*cantus*)? 3. Shall not we, [who are] trained by the liberal arts (*rēs optimae*), be moved by the voice of poets? 4. If many claim (*expetō*) Homer, [who is] a foreigner (*aliēnus*), after death, because he was a poet, let us not reject (*repudiō*) this man [while he is] alive, who is ours by [our] laws. 5. Has he not devoted (*cōnferō*) all his genius to the celebration of (§ 86) the glory of the Roman people? 6. Do you not know that he has devoted all his genius to the celebration of the glory of Rome? 7. Why did the people of Colophon say that Homer was their citizen? 8. Because he was a poet. 9. Why did many others fight with one another about Homer? 10. Because he was a poet. 11. If Archias were not our citizen, ought he not to be sought out by us?

II. Archias celebrated the glory of the Romans. If he had been a foreigner, we would have sought him out, that we might say he was our citizen, just as (*sicut*, § 203, *a*) others said that Homer was theirs. If rocks and solitudes reply to the voice, if savage beasts are appeased by song, you will not wish to reject this Greek poet, who is [already] ours. Is it to be considered of small [consequence] that (§ 235) our glory has been celebrated by a Greek poet?

8. PAGE 110, § 24

I. 1. Alexander the Great had many writers of his exploits (*rēs*). 2. When he had come to the tomb of Achilles, he said, "O fortunate youth, since you have found (§ 178) Homer the herald (*praecō*) of your valor!" 3. Alexander the Great said that Achilles was fortunate in having found Homer the herald of his valor. 4. If the famous (*ille*) Iliad had not existed, the same tomb would have covered (*contegō*) both his body and [his] name. 5. They say that Pompey presented (*dōnō*) the writer of his exploits with citizenship in an assembly (*cōntiō*) of the soldiers. 6. Those brave men of ours, rustics (*rūsticus*) and soldiers, were stirred (*commoveō*) by a certain sweetness (*dulcēdō*) of glory.

II. Achilles was fortunate because (*quod*) Homer was the herald of his valor. Alexander had with him many writers of his exploits. Pompey had a writer of his. They say that when Pompey had presented the writer of his exploits with citizenship in an assembly of the soldiers, those brave men of ours, rustics and soldiers, were stirred by the sweetness of glory.

9. PAGES 112-113, § 30

I. 1. They do not all seem to be narrow-minded (*parvī animī*; § 123). 2. Nor do they think that everything (*omnia*) is going to die at the same time with themselves. 3. Not all men are so (*tam*) narrow-minded as to think (that they think) that everything is going to die at the same time with themselves. 4. Many very great (*summus*) men have studiously left behind [them] (*relinquō*) statues and busts, not representations (*simulācrum*) of their minds, but of their bodies. 5. Ought they not much (*multō*) to prefer (*mālō*) to leave behind them a likeness (*effigiēs*) of their counsels and virtues? 6. Cicero thought that everything he was doing (*gerō*) he was disseminating for (*in*) the eternal memory of the world (*orbis terrae*). 7. The wisest men do not doubt that this memory concerns (*pertineō ad*) some part of the spirit (*animus*) after death. 8. Cicero was delighted at least by a certain hope. 9. If all men had thought that everything was going to

die with themselves, they would have disseminated nothing for the memory of the world, and the poets and wisest men of antiquity would be unknown.

II. Nor were the wisest men so narrow-minded as to think that everything was going to die with themselves. Do we not see the statues and busts that many very great men have left behind them? Did they think that they were disseminating nothing for the memory of the world? If we think that this memory concerns some part of the spirit after death, shall we not much prefer to leave behind us a likeness of our counsels and virtues?

10. PAGE 113, § 31

I. 1. Save, then (*quā rē*), O judges, this poet. 2. He is a man of such (*is*) [sense of] honor (*pudor*) (§ 145) as (*quī*) you see (§ 174) to be approved by the worth of his friends. 3. He is a man of such (*tantus*) genius (§ 145) as (*quantus*) you see (§ 174) has been sought out by very great (*summus*) men. 4. His cause is attested (*comprobō*) by the law. 5. Since this is so, we ask of you that you receive him under (*in*) your protection. 6. Receive him in such a way (*sic*) that he may seem to be relieved (*levō*) by your humanity. 7. We asked of you that you should save Archias. 8. We asked of you that you should receive him under your protection. 9. I said that his cause was attested by the law and the records (*tabulae*). 10. He was a man of such genius that he was sought out by very great men.

II. Do not doubt that you ought to save this poet. Do not doubt that he is a man of such honor as has been attested by the worth of his friends. Do not doubt that he is a man of such genius as has been sought out by very great men. Do not doubt that his cause has been attested both by the law and the records. If you do not relieve him by your humanity, I shall fear that he may seem to have been injured (*violō*) by your severity (*acerbitās*).

LATIN WORD LIST

(See page 494)

The words prescribed by the College Entrance Examination Board for the first three years in Latin are given below

FIRST AND SECOND YEARS

- | | | |
|------------------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| 1. ab, ā | 27. aequus | 51. angustus |
| 2. abdō | 28. aes | 52. animadvertō |
| 3. accēdō | 29. aestās | 53. animus |
| 4. accidō | 30. aestus | 54. annus |
| 5. accipiō | 31. aetās | 55. ante |
| 6. ācer | 32. ager | 56. antea |
| 7. aciēs | 33. agger | 57. antīquus |
| 8. acūtus | 34. agmen | 58. aperiō |
| 9. ad | 35. agō | 59. appellō, -āre |
| 10. adeō (<i>adv.</i>) | 36. alacer | 60. appropinquō |
| 11. adficiō | 37. aliēnus | 61. apud |
| 12. adgredior | | 62. aqua |
| 13. adhibeō | 38. aliquis | 63. aquila |
| 14. adigō | 39. aliter | 64. arbitror |
| 15. aditus | 40. alius | 65. arbor |
| 16. administrō | 41. alō | 66. arcessō |
| 17. admittō | 42. alter | 67. arma |
| 18. admodum | | 68. at |
| 19. adrior | 43. altus | 69. atque, ac |
| 20. adsum | 44. amīcus | 70. attingō |
| 21. adulēscēns | 45. āmittō | 71. auctor |
| 22. adversus (<i>adj.</i>) | | 72. auctōritās |
| 23. aedificium | 46. amplius | 73. audāx |
| 24. aeger | 47. amplus | 74. audeō |
| 25. aegrē | 48. an | 75. audiō |
| 26. aequō | 49. ancora | 76. augeō |
| | 50. angustiae | 77. aut |

ENGLISH WORD LIST

(See page 493)

The words prescribed by the College Entrance Examination Board for the first three years in Latin are given below

FIRST AND SECOND YEARS

- | | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. away from, by | 27. level, equal, kindly | 51. narrow |
| 2. put away, hide | 28. copper, bronze, | 52. turn the mind to, |
| 3. go to, approach, be | money | observe |
| added | 29. summer | 53. spirit, courage, mind |
| 4. befall, happen | 30. heat, tide | 54. year |
| 5. take to, receive, ac- | 31. age, time of life | 55. before |
| cept | 32. field, country | 56. before that, previ- |
| 6. sharp, keen, eager | 33. mound, rampart, | ously |
| 7. edge, line of battle | causeway | 57. ancient, old-time |
| 8. sharp | 34. marching column | 58. open |
| 9. to, toward, near | 35. drive, do, plead | 59. name, call |
| 10. up to this, so | 36. eager, cheerful | 60. approach |
| 11. do to, affect | 37. belonging to an- | 61. near, in the presence |
| 12. step up, approach, | other, strange, un- | of, among |
| attack | favorable | 62. water |
| 13. have on hand, supply | 38. some, any | 63. eagle |
| 14. drive to, haul, move | 39. otherwise | 64. consider, think |
| 15. approach | 40. another | 65. tree |
| 16. govern, manage | 41. nourish | 66. summon, invite |
| 17. let go, admit | 42. the other (of two), | 67. arms, implements |
| 18. very, very much | second | 68. but |
| 19. rise against, attack | 43. high, deep | 69. and also, and |
| 20. be near, be present | 44. friendly | 70. touch upon, attain |
| 21. youth, young man | 45. send away, let go, | 71. originator, founder |
| 22. (turned toward) | lose | 72. authority, influence |
| facing, opposite | 46. more | 73. bold, daring |
| 23. building | 47. large, splendid | 74. dare |
| 24. sick | 48. or (<i>in a question</i>) | 75. hear |
| 25. with difficulty | 49. anchor | 76. make grow, increase |
| 26. make equal | 50. narrowness, defile, pass | 77. or |

78. autem	116. cīvītās	148. conloquium
79. auxilium		149. cōnor
80. barbarus	117. clam	150. cōnquīrō
81. bellum	118. clāmō	
82. bene	119. classis	151. cōnscrībō
83. beneficium	120. claudō	
84. bīduum	121. cliēns	152. cōnsentiō
85. bīnī		
86. bis	122. coepī	153. cōnsequor
87. bonus	123. cōgitō	
88. brevis	124. cognōscō	154. cōnsīdō
89. cadō	125. cōgō	
90. caedēs		155. cōnsilium
91. caedō	126. cohors	156. cōnsistō
92. calamitās	127. colligō, -ere	
93. campus	128. collis	157. cōnspiciō
94. capiō	129. commeātus	158. cōnspicor
95. captīvus	130. commemorō	159. cōnstat
96. caput	131. committō	
97. castellum		160. cōnstituō
98. castra	132. commodus	
99. cāsus	133. communicō	161. cōnsuēscō
	134. communis	162. cōnsuētūdō
100. causā	135. comperiō	163. cōnsul
	136. complūrēs	164. cōnsulō
101. cēdō	137. concēdō	
		165. cōnsūmō
102. celer	138. concilium	166. contemnō
103. cēnseō		167. contendō
	139. condiciō	168. contineō
104. centum		
105. centuriō	140. cōnfertus	169. continuus
106. cernō		170. contrā
107. certus	141. cōnfestim	171. contrōversia
108. cēterī	142. cōnficiō	172. contumēlia
109. cibus		173. cōpia
110. circiter	143. cōnfidō	
111. circum	144. cōnfirmō	174. cornū
112. circumdō	145. cōnfligō	
		175. corpus
113. circumsistō	146. coniūrō	176. cotīdiē
114. cīterior	147. conlocō	177. crēber
115. cīvis		

- | | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 78. moreover, but | 116. citizenship, com- | 148. conference |
| 79. aid, assistance | munity, state | 149. try, attempt |
| 80. foreign, rude | 117. secretly | 150. seek together, col- |
| 81. war | 118. shout, cry | lect |
| 82. well | 119. fleet | 151. write together, |
| 83. kind deed, service | 120. close, shut | enroll |
| 84. two days | 121. dependent, re- | 152. think together, |
| 85. two each | tainer, vassal | agree |
| 86. twice | 122. have begun | 153. follow up, over- |
| 87. good | 123. think, reflect | take, attain |
| 88. short, brief | 124. learn; <i>perf.</i> know | 154. settle, take posi- |
| 89. fall | 125. drive together, | tion |
| 90. slaughter | gather, compel | 155. plan, counsel |
| 91. fell, cut, kill | 126. cohort, troop | 156. take position, halt, |
| 92. disaster | 127. gather, collect | stop |
| 93. plain, field | 128. hill | 157. behold |
| 94. take, seize | 129. supplies | 158. behold |
| 95. captive, prisoner | 130. mention | 159. it is agreed, is |
| 96. head | 131. send together, in- | evident |
| 97. fort, redoubt | trust, join | 160. put together, estab- |
| 98. camp | 132. suitable, convenient | lish, decide |
| 99. fall, chance, acci- | 133. share, communicate | 161. become accustomed |
| dent | 134. common, general | 162. custom, habit |
| 100. by reason of, for | 135. find out, ascertain | 163. consul |
| the sake of | 136. several, very many | 164. plan, consult, de- |
| 101. move, go away, | 137. go with, withdraw, | liberate |
| yield | yield | 165. use up |
| 102. swift | 138. calling together, | 166. despise |
| 103. assess, propose, es- | meeting | 167. struggle, hasten |
| timate, vote | 139. agreement, terms, | 168. hold together, |
| 104. hundred | condition | bound |
| 105. centurion | 140. crowded together, | 169. unbroken |
| 106. distinguish | dense | 170. against, opposite |
| 107. sure, certain | 141. promptly | 171. dispute, quarrel |
| 108. the others, the rest | 142. accomplish, com- | 172. insult |
| 109. food | plete | 173. supply, abundance; |
| 110. about | 143. trust | <i>plur.</i> forces |
| 111. around | 144. strengthen, assert | 174. horn, wing (of an |
| 112. put around, sur- | 145. strike together, | army) |
| round | fight | 175. body |
| 113. hem in, surround | 146. conspire, plot | 176. every day, daily |
| 114. this side of, hither | 147. place together, es- | 177. thick, close, fre- |
| 115. citizen | tablish | quent |

- | | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------|
| 178. crēdō | 214. dexter | 250. equitātus |
| | 215. dīcō, -ere | |
| 179. cruciātus | 216. diēs | 251. equus |
| 180. cum (<i>prep.</i>) | 217. differō | 252. et |
| 181. cum (<i>conj.</i>) | | 253. etiam |
| | 218. difficilis | 254. etsī |
| 182. cupidus | 219. dignus | 255. ex, ē |
| 183. cupiō | 220. dīligēs | 256. exanimō |
| 184. cūr | 221. dīmicō | 257. excipiō |
| 185. cūra | 222. dīrigō (dērigō) | 258. exerceō |
| 186. cūrō | 223. dīripiō | 259. exercitātiō |
| 187. currō | 224. disciplīna | 260. exercitus |
| 188. cursus | 225. dispergō | 261. exiguus |
| 189. cūstōs | 226. diū | 262. exīstimō |
| | 227. dīversus | 263. exitus |
| 190. dē | | 264. expediō |
| | 228. dīvidō | 265. experior |
| 191. dēbeō | 229. dō (<i>and compounds</i> | 266. explōrātor |
| 192. decem | <i>in -dēre</i>) | 267. explōrō |
| 193. dēcernō | 230. doceō | 268. expōnō |
| 194. dēcertō | 231. doleō | 269. expugnō |
| | 232. domus | 270. exspectō |
| 195. decimus | 233. dubitō | |
| 196. dēclivis | 234. dūcō | 271. exstruō |
| 197. dēdō | 235. dum | 272. extrā |
| | | 273. extrēmus |
| 198. dēfendō | 236. duo | 274. facilis |
| 199. dēferō | 237. dūrus | 275. faciō |
| 200. dēfessus | 238. dux | 276. factiō |
| 201. dēficiō | 239. ēditus | 277. facultās |
| 202. deīnde | 240. efferō | |
| 203. dēleō | 241. efficiō | 278. fallō |
| 204. dēligō, -ere | | 279. fāma |
| 205. dēmōnstrō | 242. ego | 280. famēs |
| 206. dēserō | 243. ēgregius | 281. familia |
| 207. dēsīderō | | 282. familiāris |
| 208. dēsistō | 244. emō | |
| 209. dēspērō | 245. enim | 283. ferē |
| 210. dēspiciō | 246. eō, īre | |
| | 247. eō (<i>adv.</i>) | 284. ferō |
| 211. dēsum | 248. eōdem | 285. ferrum |
| 212. dētrīmentum | 249. eques | 286. ferus |
| 213. deus | | |

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|---|
| 178. give trust, believe,
trust | 214. right (of direction) | 250. body of horsemen,
cavalry |
| 179. torture | 215. say, speak | 251. horse |
| 180. with | 216. day | 252. and |
| 181. when, since, al-
though | 217. be different, dif-
fer, postpone | 253. also, even |
| 182. desirous | 218. difficult | 254. and if, although |
| 183. desire, wish | 219. worthy, deserving | 255. out of |
| 184. why | 220. careful | 256. kill |
| 185. care, anxiety | 221. fight | 257. take out, succeed to |
| 186. care for, provide | 222. direct, guide | 258. train |
| 187. run | 223. tear apart | 259. training |
| 188. running, course | 224. training, discipline | 260. trained body, army |
| 189. guardian, watch-
man | 225. scatter | 261. limited, little |
| 190. down from, con-
cerning | 226. a long time | 262. think, believe |
| 191. owe, ought | 227. turned away, dif-
ferent | 263. outcome, end |
| 192. ten | 228. separate, divide | 264. extricate |
| 193. decide, decree | 229. give | 265. try out, test |
| 194. fight a decisive
battle | 230. teach, inform | 266. scout |
| 195. tenth | 231. grieve | 267. reconnoiter |
| 196. sloping down | 232. home, house | 268. put forth, set forth |
| 197. give over, devote,
surrender | 233. hesitate, doubt | 269. take by storm |
| 198. ward off, defend | 234. lead | 270. look out for, wait
for |
| 199. carry away, report | 235. while, as long as,
provided, until | 271. pile up, build |
| 200. tired out | 236. two | 272. outside of, beyond |
| 201. fail, revolt from | 237. hard, harsh | 273. outermost, last |
| 202. thereupon, next | 238. leader | 274. easy |
| 203. destroy | 239. elevated, high | 275. do, make |
| 204. pick, choose, love | 240. bear out, lift up | 276. party, faction |
| 205. point out | 241. work out, accom-
plish, bring about | 277. power of doing,
ability, chance |
| 206. give up, abandon | 242. I | 278. deceive |
| 207. desire, long for | 243. outstanding, dis-
tinguished | 279. reputation, rumor |
| 208. desist | 244. buy, take | 280. hunger, starvation |
| 209. give up hope | 245. for, indeed | 281. household |
| 210. look down upon,
despise | 246. go | 282. belonging to the
household, inti-
mate |
| 211. be lacking | 247. thither, to that place | 283. almost, about, gen-
erally |
| 212. loss | 248. to the same place | 284. bring, bear, carry |
| 213. god | 249. horseman, knight;
<i>plur.</i> cavalry | 285. iron |
| | | 286. wild, fierce |

- | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------|
| 287. fidēs | 326. homō | 366. īnsigne |
| 288. fidūcia | 327. honor | 367. īstituō |
| 289. figō | 328. hōra | 368. īnstō |
| 290. filius | 329. hortor | 369. īstruō |
| 291. finiō | 330. hostis | 370. īnsula |
| 292. finis | 331. hūc | 371. integer |
| | 332. humilis | 372. intellegō |
| | 333. iaciō | 373. inter |
| 293. finitimus | 334. iam | 374. interclūdō |
| 294. fiō | 335. ibi | 375. intereā |
| | 336. idem | 376. intereō |
| 295. firmus | 337. idōneus | 377. interest |
| 296. fleō | 338. ignis | 378. interficiō |
| 297. flūmen | 339. ignōrō | 379. interim |
| 298. fluō | | 380. interior |
| 299. fōrma | 340. ille | 381. intermittō |
| 300. fors | 341. impedīmentum | 382. intervāllum |
| 301. fortis | | |
| 302. fortūna | 342. impediō | 383. intrā |
| 303. fossa | 343. imperium | 384. inveniō |
| 304. frangō | 344. imperō | 385. invītus |
| 305. frāter | 345. impetrō | 386. ipse |
| 306. frōns, frontis | 346. impetus | 387. is |
| 307. frūmentum | 347. in | 388. iste |
| 308. frūstrā | 348. incendō | 389. ita |
| 309. fuga | 349. incidō | 390. item |
| 310. fugiō | 350. incipiō | 391. iter |
| 311. fundō, -ere | 351. incitō | 392. iubeō |
| 312. gēns | 352. incolō | 393. iūdicō |
| 313. genus | 353. incolumis | 394. iugum |
| 314. gerō | 354. inde | 395. iungō |
| 315. gladius | 355. indicō, -ere | 396. iūrō |
| 316. glōria | 356. ineō | 397. iūs |
| 317. grātia | 357. inermis | 398. iūs iūrandum |
| | 358. īnferior, īnfimūs,
īmus | 399. iūstus |
| 318. grātus | 359. inimīcus | 400. iuvō |
| 319. gravis | 360. inīquus | 401. labor, -ōris |
| 320. -gredior | 361. initium | 402. labōrō |
| 321. habeō | 362. iniūria | 403. lacessō |
| 322. hiberna | 363. inopia | 404. lapis |
| 323. hic (<i>pron.</i>) | 364. inquam | 405. lātus, -a, -um |
| 324. hiemō | 365. īnsidiae | 406. latus, -eris |
| 325. hiems | | |

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| 287. trust, pledge, re-
liability | 326. man, human being | 366. badge, device |
| 288. confidence | 327. honor, glory, office | 367. set up, establish |
| 289. fasten | 328. hour | 368. stand on, press on,
be at hand |
| 290. son | 329. urge, advise | 369. arrange, marshal |
| 291. limit, bound, end | 330. enemy | 370. island |
| 292. end, boundary;
<i>plur.</i> territory | 331. hither | 371. whole |
| 293. neighboring | 332. low, lowly | 372. understand |
| 294. be made, happen,
become | 333. hurl, throw | 373. between, among |
| 295. strong | 334. now, already | 374. shut off, cut off |
| 296. weep | 335. there | 375. meanwhile |
| 297. river | 336. the same | 376. perish |
| 298. flow | 337. suitable | 377. it concerns |
| 299. shape, beauty | 338. fire | 378. kill |
| 300. chance | 339. be unacquainted
with | 379. meanwhile |
| 301. brave | 340. that | 380. inner |
| 302. chance, fortune | 341. hindrance; <i>plur.</i>
baggage | 381. interrupt, stop |
| 303. ditch | 342. hinder | 382. space between
walls, interval |
| 304. break | 343. command, power | 383. inside, within |
| 305. brother | 344. command, impose | 384. come upon, find |
| 306. forehead, front | 345. obtain (a request) | 385. against one's will |
| 307. grain | 346. attack, charge, rush | 386. self, very |
| 308. in vain | 347. in, into | 387. this, that, he |
| 309. flight | 348. set on fire | 388. that one (of yours) |
| 310. flee | 349. befall, happen | 389. thus, so |
| 311. pour out | 350. begin | 390. likewise |
| 312. family, clan, tribe | 351. urge on, arouse | 391. road, march |
| 313. origin, kind, race | 352. dwell in | 392. order, command |
| 314. carry on | 353. unharmed | 393. judge, decide |
| 315. sword | 354. thence | 394. yoke, ridge |
| 316. renown, glory | 355. proclaim, appoint | 395. join |
| 317. favor, influence,
gratitude | 356. go into, undertake | 396. make oath, swear |
| 318. pleasing, grateful | 357. unarmed | 397. right, law |
| 319. heavy, serious | 358. lower; lowest, last | 398. oath |
| 320. step, go | 359. unfriendly | 399. just, fair |
| 321. have, hold | 360. uneven, unfair | 400. aid, please |
| 322. winter quarters | 361. beginning | 401. toil |
| 323. this | 362. wrong | 402. toil, suffer |
| 324. spend the winter | 363. want, lack | 403. challenge, harass |
| 325. winter | 364. quoth, say | 404. stone |
| | 365. ambush, treachery | 405. wide |
| | | 406. side |

407. laudō	447. miles	485. nēmō
408. laus	448. mille	486. neque, nec
409. lēgātiō	449. minuō	
410. lēgātus	450. mīror	487. neuter
411. legiō	451. mīrus	488. nēve, neu
412. lēnis		489. nihil
413. levis	452. miser	490. nisi
414. lēx	453. mittō	
415. liber, -a, -um	454. modo	491. nōbilis
416. liberī	455. modus	492. noceō
417. liberō	456. moneō	493. noctū
418. licet	457. mōns	494. nōlō
419. littera	458. mora	495. nōmen
	459. moror	496. nōn
	460. mors	497. nōndum
	461. mōs	498. nōnus
	462. mōtus	499. nōscō
		500. noster
420. litus	463. moveō	501. novem
421. locus	464. mulier	502. novus
422. longus	465. multus	503. nox
423. loquor	466. mūniō	504. nūdō
424. lūx		505. nūllus
425. magis	467. mūnus	506. num
426. magistrātus		
427. magnus	468. mūrus	507. numerus
428. mālō	469. mūtō	508. numquam
429. malus, -a, -um	470. nam	509. nunc
430. mandō	471. namque	510. nūntiō
	472. nancīscor	
431. maneō	473. nāscor	511. nūntius
432. manus	474. nātiō	
433. mare	475. nātūra	512. ob
434. māter	476. nāvigō	
435. māteria	477. nāvis	513. obiciō
436. mātūrus	478. -ne	514. obses
437. mediocris		515. obsideō
438. medius	479. nē (<i>conj.</i>)	516. obtineō
439. memoria	480. necesse	517. occāsiō
440. mēns	481. necō	518. occāsus
441. mēnsis	482. neglegō	519. occīdō
442. mercātor	483. negō	520. occultō
443. mereō, mereor	484. negōtium	521. occultus
444. merīdiēs		
445. metus		
446. meus		

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| 407. praise | 447. soldier | 485. nobody |
| 408. praise, glory | 448. thousand | 486. and not, nor,
neither |
| 409. mission, embassy | 449. lessen | 487. neither (of two) |
| 410. envoy, deputy | 450. marvel at | 488. and that not |
| 411. legion | 451. marvelous, aston-
ishing | 489. nothing |
| 412. gentle, kind | 452. wretched | 490. if not, unless, ex-
cept |
| 413. light, fickle | 453. send | 491. well-known |
| 414. law | 454. only, just now | 492. harm |
| 415. free | 455. measure, manner | 493. at night |
| 416. (freeborn) children | 456. warn, advise | 494. be unwilling |
| 417. set free | 457. mountain | 495. name |
| 418. it is permitted | 458. delay | 496. not |
| 419. letter (of the al-
phabet); <i>plur.</i> a
letter, letters | 459. delay, tarry | 497. not yet |
| 420. coast, shore, beach | 460. death | 498. ninth |
| 421. place | 461. manner, habit | 499. learn, recognize |
| 422. long | 462. commotion, tur-
moil, uprising | 500. our, ours |
| 423. talk | 463. move | 501. nine |
| 424. light | 464. woman | 502. new |
| 425. more greatly, more | 465. much; <i>plur.</i> many | 503. night |
| 426. office, official | 466. do a task, build,
fortify | 504. make bare, empty |
| 427. great | 467. task, duty, service,
offering | 505. none, no |
| 428. prefer | 468. (town) wall | 506. (<i>a question parti-
cle</i>) |
| 429. bad | 469. change | 507. number |
| 430. hand over, com-
mission | 470. for | 508. never |
| 431. stay, remain | 471. for indeed, for | 509. now |
| 432. hand, band, troop | 472. obtain | 510. give news, an-
nounce |
| 433. sea | 473. be born | 511. news, message,
messenger |
| 434. mother | 474. race, people | 512. against, on account
of |
| 435. timber | 475. nature, character | 513. throw against |
| 436. ripe, early | 476. sail | 514. hostage |
| 437. middle, average | 477. ship | 515. set against, besiege |
| 438. middle | 478. (<i>interrogative par-
ticle</i>) | 516. hold fast, obtain |
| 439. memory | 479. lest, that not | 517. opportunity |
| 440. mind | 480. necessary | 518. falling, setting |
| 441. month | 481. kill | 519. fall, set |
| 442. trader | 482. overlook, neglect | 520. hide |
| 443. earn, deserve | 483. deny, refuse | 521. hidden, secret |
| 444. midday | 484. business, task | |
| 445. fear | | |
| 446. my, mine | | |

- | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| 522. occupō | 561. patior | 599. porta |
| 523. occurrō | 562. paucī | 600. portō |
| 524. octāvus | 563. paulātim | 601. portus |
| 525. octō | 564. paulisper | 602. poscō |
| 526. oculus | 565. paulum | 603. possum |
| 527. offerō | 566. pāx | 604. post |
| 528. officium | 567. pecūnia | 605. posteā |
| 529. omnīnō | 568. pecus, -oris | |
| 530. omnis | 569. pedes | 606. posteāquam |
| | 570. pellō | 607. posterus |
| 531. onerārius | 571. pendō | 608. postquam |
| | 572. per | 609. postrīdiē |
| 532. onus | 573. pereō | 610. postulō |
| 533. opera | 574. perficiō | 611. potēns |
| 534. opīniō | 575. perfīdia | 612. potestās |
| 535. oportet | 576. perīculum | 613. potior, -īrī |
| 536. oppidum | 577. perītus | |
| 537. opportūnus | 578. permittō | 614. praebeō |
| | 579. perpetuus | |
| 538. opprimō | 580. perspicīō | 615. praecipīō |
| 539. oppugnō | | |
| 540. ops | 581. persuādeō | 616. praeda |
| 541. opus | 582. pertineō | 617. praedicō, -āre |
| 542. ōrātiō | 583. perturbō | 618. praefectus |
| 543. ōrdō | | |
| 544. orior | 584. pēs | 619. praeficiō |
| 545. ōrō | 585. petō | 620. praemittō |
| 546. ostendō | 586. pīlum | 621. praemium |
| 547. pābulor | 587. placeō | 622. praesēns |
| 548. pābulum | 588. plānitiēs | 623. praesertim |
| 549. pācō | 589. plēbs | 624. praesidium |
| 550. paene | 590. -pleō | |
| 551. palūs | 591. plērīque | 625. praestō, -āre |
| 552. pār | | |
| 553. parcō | 592. plērūmque | 626. praesum |
| 554. pāreō | | |
| 555. parō | 593. poena | 627. praeter |
| | | 628. praetereā |
| 556. pars | 594. polliceor | |
| 557. parvus | 595. pōnō | 629.prehendō |
| 558. passus | 596. pōns | 630. premō |
| 559. pateō | 597. populor | 631. prex |
| 560. pater | 598. populus | 632. prīdiē |

522. seize
 523. run against, meet
 524. eighth
 525. eight
 526. eye
 527. bring against, offer
 528. duty
 529. altogether, at all
 530. all, whole; *sing.*
 every
 531. suitable for burden,
 transport (ship)
 532. burden
 533. work, effort
 534. belief, view
 535. it behooves, ought
 536. town
 537. at the right time,
 suitable
 538. crush, overwhelm
 539. attack, assault
 540. aid, resources
 541. work
 542. speech
 543. order, rank
 544. rise
 545. pray, plead
 546. hold out, show
 547. forage
 548. fodder
 549. make peace, subdue
 550. almost
 551. swamp, marsh
 552. equal
 553. spare
 554. obey
 555. make ready, pre-
 pare
 556. part
 557. small
 558. pace, step
 559. lie open, extend
 560. father
 561. suffer, allow
 562. a few, few
 563. little by little
 564. for a little while
 565. (for) a little
 566. peace
 567. money
 568. cattle
 569. foot soldier
 570. strike, beat, drive
 571. hang, suspend, pay
 572. through
 573. go through, perish
 574. accomplish
 575. treachery
 576. trial, danger
 577. experienced, skilled
 578. allow
 579. unbroken, lasting
 580. look through, un-
 derstand
 581. persuade, convince
 582. extend, belong to
 583. throw into confu-
 sion
 584. foot
 585. seek, attack, ask
 586. spear
 587. please
 588. plain
 589. common people
 590. fill
 591. the greater part,
 majority
 592. for the greater part,
 generally
 593. penalty, punish-
 ment
 594. promise
 595. put, place
 596. bridge
 597. lay waste, ravage
 598. people, nation
 599. gate
 600. carry
 601. harbor
 602. demand, claim
 603. be able, can
 604. after, behind
 605. after that, after-
 wards
 606. after
 607. next, later
 608. (later than) after
 609. next, later
 610. demand
 611. able, powerful
 612. power
 613. get power over,
 gain possession of
 614. hold in front, af-
 ford, furnish
 615. advise, give direc-
 tions
 616. prey, booty
 617. assert
 618. captain, com-
 mander
 619. put at the head of
 620. send ahead
 621. reward
 622. present, in person
 623. particularly
 624. garrison, protec-
 tion
 625. stand before, excel,
 guarantee
 626. be ahead, be in
 charge of
 627. along past, beside
 628. besides this, more-
 over
 629. seize
 630. press
 631. prayer
 632. on the day before

- | | | |
|------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------|
| 633. prīmus | 670. queror | 703. rēmus |
| 634. prīnceps | 671. quī | 704. repente |
| 635. prīncipātus | 672. quicumque | 705. repentīnus |
| 636. prior | 673. quīdam | 706. reperiō |
| 637. prīstinus | | |
| 638. priusquam | 674. quidem | 707. rēs |
| | 675. quīēs | 708. respondeō |
| 639. prīvātus | 676. quīētus | 709. restituō |
| 640. prō | 677. quīn | 710. revertor |
| | | 711. rēx |
| 641. probō | | 712. rīpa |
| 642. procul | | 713. rogō |
| 643. prōdō | 678. quīnque | 714. rūmor |
| 644. proelium | 679. quīntus | 715. rumpō |
| 645. profectiō | 680. quis (<i>interrog. and</i> | 716. rūsus |
| 646. prōficiō | <i>indef.</i>) | 717. saepe |
| 647. proficīscor | 681. quisquam | 718. sagitta |
| 648. prohibeō | 682. quisque | 719. salūs |
| 649. prōiciō | 683. quō | 720. satis |
| 650. prōnūntiō | 684. quod | 721. saxum |
| 651. prope | 685. quoniam | 722. -scendō |
| 652. propinquus | 686. quoque | 723. sciō |
| 653. propter | 687. rapiō | 724. scrībō |
| 654. proptereā | 688. ratiō | 725. scūtum |
| | | 726. secundus |
| 655. prōtinus | 689. recēns | |
| 656. prōvincia | 690. recuperō | 727. sed |
| 657. prūdēns | 691. recūsō | 728. semper |
| | 692. reddō | 729. senātus |
| 658. pūblicus | 693. redeō | |
| | 694. redigō | 730. sententia |
| 659. puer | 695. reficiō | 731. sentiō |
| 660. pugna | 696. regiō | 732. septem |
| 661. putō | | 733. septimus |
| 662. quā | 697. rēgnum | 734. sequor |
| | | 735. servītus |
| 663. quaerō | 698. regō | 736. servō |
| 664. quaestor | 699. religiō | 737. servus |
| 665. quam | 700. relinquiō | 738. sex |
| 666. quantus | 701. reliquus | 739. sextus |
| 667. quārtus | | 740. sī |
| 668. quattuor | 702. remittō | 741. sīc |
| 669. -que | | 742. sīcut |

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| 633. first | 670. complain | 703. oar |
| 634. leading man, chief | 671. who, which, that | 704. suddenly |
| 635. leadership | 672. whoever | 705. sudden |
| 636. preceding, former | 673. a certain one, some-one | 706. gain back, discover, find |
| 637. former, of old | 674. certainly, at least | 707. thing |
| 638. (sooner than) before, until | 675. rest, quiet | 708. answer |
| 639. apart, private | 676. at rest, peaceful | 709. place back, restore |
| 640. in front of, in behalf of | 677. indeed, (but) that
(with negative expressions of doubt) | 710. turn back, return |
| 641. prove, approve | 678. five | 711. king |
| 642. afar | 679. fifth | 712. bank, shore |
| 643. put forth, betray | 680. who, any | 713. ask, ask for |
| 644. battle | | 714. talk, gossip |
| 645. departure | | 715. break |
| 646. accomplish, gain | | 716. (turned back) again |
| 647. set forth, start | 681. any one at all | 717. often |
| 648. keep away | 682. each one | 718. arrow |
| 649. hurl (forward) | 683. whither | 719. health, safety |
| 650. declare | 684. because | 720. enough |
| 651. near, near by | 685. inasmuch as, since | 721. rock |
| 652. near by, kinsman | 686. also, too | 722. climb |
| 653. near, on account of | 687. seize | 723. know |
| 654. on account of this, therefore | 688. reckoning, plan, reason | 724. write |
| 655. at once | 689. fresh, new | 725. shield |
| 656. province | 690. regain, get back | 726. following, second, favorable |
| 657. foreseeing, discreet, wise | 691. object, refuse | 727. but |
| 658. belonging to the people, public | 692. give back, return | 728. always |
| 659. boy | 693. go back, return | 729. body of elders, senate |
| 660. fight | 694. drive back, reduce | 730. feeling, opinion |
| 661. think | 695. make over, repair | 731. feel, think, judge |
| 662. by what way, where | 696. boundary line, district | 732. seven |
| 663. seek, ask | 697. kingdom, royal power | 733. seventh |
| 664. quaestor | 698. direct, rule | 734. follow |
| 665. how, as, than | 699. scruple, religion | 735. slavery |
| 666. how great, as great | 700. leave behind | 736. keep, save |
| 667. fourth | 701. left behind, remaining, rest of | 737. slave |
| 668. four | 702. send back, let go, relax | 738. six |
| 669. and | | 739. sixth |
| | | 740. if |
| | | 741. thus, so |
| | | 742. just as |

743. significō	778. suī	814. totidem
744. signum		815. tōtus
		816. trabs
745. silentium	779. sum	817. trādō
746. silva	780. summa	
747. similis	781. sūmō	818. trahō
748. simul	782. superior, summus	819. trāns
	783. superō	820. trēs
749. simulō		821. tribūnus
750. sine	784. supersum	822. tribuō
751. singulī		823. trīduum
752. sinister	785. supplicium	824. tū
	786. suprā	825. tueor
753. sīve, seu	787. suscipiō	826. tum
754. socius	788. suspicor	827. tumultus
755. sōl	789. sustineō	828. tumulus
756. sollicitō	790. suus	829. turpis
757. solum (<i>adv.</i>)		830. turris
758. sōlus	791. tam	831. tūtus
759. spatium	792. tamen	832. tuus
760. speciēs		
761. spectō	793. tangō	833. ubi
762. spērō	794. tantus	834. ūllus
763. spēs	795. tardō	835. ulterior, ultimus
764. -spiciō	796. tardus	836. ultrō
765. sponte	797. tegō	
766. statim	798. tēlum	837. umquam
	799. temerē	838. ūnā
767. statio	800. tempestās	839. unde
768. statuō		840. undique
	801. temptō	841. ūniversus
769. stīpendium	802. tempus	842. ūnus
	803. tendō	843. urbs
770. stō	804. teneō	844. ūsque
771. studeō	805. tergum	845. ūsus
772. sub	806. terra	
773. subitō	807. terreō	846. ut, utī
774. sublevō	808. tertius	
775. subsequor	809. testis	847. uter
776. subsidium	810. timeō	848. uterque
	811. tollō	849. ūtilis
777. succēdō	812. tormentum	850. ūtor
	813. tot	851. uxor

- | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 743. announce | 778. (of) himself, her- | 814. just as many |
| 744. sign, signal, stand- | self, itself, them- | 815. whole |
| ard | selves | 816. beam |
| 745. silence | 779. be | 817. hand over, intrust, |
| 746. forest | 780. highest sum, total | surrender |
| 747. like, resembling | 781. take | 818. drag, draw |
| 748. together, at the | 782. higher, highest | 819. across |
| same time | 783. overcome, surpass, | 820. three |
| 749. pretend | defeat | 821. tribune |
| 750. without | 784. be over, remain, | 822. assign, grant |
| 751. one at a time | survive | 823. three days |
| 752. left (of direc- | 785. punishment | 824. thou, you |
| tion) | 786. above, beyond | 825. gaze at, protect |
| 753. or if, whether | 787. take up, undertake | 826. at that time |
| 754. ally | 788. suspect | 827. uproar, rebellion |
| 755. sun | 789. uphold, resist | 828. small hill, mound |
| 756. stir up, tempt | 790. his, her, its, their | 829. base, disgraceful |
| 757. only | (own) | 830. tower |
| 758. alone, only | 791. thus, so | 831. protected, safe |
| 759. space | 792. however, never- | 832. thy, thine, your, |
| 760. appearance | theless | yours |
| 761. look at | 793. touch | 833. where, when |
| 762. hope | 794. so great | 834. any |
| 763. hope | 795. make slow, check | 835. farther, farthest |
| 764. look | 796. slow | 836. beyond, unasked, |
| 765. free will | 797. cover, conceal | voluntarily |
| 766. at once, immedi- | 798. missile, weapon | 837. ever |
| ately | 799. rashly | 838. together |
| 767. outpost, picket | 800. period of time, | 839. whence |
| 768. set up, fix, deter- | weather, storm | 840. from (on) all sides |
| mine | 801. try, attempt | 841. all together |
| 769. payment, tax, cam- | 802. time | 842. one |
| paign | 803. stretch | 843. city |
| 770. stand | 804. hold | 844. up to |
| 771. be eager, desire | 805. back, rear | 845. use, advantage, ex- |
| 772. under, close to | 806. earth, land | perience |
| 773. suddenly | 807. frighten | 846. in order that, so |
| 774. assist | 808. third | that |
| 775. follow closely | 809. witness | 847. which of two |
| 776. reserve, reënforce- | 810. be afraid, fear | 848. each of two, both |
| ment, assistance | 811. lift, remove | 849. useful |
| 777. approach, come | 812. military engine | 850. use, employ |
| next | 813. so many | 851. wife |

852. vacuus	866. vertō	880. vīs
853. vadum	867. vērus	881. vīta
854. vagor	868. vesper	882. vītō
855. valeō	869. vester	883. vīvō
856. vallēs	870. vestis	884. vīvus
857. vāllum	871. vetus	885. vix
858. vāstō	872. via	886. vocō
859. vehemēns	873. vīcus	887. volō, velle
860. vehō	874. videō	888. voluntās
861. vel	875. vigilia	
862. veniō	876. vīginti	889. vōx
863. vōntus	877. vincō	890. vulgus
864. vereor	878. vir	891. vulnus
865. versor	879. virtūs	

THIRD YEAR

1. abhorreō	23. appetō	44. cārus
2. accūsō	24. aptus	45. caveō
3. acerbus	25. āra	46. celebr
4. adflīgō	26. ārdeō	
5. adhūc	27. argentum	47. celebrō
	28. argūmentum	
6. adimō	29. ars	48. cēnsor
7. adipīscor	30. arx	49. certāmen
8. admoneō	31. atrōx	50. certō, -āre
9. adsequor	32. attendō	51. cervīx
10. adsiduus		52. cīvīlis
11. aedēs	33. auferō	
12. aerārium	34. auris	53. clārus
13. aeternus	35. auspiciū	54. clēmēns
14. agitō	36. avāritia	55. collēga
15. agrestis	37. avidus	56. colō
16. aiō	38. avus	57. colōnus
17. aliquandō	39. beātus	58. comes
		59. comitātus
18. aliquot	40. benevolentia	60. comitia
19. āmēns		61. commendō
20. amō	41. caelum	62. complector
21. anima	42. carcer	63. conciliō
22. antequam	43. careō	64. concitō
		65. concordia

- | | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 852. empty | 866. turn | 880. violence, force |
| 853. shoal, ford | 867. true | 881. life |
| 854. roam | 868. evening | 882. avoid |
| 855. be strong | 869. your, yours | 883. be alive |
| 856. valley | 870. cloth, garment | 884. alive |
| 857. rampart | 871. old, long-standing | 885. barely, scarcely |
| 858. lay waste | 872. way, road | 886. call |
| 859. violent | 873. village | 887. be willing, wish |
| 860. carry | 874. see | 888. willingness, good
will |
| 861. or | 875. night watch, guard | 889. voice, word |
| 862. come | 876. twenty | 890. common crowd |
| 863. wind | 877. conquer | 891. wound |
| 864. fear, respect | 878. man | |
| 865. turn about, dwell | 879. manliness, bravery | |

THIRD YEAR

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. (shudder) shrink
from | 23. strive after | 44. dear, beloved |
| 2. charge, accuse | 24. fit, suitable | 45. beware |
| 3. bitter | 25. altar | 46. crowded, frequent,
famous |
| 4. strike down | 26. blaze, glow | 47. crowd, make fa-
mous, celebrate |
| 5. up to here, so far,
hitherto | 27. silver, money | 48. censor |
| 6. take away, deprive | 28. proof | 49. contest |
| 7. attain, obtain | 29. skill, art, theory | 50. struggle |
| 8. remind, warn | 30. citadel | 51. neck, head |
| 9. attain | 31. cruel, horrible | 52. belonging to a
citizen |
| 10. uninterrupted | 32. turn attention to,
listen to | 53. bright, illustrious |
| 11. temple; <i>plur.</i> house | 33. bear off | 54. mild, merciful |
| 12. treasury | 34. ear | 55. colleague |
| 13. everlasting | 35. auspices, omen | 56. cherish, worship |
| 14. drive, pursue | 36. greed | 57. husbandman, settler |
| 15. rustic, boorish | 37. eager, desirous | 58. companion |
| 16. say | 38. grandfather | 59. retinue |
| 17. at some time, at
length | 39. blessed, happy,
wealthy | 60. elections |
| 18. some | 40. good will, friend-
ship | 61. intrust |
| 19. without mind, mad | 41. sky, heaven | 62. embrace |
| 20. love | 42. prison | 63. win over |
| 21. breath, life, soul | 43. be without, do with-
out | 64. arouse, excite |
| 22. (sooner than) before | | 65. harmony, agreement |

66. condō	102. dīlēctus (dēlēctus)	138. fateor
67. coniūnx	103. diligō	139. fātum
68. cōnscientia	104. discō	140. faveō
69. cōnsīderō	105. discrīmen	141. fax
70. cōnstantia	106. dissimulō	142. fēlix
71. cōnsulāris	107. diūturnus	143. fidēlis
72. cōnsulātus	108. dīvīnus	144. fingō
73. cōnsultum	109. dīvitiae	145. flāgitium
74. contentus	110. doctrīna	146. flāgitō
75. contingit	111. domicilium	147. flagrō
76. cōntiō	112. dominus	148. flamma
77. convīvium	113. dōnō	149. flectō
78. corrumpō	114. dubius	150. flōreō
79. creō	115. dulcis	151. foedus, -eris
80. crēscō	116. ecquis	152. formīdō, -inis
81. crīmen	117. egeō	153. fortasse
82. crūdēlis	118. equidem	154. forum
83. cruentus	119. ergā	155. frequēns
84. culpa	120. ergō	156. frētus
85. cūnctus	121. errō	157. frīgus
86. cūria	122. ērudiō	158. frūctus
87. damnō	123. etenim	159. fruor
88. dēbilitō	124. ēvertō	160. furō
89. decet	125. excelsus	161. fūrtum
90. dēclārō	126. exemplum	162. gaudeō
91. dēdecus	127. exigō	163. gradus
92. dēlectō	128. eximius	164. grātulātiō
93. dēlictum	129. exitium	165. grex
94. dēlūbrum	130. exsilium	166. habitō
95. dēmēns	131. exsistō	167. haereō
96. dēnique	132. exstinguō	168. haud
97. dēnūntiō	133. externus	169. hesternus
98. dēprecor	134. exterus	170. hīc (<i>adv.</i>)
99. dēsīgnō	135. facinus	171. hinc
100. dēsīnō	136. fānum	172. hodiē
101. dictitō	137. fās	173. hodiernus
		174. honestus
		175. hūmānus
		176. iaceō
		177. idcircō

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 66. put together, found, hide | 102. conscription, levy | 138. confess, admit |
| 67. spouse, husband, wife | 103. pick, choose, love | 139. destiny, oracle |
| 68. consciousness, conscience | 104. learn | 140. favor |
| 69. consider | 105. turning point, crisis, peril | 141. torch, firebrand |
| 70. consistency, firmness | 106. dissemble | 142. lucky |
| 71. belonging to a consul, ex-consul | 107. lasting, long-continued | 143. faithful |
| 72. consulship | 108. of god, divine | 144. mold, invent |
| 73. decree | 109. riches, wealth | 145. outrage |
| 74. satisfied | 110. teaching, learning | 146. demand |
| 75. it happens | 111. residence | 147. burn, flare |
| 76. assembly | 112. master | 148. flame, fire |
| 77. banquet | 113. make a gift, present | 149. bend, turn |
| 78. break, corrupt, bribe | 114. doubtful | 150. flourish |
| 79. make, elect | 115. sweet, pleasant | 151. treaty |
| 80. grow larger | 116. any one at all | 152. fear, panic |
| 81. decision, charge | 117. be in need, want | 153. perchance, perhaps |
| 82. cruel | 118. indeed | 154. market place |
| 83. bloodstained | 119. toward | 155. crowded |
| 84. blame, guilt | 120. therefore | 156. trusting, relying |
| 85. all together, entire | 121. wander, make a mistake | 157. cold, chill |
| 86. senate-house | 122. educate | 158. produce, fruit, grain |
| 87. condemn | 123. and indeed, for | 159. enjoy |
| 88. weaken | 124. overturn | 160. rave, rage |
| 89. it becomes, behooves | 125. high, distinguished | 161. theft |
| 90. make clear | 126. sample, example | 162. rejoice |
| 91. disgrace | 127. drive out, exact, collect | 163. step, rank |
| 92. give joy, delight | 128. taken out, out-standing | 164. congratulation |
| 93. fault, crime | 129. destruction, ruin | 165. herd, crowd |
| 94. sacred place, shrine | 130. banishment | 166. occupy, dwell in |
| 95. without mind, unreasonable | 131. come out, come into being | 167. stick |
| 96. finally, at last | 132. put out, quench | 168. not |
| 97. announce, give warning | 133. outside, foreign | 169. of yesterday |
| 98. beg off | 134. outside, foreign | 170. here, at this point |
| 99. mark out, choose | 135. deed, crime | 171. hence |
| 100. cease, desist | 136. shrine | 172. today |
| 101. keep saying | 137. divine right, law | 173. of today |
| | | 174. honorable, respected |
| | | 175. of man, kindly, cultured |
| | | 176. lie (on the ground) |
| | | 177. therefore |

178. īdūs	215. lateō	250. necessitūdō
179. igitur	216. latrō, -ōnis	251. nefārius
180. ignōminia	217. latrōcinium	
		252. nēquitia
181. ignōscō	218. lēgō, -āre	
182. imāgō		253. nesciō
	219. legō, -ere	
183. immānis	220. levō	254. nex
184. immō	221. libenter	255. nimis
185. impendeō	222. liber, -brī	256. nimius
186. improbus	223. libīdō	
187. inānis	224. locuplēs	257. Nōnae
188. index	225. longinquus	258. notō
189. indicō, -āre	226. lūdus	259. nūmen
		260. nūper
190. industria	227. lūgeō	261. nusquam
191. inertia	228. lūmen	262. nūtus
192. inferī	229. lūxuria	263. obeō
193. infestus	230. maeror	
194. ingenium	231. magister	264. oblīvīscor
195. inlūstris		265. obscūrus
196. innocēns	232. manifestus	266. obsecrō
197. insidior		267. occīdō
198. intendō	233. mānsuētūdō	268. ōdī
199. interdum	234. meminī	269. ōmen
200. intueor	235. -met	270. omittō
201. invideō	236. militia	271. opīnor
202. invidia	237. minae	272. optō
	238. minor, -ārī	273. ōra
203. ira	239. misceō	274. orbis
204. irāscor	240. misericordia	275. ōrnō
205. iterum		276. ōs, ōris
206. iūcundus	241. moenia	277. ōtium
207. iūdex	242. molestus	278. pactum
208. iuventūs		279. paenitet
209. Kalendae	243. mōlior	
	244. monumentum	280. palam
210. lābor, lābī		281. parēns
211. lacrima	245. morbus	282. pariēs
212. laetor	246. morior	283. pariō
213. laetus	247. mūnicipium	
214. largior	248. nauta	284. parricīda
	249. necessārius	

- | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 178. Ides | 215. be hidden | 250. close relationship |
| 179. therefore, thus | 216. highwayman, thief | 251. unspeakable, criminal |
| 180. disgrace, degradation | 217. robbery, band of robbers | 252. worthlessness, shiftlessness |
| 181. not know, pardon | 218. appoint formally, send as envoy | 253. know not, be unaware |
| 182. likeness, picture, portrait | 219. pick, choose, read | 254. slaughter, murder |
| 183. huge | 220. make light, relieve | 255. too much |
| 184. on the contrary | 221. gladly | 256. exceedingly, excessive |
| 185. overhang, threaten | 222. book | 257. Nones |
| 186. not upright, wicked | 223. lust | 258. mark |
| 187. empty | 224. wealthy | 259. nod, divine will |
| 188. witness, informer | 225. far off, at a distance | 260. newly, recently |
| 189. point out, betray, reveal | 226. play, school; <i>plur.</i> games | 261. nowhere |
| 190. application | 227. mourn | 262. nod, command |
| 191. idleness | 228. light | 263. go against, meet, attend |
| 192. the dead | 229. extravagance | 264. forget |
| 193. hostile | 230. grief, mourning | 265. dark, concealed |
| 194. inborn gift, talent | 231. master, teacher, helmsman | 266. implore |
| 195. illustrious | 232. plain, visible, manifest | 267. cut down, slag |
| 196. guiltless, upright | 233. gentleness | 268. hate |
| 197. lie in ambush, plot | 234. remember, recall | 269. omen |
| 198. stretch, strain | 235. self, own | 270. leave out, pass by |
| 199. sometimes | 236. military service | 271. believe, think |
| 200. gaze upon, admire | 237. threats | 272. wish for, pray for |
| 201. look upon, envy | 238. threaten | 273. shore, district |
| 202. envy, hatred, unpopularity | 239. mix, mingle, confuse | 274. circle |
| 203. wrath | 240. kindheartedness, clemency, pity | 275. equip, adorn |
| 204. become (be) angry | 241. fortifications, walls | 276. mouth, face |
| 205. again | 242. troublesome, annoying | 277. leisure, peace |
| 206. pleasant, agreeable | 243. put up, plot | 278. agreement |
| 207. judge, juror | 244. (means of recalling) monument | 279. (it repents one) repent |
| 208. youth | 245. sickness | 280. openly |
| 209. first day of the month | 246. die | 281. parent |
| 210. glide, slip | 247. free town | 282. wall (of a house) |
| 211. tear | 248. sailor | 283. bring forth, bear, gain |
| 212. rejoice | 249. necessary | 284. murderer (of a parent), traitor |
| 213. joyful | | |
| 214. give abundantly, lavish, bribe | | |

285. parum	320. pulcher	356. sanguis
286. patefaciō	321. pūniō	357. sãnē
287. patientia	322. quaesō	358. sãnō
	323. quaestiō	359. sapiēns
288. patria	324. quaestus	360. scelerātus
289. peccō	325. quālis	361. scelus
290. penitus	326. quamquam	362. sc̄ilicet
291. perdō	327. quamvis	
292. perniciēs		363. sēcernō
293. pertimēscō	328. quandō	364. sedeō
294. pestis	329. quasi	365. sēdēs
	330. querēla	366. sēmen
295. pius	331. quia	367. senectūs
296. plācō	332. quiēscō	368. senex
		369. sepeliō
297. plānus	333. quisnam	370. sermō
298. plēnus	334. quisquis	371. serviō
299. possideō	335. quivīs	372. sevērus
300. potius, potissimum		373. sīca
	336. quoad	374. sīn
301. prae		375. sinō
302. praecipuus	337. quondam	376. societās
303. praeclārus		377. soleō
304. praeditus	338. quot	
305. praedō	339. quotiēns	378. solvō
306. praetereō	340. recitō	
307. praetermittō	341. recorder	379. somnus
308. praetor	342. rēctē	380. soror
309. praetūra	343. rēgnō	381. sors
310. pretium	344. repetō	382. spīritus
311. prīdem		383. splendor
312. prīvō	345. reprehendō	384. spoliō
313. profectō	346. repudiō	385. spoliū
314. profiteor	347. requirō	386. stabilis
	348. restō	387. strepitus
315. proinde	349. reus	388. stultus
316. proprius	350. rōbur	389. stuprum
	351. ruō	390. suādeō
317. prōsum	352. sacer	391. suffrāgium
		392. sūmptus
318. pudet	353. sacerdos	393. supplex
	354. salvus	394. supplicatiō
319. pudor	355. sānctus	395. tabella

- | | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|--|
| 285. (too) little | 320. beautiful | 356. blood |
| 286. make open, reveal | 321. punish | 357. truly, indeed |
| 287. endurance,
patience | 322. beg, beseech | 358. make healthy, cure |
| 288. one's country | 323. inquiry, trial, court | 359. wise |
| 289. injure, do wrong | 324. gain, profit | 360. criminal |
| 290. deep within | 325. of what kind | 361. crime |
| 291. ruin, destroy | 326. although, and yet | 362. you may know, of
course |
| 292. destruction, ruin | 327. however much, al-
though | 363. set aside, separate |
| 293. become (be) afraid | 328. when | 364. sit |
| 294. plague, pestilence,
ruin | 329. as if | 365. seat |
| 295. dutiful, devoted | 330. complaint | 366. seed |
| 296. make pleasant, ap-
pease | 331. because | 367. old age |
| 297. level, plain | 332. come to rest, keep
quiet | 368. old man |
| 298. full | 333. who indeed | 369. bury |
| 299. possess, acquire | 334. whoever | 370. talk, conversation |
| 300. rather, preferably;
chiefly, especially | 335. anyone (you
please) | 371. serve |
| 301. in front of | 336. (up to where) as
long as | 372. strict |
| 302. special, excellent | 337. at some time, at
last | 373. dagger |
| 303. very bright, famous | 338. how many | 374. but if |
| 304. equipped, endowed | 339. how often | 375. let, permit |
| 305. pirate | 340. read aloud | 376. fellowship, alliance |
| 306. pass by | 341. recall | 377. be wont, accus-
tomed |
| 307. pass by | 342. rightly | 378. untie, release, per-
form, pay |
| 308. prætor | 343. be king, rule | 379. sleep |
| 309. prætorship | 344. seek back, demand,
recollect | 380. sister |
| 310. price | 345. censure, blame | 381. lot, fate |
| 311. long ago | 346. spurn, reject | 382. breath, pride |
| 312. deprive | 347. demand | 383. brilliance |
| 313. truly, in truth | 348. remain, be left | 384. despoil |
| 314. say openly, profess,
register | 349. defendant | 385. spoil |
| 315. therefore | 350. oak, strength | 386. steadfast |
| 316. belonging to, char-
acteristic | 351. rush, dig | 387. noise, uproar |
| 317. be advantageous,
benefit | 352. set apart, holy,
cursed | 388. foolish |
| 318. (it shames one) be
ashamed | 353. priest | 389. debauch |
| 319. shame, modesty | 354. safe | 390. advise |
| | 355. sacred, holy | 391. ballot, vote |
| | | 392. outlay, expense |
| | | 393. bending, suppliant |
| | | 394. thanksgiving |
| | | 395. tablet, letters |

396. tabula	412. testor	430. verbum
397. taceō	413. togātus	431. versus, -ūs
398. tālis		432. vērum (<i>conj.</i>)
399. tametsī	414. tolerō	433. vēstīgium
400. tamquam	415. totiēns	434. vetō
401. tandem	416. tractō	435. vexō
402. tantum	417. triumphus	436. vidēlicet
403. tēctum	418. tunc	
404. temeritās	419. ulcīscor	437. vigilō
405. temperantia	420. urgeō	438. villa
406. templum	421. ūsītātus	439. vinculum
	422. usquam	440. vindicō
407. tenebrae	423. utinam	441. vīnum
408. tenuis	424. utrum	442. violō
409. terminus	425. varius	443. virgō
	426. vectīgal	444. vitium
410. testāmentum	427. vēndō	445. voluptās
411. testimōnium	428. venēnum	446. voveō
	429. venia	447. vultus

The words prescribed by the New York State Syllabus in Latin for the first three years, and not found in the College Entrance Examination Board list, are given below

FIRST AND SECOND YEARS

1. absum	15. audācter	27. comprehendō
2. addūcō	16. aut . . . aut	
3. adeō (<i>v.</i>)	17. carrus	28. concīdō
4. adiciō	18. celeritās	29. cōnferō
5. admīror	19. circumveniō	
6. adventus	20. clāmor	30. congregior
7. advertō	21. colloquor	31. coniciō
	22. commoror	32. coniungō
8. afferō	23. commoveō	33. cōnspectus
9. agricola		34. cōnstō
10. altitūdō	24. comparō	35. conveniō
11. amīcitia		
12. antecēdō	25. compellō, -ere	36. convertō
13. apertus		37. cotīdiānus
14. armō	26. compleō	38. cum . . . tum

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 396. board, archive | 412. call to witness | 430. word |
| 397. keep still | 413. dressed in the toga,
civilian | 431. line, verse |
| 398. of such kind | 414. bear, endure | 432. truly, but |
| 399. as if, although | 415. so often | 433. track, trace |
| 400. as if, so to say | 416. handle | 434. forbid |
| 401. at length | 417. a triumph | 435. harass, plunder |
| 402. so much, only | 418. then, at that time | 436. you may see, of
course |
| 403. roof, building | 419. avenge, punish | 437. watch |
| 404. rashness | 420. press on, urge | 438. farmhouse |
| 405. self-control | 421. common, customary | 439. bond, fetter |
| 406. sacred precinct,
temple | 422. anywhere | 440. claim, punish |
| 407. darkness | 423. would that | 441. wine |
| 408. thin, humble | 424. whether | 442. ravish |
| 409. boundary line,
limit | 425. different, diverse | 443. maiden |
| 410. last will | 426. tax, tribute | 444. fault, vice |
| 411. evidence, testi-
mony | 427. sell | 445. pleasure |
| | 428. poison | 446. vow |
| | 429. pardon, permission | 447. face, countenance |

The words prescribed by the New York State Syllabus in Latin for the first three years, and not found in the College Entrance Examination Board list, are given below

FIRST AND SECOND YEARS

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|---|--|
| 1. be away, be ab-
sent | 15. boldly | 27. seize, grasp, under-
stand |
| 2. lead to, influence | 16. either . . . or | 28. kill |
| 3. go to, visit | 17. wagon, cart | 29. bring together, col-
lect, transport |
| 4. add to | 18. swiftness, speed | 30. step together, meet |
| 5. wonder at | 19. come around, sur-
round, cut off | 31. hurl, throw |
| 6. approach, arrival | 20. outcry, shout | 32. join together, unite |
| 7. turn to, proceed
against | 21. talk together, confer | 33. view, sight |
| 8. bring to | 22. remain | 34. stand with, agree |
| 9. farmer | 23. move thoroughly,
alarm | 35. come together, as-
semble |
| 10. height | 24. make ready, buy,
compare | 36. turn around, change |
| 11. friendship | 25. drive together, col-
lect, force | 37. daily |
| 12. go before, surpass | 26. fill up | 38. both . . . and, not
only . . . but also |
| 13. open | | |
| 14. arm, equip | | |

- | | | |
|------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| 39. cupiditās | 79. itaque | 114. permoveō |
| 40. dēditio | 80. lātitudō | |
| 41. dēdūcō | 81. libertās | 115. persequor |
| 42. dēfēnsor | 82. lingua | |
| 43. dēns | 83. lūdō | 116. perterreō |
| 44. dēpōnō | 84. lūna | |
| 45. difficultās | 85. magnitūdō | 117. perveniō |
| 46. digitus | 86. magnopere | |
| 47. dignitās | 87. maiōrēs | 118. poēta |
| 48. dīmīttō | 88. malefīcium | 119. prīmō |
| 49. discēdō | 89. mandātum | 120. prīmum |
| 50. distribuō | 90. maritimus | 121. prōcēdō |
| 51. ēdō | | |
| 52. effugiō | 91. mēnsa | 122. prōdūcō |
| 53. ēnūntiō | 92. mētior | |
| 54. equester | | 123. prōgredior |
| | 93. militāris | |
| 55. ēripiō | 94. multitudō | 124. prōpōnō |
| 56. ēruptiō | 95. mūnitiō | 125. prōsequor |
| 57. et . . . et | 96. neque . . . neque | |
| 58. ēventus | 97. nē . . . quidem | 126. puella |
| 59. excēdō | 98. nōbilitās | 127. pugnō |
| 60. facile | 99. nocturnus | 128. pulvis |
| 61. factum | 100. nōn modo . . . sed | 129. quod sī |
| 62. fēmina | etiam | 130. quōminus |
| 63. filia | 101. nōnnūllus | 131. recipiō |
| 64. frūmentārius | 102. nōtus | 132. referō |
| 65. funditor | 103. obsidiō | 133. rēgīna |
| 66. grātis | 104. oppidānus | 134. removeō |
| 67. hūmānitās | | |
| 68. iam pridem | 105. oppugnātiō | 135. renūntiō |
| 69. ignōtus | 106. pāgus | 136. rēs frūmentāria |
| 70. impellō | 107. partim | 137. rēs militāris |
| 71. imperātum | 108. paulō | 138. rēs pūblica |
| 72. impōnō | 109. pedester | 139. resistō |
| 73. indūcō | | 140. respōnsum |
| 74. īnferō | 110. perdūcō | 141. revertō |
| | | 142. sagittārius |
| 75. īnsequor | 111. perferō | 143. satisfaciō |
| 76. īnstitūtum | | |
| 77. intercēdō | 112. perfugiō | 144. sī quis |
| | 113. permaneō | 145. singulāris |
| 78. interrogō | | |

- | | | |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| 39. desire, longing | 79. and thus, therefore | 114. move strongly, ex-
cite |
| 40. surrender | 80. width | 115. follow through,
pursue |
| 41. lead away, launch | 81. freedom | 116. frighten thor-
oughly |
| 42. defender | 82. tongue, language | 117. come through, ar-
rive |
| 43. tooth | 83. play | 118. poet |
| 44. put down, put aside | 84. moon | 119. at first |
| 45. difficulty | 85. greatness, size | 120. first |
| 46. finger, toe | 86. greatly | 121. go forward, ad-
vance |
| 47. worth, rank | 87. ancestors | 122. lead forward, pro-
tract |
| 48. send away, dispatch | 88. evil deed | 123. step forward, pro-
ceed |
| 49. go away | 89. commission | 124. set forth, propose |
| 50. distribute | 90. of the sea, mari-
time | 125. follow on, pursue,
escort |
| 51. put out, put forth | 91. table, dish | 126. girl |
| 52. escape | 92. measure out, dis-
tribute | 127. fight |
| 53. disclose, announce | 93. of a soldier | 128. dust |
| 54. of a horseman,
equestrian | 94. large number, crowd | 129. but if, and if |
| 55. snatch out, free | 95. fortification | 130. (that less,) lest |
| 56. breaking out, sally | 96. neither . . . nor | 131. take back, receive |
| 57. both . . . and | 97. not even | 132. bring back, report |
| 58. outcome, result | 98. rank, nobility | 133. queen |
| 59. go out, withdraw | 99. nightly | 134. move back, with-
draw |
| 60. easily | 100. not only . . . but
also | 135. announce, proclaim |
| 61. deed | 101. some | 136. grain supply |
| 62. woman | 102. known | 137. warfare |
| 63. daughter | 103. siege | 138. commonwealth |
| 64. belonging to grain | 104. of the town,
townsman | 139. take a stand, resist |
| 65. slinger | 105. assault | 140. answer |
| 66. for nothing | 106. district, clan | 141. turn back, return |
| 67. kindness, culture | 107. partly | 142. archer |
| 68. long ago | 108. (by) a little | 143. do enough, do one's
duty, apologize |
| 69. unknown | 109. of a foot soldier,
on foot | 144. if any, whoever |
| 70. drive on, urge on | 110. lead through, con-
struct | 145. one by one, ex-
traordinary |
| 71. command | 111. bear through, en-
dure, announce | |
| 72. put on | 112. flee to, desert | |
| 73. lead on, influence | 113. stay through,
abide | |
| 74. bring in, bring
against | | |
| 75. follow on, pursue | | |
| 76. custom | | |
| 77. go between, forbid,
veto | | |
| 78. ask (a question) | | |

- 146. studium
- 147. subdūcō
- 148. submittō
- 149. superus
- 150. supportō
- 151. suspiciō (*noun*)

- 152. terror
- 153. timidus
- 154. timor
- 155. toga
- 156. trānseō
- 157. tuba
- 158. ultrā

- 159. vehementer
- 160. vērō
- 161. vetustus
- 162. vicinus
- 163. victor
- 164. victōria
- 165. vulnerō

THIRD YEAR

- 1. adulēscētia
- 2. āmentia
- 3. audācia
- 4. bellō
- 5. certē
- 6. colōnia
- 7. cōnfiteor
- 8. coniūrātiō
- 9. contingō
- 10. cūstōdia
- 11. dēcēdō
- 12. dēprehendō
- 13. dēsignātus
- 14. diligētia
- 15. dissentiō
- 16. dolor
- 17. domesticus
- 18. exaudiō
- 19. excellō
- 20. expetō
- 21. exsultō
- 22. falsus
- 23. faucēs
- 24. fēlicitās
- 25. furor
- 26. gravitās

- 27. iactō
- 28. illūstrō
- 29. immineō
- 30. immortalis
- 31. imperātor
- 32. incendium
- 33. incrdibilis
- 34. inferus
- 35. ingredior
- 36. innocentia
- 37. insignis
- 38. interitus
- 39. intersum
- 40. iūdicium
- 41. iussū
- 42. laetitia
- 43. liberālis
- 44. macula
- 45. mītis
- 46. nāvālis
- 47. nervus
- 48. nōminō
- 49. odium
- 50. ōrnāmentum

- 51. patrius
- 52. percipiō
- 53. periculōsus
- 54. populāris
- 55. praeferō
- 56. prūdētia
- 57. quō (*conj.*)
- 58. redimō
- 59. rēgius
- 60. reprimō
- 61. retardō
- 62. scientia
- 63. secūris
- 64. sēnsus
- 65. sevērītās
- 66. stīmulus
- 67. subiciō
- 68. trānsmittō
- 69. triumphō
- 70. turpitūdō
- 71. ūtilitās
- 72. varietas
- 73. veneror
- 74. verber
- 75. vīsō

- | | | |
|--|------------------------|-------------------|
| 146. eagerness | 152. fright, panic | 159. strongly |
| 147. lead under, lead up
to, draw up, beach | 153. fearful, cowardly | 160. in truth |
| 148. send under, send to
assist, yield | 154. fear | 161. old, ancient |
| 149. upper | 155. toga | 162. neighboring |
| 150. carry up | 156. go across, cross | 163. conqueror |
| 151. suspicion | 157. trumpet | 164. victory |
| | 158. beyond | 165. wound |

THIRD YEAR

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. youth | 27. throw about, boast | 51. belonging to a father,
inherited |
| 2. insanity, madness | 28. light up, honor | 52. notice |
| 3. boldness | 29. threaten | 53. dangerous, risky |
| 4. make war | 30. immortal | 54. of the people, popu-
lar, democratic |
| 5. surely, at least | 31. commander | 55. bear before, prefer |
| 6. colony | 32. conflagration | 56. foresight, wisdom |
| 7. confess | 33. unbelievable | 57. that |
| 8. conspiracy | 34. below | 58. ransom, redeem |
| 9. happen | 35. step into, begin | 59. of a king, royal |
| 10. protection, custody,
garrison | 36. uprightness, honesty | 60. repress, check |
| 11. go away, die | 37. marked, distin-
guished | 61. keep back, delay |
| 12. seize, surprise | 38. destruction, death | 62. knowledge |
| 13. marked out, elect | 39. be between, be of
importance | 63. ax |
| 14. carefulness | 40. judgment, trial | 64. feeling |
| 15. disagree | 41. by order of | 65. strictness |
| 16. pain, grief | 42. joyfulness, joy | 66. goad, spur |
| 17. belonging to the
house, inner | 43. of a freeman, gen-
tlemanly | 67. throw under, con-
quer |
| 18. hear from a distance | 44. spot, stain, disgrace | 68. send across, cross |
| 19. surpass | 45. kind | 69. celebrate a triumph |
| 20. ask for | 46. of a ship, naval | 70. baseness |
| 21. leap up, exult | 47. sinew, string | 71. usefulness |
| 22. deceptive, false | 48. name | 72. variety |
| 23. jaws, defile | 49. hate, hatred | 73. reverse |
| 24. luck | 50. adornment, equip-
ment | 74. lash, stripes |
| 25. rage, madness | | 75. look at, visit |
| 26. weight, seriousness | | |

WORD-FORMATION

The following pages (523-532) cover the elements of word-formation, as adapted to the first three years of a Latin course, such as that prescribed by the New York State Syllabus in Ancient Languages, 1928. For the work designed particularly for the third year see pages 531 f.

I. PREFIXES

A. 267; D. 294; B. 159; G. 200, 2

A. SEPARABLE PREFIXES

1. Prepositions are used to form compounds (chiefly verbs and adjectives), in which they may retain their original meaning as adverbs. Where the literal sense is no longer felt the effect of the prepositional prefix may be to intensify the meaning of the word with which it is combined. The more important prepositions used as prefixes are:

ā, ab, abs, *away, off, from*

ad, *to, towards*

ante, *before*

circum, *around, about*

cum, *together; violently, completely,
utterly (con-, com-, co-, col-,
cor-)*

dē, *down, off, un-; utterly*

ab-dūcō, *lead or draw away*

ab-sum, *be absent*

ā-mēns, *senseless*

ad-dūcō, *lead to*

ad-eō, *go towards, approach*

ante-pōnō, *place before, prefer*

ante-lūcānus, *before light*

circum-dō, *put around*

circum-spiciō, *look about*

co-haereō, *cling together*

com-es, *companion*

con-dūcō, *assemble*

cōn-fringō, *crush, shatter*

dē-dūcō, *lead away*

dē-fetigō, *tire out*

dē-spērō, *have no hope, despair*

ex , <i>ē</i> , <i>out, forth</i>	<i>ē-dūcō</i> , <i>lead out</i>
in , <i>in, on, unto, against</i> (im- , il- , ir-)	<i>ex-stō</i> , <i>stand forth</i>
inter , <i>between, sometimes implying destruction</i>	<i>im-pōnō</i> , <i>place upon</i>
ob , obs , <i>toward, to meet, in the face of</i> (o- , oc- , of- , op- , os-)	<i>in-dūcō</i> , <i>lead in</i>
	<i>inter-cēdō</i> , <i>intervene</i>
	<i>inter-eō</i> , <i>perish</i>
	<i>ob-eō</i> , <i>go to meet</i>
	<i>oc-cidō</i> , <i>slay</i>
	<i>of-fendō</i> , <i>strike against</i>
	<i>o-mittō</i> , <i>let pass, omit</i>
per , <i>through; thoroughly, utterly, very</i> (pel-)	<i>per-dūcō</i> , <i>lead through</i>
	<i>per-eō</i> , <i>perish</i>
prae , <i>before; very</i>	<i>per-parvulus</i> , <i>very small</i>
	<i>prae-sum</i> , <i>be at the head of</i>
	<i>prae-dicō</i> , <i>foretell</i>
	<i>prae-clārus</i> , <i>illustrious</i>
prō , <i>before, forth, forward</i> (prōd- , pro-)	<i>prō-dūcō</i> , <i>lead forth</i>
	<i>pro-fiteor</i> , <i>declare openly</i>
	<i>prōd-eō</i> , <i>go forth</i>
sub , subs , <i>under, up; somewhat, rather</i> (suc- , suf- , sum- , sup- , sus-)	<i>sup-petō</i> , <i>be at hand</i>
trāns , <i>across, over</i> (trā-)	<i>sus-cipiō</i> , <i>take up, undertake</i>
	<i>sub-impudēns</i> , <i>rather shameless</i>
	<i>trāns-ferō</i> , <i>bear across</i>
	<i>trā-dō</i> , <i>give over</i>
	<i>trāns-marīnus</i> , <i>across the sea</i>

B. INSEPARABLE PREFIXES

2. The following prefixes are inseparable :

dis- , dī- , <i>apart, asunder</i>	<i>dis-sentiō</i> , <i>disagree</i>
in- , <i>not, un-, -less</i> (i- , il- , im- , ir-)	<i>dī-vellō</i> , <i>tear apart</i>
	<i>i-gnōtus</i> , <i>unknown</i>
	<i>im-berbis</i> , <i>beardless</i>
re- , red- , <i>back, again</i>	<i>in-nocēns</i> , <i>not guilty, blameless</i>
	<i>re-ferō</i> , <i>bring back</i>
sē- , sēd- , <i>away, apart</i>	<i>red-dō</i> , <i>give or put back, deliver</i>
	<i>sē-cēdō</i> , <i>go away</i>
	<i>sē-cūrus</i> , <i>free from care</i>
	<i>sēd-itiō</i> , <i>a going apart, insurrection</i>

II. SUFFIXES

A. NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

A. 236-254; D. 282-287; B. 147-152; G. 181-189

3. Nouns denoting an action or its result (a state) are formed from verbs by adding the neuter suffixes **-ium**,¹ **-men**, **-mentum**. The last two often denote the means of an action.

aedi- fic-ium , <i>building</i> }	faciō
bene- fic-ium , <i>kind deed</i> }	
cōnsil- ium , <i>counsel</i>	cōnsulō
gaud- ium , <i>joy</i>	gaudeō
imper- ium , <i>command, authority</i>	imperō
ingen- ium , <i>nature, talent</i>	in, root of gignō
od- ium , <i>hatred</i>	ōdī
offic- ium , <i>duty</i>	ob, faciō
praem- ium , <i>reward</i>	prae, emō
stud- ium , <i>zeal, interest</i>	studeō
certā- men , <i>contest</i>	certō
crī- men , <i>charge, crime</i>	cernō
flū- men , <i>river</i>	fluō
nō- men , <i>name</i>	nōscō
sē- men , <i>seed</i>	serō
argū- mentum , <i>proof, argument</i>	arguō
dētri- mentum , <i>loss</i>	dē-terō
fundā- mentum , <i>foundation</i>	fundō
instrū- mentum , <i>implement, equipment</i>	in-struō
monu- mentum , <i>reminder, record</i>	moneō
testā- mentum , <i>last will</i>	testor

4. Nouns are formed from other nouns or from adjectives by means of the neuter suffix **-ium** (cp. § 3).

arbitr- ium , <i>judgment</i>	arbiter
conlêg- ium , <i>board, official body</i>	con-lêga
hospit- ium , <i>guest-friendship</i>	hospes
mendâc- ium , <i>lie</i>	mendâx
supplic- ium , <i>punishment</i>	supplex

¹ Used also in forming nouns from nouns or adjectives, § 4.

5. Nouns of official position are formed from nouns by means of the masculine suffix **-ātus** (*gen. -ūs*).

centuri-ātus , <i>centurionship</i>	centuriō
cōsul-ātus , <i>consulship</i>	cōnsul
magistr-ātus , <i>magistracy, magistrate</i>	magister

6. Nouns, usually abstract, denoting condition or quality, are formed from adjectives or nouns by means of the feminine suffix **-ia**.

audāc-ia , <i>boldness</i>	audāx
grāt-ia , <i>favor, good will</i>	grātus
inert-ia , <i>idleness</i>	iners
memor-ia , <i>memory</i>	memor
milit-ia , <i>military service</i>	mīles
verēcund-ia , <i>modesty</i>	verēcundus
victōr-ia , <i>victory</i>	victor

7. Nouns of agency are formed, usually from verbs, by adding the masculine suffixes **-tor** (feminine **-trix**), **-sor**.

auc-tor , <i>founder, authority, author</i>	augeō
dictā-tor , <i>dictator</i>	dictō
imitā-tor , <i>imitator</i>	imitor
mercā-tor , <i>merchant, trader</i>	mercor
pās-tor , <i>shepherd</i>	pāscō
prae-tor , <i>commander, praetor</i>	prae-eō
vic-tor , <i>conqueror, victor</i>	vincō
gladiā-tor , <i>gladiator</i>	gladius
cēn-sor , <i>censor</i>	cēnseō
dēfēn-sor , <i>defender</i>	dēfendō

8. Nouns of action or expressing the result of an action are made from verbs or roots by means of the suffixes **-iō**, **-tiō** (both *f.*), **-or** (*m.*), **-tus** or **-sus** (*m., gen. -ūs*), **-tūra** (*f.*).

condic-iō , <i>terms</i>	root of dicō
leg-iō , <i>legion</i>	legō
oblīv-iō , <i>forgetfulness</i>	oblīvīscor
opīn-iō , <i>view, opinion</i>	opīnor
reg-iō , <i>direction, region</i>	regō
relig-iō , <i>scruple, religion</i>	legō

accūsā-tiō, *charge*
 cōgitā-tiō, *thought, thinking*
 dīrep-tiō, *plundering*
 lapidā-tiō, *stoning*
 ōrā-tiō, *speech*
 ra-tiō, *reason, account*
 sēdi-tiō, *insurrection*
 am-or, *love*
 clām-or, *outcry, shout*
 err-or, *wandering, error*
 tim-or, *fear*
 adven-tus, *arrival*
 cruciā-tus, *torture*
 duc-tus, *lead, conduct*
 exerci-tus, *army*
 redi-tus, *return*
 cā-sus, *fall, chance*
 concur-sus, *throng, assembly*
 cul-tūra, *cultivation*
 nā-tūra, *nature*
 pīc-tūra, *painting*

accūsō
 cōgitō
 dī-ripiō
 lapidō
 ōrō
 reor
 sēd-, eō
 amō
 clāmō
 errō
 timeō
 ad-veniō
 cruciō
 dūcō
 ex-erceō
 red-eō
 cadō
 con-currō
 colō
 nāscor
 pingō

9. Nouns of condition or characteristic (in part abstract) are made from nouns by the use of the feminine suffixes **-tās, -tia**.

cīvi-tās, *state, citizenship*
 tempes-tās, *season, storm*
 venus-tās, *loveliness, charm*
 pueri-tia, *boyhood*

cīvis
 tempus
 venus
 puer

10. Abstract nouns are formed from adjectives or participles by the same suffixes **-tās, -tia**, and by **-tūdō** (also *f.*)

acerbi-tās, *bitterness*
 celeri-tās, *quickness*
 urbāni-tās, *refinement*
 adulēscen-tia, *youth*
 iūsti-tia, *justice*
 stulti-tia, *folly*
 alti-tūdō, *height, depth*
 multi-tūdō, *crowd, multitude*

acerbus
 celer
 urbānus
 adulēscēns
 iūstus
 stultus
 altus
 multus

11. Nouns of means or instrument are formed from verbs or roots by means of the neuter suffix **-culum** (**-ulum** if **c** or **g** precedes):

pō-culum, *cup*
vinc-ulum, *bond, chain*

pō- (**pōtō**)
vinciō

12. Adjectives formed, usually from nouns, by means of the following suffixes denote that the person or thing belongs to, pertains to, or is connected with, what is indicated by the noun: **-ālis**, **-ānus**, **-āris**, **-ārius**, **-ēnsis**, **-ester** (**-estris**), **-icus**,¹ **-ius**, **-ilis**, **-timus**.

capit-ālis, *of the head, capital*
fāt-ālis, *fated, fatal*
nāv-ālis, *of ships, naval*
hūm-ānus, *of man*
Rōm-ānus, *Roman*
urb-ānus, *of the city*
cōnsul-āris, *consular*
milit-āris, *of soldiers, military*
aer-ārius, *of copper or money*
agr-ārius, *of the land*
castr-ēnsis, *of the camp*
Massili-ēnsis, *of Massilia*
camp-ester, *of a meadow*
silv-estris, *of a wood, wooded*
eques-ter,² *of a horseman*
pedes-ter,² *of a foot-soldier*
bell-icus, *of war*
gladiātōr-ius, *of a gladiator*
praetōr-ius, *of a praetor*
Mārt-ius, *of Mars, of March*
civ-ilis, *of a citizen, civil*
puer-ilis, *of a boy, boyish*
mari-timus, *of the sea*
fini-timus, *bordering*
lēgi-timus, *legal*

caput
fātum
nāvis
homō
Rōma
urbs
cōnsul
mīles
aes
ager
castra
Massilia
campus
silva
eques
pedes (or **pēs**)
bellum
gladiātor
praetor
Mārs
civis
puer
mare
finis
lēx

¹ The **i** sometimes belongs to the stem, as in **cīvi-cus**, *of a citizen* (**cīvis**). With a double suffix we have **-ti-cus**, as **domes-ticus**, *of a house* (**domus**), **rūs-ticus**, *of the country* (**rūs**).

² Note that in these words **es** belongs to the stem, and the suffix is really **-ter**.

13. Adjectives, usually of passive meaning, denoting ability or capacity, are formed from verbs by the use of the suffixes **-ilis**, **-bilis**.

fac-ilis, *easy*
fert-ilis, *fruitful, fertile*
mīrā-bilis, *wonderful*
tolerā-bilis, *endurable*

faciō
ferō
mīror
tolerō

14. Adjectives denoting fullness are made from nouns by means of the suffixes **-lentus**, **-ōsus**.

pulveru-lentus, *dusty*
opu-lentus, *wealthy*
exitī-ōsus, *ruinous*
lūctu-ōsus, *grievous*
ōti-ōsus, *at leisure, quiet*

pulvis
opēs
exitium
lūctus
ōtium

15. Adjectives of active meaning are formed from verbs by using the suffix **-āx**, denoting a tendency or habit, usually carried to a fault, also by the suffix **-dus**, denoting quality.

aud-āx, *daring*
pugn-āx, *fighting*
ten-āx, *keeping*
cupi-dus, *eager*
splendi-dus, *shining, distinguished*
timi-dus, *fearful, timid*

audeō
pugnō
teneō
cupiō
splendeō
timeō

B. VERBS

A. 258-263; D. 289 f.; B. 155 f.; G. 190-192

16. Inceptive, or inchoative, verbs of the third conjugation are usually formed from other verbs, or directly from roots, by adding **sc** in the present system, **-scō** in the first person singular present indicative active. This distinctive suffix disappears in the perfect system. Such verbs as a rule represent an action as just beginning, or as in progress.

conticē-scō, *become silent*
flōrē-scō, *bloom*
nā-scor, *be born*

perf. **conticuī**
flōruī
nātus sum

con-, **taceō**
flōreō (**flōs**)
 root gen or gnā

nō-scō, <i>learn</i>	nōvī	root gnō
pertimē-scō, <i>become alarmed</i>	pertimūī	per, timeō
profici-scōr, <i>set out</i>	profectus sum	pro- (= prō), faciō
revivī-scō, <i>come to life</i>	revixī	re-, vivō

A few verbs of the same formation lack the inceptive meaning, as

po-scō, <i>demand</i>	poposcī, irr.	root of (prex)
quiē-scō, <i>be still</i>	quiēvī	quiēs

17. Frequentative or intensive verbs of the first conjugation in -tō or -sō or -itō are formed from the perfect participles of other verbs, except that the ā of -ātus is weakened to i before the suffix.

can-tō, <i>sing</i>	canō
sal-tō, <i>dance</i>	saliō
susten-tō, <i>support</i>	sustineō
trāc-tō, <i>handle, treat</i>	trahō
prōpul-sō, <i>drive away</i>	prōpellō
quas-sō, <i>shake, shatter</i>	quatiō
vī-sō, <i>go to see, visit</i>	videō
hab-itō, <i> dwell</i>	habeō
min-itor, <i>threaten</i>	minor
pēns-itō, <i>weigh out, pay</i>	pendō
vol-itō, <i>flit</i>	volo, -āre

18. Denominative verbs are formed from nouns or adjectives, and most such verbs are transitives of the first conjugation. Next in frequency are those of the fourth conjugation.

cēnō, -āre, <i>dine</i>	cēna
dōnō, -āre, <i>present, give</i>	dōnum
fīrmō, -āre, <i>strengthen</i>	fīrmus, -a, -um
hiemō, -āre, <i>winter</i>	hiems
labōrō, -āre, <i>toil</i>	labor
mīror, -ārī, <i>wonder</i>	mīrus, -a, -um
rēgnō, -āre, <i>rule, reign</i>	rēgnum
spērō, -āre, <i>hope</i>	spēs
audeō, -ēre (intrans.), <i>be eager, dare</i>	avidus, -a, -um
flōreō, -ēre (intrans.), <i>bloom</i>	flōs
metuō, -ere, <i>fear</i>	metus
minuō, -ere, <i>diminish</i>	minor, -us

statuō, -ere, *set up, settle*
 cūstōdiō, -īre, *guard*
 insāniō, -īre, *be wild, rave*
 largior, -īrī, *lavish, bestow*
 pūniō, -īre, *punish*
 serviō, -īre, *be a slave, serve*
 vestiō, -īre, *clothe*

status
 cūstōs
 insānus, -a, -um
 largus, -a, -um
 poena
 servus
 vestis

THIRD YEAR

The work of the third year may be planned as follows¹:

a. **Prefixes**, reviewed (cp. §§ 1-2 above).

b. **Suffixes** forming

- (1) Nouns: -culum (§ 11), -ātus (§ 5), -ium from nouns (§ 4).
- (2) Adjectives: -ester (§ 12), -lentus (§ 14), -ēnsis (§ 12),
 -timus (§ 12), -ōsus (§ 14).
- (3) Verbs: (a) Inceptive (§ 16), (b) Frequentative (§ 17),
 (c) Denominative (§ 18).

c. **Compounds** made up of two or more words (or roots) without the help of a prefix. "Words of this sort, such as the following, deserve attention: signifer, remex, artifex, iudex, coniunx, particeps, parricida, patefacio, postea, magnanimus, magnopere."

d. "Study carefully the derivations of the following words, noting any equivalent English derivatives:

victor	casus	legitimus	Latinus
visus	tenax	petitor	castrensis
actio	annosus	genus	viresco
vinculum	virilis	certamen	iracundus
fabula	praetor	conformatio	legio
civitas	fragilis	ratio	studium
senatus	toga	eximius	custodia
iactura	caedes	sepultura	vehiculum
periculum	regimen	sepulcrum	virtus
mensura	senectus	caedes	libero
documentum	extraneus	aratrum	consulatus
timidus	Cyzicenus	marinus	ventito

¹ Quotations are from the New York State Syllabus, 1928.

factito	vendito	Romanus	ridiculus
Hispaniensis	facilis	vinosus	studiosus
beneficium	rostrum	facundus	bonitas
domesticus	particeps	verso	antiquitas
Sullanus	calesco	duresco	magnitudo
equester	aditus	dolor	oblivio
iucundus	oratio	vocabulum	dignitas
legatus	ornamentum	collegium	alienus
pugnax	vesperasco	celeritas	iudico
credibilis	scriptura	docilis	libertas
rogito	scientia	civilis	excursio
vocatio	calor	claustrum	conquiesco
nomen	delubrum	auditor	temperantia
hostilis	miseria	edax	fides
auditorium	servitium	amens	versor
concupisco	gaudium	occasio	iniuria
venatrix	aerarium	patrius	egregius
violentus	humilis	regius	nomino "

e. "With the aid of an unabridged English dictionary study carefully the form and meaning of words like the following and compare with the Latin originals: merchant, piano, plea, hotel, automobile, motorcycle, insult, aspirant, bankrupt, excise, expend, molasses, volcano, cupidity, stupendous, abominable, disaster, ineffable, consider, desire, estate, currency, reputation, saint, soldier, hour, altar, apex, feat, exact, influenza, miscreant, perspire, coroner, mob, minute, czar, paper, sir, desultory."

VOCABULARY

In this vocabulary English words derived from the Latin word in question (or from a closely related word) are marked with a dagger. If indirectly derived, by borrowing from the French, Italian, or Spanish, that fact is indicated by F, It, or Sp. Derivatives or related words to be noted, but not available or not recommended as translations for this book, are placed at the end of the paragraph in parentheses.

The hyphen in a catchword indicates composition, even where a consonant has been changed by assimilation, as **ac-cipiō** (**ad** and **capiō**), **cor-rumpō** (**con** and **rumpō**).

In the principal parts, except of deponent verbs, the perfect participle is given in the neuter form. Where such participle is lacking, the future active is given, if in use. In the etymologies an asterisk means that the word so marked does not actually occur.

Under the names of persons of importance historically or otherwise, at least one reference to the text is given. Information about the person will usually be found in the corresponding note.

a. = *ante*, in dates

A. = *Aulus*, a *prænomen*

ā, **ab** (**abs**), *prep.* with *abl.* from, of place, time, source, cause; of the agent, by; of directions, on, on the side of; since, after; **ab** is required before a vowel or **h**

ab-aliēnō, 1, **-āvi**, **-ātum** [*aliēnus*], estrange, alienate†

ab-dicō, 1, **-āvi**, **-ātum** [*dicō*, set apart], disown, reject; with *sē* and *abl.*, abdicate†, resign

abditus, -a, -um [*ab-dō*], hidden, concealed

ab-dō, 3, **-didī**, **-ditum** [*-dō*, put], put away, hide; with *sē*, bury oneself

ab-dūcō, 3, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, draw away, withdraw. (abduct†)

ab-eō, **-īre**, **-ii**, **-itūrus**, go away, go off, depart

ab-horreō, 2, **-uī** [*horreō*, shudder (at), fear], shrink from, be averse to or at variance with or not in keeping with or not connected with. (abhor†)

ab-iciō, 3, **-iēcī**, **-iectum** [*iaciō*, throw], throw away or down, cast aside, give up; with *sē*, prostrate oneself

abiectus, -a, -um [*ab-iciō*], cast down, dejected, despondent, low, contemptible. (abject†)

ab-ripiō, 3, **-ripuī**, **-reptum** [*rapio*], snatch, carry off

abs, see *ā*

absconditus, -a, -um [*abs-condō*, hide], hidden, concealed, secret. (abscond†)

absēns, -entis [*ab-sum*], *adj.* absent F. (absence F)

- absolūtiō, -ōnis** [*ab-solvō*, acquit], *f.* acquittal, absolution F
- abs-trahō, 3, -trāxī, -trāctum**, draw off *or* away, take away. (abstract†)
- ab-sum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus**, be away *or* absent *or* distant *or* lacking, be far from the case
- abundāns, -antis** [*ab-undō*], *adj.* overflowing, abundant F, abounding F, rich, full
- abundantia, -ae** [*abundāns*], *f.* abundance F, plenty
- ab-undō, 1, -āvī** [*undō*, surge], overflow, abound (F) in, have in excess
- ab-ūtor, -ūtī, -ūsus sum**, use up, abuse F, take advantage of, misuse
- ac, see atque**
- Acastus, -ī, m.** a slave of Cicero, 181 4
- ac-cēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum**, go up to, approach, be added, accede†. (accession F)
- ac-celerō, 1, -āvī, -ātum** [*celer*, quick], hasten, make haste. (accelerate†, acceleration†)
- ac-cidō, 3, -cidi** [*cadō*], fall to, reach, happen. (accident F)
- ac-cipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum** [*capio*], take to oneself, receive, get, accept F, welcome, hear, perceive, understand, incur, suffer
- Accius, -ī, m.** L. Accius, a Roman tragic poet, 111 25
- accola, -ae** [*ad, colō*, dwell], *m.* neighbor
- accommodātus, -a, -um** [*ac-com-modō*], adjusted, adapted, fit, suitable
- ac-commodō, 1, -āvī, -ātum**, adjust, adapt, fit. (accommodate†)
- ac-cubō, 1, defective** [*cubō*, lie, recline], recline, *esp. at table*
- accūrātē** [*ac-cūrātus*, careful], *adv.* carefully, with care *or* pains
- ac-currō, 3, -curri, -cursum**, run to, hasten to
- accūsātōriē** [*-ōrius* (*accūsātor, accūsō*)], *adv.* as an accuser
- accūsō, 1, -āvī, -ātum** [*causa*], bring a charge against. accuse F, blame, censure
- ācer, ācris, ācre** [*cp. acerbus*], sharp, piercing, eager, fierce, bitter, severe, wild, vehement, active, shrewd. (acrid†, acrimonious†)
- acerbē** [*acerbus*], *adv.* bitterly, fiercely, unmercifully
- acerbitās, -ātis** [*acerbus*], *f.* bitterness, harshness, severity. pain, sorrow, acerbity F
- acerbus, -a, -um** [*cp. ācer*], bitter, sour, violent, severe, grievous. painful
- acervus, -ī, m.** pile, heap
- Achāia, -ae, f.** a part of Greece, the Peloponnesus; *then*, the whole Roman province of Achaia
- Achāicus, -a, -um** [*Achāia*], of *or* belonging to Achaia
- Achillēs, -is, m.** a Greek hero before Troy, 110 5
- Achradīna, -ae, f.** a large quarter of the city of Syracuse, facing the sea
- aciēs, -ēi, f.** sharpness, keenness, point, edge, line of battle, battle
- ācritē** [*ācer*], *adv.* sharply, vehemently, earnestly, eagerly, passionately

acroāma, -atis [*Greek*, something heard, a person to whom one listens], *n.* performer, singer, reader

āctiō, -ōnis [*agō*], *f.* driving, doing, action F, legal process

āctus, -ūs [*agō*], *m.* driving, doing, act F, part of a play, achievement

acuō, 3, -uī, -ūtum, sharpen, whet, stimulate. (acute†, acumen†)

a. d. = ante diem

ad, prep. with *acc.* to, up to, toward, near, at, at the house of, about, till, for, according to, in regard to, for the purpose of

ad-aequō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*aequō*, make equal], make equal to, level with. (adequate†)

ad-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum [*-dō*, put], put to or with, add†

ad-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, lead to, bring to, induce, prevail upon. (adduce†)

1. **ad-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum**, go to, approach, enter upon, undergo, apply to, consult

2. **ad-eō** [*eō, adv.*], *adv.* so far, to such a degree, so, even, in fact

adeps, -ipis, c., only plur. in Cic., fat, corpulence. (adipose†)

adfectus, -a, -um [*ad-ficiō*], furnished or endowed with, weakened, impaired, affected F

ad-ferō, -ferre, at-tulī, al-lātum, bring to, add, contribute, give, cause, apply, use, report

ad-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [*faciō*], do to, affect F, fill with (*joy, etc.*), honor with, visit with, afflict, weaken

ad-fingō, 3, -finxī, -fictum, form in addition, add (*without reason*), invent

ad-finis, -e, adjoining, connected with, related to, implicated in. *Subst. m.* relation by marriage. (affinity F)

ad-firmō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, affirm F, assert, claim

adflictō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*freq. of ad-fligō*], shatter, damage, distress, afflict

ad-fligō, 3, -flixī, -flictum [*fligō*, strike], strike at, dash down, smite, afflict F, dishearten

adfluēns, -entis [*ad-fluō*, flow to], *adj.* abundant, rich, rich in, affluent F. (affluence F)

ad-gredior, 3, -gressus sum [*gradior*, step], step up to, approach, attack, undertake, try. (aggression F)

ad-gregō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*grex*, herd], bring to the flock (*or* in a flock), join, connect, collect. (aggregate†)

ad-hibeō, 2, -uī, -itum [*habeō*], hold to (toward), apply, employ, furnish, use

ad-hūc, adv. up to this (time), yet, thus far, still

ad-iciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectum [*iaciō*], throw at (to, upon), cast, add. (adjective F)

ad-imō, 3, -ēmī, -ēptum [*emō*], take to (oneself), take away

ad-ipiscor, 3, -eptus sum [*apīscor*, reach after], obtain, acquire, secure. (adept†)

aditus, -ūs [1. *ad-eō*], *m.* approach, access, entrance

- adiūmentum, -ī** [*ad-iuvō*], *n.* help, aid, assistance
- ad-iungō, 3, -iūnxī, -iūnctum**, join to *or* on, attach, add, gain, bestow upon. (adjunct†, adjoin F)
- adiutor, -ōris** [*ad-iuvō*], *m.* helper, assistant, supporter. (coadjutor F)
- ad-iuvō, 1, -iūvī, -iūtum**, help, aid, assist, support. (adjutant†)
- ad-liciō, 3, -lexī, -lectum** [*laciō*, entice], allure, entice, attract, persuade
- ad-minister, -tri, m., ad-ministra, -ae, f.** [*minister*, servant], helper, assistant, tool, instrument, servant
- ad-ministrō, 1, -āvī, -ātum** [*ministrō*, attend], manage, conduct, carry on, carry out, control, administer F. (administration†, *etc.*)
- admīrābīlīter** [*admīrābīlis*], *adv.* wonderfully, marvelously, admirably F
- admīrātiō, -ōnis** [*ad-mīror*], *f.* wonder, surprise, admiration F
- ad-mīror, 1, -ātus sum**, wonder at, admire F
- ad-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum**, admit F, receive, permit, commit
- ad-moneō, 2, -uī, -itum**, remind, warn, admonish F
- admonitus, -ūs** [*ad-moneō*], *m., only abl. sing.*, by advice, at the suggestion
- admurmurātiō, -ōnis** [*ad-murmurō*, murmur at], *f.* murmur F, murmuring F
- ad-nuō, 3, -nuī** [*nuō*, nod], nod to, assent
- ad-ōrnō, 1, -āvī, -ātum**, fit out, furnish, make ready, adorn F
- ad-quirō, 3, -quisivī, -quisitum** [*quaerō*], get in addition, gain, acquire F
- ad-ripiō, 3, -ripuī, -reptum** [*rapio*], snatch, seize, lay hold of, take away
- ad-sentior, 4, -sēnsus sum and -sēnsī** [*sentio*], agree with, assent (F) to
- ad-sequor, 3, -secūtus sum**, follow up, overtake, attain, accomplish, obtain
- ad-servō, 1, -āvī, -ātum**, watch over, preserve, guard, keep
- ad-sidō, 3, -sēdī** [*sīdō*, sit down], take a seat, be seated
- adsiduē** [*adsiduus*, attending], *adv.* continually, uninterruptedly. (assiduous†)
- adsiduitās, -ātis** [*adsiduus*], *f.* constant attendance, constancy, unremitting service, assiduity†
- ad-suē-faciō, 3, -fēcī, -factum** [*ad-suētus*, accustomed], accustom, habituate, inure
- ad-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus**, be near *or* present, appear, assist, be at hand, impend
- adulēscēns, -entis** [*ad-olēscō*, grow up], *adj.* young, youthful. *Subst. c.* youth, young man (woman). (adolescent F)
- adulēscēntia, -ae** [*adulēscēns*], *f.* youth. (adolescence F)
- adulēscēntulus, -ī** [*dim. of adulēscēns*], *m.* very young man, mere youth, lad
- adulter, -erī, m.** adulterer F
- adultus, -a, -um** [*ad-olēscō*], full-grown, grown up, mature, adult†

advena, -ae [*ad-veniō*, arrive], *c.* stranger, foreigner, immigrant

adventicius, -a, -um [*ad-veniō*], foreign, imported. (adventitious†)

adventus, -ūs [*ad-veniō*], *m.* coming, approach, arrival. (advent F)

adversārius, -a, -um [*cp.* *l.* *adversus*], opposite, opposed. *Subst. m.* opponent, adversary F, antagonist

1. **adversus**, -a, -um [*ad-vertō*, turn to], turned toward *or* against, opposite, hostile, adverse F; **rēs adversae**, misfortune, adversity F

2. **adversus** [*ad-vertō*], *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.* against

ad-vesperāscit, 3, (-rāvit) [*vesper*, evening], it is growing dark, the evening is coming on

aedēs (aedis), -is, *f.* building, temple; *in plur.* house, dwelling

aedificatiō, -ōnis [*aedificō*], *f.* building (*the process*), a building, buildings. (edification†)

aedificium, -ī [*aedificō*], *n.* a building, edifice F

aedificō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*aedēs*, *faciō*], build, construct, erect, edify F

aedilis, -is [*aedēs*], *m.* commissioner of public works, *aedile*† (Introduct. § 27)

aedilitās, -ātis [*aedilis*], *f.* the office of an *aedile*, *aedileship*

Aegaeus, -a, -um, Aegean

aeger, -gra, -grum, sick, ill, feeble, troubled

aegrē [*aeger*], *adv.* with difficulty, ill, with impatience, reluctantly, barely

Aegyptus, -ī, *f.* Egypt

Aemilius, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *v.* Lepidus, Paulus, Scaurus

aemulus, -a, -um, rivaling, emulating†. *Subst. m.* a rival. (emulation†)

aēneus, -a, -um [*aes*, bronze], of bronze, brazen

aequātus, -a, -um [*aequō*, make equal], leveled, level, equalized. (equate†, -ation†)

aequē [*aequus*], *adv.* equally, as much, in like manner

aequitās, -ātis [*aequus*], *f.* uniformity, evenness, calmness, resignation, justice, equity F

aequus, -a, -um, level, even, equal, calm, just, fair, proper, friendly; **aequō animō**, with calmness *or* resignation

aerārium, -ī [*aerārius*], *n.* the treasury (Introduct. § 28)

aerārius, -a, -um [*aes*], pertaining to copper *or* money *or* the treasury

aerumna, -ae, *f.* toil, distress, trouble
aes, **aeris**, *n.* bronze, copper, money; *in plur.* bronze tablets; **aes aliēnum**, debt (*lit.* money belonging to another)

Aesculāpius, -ī, *m.* the legendary founder of medicine (son of Apollo)

Aesernia, -ae, *f.* a town in Samnium

aestās, -ātis [*cp.* *aestus*], *f.* summer

aestivus, -a, -um [*aestās*], of *or* belonging to summer

aestuōsus, -a, -um [*aestus*], hot

aestus, -ūs [*cp.* *aestās*], *m.* heat, tide

aetās, -ātis [= *aevitās* (*aevum*, age)], *f.* age, time of life, time

- aeternitās, -ātis** [*aeternus*], *f.* eternity F, immortality
- aeternus, -a, -um** [= *aeviternus* (*aevum*, age)], lasting, enduring, perpetual, eternal F
- Aetna, -ae, f.** the celebrated volcano in Sicily
- Aetōlus, -a, -um**, Ætolian, of Ætolia, *a district of western Greece*.
Subst. m. plur. the Ætolians
- Afrānius, -ī, m.** a gentile name;
L. Afranius, 187 7
- Āfrica, -ae, f.** Africa
- Āfricānus, -a, -um** [*Āfrica*], African.
Subst. m. an honorary cognomen of two Scipios
- Agathoclēs, -ī, m.** a king of Syracuse, 150 15
- ager, agrī, m.** field, land, farm, country, territory. (agriculture F)
- agger, -eris** [*ad, gerō*], *m.* pile, mass, mound of earth (*esp. in siege operations*)
- agitō, 1, -āvi, -ātum** [*freq. of agō*], drive and other meanings of *agō*, stir, shake, disturb, rouse, excite, discuss. (agitate†, agitation F)
- agmen, -inis** [*agō*], *n.* host, army on the march, column
- a-gnōscō, 3, -gnōvī, -gnitum** [*ad-*], discern, recognize, acknowledge
- agō, 3, ēgī, āctum**, drive, carry on, do, act†, talk about, plead (*a case*), render (*thanks*), spend (*time*), lead (*life*), celebrate (*a triumph*); *pass.* be at stake; age, come now, well!
- agrārius, -a, -um** [*ager*], pertaining to land, agrarian†. *Subst. m. plur.* the agrarian party (*in favor of land laws*)
- agrestis, -e** [*ager*], belonging to the country, rustic, rude, uncouth, boorish
- Agrigentīnī, -ōrum** [*Agrigentum*], *m. plur.* the inhabitants of Agrigentum
- Agrigentum, -ī, n.** a Greek city on the southwest coast of Sicily
- Ahāla, -ae, m.** a cognomen; *C. Servilius Ahala, 4 4*
- Āiāx, -ācis, m.** Ajax, *a Greek hero*
- aiō, defective**, say "yes," say, assert.
- ālea, -ae, f.** a game with dice, gambling, hazard
- āleātor, -ōris** [*ālea*], *m.* player with dice, gambler
- Alexander, -drī, m.** Alexander the Great, 110 4, 156 31, 177 14
- Alexandrēa, -ae** [*Alexander*], *f.* Alexandria, *a great city in Egypt*
- aliēnigena, -ae** [*aliēnus, gignō*], *m.* one born in a foreign land, foreigner, alien
- aliēnō, 1, -āvi, -ātum** [*aliēnus*], make over to another, alienate†, estrange
- aliēnus, -a, -um** [*alius*], belonging to another, strange, foreign, alien F, unfriendly, out of keeping; *aes aliēnum*, debt. *Subst. m.* stranger, foreigner, alien
- aliō** [*alius*], *adv.* to some other place, elsewhere
- aliquandō** [*alius, quandō*], *adv.* at some time, at any time, sometimes, at last
- aliquantō** [*aliquantus*, some], *adv.* somewhat, considerably
- aliquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod)** [*olius, quis (quī)*], *indef. pron.*

- subst. and adj.* some, any, considerable, someone, something, anyone, anything
- aliquō** [*aliquis*], *adv.* to some place, somewhere
- aliquot** [*alius, quot*], *indecl. adj.* (*indef. num.*), some, a few. (aliquot F)
- aliter** [*alius*], *adv.* otherwise, differently; *with* **atque**, otherwise than
- alius**, -a, -ud, other, another, different, else. *Correl.* one . . . another, *or in plur.* some . . . others
- Allobrogēs**, -um, *m. plur.* a people in the southeast of Gaul
- alō**, 3, -uī, -tum and -itum, feed, nourish, support, cherish, increase, promote. (aliment†, -ary†)
- Alpēs**, -ium, *f. plur.* the Alps
- altāria**, -ium [*altus*], *n. plur.* altart
- alter**, -era, -erum [*alius*], the other (*of two*), one (*of two*), second. *Correl.* the one . . . the other, *or plur.* the one party . . . the other party. (alter F)
- alternus**, -a, -um [*alter*], by turns, alternate†
- alteruter**, -tra, -trum [*alter, uter*], one or the other, one of the two
- altitūdō**, -inis [*altus*], *f.* height, altitude†, depth
- altus**, -a, -um [*alō*], high, deep. *Subst. n.* the deep, the sea
- alveolus**, -ī [*alveus*, a hollow], *m.* tray, dicing-board, gaming-board
- Amāniēnsēs**, -ium [*Amānus*], *m. plur.* the inhabitants of Mt. Amanus
- amāns**, -antis [*amō*], *adj.* loving, fond; **amāns rei publicae**, patriotic
- Amānus**, -ī, *m.* a mountain range between Cilicia and Syria
- ambō**, -ae, -ō, *num.* both
- ambulātiuncula**, -ae [*ambulātiō*, a walk], *f.* a short walk, (*cp.* ambulance F, ambulatory†)
- ā-mēns**, -entis, *adj.* senseless, frantic, foolish
- ā-mentia**, -ae [*ā-mēns*], *f.* senselessness, madness, folly
- am-iciō**, 4, —, -ictum [*am-* (= *ambi-*), *iacio*, throw], throw around, wrap about, clothe
- amīctia**, -ae [*amicus*], *f.* friendship, amity F
- amicus**, -a, -um [*amō*], friendly. *Subst. m.* friend. (amicable†)
- Amisus**, -ī, *f.* a city on the Euxine (Black Sea), in Pontus
- ā-mittō**, 3, -misī, -misum, send away, let go away, lose
- amō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum, love, like. (amiable F)
- amoenitās**, -ātis [*amoenus*], *f.* pleasantness, delightfulness, attractiveness, charm (*esp. of scenery*). (amenity†)
- amor**, -ōris [*amō*], *m.* love, affection, liking. (amorous F)
- amplē** [*amplus*], *adv.* largely, abundantly, generously, amply F. *Compar.* **amplius**, more, in addition
- am-plector**, 3, -plexus [*am-* (= *ambi-*), *plectō*, twine], twine around, embrace, love, include
- amplexus**, -ūs [*am-plector*], *m.* embrace, encircling, circuit
- amplificō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*amplus*, *faciō*], enlarge, increase, amplify F

- amplitūdō, -inis** [*amplus*], *f.* largeness, breadth, extent, amplitude F, greatness, prominence, honor
- amplus, -a, -um**, large, great, full, ample F, grand, honorable, distinguished, magnificent. *Compar. subst. n. amplius*, more
- an**, *interrog. conj.* or, or rather, *esp. in 2d member of double quest.; also as a mere sign of a question*; *nesciō (haud sciō) an*, I don't know but, I rather think
- Anagninus, -a, -um** [*Anagnia*], *of or belonging to Anagnia, a town in Latium. Subst. n.* a villa, or estate, at Anagnia
- anceps, -cipitis** [*ambi-, caput*], *adj.* having two heads, double, doubtful, uncertain, dangerous
- Ancōna, -ae, f.** a city in Italy (on the Adriatic coast)
- angō, 3, defective**, squeeze, trouble, torment, vex
- anguis, -is, c.** snake
- angulus, -ī, m.** corner, angle F
- angustiae, -ārum** [*angustus*], *f. plur.* narrowness, defile, pass, strait, straits, distress, limitations. (*anguish* F)
- angustus, -a, -um** [*angō*], narrow, confined, limited, petty
- anhēlō, 1, -āvi, -ātum** [*cp. hālō*, breathe], breathe up *or* out, pant, puff
- anima, -ae, f.** breath, life, soul. (*animal†, animate†*)
- animadvertiō, -ōnis** [*animadvertō*], *f.* a noticing, paying attention, censure, punishment. (*animadvertion†*)
- animadvertō, 3, -verti, -versum** [*animus, advertō*], give attention to, notice, observe, punish (*an offense*), inflict punishment on (*a person, acc. with in*). (*animadvert†*)
- animus, -ī, m.** spirit, soul, heart, mind, imagination, purpose, courage, spirits, feelings, arrogance, pride, anger. (*animus†, animosity* F)
- annālis, -e** [*annus*], of a year. *Subst. m. (sc. liber), reg. plur.*, annals†, chronicles
- an-ne = an**
- Annius, -ī, m.** a gentile name; *v. Chīlō, Milō*
- anniversārius, -a, -um** [*annus, versō*], yearly, annual, anniversary†
- annus, -ī, m.** year
- annuus, -a, -um** [*annus*], lasting for a year, annual F
- ante, adv.** before, beforehand, previously, ago. *Prep. with acc.* before, in front of. (*ante-†*)
- anteā** [*ante*], *adv.* before, formerly
- ante-cellō, 3, defective** [*cellō*, raise], be prominent *or* superior, excel, surpass
- ante-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum**, carry *or* place before, prefer, count more important
- antelūcānus, -a, -um** [*lūx*], before daylight, lasting till dawn
- ante-pōnō, 3, -posui, -positum**, put *or* place before, prefer, value more
- ante-quam, ante . . . quam, conj.** before, sooner than

Antiochia, -ae [*Antiochus*], *f.* Antioch, capital of Syria

Antiochus, -ī, *m.* name of kings and princes of Syria; *Antiochus III*, 73 2; *Antiochus X*, 135 18; his sons, *ib.*

antiquitās, -ātis [*antiquus*], *f.* age, antiquity F, history of former times

antiquus, -a, -um [*ante*], ancient, old, antique†. *Subst. plur. m.* the ancients

antistes, -stis [*ante*, *stō*], *c.* high priest(ess)

Antōnius, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *C. Antonius*, Cicero's colleague as consul, 41 19

aper, **apri**, *m.* wild boar

aperiō, 4, -erui, -ertum [*cp. operiō*, cover], uncover, open, make known. (aperient†)

apertē [*apertus*], *adv.* openly, plainly, clearly, frankly

apertus, -a, -um [*aperiō*], open, clear, candid. (aperture†)

Apollō, -inis, *m.* the Greek sun god, brother of Diana

1. **apparātus**, -a, -um [*ap-parō*], prepared, elegantly appointed, splendid, sumptuous

2. **apparātus**, -ūs [*ap-parō*], *m.* preparation, arrangement, splendor, state. (apparatus†)

ap-parō, 1, -āvī, -ātum, prepare for, make ready for

ap-pellō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [**pellō*], speak to, address, name, call, appeal (F) to. (appellative†, appellate†)

Appenninus, -ī, *m.* the Apennines

appetēns, -entis [*ap-petō*], *adj.* seeking after, desirous of

ap-petō, 3, -petivī, -petitum, reach after, strive for, desire, attack. (*cp.* appetite F)

Appius, -ī, *m.* a prænomen; *v.* Claudius. *Adj.* Appius, -a, -um, of Appius, Appian; **Appia** via, the Appian Way (*running south-east to Capua and Brundisium*)

ap-portō, 1, -āvī, -ātum, carry to, bring to

appositus, -a, -um [*ap-pōnō*], bordering upon, fit, suitable. (apposite†, -ition†)

ap-probō, 1, -āvī, -ātum, favor, approve F

ap-propinquō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*propinquō*, draw near], approach

Aprilis, -e [*aperiō*], *adj.* of April†; *abbr.* April.

aprinus, -a, -um [*aper*], of a wild boar
aptē [*aptus*], *adv.* fitly, aptly†, suitably, skillfully

aptus, -a, -um [*apiō*, bind], fitted together, suitable, fit. (apt†)

apud, *prep. with acc.* near, by, before, at the house of, in the presence of, among

Āpŭlia, -ae, *f.* a district in southern Italy

aqua, -ae, *f.* water. (aquatic F, aquarium†, aqueoust†)

aquila, -ae, *f.* eagle (*also as standard of a legion*). (aquiline†)

aquilō, -ōnis, *m.* north wind, north

āra, -ae, *f.* altar

arbitrium, -ī [*arbiter*, judge], *n.* umpiring, judgment, authority, bidding

- arbitror**, 1, -ātus sum [*arbiter* (*ad*, *bītō*, go)], consider, think, judge, believe. (*arbitrate*†, -tion F)
- Arcānum**, -ī [*arcānus*, private], *n.* a villa of Q. Cicero, near Minturnæ
- arceō**, 2, *arcei*, shut up, keep away, ward off
- arcessō**, 3, -ivī, -itum, summon, send for, fetch, invite
- Archias**, -ae, *m. A. Licinius Archias* a Greek poet from Syria, 99 ff.
- Archimēdēs**, -is and -ī, *m.* a mathematician and engineer of Syracuse, 154 14
- ārdeō**, 2, *ārsī*, *ārsūrus*, be on fire, blaze, burn, be burned, be aroused. (*ardent* F, *arson* F) ;
- ārdor**, -ōris [*ārdeō*], *m.* burning, glow, heat, passion. (*ardor* F)
- ārea**, -ae, *f.* ground, site, lot. (*area*†)
- Arethūsa**, -ae, *f.* a fountain at Syracuse; the nymph of the fountain
- argenteus**, -a, -um [*argentum*], of silver, silver
- argentum**, -ī, *n.* silver, silverware, money
- argūmentum**, -ī [*arguō*, prove], *n.* proof, argument F, evidence, sign, subject (*as of a book or work of art*), design
- Arīminum**, -ī, *n.* a town in Italy, on the Adriatic
- Ariobarzānēs**, -is, *m.* a king of Cappadocia, 68 26
- Aristaeus**, -ī, *m.* a Greek god
- arma**, -ōrum, *n. plur.* tools, implements, arms F, armor F, weapons
- armātus**, -a, -um [*armō*], armed, equipped. *Subst. plur. m.* armed men. (*armada Sp*)
- Armenius**, -a, -um, Armenian, of Armenia. *Subst. plur. m.* the Armenians
- armō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*arma*], arm, equip, fit out. (*armament*†, -ature†)
- Arpinās**, -ātis [*Arpinum*], *adj.* of Arpinum, a town in Latium. *Subst. n.* an estate and villa near Arpinum
- Arrētium**, -ī, *n.* a town in Etruria (Arezzo)
- ars**, artis [*cp. arma*], *f.* art F, skill, occupation, practice; *plur.* qualities, studies, liberal arts
- arti-fex**, -fīcis [*ars*, *faciō*], *c.* artist, craftsman
- artificium**, -ī [*arti-fex*], *n.* trade, art, skill, artifice F. (*artificial* F)
- ārula**, -ae [*dim. of āra*], *f.* a small altar
- arx**, arcis [*cp. arceō*], *f.* citadel, stronghold, fortress
- a-scendō**, 3, -scendī, -scēnsūm [*ad*, *scandō*, climb], climb up, ascend†, mount
- a-sciscō**, 3, -scivī, -scitum [*ad*, *sciscō*, accept, decree], take to oneself, receive, associate, admit to
- a-scribō** (*ad-scribō*), 3, -scripsi, -scriptum, enter in a list, enroll, assign, ascribe F
- Asia**, -ae, *f.* Asia, usually meaning only the Roman province (the western part of Asia Minor, including Phrygia and islands)
- Asiāticus**, -a, -um [*Asia*], of Asia, Asiatic
- aspectus**, -ūs [*aspiciō*], *m.* sight, look, view, appearance, aspect†

a-spernor, 1, -ātus sum [*ab, spernō*, reject], despise, reject, spurn

a-spiciō, 3, -spexi, -spectum [*ad, speciō*, see], look at or upon; behold, regard

asportātiō, -ōnis [*as-portō*], *f.* carrying off, removal

as-portō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*abs, portō*, carry], carry off or away, remove, transport

a-stō, 1, -stiti [*ad*], stand by or near

at, *conj.* but, but yet (*esp. in a reply or objection*), but to be sure

Ātellānus, -a, -um [*Ātella*], of or belonging to Atella; a town in Campania

Athēnae, -ārum, *f. plur.* Athens

Athēniēnsis, -e [*Athēnae*], Athenian.

Subst. plur. m. the Athenians

atque or ac (*before a consonant*) [*ad, -que*], *conj.* and also, and; in a comparison, than, as

at-quī, *conj.* and yet, however

atrōcitās, -ātis [*atrōx*], *f.* savageness, fierceness, cruelty, severity. (atrocit†)

atrōx, -ōcis [*āter*, black], *adj.* savage, fierce, cruel, harsh, terrible. (atrocious†)

at-tendō, 3, -tendi, -tentum, stretch or direct toward, attend (F) to, give attention†, notice, listen

at-tenuō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*tenuō*, make thin], make thin, attenuate†, weaken, diminish, make less alarming (dangerous, etc.)

Atticus, -i [*Greek*], *m.* a cognomen; T. Pomponius Atticus, Cicero's best friend, 161 ff.

at-tineō, 2, -tinui [*teneō*], hold to, keep; *reg.* attinet, it concerns, belongs, pertains

at-tingō, 3, -tigi, -tactum [*tangō*], touch, reach, attain F, lay hands upon, touch upon, treat

at-tribuō, 3, -ui, -ūtum, assign to, bestow, allot, attribute†

attritus, -a, -um [*at-terō*, rub], rubbed, worn, worn away, chafed. (attrition†)

auctiōnārius, -a, -um [*auctiō* (augeō)], of or for an auction, the auctioneer's. (*cp.* auction†)

auctor, -ōris [*augeō*], *m.* author F, father, founder, promoter, voucher, an authority, adviser (*not reg.* writer in Cicero's day)

auctōritās, -ātis [*auctor*], *f.* authority F, power, influence, prestige, reputation, dignity, importance, decision, opinion, conviction, judgment

audācia, -ae [*audāx*], *f.* boldness, daring, presumption, insolence, audacity†

audāx, -ācis [*audeō*], *adj.* bold, daring, courageous, reckless, audacious†, insolent

audeō, 2, ausus sum [*avidus*], *semi-dep.* be eager, dare, venture

audiō, 4, -ivi, -itum [*cp. auris*], hear, listen, attend to, hear of or about. (audible†, auditor†, audience F, etc.)

auditus, -ūs [*audiō*], *m.* hearing. (audit†)

au-ferō, -ferre, abstuli, ablātum [*au* (= *ab*), *ferō*], bear away, carry off, remove, rob. (ablativ†)

- augeō**, 2, **auxī**, **auctum**, increase (*trans.*), enlarge, advance, enrich, augment F, magnify, glorify, praise
- auguror**, 1, **-ātus sum** [*augur*, seer], divine, foretell, predict. {augur†, augury F, inaugurate†}
- Aulus**, **-ī**, *m.* a prænomen
- Aurēlius**, **-a**, **-um**, of Aurelius, Aurelian; **Aurēlia via**, Aurelian Way (*running northwest along coast of Etruria*); **Forum Aurēlium**, a town on this road
- aureus**, **-a**, **-um** [*aurum*], of gold, golden
- auris**, **-is** [*cp. audiō*], *f.* ear, attention, taste (*fig.*). (aural†, auricular†)
- aurum**, **-ī**, *n.* gold
- auspicium**, **-ī** [*auspex (avis, speciō)*, augur], *n.* divination by observing birds, augury, omen; *plur.* auspices†
- aut**, *conj.* or (*in negative context*, and). *Correl.* either . . . or
- autem**, *conj.* on the other hand, but, however, now, moreover
- auxilium**, **-ī** [*augeō*], *n.* help, aid, assistance; *plur.* auxiliaries†, reinforcements
- avāritia**, **-ae** [*avārus*, greedy], *f.* greed, covetousness, avarice F
- ā-vellō**, 3, (**-vellī** or **-vulsī**), **-vulsum**, tear off, remove by force
- āversus**, **-a**, **-um** [*ā-vertō*, turn away], turned away, opposed, hostile, averse† to (*ā* or *ab*)
- avidus**, **-a**, **-um** [*aveō*, long for], eager, greedy, desirous of. (avid†, avidity F)
- avītus**, **-a**, **-um** [*avus*], of a grand father, ancestral, inherited
- ā-vocō**, 1, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, call away, divert. (avocation†)
- avus**, **-ī**, *m.* grandfather
- bacchor**, 1, **-ātus sum** [*Bacchus*], keep the feast of Bacchus, revel, exult. (Bacchante F)
- Balbus**, **-ī**, *m.* a cognomen; *L. Cornelius Balbus*, 170 2
- barbaria**, **-ae** [*barbarus*], *f.* strange or uncivilized land, foreign or barbarous people, barbarism F
- barbarus**, **-a**, **-um** [*Greek*], barbarous†, savage, wild, uncivilized, foreign. *Subst. plur. m.* barbarians F, foreigners. (barbarity†)
- barbātus**, **-a**, **-um** [*barba*, beard], bearded
- basilica**, **-ae** [*Greek*], *f.* basilica†, a hall serving as an exchange and for the use of the law courts
- basis**, **-is** [*Greek*], *f.* foundation, base F, pedestal
- beātus**, **-a**, **-um** [*beō*, bless], happy, fortunate, rich, prosperous. (beatific†, beatification†, beatitude F)
- bellē** [*bellus*], *adv.* well, very well, nicely, prettily
- bellicōsus**, **-a**, **-um** [*bellicus*], warlike, bellicose†
- bellicus**, **-a**, **-um** [*bellum*], of war, military
- bellō**, 1, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [*bellum*], wage war
- bellum**, **-ī** [*old duellum (duo)*], *n.* war. (duel F)
- bellus**, **-a**, **-um**, *dim. adj.* [*bonus*], pretty, charming. (beau F, belle F, beauty F)

bene [*bonus*], *adv.* well, successfully, quite

beneficium, -ī [*bene, faciō*], *n.* kind deed, kindness, service, benefit F. (benefice†, beneficence†)

benevolentia, -ae [*bene-volēns*], *f.* good will, kindness, favor, regard, benevolence†

benignitās, -ātis [*benignus*], *f.* kindness, courtesy, bounty, benignity F

benignus, -a, -um [*bene, gignō*], kind, friendly, bounteous, benignant F. (benign F)

bēstia, -ae, *f.* beast F, animal

bibō, 3, **bibī**, drink. (bibuloust, im-bibe F)

Bibulus, -ī, *m.* a cognomen; *M. Calpurnius Bibulus*, 177 6

biennium, -ī [*bi- (cp. bis), annus*], *n.* a period of two years. (biennial†)

binī, -ae, -a [*bi- (cp. bis)*], *distrib. plur.* two each, two alike, a pair. (binary†)

bipertitō [*bi-pertītus (partior, share)*], *adv.* in two parts (divisions)

bis [*cp. duo*], *num. adv.* twice. (bis F)

Bithynia, -ae, *f.* a part of northern Asia Minor

Boēthus, -ī, *m.* a Greek sculptor, 133 22

bonitās, -ātis [*bonus*], *f.* goodness, kindness, excellence. (bounty F)

bonus, -a, -um, good, excellent, worthy, honorable, loyal. *Subst. plur. m.* good men or citizens. *Subst. plur. n.* goods, property. (bonus†)

Bosporānī, -ōrum [*Bosporus*], *m. plur.* dwellers on the (Cimmerian) Bosphorus, north of the Black Sea

brevis, -e, short, brief F. (brevity F)

breviter [*brevis*], *adv.* briefly F

Britannia, -ae, *f.* Britain

Brundisium, -ī, *n.* an important seaport in Calabria (Brindisi)

Brūtus, -ī, *m.* a cognomen; *D. Junius Brutus*, 111 24

būcula, -ae [*bōs, dim.*], *f.* heifer

bullā, -ae, *f.* bubble, boss, knob, stud, amulet. (bull† = *papal edict*, bill†)

Būthrōtum, -ī, *n.* a town in Epirus

c. = cōnsultum

C. (as old form of G.) = Gaius, a *praenomen*

cadō, 3, **cecidī**, **cāsūrus**, fall, fall down, be slain, perish. (cadence F, and many *cpds.*, as accident F, decadent F, deciduous†)

Caecilia, -ae, *f.* Atticus' daughter, 180 16

Caecilius, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *v. Metellus*

caedēs, -is [*caedō*, cut, kill], *f.* killing, slaughter, murder

caelātor, -ōris [*caelō*, carve in relief], *m.* worker in relief, carver, engraver

Caelius, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *M. Caelius Rufus*, 176, 186 6 (?) ; *Q. Caelius Latiniensis*, 91 3

caelum, -ī, *n.* sky, heaven. (celestial F)

Caesar, -aris, *m.* a cognomen; *C. Julius Caesar*, 55 1, 115 ff., 169 ff.; *L. Julius Caesar*, 58 16; *L. Julius Caesar Strabo*, 103 26

Caiēta, -ae, *f.* a seaport in southern Latium (Gaeta)

- calamitās, -ātis**, *f.* loss, calamity F, misfortune, defeat, disaster, ruin
- calamitōsus, -a, -um** [*calamitās*], destructive, calamitous F, ruinous, ruined, unfortunate
- Calēs, -ium**, *f. plur.* a town in Campania (Calvi)
- callidus, -a, -um** [*calleō*, be experienced], practiced, skilled, cunning, sly, shrewd
- Calpurnius, -ī**, *m.* a gentile name; *v. Pīsō, Bibulus*
- Camillus, -ī**, *m.* a cognomen; *C. Furius Camillus, 186 1*
- campus, -ī**, *m.* plain, meadow, field; *with Mārtius understood*, the Campus Martius, *at Rome*. (campus†, camp F, campaign F)
- candēlabrum, -ī** [*candēla* (*candēō*, shine), candle†], *n.* candlestick, lamp stand, candelabrum†
- Canēphoros, -ī**, *plur. -oe* [*Greek*], *f.* basket-bearer, canephorus† (*a statue of a maiden with a basket on her head*)
- canō, 3, cecinī**, sing, celebrate (*in song or verse*), praise, predict, prophesy. (precentor†)
- cantō, 1, -āvī, -ātum** [*freq. of canō*], sing. (chant F, descant F, incantation F, recant†, cantata It)
- cantus, -ūs** [*canō*], *m.* song, music. (cant†, canto It, chant F, canticle†)
- Canusium, -ī**, *n.* a town in Apulia
- capillus, -ī** [*cp. caput* (?)], *m.* hair. (capillary†)
- capīō, 3, cēpī, captum**, take, grasp, seize, capture F, captivate, receive, contain, satisfy, comprehend, obtain, reap, suffer, experience; *mente captus*, deprived of reason, crazed. (capable F, capacity F)
- capitālis, -e** [*caput*], of the head, chief, capital F, deadly, dangerous
- Capitōlinus, -a, -um** [*Capitōlium*], of the Capitol, Capitoline
- Capitōlium, -ī** [*caput*], *n.* the Capitol (*temple of Jupiter*), the Capitoline Hill (Introd. § 50). (capitol†)
- Cappadocia, -ae**, *f.* a country in southeastern Asia Minor
- Capua, -ae**, *f.* a city of Campania
- caput, -itis**, *n.* head, life, civilian rights, civil status, main point, source. (capital F of column, chapter F, decapitate F, capitulate†, recapitulate†)
- Carbō, -ōnis**, *m.* a cognomen; *C. Papirius Carbo, 102 3*
- carcer, -eris**, *m.* prison. (incarcerate†)
- careō, 2, -uī, -itūrus**, be (go or do) without, lack, feel the need of, be deprived of, deny oneself. (caret†)
- cāritās, -ātis** [*cārus*], *f.* dearness, high price, fondness, love. (charity F)
- carmen, -inis** [*canō*], *n.* song, hymn, poem
- Carthāginiēnsis, -e** [*Carthāgō*], Carthaginian. *Subst. plur. m.* the Carthaginians
- Carthāgō, -inis**, *f.* Carthage
- cārus, -a, -um**, dear, precious, costly. (caress F)
- Cassius, -ī**, *m.* a gentile name; *L. Cassius Longinus, 38 26; C. Cassius Longinus, 177 7; C. Cassius Varus, 95 27*
- castē** [*castus*], *adv.* purely, virtuously, chastely F

castellum, -ī [*dim. of castrum*], *n.*
fort, castle F, stronghold, citadel.
(château F)

castrēnsis, -e [*castra*], of the camp
castrum, -ī [*cp. casa*, house], *n.*
fort; *plur.* camp

castus, -a, -um, pure, chaste F, up-
right, virtuous. (chasten F, chas-
tise F, castigate†)

cāsus, -ūs [*cadō*], *m.* falling, fall,
chance, event, occurrence, acci-
dent, misfortune. (case F, casual F,
casualty†)

Catilīna, -ae, *m.* a cognomen; *L.*
Sergius Catilīna, Catiline, the
leader of the conspiracy of 63 B. C.,
3 ff.

Catō, -ōnis, *m.* a cognomen; *M. Por-*
cius Cato (censor), 106 5, 109 14;
M. Porcius Cato (of Utica), 109 13;
his father, *probably*, 101 21

Catulus, -ī, *m.* a cognomen; *Q. Lu-*
tatius Catulus, 47 14, 101 8; his
son Quintus, 88 11, 101 20

causa, -ae, *f.* cause F, reason, pre-
text, excuse, case, situation, law-
suit, party, side; **causā**, on account
of, for the sake of

cautiō, -ōnis [*caveō*], *f.* caution F,
precaution F

caveō, 2, **cāvi**, **cautum**, be on one's
guard, beware, beware of, take care
or heed

-ce, *demonstr. encl.* here, there

cēdō, 3, **cessī**, **cessum**, move, go,
go away, yield, give way, with-
draw. (cede†, and *cpds.*, as con-
cede F, recede†, secede†, etc.)

celeber, -bris, -bre, thronged, fre-
quented, celebrated†

celebritās, -ātis [*celeber*], *f.* re-
nown, fame, glory, celebrity†,
celebration

celebrō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*celeber*],
throng, frequent, celebrate†, glo-
rify, praise

celeritās, -ātis [*celer*, swift], *f.* swift-
ness, speed, celerity F

celeriter [*celer*], *adv.* swiftly, quickly,
speedily

cella, -ae, *f.* chamber, closet, store-
room, cell F, sanctuary (*of a tem-*
ple). (cellar F)

cēlō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, hide, conceal F

cēna, -ae, *f.* dinner

cēnsēō, 2, **cēnsui**, **cēnsum**, assess,
enroll, estimate, think, consider,
believe, advise, propose, recom-
mend, vote, decree

cēnsor, -ōris [*cēnsēō*], *m.* censor†
(Introd. § 29)

cēnsus, -ūs [*cēnsēō*], *m.* census†;
plur. records or lists kept by the
censors

centuria, -ae [*centum*, hundred], *f.*
a division of the Roman people,
a century†

centuriātus, -ūs [*centuriō*], *m.* office
or rank of a centurion

centuriō, -ōnis [*centuria*], *m.* com-
mander of a century, centurion†

Cēpārius, -ī, *m.* a gentile name;
M. Ceparius, 41 27

Cerēs, **Cereris**, *f.* the goddess of
agriculture, mother of Proserpina
cernō, 3, **crēvi**, **crētum**, distin-
guish, discern F, see, understand,
decide

certāmen, -inis [*1. certō*], *n.* con-
test, struggle

- certē** [*certus*], *adv.* certainly F, surely
1. **certō**, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum** [*certus*], (make certain), contend, vie, compete, fight. (concert F)
2. **certō** [*certus*], *adv.* with certainty F, beyond doubt
- certus**, -**a**, -**um** [*cernō*], settled, certain F, sure, particular, reliable; **certiōrem facere**, inform. (certify F)
- cervix**, -**icis** (*reg. only in plur. cervicēs*), *f.* neck, throat
- cessātiō**, -**ōnis** [*cessō*, loiter], *f.* loitering, delaying, cessation†
- cēterum**, *acc. n. as adv.* for the rest, otherwise
- (**cēterus**), -**a**, -**um**, the other, the rest; *reg. plur. Subst. plur. m. and n.* the rest, everybody (everything) else. (et cetera†)
- Cethēgus**, -**ī**, *m.* a cognomen; *C. Cornelius Cethegus*, 37 25
- Chilō**, -**ōnis**, *m.* a cognomen; *Q. Annius Chilo*, 42 2
- Chius**, -**a**, -**um**, Chian, of Chios (*island in the Aegean*). *Subst. plur. m.* the Chians
- cibus**, -**ī**, *m.* food
- Cibyratē**, -**ārum**, *m. plur.* inhabitants of Cibra, a city in south-western Asia Minor
- Cicerō**, -**ōnis**, *m.* a cognomen; *M. Tullius Cicero*, the orator; his brother Quintus, 52 19, 161 6, 164 19; his son Marcus, 52 23, 163 ff.; Quintus' son Quintus, 166 5, 184 2
- Cilicia**, -**ae**, *f.* a Roman province in southeastern Asia Minor
- Cilix**, -**icis**, *adj.* Cilician. *Subst. plur. m.* the Cilicians
- Cimber**, -**brī**, *m.* a cognomen; *v. Gabinius*
- Cimbri**, -**ōrum**, *m. plur.* a north-German people which wandered into Italy
- Cimbricus**, -**a**, -**um** [*Cimbri*], Cimbrian, of the Cimbri
- cingō**, 3, **cīnxī**, **cīnctum**, gird, surround, invest. (cincture†, surcingle F)
- cinis**, -**eris**, *m.* ashes. (cinerary†)
- Cinna**, -**ae**, *m.* a cognomen; *L. Cornelius Cinna*, 39 2, 47 9
- circā** [*circus*, circle F, race course], *adv. and prep. with acc.* round, around, about
- circiter** [*circus*], *adv. and prep. with acc.* about, nearly
- circum** [*circus*], *adv. and prep. with acc.* around, about, near, at. (*cp.* circust†, circle F)
- circumcīsus**, -**a**, -**um** [*caedō*], cut off, precipitous
- circum-clūdō**, 3, -**clūsī**, -**clūsum** [*claudō*], shut in, hem in, surround
- circum-dō**, -**dare**, -**dedī**, -**datum** [*dō*, put], put around, surround
- circum-scribō**, 3, -**scripsī**, -**scriptum** [*scribō*, write], bound, limit. circumscribe†, circumvent, cheat
- circumscrip̄tor**, -**ōris** [*circum-scribō*], *m.* deceiver, swindler, cheat
- circum-sedeō**, 2, -**sēdī**, -**sessum** [*sedeō*, sit], surround, besiege, invest, beset
- circum-spiciō**, 3, -**spexī**, -**spectum** [*speciō*, look], look around, watch for, beware. (circumspect†)

circum-stō, 1, -stetī, stand about *or* around, surround, beset. (circum-stance F)

citerior, -ius [*compar. of citer*, on this side], nearer, hither, on this side, more recent

cito [*citus* (*cieō*, stir)], *adv.* quickly

civilis, -e [*civīs*], of citizens, civil F. (civilian F, civilize F)

civis, -is, *c.* citizen, fellow citizen. (civic†, civics†)

civitas, -ātis [*civīs*], *f.* citizenship, body of citizens, state. (city F)

clam, *adv.* [*cp. cēlō*, conceal], *adv.* secretly

clāmō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*cp. clārus*], call, cry, shout, exclaim F. (claim F)

clāmor, -ōris [*clāmō*], *m.* outcry, shout, clamor F

clārus, -a, -um [*cp. clāmō*], clear F, bright, loud, illustrious, famous

classis, -is, *f.* class F, division, fleet. (classic(al)†, classify†)

Claudius, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *C. Claudius Pulcher*, 132 9; *Ap. Claudius Pulcher*, 103 3; *Ap. Claudius Pulcher*, his son, 174 6

claudō, 3, clausī, clausum [*cp. clāvis*, key], close F, shut. (closet F, cloister F, clause F, include†, etc.)

clāva, -ae, *f.* club, cudgel

clēmēns, -entis, *adj.* mild, gentle, kind, merciful. (clement†)

clēmēnter [*clēmēns*], *adv.* mildly, gently

clēmēntia, -ae [*clēmēns*], *f.* mildness, mercy, clemency†

clientēla, -ae [*cliēns*, client†], *f.* clientship; *plur.* clients, dependents. (clientele F)

Clitarchus, -ī, *m.* a Greek historian, 177 13

Cn., *abbr. for Gnaeus*, a *prænomen* (C as old form of G)

Cnidius, -a, -um [*Cnidus*], Cnidian, of Cnidus. *Subst. plur. m.* the Cnidians

Cnidus, -ī, *f.* a city in Caria

co-acervō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*acervus*, heap], pile up, accumulate

co-aedificō, 1, (-āvī), -ātum, build up, build upon

co-emō, 3, -ēmi, -ēptum, purchase, buy up

coepī, coepisse, coeptum (*for the pres. system in-cipiō is used*), have begun, began

co-erceō, 2, -ercuī, -ercitum [*arceō*, confine], confine, check, restrain, control. (coerce†)

coetus, -ūs [*co-eō*, come together], *m.* gathering, meeting

cōgitātē [*cōgitātus*], *adv.* with careful preparation

cōgitātiō, -ōnis [*cōgitō*], *f.* thinking, thought, reflection, design, meditation. (cogitation†)

cōgitō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*co-*, *agitō*], consider, think over, think, reflect, intend. (cogitate†)

cognātiō, -ōnis [*co-gnātus*, related], *f.* relationship (*by blood*), kinship. (*cp.* cognate†)

cognitiō, -ōnis [*co-gnōscō*], *f.* acquaintance, learning, knowledge. (recognition†)

cognitor, -ōris [*co-gnōscō*], *m.* advocate, attorney, defender, sponsor

co-gnōscō, 3, -gnōvī, -gnitum [*nōscō*], become acquainted with,

- inquire into, find out, learn, recognize; *in perf.*, etc. know. (cognizance F)
- cōgō, 3, co-ēgi, co-āctum [co-, agō], drive together, gather, force, compel
- co-haereō, 2, -haesi, -haesūrus, stick *or* cling together, be connected, cohere†, adhere†
- co-hibeō, 2, -ui, -itum [habeō], keep in, restrain, check
- cohors, -hortis [*cp.* hortus, garden], *f.* inclosure, company, cohort F (*ten to a legion*), bodyguard (*usually with praetōria*). (court F)
- cohortātiō, -ōnis [co-hortor], *f.* exhortation†, encouragement
- co-hortor, 1, -ātus sum, exhort†, encourage
- col-ligō, *see* con-ligō
- colō, 3, coluī, cultum, till, cultivate†, inhabit, cherish, respect, worship
- colōnia, -ae [colōnus], *f.* colony†
- colōnus, -ī [colō], *m.* farmer, husbandman, colonist†
- Colophōn, -ōnis, *m.* an Ionian city in Lydia
- Colophōnius, -a, -um [Colophōn], of Colophon. *Subst. plur. m.* the Colophonians
- color, -ōris, *m.* color F, complexion
- comes, -itis [con, eō], *c.* companion, comrade, associate, attendant. (count F, county F)
- cōmissātiō, -ōnis [cōmissor, revel], *f.* revelry, revel
1. comitātus, -a, -um [comitor, attend], attended, escorted
2. comitātus, -ūs [comitor], *m.* retinue, escort, attendants
- comitia, -ōrum [com-, eō], *n.* meeting (*of the people*), assembly, election, comitia† (Intro. §§ 37 f.)
- Comitium, -ī [com-, eō], *n.* the Comitium, *a meeting-place in front of the Senate-house* (Intro. § 48)
- commeātus, -ūs [com-meō], *m.* a going back and forth, intercourse, furlough, supplies
- commemorābilis, -e [com-memorō], worthy of mention, noteworthy, memorable†
- commemorātiō, -ōnis [com-memorō], *f.* calling to mind, mention, remembrance. (commemoration†)
- com-memorō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, call to mind, remind, mention, relate. (commemorate†)
- commendātiō, -ōnis [com-mendō], *f.* commending, commendation F, recommendation†
- com-mendō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [mandō, intrust], intrust, confide, commit, commend†. (command F)
- commentor, 1, -ātus sum [commi-nīscor, devise], think over, study, compose, invent, purpose. (comment F, commentary†)
- com-meō, 1, -meāvī, -meātum, go to and fro, visit frequently
- commercium, -ī [merx], *n.* trade, commerce F, intercourse
- com-misceō, 2, -miscuī, -mixtum, mix (F) with, join
- commissum, -ī [com-mittō], *n.* deed, misdeed, crime
- com-mittō, 3, -misi, -missum, join together, intrust, commit†, engage in (*of battle*); *committere* ut, allow oneself to. (commission†)

commodē [*commodus*], *adv.* duly, neatly, aptly, conveniently, well

commodō, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum** [*commodus*], accommodate†, furnish, lend

com-modus, -**a**, -**um** [*modus*, measure], suitable, fit, advantageous, convenient, favorable, agreeable. *Subst. n.* advantage, convenience, opportunity, loan. (commode F, commodious F, commodity F)

com-moror, 1, -**ātus sum**, delay, linger, remain, stay

commōtus, -**a**, -**um** [*com-moveō*], moved, aroused, indisposed

com-moveō, 2, -**mōvī**, -**mōtum**, move, rouse, alarm, disturb, affect, influence. (commotion F)

commūnicō, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum** [*commūnis*], share, share with, communicate†

com-mūnis, -**e** [*cp. mūnus*, service], common F, general public. *Subst. n.* commonwealth, community F. (communion F, communist†)

commūniter [*commūnis*], *adv.* in common, in general

com-mūtō, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, completely change *or* alter, exchange. (commute†)

comparātiō, -**ōnis** [1. *com-parō*], *f.* a preparing, preparation

1. **com-parō**, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, prepare, make ready, make up, procure, establish, constitute

2. **com-parō**, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum** [*pār*, *or com-pār*, equal], rank with, compare†

com-pellō, 3, -**pulī**, -**pulsum**, drive together, force, compel F. (compulsion F)

com-periō, 4, -**perī**, -**pertum** [*cp. periculum*; *perf. system, pariō*, acquire], find out, ascertain, learn

competitor, -**ōris** [*com-petō*], *m.* rival candidate, competitor†

com-plector, 3, -**plexus sum** [*plectō*, plait], clasp, embrace, comprehend, include, honor, care for. (complex†, *adj.*)

com-pleō, 2, -**ēvī**, -**ētum**, fill up, fill, complete†

complexus, -**ūs** [*com-plector*], *m.* embrace. (complex†, *noun*)

com-plūrēs, -**a** *or* -**ia**, *plur.* several, not a few, many

com-prehendō, 3, -**hendī**, -**hēnsum** (*also* -**prēndō**, *etc.*), seize, arrest, detect, take in, grasp, comprehend†

com-primō, 3, -**pressī**, -**pressum** [*premō*], press together, compress F, check, subdue

com-probō, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, approve F, sanction, assent to, prove F, attest

cōnātus, -**ūs** [*cōnor*], *m.* attempt, undertaking, effort. (conative†)

con-cēdō, 3, -**cessī**, -**cessum**, retire, depart, yield, submit to, grant, concede F, make a concession F, pardon

con-celebrō, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, attend in large numbers, frequent, celebrate†, proclaim

con-certō, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, contend hotly, dispute. (concert F)

con-cidō, 3, -**cidī** [*cadō*], fall together *or* completely, collapse, be prostrated, perish

- conciliō**, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum** [*concilium*, meeting], bring together, unite, reconcile†, conciliate†, win over, win
- con-cipiō**, 3, -**cēpī**, -**ceptum** [*capiō*], take hold of, receive, imagine, conceive F, adopt, harbor. (conception F)
- con-citō**, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum** stir up, arouse, excite F, agitate, urge. (incite F)
- con-clūdō**, 3, -**clūsī**, -**clūsum** [*claudō*], shut up, confine, include†, conclude†
- concordia**, -**ae** [*con-cors*, of same mind], *f.* agreement, union, harmony, concord F. **Concordia**, *the goddess Concord*
- con-cupiscō**, 3, -**cupīvī**, -**cupitum** [*cupiō*], desire eagerly, covet
- con-currō**, 3, -**currī**, -**cursum**, run together, meet, concur†
- concurso**, -**āre**, *defective* [*freq. of con-currō*], run about, rush around
- concursum**, -**ūs** [*con-currō*], *m.* a running together, gathering, course F, clash
- con-demnō**, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum** [*damnō*], condemn F, convict
- condiciō**, -**ōnis** [*cp. dicō and dicō*], *f.* agreement, terms, understanding, match, condition F, situation, position, lot
- con-dō**, 3, -**didī**, -**ditum** [-**dō**, -**dere**, put], put together, build, found, put away, store up, hide
- con-dūco**, 3, -**dūxī**, -**ductum**, draw together, unite, hire, rent; *3d pers.* be of use to, serve, conduce† to. (conduct F)
- cōn-ferō**, -**ferre**, -**tuli**, -**lātum**, bring together, collect, contribute, devote, bestow, apply, fix, compare, contrast, confer†, ascribe, transfer, bring upon, refer, defer; *with sē*, betake oneself, turn, go; *with signa*, join battle. (conference†, collate†, collation F)
- cōnferthus**, -**a**, -**um** [*cōn-ferciō*, cram], stuffed, filled, gorged, dense
- cōnfessiō**, -**ōnis** [*cōn-fiteor*], *f.* confession F, acknowledgment
- cōnfestim**, *adv.* immediately, forthwith, without delay
- cōn-ficiō**, 3, -**fēcī**, -**fectum** [*faciō*], make up, make ready, prepare, levy, complete, accomplish, achieve, finish, wear out, exhaust, destroy, kill. (confection F, confectionery F)
- cōn-fidō**, 3, -**fīsus sum**, trust, be confident†, confide† in
- cōn-firmō**, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, make firm, strengthen, encourage, reassure, establish, assert, confirm F
- cōn-fiteor**, 2, -**fessus sum** [*fateor*], confess F, acknowledge, admit
- cōn-flagrō**, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, burn (*intrans.*), burn up, be consumed. (conflagration†)
- cōn-fligō**, 3, -**flīxī**, -**flīctum**, strike or dash together, be in conflict†, contend
- cōn-flō**, 1, -**flāvī**, -**flātum**, blow up (*trans.*), kindle, arouse, melt together, fuse, compose, effect
- cōn-fluō**, 3, -**flūxī**, flow together, flock together. (confluence†)
- cōnfōrmātiō**, -**ōnis** [*cōn-fōrmō*], *f.* molding, shaping, conformation†

cōn-fōrmō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, form, fashion, train, educate. (conform F)
cōn-fringō, 3, -frēgi, -frāctum [*frangō*], break, shatter, destroy
cōnfūsiō, -ōnis [*cōn-fundō*, pour together, confound F], *f.* mingling, disorder, confusion F, perplexity
con-gerō, 3, -gessi, -gestum, bring together, pile up, accumulate. (congest†)
con-gregō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*grex*, herd], gather together (*trans.*); *pass.* assemble, congregat†
con-gruō, 3, -uī [*cp. ruō*, fall down], agree, harmonize. (incongruous†)
con-iciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectum [*iaciō*], throw together *or* violently, hurl, aim, force, conjecture F
coniectūra, -ae [*con-iciō*], *f.* inference, conjecture F
coniunctiō, -ōnis [*con-iungō*], *f.* uniting, union, alliance, junction. (conjunction F)
coniunctus, -a, -um [*con-iungō*], connected, friendly. (conjointly F)
con-iungō, 3, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, join together, unite
coniūnx, -iugis [*con-iungō*], *c.* spouse, husband, wife. (conjugal†)
coniūrātiō, -ōnis [*con-iūrō*], *f.* conspiracy, league, union
con-iūrātus, -a, -um [*con-iūrō*], leagued together. *Subst. plur. m.* conspirators
con-iūrō, 1, -āvi, -atum, swear together, conspire, plot. (conjure F)
cō-niveō, 2, (-nīvi and -nīxi) [*cp. nictō*, wink], wink, overlook, connive†
con-laudō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, praise highly

conlēcitiō, -ōnis [*con-ligō*], *f.* collection F, collecting†
conlēga, -ae [*con-, lēgō*], *m.* colleague F, associate
conlēgium, -ī [*conlēga*], *n.* official body, board, association, college F
con-ligō, 3, -lēgi, -lēctum [*legō*], gather, gather together, collect†, assemble
con-locō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, place together, place, set, set up, put, arrange, invest. (collocation†)
cōnor, 1, -ātus sum, try, attempt, undertake, endeavor. (conative†)
con-queror, 3, -questus sum, complain, bewail, lament, deplore
con-quiēscō, 3, -quiēvi, -quiētum, become quiet, find rest, come to rest, be at rest *or* peace
con-quirō, 3, -quisivī, -quisitum [*quaerō*], seek for *or* after, hunt up, collect. (conquer F, conquest F)
con-rōborō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, make strong, strengthen, encourage. (corroborate†)
con-ruō, 3, -ruī, fall together *or* down, collapse
cōnscelerātus, -a, -um [*cōn-scelerō*, dishonor], wicked, depraved
cōnscientia, -ae [*cp. cōn-scius*], *f.* consciousness†, knowledge, conscience F, sense of guilt
cōn-scius, -a, -um [*sciō*], knowing in common, conscious† with, privy to
cōn-scribō, 3, -scripsi, -scriptum, write together, enroll, enlist, write. *Subst. plur. m.* the enrolled *or* elected (in *patrēs cōnscripti*, senators, "conscript fathers"; Introd. § 32). (conscript†)

- cōn-secrō**, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum** [*sacrō*], dedicate, consecrate†, deify
- cōnsēnsiō**, -**ōnis** [*cōn-sentiō*], *f.* agreement, harmony, collusion
- cōnsēnsus**, -**ūs** [*cōn-sentiō*], *m.* agreement, unanimity, harmony, accord, consensus†
- cōn-sentiō**, 4, -**sēnsī**, -**sēnsūm**, agree, unite, combine, be in harmony. (consent F)
- cōn-sequor**, 3, -**secūtus sum**, follow up, pursue, overtake, obtain, win, gain, result, ensue. (consequence F, consecutive F)
- cōn-servō**, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, keep, save, retain, maintain, preserve, guard, observe. (conserve F, conservative F, conservatory†)
- cōnsessus**, -**ūs** [*cōn-sīdō*], *m.* sitting, meeting, assembly
- cōn-siderō**, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, look at closely, reflect upon, consider F
- cōn-sīdō**, 3, -**sēdī**, -**sessum**, sit down, settle
- cōnsilium**, -**ī** [*cōn-sulō*], *n.* council, counsel F, plan, design, purpose, advice, prudence, wisdom
- cōn-sistō**, 3, -**stitī**, stand still, stop, pause, take a stand, exist, consist† in, depend upon. (consistent†, consistory F)
- cōnsōlātiō**, -**ōnis** [*cōn-sōlor*], *f.* comfort, condolence, consolation F
- cōn-sōlor**, 1, -**ātus sum** [*sōlor*], solace F, encourage, console F, comfort
- cōnspectus**, -**ūs** [*cōn-spiciō*], *m.* sight, look, view, presence. (conspectus†)
- cōn-spiciō**, 3, -**spexī**, -**spectum** [*speciō*, see], look at, get sight of, behold, perceive, see. (conspicuous†)
- cōnspirātiō**, -**ōnis** [*cōn-spīrō*, breathe together], *f.* harmony, agreement (conspiracy†, *cōnspire* F, conspirator F)
- cōnstanter** [*cōnstāns*, firm], *adv.* firmly, steadfastly, consistently, constantly F
- cōnstantia**, -**ae** [*cōnstāns*], *f.* firmness; steadfastness, perseverance, constancy†
- cōn-stituō**, 3, -**uī**, -**ūtum** [*statuō*], place together, set up, fix, establish, found, settle, determine, arrange, decide, constitute†, enact, create, appoint. (constituent†, constitution F)
- cōn-stō**, 1, -**stitī**, -**stātūrus**, stand with, agree, consist of, depend upon; **cōnstat**, it is agreed *or* well known *or* evident. (cost F, constant F)
- cōn-stringō**, 3, -**strīnxi**, -**strictum** [*stringō*, draw tight], bind, curb, fetter, shackle, restrain. (constrain F, constrictor†)
- cōn-suēscō**, 3, -**ēvī**, -**ētum**, become accustomed; *perf.* be wont *or* in the habit
- cōnsuētūdō**, -**īnis** [*cōnsuētus*], *f.* custom, habit, use, usage, precedent, familiarity, intimacy, friendship, companionship
- cōnsul**, -**ulis** [*cōn-sulō*], *m.* consul† (Introd. § 24); **prō cōnsule**, *see* **prōcōnsul**
- cōnsulāris**, -**e** [*cōnsul*], of a consul, consular†. *Subst. m.* ex-consul

cōsulātus, -ūs [*cōsul*], *m.* consul-
ship, consulate†

cōsulō, 3, -sulūi, -sultum [*cp.*
sedeō], take counsel, deliberate, con-
sult†, look out for, take thought for

cōsultō [*cōsultum*], *adv.* deliber-
ately, designedly

cōsultum, -ī [*cōsulō*], *n.* decree,
resolution

cōn-sūmō, 3, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum,
use up, consume†, spend, waste,
destroy

cōn-surgō, 3, -surrēxī, -surrēctum,
rise together, get up, arise

con-tāminō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*cp. con-*
tāgiō], touch, infection], contami-
nate†, defile, disgrace

con-tegō, 3, -tēxī, -tēctum, cover,
conceal, hide

con-temnō, 3, -temp̄sī, -temptum
value little, think little of, disdain,
despise, neglect, condemn F, hold
in contempt†

con-tendō, 3, -tendī, -tentum, strain,
stretch, strive, hasten, contend†,
fight, match, compare, solicit, beg,
assert

contentiō, -ōnis [*con-tendō*], *f.* strain,
stretching, effort, strife, struggle,
contention F, rivalry, comparison

contentus, -a, -um [*con-tineō*], con-
tented, content F, satisfied

con-testor, 1, -testātus sum, call to
witness, invoke

conticēscō, 3, -ticūi [*incept. of con-*
ticeō (*taceō*)], become silent *or*
still, be hushed

continēns, -entis [*con-tineō*], *adj.*
self-controlled, temperate, moder-
ate, upright, continent F

continentia, -ae [*continēns*], *f.* re-
straint, temperance, moderation,
continence F

con-tineō, 2, -tinui, -tentus [*teneō*],
hold *or* keep together, confine,
restrain, check, contain F, include,
comprise; *pass.* consist of, depend
upon

con-tingō, 3, -tigī, -tāctum [*tangō*],
touch, reach, fall to, befall, happen,
turn out (*favorably, as a rule*).
(contingent F, contingency†, con-
tact†, contiguous†)

continuus, -a, -um [*con-tineō*], con-
nected, continuous†, successive.
(*cp.* continue F)

cōntiō, -ōnis [*for co-ventiō* (*con-*
veniō)], *f.* assembly, meeting,
speech (*before an assembly*)

cōntiōnātor, -ōris [*cōntiōnōr* (*cōn-*
tiō)], *m.* speaker (*before an*
assembly), agitator, demagogue

contrā [*cp. com-, cum*]. 1. *adv.* on
the contrary, on the other hand,
otherwise; **contrā atque**, different
from, otherwise than. 2. *prep.*
with acc. opposite, contrary to,
against, in reply to. (con†)

con-trahō, 3, -trāxī, -trāctum, draw
together, concentrate, contract†,
cause, incur. (contraction F)

contrārius, -a, -um [*contrā*], oppo-
site, contrary F, in conflict

contrōversia, -ae [*contrōversus*, dis-
puted (*vertō*)], *f.* dispute, contro-
versy†, question, quarrel

contumēlia, -ae, *f.* insult, abuse,
reproach, injury, contumely F

conturbātus, -a, -um [*con-turbō*],
disturbed, upset

- con-turbō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum, disturb, confuse, upset
- con-valēscō**, 3, -valui, gain strength, recover, convalesce†
- con-vellō**, 3, -velli, -vulsum, pluck off *or* up, tear away
- con-veniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, come together, gather, meet, convene F, meet (*a person*); *impers.* it is agreed *or* proper *or* fitting. (convenient†, convenience†)
- conventus**, -ūs [*con-veniō*], *m.* meeting, assembly. (convent F, *cp.* convention F)
- con-vertō**, 3, -vertī, -versum, turn around, turn, change, convert†
- convicium**, -ī [*cp. vōx*], *n.* outcry, clamor, wrangling, rebuke, abuse
- con-vincō**, 3, -vici, -victum, overcome, refute, convict†, prove. (conviction†, convince†)
- convivium**, -ī [*com-, vīvō*], *n.* feast, banquet. (convivial†)
- con-vocō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum, call together, convoke F. (convocation†)
- cōpia**, -ae [*com-, ops*, help], *f.* abundance, plenty, supply, power, facility, fluency; *plur.* means, wealth, resources, forces, troops
- cōpiōsē** [*cōpiōsus*], *adv.* richly, abundantly, copiously†
- cōpiōsus**, -a, -um [*cōpia*], abounding, rich, well-supplied, copious†
- cōram**, *adv.* face to face, in person, openly
- Corcȳra**, -ae, *f.* an island off the coast of Epirus, with town of the same name (Corfu)
- Corduba**, -ae, *f.* a city of southern Spain (Cordova)
- Corfiniēnsis**, -e [*Corfinium*], of *or* belonging to Corfinium. *Subst. plur. m.* the Corfinians
- Corfinium**, -ī, *n.* a town of the Pæligni (east of Rome)
- Corinthus**, -a, -um [*Corinthus*], of Corinth, Corinthian
- Corinthus**, -ī, *f.* Corinth, a city of Greece (at the Isthmus), in ruins in Cicero's day
- Corneilius**, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *v.* Balbus, Cethēgus, Cinna, Dolābella, Lentulus, Scipiō, Sulla
- corpus**, -oris, *n.* body, corpse F. (corps F, corporal F, corpulent F, corporation†)
- cor-rigō**, 3, -rēxi, -rēctum [*regō*], reform, correct†. (corrigible†)
- cor-rumpō**, 3, rūpi, -ruptum, ruin, pervert, corrupt†, falsify, bribe
- corruptēla**, -ae [*cor-rumpō*], *f.* a corrupting, corruption, seduction, temptation, bribery
- corruptor**, -ōris [*cor-rumpō*], *m.* corrupter†, seducer, briber
- corruptus**, -a, -um [*cor-rumpō*], depraved, ruined, profligate, corrupt†
- cōs.** = cōsul
- cotidiānus**, -a, -um [*cotidiē*], daily, everyday
- cotidiē** [*quotus (quot)*, *diēs*], *adv.* daily, every day
- Cotta**, -ae, *m.* a cognomen; *L. Aurelius Cotta*, 44 14
- Cōus**, -a, -um [*Cōs*], of Cos (*Ægean island*). *Subst. plur. m.* the Coans
- crās**, *adv.* tomorrow
- Crassipēs**, -pedis, *m.* a cognomen; *Furius Crassipes*, second husband of Tullia, 166 2

Crassus, -ī, *m.* a cognomen; *L. Licinius Crassus* (orator), 101 20, 156 10; *P. Licinius Crassus Dives*, 103 26

crātēra, -ae [*Greek*], *f.* mixing-bowl. (crater†)

crēber, -bra, -brum [*cp. creō, crēscō*], thick, close, repeated, numerous, frequent

crēbrō [*crēber*], *adv.* repeatedly, frequently, often

crēdibilis, -e [*crēdō*], to be believed, credible†

crēdō, 3, -didī, -ditum, believe, trust, intrust, lend. (credit F, creed†, credence†, credulous†)

crēscō, 3, crēvī, crētum [*incept. of creō, create†*], grow, increase F

Crētēnsis, -e [*Crēta*], Cretan, of Crete (*a large island south of Greece*). *Subst. plur. m.* the Cretans

crīmen, -inis [*cp. cernō*], *n.* accusation, charge, crime F. (criminal F)

crīminor, 1, -ātus sum [*crīmen*], charge, accuse. (criminate†, incriminate†)

cruciātus, -ūs [*cruciō*, torture], *m.* torture, punishment, torment, pain. (excruciating†)

crūdēlis, -e [*crūdus*, raw], cruel F, severe, merciless

crūdēlitās, -ātis [*crūdēlis*], *f.* cruelty F, severity, bloodthirstiness

crūdēlīter [*crūdēlis*], *adv.* cruelly F, fiercely, harshly

cruentus, -a, -um [*cruor*, gore], bloody

cubile, -is [*cubō*, lie down], *n.* bed, couch

culpa, -ae, *f.* fault, failure, guilt, blame. (culpable F, culprit F)

cultūra, -ae [*colō*, till], *f.* tilling, cultivation, culture F

1. **cum** (*often enclitic with pronouns; in cpds. com-, con-, col-, co-, etc.*), *prep. with abl.* with, together with

2. **cum** [*old quom (cp. quī)*], *conj.* when, while, after, since, although; **cum . . . tum**, both . . . and, not only . . . but also; **cum primum**, as soon as

Cūmānus, -a, -um [*Cūmae*], of Cumæ. *Subst. n.* an estate at Cumæ, an old Greek city near Naples

cumulō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*cumulus*], heap or pile up, increase, accumulate†, crown. (cumulative†)

cumulus, -ī, *m.* heap, pile, accession, addition. (cumulus†)

cūnctus, -a, -um [*co-iūnctus*], all together, the whole, entire, all

cupiditās, -ātis [*cupidus*], *f.* eagerness, desire, passion, covetousness, cupidity F, partisanship

Cupīdō, -inis [*cupiō*], *m.* Cupid, the god of love

cupīdus, -a, -um [*cupiō*], eager, desirous, fond, greedy, avaricious. (*cp. covet* F)

cupiō, 3, -īvī, -itum, desire, long for, be eager

cūr [*old quōr (cp. quī)*], *interrog. adv.* why?

cūra, -ae, *f.* care, concern, trouble, pains, anxiety. (cure F, curious F, accurate†)

cūria, -ae, *f.* Senate-house, Curia (Introd. § 49), senate. (curia†)

Cūriō, -ōnis, *m.* a cognomen; *C. Scribonius Curio*, 95 23

cūriōsus, -a, -um [*cūra*], careful, curious F

cūrō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*cūra*], care for, take care of *or* that, see to it. (cure F)

curriculum, -ī [*cp. currus, currō*], *n.* race course, course, career. (curriculum†)

currus, -ūs [*currō*, run (current F)], *m.* chariot

cursus, -ūs [*currō*] *m.* running, course F. (*cp.* cursory†)

curūlis, -e [*currus*], of a chariot, curule†; *sella curūlis*, curule chair, *official seat of higher magistrates* (Introd. § 24)

cūstōdia, -ae [*cūstōs*], *f.* guard, sentinel, custody†, arrest, prison, protection. (custodian†)

cūstōdiō, 4, -īvi, -itum [*cūstōs*], guard, defend, watch, keep

cūstōs, -ōdis [*cp. caveō*], *c.* guard, watchman, protector

Cyzicēnus, -a, -um [*Cyzicus*], of Cyzicus, *a city on the south side of the Propontis. Subst. plur. m.* the people of Cyzicus

d. = diem, *in dates*; also = dabam, data, *etc. in dating a letter*

D. = Decimus, *a prænomen*

damnātiō, -ōnis [*damnō*], *f.* conviction, condemnation†

damnō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*damnum*, loss], inflict loss, condemn F

Dārēus, -ī, *m.* Darius III (*Co-domannus*), *king of Persia*, 177 14

dē, *prep. with abl.* down, off, from, out of, on account of, about, concerning, of

dea, *see deus*

dē-beō, 2, -uī, -itum [**dē-habeō*], owe, be obliged, ought, must of course; *pass.* be due. (debt F, debtor F, debit†)

dēbilis, -e [*dē, habilis*, easily handled], disabled, weak, feeble. (debility F)

dēbilitō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*dēbilis*], weaken, disable. (debilitate†)

dēbitus, -a, -um [*dēbeō*], due, deserved, just

dē-cēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum, go away, withdraw, depart. (decease F)

decem, *num. adj. indecl.* ten. (decemvir†, decennial†)

December, -bris, -bre [*decem*], of December F; *abbr.* Decembr. and Dec.

decemvirālis, -e [*decem-vir*], of the decemvirs

dē-cernō, 3, -crēvi, -crētum, decide, resolve, decree F, vote

dē-cerpō, 3, -cerpsi, -cerptum [*carpō*, pluck], pick off, take away, crop, gather

decet, 2, -uit [*cp. doceō, discō*], it is seemly, becomes, befits. (decent†, decency†)

decimus, -a, -um [*decem*], tenth. (decimal†, decimate†)

Decimus, -ī, *m.* a prænomen

dē-clārō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*clārō*, illuminate], disclose, declare F, show, prove, announce

dēclīnātiō, -ōnis [*dē-clīnō*, bend aside, decline F], *f.* bending *or* turning aside. (declension F)

dēcoctor, -ōris [*dē-coquō*, boil down *or* away], *m.* spendthrift, bankrupt. (decoction F)

decorō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*decus*, ornament], adorn, glorify, honor, extol. (decorate†)

dēcrētum, -ī [*dē-cernō*], *n.* decree F, resolution

decuma, -ae [= *decima*], *f.* a tenth, tithe. (decimal†)

dē-decus, -oris [*decus*, ornament], *n.* disgrace, dishonor, shame, vice

dē-dicō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*dicō*, set apart], dedicate†, consecrate

dēditō, -ōnis [*dē-dō*], *f.* a giving up, surrender

dēditus, -a, -um [*dē-dō*], given up to, addicted, devoted

dē-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum [-*dō*, -*dere*, put], give up, surrender, devote, lend

dē-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, lead down *or* off *or* away, bring, conduct. (deduct†, deduce†)

dē-fendō, 3, -fendī, -fēsum [*old fendō*, strike], ward off, defend F, protect, maintain. (defensive F)

dē-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, bear off, carry away, grant, confer upon, report, lay before. (defer F, deference F)

dēfessus, -a, -um [*dē-fetīscor*, grow weary], weary, tired, worn out

dē-fetigō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*fatigō*, tire], tire *or* wear out, fatigue F, exhaust

dē-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [*faciō*], fail, give out, prove deficient†, revolt, desert. (defect†, defective F, deficit F)

dē-figō, 3, -fixī, -fixum, fasten down, thrust, plunge, fix†

dē-finiō, 4, -ivī, -itum [*fīniō* (*fīnis*)], limit, bound, fix, define F, bring to an end. (definite†, definition F)

dē-flagrō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, burn down (*intrans.*), be destroyed; *in perf. pass. ptcp.* destroyed by fire

dē-fōrmis, -e [*fōrma*, shape], misshapen, deformed F, disfigured

dē-fōrmō, 1, -avi, -ātum, disfigure, deform F, spoil

dē-iciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectum [*iaciō*], throw down, cast down, ward off, avert. (deject†, dejection F)

de-inde, *adv.* then, next, thereupon

dē-lābor, 3, -lāpsus sum, glide *or* fall down, descend

dēlectātiō, -ōnis [*dēlectō*], *f.* delight, pleasure. (delectation F)

dēlectō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*dē-liciō*, attract], delight F, please, charm, interest. (delectable F)

dēleō, 2, -ēvi, -ētum [*cp. linō*, smear], erase, blot out, destroy, ruin, delete†

Dēliacus, -a, -um [*Dēlos*], of *or* belonging to Delos

dēliberātiō, -ōnis [*dē-liberō*], *f.* a deliberating, deliberation F, consultation

dē-liberō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*cp. librō*], weigh], consider, deliberate†

dēlicātus, -a, -um [*dēliciae*], elegant, fastidious, effeminate, wanton. (delicate†)

dēliciae, -ārum [*cp. laciō* (*dē-lectō*), entice], *f. plur.* allurement, charm, pleasure, delight, a favorite *or* darling. (delicious F)

dēlictum, -ī [*dē-linguō*, do wrong], *n.* wrong, sin, crime. (delict†)

1. **dē-ligō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum, tie up, bind fast

2. **dē-ligō**, 3, -lēgi, -lēctum [*legō*], choose, select

Dēlos and Dēlus, -ī, *f.* a very small island in the Ægean

Delphicus, -a, -um [*Delphī*], of Delphi (*city of the famous oracle*), Delphic

dēlūbrum, -ī [*luō*, cleanse], *n.* place of purification, shrine, temple

dē-mēns, -entis, *adj.* out of one's senses, demented†, insane, mad, foolish

dēmenter [*dē-mēns*], *adv.* madly, foolishly

dēmentia, -ae [*dē-mēns*], *f.* madness, folly. (dementia†)

dē-migrō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, move away, depart, migrate†

dēminūtiō, -ōnis [*dē-minuō*], *f.* decrease, diminution F, sacrifice, loss. (diminish F)

dē-mōlior, 4, -mōlitus sum, throw or tear down, demolish F

dēmōlitiō, -ōnis [*dē-mōlior*], *f.* tearing down, demolition F

dēmōnstrātiō, -ōnis [*dē-mōnstrō*], *f.* a pointing out, showing, description. (demonstration†)

dē-mōnstrō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, point out, show. (demonstrate†)

dēmum [*dē*], *adv.* at last, not till, just

dēnique [*dē*], *adv.* at length, finally, in short, in fine

dē-nūntiō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, announce, proclaim, warn, declare. (denounce F, denunciation†)

dē-pellō, 3, -puli, -pulsum, drive out or away, displace, remove, avert, cast down, divert

dē-pendō, 3, -pendi, weigh out, pay

dē-plōrō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, mourn for, lament (*trans. and intrans.*), bewail, deplore†

dē-pōnō, 3, -posui, -positum, put down, deposit F, put away, give up, abandon. (deponent†, depot F)

dē-portō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, carry off, bring home or away. (deport F, deportment F)

dē-poscō, 3, -poposci, demand, call for, claim

dē-prāvō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*prāvus*, crooked], pervert, corrupt, deprave†, spoil

dēprecātiō, -ōnis [*dē-precor*], *f.* plea, apology

dēprecātor, -ōris [*dē-precor*], *m.* intercessor, advocate, mediator. (*cp.* deprecatory†)

dē-precor, 1, -ātus sum, avert by prayer, deprecate†, intercede for, entreat

dē-prehendō, 3, -hendi, -hēnsum (*also* -prēndō, etc.) [*pre-hendō*, seize], seize, catch, apprehend, detect, comprehend, understand

dē-primō, 3, -pressi, -pressum [*premō*], press down, sink. (depress F, depression†)

dē-prōmō, 3, -prōmpsi, -prōmptum [*prōmō* (*prō, emō*, take)], draw out, draw, obtain

dērēctus, -a, -um [*dē-rigō* (*regō*), set straight], straight, perpendicular, vertical

dē-relinquō, 3, -liquī, -lictum, forsake, abandon, desert. (derelict†, dereliction†)

dē-scendō, 3, -scendī, -scēsum [*scandō*], climb down, descend F, dismount, stoop, resort to

dē-scribō, 3, -scripsī, -scriptum, write down, draw, describe†, copy. (description F)

dē-serō, 3, -seruī, -sertum [*serō*, join], leave, desert F, abandon, forfeit. (desertion F)

dēsertus, -a, -um [*dē-serō*], desert F, desolate, lonely

dēsiderium, -ī [*dē-siderō*], *n.* longing, regret, desire F

dē-siderō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*cp. cōn-siderō*], desire F, long for, miss, require. (desiderate†, desideratum†)

dē-signō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*signō*], mark *or* point out, choose, elect, designate†. *Ptcp.* dēsignātus, elect. (design F)

dē-sinō, 3, -siī, -situm, leave off, cease, stop

dē-sistō, 3, -stitī, -stitūrus [*sistō*, make stand], leave off, desist F, cease

dēsperātiō, -ōnis [*dē-spērō*], *f.* hopelessness, despair F, desperation†

dēsperātus, -a, -um [*dē-spērō*], despaired of, desperate†, abandoned

dē-spērō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, be hopeless, despair (F) of

dē-spiciō, 3, -spexī, -spectrum [*speciō*, look], look down upon, despise F. (despicable†, despite F)

dē-spondeō, 2, -spondī, -spōnsum, promise, betroth, pledge, give up. (despond†)

dē-stringō, 3, -strinxī, -strictum [*stringō*, draw tight], strip off, uncover, unsheathe, draw

dē-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be lacking, be wanting, fail, desert

dē-testor, 1, -ātus sum [*testor*, call to witness], protest against, avert by protest. (detest F, detestation F)

dē-trahō, 3, -trāxī, -trāctum, draw off, take away, withdraw. (detract†, detraction†)

dētrimentum, -ī [*dē-terō*, rub off], *n.* loss, detriment F, harm, defeat

deus, -ī, *m.*, *dea*, -ae, *f.*, god, goddess. (*cp.* deity F, deify F, deism F)

dē-vinciō, 4, -vīnxī, -vīnctum, bind, attach, unite

dē-vincō, 3, -vīcī, -victum, conquer completely, overpower, overcome

dē-vocō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, call off *or* away, attract, allure

dē-voeō, 2, -vōvī, -vōtum, vow F, devote†, consecrate. (devotion F)

dexter, -tra, -trum, right (*opp.* left, sinister). *Subst.* dextera and dextra, -ae (*sc. manus*), *f.* right hand. (dexterous†, dexterity†)

dī-, *see* dis-

Diāna, -ae, *f.* goddess of the moon and of light

dīc. = dīcit (dīcunt)

diciō, -ōnis [*cp. con-diciō*, dīcō], *f.* authority, power, sway

dīcō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*cp. dīcō*], set apart, devote, dedicate†

dīcō, 3, dīxī, dictum, say, speak, tell, mention, appoint; *with causam*, plead, defend. (ditto It)

dīctātor, -ōris [*dictō*, dictate], *m.* dictator† (Introd. § 30)

dictātūra, -ae [*dictātor*], *f.* office of dictator, dictatorship

dictiō, -ōnis [*dīcō*], *f.* saying, speaking; **iūris dictiō**, administration of justice, jurisdiction†. (diction†, dictionary†)

dictitō, i, -āvī, -ātum [*freq. of dictō*, dictate†], say often, keep saying, assert, insist

dictum, -ī [*dīcō*], *n.* saying, assertion, word, dictum†

diēs, diēi, c. day, *f.* time; **in diēs** (*singulōs*), from day to day, daily. (*cp.* diurnal†, journal F)

dif-ferō, -ferre, dis-tulī, di-lātum, carry apart, put off, defer F; *intrans.* differ F. (different F, difference F)

dif-ficilis, -e [*dis-, facilis*], not easy, hard, difficult

difficultās, -ātis [*dif-ficilis*], *f.* trouble, difficulty†. (difficult†)

dif-fidō, 3, -fīsus sum [*fidō*, trust], distrust, despair. (diffident†, diffidence†)

dif-fluō, 3, -flūxī, flow apart *or* away, waste away

dī-gerō, 3, -gessī, -gestum, distribute, dispose, set in order. (digest†)

dignitās, -ātis [*dignus*], *f.* worth, merit, dignity F, rank, honor, authority, prestige

dignus, -a, -um [*cp. decet*], worthy, deserving, suitable. (*cp.* condign F, deign F, disdain F)

dī-iūdicō, i, -āvī, -ātum, distinguish, decide, settle

dī-iungō, 3, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, separate, disjoin F

dī-lābor, 3, -lāpsus sum, fall apart, go to ruin, decay

dilātiō, -ōnis [*dif-ferō*, put off, defer F], *f.* putting off, postponement

dilēctus, -ūs [*dī-ligō*], *m.* choosing, selection, levy, conscription

diligēns, -entis [*dī-ligō*], *adj.* industrious, careful, diligent F, conscientious

diligenter [*diligēns*], *adv.* industriously, diligently F, carefully, faithfully, scrupulously

diligentia, -ae [*dīligēns*], *f.* industry, painstaking, attention, diligence F, faithfulness

dī-ligō, 3, -lēxī, -lēctum [*legō*], single out, value, love, esteem

dī-lūcēscō, 3, -lūxī [*lūcēscō* (*lūceō*)], grow light, dawn

dīmīcātiō, -ōnis [*dī-micō*], *f.* fight struggle, combat

dī-micō, i, -āvī, -ātum [*micō*, move quickly], fight, contend, struggle, battle

dī-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, send out, let go, dismiss F, give up, desert, abandon

Diocharēs, -is, m. a freedman of Julius Cæsar, 196 12

dīreptiō, -ōnis [*dī-ripiō*], *f.* plundering, pillaging

dīreptor, -ōris [*dī-ripiō*], *m.* plunderer, pillager

dī-ripiō, 3, -ripiū, -reptum [*raipiō*], tear apart, rob, plunder, pillage, ravage

dis- or dī-, inseparable prefix, apart, in different directions, not, un-

Dīs, Dītis, m. the god of the lower world, the Greek Pluto

dis-cēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum, go away, go, scatter, depart, withdraw

dis-ceptō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*captō* (*capio*)], snatch], discuss, dispute, decide

discessus, -ūs [*dis-cēdō*], *m.* going away, withdrawal, departure

disciplina, -ae [*discipulus* (*discō*)], pupil], *f.* training, instruction, discipline F, study, pursuit, knowledge, skill

discō, 3, didicī, learn, be taught. (disciple†)

discordia, -ae [*dis-cors* (*cor*)], disagreeing], *f.* disagreement, discord F

describō, 3, -scripsī, -scriptum [*dis-*], distribute, apportion, assign

discrimen, -inis [*dis-cernō*, separate], *n.* separation, division, turning-point, critical moment, crisis, danger, decision. (discriminate†, discrimination†)

dis-iunctus, -a, -um [*cp. dī-iungō*], parted, separated, distant, remote. (disjointed F)

dispergō, 3, -spersi, -spersum [*dis-*, *spargō*], scatter, disperse F

dispersē [*dispersus*], *adv.* here and there, singly

dis-pertiō, 4, -ivi, -itum [*partiō*, divide], distribute, divide, allot

dis-putō, 1, -āvī, -ātum, discuss, argue, insist. (dispute F)

dis-sēminō, 1, -āvī, -ātum, sow or scatter abroad, disseminate†

dissēnsiō, -ōnis [*dis-sentiō*], *f.* difference of opinion, disagreement, discord, dissension F

dis-sentiō, 4, -sēnsī, -sēnsū, disagree, differ, dissent†

dis-sideō, 2, -sēdī [*sedeō*, sit], disagree, differ, be at variance

dis-similis, -e, unlike, different, dissimilar F

dissimilitūdō, -inis [*dis-similis*], *f.* unlikeness, difference. (dissimilitude†)

dis-simulō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*simulō*, make like], disguise, conceal, dissemble F, pretend. (dissimulation†)

dis-sipō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*old supō*, throw], scatter, spread abroad, dissipate†. (dissipation†)

dissolūtiō, -ōnis [*dis-solvō*], *f.* breaking up, dissolution†, frivolity, dissoluteness

dissolūtus, -a, -um [*dis-solvō*], lax, remiss, careless. (dissolute†)

dis-solvō, 3, -solvi, -solūtum, relax, loosen, break up, pay, free from debt. (dissolve†)

distentus, -a, -um [*dis-tineō* (*teneō*)], engaged, occupied, busy

distinguō, 3, -stinxī, -stinctum [*dis-*], mark, set off, distinguish†, adorn

distrāctus, -a, -um [*dis-trahō*], divided, divergent

dis-trahō, 3, -trāxī, -trāctum, draw apart, tear or take away. (distract†, distraction†)

dis-tribuō, 3, -tribui, -tribūtum, divide, assign, distribute†

distringō, 3, -strinxī, -strictum [*dis-*], draw asunder, distract, harass. (district F, distress F)

diū, *adv.* long, for a long time

dīus, -a, -um [*cp. dīvus*, divine], divine; *mē dīus fidius*, (so help me the god of truth, on my honor

- diūturnitās, -ātis** [*diūturnus*], *f.*
length of time, duration
- diūturnus, -a, -um** [*diū*], long-
continued, lasting, protracted
- dī-vellō, 3, -velli, -vulsum**, pluck
or tear away *or* apart, rend, sepa-
rate, sever
- dīversus, -a, -um** [*dī-vertō*, turn
away], turned different ways, di-
verse F, different, opposite
- dividō, 3, -visi, -visum**, divide†,
separate, distribute. (division F)
- divinitus** [*divinus*], *adv.* by divine
favor *or* power, providentially
- divinus, -a, -um** [*divus*, divine], di-
vine F, superhuman, godlike
- divitiae, -ārum** [*dīves*, rich], *f.*
riches, wealth
- dīvortium, -ī** [*vertō*], *n.* parting,
watershed, divorce F
- dō, dare, dedī, datum**, give, grant,
allow, bestow, assign, afford, put;
litterās dare, send (write) a letter
(*hence* date F). (datum†, dative†)
- doceō, 2, -uī, -ctum** [*cp. decet, discō*],
teach, explain, inform, show. (doc-
tor F, docile F)
- doctrina, -ae** [*doceō*], *f.* teaching,
instruction, learning, education,
culture. (doctrine F)
- doctus, -a, -um** [*doceō*], taught,
learned, cultivated
- Dolābella, -ae, m.** a cognomen;
P. Cornelius Dolabella, third hus-
band of Tullia, 185 5
- doleō, 2, -uī, -itūrus** [*cp. dolor*],
feel pain, be pained, grieve
- dolor, -ōris, m.** pain, grief, dis-
tress, resentment, indignation.
(doleful F, dolorous F)
- domesticus, -a, -um** [*domus*], of the
home *or* family, domestic F, pri-
vate, internal, civil
- Domesticus, -ī, m.** a cognomen;
Serranus Domesticus, 173 11
- domicilium, -ī** [*domus*], *n.* habita-
tion, dwelling, home, domicile F
- domina, -ae, f.** *see* dominus
- dominātiō, -ōnis** [*dominor*, be mas-
ter], *f.* mastery, lordship, power,
rule, supremacy. (domination F)
- dominus, -ī, m., domina, -ae, f.**
[*domus*] master, mistress, owner.
(don Sp, dame F, dominate†, do-
minion F, domineer [Dutch])
- Domitius, -ī, m.** a gentile name;
L. Domitius Ahenobarbus, 188 14
- domō, 1, -uī, -itum**, tame, subdue.
(indomitable†)
- domus, -ūs, locative domī, f.** house,
home, household, family
- dōnō, 1, -āvi, -ātum** [*dōnum*], pre-
sent, give. (donation F)
- dōnum, -ī** [*dō*], *n.* gift, present
- dormiō, 4, -īvi, -itum**, sleep. (dor-
mant F, dormer F, dormitory†)
- Drusus, -ī, m.** a cognomen; *M.*
Livius Drusus, 101 21
- dubitātiō, -ōnis** [*dubitō*], *f.* doubt,
hesitation, uncertainty
- dubitō, 1, -āvi, -ātum** [*dubius*],
doubt F, hesitate. (indubitable†)
- dubius, -a, -um** [*cp. duo*], doubtful,
uncertain, dubious†. *Subst. n.*
doubt
- dūcō, 3, dūxī, ductum**, lead, guide,
draw, drag away, bring, conduct,
influence, derive, consider, think,
hold. (ductile F; *cpds., as* con-
duce†, deduct†)

ductus, -ūs [*dūcō*], *m.* a leading, leadership, command, direction. (duct†)

dūdum [*diū, dum*], *adv.* some time ago, for a long time

duint, *old form in place of subjv.*
dent (*dō*)

dulcēdō, -inis [*dulcis*], *f.* sweetness, charm

dulcis, -e, sweet, fresh (*of water*), agreeable, charming. (dulcet F)

dum, conj. while, so long as, until, if only, provided; *with modo*, provided only

dumtaxat [*dum, taxō*, touch, estimate], *adv.* simply, merely, at least

duo, duae, duo, num. adj. two. (duet It)

duodecim [*duo, decem*], *num. adj.*
indecl. twelve

duodecimus, -a, -um [*duodecim*],
num. adj. the twelfth. (duodecimo†, duodecimal†)

dūrus, -a, -um, hard, rude, rough, stern, not susceptible. (*cp.* durable F, during F)

dux, ducis [*cp. dūcō*], *c.* leader, guide, commander, general. (duke F, ducal F)

Dyrrhachium, -ī, n. an important seaport in Illyria, on the Adriatic, opp. Brundisium

ē, see ex

ēbrius, -a, -um, drunk, intoxicated. (inebriate†)

ebur, -oris, n. ivory F

eburneus, -a, -um [*ebur*], of ivory

ecquid [*ecquis*] *adv.* at all

ecquis (-quī), -quae (-qua), -quid (-quod) [*quis*], *interrog. pron.* is there anyone who? any? whether anyone (*or* anything)

ēdictum, -ī [*ē-dicō*], *n.* proclamation, order, edict†

ēditus, -a, -um [*ē-dō*], elevated, high

ē-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum [*-dō, -dere*, put], set forth, give out, tell, publish.

(edit†, edition F)

ē-doceō, 2, -docuī, -doctum, instruct, explain, show, inform

ēducō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*cp. dux*], bring up, train. (educate†)

ē-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, lead out *or* forth, draw, conduct, take along. (educate†)

ef-ferō, -ferre, ex-tulī, ē-lātum, carry out, bring forth, lift up, raise, exalt, extol. (elate†, elation†)

ef-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [*faciō*], work out, accomplish, effect F, cause. (efficient F, effectual F)

effigiēs, -ēī [*ex, fingō*, form], *f.* copy, likeness, portrait, image, effigy F

ef-frēnātus, -a, -um [*frēnō*, bridle], unbridled, unrestrained

ef-fringō, 3, -frēgī, -frāctum [*frangō*], break off *or* open

ef-fugiō, 3, -fūgī, flee away, escape

egēns, -entis [*egeō*], *adj.* needy, poor, indigent F

egeō, 2, -uī, be needy, lack, want

egestās, -ātis [*egēns*], *f.* want, poverty, need

ego, mei, *1st pers. pron.* I

ego-met, *emphatic ego*

ē-gredior, 3, -gressus sum [*gradior*], step out, go forth, depart, disembark. (egress†)

- ēgregiē** [*ēgregius*], *adv.* excellently, splendidly
- ēgregius, -a, -um** [*ē, grex*, herd], uncommon, remarkable, excellent, distinguished, choice. (egregious†)
- ē-iciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectum** [*iaciō*], cast *or* throw out, eject†, drive out; *sē ēicere* rush out
- ē-lābor, 3, -lāpsus sum**, slip off *or* away, escape. (elapse†)
- ēlabōrātus, -a, -um** [*ē-labōrō*], highly wrought, elaborate†
- ē-labōrō, 1, -āvī, -ātum**, work out, labor, strive, perfect, elaborate†
- ēlegāns, -antis** [*ē-ligō (legō)*], *adj.* fastidious, delicate, choice, tasteful, elegant F
- ē-lūdō, 3, -lūsī, -lūsum** [*lūdō*, play], mock, make sport of, jeer, elude†. (elusive†)
- emblēma, -atis** [*Greek*], *n.* relief ornament. (emblem†)
- ē-mergō, 3, -mersī, -mersum** [*mergō*, dip], rise, come forth, emerge†. (*cp.* emergency†)
- ē-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum**, send out *or* forth, let go, let escape. (emit†, *cp.* emissary†)
- emō, 3, ēmī, ēmptum**, take by purchase, buy
- ē-morior, 3, -mortuus sum**, die
- ēemptiō, -ōnis** [*emō*], *f.* a buying, purchase
- ē-nārō, 1, -āvī, -ātum**, relate *or* describe fully
- enim** [*cp. nam*], *conj.* for, in fact, certainly, to be sure
- Ennius, -ī, m.** the early Roman poet, 107 9, 109 10
1. **eō, ire, īī *or* īvī, itum**, go, march
2. **eō** [*is*], *adv.* to that place, thither, to such a degree
- eōdem** [*īdem*], *adv.* to the same place *or* point
- Ephesus, -a, -um** [*Ephesus*], Ephesian. *Subst. plur. m.* the Ephesians
- Ephesus, -ī, f.** a city of western Asia Minor
- epigramma, -atis** [*Greek*], *n.* inscription, epigram F
- Ēpirus, -ī, f.** a country northwest of Greece
- epistula, -ae** [*Greek*], *f.* epistle F, letter
- eques, -itis** [*equus*], *m.* horseman, knight
- equester, -tris, -tre** [*eques*], of a horseman, of cavalry, equestrian†
- e-quidem**, *adv.* certainly, indeed, at any rate, *with 1st person as a rule* (I for my part, etc.)
- equitātus, -ūs** [*equitō*, ride], *m.* cavalry
- ergā, prep. with acc.** toward, in relation to
- ergō, adv.** accordingly, therefore, consequently, then
- ē-rigō, 3, -rēxī, -rēctum** [*regō*], raise up, lift, cheer, encourage. (erect†)
- ē-ripiō, 3, -ripiū, -reptum** [*rapīō*], tear out, tear *or* snatch away, wrest from, rescue from
- errō, 1, -āvī, -ātum**, go astray, wander, be mistaken, err F. (*cp.* erratic†, erratum†, erroneoust†)
- error, -ōris** [*errō*], *m.* wandering, mistake, error F
- ē-ructō, 1, -āvī, -ātum**, belch forth. (*cp.* eructation†)

ē-rudiō, 4, **-ivī**, **-itum** [*rudis*], educate, instruct, teach

ēruditus, **-a**, **-um** [*ē-rudiō*], educated, cultivated. (*erudite*†, *cp.* *erudition*†)

ē-rumpō, 3, **-rūpī**, **-ruptum**, burst or break out or forth, rush out. (*erupt*†, *cp.* *eruption*†)

Erymanthus, **-a**, **-um** [*Erymanthus*], of Erymanthus (*mountain in northwestern Arcadia*), Erymanthian

ē-scendō, 3, **-scendī**, **-scēsum** [*scandō*], climb up, ascend, mount *et*, *conj.* and; *et . . . et*, both . . . and; *as adv.* also, too

et-enim, *conj.* for truly, and indeed **etiam** [*et, iam*], *adv.* even now, still, even, also, again; **sed etiam** (*after nōn solum*), but also

etiam-sī, *conj.* even if

Etrūria, **-ae**, *f.* a district in central Italy

et-sī, *conj.* even if, though, and yet **Eurōpa**, **-ae**, *f.* a maiden loved by Jupiter

ē-vādō, 3, **-vāsī**, **-vāsum**, go forth, get away, escape. (*evade* F, *cp.* *evasion* F)

ē-vellō, 3, **-vellī**, **-vulsum**, pluck or tear out or away, remove

ēventus, **-ūs** [*ē-veniō*], *m.* outcome, result, event F. (*cp.* *eventual* F)

ē-vertō, 3, **-vertī**, **-versum**, overturn, overthrow, destroy, ruin

ēvocātor, **-ōris** [*ē-vocō*, call forth, evoke F], *m.* summoner, recruiter, instigator

ē-vomō, 3, **-vomui**, **-vomitum**, vomit forth, eject, disgorge

ex or **ē** (*ē* not used before a vowel), *prep.* with *abl.* out of, from, of, according to, in the interest of, after; *in some phrases* in or on. (*ex*-†)

ex-aggerō, 1, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, heap up, accumulate, enlarge. (*exaggerate*†)

ex-animō, 1, **-āvi**, **-ātum** [*anima*], take away breath (life), kill, agitate, terrify, trouble

ex-audiō, 4, **-ivī**, **-itum**, hear plainly, hear

ex-cavō, 1, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, hollow out. (*excavate*†)

ex-cēdō, 3, **-cessī**, **-cessum**, go out or away, depart, pass. (*exceed* F, *excess* F)

excellēns, **-entis** [*ex-cellō*], *adj.* surpassing, eminent, excellent F. (*cp.* *excellence* F)

ex-cellō, 3, —, **-celsum** [**cellō*, raise], be superior or eminent, surpass, excel F

excelsus, **-a**, **-um** [*ex-cellō*], elevated, lofty, high. *Subst. n.* in **excelsō**, on high. (*excelsior*†)

ex-cidō, 3, **-cidi** [*cadō*], fall out, fall

ex-cipiō, 3, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum** [*capiō*], take out, withdraw, except F, take up, receive, intercept, capture. (*cp.* *exception* F)

ex-citō, 1, **-āvi**, **-ātum** [*citō*, set in motion], call out, arouse, excite F, awaken, inspire, raise

ex-clūdō, 3, **-clūsi**, **-clūsum** [*claudō*], shut out, exclude†. (*exclusive*†)

ex-colō, 3, **-colui**, **-cultum**, cultivate, improve, refine

ex-cruciō, 1, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, torture, torment. (*excruciating*†)

- excubiae, -ārum** [*ex-cubō*, lie out on guard], *f. plur.* watch, keeping guard, sentinels
- excursiō, -ōnis** [*ex-currō*], *f.* sally, raid. (excursion†)
- excūsatiō, -ōnis** [*excūsō*, excuse], *f.* excusing, excuse F
- exemplum, -ī** [*ex-imō*, take out], *n.* sample, copy, model, instance, example F, precedent, manner. (*cp.* exemplar F, exemplary†)
- ex-eō, 4, -iī, -itum**, go out *or* forth, depart. (exit†)
- ex-erceō, 2, -uī, -itum** [*arceō*, restrain], train, exercise F, practice, conduct, manage, administer
- exercitātiō, -ōnis** [*exercitō*, train], *f.* training, exercise F, practice, skill
- exercitātus, -a, -um** [*exercitō*], trained, practiced, experienced
- exercitus, -ūs** [*ex-erceō*], *m.* army
- ex-hauriō, 4, -hausī, -haustum**, draw out *or* off, drain, get rid of. (exhaust†, *cp.* exhaustion†)
- ex-igō, 3, -ēgī, -āctum** [*agō*], drive out, require, demand, collect, exact†, finish. (exigent†, *cp.* exigency F)
- exiguus, -a, -um** [*ex-igō*], small, scanty, limited
- eximiē** [*eximius*], *adv.* exceedingly, very much
- eximius, -a, -um** [*ex-imō*, take out], choice, select, distinguished, extraordinary, eminent
- existimātiō, -ōnis** [*ex-istimō*], *f.* estimate, judgment, reputation
- existimātor, -ōris** [*ex-istimō*], *m.* judge, critic
- ex-istimō, 1, -āvi, -ātum** [*aestimō*, value, esteem F], think, believe, consider, suppose
- exitiōsus, -a, -um** [*exitium*], ruinous, pernicious
- exitium, -ī** [*ex-eō*], *n.* ruin, destruction
- exitus, -ūs** [*ex-eō*], *m.* going out, outcome, issue, end, exit†
- ex-ōrdior, 4, -ōrsus sum**, begin
- ex-ōrnō, 1, -āvi, -ātum**, fit out, adorn
- exōrsus, -ūs** [*ex-ōrdior*], *m.* beginning, commencement
- ex-pediō, 4, -ivī, -itum** [*pēs*, foot], unfetter, disentangle, set free, settle, arrange. *Impers.* it helps, is expedient F. (expedite†, *cp.* expedition†)
- ex-pellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsum**, drive out *or* away, eject, expel†
- expers, -pertis** [*ex, pars*], *adj.* having no part *or* share, without
- ex-petō, 3, -petivī, -petitum**, seek out *or* after, demand, request
- ex-pilō, 1, -āvi, -ātum**, plunder, rob
- ex-piō, 1, -āvi, -ātum** [*piō*, propitiate], atone for, expiate†. (*cp.* expiation†)
- ex-pleō, 2, -plēvī, -plētum**, fill up, satisfy
- ex-plicō, 1, -āvi and -uī, -ātum and -itum**, unfold, release, set free. (*cp.* explicable†, explicit F)
- ex-plōrō, 1, -āvi, -ātum** [*plōrō*, complain], examine, investigate, explore F. (*cp.* exploration†)
- ex-pōnō, 3, -posuī, -positum**, set out *or* forth, expose F, explain. (exponent†, expound F, *cp.* exposition F)

ex-portō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, carry out, export†

ex-primō, 3, -pressi, -pressum [*premō*], press *or* squeeze out, form, portray, represent, express F. *Perf. ptcp. as adj.* clear, lifelike. (*cp.* expression F, expressive F)

ex-prōmō, 3, -prōmpsi, -prōmptum [*prōmō*, bring out], show forth, display, exhibit

expugnātiō, -ōnis [*ex-pugnō*], *f.* storming, capture

ex-pugnō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, storm, capture

ex-quirō, 3, -quisivi, -quisitum [*quaerō*], search out, inquire into, investigate. (exquisite†)

ex-siccō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, dry out, drain, empty

exsilium, -i [*exsul*], *n.* banishment, exile F

ex-sistō, 3, -stiti, stand *or* come forth, appear, exist F, become. (*cp.* existence F)

ex-solvō, 3, -solvi, -solūtum, set loose *or* free, release, deliver

exspectātiō, -ōnis [*ex-spectō*], *f.* awaiting, anticipation, expectation†

ex-spectō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, look out for, watch for, expect†, hope for

ex-spoliō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, plunder, pillage, spoil

ex-stinguō, 3, -stinxi, -stinctum [*stinguō*, put out], extinguish†, destroy. (extinct†, *cp.* extinction†)

ex-stō, 1, —, -stāturus, stand out *or* forth, exist, be. (extant†)

exsul, -ulis, *c.* an exile F

exsultō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*freq. of ex-siliō (saliō)*], spring up *or* out, dance for joy, exult F

ex-tenuō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*tenuō*, make thin], diminish, belittle, disparage. (extenuate†)

exter, *or* **exterus**, -a, -um [*ex*], outer, foreign. *Superl.* **extrēmus**, outermost, furthest, extreme F, last

ex-terminō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*ex, terminus*], drive out, expel, banish. (exterminate†)

externus, -a, -um [*exter*], foreign, external†

ex-timēscō, 3, -timui [*incept. of timeō*], be much afraid of, fear greatly, dread

ex-tollō, 3, *defective*, lift *or* raise up, extol†

ex-torqueō, 2, -torsī, -tortum, wrest *or* wrench away. (extort†)

extrā [*exter*], *adv. and prep. with acc.* outside of, beyond, without

extrēmus, -a, -um, *see* **exter**. *Subst. n.* the end; *ad extrēmum*, at last; *in extrēmō*, at the end

ex-trūdō, 3, -trūsī, -trūsum, thrust out, push off, pack off. (extrude†)

ex-turbō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, drive out (*by force*)

exuō, 3, -ui, -ūtum, doff, take off, lay aside

ex-ūrō, 3, -ussi, -ūstum, burn up, consume

exuviae, -arum [*exuō*], *f. plur.* booty, spoils, trophies

f. = filius

facētē [*facētus*], *adv.* wittily. (*cp.* facetious F)

- facile** [*facilis*], *adv.* easily, willingly
facilis, -e [*faciō*], practicable, easy, easy-going. (*facile* F)
facilitās, -ātis [*facilis*], *f.* easiness, ease, facility F, courtesy, affability
facinorōsus, -a, -um [*facinus*], criminal, wicked, vicious. *Subst. plur. m.* criminals
facinus, -oris [*faciō*], *n.* deed, act, misdeed, crime, outrage
faciō, 3, fēcī, factum, do, make, cause, bring about, perform, accomplish, build, create, elect. *Pass. fiō, fierī, factus sum*, also become, happen
factum, -ī [*faciō*], *n.* deed, act. (*fact*†, *feat* F)
factus, -a, -um [*faciō*], wrought, finished, artistic
facultās, -ātis [*facilis*], *f.* capability, power, capacity, ability, skill, opportunity, means. (*faculty* F)
Faesulae, -ārum, f. plur. a city in Etruria (Fiesole, near Florence)
Faesulānus, -a, -um [*Faesulae*], of Fæsulæ
falcārius, -ī [*falx*, sickle, scythe], *m.* sickle-maker, scythe-maker
Falcidius, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *C. Falcidius*, 91 3
fallō, 3, fefellī, falsum, deceive, disappoint, trick, escape the notice of. (*cp.* fallible†, fallacy†)
falsō [*falsus*], *adv.* falsely†, erroneously
falsus, -a, -um [*fallō*], deceptive, false†, groundless, unfounded
fāma, -ae [*fārī*, speak], *f.* report, rumor, story, reputation, fame F, praise
famēs, -is, abl. famē, f. hunger, famine F
familia, -ae (*and old gen. -ās*) [*famulus*, servant], *f.* household (*including slaves*), a company or gang of slaves, house, family†
familiāris, -e [*familia*], belonging to the household, domestic, intimate, friendly, familiar F; **rēs familiāris**, property, estate. *Subst. m.* intimate friend
familiāritās, -ātis [*familiāris*], *f.* intimacy, familiarity F
familiāriter [*familiāris*], *adv.* familiarly, intimately
fānum, -ī [*cp. fēstus*], *n.* shrine, sanctuary, temple. (*fane*†)
fās [*fārī*, speak], *n. indecl.* divine right; **fās est**, it is right or fitting or lawful
fasciculus, -ī [*fascis*], *m.* little bundle, packet. (*fascicle*†)
fascis, -is, m. bundle; *plur.* the fasces†, bundle of rods; *Introd.* § 24 fin. (*fascist* It)
fātālis, -e [*fātum*], fated, destined, marked by fate, destructive, fatal†
fateor, 2, fassus sum [*cp. fārī*, speak], admit, confess, acknowledge
fātum, -ī [*fārī*], *n.* oracle, destiny, fate†
faucēs, -ium, f. plur. throat, jaws, pass (*in mountains*), defile
faveō, 2, fāvī, fautum, be favorable F, favor F, approve of
fax, facis, f. torch, firebrand, meteor, comet
febris, -is, f. fever F

Februārius, -a, -um [*Februa* (*plur.*), feast of purification], of February†; *abbr.* Febr.

fēlicitās, -ātis [*fēlix*], *f.* good fortune, happiness, felicity F; *as a goddess*, Good Fortune

fēliciter [*fēlix*], *adv.* happily, successfully, fortunately

fēlix, -icis, adj. happy, favorable, successful

fēmina, -ae, f. female F, woman. (*cp.* feminine F)

femur, femoris, n. thigh. (femur†)

ferē [*cp. firmus*], *adv.* about, almost, for the most part, generally, in general, hardly (*with neg.*)

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear, carry, bring, endure, suffer, admit, move, propose, bring forward, receive, report, say, celebrate

ferōcitās, -ātis [*ferōx*], *f.* impetuosity, fierceness, ferocity F

ferōx, -ōcis [*cp. ferus*, wild], *adj.* high-spirited, confident, fiery. (ferocious†)

ferrāmentum, -ī [*ferrum*], *n.* iron tool or weapon, sword

ferreus, -a, -um [*ferrum*], of iron, hard-hearted, unfeeling

ferrum, -ī, n. iron, iron tool or weapon, sword. (ferric†, ferroust†)

fertilis, -e [*ferō*], fertile F, productive

festinātiō, -ōnis [*festinō*], *f.* haste, hurry

festinō, ī, -āvi, -ātum, make haste, hasten

fēstivus, -a, -um [*fēstus*], agreeable, pleasing, charming, jovial. (festive†)

fēstus, -a, -um, festive, festal F, merry

fictus, -a, -um [*figō*], feigned, fictitious†, false

fidēlis, -e [*fidēs*], faithful, trusty, true, sincere

fidēlitās, -ātis [*fidēlis*], *f.* faithfulness, fidelity F

fidēs, -ei [*fidō*], *f.* faith F, trust, confidence, belief, credit, honesty, honor, loyalty, promise, pledge, protection

fidius, -ī [*fidēs*], *m.* the god of faith (*Jupiter*); **mē diūs** (*or mēdiūs*) **fidius** (*sc. iuvet*), so help me the god of truth! by the god of truth!

figō, 3, fixī, fixum, fix†, fasten, plunge, plant (*fig.*)

filius, -ī, m., filia, -ae, f. [*cp. femina*], son, daughter. (*cp.* filial†)

figō, 3, finxi, fictum, mold, form, conceive, imagine, invent. (*cp.* fiction F, feign F, feint F)

finiō, 4, -ivi, -itum [*finis*], bound, limit, end (*trans.*), determine. (finite†, finish F, fine, *adj.* F)

finis, -is [*figō*], *m.* (*and f.*) end, limit, boundary; *plur.* borders, country. (fine F, in fine†, *cp.* final F)

finitimus, -a, -um [*finis*], bordering upon, next or near to, neighboring. *Subst. plur. m.* neighbors

fiō, fieri, factus sum [*cp. fui*], become, be made; *see faciō*

firmāmentum, -ī [*firmō*], *n.* support, strength. (firmament†)

firmō, ī, -āvi, -ātum [*firmus*], strengthen, secure, reënforce, fortify

firmus, -a, -um, firm F, strong, secure, reliable

Flaccus, -i, *m.* a cognomen; *M. Fulvius Flaccus*, 4 18; *v.* **Valerius**

flāgitiōsē [**flāgitiōsus**], *adv.* shamefully, disgracefully

flāgitiōsus, -a, -um [**flāgitium**], shameful, disgraceful, dissolute. (flagitious†)

flāgitium, -ī [**flāgitō**], *n.* deed of shame, outrage, disgrace

flāgitō, ī, -āvī, -ātum, demand, call or cry for

flagrō, ī, -āvī, -ātum, burn, blaze, glow, be aflame. (flagrant†)

Flāminius, -ī, *m.* a cognomen; *T. Quinctius Flamininus*, conqueror of Macedonia, 153 25

flamma, -ae [**flagrō**], *f.* flame F, fire, blaze

flectō, 3, flexī, flexum, bend, turn, persuade, prevail upon, overcome. (*cp.* flexible F, and *cpds.*, as reflect†)

fleō, 2, flēvī, flētum, weep, cry, lament

flētus, -ūs [**fleō**], *m.* weeping, tears

flōrēs, -entis [**flōreō**], *adj.* blooming, flourishing F, prosperous, eminent

flōrēō, 2, -uī [**flōs**], bloom, flourish F, prosper, be eminent

flōrēscō, 3, defective [*incept.* of **flōreō**], bloom, flourish (*cp.* florescence†)

flōs, flōris, m. blossom, bloom, flower F. (*cp.* floral†)

flūctus, -ūs [**fluō**, flow], *m.* flood, wave. (*cp.* fluctuate†)

flūmen, -inis [**fluō**], *n.* flow, stream, river, fluency

focus, -ī, m. fireplace, hearth. (focust†)

foederātus, -a, -um [**foederō** (2. **foedus**)], leagued together, confederated†, allied

1. **foedus, -a, -um**, foul, ugly, shameful, horrible, dreadful

2. **foedus, -eris, n.** [**fīdō**], league, alliance, agreement, treaty

fōns, fontis, m. spring, fountain F, well, source. (font†)

forās [*acc. plur. of old fora = foris*, door], *adv.* out of doors, forth, out. (*cp.* foreign F)

fore, see **sum**

forēnsis, -e [**forum**], of the market or forum, public, forensic†, legal

foris [*abl. plur., see forās*], *adv.* out of doors (*place where*), without, abroad. (*cp.* forest F, forfeit F)

fōrma, -ae, f. form F, figure, image, model, plan, beauty

Formiae, -ārum, f. plur. a town in southern Latium

Formiānus, -a, -um [**Formiae**], of Formiæ. *Subst. n.* an estate at Formiæ

formīdō, -inis, f. fear, dread, terror

formidolōsus, -a, -um [**formīdō**], terrible, dreadful. (*cp.* formidable F)

fors, abl. forte [**ferō**], *f.* chance. *Abl. as adv.* by chance, perchance, perhaps. (*cp.* fortuitous†)

forsitan [**fors sit an**], *adv.* perhaps, perchance

fortasse [**forte**], *adv.* perhaps, perchance

forte, see **fors**

fortis, -e, stout, active, courageous, brave. (fort F, forte F, forte It)

fortiter [*fortis*], *adv.* manfully, sturdily, bravely

fortitūdō, -inis [*fortis*], *f.* firmness, manliness, bravery, fortitude F

fortūna, -ae [*fors*], *f.* chance, fortune F, position, situation, lot, good fortune *or* misfortune; *plur.* property; *personif. as a goddess*, Fortune

fortūnātus, -a, -um [*fortūnō*, make prosperous], fortunate†, happy

forum, -ī [*cp. forās*], *n.* market place, forum†, *esp. the Forum at Rome*; Introd. § 48

Forum Aurēlium [*forum*], *n.* a market town on the Via Aurelia in Etruria

fragilitās, -ātis [*fragilis*, easily broken], *f.* weakness, fragility F, frailty F

frangō, 3, frēgī, frāctum, break, break in pieces, crush, weaken, subdue, overcome, wear out. (*cp.* fracture F, fraction F, fragile F)

frāter, frātris, m. brother; *also* cousin (*on father's side*). (*cp.* fraternal†, fraternity F)

fraudātiō, -ōnis [*fraudō*, cheat], *f.* cheating, deceit, fraud F

frequēns, -entis [*cp. farciō*, stuff], *adj.* packed, crowded, frequented†, in large numbers, numerous, repeated, often, frequent†

frequenter [*frequēns*], *adv.* in (*or* by) large numbers, numerous

frequentia, -ae [*frequēns*], *f.* numerous attendance *or* assembly, multitude, crowd. (frequency†)

frequentō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*frequēns*], throng, assemble (*trans.*) in crowds, fill (a place) with a throng, people. (frequent†)

frētus, -a, -um [*cp. firmus*], leaning *or* depending upon, relying on, trusting

frīgus, -oris, n. cold. (*cp.* frigid†)

frōns, frontis, f. forehead, brow, front F. (frontier F)

frūctus, -ūs [*fruor*], *m.* enjoyment, fruit F, crops, return, reward, profit, income, benefit, advantage. (*cp.* fructify F)

frūmentārius, -a, -um [*frūmentum*, grain], of grain *or* wheat; *rēs frūmentāria*, grain supply, grain, provisions

fruor, 3, frūctus sum, enjoy, have the use of, delight in

frūstrā [*fraus*], *adv.* in vain, to no purpose. (*cp.* frustrate†)

(frūx), frūgis [*cp. fruor*], *f.* fruit, produce; *usually plur.* crop, grain. (*cp.* frugal†)

fuga, -ae [*cp. fugiō*], *f.* flight. (fugue F)

fugiō, 3, fūgī, flee, flee from, run away, escape, shun

fugitivus, -a, -um [*fugiō*], running away, fugitive F. *Subst. m.* run-away slave

fulgeō, 2, fulsi [*cp. flagrō*], flash, glitter, gleam, shine, be conspicuous. (*cp.* effulgent†)

fulmen, -inis [*fulgeō*], *n.* lightning, thunderbolt. (*cp.* fulminate†)

Fulvius, -ī, m. a gentile name; *v.* Flaccus; *M. Fulvius Nobilior*, 109 15, 111 28

fundāmentum, -ī [1. *fundō*], *n.* foundation. (*cp.* fundamental†)

1. **fundō, 1, -āvi, -ātum** [*fundus*, bottom], found F, establish

2. **fundō, 3, fūdī, fūsum**, pour, shed, scatter, rout, vanquish. (*cp.* foundry F, confound F, confuse†)

fūnestus, -a, -um [*fūnus*, funeral], deadly, fatal, destructive

fungor, 3, fūctus sum, perform, discharge, fulfill. (*cp.* function F, defunct†)

fūnis, -is, m. rope, cord, cable. (*cp.* funicular†)

furiōsus, -a, -um [*furia*, rage, fury F], full of madness, raving, insane, furious F

Fūrius, -ī, m. a gentile name; *P. Furius*, 42 1; *L. Furius Philus*, 106 3; *v. Crassipēs*

furō, 3, (-ui), rage, rave, be mad *or* furious

furor, -ōris [*furō*], *m.* rage, fury, madness, passion. (*furore* It)

fūrtim [*fūrtum*], *adv.* by stealth, furtively F

fūrtum, -ī [*fūr* (*ferō*), thief], *n.* theft, robbery

fūstis, -is, m. cudgel, club

Gabinus, -ī, m. a gentile name; *P. Gabinius Cimber*, 37 23; *A. Gabinius* (lex Gabinia), 88 27; *P. Gabinius*, 103 4. *As adj.* -us, -a, -um, Gabinian, of Gabinius

Gaius, -ī, m. a prænomen; *abbr.* C. (*old form of G.*)

Gallia, -ae [*Gallus*], *f.* Gaul

Gallicānus, -a, -um [*Gallia*], Gallic

Gallicus, -a, -um [*Gallia*], Gallic, of Gaul

Gallus, -a, -um, Gallic, of Gaul. *Subst. m.* a Gaul

gāneō, -ōnis [*gānea*, eating-house], *m.* glutton, spendthrift, profligate

gaudeō, 2, gāvisus sum [*cp.* *gaudium*], rejoice F, be glad

gaudium, -ī, n. joy F, gladness, enjoyment, delight

gaza, -ae [*Persian*], *f.* treasure, wealth

gelidus, -a, -um [*gelū*, frost], cold, icy. (*gelid†, cp.* congeal F)

gemitus, -ūs [*gemō*, moan], *m.* sigh, groan, lamentation

gemma, -ae, f. bud, gem†, jewel

gemmeus, -a, -um [*gemma*], of a jewel, set with gems

gener, -erī, m. son-in-law

generātim [*genus*], *adv.* by classes *or* races, in general, generally

gēns, gentis [*cp.* *gignō*, beget], *f.* family, clan, tribe, race, nation. (*cp.* gentile F, gentle F)

genus, -eris [*cp.* *gēns*], *n.* birth, descent, family, house, race, class, sort, kind, type, nature, manner. (*cp.* general F, generous F)

gerō, 3, gessī, gestum, bear, carry, conduct, carry on, wage, accomplish, do; *rēs gestae*, achievements, exploits, history. (*cpds. as* digest†)

gestiō, 4, -īvī [*gestus* (*gerō*), bearing, gesture†], be eager *or* delighted, desire. (*cp.* gesticulate†)

Glabriō, -ōnis, m. a cognomen; *Manius Acilius Glabrio*, 78 12,

gladiātor, -ōris [*gladius*], *m.* gladiator†, cutthroat

gladiātōrius, -a, -um [*gladiātor*], of gladiators, gladiatorial†

gladius, -ī [*Celtic*], *m.* sword

Glaucia, -ae, m. a cognomen; *C. Ser. vilius Glaucia*, 4 21

glōria, -ae, f. glory F, fame, ambition

glōriōsē [*glōriōsus (glōria)*], *adv.* gloriously†

Gnaeus, -ī, m. a prænomen; *abbr.* Cn.

gnāvus, -a, -um, busy, diligent, industrious

Gorgō, -onis, f. Gōrgon, a name given esp. to Medusa (who turned anyone she looked upon to stone), but also to her two sisters

Gracchus, -ī, m. a cognomen; *Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus*, 3 20, 52 31, 144 15; his brother *Gaius*, 4 17, 52 32

gradus, -ūs, m. step, pace, grade F, degree F. (*cp.* gradual†, graduate†)

Graecia, -ae [*Graecus*], *f.* Greece†; Greek Italy (*Magna Graecia*)

Graeculus, -a, -um [*Graecus, dim.*], Greek (*contemptuous*). *Subst. m.* Greekling

Graecus, -a, -um, Greek†. *Subst. m.* a Greek; *n. plur.* Greek writings, Greek

grāmineus, -a, -um [*grāmen*, grass], of grass, of bamboo

grandis, -e, large, great, grown up. (grand F)

grātia, -ae [*grātus*], *f.* favor, esteem, popularity, good will, gratitude;

with habēre, feel grateful; *grātiās agere*, give thanks; *grātiā*, for the sake of, because of. (grace F, gratist†)

grātiōsus, -a, -um [*grātia*], in favor, popular, agreeable, obliging. (gracious F)

Grattius, -ī, m. the accuser of Archias, 102 10

grātuītō [*grātuītus*, voluntary], *adv.* without pay, gratuitously†, gratis

grātulātiō, -ōnis [*grātulor*], *f.* rejoicing, congratulation†, thanksgiving

grātulor, ī, -ātus sum [*grātus*], congratulate†, rejoice

grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, acceptable, dear, grateful†. (*cp.* gratitude†, gratuity†)

gravis, -e, heavy, weighty, important, serious, severe, grave F, disastrous, grievous F, sober, stable in character, worthy, dignified

gravitās, -ātis [*gravis*], *f.* weight, importance, gravity†, dignity

graviter [*gravis*], *adv.* weightily, strongly, seriously, severely, grievously F

gravō, ī, -āvī, -ātum [*gravis*], make heavy, burden; *as dep.* regard as a burden, be reluctant, object. (grieve F, *cp.* aggravate†)

grex, gregis, m. herd, drove, flock, horde, crowd. (*cp.* gregarious†, egregious†)

gubernātiō, -ōnis [*gubernō*], *f.* steering, control, government F. (*cp.* gubernatorial†)

gubernō, ī, -āvī, -ātum [*Greek*], steer, navigate, control, govern F

gustō, 1, -**āvi**, -**ātum** [*gustus*, taste], taste, enjoy. (*cp.* disgust F, gusto It)

gymnasium, -**ī** [*Greek*], *n.* place of exercise, gymnasium† (*in a Greek city*)

habēō, 2, -**uī**, -**itum**, have, hold, keep, consider, regard, render, involve, deliver (*a speech*); *in certain phrases*, be, find oneself; **grātiās habēre**, be grateful

habitō, 1, -**āvi**, -**ātum** [*freq. of habēō*], dwell, reside, stay, live, inhabit F. (*habitat*†, *habitation* F)

habitus, -**ūs** [*habēō*], *m.* condition, quality, appearance, aspect. (*habit* F)

haereō, 2, **haesi**, stick, cling, be caught. (*cp.* adhere†, cohere†)

haesitō, 1, -**āvi**, -**ātum** [*freq. of haereō*], hesitate†, be at a loss

Hannibal, -**alis**, *m.* the great Carthaginian general, 63 5

haruspex, -**icis**, *m.* soothsayer

hasta, -**ae**, *f.* staff, rod, pole, spear

haud, *adv.* not, by no means, not at all (*with a single word*)

hauriō, 4, **hausi**, **haustum**, draw out or up (*of fluids*), drain, drink up, drink in, derive. (*exhaust*†)

hebescō, 3, *defective* [*incept. of habēō*], grow blunt or dull

Heius, -**ī**, *m.* a gentile name; *C. Heius*, 131 1

Henna, -**ae**, *f.* a high-perched city in central Sicily

Hennēnsis, -**e** [*Henna*], *of or belonging to Henna. Subst. plur. m.* the people of Henna

Hēraclēa, -**ae** (*and -īa, -īae*), *f.* a Greek city in southern Italy

Hēracliēnsis, -**e** [*Hēraclīa*], of Heraclea. *Subst. plur. m.* the people of Heraclea

Herculēs, -**is**, *m.* a Greek hero; **herculēs**, **mē hercule**, *and mehercule* (= *ita mē Herculēs iuvet*, so help me Hercules!), by Hercules! verily

hērēditās, -**ātis** [*hērēs*, heir], *f.* inheritance F. (*heredity* F)

herī [*a locative form*], *adv.* yesterday

hesternus, -**a**, -**um** [*herī*], of yesterday, yesterday's

hibernō, 1, -**āvi**, -**ātum** [*hibernus*], winter, pass the winter. (*hibernate*†)

hibernus, -**a**, -**um** [*hiems*], of winter. *Subst. plur. n. (sc. castra)* winter quarters

hic, **haec**, **hoc** [*c for -ce, demonstr. encl.*], *demonstr. pron. of the 1st person*, this, he, she, it, the following, the latter or the former. *Encl. -ce may be added in such forms as huiusce, hīsce. In quests. hicine, haecine, etc.*

hīc [*hic*], *adv. of place where*, here, upon this, hereupon, under these circumstances

hiemō, 1, -**āvi**, -**ātum** [*hiems*], spend the winter, winter

hiems, **hiemis**, *f.* winter, storm

Hierō, -**ōnis**, *m.* Hiero II, a king of Syracuse, 148 18

hinc [*hic*], *adv. of place whence*, hence, from this place, from this side

Hispania, -**ae** [*Hispanus*], *f.* Spain

- Hispāniēnsis**, -e [*Hispānia*], Spanish, of or in Spain
- Hispānus**, -a, -um, Spanish. *Subst. plur. m.* the Spaniards
- hodiē** [*hō(c) diē*], *adv.* today
- hodiernus**, -a, -um [*hodiē*], of today, today's
- Homērus**, -ī, *m.* Homer, *the poet*, 107 18, 110 6
- homō**, -inis [*cp. humus*], *c.* man, human being, fellow. (homage F; see *hūmānus*)
- honestās**, -ātis [*honestus*], *f.* honor, repute, honesty F
- honestē** [*honestus*], *adv.* honorably, properly, becomingly, decently
- honestō**, ī, -āvī, -ātum [*honestus*], do honor to, honor, grace
- honestus**, -a, -um [*honōs*], honorable, honored, worthy, noble. (honest F)
- honōrificē** [*honōri-ficus (honōs, faciō)*], *adv.* with honor or respect
- honōs (honor)**, -ōris, *m.* honor F, respect, esteem, distinction, public office; *personif. as a god*, Honor
- hōra**, -ae [*Greek*], *f.* hour F
- horribilis**, -e [*horreō*, shudder], terrible, dreadful, horrible F
- hortātus**, -ūs [*hortor*], *m.* encouragement, exhortation, advice
- Hortēnsius**, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *Q. Hortensius Hortalus*, the orator, 88 13, 101 21
- hortor**, ī, -ātus sum, urge, encourage, exhort†. (*cp.* hortatory†)
- hortus**, -ī, *m.* garden. (horticulture†)
- hospes**, -itis [*cp. hostis*], *m.* (and *f.*) stranger, guest, host F, guest-friend. (*cp.* hospitable F)
- hospitālis**, -e [*hospes*], hospitable. (*cp.* hospitality F, hospital F)
- hospitium**, -ī [*hospes*], *n.* guest-friendship, friendship, hospitality. (hospice F)
- hostilis**, -e [*hostis*], of an enemy, hostile†, unfriendly
- hostis**, -is [*cp. hospes*], *c.* (stranger), enemy (*public or national*). (host F = army)
- HS** [= *IIS, duo + sēmis*], see *sēstertius*
- hūc** [*hic*], *adv.* of place whither, hither, to this place, to this, so far
- hūmānitas**, -ātis [*hūmānus*], *f.* human nature, humanity F, kindness, kindliness, sympathy, courtesy, refinement, cultivation
- hūmānus**, -a, -um [*homō*], of men, human F, humane F, kind, gentle, cultured, refined
- humilis**, -e [*humus*], low, common, humble F, base. (*cp.* humility F, humiliate†)
- humus**, -ī, *f.* ground, earth; *locative* *humī*, on the ground. (*cp.* exhume F)
- hydria**, -ae [*Greek*], *f.* water jar, urn
- Iacchus**, -ī, *m.* a Greek god, Dionysus (Bacchus)
- iaceō**, 2, -uī, lie, lie prostrate, be helpless. (*cp.* adjacent†)
- iaciō**, 3, iēcī, iactum [*cp. iaceō*], throw, fling, cast, hurl, lay (*foundations*), utter. (*cp. cpds.*, as inject†, reject†)
- iactō**, ī, -āvī, -ātum [*freq. of iaciō*], toss about, brandish, speak, boast, vaunt; *sē iactāre*, make oneself

- conspicuous, show off. (jet F, jetty F, jettison F)
- iacūra**, -ae [*iaciō*], *f.* throwing away or overboard, loss, expense
- iactus**, -ūs [*iaciō*], *m.* throwing, casting; *used of lightning*
- Iālŷsus**, -ī, *m.* a hero of Rhodes, 157 3
- iam**, *adv.* now, already, soon, immediately, moreover; *with diū, dūdum, pridem*, long since, long ago; *iam vērō*, moreover; *nōn iam*, no longer
- Iānuārius**, -a, -um [*Iānus*], of January†
- ibi** [*is*], *adv.* there, in that place, thereupon
- id-circō** [*cp. circā*], *adv.* for that (this) reason, therefore
- idem, eadem, idem** [*is, -dem (cp. dē)*], *demonstr. pron.* the same; *often likewise, also. (cp. identical F)*
- id-eō**, *adv.* for that reason, therefore
- Īdib.** = **Īdibus**; *see* **Īdūs**
- idiōta**, -ae [*Greek*], *m.* layman, ignoramus, idiot F
- idōneus**, -a, -um, fit, suitable, proper, capable, trustworthy
- Īdūs**, -uum, *f. plur.* the Ides of the month,—15th of March, May, July, October, 13th of the other months
- igitur**, *conj.* therefore, then, accordingly, well then, now
- i-gnārus**, -a, -um [*in-, gnārus*, knowing], not knowing, ignorant, unaware
- ignāvia**, -ae [*i-gnāvus*, idle], *f.* idleness, cowardice, listlessness
- ignis**, -is, *m.* fire. (igneous†, ignite†)
- ignōminia**, -ae [*in-, (g)nōmen*], *f.* disgrace, shame, dishonor, ignominy F
- ignōrātiō**, -ōnis [*ignōrō*], *f.* want of knowledge, ignorance
- ignōrō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*i-gnārus?*], have no knowledge of, be ignorant (F) of, be unaware of, misunderstand. (ignore F, ignorance F)
- i-gnōscō**, 3, -gnōvī, -gnōtum [*in (prep.), (g)nōscō*], overlook, pardon, forgive
- i-gnōtus**, -a, -um [*in-, (g)nōtus*], unknown, strange. *Subst. plur. m.* strangers
- Īlias**, -ados [*Īlium*], *f.* the Iliad of Homer
- Īlium**, -ī, *n.* Troy, a city in north-western Asia Minor
- ille, illa, illud**, *demonstr. pron. of the 3d person*, that, yonder, that one, he, she, it, the famous (or Great), the former (or latter)
- illinc** [*ille*], *adv.* thence, from that place or side, on that side
- illūc** [*ille*], *adv.* thither
- Īllyricus**, -a, -um [*Īllyriū (in Dalmatia, etc.)*], of the Illyrians, Illyrian
- imāgō**, -inis [*cp. imitor*], *f.* copy, likeness, reflection, image†, mask, bust, statue. (*cp. imaginary†, imagination F*)
- imbēcillitās**, -ātis [*imbēcillus*, weak], *f.* weakness, helplessness. (imbecility F)
- imberbis**, -e [*in-, barba*, beard], beardless
- imitātor**, -ōris [*imitor*], *m.* imitator†

- imitor**, 1, **-ātus sum** [*cp. imāgō*], imitate†, copy
- immānis**, -e, immense, vast, great, monstrous, inhuman, savage
- immānitās**, -ātis [*immānis*], *f.* monstrousness, enormity, ferocity
- im-mātūrus**, -a, -um [*mātūrus*], unripe, untimely, premature, immature†
- im-mineō**, 2, *defective* [*cp. minae*, threats], overhang, impend, menace, be imminent†
- im-minuō**, 3, -uī, -ūtum, lessen, weaken, diminish, impair
- im-mittō**, 3, -misi, -missum, send in *or* against, admit, let in, let loose
- immō**, *adv.* no indeed, on the contrary, yes indeed (*but adding a correction*); with **vērō**, nay even, nay rather
- im-mortālis**, -e, immortal†, undying, imperishable. (*immortelle F*)
- immortālitas**, -ātis [*im-mortālis*], *f.* immortality†
- imp.** = **imperator**
- impediō**, 4, -ivī, -itum [*cp. compedēs*, fetters], fetter, entangle, hinder, make difficult, impede†, prevent
- im-pellō**, 3, -pulī, -pulsum, strike, urge on, impel†, incite, persuade. (impulse†)
- im-pendeō**, 2, *defective*, overhang, threaten, impend†, be imminent *or* at hand
- im-pendō**, 3, -dī, -pēsum, weigh out, lay out, expend
- imperātor**, -ōris [*im-perō*], *m.* commander in chief, general in command; also epithet of Jupiter. (emperor F)
- imperātōrius**, -a, -um [*imperātor*], of a general
- im-peritus**, -a, -um, inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant
- imperium**, -ī [*im-perō*], *n.* command, order, exaction, military authority, supreme command, power, dominion, empire F. (*cp. imperial F*)
- im-perō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*parō*, prepare], command, order, requisition, demand, rule, govern
- im-pertiō**, 4, -ivī, -itum [*partiō* (*pars*)], share with, grant, confer. (impart F)
- im-petrō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*patrō*, bring about], gain one's request *or* end, accomplish, obtain, secure
- impetus**, -ūs [*petō*], *m.* attack, assault, impulse, violence, vehemence. (impetus†, impetuous F)
- im-pius**, -a, -um, undutiful, disloyal, unpatriotic, wicked, impious†
- im-plicō**, 1, -āvi (-uī), -ātum (-itum), enfold, entangle, bind up with, involve, implicate†. (implicit†)
- im-plōrō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*plōrō*, wail], beseech, implore†, entreat
- importūnus**, -a, -um [*cp. opportūnus* (*portus*)], unfit, grievous, dangerous, cruel, savage. (*cp. importunate†*)
- im-potēns**, -entis, *adj.* powerless, impotent F, uncontrolled, violent
- imprimis** = **in primis**, among the first, chiefly, particularly
- improbitās**, -ātis [*im-probus*], *f.* wickedness, depravity, shamelessness

- im-probō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum, disprove, censure, reject
- im-probus**, -a, -um, bad, wicked, abandoned, base, vile, shameless
- im-prōvisus**, -a, -um, unforeseen, unexpected
- im-pūbēs**, -eris, *adj.* not grown up, youthful, under age
- im-pudēs**, -entis, *adj.* shameless, impudent†
- impudenter** [*im-pudēs*], *adv.* shamelessly, impudently†
- impudentia**, -ae [*im-pudēs*], *f.* shamelessness, impudence†
- im-pudicus**, -a, -um, shameless, immodest, impudent
- im-pūnītus**, -a, -um, unpunished, unrestrained
- im-pūrus**, -a, -um, unclean, impure†, vile
1. **in**, *prep.* (1) *with acc.* into, unto, onto, to, upon, towards, against, till, in reference to, concerning, for, according to, among; **in diēs**, from day to day; (2) *with abl.* in, within, on, at, upon, among, over, in the case of
2. **in-**, *neg. prefix*, un-, in-, etc.
- in-ambulō**, 1, *defective*, walk up and down, pace to and fro
- inānis**, -e, empty, groundless, vain, empty-handed. (*inane*†)
- in-auditus**, -a, -um, unheard-of, strange, incredible
- in-aurātus**, -a, -um [*in-auro*], gilded
- incendium**, -ī [*incendō*], *n.* burning, fire, conflagration. (*incendiary*†)
- incendō**, 3, -dī, -cēnsus [*cp. candeō*, shine], set fire to, burn, kindle, inflame, incite. (*cp. incense* F)
- incēnsiō**, -ōnis [*incendō*], *f.* a setting on fire, burning
- inceptum**, -ī [*in-cipiō*], *n.* attempt, undertaking
- in-certus**, -a, -um, uncertain, doubtful
- in-cidō**, 3, -cidī [*cadō*], fall into or upon, incur, become involved in. (*cp. incident* F, *incidental* F).
- in-cidō**, 3, -cidī, -cisum [*caedō*], cut into, cut, inscribe. (*cp. incisive*†)
- in-cipiō**, 3, -cēpī (*but coepī is preferred*), -ceptum [*capiō*], take hold of, begin (*always intrans. in Cic.*). (*cp. inception*†, *inceptive* F)
- incitāmentum**, -ī [*in-citō*, urge on], *n.* incentive, incitement F, inducement
- in-clinō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*old clīnō*, bend], bend, incline F
- in-clūdō**, 3, -clūsī, -clūsum [*claudō*], shut in or up, inclose F. (*include*†, *cp. inclusive*†)
- incohō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum, begin, commence. (*cp. inchoate*†)
- incola**, -ae [*colō*], *c.* inhabitant, resident
- in-colō**, 3, -coluī, dwell in, inhabit
- incolumis**, -e [*cp. calamitās*], unharmed, uninjured, safe, whole
- incolumitās**, -ātis [*incolumis*], *f.* safety
- incommodē** [*in-commodus*], *adv.* inconveniently, uncomfortably
- in-commodus**, -a, -um, inconvenient, troublesome. *Subst. n.* inconvenience, misfortune, disaster. (*cp. incommode, verb, F*)
- incorruptē** [*in-corruptus*], *adv.* uncorruptedly, justly, impartially

in-crēdibilis, -e, past belief, incredible†, unheard-of, extraordinary

in-crepō, 1, -uī, -itum, rattle, sound, resound, make a noise

in-cumbō, 3, -cubui, -cubitum [*old cumbō*, lie], lean upon, lay to, apply *or* devote oneself to. (incumbent†)

in-cūnābula, -ōrum [*cūnae*, cradle], *n. plur.* cradle, birthplace. (incunabula† = *early printed books*)

in-de [*is*], *adv.* thence, from that place *or* time *or* point, thereupon

in-demnātus, -a, -um [*damnātus*], uncondemned, untried

index, -icis [*in-dicō*], *c.* one who points out, informer, witness. (index†)

indicium, -ī [*in-dicō*], *n.* notice, information, testimony, evidence

in-dicō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*dicō*, solemnly proclaim], point out, indicate†, show, reveal, betray, inform against, accuse. (*cp.* indicative F, indicator†)

in-dicō, 3, -dixī, -dictum, proclaim, declare. (*cp.* indict F, indite F)

indignē [*in-dignus*], *adv.* unworthily, shamefully

indignitās, -ātis [*in-dignus*], *f.* unworthiness, baseness, indignity†

in-dignus, -a, -um, unworthy, undeserving, shameful, outrageous. (*cp.* indignant†, indignation†)

in-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, lead *or* bring in, introduce, induce†, persuade; **animum indūcere**, bring oneself, resolve. (induct†, induction†)

industria, -ae [*industrius*], *f.* industry†, diligence, enterprise; *with dē*, on purpose

industrius, -a, -um [*indu* = *in*, *struō*, pile], industrious†, diligent, active

in-eō, 4, -iī, -itum, go into, enter, enter upon, begin

in-ers, -ertis [*in-*, *ars*], *adj.* incompetent, inactive, lazy, idle. (inert†)

inertia, -ae [*iners*], *f.* idleness, sloth, inertia†, neglect, remissness

infāmis, -e [*in-*, *fāma*], disreputable, notorious, infamous†

in-ferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātum, bring in *or* upon *or* against, wage against. (infer†, *cp.* inference†)

inferus, -a, -um [*infrā*, below], below, beneath, lower. *Subst. plur. m.* the dead, the lower world.

Superl. infimus, -a, -um, lowest, last, meanest, basest. (inferior†)

infestus, -a, -um, hostile, dangerous, endangered, infested†

infimus, -a, -um, *see* inferus

in-finitus, -a, -um [*finiō*, limit], unlimited, boundless, infinite†. (*cp.* infinitive†)

infirmō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*in-firmus*], weaken, invalidate, refute, disprove

in-firmus, -a, -um, not strong, weak, feeble, infirm†

infitiātor, -ōris [*infitior*], *m.* one who denies *or* repudiates a debt, bad debtor

infitior, 1, -ātus sum [*infitiās* (*acc.*) (*fateor*), denial], deny, contradict

in-flammō, 1, -āvī, -ātum, set on fire, kindle, burn, inflame F, arouse

- in-flō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum, blow into, inflate†, inspire
- in-fōrmō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum, shape, mold, conceive, instruct, inform F
- infula**, -ae, *f.* fillet, woolen band (*worn on forehead*)
- ingeniōsus**, -a, -um [*ingenium*], intellectual, clever, able. (ingenious†)
- ingenium** [*cp. old genō = gignō*, beget], *n.* inborn quality, nature, ability, talent, genius, intellect. (engine F, engineer F)
- ingēns**, -entis, *adj.* enormous, immense, vast, huge
- ingenuus**, -a, -um [*cp. old genō = gignō*, beget], native, free-born. (ingenuous†)
- in-grātus**, -a, -um, ungrateful, unacceptable. (*old* ingrate†; *cp.* ingratitudē†)
- in-gravēscō**, 3, *defective*, grow heavy *or* worse *or* more serious, increase, be more absorbing
- in-gredior**, 3, -gressus sum [*gradior*], step in *or* on, enter, advance, commence. (ingress†, ingredient†)
- in-hiō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum, open the mouth at *or* for, gape at
- in-hūmānus**, -a, -um, inhuman†, cruel, savage, brutal
- in-iciō**, 3, -iēcī, -iectum [*iaciō*], throw in *or* on, bring into *or* upon, inspire in, cause. (inject†)
- inimicitia**, -ae [*in-imīcus*], *f.* unfriendliness, hostility, enmity
- in-imīcus**, -a, -um [*amīcus*], unfriendly, hostile. *Subst. m.* personal enemy F. (*cp.* inimical†)
- inīquitās**, -ātis [*in-īquus*], *f.* unfairness, injustice. (iniquity F)
- in-īquus**, -a, -um [*aequus*], unjust, unfair, adverse, unfavorable
- initiō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*initium*], initiate†, consecrate
- initium**, -ī [*in-eō*], *n.* beginning, commencement. (*cp.* initial†)
- iniūria**, -ae [*in-iūrius (iūs)*], *f.* injustice, injury†, insult; *abl.* unjustly
- iniūriōsē** [*iniūriōsus (iniūria)*], *adv.* unjustly, wrongfully. (*cp.* injuriously F)
- in-iussū**, *abl.* [*iubeō*], *m.* without orders *or* the command
- in-iūstus**, -a, -um, unjust. (*cp.* injustice F)
- inlecebra**, -ae [*in-liciō (laciō)*, entice], *f.* enticement, allurement, charm
- in-ligō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum, bind on, fasten, attach
- in-lūstris**, -e [*cp. lūceō*, shine], shining, clear, bright, brilliant, distinguished, famous, illustrious†, remarkable
- inlūstrō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*cp. in-lūstris*], light up, illuminate, make clear, reveal, celebrate, glorify. (illustrate†)
- in-nātus**, -a, -um [*nāscor*], inborn, natural, innate†
- in-nocēns**, -entis, *adj.* blameless, innocent F, guiltless
- innocentia**, -ae [*in-nocēns*], *f.* innocence F, uprightness, honesty
- in-numerābilis**, -e, countless, innumerable†
- inopia**, -ae [*in-ops*, without resources], *f.* want, need, lack, scarcity
- inquam**, *verb.* *defective*, say

- in-quirō**, 3, -quisivī, -quisitum [*quaerō*], seek after, search into, investigate. (inquire F)
- in-rēpō**, 3, -rēpsi, creep in, steal *or* slip into
- in-rētiō**, 4, -ivī, -itum [**rētiō* (*rēte*, net)], ensnare, entrap
- inruptiō**, -ōnis [*in-rumpō*], *f.* a breaking in, invasion, inroad. (irruption†)
- insānia**, -ae [*in-sānus*, unsound, insane†], *f.* madness, frenzy, insanity†
- insāniō**, 4, -ivī, -itum [*in-sānus*], be senseless *or* wild *or* insane, rave
- in-scribō**, 3, -scripsi, -scriptum, write on, inscribe†. (inscription†)
- in-sepultus**, -a, -um [*sepeliō*, bury], unburied
- in-serviō**, 4, -ivī, -itum, be submissive *or* devoted to, attend to, take care of
- in-sideō**, 2, -sēdī [*sedeō*], sit upon, settle upon, be fixed
- insidiae**, -ārum [*in-sideō*], *f. plur.* ambush, ambuscade, plot, treachery
- insidiātor**, -ōris [*insidior*], *m.* one who lies in wait, plotter, bandit
- insidior**, 1, -ātus sum [*insidiae*], lie in wait for, plot against
- insidiōsus**, -a, -um [*insidiae*], cunning, treacherous, dangerous, insidious†
- in-sidō**, 3, -sēdī, -sessus, settle on, become fixed, adhere to
- insigne**, -is [*insignis*], *n.* mark, sign, token, badge. (insignia†, ensign F)
- insignis**, -e [*signum*], marked, remarkable, signal, eminent, noted
- in-simulō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum, charge, blame, accuse
- in-sistō**, 3, -stiti, stand upon, pursue, insist†
- in-situs**, -a, -um [*in-serō*], implanted, fixed
- in-solēns**, -entis [*soleō*], *adj.* unusual, excessive, arrogant, insolent†
- insolenter** [*in-solēns*], *adv.* immoderately, insolently†, arrogantly
- insolentia**, -ae [*in-solēns*], *f.* want of moderation, arrogance, insolence†
- in-solitus**, -a, -um, unusual, unwonted, unaccustomed
- inspectō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*freq. of in-spiciō*], usually only in *pres. ptcp.*, look at *or* on, view, observe
- in-spērāns**, -antis [*spērō*], *adj.* not hoping *or* expecting
- in-spērātus**, -a, -um [*spērō*], unhoped for, unexpected
- in-spiciō**, 3, -spexī, -spectum [*old speciō*, see], look at *or* into *or* upon, inspect†
- in-stituō**, 3, -stituī, -stitūtum [*statuō*], set up *or* in place, establish, institute†, begin, resolve, determine, instruct, train. (*cp.* institution F)
- institutum**, -ī [*instituō*], *n.* undertaking, practice, custom, institution. (institute†, *noun*)
- in-stō**, 1, -stitī, -stātūrus, approach, be at hand, press, threaten, insist. (*cp.* instant F, instance F)
- instrūmentum**, -ī [*in-struō*], *n.* implement, tool, instrument F, outfit, equipment, supply, means

- in-struō**, 3, **-strūxī**, **-strūctum**, build, set in order, draw up, make ready, fit out, equip. (instruct†)
- insula**, **-ae**, *f.* island; *as proper name*, a quarter of Syracuse. (*cp.* insular†, insulate†, isle F)
- in-sum**, **in-esse**, **infui**, **infutūrus**, be in, be present *or* inherent in
- integer**, **-gra**, **-grum** [*cp.* tangō], untouched, unbroken, unimpaired, uninjured, vigorous, fresh, new, blameless, honest, upright. (integer†)
- integrē** [*integer*], *adv.* irreproachably, honestly
- integritās**, **-ātis** [*integer*], *f.* blamelessness, integrity†, uprightness
- intellegēns**, **-entis** [*intellegō*], discerning, appreciative, intelligent†
- intellegō**, 3, **-lēxī**, **-lēctum** [*inter*, *legō*, gather], gather, come to know, see, perceive, understand, appreciate, observe, comprehend. (intellect†)
- in-tempestus**, **-a**, **-um** [*old tempestus*, timely], unseasonable; *with nox*, the dead of night
- in-tendō**, 3, **-tendī**, **-tentus**, stretch, strain, aim, intend F. (*cp.* intention F, intense F)
- inter** [*in*], *prep.* with *acc.* between, among, amid, with, during
- inter-cēdō**, 3, **-cessī**, **-cessum**, come *or* be between, intervene. (intercede†)
- intercessiō**, **-ōnis** [*inter-cēdō*], *f.* intervention, protest, veto. (intercession†)
- inter-clūdō**, 3, **-clūsī**, **-clūsum** [*claudō*], shut off, cut off, interrupt
- inter-dum**, *adv.* sometimes, at times, now and then, occasionally
- inter-eā**, *adv.* meanwhile, in the meantime
- inter-eō**, **-īre**, **-iī**, **-itūrus**, go to ruin, perish, be lost *or* destroyed
- inter-ficiō**, 3, **-fēcī**, **-fectum** [*faciō*], kill, slay, murder, put to death
- interim** [*inter*, *is*], *adv.* meanwhile, in the meantime. (interim†)
- inter-imō**, 3, **-ēmī**, **-ēemptus** [*emō*, take], make *or* do away with, kill, put to death
- interior**, **-ius** [*compar.* of **interus* (*inter*)], inner, interior†, inland
- interitus**, **-ūs** [*inter-eō*], *m.* ruin, destruction, death
- intermissiō**, **-ōnis** [*inter-mittō*], *f.* interruption, intermission†
- inter-mittō**, 3, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, leave off, omit, intermit†, leave unimproved
- interniciō**, **-ōnis** [*cp.* necō, kill], *f.* massacre, extermination
- inter-rogō**, 1, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, ask, question, interrogate†
- inter-sum**, **-esse**, **-fui**, **-futūrus**, be between, differ, be present, attend, take part; **interest**, *impers.* it makes a difference, it interests†, concerns, is to one's advantage
- intervallum**, **-ī** [*vāllus*, stake, rampart], *n.* intermediate space, interval† (*of time also*), distance
- interventus**, **-ūs** [*inter-veniō*], *m.* a coming in *or* between, appearance, intervention†
- inter-vertō**, 3, **vertī**, **-versum**, turn aside, divert, embezzle

intestinus, -a, -um [*intus*], internal, intestine†

intimus, -a, -um [*superl. of interior*], inmost, innermost, intimate†

intrā [*cp. inter*], *prep. with acc.* within, during

intrō [*cp. intrā*], *adv.* within

intrō-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, lead or bring in, introduce†

introitus, -ūs [*intrō, eō*], *m.* an entering, entry, entrance. (introit†)

in-tueor, 2, -tuitus sum, look at or upon, contemplate, regard (*esp. with wonder or admiration*). (*cp. intuition* F)

intus [*in*], *adv.* within

in-ultus, -a, -um [*ulcīscor*, take vengeance on], unavenged, unpunished

in-ūrō, 3, -ussī, -ūstum, burn in, brand upon

in-ūsītātus, -a, -um, unusual, uncommon, unwonted

in-ūtilis, -e, useless

in-vādō, 3, -vāsī, -vāsum, go into, enter, fall upon, attack, invade†

in-vehō, 3, -vexī, -vectum, carry in, introduce; *pass.* be borne into, enter. (inveigh†)

in-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, come upon, meet with, find, find out, discover, learn, invent†

inventor, -ōris [*in-veniō*], *m.* finder, discoverer. (inventor†)

in-vestigō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*vestigō* (*vestigium*), track], track or trace out, discover. (investigate†)

in-veterāscō, 3, -āvī [*incept. (vetus)*], grow old, become fixed or rooted. (*cp. inveterate*†)

in-victus, -a, -um, unconquered, unconquerable, invincible

in-videō, 2, -vidī, -vīsum, look askance at, envy F, grudge, be jealous of

invidia, -ae [*invidus*], *f.* envy F, ill will, odium, unpopularity

invidiōsus, -a, -um [*invidia*], causing envy or hatred or unpopularity, hated, hateful, invidious†

invidus, -a, -um [*in-videō*], envious, hostile

in-violātus, -a, -um, uninjured, inviolate†

invisus, -a, -um [*in-videō*], hated, hateful, detested

invītō, 1, -āvī, -ātum, invite F, summon, challenge

invītus, -a, -um, unwilling, against one's will, reluctant

involūcrum, -ī [*involvō*], *n.* wrapping, cover

in-volvō, 3, -volvī, -volūtum, wrap up, cover. (involve†, involution†)

ipse, ipsa, ipsum [*is*], *demonstr. pron. (intensive)*, self, myself, yourself, himself, etc.; often better rendered by very, even, just, etc.

īra, -ae, f. anger, wrath, rage, ire F

īrācundia, -ae [*īrācundus*], *f.* hasty temper, irascibility, wrath, anger

īrācundus, -a, -um [*īra*], irritable, wrathful, revengeful, vindictive

īrāscor, 3, īrātus sum [*īra*], be angry. (*cp. irascible* F)

īrātus, -a, -um [*īrāscor*], angered, angry. (irate†)

is, ea, id, *demonstr. pron.* that, this, the, he, she, it, they, such

Issus, -ī, f. a seaport in Cilicia

iste, ista, istud [*is*], *demonstr. pron. of the 2d person, that (with reference to the person addressed), your, yours, that fellow, the defendant*

istic [*iste, c for -ce, demonstr. encl.*], *adv. there, where you are*

istim [*iste*] = **istinc** [*cp. hinc, ilinc*], *adv. from there*

ita [*is*], *adv. thus, so, in this (such a) way or manner, to such an extent, so very*

Italia, -ae (*Ītalia in poetry*), *f. Italy*

Italicus, -a, -um [*Italia*], *of or in Italy, Italian. (italic†)*

ita-que, conj. and so, accordingly, therefore

item [*cp. ita*], *adv. likewise, also, in the same manner. (item†)*

iter, itineris [*ī. eō*], *n. journey, march, voyage, way, road, route. (cp. itinerary†, itinerant†)*

iterum [*is, compar.*], *adv. a second time, again. (cp. iterate†)*

iubeō, 2, iussī, iussum, *bid, order, command*

iūcunditās, -ātis [*iūcundus*], *f. pleasantness, agreeableness, delight*

iūcundus, -a, -um [*iuvō, please*], *pleasant, agreeable, delightful. (jocund F)*

iūdex, -icis [*iūs, dīcō*], *c. judge F, juror; plur. gentlemen of the jury (in address)*

iūdiціальis, -e [*iūdicium*], *of a court or courts, judicial†*

iūdicium, -ī [*iūdex*], *n. judgment, trial, sentence, verdict, opinion, court. (cp. prejudice†)*

iūdicō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*iūdex*], *judge F, decide, form an opinion or estimate, declare, proclaim. (cp. adjudicate†, judicature†)*

iugulum, -ī [*iugum, yoke, dim.*], *n. collar bone, throat, neck. (cp. jugular†)*

Iugurtha, -ae, m. a king of Numidia, 92 13

Iūlius, -ī, m. a gentile name; *v. Caesar. (July†)*

iungō, 3, iūnxī, iūctum [*cp. iugum, yoke*], *join F, connect, unite. (cp. junction†, juncture†, joint F)*

Iūnius, -a, -um, *of June†; abbr. Iūn.*

Iuppiter, Iovis [*cp. diēs, deus*], *m. Jupiter, Jove, king of the gods*

iūs, iūris, n. right, justice, law, authority, prerogative, privilege, court; *abl. iūre, rightfully, justly. (cp. jurist F, jurisdiction†)*

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī [*iūs, iūrō, swear*], *n. oath*

iussū, abl. [iubeō], *m. by order, at the command*

iūstē [*iūstus*], *adv. rightly, justly†*

iūstitia, -ae [*iūstus*], *f. justice F, equity*

iūstus, -a, -um [*iūs*], *just†, right, fair, righteous, proper, complete, regular*

iuventūs, -ūtis [*iuvenis, young*], *f. youth, the young. (cp. juvenile†)*

iuvō, 1, iūvī, iūtum, *help, aid, please. (cp. adjutant†)*

K. or Kal. = Kalendae

Kalendae, -ārum [*cp. cēlō, conceal*], *f. plur. the Calends†, first day*

of the month, orig. new moon.
(*cp.* calendar F)

Karthägō, -inis, *see* Carthägō

L. = Lūcius, a *prænomen*

labe-faciō, 3, **-fēcī, -factum** [*labō, faciō*], cause to totter, shake, ruin

labefactō, 1, **-āvī, -ātum** [*freq. of labe-faciō*], cause to totter, shake, weaken, destroy

lābēs, -is [*cp. labō, lābor*], *f.* fall, ruin, stain, spot, stigma, disgrace

Labiēnus, -ī, *m.* a cognomen;
T. Atius Labienus, 172 3, 186 2

labō, 1, **-āvī, -ātum**, totter, give way, be loosened

labor, **-ōris** [*cp. labō*], *m.* labor F, toil, effort, hardship, distress, suffering

lābor, 3, **lāpsus sum** [*cp. labō*], glide, slip, slide, sink, fall, err. (lapset)

labōriōsus, -a, -um [*labor*], laborious†, toilsome, troublesome, industrious

labōrō, 1, **-āvī, -ātum** [*labor*], labor F, work, toil, strive, be troubled. (*cp.* laboratory†)

lacerō, 1, **-āvī, -ātum** [*lacer*, torn], tear, mangle, lacerate†, torture, distress

laccessō, 3, **-īvī, -ītum** [*old laciō*, entice], challenge, provoke, exasperate, excite, arouse, assail

lacrima, -ae [*old dacruma*], *f.* tear. (lachrymose†)

lactāns, -antis [*lactō* (*lac*, milk)], *ptcp.* taking milk, suckling

lacus, -ūs, *m.* lake†

Laeca, -ae, *m.* a cognomen, 6 18

laedō, 3, **laesi, laesum**, hurt, wound, injure, offend, grieve. (lesion F, collide†, elide†)

Laelius, -ī, *m.* a gentile name;
C. Laelius Sapiens, 106 2; *D. Laelius*, a friend of Pompey, 190 7

laetitia, -ae [*laetus*], *f.* gladness, joy, pleasure, delight

laetor, 1, **-ātus sum** [*laetus*], be glad, rejoice, rejoice at (*with acc.*)

laetus, -a, -um, glad, joyful, gay, giving joy, charming

lagōna, -ae [*Greek*], *f.* flagon, flask, bottle (*earthenware usually*)

lāmentātiō, -ōnis [*lāmentor*], *f.* wailing, weeping, lamentation†

lāmentor, 1, **-ātus sum** [*lāmentum*, wailing], *n.* bewail, lament†

languidus, -a, -um [*langueō*, be faint], faint, weak, languid†, dull, stupid. (*cp.* languish F)

lapidātiō, -ōnis [*lapidō* (*lapis*)], *f.* a stoning

lapis, -idis, *m.* stone. (*cp.* lapidary†)
largē [*largus*, profuse], *adv.* lavishly, generously, liberally

largior, 4, **-ītus sum** [*largus*], give bountifully, lavish, bestow

largitiō, -ōnis [*largior*], *f.* generosity, largess F, bribery

largitor, -ōris [*largior*], *m.* liberal giver, spendthrift, prodigal, briber

lātē [*lātus*], *adv.* broadly, widely, far

latebra, -ae [*lateō*], *f.*, *usually plur.*, hiding-place, retreat

lateō, 2, **-uī**, lie hidden, escape notice, be concealed. (latent†)

Laterium, -ī, *n.* an estate of Quintus Cicero, near Arpinum

- Latinē** [*Latinus*], *adv.* in Latin, in plain Latin, plainly
- Latiniēnsis, -is**, *m.* a cognomen; *see* Caelius
- Latinus, -a, -um** [*Latium*], of Latium, Latin
- Latium, -ī**, *n.* the region south of the Tiber, including Rome
- lātor, -ōris** [*ferō*], *m.* bearer, mover, proposer
- latrō, -ōnis**, *m.* highwayman, brigand, bandit
- latrōcinium, -ī** [*latrō*], *n.* robbery, brigandage, band of robbers
- latrōcinor, ī, -ātus sum** [*latrō*], be a bandit, practice highway robbery
- latus, -eris**, *n.* side, flank, lungs, body. (*cp.* lateral†)
- lātus, -a, -um**, broad, wide, extensive. (*cp.* latitude†)
- laudātor, -ōris** [*laudō*], *m.* praiser, eulogizer
- laudō, ī, -āvi, -ātum** [*laus*], praise, laud F, extol, commend, approve. (*cp.* laudation†)
- laureola, -ae** [*dim. of laurea*, laurel garland], *f.* small wreath, petty triumph
- laus, laudis**, *f.* praise, commendation, fame, glory, renown, distinction, excellence. (*cp.* laudable†)
- lectulus, -ī** [*dim. of lectus*], *m.* small bed, bed
- lectus, -ī**, *m.* bed, couch. (*cp.* litter F)
- lēctus, -a, -um** [*legō*], chosen, choice, selected, excellent. (*cp.* elect†, select†)
- lēgātīō, -ōnis** [*lēgō*], *f.* office of ambassador, embassy. (legation†)
- lēgātus, -ī** [*lēgō*], *m.* ambassador, envoy, deputy, second in command. (legate F, *cp.* delegate F)
- legiō, -ōnis** [*legō*], *f.* legion F
- lēgitimus, -a, -um** [*lēx*], of the law, legal, legitimate†
- legō, 3, lēgī, lēctus**, gather, collect, pick out, read, read about. (legible†, lecture†, lectern†)
- lēgō, ī, -āvi, -ātum** [*lēx*], appoint formally, send as envoy or deputy
- lēniō, 4, -īvi, -ītum** [*lēnis*], soften, assuage, soothe, calm, alleviate, mitigate. (*cp.* lenient†)
- lēnis, -e**, soft, smooth, mild, gentle
- lēnitās, -ātis** [*lēnis*], *f.* softness, smoothness, mildness, gentleness, lenity†
- lēnō, -ōnis**, *m.* procurer, tool, agent
- Lentulus, -ī**, *m.* a cognomen; *P. Cornelius Lentulus Sura*, 36 22; *Cn. Cornelius Lentulus*, 91 4; *L. Cornelius Lentulus*, 103 8; *P. Cornelius Lentulus Spinther*, 164 4; *L. Cornelius Lentulus Crus*, 191 2
- lentus, -a, -um**, pliant, sluggish, slow, backward
- lepidus, -a, -um** [*cp. lepōs*, charm], charming, pleasant, nice, effeminate
- Lepidus, -ī**, *m.* a cognomen; *Manius Aemilius Lepidus*, 11 4; *M. Aemilius Lepidus*, 47 13
- Leucas, -adis**, *f.* a town on an island of the same name in the Ionian Sea
- levis, -e**, light, trifling, trivial, fickle, untrustworthy

levitās, -ātis [*levis*], *f.* lightness, fickleness, levity F, frivolity, worthlessness

leviter [*levis*], *adv.* lightly, slightly, mildly, moderately

levō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*levis*], lighten, lift up, relieve F, lessen. (*cp.* lever F, levy F, Levant F)

lēx, lēgis, *f.* motion, bill, law, principle, condition. (*cp.* legal†, legislature†)

libellus, -ī [*dim. of liber*], *m.* little book, memorial, petition. (libel F)

libēns, -entis [*libet*], *adj.* willing, with pleasure, glad

libenter [*libēns*], *adv.* willingly, gladly, with pleasure

liber, -brī, *m.* book. (*cp.* library F)

liber, -era, -erum, free, independent, unrestricted

Liber, -erī, *m.* an Italian god identified with Bacchus

• **Libera, -ae**, *f.* Proserpina, sister of *Liber*, daughter of *Ceres*

liberālis, -e [*liber*], befitting a free-man, gentlemanly, honorable, generous, liberal F

liberālitās, -ātis [*liberālis*], *f.* nobleness, kindness, generosity, liberality F

liberē [*liber*], *adv.* freely, frankly

liberī, -ōrum [*liber*], *m. plur.* children

liberō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*liber*], free, set free, liberate†, deliver F, absolve

libertās, -ātis [*liber*], *f.* freedom, liberty F

libertinus, -a, -um [*libertus*, freedman], of the condition of a freed-

man. *Subst. m.* a freedman. (libertine†)

libet, 2, libuit or libitum est, it pleases or is agreeable

libidō, -inis [*libet*], *f.* pleasure, desire, passion, caprice, wantonness, sensuality

licentia, -ae [*licet*], *f.* freedom, liberty, license F, licentiousness†

licet, 2, licuit or licitum est, it is permitted or lawful, one may; *as conj.* although

Licinius, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *v.*

Archīas, Crassus, Lūcullus, Mūrēna

ligneus, -a, -um [*lignum*, wood],

wooden

Lilybitānus, -a, -um [*Lilybaeum*],

of or from Lilybaeum, in Sicily

lingua, -ae, *f.* tongue, language F.

(linguist†)

linum, -ī, *n.* flax, thread, string. (linoleum†; linen *prob. cognate, not borrowed*)

liquefaciō, 3, —, -factum [*liqueō*, be fluid, *facio*], make liquid, liquefy F, melt

liquidō [*liquidus*, clear, liquid F], *adv.* clearly, with certainty

littera, -ae, *f.* letter (F), of the alphabet; *plur.* letter (F), epistle, dispatch, document, records, books, literature†. (*cp.* literal F)

litterātus, -a, -um [*litterae*], lettered, learned, cultured, well educated. (literate†)

litūra, -ae [*linō*, smear], *f.* erasure, correction

locō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*locus*], place, put, arrange, contract for. (locate†, *cp.* locative†)

- Locrēnsis**, -e [*Locrī*], of Locri, in southern Italy. *Subst. plur. m.* the Locrians
- locuplēs**, -ētis [*locus*, old *pleō*, fill], *adj.* rich (*orig. in lands*), wealthy
- locuplētō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*locuplēs*], enrich
- locus**, -ī, *m., plur. generally loca, n.*, place, region, post, position, rank, room, space, opportunity, topic, point, passage. (*locus*†, *cp.* local F)
- longē** [*longus*], *adv.* far
- Longilius**, -ī, *m.* a gentile name, 167 4
- longinquitās**, -ātis [*longinquus*], *f.* remoteness, distance
- longinquus**, -a, -um [*longus*], far removed, remote, distant
- longiusculus**, -a, -um [*dim. of longior*], a little longer, rather long
- longus**, -a, -um, long (*cognate, not borrowed*), lasting, tedious. (*cp.* longitude†)
- loquor**, 3, locūtus sum, speak, talk, say. (*cp.* loquacious†, and *cpds.*, as eloquence F, colloquy†)
- Lūceria**, -ae, *f.* a city in Apulia
- Lūcius**, -ī, *m.* a prænomen
- lūctuōsus**, -a, -um [*lūctus*], sorrowful, sad, mournful, lamentable
- lūctus**, -ūs [*lūgeō*], *m.* sorrow, grief, affliction, distress
- lūcubrātiō**, -ōnis [*lūcubrō*], *f.* working by lamplight or by night. (*lucubration*†)
- Lūcullus**, -ī, *m.* a cognomen; *L. Licinius Lucullus*, 68 27, 75 19, 103 24, 108 11; his brother, *Marcus*, 101 27, 102 15
- lūcus**, -ī [*lūceō*, be light], *m.* an open wood, sacred grove, grove
- lūdus**, -ī, *m.* play, game, school, training-school; *plur.* public games, spectacles. (*cp.* ludicrous†, and *cpds.*, as collusion F, delude†, prelude F)
- lūgeō**, 2, lūxī, mourn, lament, bewail. (*cp.* lugubrious†)
- lūmen**, -inis [*lūceō*, shine], *n.* light, lamp, glory, ornament, celebrity. (*cp.* luminary F, limn F, illuminate†)
- lupinus**, -a, -um [*lupus*, wolf], of a (the) wolf
- lūstrō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*lūstrum (lavō)*], sacrifice of purification, the victims being led around the fields three times, go around, traverse, wander over. (*cp.* lustrum†)
- Lutātius**, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *v.* Catulus
- luteus**, -a, -um [*lutum*, mud], dirty, worthless, poor
- lūx**, lūcis [*cp.* lūceō, shine], *f.* light, day, daylight, help, safety, succor. (*cp.* lucid†, translucent†, Lucifer†, elucidate†)
- lūxuria**, -ae [*lūxus*, excess], *f.* luxury F, profusion, self-indulgence, extravagance
- M.** = *Mārcus*, a prænomen
- M'.** = *Mānius*, a prænomen
- Macedonia**, -ae, *f.* a country north of Thessaly and the Ægean
- Macedonicus**, -a, -um [*Macedonia*], Macedonian
- māchinātor**, -ōris [*māchinor*], *m.* contriver, deviser, plotter

māchinor, 1, -ātus sum [*māchina*, machine F], contrive, devise, invent, plot. (*cp.* machination†)

mactō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*mactus*, honored], honor (*with sacrifice*), sacrifice, kill, slaughter, pursue, punish

macula, -ae, *f.* spot, stain, stigma, disgrace. (*cp.* immaculate†)

Maelius, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *Spurius Maelius*, 44

maeror, -ōris [*cp.* miser], *m.* sadness, grief, sorrow

magis [*cp.* *magnus*], *adv.* more, rather

magister, -tri [*magis*], *m.* master F, head, teacher. (*cp.* magisterial†)

magistrātus, -ūs [*magister*], *m.* magistracy†, public office, magistratē†, official

magnificē, *compar.* magnificentius [*magni-ficus*], *adv.* grandly, magnificently F, splendidly, gloriously

magni-ficus, -a, -um, *compar.* magnificentior, *superl.* -entissimus [*magnus*, *faciō*], grand, magnificent F, splendid

magnitūdō, -inis [*magnus*], *f.* greatness, magnitude†, extent

magnus, -a, -um, *compar.* maior, *superl.* maximus, great, large, big, ample, extensive, important, serious, eminent, powerful; **magnō opere**, *adverbially*, greatly, particularly, especially, earnestly, urgently. (*cp.* magnify†, major†, majority F, maximum†)

Magnus, -ī, *m.* the Great, *esp.* as surname of Pompey

maiōrēs, -um [*maior* (*magnus*), elder], *m. plur.* ancestors, forefathers

Maius, -a, -um, of May F

male, *compar.* peius, *superl.* pessimē [*malus*], *adv.* badly, ill, hardly, scarcely. (*mal-* F [*prefix*])

maleficium, -ī [*male-ficus*, evil-doing], *n.* evil deed, crime, offense, wrong. (*cp.* maleficent†, malefeasance F)

malleolus, -ī [*dim. of malleus*, hammer], *m.* fire-dart

mālō, **mälle**, **māluī** [*magis*, *volō*], wish, rather, prefer

malus, -a, -um, *compar.* peior, *superl.* pessimus, bad, evil, wicked, injurious. *Subst. n.* an evil, injury, misfortune, calamity. (*cp.* malaria It, pessimist†)

Māmertinī, -ōrum [*Māmers* = *Mārs*], *m. plur.* the Mamertines, *i.e.* the people of Messana (Messina). *As adj. sing.* of the Mamertines, Mamertine

mandātum, -ī [*mandō*], *n.* commission, charge, instruction, order, command. (mandate†, *cp.* mandatory†)

mandō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*manus*, *dō*], put in hand, commit, consign, instruct, order, command F. (*cp.* mandamus†)

māne [*cp.* *mātūrus*], *adv.* in the morning, early

maneō, 2, **mānsī**, **mānsūrus**, stay, remain F, wait, last, continue. (*cp.* manor F)

manicātus, -a, -um [*manicae* (*manus*), long sleeve], with long sleeves (*covering the hand*)

manifestō [*manifestus*], *adv.* palpably, openly, clearly, manifestly†

manifestus, -a, -um [*manus*, and *cp. infestus*], tangible, palpable, obvious, plain, manifest†

Mānilius, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *C. Manilius* (lex Manilia), 96 1

Mānius, -ī, *m.* a prænomen

Mānliānus, -a, -um [*Mānlius*], of Manlius

Mānlius, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *C. Manlius*, 5 28, 25 1

mānō, ī, -āvi, flow, trickle, drip, be diffused, spread, emanate†

mānsuētē [*mansuētus*, tame], *adv.* gently, mildly

mānsuētūdō, -inis [*mansuētus*], *f.* mildness, gentleness, clemency

manubiae, -ārum [*manus*, *habeō*], *f. plur.* booty, spoils, money from the sale of spoils

manubrium, -ī [*manus*], *n.* handle

manus, -ūs, *f.* hand, handwriting, band, force. (*cp.* manual†, manner F, manoeuvre F, manage It, manufacture F, maintain F)

Mārcellus, -ī, *m.* a cognomen; *M. Claudius Marcellus*, conqueror of Syracuse, 87 1, 109 15, 146 24; *M. Claudius Marcellus*, 11 29, 115 ff., 175 f., 198 ff.; *C. Claudius Marcellus*, 118 21, 175 2

Mārcus, -ī, *m.* a prænomen

mare, -is, *n.* sea

margarīta, -ae [*Greek*], *f.* pearl. (marguerite F)

Mariō, -ōnis, *m.* a slave of Cicero, 183 2

maritimus, -a, -um [*mare*], of or on the sea, maritime†

maritus, -ī, *m.* husband. (*cp.* marital†, marry F)

Marius, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *C. Marius*, 4 19, 47 5, 63 11, 107 29

marmor, -oris, *n.* marble F

marmoreus, -a, -um [*marmor*], of marble

Mārs, **Mārtis**, *m.* the god of war; *fig.* war, battle. (*cp.* martial F)

Mārtius, -a, -um [*Mārs*], of Mars, of March F

Massilia, -ae, *f.* a Greek city in southern Gaul (Marseilles)

Massiliēnsis, -e [*Massilia*], of Massilia. *Subst. plur.* the Massilians

māter, -tris, *f.* mother; **māter familiās** (*old gen.*), matron, mistress of a household. (*cp.* maternal F, maternity F)

mātūrē [*mātūrus*], *adv.* early, betimes, quickly

mātūritās, -ātis [*mātūrus*], *f.* ripeness, maturity†

mātūrō, ī, -āvi, -ātum [*mātūrus*], mature F, bring to maturity, dispatch, hasten, expedite

mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe, mature†, early

maximē [*maximus*], *adv.* most, very, very greatly, especially

maximus, -a, -um, *superl. of magnus*. (*cp.* maximum†, maxim F)

Maximus, -ī, *m.* a cognomen; *Q. Fabius Maximus*, the Delayer, 87 1, 109 15

Mēdēa, -ae, *f.* the Colchian sorceress, wife of Jason, 76 17

medeor, 2, heal, cure, remedy†

medicina, -ae [*medicus* (*medeor*)], *f.* medicine F, remedy, relief

mediocris, -e [*medius*], middling, medium, moderate, mediocre F, ordinary

mediocriter [*mediocris*], *adv.* moderately, slightly, somewhat

meditor, I, -ātus sum [*cp. modus*], reflect upon, think of, consider, meditate†, rehearse, practice

medius, -a, -um, in the middle or midst, mean F, middle. (medium†, *cp. mediate*†, immediate†)

mehercule, *see* **Herculēs**

melior, *compar. of bonus*

membrum, -i, *n.* limb, member F

meminī, -isse, *defective* [*cp. mēns, moneō*], remember, recollect. (*cp. memento*†)

Memmius, -i, *m.* a gentile name; *C. Memmius*, 53 1

memor, -oris [*cp. mora*], *adj.* mindful, remembering F

memoria, -ae [*memor*], *f.* memory F, remembrance, recollection, tradition, time. (memoir F)

memorō, I, -āvi, -ātum [*memor*], mention, relate, say. (*cp. memorable*†, memorandum†, commemorate†)

mendācium, -i [*mendāx*, lying], *n.* lie, untruth, falsehood. (*cp. mendacious*†)

mendicitās, -ātis [*mendicus*, in want], *f.* beggary, poverty, indigence. (*cp. mendicant*†)

mēns, **mentis** [*cp. meminī*], *f.* mind, understanding, intellect, reason, thought, disposition, intention, purpose. (*cp. mental* F)

mēnsa, -ae [*mētior*, measure], *f.* table
mēnsis, -is [*mētior*, measure], *m.* month. (*cp. semester* F)

mentiō, -ōnis [*mēns*], *f.* calling to mind, mentioning F, mention F

mentum, -i [*cp. mōns*] *n.* chin

Menturnae, -ārum, *f. plur.* Minturnæ, a town on the Appian Way, in southern Latium

mercātor, -ōris [*mercor* (*merx*), trade], *m.* trader, merchant F (*from mercor indirectly*)

mercēs, -ēdis [*merx*], *f.* pay, wages, reward, income. (*cp. mercenary*†)

mereō, 2, -uī, -itum, earn, gain, take (*a price*), deserve. *Dep.* deserve, merit F, be worthy of

meretricius, -a, -um [*meretrīx*, harlot], of a harlot or harlots. (*meretricious*†)

meritō [*mereor*], *adv.* deservedly, with good reason

meritum, -i [*mereor*], *n.* merit F, desert, favor, service

merx, -cis, *f.* wares, goods, merchandise F. (*cp. mercātor*)

Mescinius, -i, *m.* a gentile name; *L. Mescinius Rufus*, 180 2

Messāna, -ae, *f.* a city in Sicily, at the straits (Messina)

Messius, -i, *m.* a gentile name; *C. Messius*, a friend of Pompey, 190 11

-met, *encl. suffix*, self, added to ego, mē, tibi, tē, sē, nōbis, etc.

Metellus, -i, *m.* a cognomen; *Q. Cæcilius Metellus Celer*, 11 9; *M. Metellus*, 11 11; *Q. Cæcilius Metellus Creticus*, 91 3; *Q. Cæcilius Metellus Macedonicus*, 152 21; *Q. Cæcilius Metellus Numidicus*, 101 18; his son, *Q. Cæcilius Metellus Pius*, 101 19, 102 8

- metuō**, 3, -uī [*metus*], fear, be afraid, dread
- metus**, -ūs, *m.* fear, dread. (*cp.* meticulous†)
- meus**, -a, -um [*mē*], my, mine
- miles**, -itis, *m.* soldier. (*cp.* militate†)
- militāris**, -e [*mīles*], of a soldier or soldiers, military F; **rēs militāris**, warfare, military matters
- militia**, -ae [*mīles*], *f.* military service, war; **militiae**, *locative*, in the field or service, in war. (militia†)
- mille**, *num. adj. indecl.* thousand; *plur. subst. n.* milia, thousands. (*cp.* mile†, million F, mill† (*thousandth part of a dollar*), millennium†, millimeter F)
- Milō**, -ōnis, *m.* a cognomen; *T. Ann. Milo*, 167 14
- minae**, -ārum [*cp. ēmineō*, stand out, *mōns*], *f. plur.* threats, menaces F
- Minerva**, -ae [*cp. meminī*], *f.* the goddess of wisdom and the arts
- minimē** [*minus*], *superl. adv.* least, very little, not at all, by no means
- minus**, -a, -um, *superl. of parvus*, smallest, least. (minimum†)
- minitor**, 1, -ātus sum [*freq. of 1. minor*], threaten, menace
1. **minor**, 1, -ātus sum [*minae*], threaten, menace F (*through mināx*, threatening)
2. **minor**, *compar. of parvus*, smaller, younger. (minor†)
- Minucius**, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *Q. Minucius*, 136 15
- minuō**, 3, -uī, -ūtus [2. *minor*], lessen, reduce, diminish F
- minus** [2. *minor*], *compar. adv.* (*pos. parum*), less, too little, not. (*cp.* minus†)
- minūtus**, -a, -um [*minuō*], small, minute†
- mīrābilis**, -e [*mīror*], wonderful, marvelous F
- mīrandus**, -a, -um [*mīror*], wonderful; **mīrandum in modum**, wonderfully
- mīror**, 1, -ātus sum [*mīrus*], wonder, marvel at, admire F
- mīrus**, -a, -um, wonderful, marvelous, strange, extraordinary
- misceō**, 2, **miscuī**, **mixtum**, mix F, mingle, confound, stir up, concoct
- Misēnum**, -ī, *n.* a promontory and harbor of the Bay of Naples (Miseno)
- miser**, -era, -erum, wretched, unfortunate, miserable F, poor
- miserandus**, -a, -um [*miseror*, commiserate], pitiable, deplorable
- misereor**, 2, -itus sum [*miser*], pity, have compassion
- miseria**, -ae [*miser*], *f.* wretchedness, suffering, distress, misery F
- misericordia**, -ae [*misericors*], *f.* pity, compassion, sympathy, mercy
- misericors**, -cordis [*misereor*, *cor*], *adj.* tender-hearted, merciful, sympathetic
- Mithridātēs**, -is, *m.* a king of Pontus (Mithradates on coins and in inscriptions), 68 ff.
- Mithridāticus**, -a, -um [*Mithridātēs*], of Mithridates, Mithridatic
- mītis**, -e, mild, gentle, lenient, kind. (*cp.* mitigare†)

- mittō**, 3, **mīsi**, **missum**, let go, let loose, discharge, send, omit. (*cp.* missile†, mission†, -ary†, mass†; *cpds.*, as admit F, remis†)
- mixtus**, -a, -um [*misceō*], mixed F, motley, confused. (*cp.* mixture†)
- moderātē** [*moderātus*], *adv.* with restraint *or* moderation, moderately†
- moderātiō**, -ōnis [*moderor* (*modus*, measure)], *f.* restraint, self-control, moderation F
- moderātus**, -a, -um [*moderor*], restrained, self-controlled, temperate, moderate†, modest
- modestē** [*modestus*], *adv.* with moderation, temperately, moderately
- modestus**, -a, -um [*modus*], moderate, temperate, honorable. (modest F)
- modicē** [*modicus*], *adv.* with moderation, discreetly
- modicus**, -a, -um [*modus*], moderate, ordinary, small. (modicum†)
- modo** [*modus*], *adv.* only, merely, just now, lately, recently, if only, provided. (*cp.* modern†)
- modus**, -i, *m.* measure, amount, extent, limit, moderation, sort, kind, character, way, manner, mode F; **huius modī**, of this kind; **eius modī**, such; **quem ad modum**? in what way? how? (*cp.* model F, modal†)
- moenia**, -ium [*cp.* *mūniō*], *n. plur.* fortifications, walls of a city *or* town
- mōlēs**, -is, *f.* mass, weight, load, burden. (*cp.* mole F, molecule F)
- molestē** [*molestus*], *adv.* with trouble *or* vexation; **molestē ferre**, be vexed *or* annoyed at
- molestia** [*molestus*], *f.* trouble, annoyance, vexation, worry
- molestus**, -a, -um [*mōlēs*], troublesome, disagreeable, vexatious, annoying. (*cp.* molest F)
- mōlior**, 4, -itus sum [*mōlēs*], exert oneself, strive, struggle, attempt, undertake, plan, plot
- mollis**, -e, soft, tender, weak. (*cp.* mollify F, mollusk†, emollient†)
- moneō**, 2, -uī, -itum [*cp.* *mēns*, *meminī*], remind, advise, admonish F, warn. (*cp.* monitor†, monetary†, money F, mint†)
- mōns**, **montis** [*cp.* *ēmineō*, stand out], *m.* mountain F, mount†, hill
- mōnstrum**, -ī [*moneō*], *n.* omen, wonder, portent, prodigy, monster F
- monumentum**, -ī [*moneō*], *n.* reminder, memorial, record, monument†
- mora**, -ae, *f.* delay, hesitation, hindrance
- morbus**, -ī [*morior*], *m.* sickness, disease, malady. (*cp.* morbid†)
- morior**, 3, **mortuus sum**, die. (*cp.* moribund†, mortuary†, mortgage†)
- moror**, 1, -ātus sum [*mora*], delay, tarry, linger, hinder. (*cp.* moratorium†)
- mors**, -tis [*morior*], *f.* death. (*cp.* mortify†)
- mortālis**, -e [*mors*], mortal F. *Subst. m.* a mortal
- mortuus**, -a, -um [*morior*], dead
- mōs**, **mōris**, *m.* manner, habit, custom, practice, way; *plur. also* ways, character. (*cp.* moral†, morale F)

- mōtus**, -ūs [*moveō*], *m.* motion, movement, change, disturbance, insurrection, tumult, impulse, emotion; *with terrae*, earthquake
- moveō**, 2, **mōvī**, **mōtum**, move *F*, set in motion, remove *F*, drive away, influence, affect, impress, stir, inspire. (*cp.* motion *F*, movement *F*, motive *F*, motor†)
- Mūcius**, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *P. Mucius Scævola*, 144 16; *Q. Mucius Scævola*, jurist, 156 8; *Q. Mucius Scævola*, a friend of *Q. Cicero*, 198 5
- mūcrō**, -ōnis, *m.* point, edge, sword, dagger
- mulcō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum, beat, cudgel
- mulier**, -eris, *f.* woman
- muliercula**, -ae [*dim. of mulier*], *f.* little or poor woman, mistress, favorite
- multitūdō**, -inis [*multus*], *f.* great number, crowd, throng, multitude†
1. **multō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*multa*, fine], punish. (mulct†)
2. **multō** [*multus*], *adv.* by much or far, much, far
- multum** [*multus*], *adv.* much
- multus**, -a, -um (*cp. melior*), much, great; *plur.* many. (multi-† in many *cpds.*)
- Mulvius**, -a, -um, Mulvian; *with pōns*, the Mulvian Bridge over the Tiber (Ponte Molle)
- Mummius**, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *L. Mummius Achaicus*, 131 19
- mūniceps**, -ipis [*mūnia*, duties, *capitō*], *c.* citizen of a free town. (*cp.* municipal†, -ality *F*)
- mūnicipium**, -ī [*mūniceps*], *n.* free or municipal town
- mūniō**, 4, -īvī, -ītum [*cp. moenia*], fortify, defend, strengthen, secure
- mūnitiō**, -ōnis [*mūniō*], *f.* rampart, walls. (munition *F*, ammunition *F*)
- mūnitus**, -a, -um [*mūniō*], fortified, secure
- mūnus**, -eris, *n.* duty, service, office, function, present, gift, show, spectacle. (*cp.* immune†, munificent†, remunerate†)
- Mūrēna**, -ae, *m.* a cognomen; *L. Licinius Murena*, 70 6
- mūrus**, -ī [*cp. moenia*], *m.* a city wall. (*cp.* immure†, mural *F*)
- Mūsa**, -ae [*Greek*], *f.* muse†, one of the nine goddesses of the higher arts. (*cp.* music *F*, museum†, mosaic *F*)
- mūtō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum, alter, change. (*cp.* mutable, -ation *F*)
- mūtus**, -a, -um, dumb, silent, speechless, mute *F*
- myoparō**, -ōnis [*Greek*], *m.* a privateer, light warship
- Myrō**, -ōnis, *m.* Myron, a Greek sculptor, 131 25, 140 7
- mystagōgus**, -ī [*Greek*], *m.* a guide (*orig. to the mysteries*), cicerone
- Mytilēnaeus**, -a, -um [*Mytilēnae*], of Mytilene, a city on the Aegean island of Lesbos
- nam** [*cp. enim*], *conj.* for
- nancīscor**, 3, **nactus** (or **nāctus**) **sum**, get, obtain, receive, come upon, find
- nāscor**, 3, **nātus sum** [*cp. gignō*], be born or produced, spring forth

- or up, grow, arise. (cp. nascent†, native†, natal†)*
- nātiō, -ōnis** [*nāscor*], *f.* tribe, people, nation *F*, race
- nātūra, -ae** [*nāscor*], *f.* birth, nature *F*, character
- naufragus, -a, -um** [*nāvis, frangō*], shipwrecked. *Subst. m. plur.* ruined men
- nauticus, -a, -um** [*Greek*], of ships, naval, nautical†
- nāvālis, -e** [*nāvis*], of ships, naval†
- nāviculārius, -ī** [*nāvicula, dim. of nāvis*], *m.* shipmaster, shipowner
- nāvigātiō, -ōnis** [*nāvigō*], *f.* a sailing, navigation†
- nāvigō, 1, -āvi, -ātum** [*nāvis, agō*], sail, sail over, navigate†, cross the sea
- nāvis, -is**, *f.* ship, vessel. (*cp.* navy *F*, nave† of a church)
- ne (or -n), encl., sign of a question; whether**
- 1. nē** (*in some cpds. ne-, not, un-, in-, adv. and conj. As adv. not; nē . . . quidem, not even, not . . . either, also not. As conj. that (in order that) . . . not, lest, for fear that; nē quis, lest anyone, that no one*
 - 2. nē**, *affirmative particle, preceding a pron., verily, truly, indeed*
- Neāpolis, is**, *f.* the chief city of Campania (Naples); also a quarter of Syracuse in Sicily
- Neāpolitānus, -a, -um** [*Neāpolis*], of Neapolis, Neapolitan. *Subst. plur. m.* the Neapolitans
- nec, see neque**
- necessāriō** [*necessārius*], *adv.* necessarily†, inevitably
- necessārius, -a, -um** [*necesse*], necessary†, inevitable. *Subst. m.* relative, kinsman, friend
- necesse, indecl. adj.** unavoidable, inevitable, necessary
- necessitās, -ātis** [*necesse*], *f.* necessity *F*, need
- necessitūdō, -inis** [*necesse*], *f.* relationship, connection
- nec-ne, conj.** or not
- necō, 1, -āvi, -ātum** [*cp. nex*], put to death, kill, slay. (*cp. internecine†*)
- nec-opinātus, -a, -um** [*opīnor, think*], unexpected
- ne-fandus, -a, -um** [*fārī, speak*], unspeakable, impious, abominable, execrable
- nefāriē** [*nefārius*], *adv.* impiously, execrably, abominably
- nefārius, -a, -um** [*ne-fās, impiety, sin*], impious, execrable, abominable, wicked, nefarious†
- neglegenter** [*neglegēns, careless*], *adv.* carelessly, negligently†
- neglegentia, -ae** [*neglegēns*], *f.* carelessness, negligence†
- neg-legō, 3, -lēxi, -lēctum** [*nec, legō*], disregard, neglect†, overlook, omit
- negō, 1, -āvi, -ātum** [**negi, not*], say no *or* not, deny *F*, refuse. (*cp. negative†*)
- negōtiātor, -ōris** [*negōtiōr*], *m.* merchant, dealer. (*negotiator†*)
- negōtiōr, 1, -ātus sum** [*negōtium*], do business, carry on business. (*cp. negotiate†*)
- negōtium, -ī** [**negi, not, ōtium*], *n.* business, employment, occupation, task, affair, matter, duty, trouble

- nēmō**, —, *dat.* **nēmīnī** [*ī. nē, old hemō = homō*], *c.* no one, nobody;
nōn nēmō, some, some persons
- nemus**, -oris, *n.* sacred grove, wood
- nepōs**, -ōtis, *m.* grandson, spend-thrift, prodigal. (*cp.* nephew F, nepotism It)
- nē-quam**, *indecl. adj.* worthless, bad
- nē-quāquam** [*quisquam*], *adv.* by no means, not at all
- ne-que or nec**, *conj.* and not, nor;
correl. neither . . . nor
- ne-queō**, 4, -ivī, be unable
- nēquior**, -ius, *compar. of nēquam*
- nēquitia**, -ae [*nēquam*] *f.* worthlessness, badness
- Nervii**, -ōrum, *m.* a people in Belgic Gaul
- nervus**, -ī, *m.* sinew, strength, power. (*cp.* nerve†)
- ne-sciō**, 4, -ivī, not know, be ignorant; **nesciō quis**, someone; **nesciō quō pactō**, somehow or other; **nesciō an**, I rather think
- nē-ve or neu**, *conj.* and (that) not, and lest, nor
- nex**, **necis** [*cp. necō*], *f.* murder, slaughter, death. (*cp.* internecine†)
- nihil** [*ne (ī. nē), hīlum, shred*], *indecl. n.* nothing; *acc. adverbially*, not at all. (*cp.* nihilist†, nil†)
- nihil-dum**, *indecl. n.* nothing yet
- nihilum**, -ī [*cp. nihil*], *n.* nothing; **nihilō minus**, none the less, nevertheless
- Nilus**, -ī, *m.* the Nile
- nī-mīrum** [*nī (cp. ī. nē), not, mīrum*], *adv.* without doubt, doubtless, surely
- nimis**, *adv.* too much, too
- nimum** [*nimius*], *adv.* too much, too
- nimius**, -a, -um [*nimis*], too great, excessive, too much, over-; **nimiō opere**, excessively, extravagantly
- nisi** [*old nī-sī (nī, not; cp. ī. nē)*], *conj.* if not, unless, except
- niteō**, 2, -uī, shine, glisten, glitter
- nitidus**, -a, -um [*niteō*], shining, glistening, sleek, spruce
- nix**, **nivis**, *f.* snow
- nōbilis**, -e [*nōscō*], well-known, celebrated, famous, distinguished, splendid, noble F
- nōbilitās**, -ātis [*nōbilis*], *f.* celebrity, fame, noble birth, nobility†, high rank
- nocēns**, -entis [*noceō*], *adj.* guilty. *Subst. m.* criminal, culprit. (*cp.* innocent F)
- noceō**, 2, -uī, -itūrus, injure, harm, hurt. (*cp.* innocuous)
- noctū** [*old noctus = nox*], *adv.* at night
- nocturnus**, -a, -um [*nox*], by night, nocturnal†
- nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōluī** [*ne (ī. nē), volō*], be unwilling, wish . . . not, not wish
- nōmen**, -inis [*cp. nota*], *n.* name, fame, renown, item, entry, account, behalf, claim, pretext. (*cp.* nominal†, nomenclature†)
- nōminātīm** [*nōmen*], *adv.* by name, expressly, particularly
- nōminō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*nōmen*], call by name, name, mention, call, celebrate, render famous. (*cp.* nominate†)

nōn [*old noenum* (*ne-oinom* = *ne-ūnum*)], *adv.* not, no

Nōnae, -ārum [*nōnus*, ninth], *f. plur.* the Nones, 9th day before the Ides; 7th of March, May, July, October, 5th of the other months; *abbr.* Nōn.

nōn-dum, *adv.* not yet

nōn-ne, *interrog. adv.* not? *expecting the answer* "yes"; *in indir. quest.* whether . . . not

nōs, nostrum or **nostrī**, *plur. of ego*

nōscō, 3, **nōvī**, **nōtum** [*old gnōscō*], become acquainted with, come to know, learn; *perf. system*, know. (notion†)

noster, -tra, -trum [*nōs*], of us, our, ours, our own. (nostrum†)

nota, -ae [*cp. nōmen*], *f.* mark, sign, stigma, brand. (note F, *cp.* notary†)

notō, 1, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [*nota*], mark, note F, designate, brand. (notable†, notation†)

nōtus, -a, -um [*nōscō*], known, familiar, famous. (*cp.* notify F, notice F, notorious†)

novem, *num. adj. indecl.* nine

November, -bris, -bre [*novem*], of November F; *abbr.* Nov. and Novemb.

novus, -a, -um, new, recent, novel F, strange, unheard-of; **rēs novae**, revolution; **tabulae novae**, abolition of debts. (*cp.* novel, *adj.* F, *noun* It; novice F; renovate†)

nox, noctis, *f.* night. (*cp.* nocturnal†, nocturne F)

nudius tertius [*nu-* (*cp. nunc*), *dus*

= *diēs*], *adv.* now the third day, the day before yesterday

nūdus, -a, -um, naked, nude†, bare, stripped

nūllus, -a, -um [*ne* (1. *nē*), *ūllus*], not any, none, no, not (*as emphatic substitute for nōn*); **nōn nūllus**, some. (null†, *cp.* nullify†, annul F)

num, interrog. adv. *expecting the answer* "no"; *in indir. quest.* whether

Numantia, -ae, f. a city in northern Spain

nūmen, -inis [*nuō*, nod], *n.* nod, will or power of a god

numerus, -ī, m. number F, quantity, rank, importance, position, account, class. (*cp.* numeral†, numerous†, enumerate†)

Numidicus, -ī, m. a surname of Q. Cæcilius Metellus, as victor in Africa (Numidia)

numquam [*ne* (1. *nē*), *umquam*], *adv.* never; **nōn numquam**, sometimes

nunc [*num*, still, yet, *-ce*], *adv.* now, at present, as it is

nūntius, ī [*novus, veniō*], *m.* messenger, message, news, order. (nuncio It, *cp.* announce F)

nūper [*novus*], *adv.* newly, recently, lately

nūptiae, -ārum [*cp. nūpta*, bride], *f. plur.* wedding, marriage, nuptials†

nusquam [*ne* (1. *nē*), *usquam*], *adv.* nowhere

nūtus, -ūs [*nuō*, nod], *m.* nod, will, pleasure, command

ō, *interj.* O! oh!

ob, *prep. with acc.* over against, on account of, for; **quam ob rem**, for which reason, *or interrog.* wherefore? why?

ob-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, go to meet, meet, reach, undertake, enter upon, attend to, perform

ob-iciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectum [*iaciō*], throw before *or* in the way, expose, reproach with. (object†, *cp.* objection F, -tive†)

oblectāmentum, -ī [*ob-lectō*], *n.* delight, pleasure, amusement

ob-lectō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*lactō* (*laciō*, entice)], delight F, please, entertain

ob-ligō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, bind, oblige F, put under obligation F, mortgage

ob-linō, 3, -lēvi, -litum, smear over, besmear, cover

oblitus, *see* oblinō

oblitus, -a, -um [*ob-livīscor*], forgetful, unmindful, neglectful

obliviō, -ōnis [*cp. ob-livīscor*], *f.* forgetting, forgetfulness, oblivion F. (oblivious†)

ob-livīscor, 3, -lītus sum [*lēvis*, smooth], forget

ob-oediō, 4, -īvi, -ītum [*audiō*], give heed to, obey F, serve

ob-ruō, 3, -ruī, -rutum, overwhelm, bury, destroy

obscurē [*ob-scūrus*], *adv.* darkly, secretly, not clearly, obscurely F

obscuritās, -ātis [*ob-scūrus*], *f.* darkness, obscurity†, uncertainty

obscurō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*ob-scūrus*], darken, obscure F, conceal, hide

ob-scūrus, -a, -um [*cp. scūtum*, shield(?)], dark, obscure F, covered, concealed, secret, unknown

ob-secrō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*sacrō*, consecrate], supplicate, implore, beseech, beg

ob-secundō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*secundō*, favor], humor, favor, support, second F

observāns, -antis [*ob-servō*], *adj.* attentive, respectful. (observe F)

obses, -idis [*cp. sedeō*], *c.* hostage, pledge, security

ob-sideō, 2, -sēdi, -sessum [*sedeō*, sit], besiege F, beset, watch for an opportunity for. (*cp.* obsess†, obsession†)

obsidiō, -ōnis [*ob-sideō*], *f.* siege, investment, attack

ob-signō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, seal, seal up

ob-sistō, 3, -stiti, -stitum, stand in the way of, withstand, resist, thwart

obs-olēscō, 3, -lēvi, -lētum [*cp. ex-olēscō* (*olēscō*, grow)], grow old, decay, become obsolete†

ob-strepō, 3, -strepui, make a noise against, drown (with noise). (*cp.* obstreperous†)

ob-stupefaciō, 3, -fēcī, -factum, stun, amaze, astound

ob-stupēscō, 3, -stupui, be stunned *or* amazed *or* astounded

ob-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be against *or* prejudicial to, be a disadvantage, hurt, injure

ob-temperō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, comply with, conform to, obey, submit

ob-tineō, 2, -tinui, -tentum [*teneō*], hold, possess, keep, maintain, prove. (obtain F)

ob-tingō, 3, **-tigi** [*tangō*], befall, occur, happen

ob-trectō, 1, **-āvi**, **-ātum** [*trāctō*], oppose, carp at, belittle, disparage

ob-tundō, 3, **-tudi**, **-tū(n)sus**, beat against, stun, blunt, deafen, weary. (*cp.* obtuse†)

ob-viam, *adv.* in the way *or* face of, to meet

ob-vius, **-a**, **-um** [*via*], in the way *or* face of, to meet. (obvious†)

occāsiō, **-ōnis** [*oc-cidō*], *f.* opportunity, occasion†

occāsus, **-ūs** [*oc-cidō*], *m.* a going down, setting (*of the sun, etc.*), downfall, ruin, destruction

occidēns, **-entis** [*oc-cidō*], *m.* (*sc. sōl*), sunset, west. (occident F)

oc-cidō, 3, **-cidi**, **-cāsum** [*cadō*], fall, set (*of the sun, etc.*), perish

oc-cidō, 3, **-cidi**, **-cisum** [*caedō*], strike *or* cut down, kill, murder, slay

oc-clūdō, 3, **-clūsi**, **-clūsum** [*claudō*], shut up, close

occultē [*occultus*], *adv.* in concealment, secretly

occultō, 1, **-āvi**, **-ātum** [*freq. of oc-culō*, cover], conceal, hide

occultus, **-a**, **-um** [*oc-culō*, cover], concealed, hidden, secret. (occult†)

occupātiō, **-ōnis** [*occupō*], *f.* occupation F, employment

occupō, 1, **-āvi**, **-ātum** [*cp. capiō*], seize, take possession of, win, occupy F, invest (*funds*)

oc-currō, 3, **-curri**, **-cursum**, run to meet, meet, counteract, oppose. (occur†)

Ōceanus, **-i** [*Greek*], *m.* the ocean†

Octāvius, **-ī**, *m.* a gentile name; *Cn. Octavius*, 47 7, 101 21

octāvus, **-a**, **-um** [*octō*], eighth. (octave F, octavo†)

octō, *num. adj. indecl.* eight

Octōber, **-bris**, **-bre** [*octō*], of October†; *abbr.* Oct.

oculus, **-ī**, *m.* eye. (*cp.* ocular†, oculist F, inoculate†)

ōdī, **ōdisse**, **ōsūrus**, *defective*, hate
odiōsus, **-a**, **-um** [*odium*], hateful, offensive, odious F

odium, **-ī** [*ōdī*], *n.* hatred. (odium†)

of-fendō, 3, **-fendi**, **-fēsum** [*old fendō*], strike against, offend F, come upon, find

offēnsiō, **-ōnis** [*of-fendō*], *f.* disfavor, dislike, offense F, misfortune, defeat

offēnsus, **-a**, **-um** [*of-fendō*], offensive†, odious, disliked

of-ferō, **-ferre**, **oblūi**, **oblātum**, present, offer F, give, bestow, expose. (*cp.* oblation F)

officina, **-ae** [*opifex*, workman], *f.* workshop, factory. (*cp.* officinal†)

officiōsus, **-a**, **-um** [*officium*], dutiful, faithful, devoted. (officious†)

officium, **-ī** [**opificium (ops, faciō)*], *n.* service, kindness, favor, obligation, duty, function. (office F)

of-fundō, 3, **-fūdī**, **-fūsum**, pour out upon *or* over, fill

oleum, **-ī**, *n.* olive oil, oil F

ōlim [*old ollus = ille*], *adv.* at that time, formerly, once upon a time

Olympius, **-a**, **-um** [*Olympia*], of Olympia, Olympian, *epithet of Jupiter*

ōmen, **-inis**, *n.* oment†, sign

- o-mittō**, 3, **-misi**, **-missum** [*ob*], let go, lay aside, pass over, neglect, omit†, disregard
- omninō** [*omnis*], *adv.* altogether, entirely, in general, in all, at all, only
- omnis**, **-e**, all, every, all sorts. (*omni*-†, *omnibus*†)
- onus**, **-eris**, *n.* load, burden, cargo. (*onus*†, *cp.* *onerous*†)
- opera**, **-ae** [*cp.* *opus*], *f.* effort, pains, attention, work, help; **operae pretium**, worth while. (*opera* It)
- operārius**, **-ī** [*opera*], *m.* workman, laborer
- operiō**, 4, **-erui**, **-ertum** [*cp.* *aperiō*, uncover], cover over, close
- operōsus**, **-a**, **-um** [*opera*], pain-taking, laborious, difficult
- Opimius**, **-ī**, *m.* a gentile name; *L. Opimius*, 4 14
- opīmus**, **-a**, **-um**, fat, rich, fertile, productive
- opīniō**, **-ōnis** [*opīnor*], *f.* opinion F, thought, fancy, belief, impression, expectation
- opīnor**, 1, **-ātus sum**, suppose, believe, think, judge, imagine. (*opine*†)
- opitūlor**, 1, **-ātus sum** [*ops*, *old tulō* = *ferō*], bring help, lend aid, assist
- oportet**, 2, **-uit**, it is becoming *or* proper *or* necessary, it behooves, ought
- op-petō**, 3, **-ivī**, **-itum**, go to meet, encounter
- oppidum**, **-ī**, *n.* town, city
- op-pōnō**, 3, **-posui**, **-positum**, set *or* place against, oppose F, compare. (*opponent*†)
- opportunitās**, **-ātis** [*opportūnus*, accessible, opportune], *f.* advantage, opportunity F
- oppositū**, *abl.*, with *acc. plur.* **oppositus** [*op-pōnō*], *m.* opposition, protection. (*cp.* *opposite* F, *-tion*†)
- op-primō**, 3, **-pressi**, **-pressum** [*premō*], press against, check, overpower, overwhelm, surprise, oppress†
- op-pugnō**, 1, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, attack, assail, besiege
- (**ops**), **opis**, *f.* help, aid, assistance; *plur.* **opēs**, **-um**, means, resources, wealth, influence, power. (*cp.* *opulent*†)
- optātus**, **-a**, **-um** [*optō*], wished, desired, pleasing, welcome
- optimās**, **-ātis** [*optimus*], *adj.* of *or* belonging to the best (noblest). *Subst. plur. m.* the aristocratic party, the optimates† (*Introd.* § 41)
- optimē**, *superl. of bene*
- optimus**, *superl. of bonus*. (*optimist* F)
- optō**, 1, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, choose, wish, desire. (*cp.* *option* F, *optative* F)
- opulentus**, **-a**, **-um** [*opēs*], rich, wealthy, opulent†
- opus**, **-eris** [*cp.* *ops*, *opera*], *n.* work, labor, employment, occupation; **opus est**, there is need, it is necessary; **magnō opere**, greatly; **tantō opere**, so very, so much. (*cp.* *operate*†, *operation* F)
- ōra**, **-ae**, *f.* border, boundary, coast, country, region
- ōrātiō**, **-ōnis** [*ōrō*], *f.* speech, words, discourse, oration†, address, plea, theme, subject. (*cp.* *orator* F, *oratory*†)

orbis, -is, m. circle, ring; *with terrae*
or terrarum, the world, earth.

(*orb*†, *cp.* *orbit*†)

orbō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*orb*us, bereft],
deprive, bereave

Orcus, -ī, m. god of the lower world,
Pluto

ordior, 4, ōrsus sum [*cp.* *ordō*],
begin, commence

ordō, -inis, m. row, line, order F,
array, rank, class, body, station.
(*cp.* *ordinary*†, *ordain* F, *ordinal*†,
ordinance F)

Orfius, -ī, m. a gentile name

oriēns, -entis [*orior*, rise], *m.* (*sc.*
sōl), sunrise, east, orient F

ornāmentum, -ī [*ornō*], *n.* equip-
ment, accouterment, decoration,
adornment, ornament F, distinc-
tion, pride; *plur. also* necessities,
requisites, treasures

ornātē [*1. ornātus*], *adv.* elegantly,
with finish *or* polish, eloquently

1. ornātus, -a, -um [*ornō*], equipped,
supplied, well furnished, adorned,
distinguished, honored, honorable.
(*ornate*†)

2. ornātus, -ūs [*ornō*], *m.* decora-
tion, adornment, dress

ornō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*cp.* *ordō*], fit
out, equip, furnish, adorn F, honor,
celebrate

orō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*ōs* (?)], speak,
pray, plead with, implore. (*cp.*
adore F, *orator* F, *oratorio* It)

ortus, -ūs [*orior*, rise], *m.* rising

ōs, ōris, n. mouth, face, expression,
cheek, effrontery. (*cp.* *oral*†)

ōsculor, 1, -ātus sum [*ōsculum* (*ōs*)],
kiss

os-tendō, 3, -tendī, -tentum [*old*
ops = *ob*, *tendō*, stretch], show,
display, exhibit, tell, prove. (*osten-*
sible F)

ostentō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*freq. of os-*
tendō], show, display, exhibit. (*cp.*
ostentation F)

ostentum, -ī [*os-tendō*], *n.* portent,
prodigy

Ōstiēnsis, -e [*Ōstia* (*ōstium*)], of *or*
at Ostia, *the port of Rome*

ōstium, -ī [*ōs*], *n.* mouth, entrance,
door

ōtiōsus, -a, -um [*ōtium*], at lei-
sure, unoccupied, quiet, peaceful.
(*otiose*†)

ōtium, -ī, n. leisure, ease, rest, quiet,
peace

p. = pūblicus, -a, -um

P. = Pūblius, a prænomen

pācātus, -a, -um [*pācō*], reduced to
peace, subdued, at peace, peaceful

pacīscor, 3, pactus sum [*cp.* *pangō*,
make fast], agree upon, bargain,
contract, stipulate

pācō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*pāx*], reduce
to peace, subdue, pacify

pactiō, -ōnis [*pacīscor*], *f.* agree-
ment, contract

pactum, -ī [*pacīscor*], *n.* agreement,
bargain; *abl.* *pactō*, manner,
fashion, way. (*pact* F)

Paean, -ānis, m. god of healing,
epithet of Apollo

paene, adv. almost, nearly. (*cp.*
peninsula†, *penultimate*†)

paenitet, 2, -uit, it repents F, causes
repentance *or* regret *or* dissatisfaction.
(*cp.* *penitent* F, *penance* F)

palam, *adv.* openly, publicly
Palātium, -ī, *n.* the Palatine, *one of the hills of Rome.* (palace F)
pallium, -ī, *n.* a Greek mantle
Pamphilus, -ī, *m.* a Greek name
Pamphylia, -ae, *f.* a small country on the south coast of Asia Minor
Pāpius, -a, -um [*Pāpius*], of Papius, Papian, 103 19
pār, **paris**, *adj.* equal, like, alike, well matched, on a par† with, adequate. (*cp.* parity†)
Paralus, -ī, *m.* an Athenian hero
parātus, -a, -um [*parō*], prepared F, ready. (*cp.* parade F)
parcō, 3, **pepercī**, **parsūrus**, spare, treat considerately. (*cp.* parsimony†)
parēns, -entis [*pariō*], *c.* parent F
pāreō, 2, -uī, appear, obey, heed, have regard for. (*cp.* appear F, apparent F)
pariēs, -etis, *m.* wall (*of a house, etc.*)
pariō, 3, **peperi**, **partum**, bring forth, bear, produce, procure, secure, win, gain. (*cp.* parent F)
parō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*cp.* *pariō*], prepare F, make ready, intend, plan
parricida, -ae [**pārus*, relative, *caedō*], *c.* slayer of a near relative (*esp. of a father*), parricide F, murderer, traitor
parricidium, -ī [*parricida*], *n.* murder of a near relative (*esp. of a father*), parricide F, murder, treason
pars, **partis**, *f.* part†, share, portion, side, direction, region, party F, faction

Parthī, -ōrum, *m. plur.* the Parthians, *a nation east of the Euphrates*
Parthicus, -a, -um [*Parthī*], of or with the Parthians
parti-ceps, -cipis [*pars*, *capiō*], *adj.* sharing, participating†, partaking. *Subst. m.* sharer, partner, participant†
partim, *old acc. of pars*; *correlatively*, some . . . others; *also as adv.* partly, in part
partitiō, -ōnis [*partior*, divide], *f.* division, partition F
parum [*cp.* *parvus*], *adv.* too little, not enough, not much
parvolus, -a, -um [*dim. of parvus*], very small, small, little
parvus, -a, -um [*cp.* *parum*], small, little, slight, petty; **parvī rēfert**, it matters little, makes little difference
passus, -ūs [*pandō*, stretch], *m.* step, pace F
pāstiō, -ōnis [*pāscō*, feed], *f.* a pasturing F, pasturage F
pāstor, -ōris [*pāscō*, feed], *m.* shepherd, herdsman. (pastor F)
pate-faciō, 3, -fēcī, -factum [*pateō*], lay open or bare, open up, disclose, reveal, expose
patella, -ae [*dim. of patera (pateō)*, flat dish], *f.* a flat dish to hold offerings to the gods. (patella†)
pateō, 2, -uī, lie open, be open or exposed or evident, extend. (patent F)
pater, -tris, *m.* father; *also as title of respect*; **pater familiās**, head of a household. (*cp.* paternal†)

patientia, -ae [*patior*], *f.* patience F, endurance, forbearance

pator, 3, **passus sum**, bear, suffer, endure, allow, permit. (*cp.* patient F, passion F, passive†)

Patrae, -ārum, *f. plur.* a city in Greece (Patras)

patria, -ae [*patrius*, *sc. terra*], *f.* native country or place

patricius, -a, -um [*pater*], patrician†. *Subst. plur. m.* the nobility

patrimōnium, -ī [*pater*], *n.* estate inherited from a father, patrimony F

patrius, -a, -um [*pater*], of a father, paternal, of one's ancestors, ancestral

patrōnus, -ī [*pater*], *m.* patron F, advocate

paucī, -ae, -a, few, a few

paucitās, -ātis [*paucus* (*rare sing.*)], *f.* fewness, scarcity, paucity†

paulisper [*paulus*, little], *adv.* for a little while or short time

paulō [*paulus*, little], *adv.* by a little, a little

paulum [*paulus*], *subst. n. and adv.* a little, somewhat

Paulus, -ī, *m.* a cognomen; *L. Aemilius Paulus*, 63 9

pāx, **pācis** [*cp. paciscor*], *f.* peace F, treaty; **pāce tuā**, with your permission, by your leave. (*cp. pacific†*, pacify F)

peccō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, err, miss, go wrong, make a mistake, sin. (*cp. peccadillo Sp*)

pectō, 3, **pexī**, **pexum**, comb

pectus, -oris, *n.* breast, heart, mind. (*cp. pectoral†*)

(**pecū**), *plur. pecua*, -uum [*cp. pecus*], *n.* cattle, herds

pecūnia, -ae [*pecū*, cattle], *f.* wealth, money. (*cp. pecuniary†*)

pecus, -udis, *f.* head of cattle, beast, brute

pedester, -tris, -tre [*pēs*], on foot, pedestrian†, foot or infantry (*adj.*)

peior, **peius**, *compar. of malus*

Pella, -ae, *f.* the capital of Macedonia

pellō, 3, **pepulī**, **pulsum**, beat, strike, drive out, expel†, exile, defeat

Penātēs, -ium [*cp. penitus*], *m. plur.* the household gods, the Penates

pendeō, 2, **pependī** [*cp. pendō*], hang (*intrans.*), depend† upon, be in suspense. (*cp. pendant F, pendulum†*)

pendō, 3, **pependī**, **pēsum** [*cp. pendēō*], cause to hang, hang (*trans.*), weigh, decide, pay. (*cp. pension F, pensive F*)

penes [*cp. penitus*], *prep. with acc.* in the possession or power of, with

penetrō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*penitus*], enter, penetrate

penitus [*cp. penes*], *adv.* within, inwardly, deeply, thoroughly, wholly, exclusively

pēnsitō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*freq. of pēnsō* (*pendō*)], weigh out, pay. (*cp. pension F, expense F*)

per [*cp. 1. prō*], *prep. with acc.* through, across, over, along, among, during, in the course of, throughout, by, by means of, on account of, in the name of, in view of; *as adverbial prefix*, very, exceedingly

per-adulēscēns, -entis, *adj.* very young

- peragrō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*ager*], wander through *or* over, traverse
- per-amplus**, -a, -um, very large
- per-antiquus**, -a, -um, very ancient
- per-brevis**, -e, very short *or* brief
- per-cellō**, 3, -culi, -culsum, strike *or* beat down, overthrow, crush
- per-cipiō**, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [*capīō*], get, obtain, reap, perceive F, learn, understand. (*cp.* perception F)
- per-crēbrēscō**, 3, -crēbruī [*crēber*], thick, frequent], grow prevalent, be noised *or* spread abroad
- per-cutiō**, 3, -cussi, -cussum [*quatiō*, shake], strike through, smite, hit, shock
- per-difficilis**, -e, very difficult
- perditus**, -a, -um [*per-dō*], lost, ruined, abandoned, corrupt, depraved. (*cp.* perdition F)
- per-dō**, 3, -didi, -ditum [-*dō*, -*dere*, put], make away with, destroy, ruin, lose
- per-dūcō**, 3, -dūxi, -ductum, lead through, bring, conduct
- peregrinātiō**, -ōnis [*peregrinor*], *f.* travel *or* residence abroad. (*peregrination*†)
- peregrinor**, 1, -ātus sum [*peregrinus*], go *or* travel abroad. (*cp.* peregrination†)
- peregrinus**, -a, -um [*peregrē* (*ager*), abroad], foreign, strange, alien
- per-ennis**, -e [*annus*], lasting through the year, unfailing, perennial†
- per-eō**, -ire, -iī, -itūrus, perish F, be destroyed, die
- per-excelsus**, -a, -um, very high
- perfectiō**, -ōnis [*per-ficiō*], *f.* completion. (perfection F)
- perfectus**, -a, -um [*per-ficiō*], finished, perfect F, excellent, ideal
- per-ferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, carry, bring, bear, suffer, endure
- per-ficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [*faciō*], carry out, accomplish, finish, perfect F, bring about, cause
- per-fringō**, -fringere, -frēgi, -fractum [*frangō*], break through *or* down, violate, infringe
- per-fruor**, 3, -fructus sum, enjoy to the full, be delighted with
- perfugium**, -ī [*per-fugiō*, flee for refuge], *n.* place of refuge, shelter
- per-fungor**, 3, -fūctus sum, go through, get through with, finish. (*cp.* perfunctory)
- pergō**, 3, -rēxi, -rēctum [*per*, *regō*], keep on, proceed, continue, go forward. (*cp.* pergola It)
- per-grandis**, -e, very large
- per-horrēscō**, 3, -horruī [*horrēscō*, bristle up], shudder, shudder at, tremble to think of
- per-hūmānus**, -a, -um, very polite *or* kind
- periclitor**, 1, -ātus sum [*periculum*], put to the test, endanger, risk
- periculōsus**, -a, -um [*periculum*], dangerous, hazardous, perilous F
- periculum**, -ī [*cp.* *perītus*, *ex-prior*, try], *n.* trial, test, risk, danger, peril F, suit (*at law*)
- per-inde**, *adv.* in the same manner; *with atque or ac*, just as
- per-iniquus**, -a, -um, very unjust *or* unfair
- perītus**, -a, -um [*cp.* *periculum*], experienced, skilled, trained, expert in

per-leviter, *adv.* very slightly
per-lūctuōsus, -a, -um, very sad
per-magnus, -a, -um, very great *or* large
per-maneō, 2, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, stay, remain. (*cp.* permanent†)
per-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, in-trust, permit†, allow
per-modestus, -a, -um, very shy *or* modest, bashful
permolestē [*per-molestus*], *adv.* with much trouble; *with ferre*, be very much troubled *or* vexed at
per-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum, move deeply, rouse, influence, induce, prevail upon
permultum [*per-multus*], *adv.* very much, very
per-multus, -a, -um, very much *or* many
per-niciēs, -ēī [*cp. nex, necō*], *f.* destruction, death, ruin
perniciōsus, -a, -um [*per-niciēs*], destructive, ruinous, dangerous, pernicious F
per-nōbilis, -e, very famous
pernoctō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*per-nox*, lasting all night], spend the night
per-parvolus, -a, -um, very small
per-paucī, -ae, -a, very few
perpetuō [*per-petuus*], *adv.* permanently, perpetually F
per-petuus, -a, -um [*petō*], continuous, unbroken, uninterrupted, permanent, perpetual F. *Subst. n. in*
perpetuum, forever, permanently
per-saepe, *adv.* very often
per-scribō, 3, -scripsī, -scriptum, write out (in full), transcribe, record

per-sequor, 3, -secūtus sum, follow up *or* after, pursue, prosecute, punish, take vengeance on. (*cp.* persecute F)
Persēs, -ae, *acc. -ēn, m.* Perses *or* Perseus, a king of Macedonia, 63 10
persevērantia, -ae [*per-sevērō*, persist], *f.* persistence, perseverance F, constancy
per-solvō, 3, -solvī, -solūtum, pay, pay over
persōna, -ae [*Etruscan*], *f.* mask, rôle, part, character, person F
per-spiciō, 3, -spexī, -spectrum [*speciō*, see], look *or* see through, perceive, discern, note, observe. (*cp.* perspicuous†, perspective†)
per-suādeō, 2, -suāsī, -suāsum, persuade†, convince. (persuasive†)
per-terreō, 2, -terrui, -territum, thoroughly frighten, alarm, terrify
per-timēscō, 3, -timui, become thoroughly frightened, be alarmed, fear (*trans.*)
pertinācia, -ae [*per-tināx* (*tenāx, teneō*)], *f.* persistence, obstinacy, pertinacity†
per-tineō, 2, -tinui [*teneō*], extend, pertain (F) to, belong to, be of importance, concern, tend
per-turbō, 1, -āvī, -ātum, greatly agitate, confuse, disturb. (perturb†, *cp.* perturbation†)
per-vādō, 3, -vāsī [*vādō*, go], go through, extend, spread, penetrate, pervade†. (pervasive†)
pervagātus, -a, -um [*per-vagor*], widespread

per-vagor, 1, **-ātus sum**, wander through, spread, be known
per-veniō, 4, **-vēnī, -ventum**, come through, arrive, reach, attain
per-vetus, **-veteris**, *adj.* very old
pēs, **pedis**, *m.* foot; *abl.* **pedibus**, sometimes by land. (*cp.* **pedal†**)
pessimus, **-a, -um**, *superl.* of **malus**
pestilentia, **-ae** [**pestilēns** (**pestis**, pest F)], *f.* plague, pestilence F
pestis, **-is**, *f.* plague, pest F, pestilence, destruction, death, ruin, bane, curse
petitiō, **-ōnis** [**petō**], *f.* thrust, blow, attack, aim. (petition F)
petō, 3, **-ivī, -itum**, fall upon, attack, aim at, seek, ask for, beg, request. (*cp.* **compete†**, **repeat F**)
Petreius, **-ī**, *m.* a gentile name; *M. Petreius*, 187 8
petulantia, **-ae** [**petulāns**, impudent], *f.* impudence, wantonness. (petulance F)
Phaëthō, **-ontis**, *m.* a freedman of Q. Cicero, 162 2
Philippus, **-ī**, *m.* a Greek name, esp. Philip V, king of Macedonia, 73 2; also as a Roman cognomen; *L. Marcius Philippus*, 93 5
philosophia, **-ae** [*Greek*], *f.* philosophy F
philosophus, **-ī** [*Greek*], *m.* philosopher F
Philotimus, **-ī**, *m.* a freedman, 189 1
Picēnum, **-ī**, *n.* a district of Italy on the Adriatic
Picēnus, **-a, -um** [**Picēnum**], of Picenum, Picenian
pictor, **-ōris** [**pingō**], *m.* painter F. (*cp.* **pictorial†**)

pictūra, **-ae** [**pingō**], *f.* painting, picture†
pietās, **-ātis** [**pius**, dutiful], *f.* dutiful conduct, devotion, affection, piety F, loyalty. (pity F)
piger, **-gra, -grum** [*cp.* **piget**, it disgusts], slow, dull, lazy, reluctant
pila, **-ae** [**pilus**, hair], *f.* ball, ball-playing, game of ball
Pilia, **-ae**, *f.* the wife of Atticus, 180 16
Pindenissus, **-ī**, *f.* a town in Cilicia
pingō, 3, **pinxi**, **pictum**, paint F, decorate. (*cp.* **picture†**, **depict†**)
pinguis, **-e**, fat, heavy, stupid, dull
pirāta, **-ae** [*Greek*], *m.* pirate†, corsair
Pisaurum, **-ī**, *n.* a town on the Adriatic coast of Italy (Pe'saro)
piscis, **-is**, *m.* fish. (*cp.* **piscatory†**)
Pisō, **-ōnis**, *m.* a cognomen; *C. Calpurnius Piso Frugi*, first husband of Tullia, 52 25, 164 17; *L. Calpurnius Piso Frugi*, 144 17; *L. Calpurnius Piso*, 164 11, 186 3
Pius, **-ī**, *m.* a cognomen; *v.* **Metellus**
placeō, 2, **-uī** and **placitum est**, please F; **placet**, it pleases or is settled or determined, one pleases or decides. (*cp.* **placid†**)
placō, 1, **-āvi, -ātum** [*cp.* **placeō**], quiet, appease, conciliate, reconcile, propitiate, placate†
plāga, **-ae** [*cp.* **plangō**, beat], *f.* blow, stroke, misfortune. (plague F)
Plancius, **-ī**, *m.* a gentile name; *Cn. Plancius*, 164 9
plānē [**plānus**, flat], *adv.* plainly F, clearly, entirely, thoroughly, quite, very

plānitiēs, -ēī [*plānus*, flat], *f.* level ground, plain

plēbs, -bis (*and plēbēs, -beī or -bī*) [*cp. plēnus*], *f.* common people, plebeians†, populace, multitude

plēnus, -a, -um [*old pleō*, fill], full, filled with. (*cp.* plenty F, plenary†, plenipotentiary†)

plērum-que [*plerus-que*], *adv.* mostly, generally, for the most part

plērus-que, reg. plur., plērique, -aeque, -aque [*old pleō*, fill], most, the majority, very many

Plōtius, -ī, m. a gentile name; *L. Plotius Gallus*, 108 7

plūrēs, plūra, compar. of multus plūrimum [*plūrimus*], *adv.* most, very much, especially

plūrimus, -a, -um, superl. of multus plūs, compar. of multum

pōculum, -ī [*cp. pōtus*, drunk], *n.* drinking-vessel, cup, goblet

poēma, -atis [*Greek*], *n.* poem F

poena, -ae [*Greek*], *f.* punishment, penalty†. (*cp.* penal F)

Poenī, -ōrum, m. plur. the Carthaginians (Phoenicians)

poēta, -ae [*Greek*], *m.* poet F

poliō, 4, -ivī, -itum, polish F, finish, adorn. (polite†)

πολιτικά (*politiká*), *n. plur.* state affairs, public matters, a book on the State. (politics F)

Pollex, -icis, m. a slave of Cicero, 194 6

pol-liceor, 2, -itus sum [*por-*, toward, *liceor*, make a bid], offer, promise, pledge

Polyclītus, -ī, m. a Greek sculptor, 132 3

Pompeianum, -ī, n. an estate of Cicero at Pompeii

Pompeius, -ī, m. Pompey, a gentile name; *Cn. Pompeius Magnus*, 63 12, 67 ff., 110 9, 188 13; his father, 79 5

Pompōnia, -ae, f. the wife of Q. Cicero, 167 2

Pompōnius, -ī, m. a gentile name; *v. Atticus*

Pomptinus, -ī, m. a cognomen; *C. Pomptinus*, 37 2

pondus, -eris [*cp. pendō*], *n.* weight. (*cp.* pound†)

pōnō, 3, posuī, positum [*po-* (= *ab*), *sinō*, let], set or lay down, place, pitch, put, consider, spend, invest. (*cp.* position F, positive F, deposit F, compose F, etc.)

pōns, pontis, m. bridge. (pontoon F)

ponti-fex, -ficis [*uncertain*], *m.* priest, pontifex†, pontiff F (Introd. § 31)

Pontus, -ī, m. the Black Sea (Pontus Euxinus); a country on its south-eastern coast

Popilius, -ī, m. a gentile name; *P. Popilius Lænas*, 146 11

popīna, -ae, f. cookshop, (low) eating-house, dive

populāris, -e [*populus*], popular†, democratic

populus, -ī [*cp. plēbs*, folk], *m.* people F, tribe, nation. (populace F, population†)

porrō, adv. forward, further, besides, moreover

porta, -ae [*cp. per, portus*], *f.* gate, city gate. (*cp.* portal F, portcullis F)

por-tendō, 3, -tendī, -tentum [*por-*, toward], point out, reveal, predict, portend†

porticus, -ūs [*porta*], *f.* colonnade, porch F, portico It

portō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*por-*, toward, *eō*, *freq.*], carry, bear, bring. (*cp.* porter F, portable F, portage F)

portus, -ūs [*cp. porta*], *m.* harbor, port†

poscō, 3, poposci [*cp. precor*], ask urgently, beg, demand

positus, -a, -um [*pōnō*], placed, located, situated, dependent upon. (post F, *in mail and military usage*)

possessio, -ōnis [*possideō*, possess], *f.* possession F, occupation, estate, property

possum, posse, potui [*potis*, able, *sum*], be able, can, have power or influence, be strong or powerful. (posse†, *cp.* possible F)

post, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, behind, after, afterwards, since; *as conj. with quam*, after. (post-†)

post-eā [*is*], *adv.* afterwards; *as conj. with quam*, after

posteā-quam, *see* posteā

posteritās, -ātis [*posterus*], *f.* the future, after ages, posterity F

posterius [*posterior (posterus)*], *adv.* later, by and by

(*posterus*), -a, -um [*post*], coming after, following, next, future; *in posterum*, for the future. *Subst. plur. m. posterī*, descendants, future generations. (*cp. posterior*†, *postern*†)

post-hāc [*hic*], *adv.* hereafter, henceforth, in the future

postrēmō [*postrēmus*], *adv.* finally, at last

postrēmus, a, -um [*superl. of posterus*], last, lowest, worst

postrī-diē [*posterus*], *adv.* on the next day, the day after

postulō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*cp. poscō*], ask, demand, beg, request. (*cp. postulate*†)

potēns, -entis [*possum*], *adj.* able, powerful, influential, potent†. (*cp. potential*†)

potestās, -ātis [*potis*, able], *f.* power, authority, office, possibility, opportunity, permission, chance

potior, -īrī, -ītus sum [*potis*], become master of, get possession or control of

potissimum [*superl. of potius*], *adv.* chiefly, especially, in particular

potius [*potior (potis)*], *compar. adv.* rather

pr. = *prīdiē*

prae, *prep. with abl.* before, in front of, in comparison with; **prae sē ferre**, display, exhibit, show

praebeō, 2, -uī, -itum [*-hibeō = habeō*], hold out, offer, tender, furnish, supply, show

prae-ceps, -cipitis [*caput*], *adj.* headlong, in haste, headstrong, hasty, rash. (*cp. precipitous* F, *precipice*†, *precipitate*†)

praeceptum, -ī [*prae-cipiō*], *n.* order, direction, instruction, precept†

prae-cipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [*capīō*], take beforehand, anticipate, en-

- join upon, instruct, advise; *with oculis*, get a sight before. (*cp.* preceptor†)
- praecipuē** [*praecipuus*], *adv.* chiefly, especially
- praecipuus**, -a, -um [*cp. capiō*], peculiar, especial
- praecīlārē** [*prae-clārus*], *adv.* very clearly, excellently, admirably
- prae-clārus**, -a, -um, brilliant, magnificent, excellent, splendid, famous, illustrious
- praecō**, -ōnis [**praedicō* (*cp. prae-dicō*, -āre)], *m.* crier, herald
- praecōnium**, -ī [*praecōnius* (*praecō*)], *n.* heralding, proclaiming, commendation
- prae-currō**, 3, -cucurrī, -cursum, run before, outrun, outstrip
- praeda**, -ae [*cp. pr(a)e-hendō*, seize], *f.* booty, plunder
- praedātor**, -ōris [*praedor*, to plunder], *m.* plunderer, robber. (*cp.* predatory†)
- praedicātiō**, -ōnis [*prae-dicō*], *f.* proclaiming, praising, praise
- prae-dicō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum, proclaim, declare, praise, celebrate. (*cp.* preach F, predicate†, predicament†)
- prae-dicō**, 3, -dixī, -dictum, foretell, predict†, say at the start, premise
- prae-ditus**, -a, -um [*datus*], gifted *or* provided with, furnished, endowed
- praedium**, -ī [*cp. prae*, -dis, surety], *n.* farm, estate. (predial†)
- praedō**, -ōnis [*praeda*], *m.* freebooter, robber, pirate
- praedor**, 1, -ātus sum [*praeda*], take booty, plunder, rob. (*cp.* depredation F)
- praefectūra**, -ae [*praefectus*], *f.* prefectship, prefecture†
- praefectus**, -ī [*prae-ficiō*], *m.* commander, governor, prefect F
- prae-ferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, carry *or* bear before, put *or* place before, prefer F. (*cp.* prelate†)
- prae-ficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [*faciō*], set over, make commander of, put in charge of
- prae-mittō**, 3, -mīsī, -missum, send ahead *or* in advance. (*cp.* premise F, premises F)
- praemium**, -ī [*prae*, emō, take], *n.* reward, prize, recompense. (premium†)
- Praeneste**, -is, *abl.* -e, *n.* (and *f.*), a town in Latium (Palestrina)
- prae-pōnō**, 3, -posui, -positum, place before *or* over, make commander of. (*cp.* preposition†)
- prae-scribō**, 3, -scripsi, -scriptum, prescribe†, direct, ordain, require of. (*cp.* prescription†)
- praesēns**, -entis [*prae-sum*], *adj.* at hand, in person, present F, direct, immediate, obvious, helpful, providential. *Subst. n.* the present F
- praesentia**, -ae [*praesēns*], *f.* presence F, the present
- prae-sentiō**, 4, -sēnsī, -sēnsium, perceive in advance, look forward to, have a presentiment F
- praesertim**, *adv.* especially, principally, particularly
- prae-sideō**, 2, -sēdī [*sedeō*, sit], pre-side (F) over, rule, watch over. (*cp.* president F)

- praesidium**, -ī [*praeses* (*prae-sideō*), protector], *n.* protection, defense, help, aid, support, guard, escort, garrison. (*presidio* Sp)
- praestāns**, -antis [1. *prae-stō*], *adj.* outstanding, eminent, preëminent, remarkable, superior
1. **prae-stō**, 1, -stitī, -stitum, stand out *or* forth, be superior *or* better; also (*perhaps a different verb* [*praes*, surety, *stō*]) guarantee, answer *or* vouch for, keep, render, show
2. **praestō** [*prae, situs* (*sinō*)], *adv.* at hand, present, ready. (*presto* It)
- praestōlor**, 1, -ātus sum [2. *praestō*], wait for, expect
- prae-sum**, -esse, -fui, be at the head of, be in command of, command
- praeter** [*prae*], *adv. and prep.* with *acc.* past, beyond, by, besides, aside from, except, contrary to. (*preter*†)
- praeter-eā** [*is*], *adv.* in addition, besides, moreover
- praeter-eō**, -īre, -iī, -itum, pass by *or* over, omit
- praeteritus**, -a, -um [*praeter-eō*], past. *Subst. plur. n.* the past. (*preterit*†)
- praeter-mittō**, 3, -misi, -misum, let pass *or* go, overlook, pass over, omit
- praeter-quam**, *adv.* further than, besides, beyond, save, except
- praetextātus**, -a, -um [*prae-texta*], wearing the toga praetexta, in boyhood, still a child
- prae-textus**, -a, -um [*texō*, weave], bordered. *Subst. f. (sc. toga)*, toga praetexta (*with a purple border; worn by higher magistrates, some priests, and boys till they put on the toga virilis*)
- praetor**, -ōris [*prae, eō*], *m.* commander, praetor†, justice, governor of a province (*Introd.* § 25)
- praetōrius**, -a, -um [*praetor*], of a commander *or* praetor, praetorian†; *with cohors*, bodyguard. *Subst. n.* headquarters, governor's residence
- praetūra**, -ae [*praetor*], *f.* praetorship, office of praetor
- prāvitās**, -ātis [*prāvus*, crooked, bad], *f.* badness, wickedness, depravity†
- Prāxitelēs**, -ī, *m.* a Greek sculptor, 181 15
- precī**, -em, -e, *defective, usually plur., precēs, etc.* [*cp. poscō*], *f.* prayer F, entreaty. (*cp. precarioust*)
- precor**, 1, -ātus sum [*precī*], pray F, beg, entreat. (*cp. imprecate*†)
- premō**, 3, **pressi**, **pressum**, press F, pursue, press hard, burden, oppress F. (*print* F)
- pretium**, -ī [*cp. pār*], *n.* price F, value, reward; **operae pretium**, worth while
- (*prex*), *see* **precī**
- pri-dem** [*cp. prior*], *adv.* long ago; *with iam*, now for a long time, long since
- pri-diē** [*cp. prior*], *adv.* on the day before, the previous day; *abbr. pr.*
- primārius**, -a, -um [*primus*], of the first rank, eminent, prominent. (*primary*†)
- primō** [*primus*], *adv.* at first

primum [*prīmus*], *adv.* first, in the first place, at first, for the first time; *with cum or ut*, as soon as; *with quam*, as soon as possible

primus, -a, -um, *superl.* of prior [*cp. prīstinus*], first, foremost, chief, principal; *in prīmīs*, especially. (prime†, *cp.* primal†, primate†)

prīn-ceps, -cipis [*prīmus, capiō*], *adj.* first, foremost, leading. *Subst. m.* leading man, chief. (prince F, *cp.* principal†, principle†)

prīncipium, -ī [*prīn-ceps*], *n.* beginning

prior, prius [**pri = prae*], *compar.* former, previous. (prior†, *cp.* priority F)

prīstinus, -a, -um [*cp. prior, prīscus*, old], former, original. (pristine†)

prius [*prior*], *adv.* before, sooner, earlier, rather

prius-quam or prius . . . quam, *conj.* before

prīvātīm [*prīvātus*], *adv.* privately†, in a private capacity

prīvātus, -a, -um [*prīvō*], private†, in private life, not a magistrate. *Subst. m.* private citizen

prīvō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, [*prīvus*, single, peculiar], deprive F

1. **prō** [*cp. per*], *prep. with abl.* before, in front of, on the front of, on behalf of, for, as, as good as, in place of, in return for, in accordance with, in proportion to, in view or consideration of, compared with; **prō cōsule**, proconsul (*acting for a consul*). (pro† *in* "pro and con")

2. **prō** [1. *prō*], *interj.* O! ah! alas!
pro-avus, -ī, *m.* great-grandfather

probātus, -a, -um [*probō*], tested, tried, proved F, approved F, acceptable

probē [*probus*, good]; *adv.* well, properly

probitās, -ātis [*probus*], *f.* goodness, uprightness, honesty, probity†

probō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*probus*], approve F, commend, prove F. (probe†, *cp.* probate†, probable†)

prō-cēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum, go forward, march or journey on, proceed F. (*cp.* procession F)

procella, -ae, *f.* storm, tempest, commotion, tumult

prō-cōnsul, -is, *m.* proconsul†, governor of a province; *for prō cōnsule see* 1 *prō*

prōcōs. = **prōcōnsul**

procul [*cp.* 1. *prō*], *adv.* far away, at a distance, from afar

prōcūrātiō, -ōnis [*prō-cūrō*, take care of], *f.* caring for, management, charge

prōd-eō, -īre, -īi, -itum [*old prōd- = prō*], go forth, come out, advance

prō-dicō, 3, -dixī, -dictum, fix in advance, put off, adjourn

prōdigium, -ī [*old prōd- = prō, aiō*, say], *n.* omen, portent, prodigy†, monster. (*cp.* prodigious†)

prōdigus, -a, -um [*old prōd- = prō, agō*], lavish, extravagant, prodigal F. *Subst. m.* a spendthrift

prō-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum [*-dō, -dere*, put], put forth, report, hand down, transmit, disclose, betray

prō-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, bring forward, produce†, bring up. (product†)

proelium, -i, *n.* battle

profānus, -a, -um [*pro* = *prō*, *fānum*, temple], not sacred, common, profane F

profectiō, -ōnis [*pro-ficīscor*], *f.* a setting out, departure

profectō [= *prō factō*], *adv.* for a fact, really, surely, certainly, assuredly

prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bring forth *or* forward, produce, extend, make known

profectiō, -ōnis [*pro-fiteor*], *f.* declaration, registration, notice. (profession F)

prō-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [*faciō*], have success, accomplish, effect. (proficient†, profit F)

pro-ficīscor, 3, -fectus sum [*pro* = *prō*, *faciō*, *incept.*], set out *or* forth, start, depart, proceed

pro-fiteor, 2, -fessus sum [*pro* = *prō*, *fateor*, confess], declare, make a declaration, register oneself, give notice, profess†

prōfligātus, -a, -um [*prō-fligō*], abandoned, corrupt, vile, profligate†

prō-fligō, 1, -āvī, -ātum, strike down, overthrow, overcome, crush, prostrate

pro-fugiō, 3, -fūgī [*pro* = *prō*], flee, run away, escape

pro-fundō, 3, -fūdī, -fūsum [*pro* = *prō*], pour out *or* forth, lavish, squander, sacrifice. (*cp.* profuse†, profusion†)

prō-gredior, 3, -gressus sum [*gradior*, step], go forth *or* forward, advance, progress†

prōgressiō, -ōnis [*prō-gredior*], *f.* an advance. (progression F)

pro-hibeō, 2, -hibuī, -hibitum [*pro* = *prō*, *habeō*], hold *or* keep off, keep from, hinder, check, prevent, defend *or* protect from. (prohibit†)

prō-iciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectum [*iaciō*], throw out, cast out, expel. (project†, *cp.* projectile†)

prōiectus, -a, -um [*prō-iciō*], jutting out, projecting†

pro-inde, *adv.* hence, therefore, accordingly

prōlātō, 1, -āvī [*prō-lātus* (*ferō*)], postpone, put off

prōmō, 3, prōmpsī, prōmptum [*prō*, *emō*, take], take *or* bring out, produce. (*cp.* prompt†)

prō-mulgō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*probably for prō-vulgō*, publish], publish, give notice of. (promulgate†)

prō-pāgō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*pangō*, fix], set forward, extend, spread, increase, propagate†, prolong. (propaganda It)

prō-patulus, -a, -um [*pateō*], open, uncovered

prope, *adv.* and *prep.* with acc. near, nearly, almost, well-nigh

prope-diem [**prope diem*], *adv.* at an early day, very soon

propinquus, -a, -um [*prope*], near, neighboring. *Subst. m.* relative, kinsman. (*cp.* propinquity F)

propior, -ius [*cp. prope*], *compar.* nearer

propius, *adv.*, *compar.* of *prope*

prō-pōnō, 3, -posuī, -positum, place *or* set before, propose F

proprius, -a, -um, one's own, special, peculiar, proper F, belonging *or* appropriate† to, characteristic of, in conformity with. (*cp.* property†, proprietor†)

propter [*prope*], *adv. and prep. with acc.* near, at hand, on account of

propter-eā [*is*], *adv.* on that (this) account; *with quod*, for the reason that, because

prōpugnāculum, -ī [*prō-pugnō*, fight in defense], *n.* rampart, defense, means of defense

prō-pulsō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*freq. of prō-pellō*, drive away], ward off, avert. (*cp.* propel†)

prō-rogō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, prolong, extend. (prorogue F)

prōrsus [*prō, vorsus (vertō)*], *adv.* forward, certainly, entirely, absolutely

prōscriptiō, -ōnis [*prō-scribō*], *f.* notice of a sale, advertisement, confiscation, proscription†

prō-sequor, 3, -secūtus sum, accompany, escort, attend. (prosecute†)

Prōserpina, -ae, *f.* daughter of the goddess Demeter (Ceres)

prōsperē [*prōsperus (prō, spēs)*], *adv.* successfully, fortunately, prosperously F

prō-spiciō, 3, -spexī, -spectum [*speciō*, see], foresee, look out for, provide for. (*cp.* prospect†)

prō-sternō, 3, -strāvī, -strātum, throw to the ground, overthrow, prostrate†, subvert, ruin, destroy

prō-sum (prōd-est), prōd-esse, prō-fuī, be of use *or* advantage, benefit, profit

prō-tinus [*tenus, unto*], *adv.* forward, on, directly, forthwith

pro-ut, *adv.* according as, just as, as

prōvidentia, -ae [*prō-videō*], *f.* foresight, forethought, (providence F)

prō-videō, 2, -vīdī, -visum, foresee, look out for, act with foresight, care for, provide†, guard against. (*cp.* provision†)

prōvincia, -ae, *f.* office, province F
prōvinciālis, -e [*prōvincia*], of a province, provincial†

prō-vocō, 1, -āvī, -ātum, call out *or* forth, challenge, arouse, provoke†. (*cp.* provocation†)

proximē [*proximus*], *adv., superl.* of *prope*, very recently

proximus, -a, -um, *superl. of pro-* prior, nearest, next, the following, last. (*cp.* approximate†)

prūdēns, -entis [= *prō-vidēns*], *adj.* foreseeing, wise, prudent†, circumspect, with knowledge (wittingly)

prūdētia, -ae [*prūdēns*], *f.* foresight, wisdom, prudence†

pruīna, -ae *f.* frost

prytanium, -ī [*Greek*], *n.* city hall (containing a dining hall)

P. S. D. = S. D. P.

pūblicānus, -a, -um [*pūblicum (pū-blicus)*], public revenues, of the public revenues. *Subst. m.* farmer of the revenues, taxgatherer, publican F

pūblicātiō, -ōnis [*pūblicō*], *f.* confiscation. (publication†)

pūblicē [*pūblicus*], *adv.* publicly F, for *or* by the state, officially

Pūblicius, -ī, *m.* a gentile name

- pūblicō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*pūblicus*], expropriate, confiscate, sell. (publish F)
- pūblicus**, -a, -um [*probably pūbēs*, adult males, *collectively*], of the people *or* the state, public F; **rēs pūblica**, the state, republic†, public welfare *or* interest
- Pūblius**, -ī, *m.* a prænomen
- pudet**, 2, -uit *or* -itum est, it causes shame, it makes one (*acc.*) ashamed, one (*acc.*) is ashamed
- pudicitia**, -ae [*pudicus*, modest], *f.* modesty, purity, chastity, virtue
- pudor**, -ōris [*cp. pudet*], *m.* shame, sense of shame, modesty, honor, self-respect
- puer**, -erī, *m.* boy, child
- puerilis**, -e [*puer*], of a boy, boyish. (puerile†)
- pueritia**, -ae [*puer*], *f.* boyhood, childhood
- pugna**, -ae [*cp. pugnus*, fist], *f.* fight, battle
- pugnō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*pugnus or pugna*], fight, contend, struggle with. (*cp. pugnacioust*, repugnant†)
- pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, beautiful, fair, honorable, glorious
- pulchrē** [*pulcher*], *adv.* beautifully
- pulchritūdō**, -inis [*pulcher*], *f.* beauty
- pullus**, -a, -um, dark, gray, dusky
- pulverulentus**, -a, -um [*pulvis*], dusty
- pulvinar**, -āris [*pulvīnus*, cushion], *n.* couch (*on which statues of gods were made to recline for a ceremonial feast*); *freely*, shrine
- pulvis**, -eris, *m.* dust
- pūnctum**, -ī [*pungō*, prick], *n.* point F, instant. (*cp. punctuate†*, punctual†, punctilious It *or* Sp)
- Pūnicus**, -a, -um [*Poenī*], Punic, Carthaginian
- pūniō**, 4, -ivī, -itum [*poena*], punish F
- pūrgō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*old pūr-igō* (*pūrus*, *agō*)], cleanse, purify, purge F, clear, excuse. (*cp. expurgate†*)
- purpura**, -ae [*Greek*], *f.* purple†, purple garment
- purpurātus**, -a, -um [*purpura*], clad in purple. *Subst. m.* courtier, court official, minister
- pūrus**, -a, -um, clean, pure F. (*cp. purify F*, Puritan†)
- putō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*putus*, clean; *cp. pūrus*], clear up, reckon, think, deem, consider, suppose, believe, regard. (*cp. putative†*, compute F, dispute F)
- Q** = **Quīntus**, a prænomen
- quā** [*quī, abl.*], *adv.* by what way, where
- quadriduum**, -ī [*quattuor, diēs*], *n.* a period of four days
- quaerō**, 3, **quaesivī**, -itum, seek, look for, investigate, inquire F, ask. (query†, quest F)
- quaesitor**, -ōris [*quaerō*], *m.* investigator, examining magistrate
- quaesō**, 3 [*quaerō*], *defective*, I beg, I pray, please
- quaestiō**, -ōnis [*quaerō*], *f.* investigation, inquiry, court, question F (Intro. § 40)

quaestor, -ōris [*quaerō*], *m.* quaestor†, a magistrate whose duties were mainly financial (Intro. § 28)

quaestus, -ūs [*quaerō*], *m.* gain, profit; in *quaestū*, at interest
quālis, -e [*quī*], *interrog. and rel.* of what sort or nature? what kind of? as (*with tālis*), such as. (*cp.* quality†)

quam [*quī*, *acc.*], *interrog. and rel. adv.* how? how greatly? how, as, as much as; in a comparison, than, rather than; *with superl.* as . . . as possible

quam-quam [*quam* doubled to make it *indef.*], *conj.* however, although, and yet

quam-vis [*volō*], *adv. and conj.* as you please, howsoever, however much; although, be it never so

quandō [*quam*, **dō*, *cp.* *dē*], *adv. and conj.* when? since; *indef.* some day, at any time

quantō [*quantus*], *interrog. and rel. adv.* by how much? how much? as much

quantus, -a, -um [*quam*], *interrog. and rel.* how great? how much? as great (as), as much (as), as; **quantō opere**, how much, how greatly; **quantī**, at what price; **quantum**, *adv.* how much? as much. (*quantum*†, *cp.* quantity F)

quantus-cumque, -a-cumque, -um-cumque [*old quom-que*, whenever], however great (or small)

quā-propter [*quī*], *adv.* wherefore, on this account

quārtus, -a, -um [*quattuor*], fourth. (quart F, quarter F, quartette F, quarto†)

quasi [= *quam sī*], *adv. and conj.* as if, as it were. (*quasi*†)

quassō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*freq. of quatiō*], shake violently, shatter, weaken

quattuor, *num. adj. indecl.* four
-que, *conj.* and

queō, 4, **quīvi**, *defective*, be able, can (*with nōn*)

querēla, -ae [*queror*], *f.* complaint. (quarrel F)

querimōnia, -ae [*queror*], *f.* complaint

queror, 3, **questus sum**, complain, complain of, lament. (*cp.* querulous†)

quī, and **quis**, *pron.:*

1. *interrog.* **quis** (*subst.*) or **quī** (*adj.*), **quae** (*adj.*), **quid** (*subst.*) or **quod** (*adj.*), who? what? which? **quā rē**? and **quid**? why? **quam ob rem**? wherefore? why? **quī** (*abl.*), how?

2. *rel.* **quī**, **quae**, **quod**, who, what, which, that; **quā rē** and **quam ob rem**, wherefore, therefore

3. *indef., like the interrog., except. fem. sing. nom.* **qua** (*adj.*) and *neut. plur.* **qua** or **quae**, anyone, anything, any. (*quorum*†)

quia [*quī*, *quis*], *conj.* because, since
quicquam, *see quisquam*

quī-cumque, **quae-cumque**, **quod-cumque** [*old quom-que*, whenever], *indef. rel. pron.* whoever, whichever, whatever

quid, *see quī*, *quis*, 1 and 3

qui-dam, quae-dam, quid-dam (*subst.*) or **quod-dam** (*adj.*), *indef. pron.* a certain, a certain one, one, something, a kind of

quidem [*quid* (*quī*), *-dem* (*cp. dē*)], *adv.* indeed, certainly, to be sure, by the way, at least; *nē* . . . **quidem**, not even, not . . . either, also not

quiēs, -ētis, *f.* rest, quiet†, peace
quiēscō, 3, **quiēvī, quiētus** [*quiēs*], be or keep quiet, be still, rest. (*quiescent†, cp. acquiesce F*)

quiētus, -a, -um [*quiēscō*], quiet†, peaceful, undisturbed. (*quit F, quite F*)

quīn [*old abl. quī*, how, why, *-ne*], *adv. and conj.* why not? yes indeed; *with etiam* (or *without*), nay even, in fact, in reality; so that . . . not, but that, but, that, from (*with a verbal noun*)

Quinquātrūs, -uum [*quīnque*], *f. plur.* a festival of Minerva, beginning March 19 (five days after the Ides)

quinque, *num. adj. indecl.* five. (*quinquennial†*)

Quīntilis, -e [*quīntus*], of Quintilis (*fifth month, later named Iūlius, July; cp. p. 280, n. 2; abbr. Quint.*)

quīntus, -a, -um [*quīnque*], fifth; *with decimus*, fifteenth. (*quint F, quintessence†, quintet F*)

Quīntus, -ī, *m.* a praenomen

Quīrīs, -ītis, *m., common only in the plur., Quīrītēs, -ium*, Quirites, fellow citizens, my countrymen

quis, *see quī*

quis-nam or **quī-nam** (*adj.*), **quae-nam, quid-nam** or **quod-nam**

(*adj.*), *interrog. pron.* who, pray? what in the world?

quis-piam, quae-piam, quid-piam or **quod-piam** (*adj.*), *indef. pron.* anyone, anything, any, some

quis-quam, quic-quam or **quid-quam**, *indef. pron.* anyone, anything

quis-que, quae-que, quid-que or **quod-que** (*adj.*), *indef. pron.* each, each one, every

quis-quis, quic-quid or **quid-quid**, *indef. rel. pron.* whoever, whatever

quī-vīs, quae-vīs, quid-vīs or **quod-vīs** (*adj.*) [*vīs* (*volō*)], *indef. pron.* any you please, anyone, anything

quō [*quī, quis*], *interrog. and rel. adv., and conj.*, whither, where, wherefore; **quō ūsque**, how far? how long? *as conj., with a comparative*, by means of which, in order that, that; **quō minus**, in order that . . . not, from (*with a verbal noun*); **nōn quō**, not that

quo-ad [*quō*], *conj.* as long as, while, until, as far as

quō-cumque, *adv.* whithersoever, in whatever direction

quod [*quī*], *conj.* because, since, in that, that, the fact that, as for, as for the fact that; **quod sī**, but if, and if, if now, if then

quon-dam [*quom = cum*], *adv.* formerly, once, once upon a time. (*quondam†, adj.*)

quon-iam [*quom = cum*], *conj.* since now, since, because, inasmuch as

quo-que [*quī*], *conj.* also, too

quot [*quī*], *indecl. adj.* how many? as many. (*cp. quota†, quotet†*)

quot-annīs [*annus*], *adv.* every year, yearly

quotiēns [*quot*], *adv.* how often? as often as. (quotient†)

quotiēns-cumque, *adv.* how often soever, however often, whenever

R. = *Rōmānus*

rapīna, -ae [*rapīō*], *f.* robbery, rapine†

rapīō, 3, *rapuī*, **raptum**, seize, snatch, carry off, hurry away. (rape†, rapt†, *cp.* rapacious†, rapid†)

raptus, -ūs [*rapīō*], *m.* a snatching away, carrying off, abduction, rape

ratio, -ōnis [*reor*, reckon], *f.* reckoning, account, business, matter, interest, relation, regard, nature, manner, way, method, means, plan, policy, reason, reasoning, explanation, knowledge, theory, system; *with habēre*, have regard; *quā ratione?* in what way? (ratio†, ration†, rational†)

Reātinus, -a, -um [*Reāte*], of Reate, a town of the Sabines

recēns, -entis, *adj.* fresh, recent†

recessus, -ūs [*re-cēdō*, retire], *m.* a retired place, remote corner. (recess†)

reciperō (*recuperō*), 1, -āvi, -ātum [*re-cipiō*], get back, regain, recover F. (recuperate†)

re-cipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [*capīō*], take back, receive F, undertake; *with sē*, betake oneself, retire. (recipe†, receipt F, reception†, recipient†)

re-citō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*citō* (*cieō*,

set in motion)], read out or aloud, read. (recite†, recitation†, recital†)

re-clāmō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, cry out against, protest, object. (reclaim F)

re-cognōscō, 3, -gnōvi, -gnitum, recall to mind, recognize F, look over, review

re-colō, 3, -colui, -cultum, cultivate again, revive, resume, renew, revisit

reconciliātiō, -ōnis [*re-conciliō*, re-establish], *f.* reestablishment, restoration. (reconciliation†)

re-condō, 3, -condidi, -conditum, put up again, hide, conceal. (recondite†)

recordātiō, -ōnis [*re-cordor*], *f.* recalling, recollection

re-cordor, 1, -ātus sum [*cor*, heart], recall to mind, remember. (record F)

re-creō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, make over, renew, restore; *with sē*, recover. (recreate†, -ation†)

rēctā [*rēctus*, *sc. viā*], *adv.* straight-way, straight, directly

rēctē [*rēctus*], *adv.* rightly, duly, properly, well

rēctus, -a, -um [*regō*], straight, right. (*cp.* rectitude F, direct†)

recuperō, *see* *reciperō*

recūsātiō, -ōnis [*recūsō*], *f.* refusal, objection, protest

recūsō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*causa*], make objection, refuse, decline. (recusant†)

red-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum [-*dō*, -*dere*, put], give back, return (*trans.*), restore, grant, deliver

- redēptor, -ōris [*red-imō*], *m.* contractor
- red-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go back, return (*intrans.*)
- red-igō, 3, -ēgī, -āctum [*agō*], drive or bring back, bring down, reduce. (*cp.* redaction F)
- redimiō, 4, —, -itum, bind or wind round, crown
- red-imō, 3, -ēmī, -ēptum [*emō*, take, buy], buy back, redeem†, ransom, contract for, farm (*revenue*). (*cp.* redemption†)
- reditus, -ūs [*red-eō*], *m.* return
- red-undō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*undō* (*unda*, wave)], overflow, reek, swim, redound (F) to, be left to, fall upon. (redundant†)
- re-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bear or bring back, bring or lay before, refer†, report, restore, repay, register, record; *with grātiā*, show gratitude, requite. (*cp.* relate†, relation†, relative†)
- rē-fert, -ferre, -tulit [*rē fert*], it is of advantage, concerns, matters, makes a difference
- refertus, -a, -um [*re-ferciō* (*farcio*, stuff)], filled, full
- re-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [*faciō*], remake, make over, renew, refresh, cheer. (*cp.* refection F, refectory†)
- re-fūtō, 1, -āvī, -ātum, repel, refute†, disprove. (*cp.* confute†)
- rēgālis, -e [*rēx*], of a king, royal F, regal†. (regalia†)
- rēgia, -ae [*rēgius*, *sc.* *domus*], *f.* (royal) palace
- rēgiē [*rēgius*], *adv.* tyrannically, despotically
- Rēginus, -a, -um [*Rēgium*], of Regium, a town in southernmost Italy. *Subst. plur. m.* the people of Regium (Reggio)
- regiō, -ōnis [*regō*], *f.* direction, limit, boundary, quarter, region F, territory, country
- rēgius, -a, -um [*rēx*], of a king or prince, royal, princely
- rēgnō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*rēgnum*], reign F
- rēgnum, -ī [*rēx*], *n.* rule or power of a king, sovereignty, mastery, kingdom. (reign F)
- regō, 3, rēxī, rēctum, direct†, guide, rule, govern. (regent†, *cp.* regiment†, regiment†, rector†, rectify F)
- re-iciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectum [*iaciō*], throw or drive back or off, reject†, scorn
- re-laxō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*laxō* (*laxus*, wide, loose)], loosen, lighten, relieve, relax†, ease
- re-levō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*levō* (*levis*, light)], lighten, relieve F, alleviate†
- religiō, -ōnis [*probably legō*], *f.* conscientiousness, scruple, religious feeling or observance, cult, religion†, sacred object
- religiōsus, -a, -um [*religiō*], religious†, consecrated, sacred
- re-liquō, 3, -liquī, -lictum, leave behind, abandon, leave out, pass over, omit, neglect, overlook. (relinquish F, relict†)
- reliquus, -a, -um [*cp.* *re-liquō*, *reliquiae*, relics F], left over, remaining, rest or remainder of, future, to come; *reliquum est*, it remains

re-maneō, 2, **-mānsī**, remain F, stay behind, continue, endure

rēmex, **-igis** [*rēmus*, oar, *agō*], *m.* oarsman, rower

remissio, **-ōnis** [*re-mittō*], *f.* a relaxing, abatement. (remission F)

remissus, **-a**, **-um** [*re-mittō*], relaxed, careless, remiss†, mild

re-mittō, 3, **-misi**, **-missum**, send back, restore, relax, remit†

re-moror, 1, **-ātus sum**, delay, hinder, keep waiting, give a respite to

re-moveō, 2, **-mōvī**, **-mōtum**, move back, keep away, remove F, put out of the way

re-novō, 1, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, renew, revive. (renovate†)

re-nūntiō, 1, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, report, announce F, declare elected, proclaim. (renounce F)

repāgula, **-ōrum** [*cp. pangō*, fix], *n. plur.* bolts, bars

re-pellō, 3, **rep-pulī**, **re-pulsum**, drive back *or* away, repel†, repulse†, ward off

repente [*repēns*, sudden], *adv.* suddenly

repentinus, **-a**, **-um** [*repēns*], sudden, unexpected

re-periō, 4, **rep-perī**, **re-pertum** [*cp. periculum*; *perf. system, pariō*, bring forth], find, discover. (*cp.* repertory†, repertoire F)

re-petō, 3, **-ivi**, **-itum**, seek again, ask back, demand, claim, recall. (repeat F)

re-pōnō, 3, **-posui**, **-positum**, replace, place, set. (*cp.* repose† = *place*, repository†)

re-portō, 1, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, bear *or* bring back, bear away, obtain. (report F)

re-prehendō, 3, **-hendi**, **-hensum** [*pre-hendō*], seize, hold back, lay hold of, blame, censure. (reprehend†, reprehensible†)

re-primō, 3, **-pressi**, **-pressum** [*premō*], press *or* keep back, check, repress†, balk. (*cp.* reprimand F, relieve F)

repudiō, 1, **-āvi**, **-ātum** [*re-pudium* (*cp. pudet*), rejection], reject, scorn, repudiate†

re-pugnō, 1, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, fight against, oppose, resist. (repugnant†)

re-quiēs, **-ētis**, **requiem** (*usually*), **re-quiē**, *f.* rest, relaxation. (requiem†)

re-quirō, 3, **-quisivi**, **-quisitum** [*quaerō*], ask, search *or* ask for, demand, require†, look in vain for, miss. (requisite†, -ition†)

rēs, **rei**, *f.* thing, matter, business, affair, circumstance, situation, fact, action, deed, property; **rēs publica**, public interest *or* welfare, the state, commonwealth, republic†; **rēs gestae**, achievements, history. (real†; register†, *from* *rēs gestae*)

re-scribō, 3, **-scripsi**, **-scriptum**, write back, reply, answer. (re-script†)

re-secō, 1, **-securi**, **-sectum**, cut back *or* off, curtail, restrain

re-servō, 1, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, keep back, save, reserve F. (reservoir F)

re-sideō, 2, **-sēdi** [*sedeō*], remain behind, be left, stay. (reside†, residence F)

- re-signō**, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, unseal, open, cancel, destroy. (resign F)
- re-sistō**, 3, -**stitī**, stay behind, remain, make a stand, resist†, withstand, oppose
- re-spiciō**, 3, -**spexī**, -**spectum** [*speciō*, see], look back (upon), regard, consider. (respect†)
- re-spondeō**, 2, -**spondī**, -**spōnsum** [*spondeō*, promise formally], answer, reply, respond†, be equal to *or* a match for
- respōnsum**, -**ī** [*re-spondeō*], *n.* answer, responset†, reply. (responsible F)
- re-stinguō**, 3, -**stinxi**, -**stinctum**, put out, quench, extinguish†
- re-stituō**, 3, -**stitui**, -**stitūtum** [*statuō*], set up again, restore, replace. (restitution†)
- re-stō**, 1, -**stitī**, be left, remain. (rest = *remain* F)
- re-tardō**, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, hinder, check, delay, retard F
- re-ticeō**, 2, -**ticui** [*taceō*], be silent, keep silence. (reticence†)
- re-tineō**, 2, -**tinui**, -**tentum** [*teneō*], hold back, keep, retain F, maintain, preserve. (retentive F)
- re-torqueō**, 2, -**torsi**, -**tortum**, twist *or* turn back
- re-tundō**, 3, -**retudi**, -**retūsum**, beat back, blunt, dull
- reus**, -**ī** [*rēs*], *m.* the accused, the defendant
- re-vellō**, 3, -**velli**, -**vulsum**, pluck off, tear off *or* away. (revulsion†)
- re-vertor**, -**verti**, *perf. (act.)* -**verti**, -**versum**, turn *or* come back, re-
- turn. (revert F; reverse†, *adj.*; reverse, *noun*, F)
- re-vincō**, 3, -**vici**, -**victum**, refute, disprove, convict†
- re-viviscō**, 3, **re-vixī** [*viviscō*, *incept. of vivo*], come to life again, revive†
- re-vocō**, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, call back, encore, recall, turn away (*trans.*), divert. (revoke†, revocation†)
- rēx**, **rēgis** [*regō*], *m.* king, prince
- Rhēnus**, -**ī**, *m.* the Rhine
- Rhodium**, -**a**, -**um** [*Rhodus*], Rhodian, of Rhodes (*an island southwest of Asia Minor*). *Subst. plur. m.* the Rhodians
- rictum**, -**ī** [*ringor*, open the mouth], *n.* open mouth, parted lips
- rideō**, 2, **risī**, **risum**, laugh, smile, laugh *or* smile at. (deride†)
- ridiculus**, -**a**, -**um** [*rideō*], laughable, ridiculous†, silly, absurd
- rōbur**, -**oris**, *n.* oak, strength, force, vigor
- rōbustus**, -**a**, -**um** [*rōbur*], strong, vigorous, hardy, robust†
- rogātū**, *abl.* [*rogō*], *m.* at *or* by the request
- rogō**, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, ask, request, beg, propose *or* enact (*a law*). (*cp.* rogation†, interrogate†, abrogate†, *etc.*)
- Rōma**, -**ae**, *f.* Rome
- Rōmānus**, -**a**, -**um** [*Rōma*], Roman. *Subst. plur. m.* the Romans
- Rōmulus**, -**ī** [*Rōma*], *m.* the traditional founder of Rome
- Rōscius**, -**ī**, *m.* a family name; *Q. Roscius*, 106 19
- Rudinus**, -**a**, -**um** [*Rudiae*], of Rudiae, a town in Calabria

rudis, -e, rough, rude†, uncultivated, ignorant, inexperienced. (*cp.* rudiment†)

Rūfus, -ī, *m.* a cognomen; *v.* Caelius, Sulpicius

ruīna, -ae [*ruō*], *f.* fall, downfall, ruin F, destruction

rūmor, -ōris, *m.* common talk, hearsay, report, rumor F

rumpō, 3, **rūpī**, **ruptum**, break, burst. (*cp.* abrupt†, corrupt†, rupture†, *etc.*)

ruō, 3, **ruī**, **ruitūrus**, fall, go to ruin, rush

Rupilius, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *P. Rupilius*, 146 12

rūrsus [*re-versus* (*vertō*)], *adv.* again, in turn, on the other hand

rūsticor, 1, -ātus **sum** [*rūsticus*], go to the country. (rusticate†, rustication†)

rūsticus, -a, -um [*rūs*, country], of the country, rustic†. *Subst. m.* a countryman, rustic

S. = salūtem

sacer, -cra, -crum, sacred F. *Subst. n., esp. plur.*, sacred rites, ceremonies

sacerdōs, -ōtis [*sacer*, *dō*, *dare*], *c.* priest, priestess. (sacerdotal F)

sacrārium, -ī [*sacrum*], *n.* shrine, chapel

sacrificium, -ī [*cp. sacri-ficus* (*faciō*)], sacrificial], *n.* sacrifice F

sacrō-sāctus, -a, -um, consecrated by religious rites, holy, sacred, sacrosanct†

saeculum, -ī [*cp. serō*, sow], *n.* generation, age. (secular F)

saepe [*cp. saepiō*], *adv.* frequently, often

saepiō, 4, **saepsi**, **saepum** [*saepēs*, hedge], fence about, surround, protect

sagāx, -ācis [*cp. sāgiō*, discern acutely], *adj.* keen, alert, sagacious†

sal. = salūtem

Salaminius, -a, -um [*Salamīs*], of Salamis, in Cyprus. *Subst. plur. m.* the Salaminians

salinae, -ārum [*sāl*, salt], *f. plur.* salt works. (*cp. saline*†)

Sallustius, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *Cn. Sallustius*, a friend of Cicero, 197 6

saltō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*freq. of sāliō*, leap], dance. (*cp. exult*†)

salūs, -ūtis [*salvus*], *f.* health, safety, prosperity; in letters, greeting, salutation, regards. (salute, noun, F)

salūtō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*salūs*], greet, salute†, pay respects to

salvus, -a, -um, well, sound, safe F, unharmed. (*cp. save* F, salvation F, salvage F)

Samnium, -ī, *n.* an inland district of southern Italy

Samos (and -us), -ī, *f.* an island in the Ægean, with city of the same name

sanciō, 4, **sānxi**, **sānctum** [*sacer*], make sacred, establish, decree, enact. (sanction†)

sānctus, -a, -um [*sanciō*], sacred, hallowed, inviolable, conscientious, upright. (saint F, sanctify F)

sānē [*sānus*], *adv.* indeed, certainly, of course, to be sure

sanguis, -inis, m. blood, bloodshed, murder. (*cp.* sanguinary†, sanguine F)

sānitās, -ātis [sānus], f. soundness (*of body or mind*), sense, sanity F

sānō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [sānus], make sound, heal, cure, restore. (*cp.* sanatorium†)

sānus, -a, -um, sound, well, healthy, sane†. (*cp.* sanitary F)

sapiēns, -entis [sapiō], adj. wise, sensible. *Subst. m.* sage, philosopher

sapienter [sapiēns], adv. sensibly, prudently, wisely

sapientia, -ae [sapiēns], f. wisdom, prudence, discretion

sapiō, 3, -ivī, be sensible *or* prudent *or* wise, understand

Sapphō, -ūs, f. a famous Greek poetess, 152 12

Sardinia, -ae, f. a large island west of Italy (*south of Corsica*)

satelles, -itis, c. attendant, follower, hanger-on, accomplice, satellite F

satietās, -ātis [satis], f. sufficiency, satiety F

satiō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [satis], satisfy, fill, glut, satiate†

satis, indecl. noun, adj., and adv. enough, sufficient(ly), quite, somewhat, rather, a sufficiency; *with* faciō, satisfy F

Sāturnālia, -iōrum [Sāturnus], n. plur. a festival in December, celebrated on the 17th, and later lasting several days

Sāturninus, -ī, m. a cognomen; *L. Apuleius Saturninus*, 4 20

Satyrus, -ī, m. a hero of Tarentum
saucius, -a, -um, wounded

saxum, -ī, n. rock, stone

scaena, -ae [Greek], f. stage. (scenē†)

scaenicus, -a, -um [scaena], of *or* on the stage. (scenic†)

Scaevola, -ae, m. a cognomen; *v. Mucius*

scaphium, -ī [Greek], n. a boat-shaped drinking-cup

Scaurus, -ī, m. a cognomen; *M. Aemilius Scaurus*, 101 19

scelerātē [scelerātus], adv. wickedly, criminally

scelerātus, -a, -um [scelerō (scelus)], wicked, criminal, vicious, infamous, accursed

scelus, -eris, n. wicked deed, sin, crime, wickedness

sciēns, -entis [sciō], adj. knowing, skilled, skillful; *in place of an adv.* knowingly, consciously, purposely

scientia, -ae [sciēns], f. knowledge, skill, art, science F. (*cp.* scientific F)

scilicet [scīre licet], adv. one may know, rest assured, in fact, certainly, surely, of course, doubtless

sciō, 4, -ivī, -itum, know, understand, perceive. *haud sciō an*, I don't know but, am inclined to think; *scītō, impv. fut. for pres.* you are to know, *i.e.* let me inform you

Scipiō, -ōnis, m. a cognomen; *P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Maior*, 63 5, 109 9; *P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Minor*, 63 7, 106 2, 140 5; *P. Cornelius Scipio Nasica Serapio*, 3 19

scītē [scītus, scīscō (sciō)], adv. cleverly, skillfully

scortum, -ī, *n.* harlot, prostitute
scriba, -ae [*scribō*], *m.* clerk, secretary. (scribe†)
scribō, 3, **scripsi**, **scriptum**, write, compose, describe†, tell (*in letter*). (*cp.* inscribe†, prescribe†, subscribe†, manuscript†, *etc.*)
scriptor, -ōris [*scribō*], *m.* writer, author, narrator, historian
scriptum, -ī [*scribō*], *n.* a writing, work, book, speech (*written out*)
scriptūra, -ae [*scribō*], *f.* a writing, a tax paid on public pasture-lands. (scripture F)
scyphus, -ī [*Greek*], *m.* drinking-cup (*with two handles*)
S.D. = *salūtem dicit*; *with P.* = *plūrimam*
sē-cēdō [*sē (sēd)*, *old prep.* without], go apart *or* away, withdraw. (secede†)
sē-cernō, 3, -**crēvi**, -**crētum** [*sē (sēd)*, *old prep.* without], separate, distinguish, exclude. (*cp.* secret F, secrete†, secretary F)
secundus, -a, -um [*sequor*], following, second F, favorable, successful; **rēs secundae**, prosperity, success
secūris, -is [*secō*, cut], *f.* ax
sed [*sēd*, *old prep.* without, aside], *conj.* but, yet
sedeō, 2, **sēdī**, **sessurus**, sit, sit still. (*cp.* sedentary F, sessile†)
sēdēs, -is [*sedeō*], *f.* seat, dwelling-place, abode, habitation, home. (*cp.* see F, siege F)
sēd-itiō, -ōnis [*sēd*, *old prep.* without, *eō*], *f.* dissension, insurrection, mutiny, rebellion, sedition F

sēdō, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum** [*sedeō*], settle, stop, stay, end. (*cp.* sedate†, sedative F)
sēdilitās, -ātis [*sēdulus*, busy], *f.* diligence, persistency, officiousness. (sedulity†)
sē-gregō, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum** [*sē (sēd)*, *old prep.* without, *grex*, herd], separate, remove, exclude. (segregate†)
sē-iungō, 3, -**iūnxī**, -**iūctum** [*sē (sēd)*, *old prep.* without], disjoin, separate, sever
Selēnē, -ēs, *f.* a queen of Syria, 135 22
sella, -ae [*sedeō*], *f.* seat, chair, stool, work-stool
semel [*cp.* *sem-per*], *adv.* once
sēmen, -inis [*serō*, sow], *n.* seed, source. (*cp.* disseminate†)
sēminārium, -ī [*sēmen*], *n.* seedbed, hotbed, nursery. (seminary F)
sem-per [*cp.* *semel*, *similis*], *adv.* ever, always, continually
sempiternus, -a, -um [*sem-per*], everlasting, eternal, perpetual, imperishable. (*cp.* sempiternal F)
Semprōnius, -a, -um, of Sempronius (*Gracchus*), Sempronian
senātor, -ōris [*senex*], *m.* senator
senātōrius, -a, -um [*senātor*], of a senator, senatorial†
senātus, -ūs [*senex*], *m.* senate F (Introd. § 32)
senectūs, -ūtis [*senex*], *f.* old age
senex, -is, *adj.* old, aged. *Subst.* *m.* old man. (senior†, senile F)
sēnsus, -ūs [*sentio*], *m.* feeling, perception, sensation F, sense F, inclination. (sensual†)

- sententia**, -ae [*sentio*], *f.* opinion, thought, judgment, conviction, purpose, motion, proposal, verdict, sentence F, purport, meaning. (sententious†)
- sentina**, -ae, *f.* bilge water, dregs, offscouring
- sentiō**, 4, *sēnsī*, *sēnsū*, perceive, see, notice, feel, think, understand, have *or* express an opinion, cherish sentiments F. (sentient†, *cp.* sentiment F, sensitive F)
- sepeliō**, 4, -*pelivī*, -*pultum*, bury, overwhelm, ruin, destroy. (*cp.* sepulture F)
- septem**, *num. adj. indecl.* seven
- septimus**, -a, -um [*septem*], seventh
- sepulcrum**, -ī [*sepeliō*], *n.* grave, tomb, sepulcher F
- sequor**, 3, *secūtus sum*, follow, attend, pursue F, conform to. (*cp.* sequence F, sequel F, execute F, etc.)
- Ser.** = **Servius**, a *prænomen*
- sērius**, *compar. of sērō*
- sermō**, -ōnis [*cp. susurrus*, whisper (?)] *m.* talk, conversation, discourse, speech, report. (sermon F)
- sērō** [*sērus*, late], *adv.* late, too late
- serpō**, 3, *serpsī*, creep, spread stealthily. (serpent F)
- Serrānus**, -ī, *m.* a gentile name
- serta**, -ōrum [*serō*, interweave], *n. plur.* wreaths, garlands
- Sertōriānus**, -a, -um, of Sertorius, Sertorian, 70 23
- servilis**, -e [*servus*], of a slave *or* the slaves, servile F
- Servilius**, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *v.* Ahāla, Glaucia; *P.* *Servilius Vatia*, 95 20
- serviō**, 4, -*ivī or -iī*, -*itum* [*servus*], be a slave, serve F, be subject, labor for, have regard to, gratify, be subservient†
- servitium**, -ī [*servus*], *n.* slavery, service F, slaves as a class
- servitūs**, -ūtis [*servus*], *f.* slavery. (servitude F)
- Servius**, -ī, *m.* a *prænomen*
- servō**, 1, -*āvi*, -*ātum*, save, keep, preserve F, maintain, guard, watch. (conserve, ob-, re-, *all* F)
- servus**, -ī [*cp. servō*], *m.* slave
- sescenti**, -ae, -a [*sex, centum*], six hundred (*often a round number*)
- sēsē**, *see suī*
- sēs-tertius**, -ī, *gen. plur. -ium* [*sēs-qui (sēmis, one half)*], *m.* sesterce F, a small silver coin (at first $2\frac{1}{2}$ asses) = about 4 cents; *abbr.* **HS**
- Sēstius**, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *P.* *Sestius*, 11 28
- seu**, *see sive*
- sevērē** [*sevērus*], *adv.* strictly, seriously, (*sometimes*) severely F
- sevērītās**, -ātis [*sevērus*], *f.* strictness, seriousness, sternness, (*not often*) severity F
- sevērus**, -a, -um, strict, serious, grave, austere, (*not often*) severe F
- sex**, *num. adj. indecl.* six
- sexāgintā** [*sex*], *num. adj. indecl.* sixty
- Sextilis**, -e [*sextus*], of Sextilis (*sixth month, later named Augustus*, August; *cp.* p. 280, n. 3)
- sextus**, -a, -um [*sex*], sixth
- sī** (*orig. demonstr. adv.* then, so), *conj.* if; *with quidem*, since indeed

Sibyllinus, -a, -um [*Sibylla*], of a Sibyl, Sibylline

sic [*sī-ce*, *cp. hic, illic*], *adv.* so, thus, in this way *or* manner, as follows

sica, -ae [*secō*, cut], *f.* dagger

sicārius, -ī [*sīca*], *m.* cutthroat, assassin, murderer

Sicca, -ae, m. a gentile name

Sicilia, -ae, f. Sicily

Siculus, -a, -um, Sicilian. *Subst. m.* a Sicilian

sic-ut or -utī, *adv.* just as, as

Sidicinus, -a, -um, of the Sidicini, a people in northern Campania

Sigēum, -ī, n. a promontory near Troy, at the entrance of the Hellespont

sigilla, -ōrum [*dim. of signum*], *n. plur.* small statues *or* images. (seal F)

sigillātus, -a, -um [*sigilla*], adorned with small figures (*reliefs*)

significātiō, -ōnis, [*significō*], *f.* indication, sign, portent, signal, notification. (signification F)

significō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*signum, faciō*], indicate, show, intimate. (signify F)

signum, -ī, n. mark, sign F, signal F, standard, image, statue, seal

Silāniō, -ōnis, m. a Greek sculptor, 152 14

Silānus, -ī, m. a cognomen; *D. Junius Silanus*, 54 25

silentium, -ī [*silēns (sileō)*], *n.* silence F, stillness, quiet

sileō, 2, -uī, be silent† *or* still, keep silence about, leave unmentioned

Silvānus, -ī, m. a cognomen; *M. Plantius Silvanus*, 102 3

silvestris, -e [*silva*, forest], wooded, woody

similis, -e [*cp. simul, semel*], like, similar F. (simile†, facsimile†)

similiter [*similis*], *adv.* similarly F, in the same way

simpliciter [*sim-plex (cp. similis)*], *adv.* simply F, directly, straightforwardly

simul [*cp. similis, singulī*], *adv.* at the same time, at once, along with; *with atque (ac)*, as soon as. (*cp. simultaneous†*)

simulācrum, -ī [*simulō*], *n.* likeness, portrait, image, statue (*usually of the gods*)

simulātiō, -ōnis [*simulō*], *f.* pretense, guise. (simulation†)

simulō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*similis*], represent, pretend, feign. (simulate†)

simultās, -ātis [*similis*], *f.* rivalry, enmity, animosity

sīn [*sī-ne (an affirmative -ne; cp. 2. nē)*], *conj.* but if, if on the contrary

sine, prep. with abl. without

singulāris, -e [*singulī*], single, singular F, unique, unparalleled, extraordinary

singulī, -ae, -a [*cp. sim-plex, simul*], *distrib. plur.* one each, one apiece,

single†, separate, several, each
sīnō, 3, sīvī, situm, leave, let, permit, allow

Sinōpē, -ēs, f. a seaport in Paphlagonia (in northern Asia Minor), and capital of the kingdom of Pontus

Sinuessa, -ae, f. the southernmost town in Latium, on the sea and the Appian Way

sinus, -ūs, *m.* curve, hollow, fold, bosom, lap, bay, gulf. (*sinust*†, *sine*†, *cp.* *sinuoust*†, *insinuate*†)

sitis, -is, *f.* thirst

situs, -a, -um [*sinō* (?)], placed, situated†; **situm est**, it lies, is dependent

situs, -ūs [*cp.* *situs, adj.*], *m.* situation F, site†

sī-ve or seu, conj. or if; *correl.* if . . . or if, whether . . . or, either . . . or

Smyrnaeus, -a, -um [*Smyrna*], of Smyrna, *in Ionia*. *Subst. plur. m.* the people of Smyrna

sōbrius, -a, -um [*so* (*sē*), *ēbrius*], not drunk, sober F

societās, -ātis [*socius*] *f.* partnership, companionship, company, society F, union, alliance

socius, -a, -um [*sequor*], sharing, associated with. *Subst. m.* associate†, pārtner, companion, accomplice, ally; *plur.* allies, provincials. (*cp.* *social*†, *socialism*†)

sodālis, -is [*cp.* *suēscō*, become used], *m.* companion, comrade, crony. (*cp.* *sodality*†)

sōl, sōlis, *m.* sun. (*cp.* *solar*†, *solarium*†, *solstice* F)

sōlācium, -ī [*sōlor*, comfort], *n.* comfort, consolation, solace F, relief

soleō, 2, -itus sum, be accustomed or in the habit

sōlitūdō, -inis [*sōlus*], *f.* loneliness, solitude F, wilderness, desert

sollicitātiō, -ōnis [*sollicitō*], *f.* an inciting, instigation. (*solicitation*†)

sollicitō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*sollicitus*], incite, instigate, tamper with. (*solicit* F)

sollicitūdō, -inis [*sollicitus*], *f.* uneasiness, concern, anxiety, solicitude F

solli-citus, -a, -um [*old sollus* = *tōtus, citus*, stirred], agitated, disturbed, concerned, anxious, solicitous†

solum, -ī, *n.* ground, earth, soil F

sōlum [*sōlus*], *adv.* only, alone

sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only, sole F

solūtiō, -ōnis [*solvō*], *f.* payment. (*solution* F)

solūtus, -a, -um [*solvō*], loose, lax, remiss, negligent

solvō, 3, solvī, solūtum [*se* (*sēd*), *luō*, release], loose, release, set free, relieve, pay. (*solve*†, *solvent*†)

somnus, -ī, *m.* sleep. (*cp.* *somnolent*†)

sonō, 1, -uī, -itum [*sonus*], make a noise, sound F, utter. (*cp.* *sonorous*†, *sonata* It, *consonant* F)

sonus, -ī, *m.* noise, sound F

sordidus, -a, -um [*sordēs*, filth], dirty, poor, mean, base, sordid F

soror, -ōris, *f.* sister

sors, sortis [*serō*, join], *f.* lot, allotment. (*sort* F)

Sp. = Spurius, a prænomen

spargō, 3, sparsī, sparsum, strew, scatter, distribute, spread abroad. (*cp.* *sparset*†, *disperse* F)

spatium, -ī, *n.* space F, extent, distance, interval, time

S.P.D. = salūtem plūrimam dicit (*dīcunt*)

speciēs, acc. -em, defective [*speciō*, see], *f.* sight, appearance, show. (*species*†, *specie*†, *cp.* *special* F, *specimen*†)

spectō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*freq. of speciō*], look at *or* on *or* toward, regard. (*cp.* spectacle F, expect†)

speculātor, -ōris [*speculor*], *m.* spy, scout. (speculator†)

speculor, 1, -ātus sum [*specula (speciō)*], watchtower], spy out, watch, observe. (speculate†)

spēlunca, -ae [*Greek*], *f.* cave, cavern

spērō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*spēs*], hope, hope for, expect, anticipate. (*cp.* despair F)

spēs, -ei, *f.* hope, expectation

spiritus, -ūs [*spīrō*, breathe], *m.* breath, breathing, air, inspiration; *plur.* spirit F, pride, arrogance

spissus, -a, -um, thick, dense, slow, difficult

splendidus, -a, -um [*splendeō*, shine], bright, brilliant, distinguished, splendid F

splendor, -ōris [*splendeō*], *m.* brightness, brilliance, luster, splendor F, honor, eminence

spoliātiō, -ōnis, [*spoliō*], *f.* robbing, plundering, spoliation F

spoliō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*spolium*], strip, spoil F, despoil F, rob

spolium, -ī, *n.* hide; *reg. plur.* arms stripped from an enemy, spoils F, booty

spōnsālia, -ium [*spōnsus (spondeō*, promise), betrothed], *n. plur.* betrothal, betrothal feast

sponte, *abl.* (with *rare gen. -tis and acc. -tem*), *f.* free will; usually with *suā*, of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously†

Spurius, -i, *m.* a prænomen

stabiliō, 4, -īvi, -ītum [*stabilis*], make firm *or* secure, establish F

stabilis, -e [*stō*], firm, steadfast, stable F, fixed, secure

stabilitās, -ātis [*stabilis*], *f.* firmness, steadfastness, security, stability†

Statilius, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *L. Statilius*, 37 24

statim [*stō*], *adv.* on the spot, forthwith, at once, immediately

Stator, -ōris [*sistō (stō)*, cause to stand], *m.* the stayer, stay *or* protector, *epithet of Jupiter*

statua, -ae [*cp. stō, sistō*], *f.* image, statue F (*of a human being*)

statuō, 3, -uī, -ūtum [*status*], set up, set, put, place, erect, settle, decide, resolve. (statute F)

status, -ūs [*stō*], *m.* standing, state F, status†, station F, condition

stimulus, -ī, *m.* goad, spur, incentive, stimulus†. (*cp.* stimulate†)

stipendiārius, -a, -um [*stipendium*], tributary, paying tribute. *Subst. m.* tribute payer. (stipendiary†)

stipendium, -ī [*stips*, contribution, *pendō*, pay], *n.* tax, pay, tribute, wages (*esp. of soldiers*), military service, campaign. (stipend†)

stirps, stirpis, *f.* trunk, stock, stem, root, source. (*cp.* extirpate†)

stō, 1, steti, stātūrus, stand

stomachus, -ī [*Greek*], *m.* gullet, stomach F, taste, anger

strēnuē [*strēnuus*, brisk], *adv.* quickly, promptly, strenuously†

strepitus, -ūs [*strepō*, make a noise], *m.* noise, din, uproar

- strūctor**, -ōris [*struō*, build], *m.* builder, carpenter, mason. (*cp.* structure F, construct†)
- studeō**, 2, -uī [*cp. studium*], be eager *or* zealous, be devoted to. (student†, *cp.* study F)
- studiōsē** [*studiōsus*], *adv.* eagerly, zealously, studiously†
- studiōsus**, -a, -um [*studium*], eager, zealous, fond of, devoted to. (studious†)
- studium**, -ī [*cp. studeō*], *n.* eagerness, zeal, interest, enthusiasm, study F, application, pursuit, attachment, devotion, loyalty, partisanship. (studio It)
- stultitia**, -ae [*stultus*], *f.* folly, foolishness
- stultus**, -a, -um, foolish, silly, stupid. (*cp.* stultify†)
- stuprum**, -ī, *n.* dishonor, vice, debauchery, lust
- suādeō**, 2, suāsī, suāsum [*suāvis*], advise, recommend, persuade†, urge, exhort. (*cp.* suasion F, dissuade†)
- suāvis**, -e [*cp. suādeō*], sweet, agreeable, delightful. (suave F)
- sub** (*in some cpds. subs*), *prep.* with *acc. and abl.* under, beneath, up to, just before, near, below, at, at the foot of
- sub-eō**, -īre, -iī, -itum, undergo, incur, suffer, endure
- sub-iciō**, 3, -iēcī, -iectum [*iaciō*], throw *or* place under, hand up, present, set (*a fire*), apply. (subject†)
- subiector**, -ōris [*sub-iciō*, substitute], *m.* forger
- sub-igō**, 3, -ēgī, -āctum [*ago*], put down, subdue, vanquish
- sub-impudēns**, -entis, *adj.* rather shameless *or* impudent
- subitō** [*subitus* (*sub-eō*)], *adv.* suddenly F
- sub-lātus**, *see* tollō
- subolēs**, -is [*cp. adulēscēns*], *f.* offspring
- sub-scribō**, 3, -scripsī, -scriptum, write underneath *or* below, subjoin (*our* inclose). (subscribe†)
- subsellium**, -ī [*sella*], *n.* bench, seat
- subsidium**, -ī [*sedeō*], *n.* reserve, reēnforcement, aid, help, support, resources. (subsidy†, subsidiary†)
- sub-sum**, -esse, -fuī, be under *or* near, be concealed
- subtilis**, -e [*cp. tēla*, web], precise, exact, detailed. (subtle F)
- subtiliter** [*subtilis*], *adv.* finely, acutely, accurately
- sub-urbānus**, -a, -um [*urbs*], near the city, suburban†. *Subst. n.* (*sc. praedium*), suburban villa *or* estate
- sub-veniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, come up *or* under *or* to the rescue, help, aid. (*cp.* subvention F)
- suc-cēdō**, 3, -cessī, -cessum [*sub*], go *or* come under *or* after, succeed F, turn out
- suf-ferō**, -ferre, sus-tuli, sub-lātum, bear, suffer F
- suf-frāgium**, -ī [*cp. fragor*, noise(?)], *n.* vote, ballot, suffrage F
- sui**, sibi, sē (sēsē), *reflex. pron.* him(self), her(self), it(self), them-(selves); *as subj. of inf.* he, she, it, they

Sulla, -ae, *m.* a cognomen; *L. Cornelius Sulla*, the dictator, 19 21, 47 4, 70 5, 111 4

Sulpicius, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *C. Sulpicius*, 38 6; *P. Sulpicius Rufus*, 47 4; *Ser. Sulpicius Rufus*, 200 ff.

sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be, exist. (*cp.* essence F, future F)

summa, -ae [*summus* (*sc. rēs*)], *f.* chief place, leadership, supremacy, sum F; *ad summam*, in short, to sum up. (*cp.* summary†)

summus, -a, -um, *superl.* of *superus*, highest, greatest, best, most important, most eminent, supreme, summit (F) of

sūmō, 3, sūmpsī, sūmptum [*subs* (*sub*), *emō*, take], take up, assume, claim; *with supplicium*, inflict punishment on (*dē*). (*cp.* consume†, pre-†, re-†)

sūmptuōsē [*sūmptuōsus*], *adv.* expensively, lavishly, extravagantly

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um [*sūmptus*], expensive, costly, lavish, sumptuous†

sūmptus, -ūs [*sūmō*], *m.* outlay, expense, cost. (*cp.* sumptuary†)

superbē [*superbus*], *adv.* haughtily, arrogantly, insolently

superbus, -a, -um [*super* and root of *fui*], overbearing, haughty, arrogant, proud, insolent. (*superb* F)

superior, -ius, *compar.* of *superus*, upper, higher, former, previous, preceding, better, superior F

superō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*superus*], be superior to, surpass, overcome, defeat, conquer. (*cp.* insuperable†)

super-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be over or left over, remain, survive

superus, -a, -um [*super*], that is above, higher, upper. *Compar.* superior, *superl.* suprēmus and summus

sup-peditō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*sub*, *freq.* of *pedō* (*pēs*), prop], supply fully or freely, furnish

sup-petō, 3, -ivī, -itum [*sub*], be at (on) hand or in store

supplex, -icis [*sub*, *cp.* *plicō*, fold], *adj.* kneeling, begging, suppliant F. *Subst. c.* a suppliant. (*cp.* supple F)

supplicātiō, -ōnis [*sup-plicō*, kneel, beg], *f.* public prayer or supplication†, thanksgiving

supplicium, -ī [*supplex*], *n.* punishment, torture, death penalty, execution

suprā [*superus*], *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.* above, before, beyond, more

surgō, 3, sur-rēxī, -rēctum [*sub*, *regō*], rise, arise. (*surge* F, *cp.* insurrection F, re- F)

sur-ripiō, 3, -ripiū, -reptum [*sub*, *rapīō*], snatch away, take secretly, steal. (*cp.* surreptitious†)

sus-cēnsēō, 2, -uī [*succēnsus* (*sub*, *candēō*), fired], be angry or incensed or indignant

sus-cipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [*subs* (*sub*), *capiō*], take up, undertake, begin, incur, suffer. (*cp.* susceptible F)

suspectus, -a, -um [*su-spiciō* (*sub*, *speciō*, look)], suspected F, mis-trusted

- suspēsus, -a, -um** [*sus-pendō* (*subs = sub*)], hung up, suspended F, in suspense F
- suspīciō, -ōnis** [*cp. suspectus*], *f.* suspicion F, mistrust
- suspīcor, 1, -ātus sum** [*cp. suspīciō*], suspect, mistrust
- sustentō, 1, -āvi, -ātum** [*freq. of sus-tineō*], hold or keep up, support, sustain, endure, delay
- sus-tineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentum** [*subs (sub), teneō*], hold up, support, sustain F, restrain, control, endure, withstand. (*cp. sustenance* F)
- sus-tulī, see tollō**
- suus, -a, -um, reflex. possess.** his (own), her (own), their (own); *plur. m.* his (their) friends, followers, etc.; *plur. n.* his (their) possessions, property, etc.
- Syrācūsae, -ārum, f. plur.** Syracuse, a famous city in Sicily
- Syrācūsānus, -a, -um** [*Syrācūsae*], of Syracuse. *Subst. plur. m.* the Syracusans
- Syria, -ae, f.** a country in Asia, along the eastern end of the Mediterranean
- T. = Titus, a prænomen**
- tabella, -ae** [*dim. of tabula*], *f.* small board, tablet (*waxed for writing*); *plur.* letter, document, record
- tabellārius, -ī** [*tabella*], *m.* letter-carrier, courier
- taberna, -ae** [*probably for *traberna (trabs, beam)*], *f.* shop. (tavern F)
- tābescō, 3, tābui** [*incept. of tābeō*, melt away], waste or pine away
- tabula, -ae, f.** board, panel, picture, painting, tablet F (*for writing*), document; *plur.* records, archives; **tabulae novae**, new accounts (*cancelling old debts*). (*cp. table* F, tableau F, tabulate†)
- tabulārium, -ī** [*tabula*], *n.* record office
- taceō, 2, -uī, -itum**, be silent, keep silent about, leave unmentioned. (*cp. reticence†*)
- taciturnitās, -ātis** [*taciturnus*, silent], *f.* silence. (taciturnity†)
- tacitus, -a, -um** [*taceō*], silent, still, speechless, tacit†
- taeda, -ae, f.** torch
- taeter, -tra, -trum** [*cp. taedet*, it disgusts], loathsome, offensive, foul, disgusting, repulsive, abominable
- tālāris, -e** [*tālus*, ankle], reaching to the ankles
- tālis, -e** [*pron. stem seen in is-te*], such (*often with correl. quālis*, as). (*cp. retaliate†*)
- tam** [*cp. tālis*], *adv.* so, so much, so very
- tamen** [*cp. tam*], *adv.* yet, still, notwithstanding, nevertheless, however
- tam-etsī** [*tamen, et-sī*], *conj.* although, though, and yet
- tam-quam, adv.** as if, as, as it were
- tandem** [*tam-dem* (*cp. -dem in idem*)], *adv.* at length, at last, finally; *in a question*, pray, I beg of you; *with aliquandō*, finally, some day, at last. (tandem†)
- tangō, 3, tetigī, tāctum**, touch, hit, strike. (tangible F, tangent†, tact†)

tantopere or **tantō opere** [*opus*],
adv. so much, so greatly

tantum [*tantus*], *adv.* so much only,
 only; *with modo*, merely, only

tantus, -a, -um [*tam*], so great, so
 much; *with correl. quantus*, as
 great (or much) . . . as; **tanti est**,
 is worth while. (tantamount F)

tardē [*tardus*], *adv.* slowly, tardily F
tarditās, -ātis [*tardus*], *f.* slowness,
 delay, tardiness F

tardō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*tardus*], make
 slow, delay, hinder, retard F

tardus, -a, -um, slow, tardy F

Tarentinus, -a, -um [*Tarentum*], of
 Tarentum, *in southern Italy*.

Subst. plur. m. the Tarentines

Tarsus, -ī, *f.* the chief city of Cilicia
taurus, -ī, *m.* a bull

Teānum, -ī, *n.* a town in northern
 Campania

tēctum, -ī [*tegō*], *n.* covered struc-
 ture, building, dwelling, house,
 roof

tegō, 3, tēxi, tēctum, cover, hide,
 defend, guard, protect†

tēlum, -ī, *n.* missile weapon, javelin,
 spear, weapon

Temenitēs, -ae [*Greek*], *m.* of the
 Temenos (*a grove sacred to
 Apollo at Syracuse*)

temerē [*cp. tenebrae*], *adv.* blindly,
 without design, rashly, heedlessly

temeritās, -ātis [*temerē*], *f.* rash-
 ness, recklessness, temerity†

temperantia, -ae [*temperāns (tem-
 perō)*], *f.* self-restraint, self-control,
 moderation. (temperance F)

temperō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*tempus*],
 observe due measure, restrain one-

self, control, moderate, spare. (*cp.*
 temper†, temperate†, -ament F)

tempestās, -ātis [*tempus*], *f.* time,
 season, weather, storm, tempest F

tempestivus, -a, -um [*tempestās*],
 timely, seasonable, suitable, early,
 beginning betimes

templum, -ī, *n.* sacred place, conse-
 crated (inaugurated) spot, temple†.
 (Templar F)

temptō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*cp. tendō*],
 test, try, attack, assail, attempt F,
 tempt F

tempus, -oris [*cp. templum*, space],
n. time, season, moment, occasion,
 opportunity, exigency, necessity,
 circumstances; **ex tempore**, ex-
 tempore†, extemporaneously†. (*cp.*
 temporal F, -ary†, -ize†)

tendō, 3, tetendī, tentum and
 tēnsu[m] [*cp. teneō*], stretch, ex-
 tend, tender F, tend F. (*cp.* ten-
 don†; tense, *noun*, F; tense†,
adj.; tent†)

tenebrae, -ārum [*cp. temerē*], *f.*
plur. darkness, obscurity

Tenedus (-os), -ī, *f.* a small island
 near Troy

teneō, 2, -uī, hold, keep, maintain F,
 retain F, occupy, reach, detain F;
pass. be caught or convicted or
 guilty. (*cp.* tenet†, tenor F; ten-
 ant F, tenure F)

tenuis, -e [*cp. teneō, tendō*], thin;
 weak, humble. (tenuous†, exten-
 uate†)

ter [*cp. trēs*], *adv.* three times

Terentia, -ae, *f.* Cicero's first wife,
 52 22, 162 ff.

tergum, -ī, *n.* back, rear

- terminō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*terminus*], bound, limit, end, terminate†. (determine F)
- terminus**, -ī [*cp. trāns*], *m.* boundary, limit. (*cp.* term F, terminus†, -inal F)
- terra**, -ae [*cp. torreo*, dry up], *f.* earth, land, soil, ground, country; orbis terrarum or terrae, all lands or nations, the world. (*cp.* terrace F, terrain F, territory F)
- terrestris**, -e [*terra*], on earth, earthly, on land. (terrestrial F)
- terror**, -ōris [*cp. terreō*, frighten], *m.* fright, dread, alarm, terror F
- tertius**, -a, -um [*ter*], third
- testāmentum**, -ī [*testor*], *n.* last will, testament F
- testificor**, 1, -ātus sum [*testis*, faciō], call to witness, testify F, assert
- testimōnium**, -ī [*testis*], *n.* testimony†, evidence, proof
- testis**, -is, *c.* witness
- testor**, 1, -ātus sum [*testis*], call to witness, invoke. (*cp.* testator†)
- Teutonī**, -ōrum (and -ēs, -um), *m. plur.* the Teutons, a Germanic people defeated by Marius
- textilis**, -e [*texō*, weave], woven, textile†. *Subst. n.* stuff, fabric, tapestry
- theātrum**, -ī [*Greek*], *n.* theater F
- Themistoclēs**, -is, *m.* a statesman and general of Athens, 108 4
- Theophanēs**, -is, *m.* a Greek historian of Pompey's campaigns, 110 10
- Theophilus**, -ī, *m.* a freedman, 198 8
- Thespiadēs**, -um [*Thespieae*], *f. plur.* the Thespians, *i.e.* the Muses, statues of the Muses
- Thespieae**, -ārum, *f. plur.* a town in Boeotia, near Helicon
- Thespiēnsēs**, -ium, *m. plur.* the people of Thespieae
- Thessalonica**, -ae, *f.* a city in Macedonia (Saloniki)
- Ti.** = Tiberius, a *prænomen*
- Tiberīnus**, -a, -um [*Tiberis*], of the Tiber
- Tiberis**, -is, *m.* the Tiber
- Tiberius**, -ī, *m.* a *prænomen*
- Tigrānēs**, -is, *m.* a king of Armenia, 68 16
- Timarchidēs**, -is, *m.* a freedman of Verres, 141 1
- timeō**, 2, -uī, fear, be afraid of, be apprehensive, dread
- timidē** [*timidus*], *adv.* timidly F, cautiously, modestly
- timidus**, -a, -um [*timeō*], timid F, afraid, shrinking
- timor**, -ōris [*timeō*], *m.* fear, dread, apprehension. (*cp.* timorous†)
- Tirō**, -ōnis, *m.* a cognomen; *M. Tullius Tiro*, Cicero's secretary and friend (a freedman), 182 ff., 203 ff.
- Titius**, -ī, *m.* a gentile name
- Titus**, -ī, *m.* a *prænomen*
- toga**, -ae [*tegō*], *f.* toga†, flowing outer garment of Roman citizens in civil life; symbolic of peace; first put on by boys after laying aside the toga praetexta (see praetextus)
- togātus**, -a, -um [*toga*], wearing the toga, in civilian dress (or the garb of peace)

tolerābilis, -e [*tolerō*], bearable, tolerable F, endurable

tolerō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*cp. tollō, tulī*], bear, endure. (tolerate†)

tollō, 3, sus-tulī, sub-lātum, lift, take up, raise, exalt, extol†, take away, remove, carry off

Tongilius, -ī, *m.* a gentile name, 20 26

Torquātus, -ī, *m.* a cognomen; *L. Manlius Torquatus*, 44 14

tot [*pron. stem seen in is-te*], indecl. *adj.* so many

totiēns [*tot*], *adv.* so many times, so often

tōtus, -a, -um, whole, entire, total F, all, all the

trāctō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*freq. of trahō*], haul about, handle, touch, treat F, manage, conduct, act or represent (*on the stage*). (tractable†, tractate†, tract†)

trādō, 3, -didī, -ditum [*trāns*, -dō, -dere, put], hand over, deliver, hand down, relate, teach. (*cp.* tradition F, traitor F, treason F)

trahō, 3, trāxī, trāctum, draw, drag, influence, attract†, involve, protract†, delay. (*cp.* trait F, tract† = *region*, traction F)

Trallis, -ium, *f. plur.* Tralles, a city of Caria (*in southwestern Asia Minor*)

tranquillitās, -ātis [*tranquillus*], *f.* quiet, calm, tranquillity F

tranquillus, -a, -um [*trāns*, beyond; *cp. quies*], quiet, still, calm, peaceful, tranquil F

Trāns-alpīnus, -a, -um, beyond the Alps, Transalpine

trān-scendō, 3, -scendi [*trāns*, across, *scandō*], climb over, cross. (transcend F)

trāns-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go over or across, cross. (transient†, transit F, transition F, transitive F)

trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bear across, transport, transfer†. (translate F)

trāns-igō, 3, -ēgī, -āctum [*agō*], carry out, finish, complete, accomplish. (transact†)

trāns-marīnus, -a, -um [*mare*], across the sea, overseas. (transmarine†)

trāns-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -misum, send across or over, cross over, intrust, commit†, devote. (transmit†)

Trāns-padānus, -a, -um [*Padus*], beyond the Po. *Subst. plur. m.* the people beyond the Po

trāns-versus, -a, -um [*vertō*], cross-wise, cross-, transverse F

Trebātius, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *C. Trebatius Testa*, 169 ff.

trēs, tria, *num. adj.* three

tribūnal, -ālis [*tribūnus*], *n.* platform, judgment seat, tribunal†

tribūnus, -ī [*tribus*, tribe], *m.* tribune F; *with plēbis or plēbī*, tribune of the people (Introd. § 26); *with militum*, military tribune

tribuō, 3, -uī, -ūtum [*tribus*], assign, allot, bestow, confer, pay, attribute†. (tribute F)

triclinium, -ī [*Greek*], *n.* table-couch (*for reclining at meals*), dining-room

- tri-duum**, -ī [*cp.* *trēs, diēs*], *n.*
(a period of) three days
- triennium**, -ī [*trēs, annus*], *n.* a
space of three years. (triennial†)
- trīgintā**, *num. adj. indecl.* thirty
- Triptolemus**, -ī, *m.* honored as the
inventor of agriculture
- trīstis**, -e, sad, dejected, mournful,
stern, severe
- trīticum**, -ī [*trītus (tērō, rub)*], *n.*
wheat
- triumphō**, I, -āvi, -ātum [*trium-
phus*], celebrate a triumph,
triumph F, exult, rejoice
- triumphus**, -ī [*probably Greek
through Etruscan*], *m.* triumph F,
triumphal (F) procession
- tropaeum**, -ī [*Greek*], *n.* monument
of victory (*hung with spoils*),
trophy F
- tr. pl.** = *tribūnus plēbis*
- trucidō**, I, -āvi, -ātum [*probably
trux, savage, caedō*], slaughter,
butcher, murder, massacre
- trūlla**, -ae [*dim. of trua, ladle*], *f.*
small ladle. (trowel F)
- tū**, *tui*, *pers. pron.* thou, you
- tuba**, -ae [*cp. tubus, tube F*], *f.*
trumpet. (tuba†)
- tueor**, 2, *tuitus (and tūtus) sum*,
watch, watch over, guard, defend,
preserve, maintain. (*cp.* tuition F,
tutor F, tutelage†, intuition F, in-
tuitive F)
- Tullia**, -ae, *f.* Cicero's daughter,
52 23, 163 ff.
- Tulliola**, -ae [*dim. of Tullia*], *f.*
dear Tullia; 163 8, 165 14
- Tullius**, -ī, *m.* a gentile name; *v.*
Cicerō; another *Tullius*, 174 11
- Tullus**, -ī, *m.* a cognomen; *L. Vol-
cacius Tullus*, 99, 201 14
- tum** [*pron. stem seen in is-te*], *adv.*
then, at that time, thereupon,
moreover; *with preceding cum*,
and, but also
- tumultuōsus**, -a, -um [*tumultus*], dis-
orderly, uproarious, tumultuous F
- tumultus**, -ūs [*tumeō, swell*], *m.*
uprising, insurrection, tumult F,
uproar, disturbance
- tumulus**, -ī [*tumeō, swell*], *m.*
mound, hillock, tomb, tumulus†
- tunc** [*tum-ce*], *adv.* just then, then,
at that time
- tunica**, -ae, *f.* tunic F, a much shorter
garment worn under the toga
- turbulentus**, -a, -um [*turba, uproar,
mob*], disorderly, noisy, boister-
ous, turbulent F, disordered, con-
fused
- tūribulum**, -ī [*tūs, incense*], *n.* in-
cense burner, censer. (thurible†)
- turma**, -ae, *f.* troop of cavalry
- turpis**, -e, ugly, unbecoming, shame-
ful, disgraceful, base, infamous
- turpiter** [*turpis*], *adv.* shamefully,
disgracefully, dishonorably, basely
- turpitūdō**, -inis [*turpis*], *f.* disgrace,
dishonor, baseness, shame, turpi-
tude F
- turris**, -is [*Greek*], *f.* tower F.
(turret F)
- Tusculānus**, -a, -um [*Tusculum*], of
Tusculum, a town near Rome.
Subst. n. (sc. praedium), a villa or
estate at Tusculum
- tūtō** [*tūtus*], *adv. (compar. tūtius,
superl. tūtissimō and -ē)*, safely,
in safety

tūtus, -a, -um [*tueor*], guarded, protected, safe, secure

tuus, -a, -um [*tū*], *possess. pron.* thy, thine, your, yours; *plur. m.* your followers, *etc.*

Tycha, -ae [*Greek = Fortūna*], *f.* a quarter of the city of Syracuse, with a temple of the goddess of Fortune

tyrannus, -ī [*Greek*], *m.* king, despot, tyrant **F**, tyranny **F**

1. **ūber, -eris** (*cp.* 2. **ūber**), *adj.* abounding, rich, fruitful

2. **ūber, -eris, n.** udder, breast

ūbertās, -ātis [*1. ūber*], *f.* richness, fertility

ubi [*quī, with loss of qu; cp. ibi (is)*], *interrog. and rel. adv., and conj.*, where, when; *with primum*, as soon as

ubi-nam, interrog. adv. where? where, pray? *with gentium*, where in the world?

ubī-que, adv. anywhere, everywhere. (*ubiquitous F*)

ulciscor, 3, ultus sum [*ulcus, sore(?)*], *avenger* oneself on, punish

ūllus, -a, -um [*dim. of ūnus*], any **ultimus, -a, -um** [*cp. ultrā, ultrō*], *superl. of ulterior*, farthest, most distant, last. (*ultimate†, -atum†*)

ultrō [*old ollus = ille*], *adv.* beyond, besides, into the bargain, actually, without being asked, of oneself

umbilicus, -ī, m. navel, middle, center. (*umbilicus†*)

Vmbrēnus, -ī, m. a cognomen, 42 4

um-quam [*stem of ubī*], *adv.* ever at any time

ūnā [*ūnus*], *adv.* together or along with, at the same time or place with

un-de [*stem of ubi*], *interrog. and rel. adv.* whence, from what or which

ūndēquīnquāgēsīmus, -a, -um [*ūndēquīnquāgīntā*, forty-nine], forty-ninth

undi-que [*unde*], *adv.* from or on all sides, all around, everywhere

unguentum, -ī [*unguō*, anoint], *n.* ointment **F**, unguent†, perfume

ūnicē [*ūnicus (ūnus)*], *adv.* singularly, especially, remarkably, uniquely **F**

ūni-versus, -a, -um [*ūnus, vertō*], all together, entire, whole, universal **F**. (*universe F, -ity†*)

ūnus, -a, -um, one, alone, single, sole, only. *Subst. n.* one thing. (*cp. union F, unit(y) F, uni-† in cpds.*)

urbānitās, ātis [*urbānus*], *f.* city manners, refinement of the city. (*urbanity†*)

urbānus, -a, -um [*urbs*], of or in the city, city (*as adj.*), urban†, urbane†

urbs, urbis, f. city, the city (*Rome*). (*suburb F*)

urgeō, 2, ursī, press, press hard. (*urget†, urgent F*)

Ūrios, -ī, acc. -on [*Greek*], *m.* giving a favorable wind, *epithet of Zeus (Jupiter)*

us-quam [*cp. ut, where*], *adv.* anywhere

ūs-que, adv. all the way or time, up to, as far as, even; *with quō*, how far? how long?

ūsūra, -ae [*ūtor*], *f.* use, enjoyment, interest, usury†

ūsūrpō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*usus, rapiō*], turn to account, make use of, use, employ, speak of, mention. (*cp.* usurp F)

ūsus, -ūs [*ūtor*], *m.* use F, experience, practice, skill, advantage

ut or uti [*quī, with loss of qu (cp. ubi)*], *interrog. and rel. adv.* how, as; *conj.* as soon as, when, ever since, that, in order that, so that, although; *with a verb of fearing*, that . . . not; *with primum*, as soon as

uter-que, utra-, utrum- [*uter (quī, cp. ubi)*], which of two], each, both

ūtilis, -e [*ūtor*], useful, effective, advantageous. (utilize†)

ūtilitās, -ātis [*ūtilis*], *f.* usefulness, advantage, utility F

uti-nam, *adv.* oh that, would that

ūtor, 3, ūsus sum, use F, employ, make use of, take advantage of, indulge in, enjoy, exercise, practice, find (to be). (peruse†)

utrum [*uter*], *adv. and conj.* whether

uxor, -ōris, *f.* wife. (uxorious†)

vacillō, 1, -āvī, -ātum, totter, stagger (*as under a load*). (vacillate†)

vacuē-faciō, 3, -fēcī, -factum [*vacuus*], make empty, empty, vacate, clear

vacuus, -a, -um [*cp. vacō*, be empty or vacant F], empty, vacant, free, separated from. (vacuum†)

vadimōnium, -ī [*vas, surety*], *n.* security, bail

vāgīna, -ae, *f.* scabbard, sheath

vagor, 1, -ātus sum [*vagus, roving*], wander, roam, rove, stroll, spread, extend. (*cp.* vague F, vagabond F, vagary†)

valdē [= *validē* (*validus*, strong, valid F)], *adv.* greatly, thoroughly, completely, very much

valēns, -entis [*valeō*], *adj.* strong, vigorous, powerful, well. (valiant F)

valeō, 2, -uī, -itūrus, be strong or powerful or well, have influence or power, be effectual, avail F, prevail†; *in greetings*, farewell

Valerius, -ī, m. a gentile name; *L. Valerius Flaccus*, 4 19; another, 37 2

valētūdō, -inis [*valeō*], *f.* health. (*cp.* valetudinarian F)

vāllō, 1, -āvī, -ātum [*vāllum*, palisade, wall†], wall about, fortify, intrench, defend. (*cp.* circumvallation†)

valva, -ae, reg. plur. valvae [*volvō*, roll, turn], *f.* folding doors. (valve F)

varietās, -ātis [*varius*], *f.* difference, diversity, variety F

varius, -a, -um, different, diverse, various†. (*cp.* vary F, variegate†, variorum†)

vās, vāsis, plur. vāsa, -ōrum, n. vessel, dish, vase F, utensil

vāsculārius, -ī [*vāsculum (vās)*], *m.* maker of small vessels, goldsmith, silversmith

vāstātiō, -ōnis [*vāstō*], *f.* laying waste, devastation†, desolation

vāstitās, -ātis [*vāstus*, empty, waste F, vast F], *f.* devastation, desolation, ruin

vāstō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*vāstus*], lay waste, devastate†, ravage. (waste F)
vātēs, -is, *c.* seer, soothsayer, prophet. (*cp.* vaticination†)
-ve, *encl. conj.* or
vectigal, -is [*vectigālis*], *n.* tax, tribute, revenue
vectigālis, -e [*vehō, agō*], paying taxes or tribute. *Subst. plur. m.* tributaries
vectis, -is [*vehō*], *m.* lever, bar, crowbar
vehemēns, -entis [*vehō*], *adj.* energetic, impetuous, violent, vehement F, strong, vigorous, forcible
vehementer [*vehemēns*], *adv.* impetuously, earnestly, vigorously, forcibly, violently, vehemently F, exceedingly, greatly, very much
vel [*volō*], *conj. and adv.* or if you please, or; *correl.* either . . . or; even, very; *with superl.* the very, easily
vēlum, -ī, *n.* sail, awning, curtain. (veil F)
vēna, -ae, *f.* vein F, artery
vēnditō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*freq. of vēndō*], try to sell, deal in, sell
vēn-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum [*vēnum (acc.)*], sale, -dō, -dere, put], sell. (vend F)
venēficus, -a, -um [*venēnum, faciō*], poisoning, poisonous. *Subst. m.* poisoner
venēnum, -ī [*venus, love*], *n.* love potion, drug, poison. (venom F)
vēn-eō, -īre, -iī [*vēnum (acc.)*], sale, eō], go to sale, be sold (*as a pass. to vēn-dō*). (*cp.* venal F, from vēnum)
Venerius, -a, -um [*Venus*], of Venus.

Subst. m. a slave (or freedman) of Venus (*of Eryx in Sicily*)
veneror, 1, -ātus sum [*venus, love*], reverence, worship, adore, venerate†, pray to, implore
venia, -ae [*venus*], *f.* favor, indulgence, pardon, forgiveness. (*cp.* venial F)
veniō, 4, vēnī, ventum, come. (*cp.* venture F, venue F, avenue F)
ventus, -ī, *m.* wind. (*cp.* ventilate†)
Venus, -eris [*venus, love*], *f.* the goddess of love
venustās, -ātis [*venus*], *f.* loveliness, charm, grace, beauty
vēr, vēris, *n.* spring. (*cp.* vernal†)
verbēna, -ae [*cp. verber*], *f.* sacred branch of olive, laurel, myrtle, etc. (*cp.* verbenast, vervain F)
(verber), -eris, and *abl. -ere* (*only two forms of sing.*), *n.* lash, whip; *reg. plur. only*, verbera, -um, scourging, flogging
verberō, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*verber*], beat, lash, plague, torment. (*cp.* reverberate†)
verbum, -ī, *n.* word. (verb F, *cp.* verbal F, verbatim†, verboset†)
vērē [*vērus*], *adv.* truly, really, rightly, justly, properly
verēcundia, -ae [*verēcundus (vereor)*], modest], *f.* modesty, shame
vereor, 2, veritus sum, revere†, reverence†, respect, fear
vērītās, -ātis [*vērus*], *f.* truth, verity F. (veritable F)
vērō [*vērus*], *adv.* in truth or fact, indeed, truly, surely, but, however; iam vērō, moreover, furthermore; immō vērō, no indeed, nay rather, on the contrary

- verrēs, -is, m.** boar
Verrēs, -is, m. a cognomen; *C. Verres*, 129 ff.
- versō, 1, -āvī, -ātum** [*freq. of vertō*], turn about *or* over; *pass.* be employed *or* engaged *or* involved, busy oneself, dwell, live, remain, be. (*cp.* versatile F, versed†)
- versus, -ūs** [*vertō*, turn], *m.* line, verse F
- vertex, -icis** [*vertō*], *m.* highest point, summit. (vertex†)
- vērūm** [*vērus*], *conj.* but, but in truth, yet
- vērus, -a, -um**, true, well-founded, real, genuine, right, proper; **rē vērā**, in reality. *Subst. n.* the truth. (*cp.* very F, veracity†, verisimilitude†)
- vespera, -ae, f.** evening. (vesper†)
- Vesta, -ae, f.** the goddess of hearth and home
- Vestālis, -e** [*Vesta*], of Vesta, Vestal†. *Subst. f.* Vestal virgin (Introd. § 31)
- vester, -tra, -trum** [*vōs*], *possess. pron.* your, yours
- vestigium, -ī** [*cp. vestigō*, track, investigate†], *n.* footprint, trace, track; *plur.* remains, vestiges†
- vestiō, 4, -ivī, -itum** [*vestis*, clothing, vestment F], clothe, cover, adorn. (*cp.* vested F, invest†)
- vestitus, -ūs** [*vestiō*], *m.* clothing, dress, vesture F
- vetus, -eris, adj.** old, ancient, long-standing, former, veteran†
- vetustās, -ātis** [*vetus*], *f.* age, antiquity, length of time, duration, long standing
- vexātiō, -ōnis** [*vexō*], *f.* harassing, troubling, maltreatment, outrage. (vexation F)
- vexō, 1, -āvī, -ātum** [*vehō*, carry], shake, jolt, trouble, harass, annoy, vex F, maltreat, harry, waste
- via, -ae, f.** way, road, street, course, journey. (*cp.* via†, viaduct†)
- vibrō, 1, -āvī, -ātum**, shake, brandish, hurl. (vibrate†)
- Vibullius, -ī, m.** a gentile name; *L. Vibullius Rufus*, 188 14
- vīcēsīmus, -a, -um** [*vīgintī*], twentieth
- vīcīnus, -a, -um** [*vīcus*], neighboring. *Subst. m.* neighbor. (*cp.* vicinity F, vicinage F)
- victor, -ōris** [*vincō*], *m.* conqueror, victor†; *as adj.* victorious F
- victōria, -ae** [*victor*], *f.* victory F; *personif. as a goddess*, Victory
- vīcus, -ī, m.** row of houses, street, village, estate (*in country*). (-wick†)
- vidēlicet** [*vidēre licet*], *adv.* one may see, obviously, manifestly, clearly, doubtless, of course, I suppose, namely. (viz.†)
- videō, 2, vidī, vīsum**, see, perceive, note, observe, understand, attend to, see to, provide; *pass. (usually)* seem, appear, seem good *or* best. (*cp.* view F, vision F, visible F, vista It)
- vigeō, 2, -uī** [*cp. vigor (vigil)*, vigor F], be strong, thrive, flourish
- vigil, -ilis** [*cp. vigeō*], *adj.* awake, alert. *Subst. m.* watchman, sentinel
- vigilāns, -antis** [*vigilō*], *adj.* watchful, vigilant F, attentive

- vigilantia**, -ae [*vigilāns*], *f.* watchfulness, vigilance F
- vigilia**, -ae [*vigil*], *f.* a watching, guarding, vigil F, watch (*the night was divided into four equal watches*); *plur.* = **vigilēs** as *subst.*
- vigilō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*vigil*], watch, keep awake, be watchful, be untiring
- viginti**, *num. adj. indecl.* twenty
- vilis**, -e, cheap, common, worthless. (*vile* F, vilify†)
- vilitās**, -ātis [*vīlis*], *f.* cheapness, low price
- villa**, -ae [*cp. vīcus*], *f.* farmhouse, country house, villa†
- vīnārius**, -a, -um [*vīnum*], of or for wine
- vinciō**, 4, vīnxi, vinctum, bind, fetter, confine, restrain
- vincō**, 3, vīci, victum, overcome, conquer, subdue, be victorious, prevail, surpass, exceed. (*cp.* invincible F, evince†, evict†)
- vinculum**, or **vinclum**, -ī [*vinciō*], *n.* bond, chain, fetter; *plur.* also prison, imprisonment. (*vinculum*†)
- vindex**, -icis, *c.* protector, avenger, punisher
- vindicō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*vindex*], claim, vindicate†, maintain, protect, rescue, avenge, punish. (*vindictive*†)
- vineā**, -ae [*vīnum*], *f.* vineyard, vine F, shed (*in shape of an arbor*), penthouse
- vīnum**, -ī [*cp. vītis*, vine], *n.* wine†
- violō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*vīs*], treat with violence, injure, harm, wrong, dishonor, violate†
- vir**, virī [*cp. vīs*], *m.* man, hero, husband. (*virile* F, *cp.* virago†)
- virēs**, *see* vīs
- virginālis**, -e [*virgō*], of a maiden, maidenly
- virgō**, -inis, *f.* maiden, girl, virgin F
- virtūs**, -ūtis [*vir*], *f.* manhood, manliness, courage, bravery, valor, goodness, virtue F, character, excellence, merit; *personif. as a goddess*, Virtue
- vīs** (*gen. vīs*, very rare), *acc. vim*, *abl. vī*, *plur. virēs*, -ium [*cp. vir*], *f.* strength, force, power, might, vigor, energy, violence F, number, quantity; *plur.* strength, power. (*vim*†)
- (vīscus, -eris)**, *n., reg. plur., vīscera*, -um, entrails, vitals, viscera†
- visō**, 3, vīsi, vīsum [*freq. of videō*], go to see, visit F. (*visitation* F)
- vīta**, -ae [*vīvō*], *f.* life. (*cp.* vital F)
- vitium**, -ī, *n.* fault, defect, vice F, sin. (*cp.* vitiate†)
- vītō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum, shun, avoid, escape, evade. (*cp.* inevitable†)
- vituperātiō**, -ōnis [*vituperō* (*vitium*), blame], *f.* blaming, blame, censure, vituperation†
- vīvō**, 3, vīxi, victum, live. (*vivid*†, *vivacious*†, *vivify* F, *revive*†)
- vīvus**, -a, -um [*cp. vīvō*], living, alive. (*cp.* viva voce†)
- vix**, *adv.* with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely
- vix-dum**, *adv.* hardly or scarcely yet, but just
- vocō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum [*cp. vōx*], call, summon, invoke F. (*vocation* F, *vocative* F)

- Volcācius, -ī, m.** a gentile name;
v. Tullus
- volgō (vulgō)** [*volgus*, people, the vulgar F], *adv.* commonly, generally, usually, everywhere
- volitō, 1, -āvī, -ātum** [*freq. of 2. volō*], fly *or* flit *or* hover about
- vulnerō, 1, -āvī, -ātum (vul-)** [*volnus*], wound, injure, harm. (*cp.* vulnerable†)
- volnus, -eris (vul-), n.** wound, blow, injury
1. **volō, velle, voluī**, will, be willing, wish, desire, purpose, intend, mean. (volition F, volitive F)
2. **volō, 1, -āvī, -ātum**, fly, speed, hasten. (volatile F)
- Volturcius, -ī, m.** a gentile name;
T. Volturcius, 36 25
- voltus, -ūs (vul-), m.** expression, look(s), countenance, face, features
- voluntārius, -a, -um** [*voluntās*], willing, voluntary F. (volunteer F)
- voluntās, -ātis** [1. *volō*], *f.* will, wish, desire, choice, inclination, disposition, purpose, good will, favor, consent
- voluptās, -ātis** [*volup* (1. *volō*)], willingly], *f.* pleasure, sense of pleasure, enjoyment, delight, satisfaction. (*cp.* voluptuary†, voluptuous F)
- Volusius, -ī, m.** a gentile name
- vōs, plur. of tū**
- vōs-met**, *emphatic for vōs*
- vōtum, -ī** [*voveō*], *n.* vow F, prayer. (vote F, votive F)
- voveō, 2, vōvī, vōtum**, vow, solemnly promise. (devote†)
- vōx, vōcis** [*cp. vocō*], *f.* voice F, utterance, word, saying, command. (*cp.* vocal F, vowel F)

VOCABULARY

TO THE EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION

Figures used with verbs indicate their conjugation. The references to sections are to the Grammatical Outline, pp. 207-282.

abide by, maneō (2) in
ability, ingenium, inge'nī, *n.*
able, be, possum, *irr.*
about, (*concerning*) dē
abuse, abūtor, 3
accomplish, perficiō, 3
achieve, impetrō, 1
admire, admīror, 1
advantage, frūctus, -ūs, *m.*
after, *prep.*, post
after, *conj.*, cum (§ 226), ut (§ 200),
 ubi (§ 204, *b*), abl. (§ 153)
agreeable, iūcundus, *a, um*
alarm, commoveō, 2
alive, vīvus, -a, -um
all, omnis, -e
allow, patior, 3
ally, socius, soci, *m.*
alone, ūnus, -a, -um
although, cum (§ 230), quamquam
 (§ 218), abl. (§ 230, *b*)
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
ancestors, maiōrēs, -um, *m. plur.*
ancient, vetus, veteris
another, with one, inter sē
Antioch, Antiochia, -ae, *f.*
antiquity, antīquitās, -ātis, *f.*
any, quis, quid
anything, quid

appease, (*bend, turn*) flectō, 3
appointment, use praeфициō, 3 (§ 86)
approve, probō, 1
are we? § 55, *d*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
art, ars, artis, *f.*; **liberal arts**, rēs
 optimae, *f. plur.*
as, ut (§ 203); **just as**, sicut (§ 203, *a*)
ashamed, be, pudet, 2
ask, postulō (1), quaerō (3), petō (3)
assault, taking by, expugnātiō,
 -ōnis, *f.*
assembly, cōntiō, -ōnis, *f.*
assign, tribuō, 3
at, ad; **at the house of**, apud
attack, impetus, -ūs, *m.*
attain, cōnsequor (3), perveniō (4) **ad**
attempt, cōnor, 1
attest, comprobō, 1
author, scriptor, -ōris, *m.*
authority, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*
away, be, absum, *irr.*

be, sum, *irr.*; **be here**, adsum
bear, ferō, *irr.*
beast, bēstia, -ae, *f.*
because, quod, quia
befall, (*be received*) accipiō, 3

- began, coepī
 belittle, contemnō, 3
 bequeath, relinquo, 3
 besiege, obsideō, 2
 best, optimus, -a, -um
 bind, (*hold fast*) dēvinciō, 4
 body, corpus, -oris, *n.*
 book, liber, -brī, *m.*; books, (*literature*) litterae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
 born, be, nāscor, 3
 both . . . and, et . . . et
 boyhood, from, ex pueris
 brave, fortis, -e
 bring, adferō, *irr.*; bring back, reportō, 1
 bury, abdō, 3
 bust, imāgō, -inis, *f.*
 but, sed, vērūm
 by, (*of agent*) ab, dat. (§§ 79, 114)

 call back, revocō, 1
 camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
 can, possum, *irr.*
 capture, capiō, 3
 care, cūra, -ae, *f.*; take the greatest care, maximē labōrō (1); with care, accūrātē
 carry, ferō, *irr.*; carry on, administrō, 1
 Carthage, Carthāgō, -inis, *f.*
 Catiline, Catilīna, -ae, *m.*
 cause, causa, -ae, *f.*
 cease, dēsīnō, 3
 celebrate, celebrō, 1
 certain, a, quīdam, quaedam, quidam (quoddam, *adj.*)
 character, of such, eius modi
 choose, dēligō, 3
 citizen, cīvis, cīvis, *c.*
 citizenship, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*
 city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
 claim, expetō, 3
 clear, clārus, -a, -um
 close, claudō, 3
 coast, ōra, -ae, *f.*
 Colophon, people of, Colophōnī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
 come, veniō, 4; come to, adeō, *irr.*
 command (of), be in, praesum, *irr.*; put in command (of), praeficiō, 3
 commander, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
 commit, (*intrust*) committō, 3
 common, commūnis, -e
 complain, queror, 3
 concerning, dē
 conduct, administrō, 1
 confess, fateor, 2
 consider, (*examine*) cōnsiderō, 1; (*think*) dūcō, 3
 consul, cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*
 contend, contendō, 3
 contribute, adferō, *irr.*
 copy, imitor, 1
 corrupt, prōfligātus, -a, -um
 counsel, cōnsilium, cōnsīlī, *n.*; take counsel about, cōnsulō, 3, *w. dat.*
 country, patria, -ae, *f.*; rūs, rūris, *n.*
 courage, animus, -ī, *m.*
 courageous, fortis, -e
 cover, contegō, 3
 cultivate, colō, 3
 custody, cūstōdia, -ae, *f.*
 custom, cōnsuētūdō, -īnis, *f.*
 daily, (*adv.*) cotīdiē; (*adj.*) cotīdianus, -a, -um
 danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
 dangerous, perīculōsus, -a, -um
 dare, audeō, 2
 darkness, tenebrae, -ārum, *f. plur.*

- dear, cārus, -a, -um
 death, mors, mortis, *f.*; put to death, interficiō (3), necō (1)
 deed, rēs, rei, *f.*
 defeat, pellō, 3
 defend, dēfendō, 3
 defense, praesidium, praesi'dī, *n.*
 delight, dēlectō, 1
 deny, negō, 1
 depth of, summus, -a, -um
 desert, dēserō, 3
 deserve, §§ 79, 114
 destroy, dēleō, 2
 destruction, exitium, exi'tī, *n.*
 devote, (*apply*) cōnferō (*irr.*), dēdō (3)
 die, morior, 3
 differ, differō, *irr.*
 disaster, calamitās, -ātis, *f.*
 disseminate, dissēminō, 1
 distrust, diffīdō, 3, *with dat.*
 do, agō, 3; do not, nōlī (§ 55, *b*), nōnne (§ 32)
 doubt, dubitō, 1
 doubtful, dubius, -a, -um
 dread, pertimēscō, 3
 dwelling, tēctum, -ī, *n.*
 ear, auris, -is, *f.*
 easily, facile
 either . . . or, aut . . . aut
 embassy, lēgatiō, -ōnis, *f.*
 empire, imperium, impe'rī, *n.*
 end, cōnficiō, 3
 enemy, hostēs, -ium, *c. plur.*
 enjoy, ūtor, 3
 enroll, ascribō, 3
 entire, tōtus, -a, -um
 escape, effugiō, 3
 eternal, sempiternus, -a, -um
 event, rēs, rei, *f.*
 everything, omnia, -ium, *n. plur.*
 example, exemplum, -ī, *n.*
 except, (*unless*) nisi
 exclude, sēgregō, 1
 exile, exsilium, exsi'lī, *n.*
 exist, existō, 3
 expectation, exspectātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
 expediency, ūtilitās, -ātis, *f.*
 exploit, rēs, rei, *f.*
 explore, explōrō, 1
 expose to, obiciō (3) in
 exposed, be, pateō, 2
 extempore, ex tempore
 extraordinary, eximius, -a, -um
 fame, fāma, -ae, *f.*
 family, domus, -ūs, *f.*
 famous, clārus, -a, -um
 father, pater, -tris, *m.* [nē, ut
 fear, (*verb*) timeō (2), vereor (2), *with*
 fear, (*noun*) metus, -ūs, *m.*
 feel, sentiō, 4
 few, paucī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
 field, in the, militiae
 fight, pugnō, 1
 find, inveniō, 4
 finish, cōnficiō, 3
 fit, idōneus (-a, -um), tempestīvus (-a, -um)
 fleet, classis, -is, *f.*
 follow, (*obey*) pāreō, 2
 for, ad, in, prō; *dat.*
 foreign, exter(us), -a, -um
 foreigner, aliēnus, -a, -um
 fortify, mūniō, 4
 fortunate, fortūnātus, -a, -um
 fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*; fortunes, rēs, rērum, *f. plur.*
 free, (*verb*) liberō, 1

free, (*adj.*) liber, -a, -um
 friend, amicus, -ī, *m.*
 friendship, amicitia, -ae, *f.*; (*companionship*) cōsuētūdō, -inis, *f.*
 from, ab, ex
 full, plēnus, -a, -um

garrison, praesidium, praesi'dī, *n.*
 gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
 gather, congregō, *i*
 Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f.*
 general, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
 genius, ingenium, inge'nī, *n.*
 give, dō, *i* (*irr.*)
 glory, glōria, -ae, *f.*
 go, eō, *irr.*; go away, sēcēdō (3),
 dēcēdō (3); go out, ēgredior, *3*
 god, deus, -ī, *m.*
 good, bonus, -a, -um; good will,
 voluntās, -ātis, *f.*
 grant, (*confer on*) dēferō, *irr.*
 grateful, be (*or feel*), grātiā habeō
 (2)
 gratitude, feel, grātiā habeō (2)
 great, magnus, -a, -um; very great,
 maximus (-a, -um), summus (-a,
 -um)
 greatly, magnō opere; so greatly,
 tantō opere
 Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*
 Greek, Graecus, -a, -um
 guard, praesidium, praesi'dī, *n.*
 guardian, cūstōs, -ōdis, *c.*

happy, beātus, -a, -um
 hate, ōdī, *defective*
 have to, §§ 79, 114
 he, is, hic
 her, eius, suus (*reflex.*)
 herald, praecō, -ōnis, *m.*

here, hīc
 hesitate, dubitō, *i*
 himself, suī (*reflex.*); in himself,
 per sē
 his, eius, suus (*reflex.*)
 hold, teneō, *2*
 home, domus (-ūs, *f.*), domum
 (§ 101); at home, domī
 Homer, Homērus, -ī, *m.*
 honor, pudor, -ōris, *m.*
 hope, (*noun*) spēs, speī, *f.*; I hope,
 (*adv.*) utinam
 hospitality, hospitium, hospi'tī, *n.*
 house, domus (-ūs, *f.*), tēctum (-ī,
n.); at the house of, apud
 how? quam; how often? quotiēns
 humanity, hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*

Iliad, Īlias, -ados, *f.*
 immediately, statim
 immortal, immortalis, -e
 improve, excolō, *3*
 in, in
 increase, crēscō, *3*
 injure, violō, *i*
 inspire, iniciō, *3*
 into, in
 intrust, permittō, *3*
 is, are, *etc.*, sum; is to, §§ 79, 114
 island, īnsula, -ae, *f.*
 it, is, ea, id; itself, ipse, -a, -um
 Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*

judge, iūdex, -icis, *m.*
 Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*

kill, interficiō, *3*
 kind, genus, -eris, *n.*
 king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
 know, not, ignōrō, *i*

knowledge, scientia, -ae, *f.*

known, nōtus, -a, -um

land, terra, -ae, *f.*; on land, terrā

large, magnus, -a, -um

Latin, Latīnus, -a, -um

law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*

leader, dux, ducis, *m.*

learned, ērudītus, -a, -um

least, at, certē

leave, leave behind, relinquō, 3

let, § 55, *b*

letter, (*of the alphabet*) littera, -ae, *f.*

liberal, liberālis, -e; liberal arts, rēs optimae, *f. plur.*

lie, (*be situated*) iaceō, 2

life, vīta, -ae, *f.*

light, lūx (lūcis, *f.*), lūmen (-inis, *n.*)

likeness, effigiēs, -ēī, *f.*

listen to, audiō, 4

literature, litterae, -ārum, *f. plur.*; study of literature, doctrīna, -ae, *f.*

live, (*dwell*) habitō, 1; (*exist, pass the time*) vīvō, 3

look at, intueor, 2

lose, amittō, 3

magnitude, magnitūdō, -inis, *f.*

make, (*of plans*) capiō, 3

man, vir, virī, *m.*; (*person*) homō, -inis, *m.*

many, multī, -ae, -a

meanwhile, interim

measure, carry a, rem cōficiō, 3

memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*

merchant, mercātor, -ōris, *m.*

merit, laus, laudis, *f.*

messenger, nūntius, nūntī, *m.*

mildness, mānsuētūdō, -inis, *f.*

mind, animus, -ī, *m.*

move, moveō, 2

much, (*adv.*) multum, multō (§ 151)

must, §§ 79, 114

my, meus, -a, -um

name, nōmen, -inis, *n.*

Naples, people of, Neāpolitānī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*

narrow-minded, parvī animī (§ 123)

nation, nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

nature, (*kind*) genus, -eris, *n.*

navigate, nāvigō, 1

necessary, necessārius, -a, -um

need I? § 55, *d*; need to, §§ 79, 114

needs, tempora, -um, *n. plur.*

neglect, neglegō, 3

nevertheless, tamen

nobody, nēmō, -inis, *c.*

nor, nec, neque

not, nōn, nōnne, num (§ 32); not only . . . but (also), nōn modo . . . sed, nōn solum . . . vērū etiam

nothing, nihil, indecl. *n.*

now, nunc

number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

O that, utinam

often, saepe

on, in, abl.; (*about*) dē

one, ūnus, -a, -um; with one another, inter sē

open, be, pateō, 2

or, aut

order, iubeō, 2

other, the, cēterī, -ae, -a

ought, dēbeō (2), §§ 79, 114

our, ours, noster, -tra, -trum

ourselves, nōs; in ourselves, per nōs

- parent, parēns, -entis, *c.*
 part, pars, partis, *f.*; **for my part**, ego
 particular, in, potissimum
 pass (out of), excēdō, 3
 patience, patientia, -ae, *f.*
 peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
 penalty, poena, -ae, *f.*
 people, populus, -ī, *m.*
 person, in, praesēns, -entis
 persuade, suādēō, 2
 pirate, praedō, -ōnis, *m.*
 pitch, (*of a camp*) conlocō, 1
 place, locus, -ī, *m.*
 plague, pestis, -is, *f.*
 plan, (*noun*) cōnsilium, cōnsī'li, *n.*
 plan for, (*verb*) cōgitō dē
 pleasant, iūcundus, -a, -um
 plot against, insidiōr (1), *with dat.*;
 plot for, cōgitō (1) dē
 poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*
 Pompey, Pompeius, Pompe'ī, *m.*
 portrait, imāgō, -inis, *f.*
 power, have very great, plūrimum
 possum, *irr.*
 powerful, potēns, -entis
 praise, (*verb*) laudō, 1
 praise, (*noun*) laus, laudis, *f.*
 precept, praeceptum, -ī, *n.*
 prefer, mālō, *irr.*
 preference to all others, in, potissi-
 mum
 presence of, in the, apud
 present, dōnō, 1
 preserve, cōservō, 1
 prison, vincula, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
 private, privātus, -a, -um
 promise, polliceor, 2
 proper, be, oportet, 2
 property, bona, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
 protection, fidēs, -eī, *f.*
 province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*
 provoke, laccessō, 3
 public, pūbicus, -a, -um
 Punic, Pūnicus, -a, -um
 punish, ulcīscor, 3
 pursue, persequor, 3
 put, pōnō, 3; **put in command of**,
 praeficiō, 3
 quickly, celeriter
 reach, perveniō (4) ad
 reading, litterae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
 recall, revocō, 1
 receive, accipiō (3), recipiō (3)
 recently, nūper
 recite, dicō, 3
 records, tabulae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
 refresh, reficiō, 3
 region, regiō, -ōnis, *f.*
 reign, rēgnō, 1
 reject, repudiō, 1
 relax, relaxō, 1
 relieve, levō, 1
 renown, laus, laudis, *f.*
 reply, respondeō, 2 [crum, -ī, *n.*
 representation, (*likeness*) simulā-
 republic, rēs pūblica, reī pūblīcae, *f.*
 resources, opēs, -um, *f. plur.*
 rest, (*noun*) find rest, conquiēscō, 3
 rest, the, cēterī, -ae, -a
 return, (*verb*) redeō, *irr.*
 return, (*noun*) reditus, -ūs, *m.*
 rich, adfluēns, -entis
 right, (*justice*) iūs, iūris, *n.*
 risk, periculum, -ī, *n.*
 rock, saxum, -ī, *n.*
 Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um
 Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
 rustic, rūsticus, -a, -um

safe, tūtus, -a, -um
 safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
 sail, nāvigō, 1
 sake, for the, causā
 same, īdem, eadem, idem; same
 time, at the, simul
 savage, immānis, -e
 save, cōservō, 1
 sea, mare, -is, *n.*; on the sea, marī
 see, videō (2), (*perceive*) sentiō (4)
 seek, quaerō, 3; seek out, expetō, 3
 seem, videor, 2
 seize, comprehendō, 3
 self-control, temperantia, -ae, *f.*
 senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*
 Senate-house, cūria, -ae, *f.*
 send, mittō, 3
 sentiment, (*opinion*) sententia, -ae, *f.*
 separate, sēcernō, 3
 set out, proficīscor, 3
 several, nōn nullī (-ae, -a), complū-
 rēs (-a or -ia)
 severity, acerbitās, -ātis, *f.*
 shall I? § 55, *d*
 ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
 should, §§ 79, 114
 show, ostendō, 3
 Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, *f.* [quī (§ 178)
 since, (*conj.*) cum (§ 229), abl. (§ 153),
 singular, singulāris, -e
 size, magnitūdō, -inis, *f.*
 sky, caelum, -ī, *n.*
 small, parvus, -a, -um
 so, ita, sic, tam; so great, tantus,
 -a, -um; so many, tot, *indecl.*
 soldier, miles, -itis, *m.*
 solitude, sōlitūdō, -inis, *f.*
 some, aliquis, -qua, -quid
 son, filius, fili, *m.*
 song, cantus, -ūs, *m.*

Spain, Hispānia, -ae, *f.*
 Spanish, Hispāniēnsis, -e
 speak, dicō, 3
 spirit, animus, -ī, *m.*
 stake, be at, agitur, 3
 state, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*
 statue, statua, -ae, *f.*
 still, etiam tum
 stir, commoveō, 2
 strain, contentiō, -ōnis, *f.*
 strengthen, cōfirmō, 1
 strong, (*large*) magnus (-a, -um),
 fīrmus (-a, -um)
 studiously, studiōsē
 study, studium, studi, *n.*
 such, (*so great*) tantus, -a, -um
 suffering, cruciātus, -ūs, *m.*
 sufficient, satis
 supply, (*verb*) suppetitō, 1
 supply, (*noun*) cōpia, -ae, *f.*
 surpass, superō, 1; antecellō, 3,
 with dat.
 sweetness, dulcēdō, -inis, *f.*
 sword, gladius, gladi, *m.*
 Syracuse, Syrācūsae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
 system of instruction, disciplina,
 -ae, *f.*
 take, capiō (3), (*lead*) dūcō (3); take
 place, agō (3), *pass.*
 talk about, celebrō, 1
 Tarentum, people of, Tarentīnī,
 -ōrum, *m. plur.*
 than, § 136
 that, (*demonstr. pron.*) is (ea, id),
 ille (-a, -ud)
 that, (*rel. pron.*) quī, quae, quod
 that, (*conj.*) ut; that . . . not, nē;
 inf., § 285
 their, theirs, eōrum, suus (*reflex.*)

themselves, (*intensive*) ipsī (-ae, -a);
(*reflex.*) suī, ipsī

then, (*at that time*) tum; **even then**,
etiam tum; (*therefore*) quā rē

there, ibi

they, eī [(1)]

think, arbitror (1), putō (1), exīstimō

this, hic (haec, hoc), is (ea, id), quae
(p. 7, l. 13)

through, per [time, simul

time, tempus, -oris, *n.*; **at the same**

to, ad, in, dat. (§ 105), acc. (§ 101, a)

tomb, tumulus, -ī, *m.*

too, quoque

train, instituō, 3

treat, trāctō, 1

triumph, triumphō, 1

trust, cōfidō, 3, *with dat.*

try, cōnor, 1

two, duo, duae, duo

understand, intellegō, 3

unjustly, iniūriōsē

unknown, ignōtus, -a, -um

unless, nisi

uprightness, honestās, -ātis, *f.*

urge (to), hortor (ut), 1

use, ūtor, 3

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

verse, versus, -ūs, *m.*

very, ipse (ipsa, ipsum), *or use superl.*

vice, vitium, vitī, *n.*

victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*

violate, violō, 1

virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

wage, (*of war*) gerō, 3; **wage war**
on, bellum īferō, *irr.*

wait for, exspectō, 1

wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*

war, bellum, -ī, *n.*

was I? § 55, *d*; **was to**, §§ 79, 114

way, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*

we, nōs

well-known, ille, illa, illud

what? quid, quae (*n. plur.*); (*adj.*)

quī, quae, quod; **what about?**

quid quod

when, cum (§§ 220, 226), ubi (§ 204,

δ), abl. (§ 153)

where, ubi

who, (*interrog.*) quis; (*rel.*) quī,

quae

whole, tōtus, -a, -um

whose, cuius, quōrum

why, cūr

winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*

wisdom, prūdētia, -ae, *f.*

wise, sapiēns, -entis

wish, volō, *irr.*; **I wish**, utinam

with, cum, abl. (§ 153)

world, **whole**, orbis terrārum

worth, dignitās, -ātis, *f.*

worthy, dignus, -a, -um

would that, utinam

write, scribō, 3

writer, scriptor, -ōris, *m.*

year, annus, -ī, *m.*

yield, cēdō, 3

you, tū, vōs

your, **yours**, tuus (-a, -um), vester

(-tra, -trum), iste (ista, istud), iste

tuus

yourself, tuī; **in yourself**, per tē

youth, (*lad*) adulēscēns (-entis, *c.*),

praetextātus (-ī, *m.*); (*age*) adu-

lēscēntia, -ae, *f.*

